ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

World Journal of *Virology*

World J Virol 2015 February 12; 4(1): 1-35

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJV World Journal of Virology

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of virology

Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Virology* Editorial Board consists of 341 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in virology. They are from 58 countries, including Argentina (5), Australia (6), Austria (3), Barbados (1), Belgium (2), Brazil (6), Bulgaria (1), Cameroon (1), Canada (11), Chile (1), China (52), Croatia (2), Cuba (1), Czech Republic (1), Denmark (1), Egypt (2), Ethiopia (1), Finland (4), France (11), Germany (12), Ghana (1), Greece (2), Hungary (1), India (11), Indonesia (1), Iran (1), Ireland (3), Israel (5), Italy (24), Japan (13), Kazakhstan (1), Kenya (1), Kosovo (1), Mexico (2), Netherlands (6), New Zealand (1), Nigeria (1), Pakistan (2), Palestine (1), Poland (1), Portugal (1), Romania (1), Russia (2), Saudi Arabia (1), Senegal (1), Singapore (2), Slovakia (1), Slovenia (2), South Africa (3), South Korea (4), Spain (14), Sweden (3), Thailand (8), Tunisia (1), Turkey (4), United Kingdom (7), United States (82), and Uruguay (1).

WJV World Journal of Virology

Contents

Quarterly Volume 4 Number 1 February 12, 2015

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Virology*, David Peter Wilson, Associate Professor, National Centre in HIV Epidemiology and Clinical Research, University of New South Wales, Corner West and Boundary Streets, Darlinghurst, Sydney 2010, Australia

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Virology (*World J Virol*, *WJV*, online ISSN 2220-3249, DOI: 10.5501) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJV covers topics concerning arboviral infections, bronchiolitis, central nervous system viral diseases, DNA virus infections, encephalitis, eye infections, fatigue syndrome, hepatitis, meningitis, opportunistic infections, pneumonia, RNA virus infections, sexually transmitted diseases, skin diseases, slow virus diseases, tumor virus infections, viremia, zoonoses, and virology-related traditional medicine, and integrated Chinese and Western medicine. Priority publication will be given to articles concerning diagnosis and treatment of viral diseases. The following aspects are covered: Clinical diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, differential diagnosis, imaging tests, pathological diagnosis, molecular biological diagnosis, immunological diagnosis, genetic diagnosis, functional diagnostics, and physical diagnosis; and comprehensive therapy, drug therapy, surgical therapy, interventional treatment, minimally invasive therapy, and robot-assisted therapy.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJV*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Virology is now indexed in PubMed Central, PubMed, and Digital Object Identifier.

FLYLEAF

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Virology

ISSN
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
February 12, 2012

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF
Ling Lu, MD, PhD, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, University of Kansas Medical Center, Kansas City, 3901 Rainbow Blvd, WHE 3020, KS 66160, United States

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director

World Journal of Virology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center, No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
February 12, 2015

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i1.1

World J Virol 2015 February 12; 4(1): 1-12
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Treatment of chronic hepatitis C in patients with HIV/HCV coinfection

Nicola Coppola, Salvatore Martini, Mariantonietta Pisaturo, Caterina Sagnelli, Pietro Filippini, Evangelista Sagnelli

Nicola Coppola, Salvatore Martini, Mariantonietta Pisaturo, Pietro Filippini, Evangelista Sagnelli, Department of Mental Health and Public Medicine, Section of Infectious Diseases, Second University of Naples, 80131 Naples, Italy
Mariantonietta Pisaturo, Division of Infectious Diseases, AORN Sant'Anna e San Sebastiano di Caserta, 81100 Caserta, Italy
Caterina Sagnelli, Department of Clinical and Experimental Medicine and Surgery "F. Magrassi e A. Lanzara", Second University of Naples, 80131 Naples, Italy
Author contributions: Coppola N, Martini S, Pisaturo M, Sagnelli C, Filippini P and Sagnelli E authorship credit is based on (1) substantial contributions to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; (2) drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content; and (3) final approval of the version to be published.
Conflict-of-interest: All the authors of the manuscript declare that they have no conflict of interest in connection with this paper.

Correspondence to: Dr. Nicola Coppola, Department of Public Health and Public Medicine, Section of Infectious Diseases, Second University of Naples, Via: L. Armanni 5, 80131 Naples, Italy. nicola.coppola@unina2.it
Telephone: +39-081-5666719
Fax: +39-081-5666013
Received: November 15, 2014
Peer-review started: November 16, 2014
First decision: December 12, 2014
Revised: December 21, 2014
Accepted: Janurary 9, 2015
Article in press: Janurary 12, 2015
Published online: February 12, 2015

Abstract

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is one of the most frequent causes of comorbidity and mortality in the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) population, and liver-related mortality is now the second highest cause of death in HIV-positive patients, so HCV infection should be countered with adequate antiviral therapy. In 2011 began the era of directly acting antivirals (DAAs) and the HCV NS3/4A protease inhibitors telaprevir and boceprevir were approved to treat HCV-genotype-1 infection, each one in combination with pegylated interferon alfa (Peg-IFN) + ribavirin (RBV). The addition of the first generation DAAs, strongly improved the efficacy of antiviral therapy in patients with HCV-genotype 1, both for the HCV-monoinfected and HIV/HCV coinfected, and the poor response to Peg-IFN + RBV in HCV/HIV coinfection was enhanced. These treatments showed higher rates of sustained virological response than Peg-IFN + RBV but reduced tolerability and adherence due to the high pill burden and the several pharmacokinetic interactions between HCV NS3/4A protease inhibitors and antiretroviral drugs. Then in 2013 a new wave of DAAs arrived, characterized by high efficacy, good tolerability, a low pill burden and shortened treatment duration. The second and third generation DAAs also comprised IFN-free regimens, which in small recent trials on HIV-positive patients have shown comforting preliminary results in terms of efficacy, tolerability and adherence.

Key words: Hepatitis C virus infection; Human immunodeficiency virus infection; Anti-hepatitis C virus treatment; Directly acting antivirals; HIV/HCV coinfection; Chronic hepatitis C

Core tip: The combination pegylated interferon alfa + ribavirin has been used infrequently in patients with Human immunodeficiency virus/hepatitis C virus (HIV/HCV) coinfection because of its limited efficacy in these

patients, the high prevalence of medical and psychiatric comorbidities and the high incidence of serious adverse reactions. The introduction of directly acting antivirals has radically changed the scenario of the HIV/HCV coinfection treatment shown comforting preliminary results in terms of efficacy, tolerability and adherence. This paper provides a quick and comprehensive implementation guide to the managment of HIV/HCV patients in a historical moment in which it is not yet clear what is the best treatment.

Coppola N, Martini S, Pisaturo M, Sagnelli C, Filippini P, Sagnelli E. Treatment of chronic hepatitis C in patients with HIV/HCV coinfection. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(1): 1-12 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i1/1.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i1.1

INTRODUCTION

The percentage of patients with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection who contemporaneously carry the hepatitis C virus (HCV) ranges from 10% to 50% worldwide, reflecting a different diffusion of HCV infection and a different impact of the environmental factors responsible for HCV transmission in each single country[1-12].

The introduction of highly active antiretroviral therapy (ART) has increased by at least 20 years the average life expectancy of HIV-infected individuals and, consequently, the majority of HIV patients with chronic hepatitis C are at a higher risk of progressing to the more severe forms of the disease. At present HCV infection is one of the most frequent causes of comorbidity and mortality in the HIV population, and liver-related mortality is now the second highest cause of death in HIV-positive patients[13-15]. HIV infection unfavorably influences the natural history of HCV infection by increasing the rate of acute hepatitis C that progresses to chronicity, thus favoring the development of liver cirrhosis, hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), liver decompensation and liver failure[13-20]. Therefore, optimized ART should be applied to reduce the unfavorable influence of HIV on HCV-related diseases. Also the HCV infection should be countered with adequate antiviral therapy.

The recent introduction of directly acting antivirals (DAAs) to treat chronic hepatitis C has enhanced the knowledge on the management and treatment of HIV/HCV coinfection.

ANTI-HCV TREATMENT FOR HIV-POSITIVE PATIENTS

The introduction of new, more effective and well-tolerated drugs for the treatment of patients with HIV infection has greatly improved the disease outcome of these patients[21]. In this context, however, the progression of HCV-related liver damage in HIV-positive patients, less evident in the pre-ART era because of the low average survival, has become a major life-threatening clinical condition[22]. Fewer advances were made in this period in the treatment of HCV[23], at that time based on the combination of pegylated interferon alfa (Peg-IFN) plus ribavirin (RBV), which was poorly tolerated and had a low rate of HCV eradication, especially in HIV-positive patients[24-26]. However, in 2011 the era of DAAs began and the HCV NS3/4A protease inhibitors (PIs) telaprevir (TPV) and boceprevir (BOC) were approved to treat HCV-genotype-1 infection, each one in combination with Peg-IFN + RBV[27-30]. These treatments showed higher rates of sustained virological response (SVR) than Peg-IFN + RBV[31-38] but reduced tolerability[39] and adherence due to the high pill burden. At the same time several pharmacokinetic interactions have been appeared between HCV NS3/4A protease inhibitors and antiretroviral drugs[40-43]. Finally in 2013 a new wave of DAAs arrived, characterized by high efficacy, good tolerability, a low pill burden and shortened treatment duration[44,45]. The second and third generation DAAs also comprised IFN-free regimens, which in small recent trials on HIV-positive patients have shown comforting preliminary results in terms of efficacy, tolerability and adherence[46,47]. Table 1 shows the SVR rate in therapy-naïve patients treated with the different combinations (Table 1). However, the new DAAs are still not available for HIV-positive patients in clinical practice and their high cost may be a handicap to their use in developing countries.

INTERFERON-BASED REGIMENS

Peg-IFN + RBV

The combination Peg-IFN + RBV, although considered the treatment of choice for chronic hepatitis C until 2011, has been used infrequently in patients with HIV/HCV coinfection because of its limited efficacy in these patients, the high prevalence of medical and psychiatric comorbidities and the high incidence of serious adverse reactions. In most studies on chronic hepatitis C monoinfected patients with HCV-genotype 1 or 4, an SVR of almost 50% was achieved. In the APRICOT[48] study, HIV/HCV coinfected patients were treated with Peg-IFN α-2a and a fixed dose of RBV (800 mg/d) for 48 wk and an SVR was obtained in nearly 40% of the cases, in 18% of those with HCV-RNA levels greater than 800000 copies/mL and in 61% of those with a lower HCV load. The current international guidelines suggest prolonging the 48-wk treatment to 72 wk, despite reduced tolerability, for patients with HCV-genotype 1 without a rapid virological response (RVR) (EACS)[49]. With the introduction of DAAs to treat chronic hepatitis C, Peg-IFN + RBV dual therapy should be considered obsolete at least for patients with HCV-genotype 1 or 4.

Peg-IFN + RBV + the first generation DAAs telaprevir or boceprevir

The addition of the first generation DAAs, TPV or BOC, to Peg-IFN + RBV strongly improved the efficacy of

Table 1 Sustained virological response rate in human immunodeficiency virus/hepatitis C virus coinfected patients naïve for anti-hepatitis C virus treatment

	Ref.	SVR rate in therapy-naive patients			
		Genotype 1	Genotype 2	Genotype 3	Genotype 4
Peg-IFN plus ribavirin	[85]	35.6% in 191 patients	72.4% in 152 patients		32.6% in 46 patients
Peg-IFN plus ribavirin + boceprevir	[32]	60.7% in 61 patients	-	-	-
Peg-IFN plus ribavirin + telaprevir	[51]	74% in 38 patients	-	-	-
Peg-IFN plus ribavirin + sofosbuvir	[44]		91% in 23 patients		
Peg-IFN plus ribavirin + simeprevir	[55]	79.2% in 52 patients	-	-	-
Peg-IFN plus ribavirin + faldaprevir	[59]	73.7% in 227 patients[1]	-	-	-
Sofosbuvir plus ribavirin	[60]	76% in 114 patients[2]	88% in 26 patients[3]	67% in 42 patients[3]	-
Sofosbuvir plus ribavirin	[62]	84% in 112 patients	90% in 19 patients	91% in 57 patients	84% in 31 patients
Sofosbuvir plus ledipasvir	[63]	100% in 13 patients	-	-	-
Paritaprevir-r/ombitasvir + dasabuvir + ribavirin	[65]	93.5% in 31 patients	-	-	-

[1]Therapy-naïve or relapser patients; [2]For 24 wk; [3]For 12 wk. SVR: Sustained virological response; Peg-IFN: Pegylated interferon alfa.

antiviral therapy in patients with HCV-genotype 1, both for the HCV-monoinfected and HIV/HCV coinfected, and the poor response to Peg-IFN + RBV in HCV/HIV coinfection was enhanced with the new combination therapy.

In patients with HIV/HCV coinfection, triple therapy including telaprevir 1125 mg every 12 h or 750 mg every 8 h is administered only for the first 12 wk, followed by a 36-wk Peg-IFN + RBV double therapy[50]. TPV pills should be taken with a fat meal to improve their absorption. In a randomized trial on HIV/HCV-genotype-1 coinfected patients naïve for anti-HCV treatment, the SVR rate was 74% for those treated with telaprevir-based triple therapy and 45% for the control group receiving Peg-IFN + RBV double therapy[51]. Adverse events commonly observed in TPV-based triple therapy included skin rash, pruritus, anemia, and ano-rectal discomfort. In addition, TPV may reduce the glomerular filtration rate and increase RBV concentrations by 55%, inducing in these cases severe anemia[39]. TPV cannot be administered with the ritonavir-boosted PIs used in HIV therapy due to the pharmacokinetic interactions. Thus, despite the enhanced efficacy of telaprevir-based triple therapy in eradicating HCV infection, the number of HIV/HCV patients eligible for this treatment is reduced due to its poor tolerability, interaction with ART and high pill burden.

Predictive factors of a favorable response to treatment, such as mild fibrosis, low HCV-RNA load, IL-28B CC genotype and Caucasian ethnicity should be assessed before starting telaprevir-based triple therapy.

Boceprevir is an NS3/4A protease inhibitor approved for treatment of genotype-1 chronic hepatitis C[52]. In these patients treatment with BOC + Peg-IFN + RBV begins after a 4-wk lead-in phase with Peg-IFN + RBV. BOC is stopped at week 36 and Peg-IFN + RBV continued until week 48. Cirrhotic patients or prior null responders should receive BOC + Peg-IFN + RBV until week 48. The SVR rates observed in therapy-naïve HIV + HCV co-infected patients receiving BOC + Peg-IFN + RBV or Peg-IFN + RBV in a phase II trial were 63% and 29%, respectively[32]. Adverse reactions included anemia, dysgeusia, nausea, and neutropenia. BOC cannot be administered with ritonavir-boosted PIs or non-nucleoside retro-transcriptase inhibitors because of the pharmacokinetic interactions[40]. Consequently, the use of the combination BOC + Peg-IFN + RBV for HIV/HCV coinfected patients is very limited.

Peg-IFN + RBV + a second wave DAA

In 2013, both sofosbuvir (SOF), a once-a-day oral DAA that inhibits the active site of the HCV NS5B polymerase with an anti-HCV pan-genotypic activity, and simeprevir (SMV), a once-a-day oral DAA that inhibits the HCV NS3/4A protease, were approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to be used in combination with Peg-IFN + RBV to treat patients coinfected with HIV/HCV genotype 1[44,45]. SOF was also approved to be used in combination with RBV to treat patients coinfected with HIV and HCV genotype 2 or 3[47]. SOF is particularly indicated for patients with HIV/HCV coinfection, since it is well tolerated and no pharmacokinetic interactions with the antiretroviral drugs have been documented[44].

In a small study from Porto Rico a combination of SOF plus Peg-IFN and RBV given to 23 patients with HIV/HCV coinfection (19 with HCV genotype 1) for 12 wk obtained HCV eradication in 91% of cases; no severe adverse event occurred and only 2 patients discontinued treatment, one due to anemia and one to altered mood[53].

SMV is a second generation HCV NS3/4A protease inhibitor for the treatment of patients with HCV-genotype-1 infection[54]. The combination of SMV plus Peg-IFN and RBV has been investigated in both in HCV-monoinfected[55-57] and HIV/HCV coinfected patients[58]. An overall 74% SVR rate was obtained in 106 patients coinfected with HIV and genotype-1 HCV treated with this triple therapy and a 79% SVR was achieved in the anti-HCV treatment-naïve patients. In this study, all patients received a 12-wk SMV + Peg-IFN + RBV treatment, followed by double Peg-IFN/RBV response-guided therapy for either 12 or 36 wk. Of note, 89% of naïve or prior relapser co-infected patients without cirrhosis met the inclusion criteria to receive response-guided therapy, which required that serum HCV RNA be undetectable at week 4. Fibrosis stage, HCV sub-genotype, IL28b genotype, and baseline CD4 count above or below 500 did not influence

the SVR rates. The impact of adverse events to SMV + Peg-IFN + RBV (rash, photosensitivity, pruritus, and nausea) was limited in the Phase Ⅱ/Ⅲ trials. However, phase Ⅲ studies, both on mono and coinfected patients, demonstrated that the addition of SMV to the combination Peg-IFN + RBV did not improve the response rate of the dual therapy in patients with HCV-genotype 1a with a baseline NS3 Q80K polymorphism. This polymorphism is detected in nearly one third of subjects infected with HCV-genotype 1a and in only 0.5% of those with HCV-genotype 1b. Screening at baseline for the presence of the NS3 Q80K polymorphism is recommended for patients with HCV-genotype 1a to exclude positive patients from treatment including SMV. Indeed, this polymorphism has a limited effect on SMV activity, but the resistance barrier of this drug appears to be lower in patients carrying the Q80K- variant, resulting in a more frequent emergence of additional mutations and in a higher rate of treatment failure. The United States FDA approval of SMV provides specific recommendations for interactions with commonly prescribed antiretroviral agents. SMV is also a component of several interferon-free combinations currently under study.

Faldaprevir (FDV) is a second generation oral, once-daily HCV NS3/4A protease inhibitor. In the START-Verso 4[59]multicenter study, an open-label randomized phase Ⅲ trial, HIV/HCV therapy-naïve or previous relapser patients with or without cirrhosis received either FDV 120 mg + Peg-IFN+RBV for 24 wk followed by Peg-IFN + RBV dual therapy for an additional 24 wk or FDV 240 mg + Peg-IFN + RBV for 12 wk followed by a 1:1re-randomization to either the same treatment for another 12 wk followed by a 24-wk Peg-IFN + RBV double therapy or to a 12-wk Peg-IFN+RBV double therapy. Due to drug to drug interactions, patients receiving efavirenz were placed in the 120 mg arm, and patients receiving darunavir/ritonavir or atazanavir/ritonavir were randomized to the 120 or 240 mg arms. Patients with an early treatment success stopped treatment at week 24, the others at week 48. Overall, 72% of patients achieved an SVR, the highest rates being observed in patients who had previously relapsed with Peg-IFN + RBV (83%) and in those with IL28b CC genotype (88%); HCV genotype, presence of cirrhosis and FDV dose and duration did not show any major impact on the SVR rate. Adverse events occurred in 7% of patients, neutropenia and bilirubin elevations being the most common grade 3 abnormalities; only 1% of these events were attributed to FDV. The research on this promising drug was stopped in 2014 for commercial reasons.

INTERFERON-FREE REGIMENS

Studies on HIV/HCV coinfected patients

IFN-free clinical trials on HIV/HCV coinfected patients are still in progress, but their preliminary data have shown that these treatments have a greater efficacy in eradicating HCV infection.

PHOTON-1 is the only study on IFN-free treatment of HIV/HCV coinfected patients published at present[60]. In this study, SOF + weight-based RBV were administered to 114 patients with HCV-genotype 1 naïve for anti-HCV treatment for 24 wk and to 68 therapy-naive patients with genotype 2 or 3 for 12 wk. The SVR rates were 76% in patients with HCV-genotype 1, 88% in those with genotype 2 and 67% in those with genotype 3.

In the phase Ⅱa COSMOS trial, the patients were randomized to SMV + SOF with or without RBV for 12 or 24 wk[61]. The preliminary data for patients in the 12-wk arm showed a 93% SVR rate in prior null-responders to Peg-IFN + RBV and 97% overall. Serious adverse events, anemia and bilirubin increase regarded only patients who received RBV.

In a recent study a combination of SOF plus RBV given for 12 wk to genotype-2 therapy-naive patients and for 24 wk to all other patients showed an 84% SVR in the 112 therapy-naïve genotype-1 patients, 90% in the 19 naïve genotype-2, 91% in the 57 naïve genotype-3, 84% in the 31 naïve genotype-4, 83% in the 6 therapy-experienced genotype-2 and 86% in the 49 experienced genotype-3 patients[62].

Ledipasvir (LDV) is an oral NS5A inhibitor administered once daily. In a small trial the combination LDV + SOF ± RBV was administered to HIV/HCV genotype-1 coinfected patients with no evidence of liver cirrhosis[63]. This regimen was well tolerated and the preliminary data showed a 100% SVR12 rate in 12 HCV-genotype-1 patients who were naïve for anti-HIV and anti-HCV treatment.

Daclatasvir (DCV) is an HCV NS5A replication complex inhibitor administered once daily. The safety and efficacy of the combination therapy with DCV + SMV ± RBV were evaluated in the LEAGUE-1 trial, a randomized open-label phase II study enrolling therapy-naïve and null-responder HIV/HCV patients with or without cirrhosis[64]. All patients with HCV-genotype 1b were given a 12-wk treatment with DCV + SMV ± RBV; at week 12 the patients were re-randomized to either an additional 12-wk treatment or to a 12-wk treatment-free follow up. The patients with HCV-genotype 1a received a 24-wk DCV + SMV + RBV treatment. In this study the SVR rate was 67% for patients with HCV genotype 1a and almost 82% for those with HCV genotype 1b.

Turquoise-I is a randomized, open-label study evaluating the safety and efficacy of a combination of paritaprevir/r, ombitasvir, dasabuvir and RBV in patients with HCV-genotype-1 chronic hepatitis and HIV infection[65]. The study is still ongoing, but the preliminary data show an SVR4 in 93.5% of 31 patients treated for 12 wk and in 96.9% of 30 patients treated for 24 wk; an SVR12 was obtained in 93.5% of 31 patients treated for 12 wk. Fatigue, insomnia and headache were the most common side effects, but no patient had a serious adverse event.

Studies on HIV/HCV patients started recently whose results are awaited

The efficacy of SOF + LDV is under evaluation in 100 patients with HIV/HCV-genotype-1 coinfection either untreated for HIV infection (CD4 > 500 cells/mm^3) or

with suppressed HIV-1 RNA replication with antiretroviral drugs. (ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT01878799). Still awaited are the results of the ALLY-2 study on the effect of the combination of SOF+ DCV given for 8 or 12 wk to HIV/HCV coinfected patients with HCV genotype 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6.

The C-WORTHY is a study recently started to evaluate the safety and efficacy of the combination of the second generation HCV NS3/4A protease inhibitor MK-5172 + the second generation HCV NS5A inhibitor MK-8742 ± RBV for patients with HCV-genotype 1, both HIV positive and negative[66,67]. This study design underscores the emerging recognition that HIV-infected patients may not differ from the monoinfected in terms of the effectiveness of oral IFN-free DAA regimens.

A few trials on the efficacy of the combination DCV + SOF for HIV/HCV coinfected patients have recently started and the results are still awaited[68].

Recent studies on the efficacy of IFN-free DAA regimens for HCV-monoinfected patients, possibly extendible to HIV/HCV coinfection in the near future

Asunaprevir (ASV), a twice-daily NS3/4A protease inhibitor, used in combination with IFN + RBV or in IFN-free regimens, has shown promising results with fewer adverse effects. In HCV-monoinfected patients ASV was studied in a randomized, open-label, 24-wk-treatment study[69] where all 101 patients enrolled received DCV (60 mg) once daily and ASV as follows: 38 with genotype 1b also received ASV (200 mg) twice (DUAL A1) or once daily (DUAL A2), 36 with genotype 1a and 5 with genotype 1b also received ASV twice (QUAD B1) or once daily (QUAD B2) plus Peg-IFN/RBV and 18 patients with genotype 1a and 4 with genotype 1b also received ASV twice daily plus RBV (TRIPLE B3). An SVR12 was obtained in 78% of patients in DUAL A1, 65% in DUAL A2, 95% in QUAD B1, and 95% in QUAD B2. Most patients in the TRIPLE B3 arm developed a virological breakthrough, but aminotransferase elevation grade 3 or 4 was infrequent.

The BMS-791325 (BMS), a twice-daily non-nucleoside NS5B polymerase inhibitor, was investigated in the AI443-014 trial where the efficacy of the oral combination of DCV + ASV + BMS was assessed in a large group of HCV-genotype-1 patients, including cirrhotics[70]. The patients were randomized to DCV/ASV/BMS with BMS dosed at 75 mg or 150 mg. In this combination DCV was given twice daily. The SVR rates were above 90% in both groups. Only 2 of the 166 patients enrolled discontinued treatment due to adverse events.

The SYNERGY trial studied different combinations of DAA in order to achieve high SVR rates with shortened treatment duration in patients with HCV monoinfection[71]. In this study, besides some well-known drugs, the Authors also used two new molecules, GS-9669, a once-daily non-nucleoside HCV NS5B inhibitor, and GS-9451, a once-daily NS3/4A protease inhibitor. The patients were randomized to one of three arms: (1) SOF + LDV for 12 wk; (2) SOF + LDV + GS-9669 for 6 wk; and (3) SOF/LDV/GS-9451 for 6 wk. Patients with cirrhosis were excluded from arms B and C. All patients, with the exception of one in arm B, achieved an SVR. No patient discontinued therapy due to an adverse event. Worthy of note is that most individuals investigated were difficult-to-treat patients because of their Afro-American ethnicity, old age, HCV-sub-genotype 1a, IL28b genotype CT/TT or advanced liver fibrosis.

A 12-wk combination of DCV+SOF ± RBV was investigated in HCV-monoinfected patients with genotype 1, 2, or 3 in the AI444040 study[72]. The study included both therapy-naïve patients and previous non-responders to TVP- or BOC-based triple therapy; in both groups 98% of the patients achieved an SVR.

The Turquoise-Ⅱ is a multicenter, randomized, open-label study evaluating the efficacy and safety of a 12-wk or 24-wk treatment with paritaprevir/r + ombitasvir + dasabuvir + RBV in patients with HCV-genotype-1 chronic hepatitis or compensated liver cirrhosis[73]. An SVR12 was observed in 91.8% of patients treated for 12 wk and in 95.9% of those treated for 24 wk.

ART MANAGEMENT IN HIV/HCV COINFECTED PATIENTS DURING TREATMENT WITH DIRECTLY ACTING ANTIVIRALS FOR HCV INFECTION

Despite the remarkable virological response obtained with oral DAAs, the treatment of chronic hepatitis C in HIV patients remains complex and presents multiple challenges. The drug to drug interaction and the high prevalence of severe side effects influence the choice of the ART, and priority should be given to the antiretroviral drugs with fewer side effects and lesser interaction with the DAAs.

The drug to drug interaction in HIV/HCV coinfection mostly regards the use of HCV NS3 protease inhibitors, while the HCV nucleoside and non-nucleoside NS5B polymerase inhibitors and NS5A replication complex inhibitors seem to have minimal effects on the serum concentration of the HIV drugs. Both the anti-HCV and anti-HIV protease inhibitors and NNRTIs are metabolized by the cytochrome p450 pathway and, consequently, multiple complex drug to drug interactions develop that require management in highly experienced clinical centers. In addition, the knowledge on the interaction between anti-HCV protease inhibitors and anti-HIV drugs is in continuous development and even skilled clinicians should consult the www.hep-druginteractions.com web site.

TPV, BOC and SMV interact with CYP3A as inhibitors and substrates, with potential interaction and increased concentrations of drugs metabolized through this pathway and with a reduced TPV or BOC serum concentration due to drug-induced enzymatic activity[40,74]. A recent study assessed the pharmacokinetic interactions between BOC and the ritonavir (RTV)-boosted protease inhibitors atazanavir (ATV), lopinavir (LPV) and darunavir (DRV)

Table 2 Anti-human immunodeficiency virus drugs contraindicated during anti-hepatitis C virus treatment

	Contraindicated anti-HIV drugs				
	NRTI	NNRTI	IP	INI	CCR5 antagonist
Alpha interferon	-	-	-	-	-
Ribavirin	Didanosine, stavudine, zidovudine	-	-	-	-
Boceprevir	Didanosine, stavudine, zidovudine	Efavirenz	Lopinavir/r, atazanavir/r, darunavir/r	EVG/cobi/TDF/FTC[1]	Maraviroc[3]
Telaprevir	Didanosine, stavudine, zidovudine	Efavirenz[2]	Lopinavir/r darunavir/r fosamprenavir/r	-	Maraviroc[3]
Sofosbuvir	Didanosine, stavudine, zidovudine	-	Tipranavir/r	No data	-
Simeprevir	Didanosine, stavudine, zidovudine	Efavirenz, delavirdine etravirine, nevirapine	All protease inhibitors with or without ritonavir booster	EVG/cobi/TDF/FTC	No data
Daclatasvir	Didanosine, stavudine, zidovudine	Efavirenz[4], nevirapine, etravirine	Lopinavir/r[1] darunavir/r[1] fosamprenavir/r[1] tipranavir/r	-	-
Ledipasvir	Didanosine, stavudine, zidovudine	Nevirapine[1], etravirine[1]	Lopinavir/r[1] fosamprenavir/r[1] tipranavir/r	EVG/cobi/TDF/FTC[1]	No data
Dasabuvir/ ombitasvir/ paritaprevir-r	Didanosine, stavudine, zidovudine	Efavirenz, rilpivirine nevirapine[1] etravirine[1]	lopinavir/r[1] fosamprenavir/r tipranavir/r[1]	EVG/cobi/TDF/FTC[1]	No data

[1]No data, do not co-administer; [2]Increase the dose of telaprevir to 1125 mg three times a day; [3]Maraviroc 150 mg twice a day; [4]Increase the dose of daclatasvir to 90 mg a day. HIV: Hepatitis C virus.

in a randomized open-label study on 39 healthy adults. The protease inhibitor BOC decreased the exposure of all protease inhibitors; ATV/ritonavir did not significantly affect BOC exposure, whereas BOC was reduced by 45% and 32% when co-administered with LPV/ritonavir and DRV/ritonavir, respectively[75].

In a recent study no significant drug interaction between BOC and raltegravir was found in healthy volunteers[76].

The role of ritonavir in the drug interactions between TPV and ATV was recently investigated. In an open-label, sequential study on HCV/HIV coinfected patients on an RTV-boosted ATV-based antiretroviral regimen (300/100 mg every 24 h) and triple therapy (telaprevir, 1125 mg every 12 h, Peg-IFN + RBV) for genotype-1 chronic hepatitis C, the pharmacokinetic profiles were acquired before and after switching from RTV-boosted to unboosted ATV (200 mg every 12 h). The Authors found RTV responsible for the adverse interactions occurring when TPV and RTV-boosted ATV were administered together since the co-administration of TPV and unboosted ATV resulted in increased exposure of both drugs[77].

The co-administration with efavirenz led to a 20% reduction in the area under curve of TPV, thus requiring an increase in the dosage of TPV[74,78,79]. An open-label crossover study on healthy volunteers evaluated the bioequivalence of BOC and etravirine, an HIV non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor, and a reciprocal interaction was demonstrated[80].

The study on the interaction between anti-HCV DAAs and antiretroviral drugs is at its real beginning and further investigation is needed to ensure the optimization of the contemporaneous administration of ART and anti-HCV therapy for HIV/HCV coinfected patients.

Choice of the best ART during treatment with DAAs

Precise knowledge of drug interactions and of the adverse events occurring during drug administration is indispensable in order to choose optimized ART and DAAs-based treatment for patients with HIV/HCV coinfection. Optimized ART should avoid possible interactions with protease inhibitors of HCV and improve drug tolerability and the patients' adherence. Table 2 shows a list of antiretroviral drugs incompatible with DAA administration. TPV can be safely administered in combination with RTV-boosted ATV, raltegravir, maraviroc, rilpivirine, etravirine or efavirenz (when administered with efavirenz, the TPV dosage should be 1125 mg every 8 h) and with tenofovir/emtricitabine or abacavir/lamivudine (www.hep-druginteractions.com). BOC can be safely administered in combination with raltegravir, rilpivirine or etravirine and with tenofovir/emtricitabine or abacavir/lamivudine. BOC can also be considered in combination with RTV-boosted ATV for patients with no previous HIV-treatment failure and no drug resistance[74,78,79,81]. BOC can be safely administered in combination with raltegravir, rilpivirine and with tenofovir/emtricitabine or abacavir/lamivudine.

Some new ART regimens including the integrase inhibitor raltegravir[82] or the entry inhibitor maraviroc[83] have been demonstrated to be safe and their use in HIV/HCV coinfection should be evaluated in clinical studies.

Concluding on this point, the management of HCV infection for HIV-positive patients is a complex issue. The physicians in care should carefully select the patients for the most suitable treatment and monitor them closely to evaluate the efficacy and tolerability of the drugs administered, their pharmacological interaction, the virus interaction and the patients' adherence.

CONCLUSION

Treatment of chronic hepatitis C for patients with HIV infection is essential to prevent the transition to liver

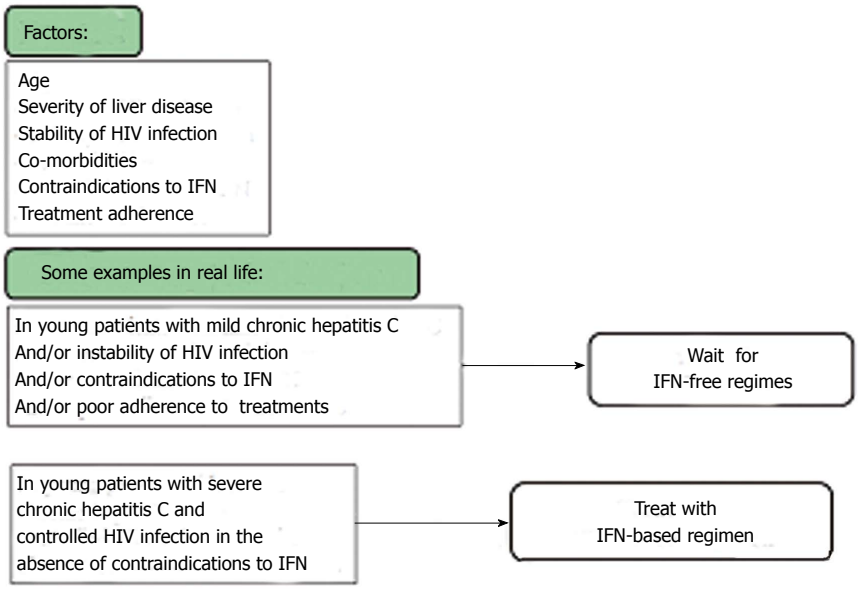


Figure 1 Factors influencing treatment decision for chronic hepatitis C in human immunodeficiency virus/hepatitis C virus-1 coinfection: treat or defer treatment. HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus; IFN: Interferon.

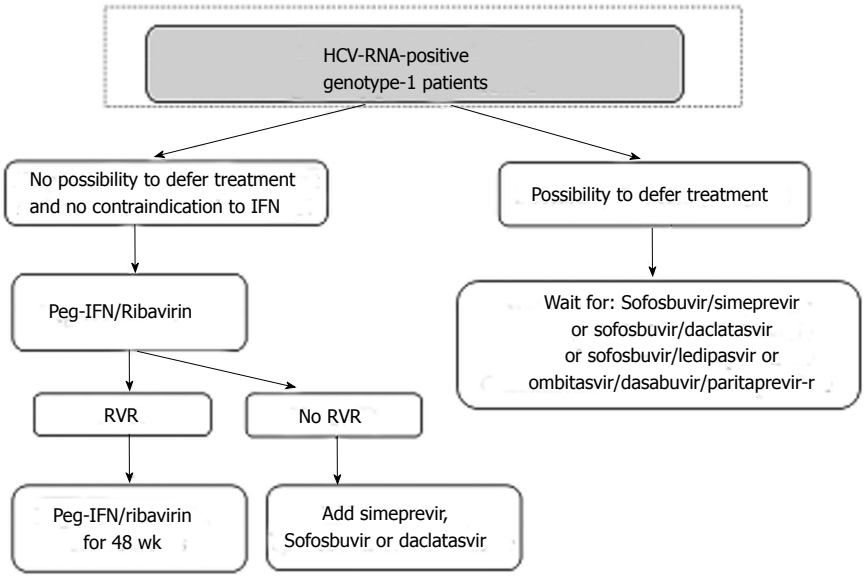


Figure 2 Treatment of chronic hepatitis C, hepatitis C virus-genotype 1 or 4, in patients with Human immunodeficiency virus/hepatitis C virus coinfection. RVR: Rapid virological response; IFN: Interferon. HCV: Hepatitis C virus.

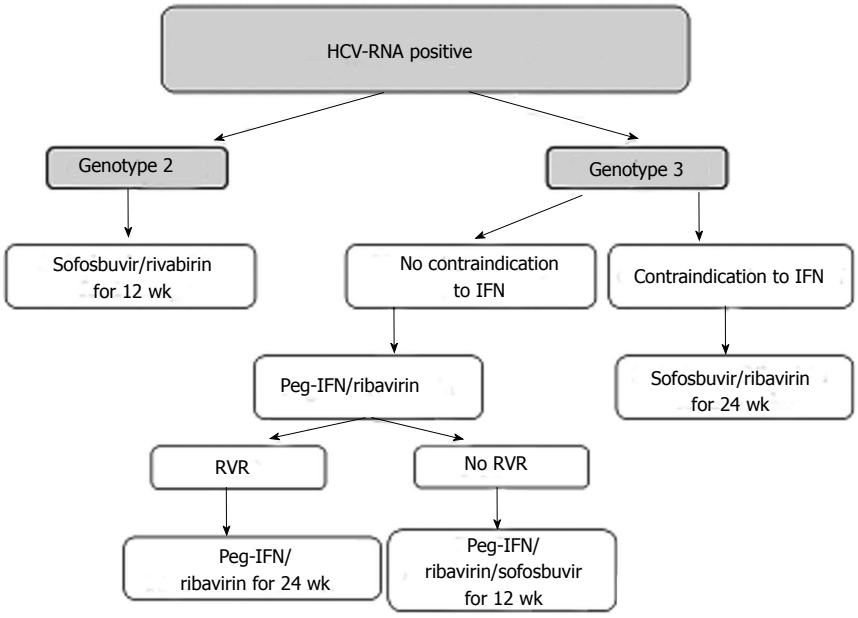


Figure 3 Treatment of chronic hepatitis C, HCV-genotype 2 or 3, in patients with human immunodeficiency virus/hepatitis C virus coinfection. RVR: Rapid virological response; IFN: Interferon.

cirrhosis, the development of HCC and liver failure. The poor tolerability of Peg-IFN + RBV double therapy and of triple therapy with Peg-IFN + RBV + boceprevir or telaprevir has been a serious obstacle to treating chronic hepatitis patients with HIV/HCV-genotype-1 coinfection. These treatment regimens compared to the new DAA-based therapies show lesser efficacy and tolerability because of the more frequent serious adverse events, a higher pill burden and longer period of treatment. Moreover, the first-generation PIs show more pharmacokinetic interactions with antiretroviral drugs than the second and third generation DAAs.

At present, treatment decisions range from waiting for all-oral second or third generation DAA regimens or treating with Peg-IFN/RBV double therapy + sofosbuvir, simeprevir or daclatasvir. A reliable guide in this difficult choice could be the entity of liver fibrosis, detected by liver biopsy or by a sensitive fibroscan assay, and other predictive factors of SVR such as the HCV viral load, the IL-28B genetic profile and the ethnic background (Figure 1). The patients' adherence, pharmacokinetic interactions between anti-HCV and antiretroviral drugs and sustainability in terms of cost-effectiveness are other important factors to be considered for a rational choice. The achievement of RVR during treatment remains the most sensitive predictor of SVR.

Currently, we deem it reasonable that HIV/HCV-genotype-1 therapy-naïve patients for whom treatment cannot be deferred should be treated with Peg-IFN + RBV dual therapy to establish whether they achieve an RVR during the first month of treatment (Figure 2). In positive cases double therapy should be administered for 12 mo, whereas for patients not achieving an RVR a second generation DAA (sofosbuvir, simeprevir, or daclatasvir) should be added, and this triple therapy administered for 3-6 mo[84] (Figure 2).

Once combinations of second/third generation DAAs are licensed for treatment of chronic hepatitis C in HIV/HCV coinfection, the patients with HCV genotype 1 for whom the treatment has been deferred and those with contraindications to IFN + RBV should be treated with an effective IFN-free DAA-based regimen (Figure 2). The same algorithm can be hypothesized for patients with HCV-genotype 4.

For patients with HIV/HCV genotype-2 coinfection, the treatment choice should be between a 24-wk low-cost Peg-IFN/RBV double therapy and a 12-wk high-cost treatment with sofosbuvir/ribavirin (Figure 3).

For patients with HCV-genotype 3, a 24-wk high-cost schedule with sofosbuvir/ribavirin or a 24-wk low-cost Peg-IFN/ribavirin double therapy seem reasonable (Figure 3).

The several ongoing trials will better define the role of the second and third generation DAAs in treating chronic hepatitis C in HIV/HCV coinfection, but in the meantime this review article may be of some help in making reasonable therapeutic choices.

REFERENCES

1 **Wandeler G**, Gsponer T, Bregenzer A, Günthard HF, Clerc O, Calmy A, Stöckle M, Bernasconi E, Furrer H, Rauch A. Hepatitis C virus infections in the Swiss HIV Cohort Study: a rapidly evolving epidemic. *Clin Infect Dis* 2012; **55**: 1408-1416 [PMID: 22893583 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cis694]

2 **van der Helm JJ**, Prins M, del Amo J, Bucher HC, Chêne G, Dorrucci M, Gill J, Hamouda O, Sannes M, Porter K, Geskus RB. The hepatitis C epidemic among HIV-positive MSM: incidence estimates from 1990 to 2007. *AIDS* 2011; **25**: 1083-1091 [PMID: 21537114 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3283471cce]

3 **Garten RJ**, Lai S, Zhang J, Liu W, Chen J, Vlahov D, Yu XF. Rapid transmission of hepatitis C virus among young injecting heroin users in Southern China. *Int J Epidemiol* 2004; **33**: 182-188 [PMID: 15075167 DOI: 10.1093/ije/dyh019]

4 **Quan VM**, Go VF, Nam le V, Bergenstrom A, Thuoc NP, Zenilman J, Latkin C, Celentano DD. Risks for HIV, HBV, and HCV infections among male injection drug users in northern Vietnam: a case-control study. *AIDS Care* 2009; **21**: 7-16 [PMID: 19085215 DOI: 10.1080/09540120802017610]

5 **Puoti M**, Manno D, Nasta P, Carosi G. The burden of HIV and hepatitis C virus coinfection. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS* 2007; **2**: 460-465 [PMID: 19372928 DOI: 10.1097/COH.0b013e3282f11906]

6 **Alter MJ**. Epidemiology of viral hepatitis and HIV co-infection. *J Hepatol* 2006; **44**: S6-S9 [PMID: 16352363 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2005.11.004]

7 **Danta M**, Brown D, Bhagani S, Pybus OG, Sabin CA, Nelson M, Fisher M, Johnson AM, Dusheiko GM. Recent epidemic of acute hepatitis C virus in HIV-positive men who have sex with men linked to high-risk sexual behaviours. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 983-991 [PMID: 17457092 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3281053a0c]

8 **Götz HM**, van Doornum G, Niesters HG, den Hollander JG, Thio HB, de Zwart O. A cluster of acute hepatitis C virus infection among men who have sex with men--results from contact tracing and public health implications. *AIDS* 2005; **19**: 969-974 [PMID: 15905679 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000171412.61360.f8]

9 **Rauch A**, Rickenbach M, Weber R, Hirschel B, Tarr PE, Bucher HC, Vernazza P, Bernasconi E, Zinkernagel AS, Evison J, Furrer H. Unsafe sex and increased incidence of hepatitis C virus infection among HIV-infected men who have sex with men: the Swiss HIV Cohort Study. *Clin Infect Dis* 2005; **41**: 395-402 [PMID: 16007539]

10 **Luetkemeyer A**, Hare CB, Stansell J, Tien PC, Charlesbois E, Lum P, Havlir D, Peters M. Clinical presentation and course of acute hepatitis C infection in HIV-infected patients. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2006; **41**: 31-36 [PMID: 16340470 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000191281.77954.27]

11 **Filippini P**, Coppola N, Scolastico C, Rossi G, Onofrio M, Sagnelli E, Piccinino F. Does HIV infection favor the sexual transmission of hepatitis C? *Sex Transm Dis* 2001; **28**: 725-729 [PMID: 11725228]

12 **Matthews PC**, Geretti AM, Goulder PJ, Klenerman P. Epidemiology and impact of HIV coinfection with hepatitis B and hepatitis C viruses in Sub-Saharan Africa. *J Clin Virol* 2014; **61**: 20-33 [PMID: 24973812 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2014.05.018]

13 **Weber R**, Sabin CA, Friis-Møller N, Reiss P, El-Sadr WM, Kirk O, Dabis F, Law MG, Pradier C, De Wit S, Akerlund B, Calvo G, Monforte Ad, Rickenbach M, Ledergerber B, Phillips AN, Lundgren JD. Liver-related deaths in persons infected with the human immunodeficiency virus: the D: A: D study. *Arch Intern Med* 2006; **166**: 1632-1641 [PMID: 16908797]

14 **Smith C**, Sabin CA, Lundgren JD, Thiebaut R, Weber R, Law M, Monforte Ad, Kirk O, Friis-Moller N, Phillips A, Reiss P, El Sadr W, Pradier C, Worm SW. Factors associated with specific causes of death amongst HIV-positive individuals in the D: A: D Study. *AIDS* 2010; **24**: 1537-1548 [PMID: 20453631 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32833a0918]

15 **Greub G**, Ledergerber B, Battegay M, Grob P, Perrin L, Furrer H, Burgisser P, Erb P, Boggian K, Piffaretti JC, Hirschel B, Janin P, Francioli P, Flepp M, Telenti A. Clinical progression, survival, and immune recovery during antiretroviral therapy in patients with HIV-1 and hepatitis C virus coinfection: the Swiss HIV Cohort Study. *Lancet* 2000; **356**: 1800-1805 [PMID: 11117912]

16 **Sagnelli C**, Uberti-Foppa C, Galli L, Pasquale G, Coppola N, Albarello L, Doglioni C, Lazzarin A, Sagnelli E. Anti-hepatitis C virus treatment may prevent the progression of liver fibrosis in non-responder human immunodeficiency virus/hepatitis C virus coinfected patients. *Braz J Infect Dis* 2014; **18**: 164-169 [PMID: 24650995 DOI: 10.1016/j.bjid.2013.06.005]

17 **Rockstroh JK**, Mocroft A, Soriano V, Tural C, Losso MH, Horban A, Kirk O, Phillips A, Ledergerber B, Lundgren J. Influence of hepatitis C virus infection on HIV-1 disease progression and response to highly active antiretroviral therapy. *J Infect Dis* 2005; **192**: 992-1002 [PMID: 16107951]

18 **Chen TY**, Ding EL, Seage Iii GR, Kim AY. Meta-analysis: increased mortality associated with hepatitis C in HIV-infected persons is unrelated to HIV disease progression. *Clin Infect Dis* 2009; **49**: 1605-1615 [PMID: 19842982 DOI: 10.1086/644771]

19 **Sagnelli C**, Uberti-Foppa C, Pasquale G, De Pascalis S, Coppola N, Albarello L, Doglioni C, Lazzarin A, Sagnelli E. Factors influencing liver fibrosis and necroinflammation in HIV/HCV coinfection and HCV monoinfection. *Infection* 2013; **41**: 959-967 [PMID: 23839212 DOI: 10.1007/s15010-013-0502-3]

20 **Sagnelli C**, Uberti-Foppa C, Galli L, Pasquale G, Coppola N, Albarello L, Masiello A, Doglioni C, Lazzarin A, Sagnelli E. Liver histology in HIV/hepatitis C-coinfected and HCV-monoinfected patients with persistently normal alanine aminotransferases. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2010; **54**: 107-108 [PMID: 20418725 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181cf4d8b]

21 **Kitahata MM**, Gange SJ, Abraham AG, Merriman B, Saag MS, Justice AC, Hogg RS, Deeks SG, Eron JJ, Brooks JT, Rourke SB, Gill MJ, Bosch RJ, Martin JN, Klein MB, Jacobson LP, Rodriguez B, Sterling TR, Kirk GD, Napravnik S, Rachlis AR, Calzavara LM, Horberg MA, Silverberg MJ, Gebo KA, Goedert JJ, Benson CA, Collier AC, Van Rompaey SE, Crane HM, McKaig RG, Lau B, Freeman AM, Moore RD. Effect of early versus deferred antiretroviral therapy for HIV on survival. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 1815-1826 [PMID: 19339714 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0807252]

22 **Sherman KE**, Rouster SD, Chung RT, Rajicic N. Hepatitis C Virus prevalence among patients infected with Human Immunodeficiency Virus: a cross-sectional analysis of the US adult AIDS Clinical Trials Group. *Clin Infect Dis* 2002; **34**: 831-837 [PMID: 11833007]

23 **Ghany MG**, Nelson DR, Strader DB, Thomas DL, Seeff LB. An update on treatment of genotype 1 chronic hepatitis C virus infection: 2011 practice guideline by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. *Hepatology* 2011; **54**: 1433-1444 [PMID: 21898493 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24641]

24 **AISF.** Practice guidelines for the treatment of hepatitis C: recommendations from an AISF/SIMIT/SIMAST Expert Opinion Meeting. *Dig Liver Dis* 2010; **42**: 81-91 [PMID: 19748329 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2009.08.001]

25 **Rodriguez-Torres M**, Slim J, Bhatti L, Sterling R, Sulkowski M, Hassanein T, Serrão R, Sola R, Bertasso A, Passe And S, Stancic S. Peginterferon alfa-2a plus ribavirin for HIV-HCV genotype 1 coinfected patients: a randomized international trial. *HIV Clin Trials* 2012; **13**: 142-152 [PMID: 22592094 DOI: 10.1310/hct1303-142]

26 **Mehta SH**, Lucas GM, Mirel LB, Torbenson M, Higgins Y, Moore RD, Thomas DL, Sulkowski MS. Limited effectiveness of antiviral treatment for hepatitis C in an urban HIV clinic. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 2361-2369 [PMID: 17117023]

27 **Poordad F**, McCone J, Bacon BR, Bruno S, Manns MP, Sulkowski MS, Jacobson IM, Reddy KR, Goodman ZD, Boparai N, DiNubile MJ, Sniukiene V, Brass CA, Albrecht JK, Bronowicki JP. Boceprevir for untreated chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 1195-1206 [PMID: 21449783 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1010494]

28 **Jacobson IM**, McHutchison JG, Dusheiko G, Di Bisceglie AM, Reddy KR, Bzowej NH, Marcellin P, Muir AJ, Ferenci P, Flisiak R, George J, Rizzetto M, Shouval D, Sola R, Terg RA, Yoshida EM, Adda N, Bengtsson L, Sankoh AJ, Kieffer TL, George S, Kauffman RS, Zeuzem S. Telaprevir for previously untreated chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 2405-2416 [PMID: 21696307]

29 **Zeuzem S**, Andreone P, Pol S, Lawitz E, Diago M, Roberts S, Focaccia R, Younossi Z, Foster GR, Horban A, Ferenci P, Nevens F, Müllhaupt B, Pockros P, Terg R, Shouval D, van Hoek B, Weiland O, Van Heeswijk R, De Meyer S, Luo D, Boogaerts G, Polo R, Picchio G, Beumont M. Telaprevir for retreatment of HCV infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 2417-2428 [PMID: 21696308 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1013086]

30 **Bacon BR**, Gordon SC, Lawitz E, Marcellin P, Vierling JM, Zeuzem S, Poordad F, Goodman ZD, Sings HL, Boparai N, Burroughs M, Brass CA, Albrecht JK, Esteban R. Boceprevir for previously treated chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 1207-1217 [PMID: 21449784 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1009482]

31 **Dieterich DT**, Soriano V, Sherman K, Girard P-M, Rockstroh J, Adiwijaya B, McCallister S, Adda N, Mahnke L, Sulkowski MS, on behalf of the Study 110 Team. Telaprevir in combination with pegylated interferon-a-2a RBV in HCV/HIV-co-infected patients: a 24-week treatment interim analysis. March 5-8-2012, [Abstract #46]. In: Conference on Retroviruses and Other Opportunistic Infections, Seattle,WA, 2012

32 **Coppola N**, Pisaturo M, Tonziello G, Sagnelli C, Sagnelli E, Angelillo IF. Efficacy of Pegylated interferon α-2a and α-2b in patients with genotype 1 chronic hepatitis C: a meta-analysis. *BMC Infect Dis* 2012; **12**: 357 [PMID: 23245594 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-12-357]

33 **Sulkowski MS**, Pol S, Cooper C, Fainboim H, Slim J, Rivero A, Laguno M, Thompson S, Wahl J, Greaves W. Boceprevir pegylated interferon ribavirin for the treatment of HCV/HIV-coinfected patients: end of treatment (week 48) interim results. March 5-8 2012, [Abstract #47]. In: Conference on Retroviruses and Other Opportunistic Infections, Seattle, WA, 2012

34 **Montes M**, NelsonM, Girard P, Sasadeusz J, Horban A, Grinsztejn B, et al. Telaprevir Combination Therapy in Treatment-naive and -experienced Patients Co-infected with Hepatitis C Virus and HIV: Week 12 Analysis of INSIGHT. 64th Annual Meeting of the American Association of the Study of Liver Diseases. Washington, DC, Nov 1-5, 2013

35 **Sagnelli E**, Pisaturo M, Martini S, Sagnelli C, Filippini P, Coppola N. Advances in the treatment of hepatitis B virus/hepatitis C virus coinfection. *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 2014; **15**: 1337-1349 [PMID: 24773464 DOI: 10.1517/14656566.2014.913571]

36 **Neukam K**, Munteanu D, Rivero A, Haberl A, Marquez M, Ingiliz P. Boceprevir/Telaprevir-Based Therapy in HIV-Infection: Interim Analysis of a Multicenter Cohort 21st Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections. Boston, MA, March 3-6, 2014

37 **Gori A**, Doroana M, Chernova O, Rockstroh J, Banhegyi D, Bergin C. Telaprevir Treatment of HIV/HCV G1 Patients With Severe Fibrosis: Efficacy Results To Week 16. 21th Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections. Boston, USA, March 2014

38 **Poizot-Martin I**, Bellissant E, Colson P, Renault A, Piroth L, Solas C. Boceprevir for Previously Treated HCV-HIV Coinfected Patients: The ANRS-HC27 BocepreVIH Trial. 21th Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic

Infections. Boston, USA, March 2014
39 **Cotte L**, Barrail-Tran A, Vincent C, ValantinM, Fournier I, Lacombe K. Telaprevir Increases Ribavirin Toxicity Through eGFR Decrease in HIV-HCV Coinfected Patients 21st Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections. Boston, MA, March 3-6, 2014
40 **Seden K**, Back D, Khoo S. New directly acting antivirals for hepatitis C: potential for interaction with antiretrovirals. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2010; **65**: 1079-1085 [PMID: 20335191 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkq086]
41 **Burger D**, Back D, Buggisch P, Buti M, Craxí A, Foster G, Klinker H, Larrey D, Nikitin I, Pol S, Puoti M, Romero-Gómez M, Wedemeyer H, Zeuzem S. Clinical management of drug-drug interactions in HCV therapy: challenges and solutions. *J Hepatol* 2013; **58**: 792-800 [PMID: 23137766 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.10.027]
42 **Wilby KJ**, Greanya ED, Ford JA, Yoshida EM, Partovi N. A review of drug interactions with boceprevir and telaprevir: implications for HIV and transplant patients. *Ann Hepatol* 2012; **11**: 179-185 [PMID: 22345334]
43 **Rhee E**, Feng H-P, Xuan F. Absence of a significant pharmacokinetic interaction between the hepatitis C virus protease inhibitor Boceprevir and HIV-1 NNRTI rilpivirine. [Abstract #537] In: Conference on Retroviruses and Other Opportunistic Infections. 2013
44 **Koff RS**. Review article: the efficacy and safety of sofosbuvir, a novel, oral nucleotide NS5B polymerase inhibitor, in the treatment of chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **39**: 478-487 [PMID: 24387618 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12601]
45 **Gentile I**, Borgia F, Buonomo AR, Castaldo G, Borgia G. A novel promising therapeutic option against hepatitis C virus: an oral nucleotide NS5B polymerase inhibitor sofosbuvir. *Curr Med Chem* 2013; **20**: 3733-3742 [PMID: 23848533]
46 **Lawitz E**, Mangia A, Wyles D, Rodriguez-Torres M, Hassanein T, Gordon SC, Schultz M, Davis MN, Kayali Z, Reddy KR, Jacobson IM, Kowdley KV, Nyberg L, Subramanian GM, Hyland RH, Arterburn S, Jiang D, McNally J, Brainard D, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Sheikh AM, Younossi Z, Gane EJ. Sofosbuvir for previously untreated chronic hepatitis C infection. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **368**: 1878-1887 [PMID: 23607594 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1214853]
47 **Jacobson IM**, Gordon SC, Kowdley KV, Yoshida EM, Rodriguez-Torres M, Sulkowski MS, Shiffman ML, Lawitz E, Everson G, Bennett M, Schiff E, Al-Assi MT, Subramanian GM, An D, Lin M, McNally J, Brainard D, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Patel K, Feld J, Pianko S, Nelson DR. Sofosbuvir for hepatitis C genotype 2 or 3 in patients without treatment options. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **368**: 1867-1877 [PMID: 23607593 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1214854]
48 **Torriani FJ**, Rodriguez-Torres M, Rockstroh JK, Lissen E, Gonzalez-García J, Lazzarin A, Carosi G, Sasadeusz J, Katlama C, Montaner J, Sette H, Passe S, De Pamphilis J, Duff F, Schrenk UM, Dieterich DT. Peginterferon Alfa-2a plus ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C virus infection in HIV-infected patients. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **351**: 438-450 [PMID: 15282351]
49 **Rockstroh JK**, Bhagani S, Benhamou Y, Bruno R, Mauss S, Peters L, Puoti M, Soriano V, Tural C. European AIDS Clinical Society (EACS) guidelines for the clinical management and treatment of chronic hepatitis B and C coinfection in HIV-infected adults. *HIV Med* 2008; **9**: 82-88 [PMID: 18257771 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1293.2007.00535.x]
50 **Buti M**, Agarwal K, Horsmans Y, Sievert W, Janczewska E, Zeuzem S, Nyberg L, Brown RS, Hézode C, Rizzetto M, Paraná R, De Meyer S, De Masi R, Luo D, Bertelsen K, Witek J. Telaprevir twice daily is noninferior to telaprevir every 8 hours for patients with chronic hepatitis C. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **146**: 744-753.e3 [PMID: 24316262 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.11.047]
51 **Sulkowski MS**, Sherman KE, Dieterich DT, Bsharat M, Mahnke L, Rockstroh JK, Gharakhanian S, McCallister S, Henshaw J, Girard PM, Adiwijaya B, Garg V, Rubin RA, Adda N, Soriano V. Combination therapy with telaprevir for chronic hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection in patients with HIV: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2013; **159**: 86-96 [PMID: 23685940 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-159-2-201307160-00654]
52 **Kwo PY**, Lawitz EJ, McCone J, Schiff ER, Vierling JM, Pound D, Davis MN, Galati JS, Gordon SC, Ravendhran N, Rossaro L, Anderson FH, Jacobson IM, Rubin R, Koury K, Pedicone LD, Brass CA, Chaudhri E, Albrecht JK. Efficacy of boceprevir, an NS3 protease inhibitor, in combination with peginterferon alfa-2b and ribavirin in treatment-naive patients with genotype 1 hepatitis C infection (SPRINT-1): an open-label, randomised, multicentre phase 2 trial. *Lancet* 2010; **376**: 705-716 [PMID: 20692693 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(10)60934-8]
53 **Rodriguez-Torres M.** Sofosbuvir and peginterferon alfa-2a/ribavirin for treatment-naïve genotype 1–4 HCV infected patients who are HIV coinfected with HIV. Paper presented at: ID Week 2013. San Francisco, CA, October 2–6, 2013
54 **Vaidya A**, Perry CM. Simeprevir: first global approval. *Drugs* 2013; **73**: 2093-2106 [PMID: 24293133 DOI: 10.1007/s40265-013-0153-9]
55 **Jacobson IM**, Dore GJ, Foster GR, Fried MW, Radu M, Rafalsky VV, Moroz L, Craxi A, Peeters M, Lenz O, Ouwerkerk-Mahadevan S, De La Rosa G, Kalmeijer R, Scott J, Sinha R, Beumont-Mauviel M. Simeprevir with pegylated interferon alfa 2a plus ribavirin in treatment-naive patients with chronic hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection (QUEST-1): a phase 3, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2014; **384**: 403-413 [PMID: 24907225 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)60494-3]
56 **Manns M**, Marcellin P, Poordad F, de Araujo ES, Buti M, Horsmans Y, Janczewska E, Villamil F, Scott J, Peeters M, Lenz O, Ouwerkerk-Mahadevan S, De La Rosa G, Kalmeijer R, Sinha R, Beumont-Mauviel M. Simeprevir with pegylated interferon alfa 2a or 2b plus ribavirin in treatment-naive patients with chronic hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection (QUEST-2): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 3 trial. *Lancet* 2014; **384**: 414-426 [PMID: 24907224 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)60538-9]
57 **Fried MW**, Buti M, Dore GJ, Flisiak R, Ferenci P, Jacobson I, Marcellin P, Manns M, Nikitin I, Poordad F, Sherman M, Zeuzem S, Scott J, Gilles L, Lenz O, Peeters M, Sekar V, De Smedt G, Beumont-Mauviel M. Once-daily simeprevir (TMC435) with pegylated interferon and ribavirin in treatment-naïve genotype 1 hepatitis C: the randomized PILLAR study. *Hepatology* 2013; **58**: 1918-1929 [PMID: 23907700 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26641]
58 **Dieterich D**, Rockstroh JK, Orkin C, Gutiérrez F, Klein MB, Reynes J, Shukla U, Jenkins A, Lenz O, Ouwerkerk-Mahadevan S, Peeters M, De La Rosa G, Tambuyzer L, Jessner W. Simeprevir (TMC435) with pegylated interferon/ribavirin in patients coinfected with HCV genotype 1 and HIV-1: a phase 3 study. *Clin Infect Dis* 2014; **59**: 1579-1587 [PMID: 25192745 DOI: 10.1093/cid/ciu675]
59 **Ferenci P**, Asselah T, Foster GR. Faldaprevir plus pegylated interferon alfa-2A and ribavirin in chronic HCV genotype-1 treatment-naive patients: final results from STARTVerso1, a randomised double blind placebo-controlled phase III trial. 48th Annual Meeting of the EASL, 2013: Abstract 1416
60 **Sulkowski MS**, Naggie S, Lalezari J, Fessel WJ, Mounzer K, Shuhart M, Luetkemeyer AF, Asmuth D, Gaggar A, Ni L, Svarovskaia E, Brainard DM, Symonds WT, Subramanian GM, McHutchison JG, Rodriguez-Torres M, Dieterich D. Sofosbuvir and ribavirin for hepatitis C in patients with HIV coinfection. *JAMA* 2014; **312**: 353-361 [PMID: 25038354 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2014.7734]
61 **Lawitz E**, Sulkowski MS, Ghalib R, Rodriguez-Torres

M, Younossi ZM, Corregidor A, DeJesus E, Pearlman B, Rabinovitz M, Gitlin N, Lim JK, Pockros PJ, Scott JD, Fevery B, Lambrecht T, Ouwerkerk-Mahadevan S, Callewaert K, Symonds WT, Picchio G, Lindsay KL, Beumont M, Jacobson IM. Simeprevir plus sofosbuvir, with or without ribavirin, to treat chronic infection with hepatitis C virus genotype 1 in non-responders to pegylated interferon and ribavirin and treatment-naive patients: the COSMOS randomised study. *Lancet* 2014; **384**: 1756-1765 [PMID: 25078309 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)61036-9]

62 **Molina JM**, Orkin C, Iser DM. All-oral therapy with sofosbuvir plus ribavirin for the treatment of HCV genotypes 1, 2, 3 and 4 infection in patients co-infected with HIV (PHOTON-2). AIDS 2014. 20th International AIDS Conference. Melbourne, July 20-25, 2014: Abstract MOAB0105LB

63 **Osinusi A,** Townsend K, Nelson A, Kohli A, Gross C, Polis MA, Pang PS, Symonds WT, Talwani R, Sajadi MM, Hogan J, Benator D, Subramanian M, Mchutchison J, Masur H, Kottilil S, for the NIAID ERADICATE Study Team. Use of sofosbuvir/ledipasvir fixed dose combination for treatment of HCV genotype-1 in patients coinfected with HIV. Program and abstracts of the 49th Annual Meeting of the European Association for the Study of the Liver. London, England, April 9-13, 2014: Abstract 14

64 **Zeuzem S**, Hezode C, Bronowicki JPP, (LEAGUE-1 Study Team). Daclatasvir in Combination With Simeprevir ± Ribavirin for Hepatitis C Virus Genotype 1 Infection. 21st Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections (CROI 2014). Boston, March 3-6, 2014: Abstract 28LB

65 **Sulkowski M,** Eron J, Wyles D. TURQUOISE-I: safety and efficacy of ABT-450/r/ombitasvir, dasabuvir, and ribavirin in patients co-infected with hepatitis C and HIV-1. Program and abstracts of the 20th International AIDS Conference. Melbourne, Australia, July 20-25, 2014: Abstract MOAB0104LB

66 **Hezode C**, Serfaty L, Vierling JM. Safety and efficacy of the all-oral regimen of MK-5172/MK-8742 ± ribavirin in treatment-naive, non-cirrhotic, patients with hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection: the C-WORTHY study. Program and abstracts of the 49th Annual Meeting of the European Association for the Study of the Liver. London, England, April 9-13, 2014: Abstract 10

67 **Lawitz E,** Hezode C, Gane E. Efficacy and safety of MK-5172 and MK-8742 ± ribavirin in hepatitis C genotype 1 infected patients with cirrhosis or previous null-response: the C-WORTHY study. Program and abstracts of the 49th Annual Meeting of the European Association for the Study of the Liver. London, England, April 9-13, 2014: Abstract O61

68 **Sulkowski MS**, Gardiner DF, Rodriguez-Torres M, Reddy KR, Hassanein T, Jacobson I, Lawitz E, Lok AS, Hinestrosa F, Thuluvath PJ, Schwartz H, Nelson DR, Everson GT, Eley T, Wind-Rotolo M, Huang SP, Gao M, Hernandez D, McPhee F, Sherman D, Hindes R, Symonds W, Pasquinelli C, Grasela DM. Daclatasvir plus sofosbuvir for previously treated or untreated chronic HCV infection. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 211-221 [PMID: 24428467 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1306218]

69 **Lok AS**, Gardiner DF, Hézode C, Lawitz EJ, Bourlière M, Everson GT, Marcellin P, Rodriguez-Torres M, Pol S, Serfaty L, Eley T, Huang SP, Li J, Wind-Rotolo M, Yu F, McPhee F, Grasela DM, Pasquinelli C. Randomized trial of daclatasvir and asunaprevir with or without PegIFN/RBV for hepatitis C virus genotype 1 null responders. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: 490-499 [PMID: 24444658 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.10.019]

70 **Everson GT**, Sims KD, Thuluvath PJ. Phase 2b study of the interferon-free and ribavirin-free combination of daclatasvir, asunaprevir, and BMS-791325 for 12 weeks in treatment-naive patients with chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. Program and abstracts of the 64th Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Washington, DC, November 1-5, 2013: Abstract LB-1

71 **Kohli A**, Sims Z, Marti M. Combination oral, ribavirin free, antiviral therapy to optimize treatment outcomes for hepatitis C GT-1 treatment naive patients: interim results from the NIAID SYNERGY Trial. Program and abstracts of the 64th Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases.Washington, DC, November 1-5, 2013: Abstract LB-8

72 **Sulkowski MS,** Gardiner DF, Rodriguez-Torres M, Reddy KR, Hassanein T, Jacobson I, Lawitz E, Lok AS, Hinestrosa F, Thuluvath PJ, Schwartz H, Nelson DR, Eley T, Wind-Rotolo M, Huang S-P, Gao M, McPhee F, Sherman D, Hindes R, Symonds W, Pasquinelli C, Grasela DM for the AI444040 Study Group. High rate of sustained virologic response with the all-oral combination of daclatasvir (NS5A inhibitor) plus sofosbuvir (nucleotide NS5B inhibitor), with or without ribavirin, in treatment-naive patients chronically infected with HCV genotype 1, 2, or 3. Program and abstracts of the 63rd Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Boston, Massachusetts, November 9-13, 2012: Abstract LB-2

73 **Poordad F**, Hezode C, Trinh R. TURQUOISE-II: SVR12 rates of 92-96% in 380 hepatitis C virus genotype 1-infected adults with compensated cirrhosis treated with ABT-450/R/ABT-267 and ABT-333 plus ribavirin (3D RBV). Program and abstracts of the 49th Annual Meeting of the European Association for the Study of the Liver. London, United Kingdom, April 9-13, 2014: Abstract O163

74 **Sulkowski MS**. Current management of hepatitis C virus infection in patients with HIV co-infection. *J Infect Dis* 2013; **207** Suppl 1: S26-S32 [PMID: 23390302 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jis764]

75 **Hulskotte EG**, Feng HP, Xuan F, van Zutven MG, Treitel MA, Hughes EA, O'Mara E, Youngberg SP, Wagner JA, Butterton JR. Pharmacokinetic interactions between the hepatitis C virus protease inhibitor boceprevir and ritonavir-boosted HIV-1 protease inhibitors atazanavir, darunavir, and lopinavir. *Clin Infect Dis* 2013; **56**: 718-726 [PMID: 23155151 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cis968]

76 **de Kanter CT**, Blonk MI, Colbers AP, Schouwenberg BJ, Burger DM. Lack of a clinically significant drug-drug interaction in healthy volunteers between the hepatitis C virus protease inhibitor boceprevir and the HIV integrase inhibitor raltegravir. *Clin Infect Dis* 2013; **56**: 300-306 [PMID: 23001704 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cis824]

77 **Gutierrez-Valencia A**, Ruiz-Valderas R, Torres-Cornejo A, Viciana P, Espinosa N, Castillo-Ferrando JR, Lopez-Cortes LF. Role of ritonavir in the drug interactions between telaprevir and ritonavir-boosted atazanavir. *Clin Infect Dis* 2014; **58**: 268-273 [PMID: 24145880 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cit693]

78 **van Heeswijk RP**, Beumont M, Kauffman RS, Garg V. Review of drug interactions with telaprevir and antiretrovirals. *Antivir Ther* 2013; **18**: 553-560 [PMID: 23344266 DOI: 10.3851/IMP2527]

79 **Karageorgopoulos DE**, El-Sherif O, Bhagani S, Khoo SH. Drug interactions between antiretrovirals and new or emerging direct-acting antivirals in HIV/hepatitis C virus coinfection. *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 2014; **27**: 36-45 [PMID: 24305043 DOI: 10.1097/QCO.0000000000000034]

80 **Hammond KP**, Wolfe P, Burton JR, Predhomme JA, Ellis CM, Ray ML, Bushman LR, Kiser JJ. Pharmacokinetic interaction between boceprevir and etravirine in HIV/HCV seronegative volunteers. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2013; **62**: 67-73 [PMID: 23075915 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e318275da93]

81 **Rockstroh JK**, Bhagani S. Managing HIV/hepatitis C co-infection in the era of direct acting antivirals. *BMC Med* 2013; **11**: 234 [PMID: 24228933 DOI: 10.1186/1741-7015-11-234]

82 **Macías J**, Neukam K, Portilla J, Iribarren JA, de Los Santos I, Rivero A, Márquez M, Delgado M, Téllez F, Merino D, Giner L, von Wichmann MA, Pineda JA. Liver tolerance of raltegravir-containing antiretroviral therapy in HIV-infected patients with chronic hepatitis C. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2011; **66**: 1346-1350

[PMID: 21398295 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkr083]
83 **Lazzarin A**, Than S, Valluri SR, Heera J, Mukwaya G. Safety profile of maraviroc in patients coinfected with HIV-1 and hepatitis B or C included in the maraviroc expanded access program. *HIV Clin Trials* 2012; **13**: 83-89 [PMID: 22510355 DOI: 10.1310/hct1302-83]
84 **Coppola N**, Pisaturo M, Sagnelli C, Sagnelli E, Angelillo IF. Peg-interferon plus ribavirin with or without boceprevir or telaprevir for HCV genotype 1: a meta-analysis on the role of response predictors. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e94542 [PMID: 24728219 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0094542]
85 **Martin-Carbonero L**, Nuñez M, Mariño A, Alcocer F, Bonet L, García-Samaniego J, López-Serrano P, Cordero M, Portu J, Soriano V. Undetectable hepatitis C virus RNA at week 4 as predictor of sustained virological response in HIV patients with chronic hepatitis C. *AIDS* 2008; **22**: 15-21 [PMID: 18090387]

P- Reviewer: Karatapanis S, Montalto G **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Wu HL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i1.13

World J Virol 2015 February 12; 4(1): 13-16
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

What psychiatric screening and monitoring might be needed with the new generation of hepatitis C treatments?

Paul J Rowan

Paul J Rowan, University of Texas Health Sciences Center at Houston School of Public Health, Houston, TX 77030, United States
Author contributions: Rowan PJ contributed to this paper.

Correspondence to: Paul J Rowan, PhD, MPH, University of Texas Health Sciences Center at Houston School of Public Health, 1200 Herman Pressler Drive, Houston, TX 77030, United States. paul.j.rowan@uth.tmc.edu
Telephone: +1-713-5009183
Fax: +1-713-5009171
Received: July 29, 2014
Peer-review started: July 29, 2014
First decision: November 3, 2014
Revised: November 11, 2014
Accepted: November 17, 2014
Article in press: November 19, 2014
Published online: February 12, 2015

Abstract

Psychiatric difficulties, including depression and alcohol use disorders, pose a challenge to treatment decision-making for chronic hepatitis C. This is especially made worse because interferon-alpha, as part of the standard of care, may exacerbate depressive symptoms and cause suicidal symptoms to appear. This requires a treatment setting that has the capacity to carry out psychiatric assessment and monitoring, and the capability to deliver patient education regarding these aspects of care. Psychiatric comorbidities create a challenging decision-making situation, especially since success rates for the most common hepatitis C genotype, genotype 1, hover around 40%. In recent years, new treatments have emerged. These significantly boost the likelihood of sustained viral response, including for genotype 1, and do not seem to have the side effects of interferon-alpha or ribavirin. Relevant data are reviewed to assess the degree that these new treatments might reduce the portion not eligible for treatment due to psychiatric comorbidities, and might reduce the emergence of psychiatric symptoms during treatment. Several organizations have recently released evidence-based treatment recommendation guidelines. It is apparent that interferon-alpha continues to be a standard of care, with the new drugs added to this recognized regimen in order to shorten treatment and to boost efficacy. Clinical settings must continue to assess appropriateness for treatment, including current or recent psychiatric comorbidities, and must continue to closely monitor patients for the emergence of psychiatric side effects. The newly developed hepatitis C treatments may affect the metabolism of several categories of psychiatric drugs, and so drug-drug interactions must also be considered and monitored. With many promising drugs under development, an all-pill regimen, with no interferon-alpha and no ribavirin, may emerge in the near future. This will greatly change the challenge of treatment decision-making, and should expand the portion of patients able to successfully complete a treatment regimen.

Key words: Depression; Therapy; Psychiatry; Review; Clinical

Core tip: Emerging hepatitis C treatment regimens, which include newer medications such as boceprevir, telaprevir, sofosbuvir, and simeprevir, hold promise to reduce the need for psychosocial screening and monitoring. Thus far, these medications do not seem to have the same psychiatric side effect profile as interferon-alpha.

Rowan PJ. What psychiatric screening and monitoring might be needed with the new generation of hepatitis C treatments? *World J Virol* 2015; 4(1): 13-16 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i1/13.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i1.13

Based upon genotype prevalence data and efficacy data, several recently emerging treatment guidelines continue to call for first-line treatment that includes interferon-alpha in combination with one or more of these newer medications. Therefore, the need for psychiatric screening, monitoring, and support continues.

As interferon-alpha became a recognized standard-of-care treatment for chronic hepatitis C, it became apparent that psychiatric side effects complicated treatment decision-making[1]. Specifically, current or recent depression has been considered a contra-indication for interferon-based regimens because the interferon-alpha can provoke or increase depressive symptoms in those with depression or a history of depression[2]. The effect is possibly attributable to interferon's effect on serotonin pathways, but is more likely due to interferon-alpha's function as one of the many inflammatory cytokines which are recognized to cause flu-like symptoms and also cause "sickness behavior," experienced as depression[3,4]. It is hypothesized that acute inflammatory responses occur in response to infection and occur when tissue repair is needed, and that the cytokine-induced activation of anhedonia and low motivation serves the organism by allowing the body to devote physiological efforts to rest and healing rather than other activities[5].

Part of the interferon-induced depression phenomenology may include suicidality, making suicidality a treatment consideration before beginning therapy, and requires close monitoring during therapy[4]. Current or recent alcohol use has been another contra-indication: efficacy may be reduced in those drinking during treatment[6] and because those with a drinking history are perceived as having high risk of relapse under the distress of treatment[7].

Additionally, interferon therapies require that social circumstances needed to be assessed. This includes an appraisal of the ability of the patient to adhere to a challenging regimen across six or more months, the possible need to take leave from employment when experiencing side effects, and the need for stable residence, since interferon-alpha requires refrigeration. The revelation of the boosted efficacy of joint interferon-alpha and ribavirin treatment, circa 1994, brought more treatment success, but did not change this psychiatric aspect of the treatment decision matrix. Neither did the advent of pegylated interferon-alpha, circa 1998. Treatment guidelines have recommended a psychosocial evaluation for interferon-alpha candidates, with a period such as six months before re-assessment[8].

Because of these difficulties of treatment, and because chronic hepatitis C is a slowly progressing disease, the clinical decision often is to delay treatment, and "watch-and-wait." In the pegylated-interferon/ribavirin era, outcomes evaluations have determined that approximately 70% of otherwise eligible patients do not begin interferon-alpha treatment due to contra-indications, with a significant portion of reasons being psychiatric[9,10].

Further complicating the clinical picture is the fact that ribavirin, while boosting rates of sustained viral response when combined with interferon-alpha, is a teratogen. Therefore, great care and attention must be used when considering hepatitis C treatment for women of child-bearing age, and when delivering this treatment. Before beginning therapy, a pregnancy test must be conducted, and the woman must decide whether she will be able to maintain two types of birth control throughout treatment, and to conduct repeat pregnancy tests, as well as maintaining adherence to the interferon-alpha/ribavirin regimen[11].

For quite some time, the standard of care has been to carefully consider the psychiatric profile of a potential interferon-alpha candidate. Patients with current or recent psychiatric difficulties can be referred for a course of psychiatric treatment, perhaps with re-assessment in six months, or be started on interferon-alpha therapy as long as supportive care and monitoring are in place. This requires a great deal of the hepatology or gastroenterology clinical setting: these settings must have the capacity or resources to carry out psychiatric evaluations, to provide psychiatric treatment or link a patient with psychiatric care, and to monitor psychiatric symptoms throughout therapy. Patients must also be willing to accept the treatment decision to not begin a potentially curative therapy, and follow other medical advice such as abstention from alcohol.

Across time, clinicians have become more confident in treating patients who had current or recent psychiatric difficulties. Risks have been addressed by using a multidisciplinary team[12-14], by conducting regular psychiatric monitoring[15], and by prophylactic antidepressant treatment[16]. Although clinicians have become competent at detecting and addressing these complicating factors, the inherent difficulties have driven the development of newer drugs that do not carry these challenges.

In recent years, many newer drugs have been developed. In the spring of 2011, boceprevir and telaprevir received Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval for hepatitis C virus (HCV) treatment. In winter 2013, sofosbuvir and simeprevir received FDA approval. Daclatasvir has been approved as of July 2014 by the European Medicines Agency, and an application for approval of ledipasvir was submitted to the FDA in February 2014.

These drugs, and others under investigation, may resolve the difficulties of interferon-alpha-based therapy. Generally, since they do not behave as inflammatory cytokines, they do not share the side effect of inducing flu-like symptoms, depression, or suicidality. The new drugs do not require refrigeration, and they are not known to have the teratogenic risk of ribavirin. FDA prescribing information for the recent drugs that are thus far FDA-approved, including sofosbuvir, simeprevir, telaprevir, and boceprevir, do not note psychiatric symptoms as recognized side effects. Since they can be used in

combination with interferon-alpha and with ribavirin, or both, the prescribing information for each of these new medications does note the risks associated with the entire regimen, as approved.

Will these newer therapies make the focus upon psychiatric status a thing of the past? Will the new therapies make the psychiatric assessments and psychiatric care, and lifestyle assessments, such as the assessment of residential stability or pregnancy monitoring, a thing of the past? Ideally, the new generation of medications would eliminate these challenging treatment considerations, and far fewer treatment candidates should be delayed by psychiatric concerns.

This question can be answered by reviewing recently updated treatment guidelines. In March 2014, a guideline was develop and released jointly by the American Association for the Study of Liver Disease and the Infectious Diseases Society of America[17]. In April 2014, guidelines were released by the World Health Organization[18] and the European Association for the Study of the Liver[11]. The Veterans Affairs (VA) National Hepatitis C Resource Center and Office of Public Health released a treatment consideration guide in March 2014, with an update in May 2014[19].

These guidelines incorporate recent efficacy evidence for hepatitis C treatment. At this point in time, recommended care has not yet reached the point of being able to decrease concerns over psychiatric or social factors.

The guidelines are very consistent in recommending that the majority of patients with chronic hepatitis C, who are candidates for treatment, should still be treated with a regimen that includes interferon-alpha. The innovation provided by the recently developed medications is that one or more of these should be added in order to boost the likelihood of achieving a sustained viral response. The most common hepatitis C genotype is type 1, at possibly 46% of cases worldwide[20]. Genotype 3 may account for approximately 30% of cases world-wide, genotype 2 may account for approximately 9% of cases, genotype 4 may account for 8%, and genotype 6 may account for 5% of cases.

The VA guideline is organized by genotype, then by other parameters such as whether the patient is treatment-naïve, and whether or not cirrhosis is present. This guideline suggests that treatment-naïve patients with genotype 1 and no notable contra-indications be treated with a regimen of pegylated interferon-alpha combined with ribavirin, and also combined with either sofosbuvir or simeprevir.

Thus, the greatest numbers of patients coming under consideration, those with genotype 1 who are treatment naïve, are still advised to receive a regimen that includes interferon-alpha and ribavirin, and so includes the treatment challenges inherent with those regimens. Treatment-naive patients with genotype 3 may be started on a regimen of ribavirin combined with sofosbuvir for 24 wk, with an alternative, 12-wk regimen including pegylated interferon along with the ribavirin and the sofosbuvir. Therefore, for genotype 3, the second-most prevalent genotype, the concern about pregnancy remains when following recommended care. It thus remains the case that, for a majority of treatment-naïve patients, a hepatitis C treatment setting must have the capacity to carry out psychosocial assessment, education, intervention, and monitoring, even though a new generation of much more benign drugs have been developed and are receiving FDA approval.

One problem affecting some of these new drugs is that they may affect the metabolism of psychiatric drugs[21]. Because of this possibility, the clinical care team will need to monitor for any drug-drug interactions for drugs that the patient may have already been prescribed, or may consider taking while being treated for hepatitis C. For example, FDA prescribing information notes that sofosbuvir may interact with anti-epileptic medications, such as carbamazepine and phenytoin, which are both used for the treatment of bipolar disorder and other psychiatric conditions. Telaprevir has a longer list of potential interactions with psychiatric drugs, including anti-epileptics, some antidepressants, and some benzodiazapenes. Kiser *et al*[21] note possible interactions with some of the atypical anti-psychotics, as well. Treatment may call for close monitoring, or the patient may want to discontinue a drug for the length of hepatitis C treatment, or the patient might switch to another drug, with no interaction risk, for the noted indication.

Drawing upon the same set of available efficacy data, the Veterans Affairs guidelines are very concordant with those from the other noted organizations. Overall, when considering the epidemiology of hepatitis C genotype and the first line of treatment suggested by recently developed guideline statements, interferon-alpha with ribavirin continues to be a mainstay of treatment, with the innovation being the boosted rates of sustained viral response when adding the newly approved drugs.

Since interferon-alpha and ribavirin will continue to be mainstays of care, treatment settings will continue to be required to accommodate the problem of psychiatric comorbidities in their clinical populations, and to be able to address treatment-based psychiatric side effects including depressive symptoms and suicidality. A strong emphasis on patient education continues to be required to convey information regarding regimen adherence, dosing, timing, drug-drug interactions, and the problem of the teratogenicity of ribavirin.

The AASLD/IDSA 2014 recommendations[17] note that "evaluation by a practitioner who is prepared to provide comprehensive management, including consideration of antiviral therapy, is recommended for all persons with current (active) HCV infection." They proceed further on this issue to note that such comprehensive care is not common for settings diagnosing and treating liver disease, but strategies, such as co-localization of care and collaborative care arrangements, can be developed to meet this recommended style of comprehensive care.

At the same time, evaluation of new drugs, including combinations of new drugs, is actively being pursued, largely with the goal of an all-pill regimen that avoids

interferon-alpha, and also avoids, where possible, ribavirin. With FDA approval for four new drugs thus far, and several more under evaluation, the pragmatics of providing effective, evidence-based treatment for chronic hepatitis C, with a much more benign patient experience, may be much easier in the near future. In many cases, a "watch-and-wait" approach remains appropriate, as the treatment options may soon increase dramatically. "Watch-and-wait" may be acceptable for much of the patient population as long as the decision-making process has been patient-centered[22].

REFERENCES

1 **Van Thiel DH**, Friedlander L, Molloy PJ, Fagiuoli S, Kania RJ, Caraceni P. Interferon-alpha can be used successfully in patients with hepatitis C virus-positive chronic hepatitis who have a psychiatric illness. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1995; **7**: 165-168 [PMID: 7712309]

2 **Kraus MR**, Schäfer A, Al-Taie O, Scheurlen M. Prophylactic SSRI during interferon alpha re-therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis C and a history of interferon-induced depression. *J Viral Hepat* 2005; **12**: 96-100 [PMID: 15655055 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2005.00554.x]

3 **Felger JC**, Alagbe O, Hu F, Mook D, Freeman AA, Sanchez MM, Kalin NH, Ratti E, Nemeroff CB, Miller AH. Effects of interferon-alpha on rhesus monkeys: a nonhuman primate model of cytokine-induced depression. *Biol Psychiatry* 2007; **62**: 1324-1333 [PMID: 17678633 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopsych.2007.05.026]

4 **Zdilar D**, Franco-Bronson K, Buchler N, Locala JA, Younossi ZM. Hepatitis C, interferon alfa, and depression. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 1207-1211 [PMID: 10827143 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2000.7880]

5 **Dantzer R**, Bluthé RM, Gheusi G, Cremona S, Layé S, Parnet P, Kelley KW. Molecular basis of sickness behavior. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1998; **856**: 132-138 [PMID: 9917873 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.1998.tb08321.x]

6 **Bhattacharya R**, Shuhart MC. Hepatitis C and alcohol: interactions, outcomes, and implications. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2003; **36**: 242-252 [PMID: 12590237]

7 **Crone C**, Gabriel GM. Comprehensive review of hepatitis C for psychiatrists: risks, screening, diagnosis, treatment, and interferon-based therapy complications. *J Psychiatr Pract* 2003; **9**: 93-110 [PMID: 15985921 DOI: 10.1097/00131746-200303000-00002]

8 **Centers for Disease Control Prevention**. Recommendations for prevention and control of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection and HCV-related chronic disease. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *MMWR Recomm Rep* 1998; **47**: 1-39 [PMID: 9790221]

9 **Falck-Ytter Y**, Kale H, Mullen KD, Sarbah SA, Sorescu L, McCullough AJ. Surprisingly small effect of antiviral treatment in patients with hepatitis C. *Ann Intern Med* 2002; **136**: 288-292 [PMID: 11848726 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-136-4-200202190-00008]

10 **Rowan PJ**, Tabasi S, Abdul-Latif M, Kunik ME, El-Serag HB. Psychosocial factors are the most common contraindications for antiviral therapy at initial evaluation in veterans with chronic hepatitis C. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2004; **38**: 530-534 [PMID: 15220690 DOI: 10.1097/01.mcg.0000123203.36471.70]

11 **European Association for the Study of the Liver.** EASL Recommendations on Treatment of Hepatitis C, April 2014 (accessed 2014 July 28). Available from: URL: http://www.easl.eu/_newsroom/latest-news/easl-recommendations-on-treatment-of-hepatitis-c-2014

12 **Evon DM**, Simpson K, Kixmiller S, Galanko J, Dougherty K, Golin C, Fried MW. A randomized controlled trial of an integrated care intervention to increase eligibility for chronic hepatitis C treatment. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **106**: 1777-1786 [PMID: 21769136 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2011.219]

13 **Ghany MG**, Strader DB, Thomas DL, Seeff LB. Diagnosis, management, and treatment of hepatitis C: an update. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 1335-1374 [PMID: 19330875 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22759]

14 **Sockalingam S**, Blank D, Banga CA, Mason K, Dodd Z, Powis J. A novel program for treating patients with trimorbidity: hepatitis C, serious mental illness, and active substance use. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **25**: 1377-1384 [PMID: 23680911 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e3283624a28]

15 **Schaefer M**, Capuron L, Friebe A, Diez-Quevedo C, Robaeys G, Neri S, Foster GR, Kautz A, Forton D, Pariante CM. Hepatitis C infection, antiviral treatment and mental health: a European expert consensus statement. *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 1379-1390 [PMID: 22878466 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.07.037]

16 **Rowan PJ**. Does prophylactic antidepressant treatment boost interferon-alpha treatment completion in HCV? *World J Virol* 2013; **2**: 139-145 [PMID: 24255885 DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v2.i4.139.]

17 **American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases and Infectious Diseases Society of America**. Recommendations for testing, managing, and treating hepatitis C (Accessed on 2014 July 28). Available from: URL: http://www.hcvguidelines.org/full-report-view 2014

18 **Guidelines Development Group**, World Health Organization. Guidelines for the screening, care, and treatment of persons with hepatitis C infection, April 2014 (Accessed on 2014 July 28). Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/hiv/pub/hepatitis/hepatitis-c-guidelines/en/

19 **Department of Veterans Affairs National Hepatitis C Resource Center Program and the Office of Public Health**. Chronic Hepatitis C Virus (HCV) Infection: Treatment Considerations (March 27, 2014; data last reviewed on March 6, 2014; revised May 13, 2014) (Accessed 2014 July 28). Available from: URL: http://www.hepatitis.va.gov/provider/guidelines/2014hcv/index.asp

20 **Messina JP**, Humphreys I, Flaxman A, Brown A, Cooke GS, Pybus OG, Barnes E. Global distribution and prevalence of hepatitis C virus genotypes. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 77-87 [PMID: 25069599 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27259]

21 **Kiser JJ**, Burton JR, Anderson PL, Everson GT. Review and management of drug interactions with boceprevir and telaprevir. *Hepatology* 2012; **55**: 1620-1628 [PMID: 22331658 DOI: 10.1002/hep.25653]

22 **Rowan PJ**, Dunn NJ, El-Serag HB, Kunik ME. Views of HCV Patients Delayed from Interferon Treatment for Psychiatric Reasons. *J Viral Hepat* 2007; **14**: 883-889 [PMID: 18070292 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2007.00884.x]

P- Reviewer: Kleinfelder J **S- Editor**: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Wu HL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i1.17

World J Virol 2015 February 12; 4(1): 17-24
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Mechanistic insights on immunosenescence and chronic immune activation in HIV-tuberculosis co-infection

Esaki M Shankar, Vijayakumar Velu, Adeeba Kamarulzaman, Marie Larsson

Esaki M Shankar, Tropical Infectious Disease Research and Education Center, Department of Medical Microbiology, Faculty of Medicine, University of Malaya, Lembah Pantai, Kuala Lumpur 50603, Malaysia
Vijayakumar Velu, Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Emory Vaccine Center, Yerkes National Primate Research Center, Atlanta, GA 30329, United States
Adeeba Kamarulzaman, Center of Excellence for Research in AIDS, University of Malaya, Lembah Pantai, Kuala Lumpur 50603, Malaysia
Marie Larsson, Division of Molecular Virology, Department of Clinical and Experimental Medicine, Linköping University, 58185 Linköping, Sweden
Author contributions: Shankar EM designed research; Shankar EM and Velu V performed research; Kamarulzaman A and Larsson M contributed new reagents or analytic tools; Shankar EM and Velu V analyzed data; Shankar EM and Velu V wrote the paper.
Supported by a grant from the University of Malaya Research Grant RG448-12HTM of the Health and Translational Medicine Research Cluster to Esaki M Shankar; and UM.C/625/1/HIR/MoHE/MED/014 to Adeeba Kamarulzaman by the High Impact Research (HIR); University of Malaya, SIDA SARC, VINNMER for Vinnova, Linköping University Hospital Research Fund, CALF and the Swedish Society of Medicine; and the Swedish International Development Cooperation Agency, the Swedish Physicians against AIDS Research Foundation, the Swedish Research Council, Marie Larsson, No. AI52731.

Correspondence to: Esaki M Shankar, Associate professor, Tropical Infectious Disease Research and Education Center, Department of Medical Microbiology, Faculty of Medicine, University of Malaya, Lembah Pantai, Kuala Lumpur 50603, Malaysia. shankarem@um.edu.my
Telephone: +60-3-79492755
Received: August 4, 2014
Peer-review started: August 6, 2014
First decision: September 16, 2014
Revised: September 30, 2014
Accepted: October 23, 2014
Article in press: October 27, 2014
Published online: February 12, 2015

Abstract

Immunosenescence is marked by accelerated degradation of host immune responses leading to the onset of opportunistic infections, where senescent T cells show remarkably higher ontogenic defects as compared to healthy T cells. The mechanistic association between T-cell immunosenescence and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease progression, and functional T-cell responses in HIV-tuberculosis (HIV-TB) co-infection remains to be elaborately discussed. Here, we discussed the association of immunosenescence and chronic immune activation in HIV-TB co-infection and reviewed the role played by mediators of immune deterioration in HIV-TB co-infection necessitating the importance of designing therapeutic strategies against HIV disease progression and pathogenesis.

Key words: Cluster of differentiation 38; Human immunodeficiency virus-tuberculosis co-infection; Immunosenescence

Core tip: The mechanistic aspects associated with increased expression of senescence and immune activation markers cluster of differentiation (CD) 38, CD69, CD57, human leukocyte antigen-DR, and the down-regulation of functional molecules, *viz.*, CD28, CD27, CD40L and CD127 on human immunodeficiency virus-specific T cells appear to be crucial in the immunopathogenesis of HIV-tuberculosis (HIV-TB) co-infection. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* appears to play a major role in accelerating HIV disease progression, by directly or indirectly facilitating factors associated

with immune senescence. Measures to ameliorate immunosenescence and immune activation appear to stem from identification of novel targets of downstream senescence signaling. Restoration of molecules associated with T-cell homeostasis, differentiation, cell survival and proliferation abilities of HIV-specific CD8$^+$ T cells is key to foster functional immune responses.

Shankar EM, Velu V, Kamarulzaman A, Larsson M. Mechanistic insights on immunosenescence and chronic immune activation in HIV-tuberculosis co-infection. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(1): 17-24 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i1/17.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i1.17

INTRODUCTION

The hallmark of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) disease is the destruction of cluster of differentiation (CD) 4$^+$ T cells eventually leading to the failure of functional attributes of the host immune system in containing viral establishment. The key target cells of HIV infection are CD4$^+$ T cells, dendritic cells (DCs), monocytes/macrophages, thymocytes and microglial cells[1,2]. HIV enters these cells *via* binding primarily but not limited to target receptors/coreceptors CD4, chemokine coreceptor 5 (CCR5) and CC-chemokine receptor 4 (CXCR4)[3-5]. The CCR5-tropic HIV (macrophage-tropic R5 strain) appears to predominate primarily during the onset of infection, and eventually the CXCR4 HIV (T cell-tropic X4 virus) takes over to establish a chronic phase leading to eventual destruction of CD4$^+$ T cells harnessed by the onset of opportunistic infections and neoplasms[6].

HIV reportedly evades the immune system through several ways to effect direct or indirect killing of infected and uninfected cells[7]. HIV facilitates CD4$^+$ T cell depletion primarily *via* accelerated destruction, chronic immune activation (CIA) and also by impairing the regeneration of new T cells from existing T-cell precursors[8]. Evidence suggests that monocytes and macrophages although may not be significantly affected in HIV-infected individuals, their role as reservoirs for HIV-1 provides homes for long-term survival following infection and can therefore be transmitted to bystander T cells[9,10]. DCs contribute even more to HIV-1 pathogenesis and studies have reported reduced levels of peripheral blood DCs in HIV-1 patients and changes in their phenotypic and functional properties[11]. Evidence also suggests that HIV could alter the expression of costimulatory molecules as well as chemokine receptors[11]. HIV-1 infected DC in contact with T cells fail to provide optimal feedback to T cells partly due to impaired release of IL-12, which in turn fail to provide optimal survival signals for DCs owing to impairment in the expression of CD40L on T cells. Furthermore, sustenance of T-cell proliferation is also impaired due partly to decreased secretion of IL-2 by activated T cells[12,13].

IMMUNOSENSESCENCE AND CHRONIC IMMUNE ACTIVATION - KEY CULPRITS OF HIV DISEASE PROGRESSION

Immunosenescence is a common biological phenomenon occurring in elderly individuals, and represents gradual deterioration of the immune system leading to attenuated responses to infections and vaccinations[14]. Roy Walford was the first to use the term "immunosenescence" in 1969. He believed that normal ageing in humans and animals is related to deficient immune functions[15]. Like any other cells in the body, immune cells undergo senescence. Immune senescence is characterized by changes in T-cell subsets, molecular alterations and often involves atrophy of lymphoid organs, eventually culminating in the decline of T- and B-cell functions[16]. Recent studies have shown that immunosenescence can occur involving both the adaptive and innate arms of the immune systems[17]. However, the major immune cells severely affected by immunosenescence are the T cells, which ultimately result in compromised responses to antigens and increased rates of differentiation of naïve T cells to terminally-differentiated T cells[18,19].

Immunosenescence is marked by accelerated degradation of immune system with increased turn-over of senescent T cell phenotypes showing remarkable ontogenic defects[20]. The cells possess reduced life-span with shorter telomere lengths, reduced proliferation abilities, dysfunctional cytokine-secreting abilities, deficient anti-viral responses (exhausted effector T cells), and suppression of T-cell responses due to expansion of suppressor T cells and up-regulation of multiple negative immune receptors[21-25]. Currently, there is increasing evidence of the expansion of senescent T cells expressing surface markers such as CD28, CD27, CD57 and CD127, especially in HIV and cytomegalovirus (CMV) infections[26-30]. This suggests that persistent viral infections (PVIs) can induce the expansion of senescent T cells *via* a mechanism called "replication senescence" or "Hayflick phenomenon", also defined as the decrease in the ability of a cell to proliferate, with significant mark of terminal differentiation[31,32].

Interestingly, immunosenescence also appears to occur in younger individuals with underlying malignancies and autoimmune conditions. An overwhelming body of evidence shows that persistent microbial infections with highly sustained levels of chronic antigenic stimulation, especially with HIV and CMV, could lead to functional impairment of Ag-specific T cells including proliferative abilities[33]. Furthermore, premature senescence of CD4$^+$ and CD8$^+$ T cells is well-characterized in chronic HIV infection with evidence of up-regulated surface markers and functions similar to that seen in elderly HIV-uninfected individuals[34,35]. Chronic HIV-infected patients have also shared some similarities in T-cell dysfunction with that of 'healthy' aging elderly[36,37]. Interestingly, the persistence of immune activation is exceptionally notable in chronic HIV disease both in mono-infected and co-infected with

other infectious agents such as HCV, HBV and MTB, despite that highly-active antiretroviral therapy suppressed viral replication in these subjects[38-40]. This phenomenon appears to be attributed to the up-regulation of immune activation markers namely ki-67, CD38, human leukocyte antigen - DR (HLA-DR), and CD69 on HIV-specific $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells[41,42]. Of these, CD38 expression has been reported to serve as a reliable marker of disease progression and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)-associated mortality[43].

Markers of CIA apart from T cells, are also expressed in a plethora of other immune cells such as monocytes, DCs, and natural killer (NK) cells[44]. Elevated immune activation of T cell appears to be one of the potent predictors of HIV disease progression[45,46] as highly sustained immune activation may contribute to rapid disease progression by impairing the ability of the immune system to respond to antigens[47], suggesting that CIA could be a key player in HIV pathogenesis and indirectly predicts progression to non-AIDS related morbidity and mortality[34]. Accumulating line of evidence also suggests that increased expression of CD57 and reduced levels of CD127 in patients with CIA highly correlated with T-cell dysfunction and senescence[26,27,48,49] supporting the notion of potential association between CIA and immunosenescence, especially in T cells.

IMMUNOSENESCENCE AND HIV-TB CO-INFECTION

Current investigations in human HIV/TB co-infection have provided several fundamental principles to understand how these distinct pathogens additively interact to accelerate the rates of disease progression. Although the precise mechanism of co-pathogenesis still remains elusive, it has widely been shown that both TB and HIV exert substantial influence on the host immune system. Hence, investigations underpinning the influence of TB in HIV/TB co-infection, and the importance of T-cell responses to elucidate the mechanisms underlying the failure of the immune system resulting from the dreadful interaction between HIV and TB are urgently required.

While it is increasingly becoming clear that persistent HIV disease facilitates the onset of CIA and consequently to premature senescence[20,24,28,45,47,50], existing hypotheses suggest that MTB exacerbates HIV disease by enhancing viral transmission and entry into immune cell by causing alternations in signal transduction, cytokine modulation; overcoming anti-viral responses with overwhelming HIV promoting responses; and facilitating HIV amplification by rendering the formation of granuloma[51-54]. The up-regulation of immunosenescence markers on T cells appears to accelerate the depletion of functional T cells, hastening a shift to terminally-differentiated T cells with altered immune functions[55], and hence we speculate that this potentially might facilitate the onset of AIDS, and disseminated and extra-pulmonary TB infections. Based on this mechanistic viewpoint it is also possible to correlate immunosenescence with CIA in HIV-TB co-infection.

CD38 AND HLA-DR - IMMUNE ACTIVATION MARKERS IN HIV-TB CO-INFECTION

CD38 and HLA-DR have been widely used to deduce the activation status of various immune cells, apart from other markers such as CD27, CD28, Ki-67 and CD69[41,42]. CD38 is a glycoprotein receptor found on the surface of T cells, B cells and NK cells with key roles in signal transduction and calcium mobilization associated with their activation[56]. On the other hand, HLA-DR is an major histocompatibility complex class II molecule that presents antigens to APCs and acts as a marker of T-cell stimulation and activation[56-58]. Numerous literatures have established that immune activation is a direct measure of HIV disease progression[45,59-61], which has previously been shown with CD38 expression on $CD8^+$ T cells[43,46,62]. Multiple studies have also shown that concomitant with HCV, HBV, and MTB can directly impact HIV disease progression with excessive T-cell activation in the peripheral blood[40,63-65]. Increased expression of CD38 on both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells of HIV-TB co-infected subjects has been described relative to HIV mono-infection[63,66,67]. This was also consistent with existing evidences that explain the association of HIV/TB co-infection with sustained levels of peripheral activation in immune compartment following pathogenic persistence[67-69]. Indeed, TB infection fosters immune activation as evident from up-regulated CD38 expression on T-cell subsets as compared to uninfected subjects[66,70]. Besides this, CD38 expressions in both the $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cell subsets have been inversely correlated with $CD8^+$ T-cell counts and HIV plasma viral load, and that enhanced CD38 expression could lead to rapid HIV disease progression[66,70]. The mechanism whereby MTB appears to attenuate the expression of HLA-DR, particularly on innate cells such as macrophages and DCs, is *via* the synthesis of bacterial proteins (such as 19kD lipoprotein and lipoprotein rG), which subsequently cause impaired antigen presentation and processing, potentially affecting the downstream signaling for HLA-DR expression on T cells[71-74]. In addition, MTB can evade phagocytosis by macrophages and eventually delay the onset of adaptive immune responses[75,76]. Active MTB infection can suppress the expression of HLA-DR *via* innate receptors (*i.e.*, TLR2), gene repression (*i.e.*, histone deacetylation), and cytokine-mediated inhibition (*i.e.*, IFN-γ) in infected individuals.

HOW DOES HIV-TB CO-INFECTION ENGINEER THE DIFFERENTIATION OF SENESCENT PHENOTYPES?

Cellular differentiation is the process by which a less specialized cell becomes a more specific phenotype with

unique functions. Upon antigenic stimulation, naïve T cells are activated and undergo differentiation into various subsets that possess distinct functionalities. CCR7 and CD45RA are two markers of T-cell differentiation but many others do exist, with two intriguing co-stimulatory molecules, CD27 and CD28[16]. Others have proposed a model of differentiation using co-expression of CD27 and CD28 to subdivide $CD8^+$ T cells into three distinct subsets based on their proliferation history, *viz*., early ($CD28^+CD27^+$), intermediate (CD28-$CD27^+$), and late ($CD28^-CD27^-$) T-cell subsets[77]. Subsequent research also showed that intermediate-differentiated $CD4^+$ T-cell subsets lose CD27 prior to CD28 ($CD28^+CD27^-$)[36,78]. CD27 and CD28 has also been reported to indicate the stage of T-cell activation and proliferation[79,80]. Lowered expression of CD28 indicates immunosenescence, marked by shortened telomeres and diminished replicative abilities[81], whereas CD27 has been recently characterized as a modulator of T-cell functions, and has been suggested as a better correlate of proliferative potentials[55]. Late-differentiated subsets have been associated with strong cytotoxic potentials, and gradual up-regulation of CD57 expression suggesting a closer relationship between senescence and differentiation[77]. It has also been established that persistent infections might lead to loss of CD27 and CD28, which reflects that more proliferation cycles have taken place in response to pathogens, eventually leading to increased T-cell activation and advanced stages of differentiation[82,83]. Hence, HIV-TB co-infection appears to have a synergistic effect in down-regulating CD27 and CD28 in accelerated rate as in HIV mono-infection.

Research also shows that persistent HIV infection impacts the differentiation of $CD8^+$ T-cell subsets resulting in the over-presentation of intermediate-differentiation stage[84,85]. This could largely be due to a block in maturation of $CD8^+$ T cells engineered by HIV to maintain chronicity leading to ineffective cytokine and cytotoxic responses following antigenic stimulation[85-87]. Hence it is speculated that MTB may be involved in accelerating T-cell differentiation despite the blockade of maturation exerted by HIV, leading to biased distribution of advanced stage of differentiation.

ROLE OF CD57 AND CD127 IN IMMUNE CELLULAR SENESCENCE

CD57 is a marker of senescence that has been associated with *in vitro* replicative senescence, or proliferation incompetence in both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells of healthy elders as well as PVIs[48,88,89]. Extensive investigations have also been carried to decipher the functional role of CD57 in apoptosis, activation-induced cell death, senescence and overwhelming cytokine and cytolysin responses. Outside HIV infection, CD57 has also been associated with various diseases and cancers[88]. Both HIV and MTB alone have been shown to facilitate the expansion of $CD57^+CD8^+$ T cells with wide range of functionality changes and contributing to the immunpathogenesis of each disease progression[48,90]. Furthermore, expansion of $CD57^+CD8^+$ T cells upon stimulation by MTB have more extensive cytokine and cytolytic potential with secretion of TNF-α and IL-6[53], and this abnormality of modulation may eventually promote HIV manifestation in co-infected individuals.

Based on our understanding, immunosenescence is best characterized by T cells showing increased CD57 and decreased CD28 expressions, also known as "late-differentiated" or senescent cells, despite several studies have proposed that co-expression of CD57 and CD27 may be a better correlate compared to CD28 as an indicator of replicative senescence[55,87]. It is also evident that loss of CD27 and CD28 with concurrent up-regulation of CD57 descriptively represents increase of replicative inability when T cells differentiate further[24,91]. Co-infection appears to foster the expansion of late "senescent" $CD8^+$ T cells ($CD57^+$ CD28/$CD27^-$) compared to early "senescent" $CD8^+$ T cells ($CD57^-$CD28/$CD27^+$), whereas HIV mono-infection has over-presentation of intermediate "senescent" $CD8^+$ T cells ($CD57^-CD28^-/CD27^-$). Hence, given that late "senescent" $CD8^+$ T cell is associated with decreased telomerase activity with the shortest telomere length, and a reduction in activation-induced activation[92], there appears to be more turnover of late-differentiated $CD8^+$ T cells in co-infected individuals with expanded expression of CD57, which suggests that more T cells have reached the stage of true senescence[93].

CD127 has been indicated in activation, homeostasis, differentiation, and cell survival of different T cell populations[94,95]. Decrease of CD127 expression has been associated with HIV disease progression[49,96]. The importance of maintenance CD127 for T-cell survival, especially during chronic HIV infection has also been suggested[27]. The down-regulation of CD127 may ensue due to several mechanisms, one involving HIV infection where there is a dysfunctional cytokine response when excessive IL-7 may cause an inhibitory effect on CD127 expression; while the other may be due to imbalance of IL-7 levels in the peripheral circulation[97,98].

CONCLUSION

Despite the disparity in pathogenesis and natural history HIV-TB disease, current literature suggest that both the pathogens harness a higher quantum of symbiotic impact on each other leading to accelerated rates of deterioration of host's immune responses. Existing understanding of pathogen interaction based on immunology research has contributed to genesis of several novel hypotheses to precisely address how contemporaneous manifestations of HIV aggravate TB disease progression and vice versa[51]. However, these evidences have not been conclusively successful in deciphering the mechanism underlying the role of MTB and HIV in accelerating immune deterioration. A better understanding of immunosenescence, and the development of strategies aimed to rejuvenate T cells, especially in PVIs will direct to improved quality of life of infected individuals. In addition, extension of knowledge

on immunosenescence to precisely identify therapeutic targets and surrogate biomarkers to validate senescence phenomena as clinical endpoints may be key to better healthcare requirements.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors are grateful to all the participants, clinical, paraclinical and laboratory staff of University of Malaya Medical Center for assistance with patient recruitment, specimen collection and cooperation.

REFERENCES

1 **Fanales-Belasio E**, Raimondo M, Suligoi B, Buttò S. HIV virology and pathogenetic mechanisms of infection: a brief overview. *Ann Ist Super Sanita* 2010; **46**: 5-14 [PMID: 20348614 DOI: 10.4415/Ann_10_01_02]

2 **Gomez C**, Hope TJ. The ins and outs of HIV replication. *Cell Microbiol* 2005; **7**: 621-626 [PMID: 15839891 DOI: 10.1111/j.1462-5822.2005.00516.x]

3 **Zaitseva M**, Blauvelt A, Lee S, Lapham CK, Klaus-Kovtun V, Mostowski H, Manischewitz J, Golding H. Expression and function of CCR5 and CXCR4 on human Langerhans cells and macrophages: implications for HIV primary infection. *Nat Med* 1997; **3**: 1369-1375 [PMID: 9396607 DOI: 10.1038/nm1297-1369]

4 **Ruiz ME**, Cicala C, Arthos J, Kinter A, Catanzaro AT, Adelsberger J, Holmes KL, Cohen OJ, Fauci AS. Peripheral blood-derived CD34+ progenitor cells: CXC chemokine receptor 4 and CC chemokine receptor 5 expression and infection by HIV. *J Immunol* 1998; **161**: 4169-4176 [PMID: 9780190]

5 **Rubbert A**, Combadiere C, Ostrowski M, Arthos J, Dybul M, Machado E, Cohn MA, Hoxie JA, Murphy PM, Fauci AS, Weissman D. Dendritic cells express multiple chemokine receptors used as coreceptors for HIV entry. *J Immunol* 1998; **160**: 3933-3941 [PMID: 9558100]

6 **van't Wout AB**, Kootstra NA, Mulder-Kampinga GA, Albrecht-van Lent N, Scherpbier HJ, Veenstra J, Boer K, Coutinho RA, Miedema F, Schuitemaker H. Macrophage-tropic variants initiate human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection after sexual, parenteral, and vertical transmission. *J Clin Invest* 1994; **94**: 2060-2067 [PMID: 7962552 DOI: 10.1172/JCI117560]

7 **Conti L**, Fantuzzi L, Del Cornò M, Belardelli F, Gessani S. Immunomodulatory effects of the HIV-1 gp120 protein on antigen presenting cells: implications for AIDS pathogenesis. *Immunobiology* 2004; **209**: 99-115 [PMID: 15481145 DOI: 10.1016/j.imbio.2004.02.008]

8 **McCune JM**. The dynamics of CD4+ T-cell depletion in HIV disease. *Nature* 2001; **410**: 974-979 [PMID: 11309627 DOI: 10.1038/35073648]

9 **Aquaro S**, Bagnarelli P, Guenci T, De Luca A, Clementi M, Balestra E, Caliò R, Perno CF. Long-term survival and virus production in human primary macrophages infected by human immunodeficiency virus. *J Med Virol* 2002; **68**: 479-488 [PMID: 12376954 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.10245]

10 **Aquaro S**, Caliò R, Balzarini J, Bellocchi MC, Garaci E, Perno CF. Macrophages and HIV infection: therapeutical approaches toward this strategic virus reservoir. *Antiviral Res* 2002; **55**: 209-225 [PMID: 12103427 DOI: 10.1016/S0166-3542(02)00052-9]

11 **Williams MA**, Trout R, Spector SA. HIV-1 gp120 modulates the immunological function and expression of accessory and co-stimulatory molecules of monocyte-derived dendritic cells. *J Hematother Stem Cell Res* 2002; **11**: 829-847 [PMID: 12427289 DOI: 10.1089/152581602760404630]

12 **Kawamura T**, Gatanaga H, Borris DL, Connors M, Mitsuya H, Blauvelt A. Decreased stimulation of CD4+ T cell proliferation and IL-2 production by highly enriched populations of HIV-infected dendritic cells. *J Immunol* 2003; **170**: 4260-4266 [PMID: 12682260]

13 **Zhang R**, Fichtenbaum CJ, Hildeman DA, Lifson JD, Chougnet C. CD40 ligand dysregulation in HIV infection: HIV glycoprotein 120 inhibits signaling cascades upstream of CD40 ligand transcription. *J Immunol* 2004; **172**: 2678-2686 [PMID: 14764743]

14 **Larsson M**, Shankar EM, Che KF, Saeidi A, Ellegård R, Barathan M, Velu V, Kamarulzaman A. Molecular signatures of T-cell inhibition in HIV-1 infection. *Retrovirology* 2013; **10**: 31 [PMID: 23514593 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4690-10-31]

15 **Effros RB**. From Hayflick to Walford: the role of T cell replicative senescence in human aging. *Exp Gerontol* 2004; **39**: 885-890 [PMID: 15217682 DOI: 10.1016/j.exger.2004.03.004]

16 **Kaech SM**, Wherry EJ, Ahmed R. Effector and memory T-cell differentiation: implications for vaccine development. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2002; **2**: 251-262 [PMID: 12001996 DOI: 10.1038/nri778]

17 **Agrawal A**, Gupta S. Impact of aging on dendritic cell functions in humans. *Ageing Res Rev* 2011; **10**: 336-345 [PMID: 20619360 DOI: 10.1016/j.arr.2010.06.004]

18 **Linton PJ**, Dorshkind K. Age-related changes in lymphocyte development and function. *Nat Immunol* 2004; **5**: 133-139 [PMID: 14749784 DOI: 10.1038/ni1033]

19 **Sauce D**, Larsen M, Fastenackels S, Duperrier A, Keller M, Grubeck-Loebenstein B, Ferrand C, Debré P, Sidi D, Appay V. Evidence of premature immune aging in patients thymectomized during early childhood. *J Clin Invest* 2009; **119**: 3070-3078 [PMID: 19770514 DOI: 10.1172/JCI39269]

20 **Effros RB**. Role of T lymphocyte replicative senescence in vaccine efficacy. *Vaccine* 2007; **25**: 599-604 [PMID: 17014937 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2006.08.032]

21 **Effros RB**, Boucher N, Porter V, Zhu X, Spaulding C, Walford RL, Kronenberg M, Cohen D, Schächter F. Decline in CD28+ T cells in centenarians and in long-term T cell cultures: a possible cause for both in vivo and in vitro immunosenescence. *Exp Gerontol* 1994; **29**: 601-609 [PMID: 9435913 DOI: 10.1016/0531-5565(94)90073-6]

22 **Fan J**, Bass HZ, Fahey JL. Elevated IFN-gamma and decreased IL-2 gene expression are associated with HIV infection. *J Immunol* 1993; **151**: 5031-5040 [PMID: 8409454]

23 **Clerici M**, Stocks NI, Zajac RA, Boswell RN, Lucey DR, Via CS, Shearer GM. Detection of three distinct patterns of T helper cell dysfunction in asymptomatic, human immunodeficiency virus-seropositive patients. Independence of CD4+ cell numbers and clinical staging. *J Clin Invest* 1989; **84**: 1892-1899 [PMID: 2574188 DOI: 10.1172/JCI114376]

24 **Papagno L**, Spina CA, Marchant A, Salio M, Rufer N, Little S, Dong T, Chesney G, Waters A, Easterbrook P, Dunbar PR, Shepherd D, Cerundolo V, Emery V, Griffiths P, Conlon C, McMichael AJ, Richman DD, Rowland-Jones SL, Appay V. Immune activation and CD8+ T-cell differentiation towards senescence in HIV-1 infection. *PLoS Biol* 2004; **2**: E20 [PMID: 14966528 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pbio.0020020]

25 **Gamadia LE**, van Leeuwen EM, Remmerswaal EB, Yong SL, Surachno S, Wertheim-van Dillen PM, Ten Berge IJ, Van Lier RA. The size and phenotype of virus-specific T cell populations is determined by repetitive antigenic stimulation and environmental cytokines. *J Immunol* 2004; **172**: 6107-6114 [PMID: 15128796]

26 **Kaplan RC**, Sinclair E, Landay AL, Lurain N, Sharrett AR, Gange SJ, Xue X, Hunt P, Karim R, Kern DM, Hodis HN, Deeks SG. T cell activation and senescence predict subclinical carotid artery disease in HIV-infected women. *J Infect Dis* 2011; **203**: 452-463 [PMID: 21220772 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jiq071]

27 **Mojumdar K**, Vajpayee M, Chauhan NK, Singh A, Singh R,

Kurapati S. Loss of CD127 & amp; increased immunosenescence of T cell subsets in HIV infected individuals. *Indian J Med Res* 2011; **134**: 972-981 [PMID: 22310831 DOI: 10.4103/0971-5916.92645]
28 Role of CD8 T Cell Replicative Senescence in Human Aging and in HIV-mediated Immunosenescence. *Aging Dis* 2011; **2**: 382-397 [PMID: 22308228]
29 **Weng NP**, Akbar AN, Goronzy J. CD28(-) T cells: their role in the age-associated decline of immune function. *Trends Immunol* 2009; **30**: 306-312 [PMID: 19540809 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2009.03.013]
30 **Scheuring UJ**, Sabzevari H, Theofilopoulos AN. Proliferative arrest and cell cycle regulation in CD8(+)CD28(-) versus CD8(+)CD28(+) T cells. *Hum Immunol* 2002; **63**: 1000-1009 [PMID: 12392852 DOI: 10.1016/S0198-8859(02)00683-3]
31 **Hayflick L**, Moorhead PS. The serial cultivation of human diploid cell strains. *Exp Cell Res* 1961; **25**: 585-621 [PMID: 13905658 DOI: 10.1016/0014-4827(61)90192-6]
32 **Effros RB**, Walford RL. T cell cultures and the Hayflick limit. *Hum Immunol* 1984; **9**: 49-65 [PMID: 6607244 DOI: 10.1016/0198-8859(84)90006-5]
33 **Chou JP**, Effros RB. T cell replicative senescence in human aging. *Curr Pharm Des* 2013; **19**: 1680-1698 [PMID: 23061726 DOI: 10.2174/1381612811319090016]
34 **Deeks SG**, Phillips AN. HIV infection, antiretroviral treatment, ageing, and non-AIDS related morbidity. *BMJ* 2009; **338**: a3172 [PMID: 19171560 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.a3172]
35 **Méndez-Lagares G**, Díaz L, Correa-Rocha R, León Leal JA, Ferrando-Martínez S, Ruiz-Mateos E, Pozo-Balado MM, Gurbindo MD, de José MI, Muñoz-Fernández MA, Leal M, Pacheco YM. Specific patterns of CD4-associated immunosenescence in vertically HIV-infected subjects. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2013; **19**: 558-565 [PMID: 22735071 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-0691.2012.03934.x]
36 **Appay V**, Almeida JR, Sauce D, Autran B, Papagno L. Accelerated immune senescence and HIV-1 infection. *Exp Gerontol* 2007; **42**: 432-437 [PMID: 17307327 DOI: 10.1016/j.exger.2006.12.003]
37 **Desai S**, Landay A. Early immune senescence in HIV disease. *Curr HIV/AIDS Rep* 2010; **7**: 4-10 [PMID: 20425052 DOI: 10.1007/s11904-009-0038-4]
38 **Almeida CA**, Price P, French MA. Immune activation in patients infected with HIV type 1 and maintaining suppression of viral replication by highly active antiretroviral therapy. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 2002; **18**: 1351-1355 [PMID: 12487806 DOI: 10.1089/088922202320935429]
39 **Nakanjako D**, Ssewanyana I, Mayanja-Kizza H, Kiragga A, Colebunders R, Manabe YC, Nabatanzi R, Kamya MR, Cao H. High T-cell immune activation and immune exhaustion among individuals with suboptimal CD4 recovery after 4 years of antiretroviral therapy in an African cohort. *BMC Infect Dis* 2011; **11**: 43 [PMID: 21299909 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-11-43]
40 **Feuth T**, Arends JE, Fransen JH, Nanlohy NM, van Erpecum KJ, Siersema PD, Hoepelman AI, van Baarle D. Complementary role of HCV and HIV in T-cell activation and exhaustion in HIV/HCV coinfection. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e59302 [PMID: 23555014 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0059302]
41 **Czesnikiewicz-Guzik M**, Lee WW, Cui D, Hiruma Y, Lamar DL, Yang ZZ, Ouslander JG, Weyand CM, Goronzy JJ. T cell subset-specific susceptibility to aging. *Clin Immunol* 2008; **127**: 107-118 [PMID: 18222733 DOI: 10.1016/j.clim.2007.12.002]
42 **Cao W**, Jamieson BD, Hultin LE, Hultin PM, Detels R. Regulatory T cell expansion and immune activation during untreated HIV type 1 infection are associated with disease progression. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 2009; **25**: 183-191 [PMID: 19239357 DOI: 10.1089/aid.2008.0140]
43 **Liu Z**, Cumberland WG, Hultin LE, Prince HE, Detels R, Giorgi JV. Elevated CD38 antigen expression on CD8+ T cells is a stronger marker for the risk of chronic HIV disease progression to AIDS and death in the Multicenter AIDS Cohort Study than CD4+ cell count, soluble immune activation markers, or combinations of HLA-DR and CD38 expression. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr Hum Retrovirol* 1997; **16**: 83-92 [PMID: 9358102]
44 **Kamat A**, Misra V, Cassol E, Ancuta P, Yan Z, Li C, Morgello S, Gabuzda D. A plasma biomarker signature of immune activation in HIV patients on antiretroviral therapy. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e30881 [PMID: 22363505 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0030881]
45 **Hazenberg MD**, Otto SA, van Benthem BH, Roos MT, Coutinho RA, Lange JM, Hamann D, Prins M, Miedema F. Persistent immune activation in HIV-1 infection is associated with progression to AIDS. *AIDS* 2003; **17**: 1881-1888 [PMID: 12960820 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000076311.76477.6e]
46 **Wilson CM**, Ellenberg JH, Douglas SD, Moscicki AB, Holland CA. CD8+CD38+ T cells but not HIV type 1 RNA viral load predict CD4+ T cell loss in a predominantly minority female HIV+ adolescent population. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 2004; **20**: 263-269 [PMID: 15117448 DOI: 10.1089/088922204322996482]
47 **Gonzalez VD**, Falconer K, Blom KG, Reichard O, Mørn B, Laursen AL, Weis N, Alaeus A, Sandberg JK. High levels of chronic immune activation in the T-cell compartments of patients coinfected with hepatitis C virus and human immunodeficiency virus type 1 and on highly active antiretroviral therapy are reverted by alpha interferon and ribavirin treatment. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 11407-11411 [PMID: 19710147 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01211-09]
48 **Brenchley JM**, Karandikar NJ, Betts MR, Ambrozak DR, Hill BJ, Crotty LE, Casazza JP, Kuruppu J, Migueles SA, Connors M, Roederer M, Douek DC, Koup RA. Expression of CD57 defines replicative senescence and antigen-induced apoptotic death of CD8+ T cells. *Blood* 2003; **101**: 2711-2720 [PMID: 12433688 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2002-07-2103]
49 **Kiazyk SA**, Fowke KR. Loss of CD127 expression links immune activation and CD4(+) T cell loss in HIV infection. *Trends Microbiol* 2008; **16**: 567-573 [PMID: 18964017 DOI: 10.1016/j.tim.2008.08.011]
50 **Rodríguez B**, Sethi AK, Cheruvu VK, Mackay W, Bosch RJ, Kitahata M, Boswell SL, Mathews WC, Bangsberg DR, Martin J, Whalen CC, Sieg S, Yadavalli S, Deeks SG, Lederman MM. Predictive value of plasma HIV RNA level on rate of CD4 T-cell decline in untreated HIV infection. *JAMA* 2006; **296**: 1498-1506 [PMID: 17003398 DOI: 10.1001/jama.296.12.1498]
51 **Diedrich CR**, Flynn JL. HIV-1/mycobacterium tuberculosis coinfection immunology: how does HIV-1 exacerbate tuberculosis? *Infect Immun* 2011; **79**: 1407-1417 [PMID: 21245275 DOI: 10.1128/IAI.01126-10]
52 **Kwan CK**, Ernst JD. HIV and tuberculosis: a deadly human syndemic. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2011; **24**: 351-376 [PMID: 21482729 DOI: 10.1128/CMR.00042-10]
53 **Pawlowski A**, Jansson M, Sköld M, Rottenberg ME, Källenius G. Tuberculosis and HIV co-infection. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1002464 [PMID: 22363214 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002464]
54 **Shankar EM**, Vignesh R, Ellegård R, Barathan M, Chong YK, Bador MK, Rukumani DV, Sabet NS, Kamarulzaman A, Velu V, Larsson M. HIV-Mycobacterium tuberculosis co-infection: a 'danger-couple model' of disease pathogenesis. *Pathog Dis* 2014; **70**: 110-118 [PMID: 24214523 DOI: 10.1111/2049-632X.12108]
55 **Larbi A**, Fulop T. From "truly naïve" to "exhausted senescent" T cells: when markers predict functionality. *Cytometry A* 2014; **85**: 25-35 [PMID: 24124072 DOI: 10.1002/cyto.a.22351]
56 **Kestens L**, Vanham G, Gigase P, Young G, Hannet I, Vanlangendonck F, Hulstaert F, Bach BA. Expression of activation antigens, HLA-DR and CD38, on CD8 lymphocytes during HIV-1 infection. *AIDS* 1992; **6**: 793-797 [PMID: 1418775 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-199208000-00004]
57 **Effros RB**, Dillard L, Zeller E, Naeim F, Walford RL. Strong HLA-DR expression in T cell cultures after activation is

necessary for IL-2-dependent proliferation. *Hum Immunol* 1983; **8**: 249-254 [PMID: 6606636 DOI: 10.1016/0198-8859(83)90051-4]

58 **Kestens L**, Vanham G, Vereecken C, Vandenbruaene M, Vercauteren G, Colebunders RL, Gigase PL. Selective increase of activation antigens HLA-DR and CD38 on CD4+ CD45RO+ T lymphocytes during HIV-1 infection. *Clin Exp Immunol* 1994; **95**: 436-441 [PMID: 7907956 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.1994.tb07015.x]

59 **Liu Z**, Cumberland WG, Hultin LE, Kaplan AH, Detels R, Giorgi JV. CD8+ T-lymphocyte activation in HIV-1 disease reflects an aspect of pathogenesis distinct from viral burden and immunodeficiency. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr Hum Retrovirol* 1998; **18**: 332-340 [PMID: 9704938]

60 **Appay V**, Sauce D. Immune activation and inflammation in HIV-1 infection: causes and consequences. *J Pathol* 2008; **214**: 231-241 [PMID: 18161758 DOI: 10.1002/path.2276]

61 **Sousa AE**, Carneiro J, Meier-Schellersheim M, Grossman Z, Victorino RM. CD4 T cell depletion is linked directly to immune activation in the pathogenesis of HIV-1 and HIV-2 but only indirectly to the viral load. *J Immunol* 2002; **169**: 3400-3406 [PMID: 12218162 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.169.6.3400]

62 **Mocroft A**, Bofill M, Lipman M, Medina E, Borthwick N, Timms A, Batista L, Winter M, Sabin CA, Johnson M, Lee CA, Phillips A, Janossy G. CD8+,CD38+ lymphocyte percent: a useful immunological marker for monitoring HIV-1-infected patients. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr Hum Retrovirol* 1997; **14**: 158-162 [PMID: 9052725]

63 **Mbow M,** Santos NSS, Camara M, Ba A, Niang A, Daneau G, Wade D, Diallo AA, Toupane M, Diakhaté M, Lèye N, Diaw PA, Mboup S, Kestens L, Dieye TN. HIV and Tuberculosis co-infection impacts T-cell activation markers but not the numbers subset of regulatory T-cells in HIV-1 infected patients. *Afr J Lab Med* 2013; **2:** 1-8 [DOI: 10.4102/ajlm.v2i1.76]

64 **Lawn SD**, Butera ST, Folks TM. Contribution of immune activation to the pathogenesis and transmission of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2001; **14**: 753-777, table of contents [PMID: 11585784 DOI: 10.1128/CMR.14.4.753-777.2001]

65 **Borkow G**, Weisman Z, Leng Q, Stein M, Kalinkovich A, Wolday D, Bentwich Z. Helminths, human immunodeficiency virus and tuberculosis. *Scand J Infect Dis* 2001; **33**: 568-571 [PMID: 11525348 DOI: 10.1080/00365540110026656]

66 **Rodrigues DS**, Medeiros EA, Weckx LY, Bonnez W, Salomão R, Kallas EG. Immunophenotypic characterization of peripheral T lymphocytes in Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection and disease. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2002; **128**: 149-154 [PMID: 11982602 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2249.2002.01809.x]

67 **Hertoghe T**, Wajja A, Ntambi L, Okwera A, Aziz MA, Hirsch C, Johnson J, Toossi Z, Mugerwa R, Mugyenyi P, Colebunders R, Ellner J, Vanham G. T cell activation, apoptosis and cytokine dysregulation in the (co)pathogenesis of HIV and pulmonary tuberculosis (TB). *Clin Exp Immunol* 2000; **122**: 350-357 [PMID: 11122240 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2249.2000.01385.x]

68 **Vanham G**, Edmonds K, Qing L, Hom D, Toossi Z, Jones B, Daley CL, Huebner B, Kestens L, Gigase P, Ellner JJ. Generalized immune activation in pulmonary tuberculosis: co-activation with HIV infection. *Clin Exp Immunol* 1996; **103**: 30-34 [PMID: 8565282 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2249.1996.907600.x]

69 **S Rodrigues Ddo S**, de C Cunha RM, Kallas EG, Salomao R. Distribution of naive and memory/effector CD4 + T lymphocytes and expression of CD38 on CD8 + T lymphocytes in AIDS patients with tuberculosis. *Braz J Infect Dis* 2003; **7**: 161-165 [PMID: 12959688 DOI: 10.1590/S1413-86702003000200010]

70 **Sharada RS**, Rani HS, Pydi SS, Subbanna J, lakshmi Valluri V. CD38 expression on CD8 cells—Its influence on development of tuberculosis in HIV positive individuals. *Open J Immunol* 2012; **2**: 65-71 [DOI: 10.4236/oji.2012.22008]

71 **Gehring AJ**, Rojas RE, Canaday DH, Lakey DL, Harding CV, Boom WH. The Mycobacterium tuberculosis 19-kilodalton lipoprotein inhibits gamma interferon-regulated HLA-DR and Fc gamma R1 on human macrophages through Toll-like receptor 2. *Infect Immun* 2003; **71**: 4487-4497 [PMID: 12874328 DOI: 10.1128/IAI.71.8.4487-4497.2003]

72 **Hmama Z**, Gabathuler R, Jefferies WA, de Jong G, Reiner NE. Attenuation of HLA-DR expression by mononuclear phagocytes infected with Mycobacterium tuberculosis is related to intracellular sequestration of immature class II heterodimers. *J Immunol* 1998; **161**: 4882-4893 [PMID: 9794422]

73 **Gehring AJ**, Dobos KM, Belisle JT, Harding CV, Boom WH. Mycobacterium tuberculosis LprG (Rv1411c): a novel TLR-2 ligand that inhibits human macrophage class II MHC antigen processing. *J Immunol* 2004; **173**: 2660-2668 [PMID: 15294983 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.173.4.2660]

74 **Simmons DP**, Canaday DH, Liu Y, Li Q, Huang A, Boom WH, Harding CV. Mycobacterium tuberculosis and TLR2 agonists inhibit induction of type I IFN and class I MHC antigen cross processing by TLR9. *J Immunol* 2010; **185**: 2405-2415 [PMID: 20660347 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.0904005]

75 **Harding CV**, Boom WH. Regulation of antigen presentation by Mycobacterium tuberculosis: a role for Toll-like receptors. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2010; **8**: 296-307 [PMID: 20234378 DOI: 10.1038/nrmicro2321]

76 **Stewart GR**, Patel J, Robertson BD, Rae A, Young DB. Mycobacterial mutants with defective control of phagosomal acidification. *PLoS Pathog* 2005; **1**: 269-278 [PMID: 16322769 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.0010033]

77 **Appay V**, Dunbar PR, Callan M, Klenerman P, Gillespie GM, Papagno L, Ogg GS, King A, Lechner F, Spina CA, Little S, Havlir DV, Richman DD, Gruener N, Pape G, Waters A, Easterbrook P, Salio M, Cerundolo V, McMichael AJ, Rowland-Jones SL. Memory CD8+ T cells vary in differentiation phenotype in different persistent virus infections. *Nat Med* 2002; **8**: 379-385 [PMID: 11927944 DOI: 10.1038/nm0402-379]

78 **Kovaiou RD**, Weiskirchner I, Keller M, Pfister G, Cioca DP, Grubeck-Loebenstein B. Age-related differences in phenotype and function of CD4+ T cells are due to a phenotypic shift from naive to memory effector CD4+ T cells. *Int Immunol* 2005; **17**: 1359-1366 [PMID: 16141244 DOI: 10.1093/intimm/dxh314]

79 **Boussiotis VA**, Freeman GJ, Gribben JG, Nadler LM. The role of B7-1/B7-2: CD28/CLTA-4 pathways in the prevention of anergy, induction of productive immunity and down-regulation of the immune response. *Immunol Rev* 1996; **153**: 5-26 [PMID: 9010717 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-065X.1996.tb00918.x]

80 **Hintzen RQ**, Lens SM, Lammers K, Kuiper H, Beckmann MP, van Lier RA. Engagement of CD27 with its ligand CD70 provides a second signal for T cell activation. *J Immunol* 1995; **154**: 2612-2623 [PMID: 7876536]

81 **Kushner EJ**, Weil BR, MacEneaney OJ, Morgan RG, Mestek ML, Van Guilder GP, Diehl KJ, Stauffer BL, DeSouza CA. Human aging and CD31+ T-cell number, migration, apoptotic susceptibility, and telomere length. *J Appl Physiol* (1985) 2010; **109**: 1756-1761 [PMID: 20864561 DOI: 10.1152/japplphysiol.00601.2010]

82 **Choremi-Papadopoulou H**, Viglis V, Gargalianos P, Kordossis T, Iniotaki-Theodoraki A, Kosmidis J. Downregulation of CD28 surface antigen on CD4+ and CD8+ T lymphocytes during HIV-1 infection. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 1994; **7**: 245-253 [PMID: 7906302]

83 **Hamann D**, Roos MT, van Lier RA. Faces and phases of human CD8 T-cell development. *Immunol Today* 1999; **20**: 177-180 [PMID: 10203715 DOI: 10.1016/S0167-5699(99)01444-9]

84 **Mojumdar K**, Vajpayee M, Chauhan NK, Singh A, Singh R, Kurapati S. Altered T cell differentiation associated with loss of CD27 and CD28 in HIV infected Indian individuals. *Cytometry B Clin Cytom* 2012; **82**: 43-53 [PMID: 21695776 DOI: 10.1002/cyto.b.20610]

85 **Lee SA**, Sinclair E, Hatano H, Hsue PY, Epling L, Hecht FM, Bangsberg DR, Martin JN, McCune JM, Deeks SG, Hunt PW. Impact of HIV on CD8+ T cell CD57 expression is distinct

from that of CMV and aging. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e89444 [PMID: 24586783 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0089444]

86 **Champagne P**, Ogg GS, King AS, Knabenhans C, Ellefsen K, Nobile M, Appay V, Rizzardi GP, Fleury S, Lipp M, Förster R, Rowland-Jones S, Sékaly RP, McMichael AJ, Pantaleo G. Skewed maturation of memory HIV-specific CD8 T lymphocytes. *Nature* 2001; **410**: 106-111 [PMID: 11242051 DOI: 10.1038/35065118]

87 **Appay V**, Rowland-Jones SL. Lessons from the study of T-cell differentiation in persistent human virus infection. *Semin Immunol* 2004; **16**: 205-212 [PMID: 15130505 DOI: 10.1016/j.smim.2004.02.007]

88 **Focosi D**, Bestagno M, Burrone O, Petrini M. CD57+ T lymphocytes and functional immune deficiency. *J Leukoc Biol* 2010; **87**: 107-116 [PMID: 19880576 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.0809566]

89 **Palmer BE**, Blyveis N, Fontenot AP, Wilson CC. Functional and phenotypic characterization of CD57+CD4+ T cells and their association with HIV-1-induced T cell dysfunction. *J Immunol* 2005; **175**: 8415-8423 [PMID: 16339584]

90 **Fateminasab FD**, Shahgasempour S, Mirsaeidi SM, Tabarsi P, Mansoori SD, Entezami Z. Increased activation and expansion of a CD57+ subset within peripheral CD8+ T lymphocytes in Mycobacterium tuberculosis-infected patients. *Arch Iran Med* 2006; **9**: 53-57 [PMID: 16649379]

91 **Weekes MP**, Wills MR, Mynard K, Hicks R, Sissons JG, Carmichael AJ. Large clonal expansions of human virus-specific memory cytotoxic T lymphocytes within the CD57+ CD28- CD8+ T-cell population. *Immunology* 1999; **98**: 443-449 [PMID: 10583606 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2567.1999.00901.x]

92 **Plunkett FJ**, Franzese O, Finney HM, Fletcher JM, Belaramani LL, Salmon M, Dokal I, Webster D, Lawson AD, Akbar AN. The loss of telomerase activity in highly differentiated CD8+CD28-CD27- T cells is associated with decreased Akt (Ser473) phosphorylation. *J Immunol* 2007; **178**: 7710-7719 [PMID: 17548608 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.178.12.7710]

93 **Henson SM**, Franzese O, Macaulay R, Libri V, Azevedo RI, Kiani-Alikhan S, Plunkett FJ, Masters JE, Jackson S, Griffiths SJ, Pircher HP, Soares MV, Akbar AN. KLRG1 signaling induces defective Akt (ser473) phosphorylation and proliferative dysfunction of highly differentiated CD8+ T cells. *Blood* 2009; **113**: 6619-6628 [PMID: 19406987 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2009-01-199588]

94 **Boyman O**, Purton JF, Surh CD, Sprent J. Cytokines and T-cell homeostasis. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2007; **19**: 320-326 [PMID: 17433869 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2007.04.015]

95 **Mazzucchelli R**, Durum SK. Interleukin-7 receptor expression: intelligent design. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2007; **7**: 144-154 [PMID: 17259970 DOI: 10.1038/nri2023]

96 **Benito JM**, López M, Lozano S, González-Lahoz J, Soriano V. Down-regulation of interleukin-7 receptor (CD127) in HIV infection is associated with T cell activation and is a main factor influencing restoration of CD4(+) cells after antiretroviral therapy. *J Infect Dis* 2008; **198**: 1466-1473 [PMID: 18847371 DOI: 10.1086/592716]

97 **Ghazawi FM**, Faller EM, Sugden SM, Kakal JA, MacPherson PA. IL-7 downregulates IL-7Rα expression in human CD8 T cells by two independent mechanisms. *Immunol Cell Biol* 2013; **91**: 149-158 [PMID: 23207282 DOI: 10.1038/icb.2012.69]

98 **Crawley AM**, Angel JB. The influence of HIV on CD127 expression and its potential implications for IL-7 therapy. *Semin Immunol* 2012; **24**: 231-240 [PMID: 22421574 DOI: 10.1016/j.smim.2012.02.006]

P- Reviewer: Afzal M, Guan YS, Said SAM **S- Editor**: Tian YL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Wu HL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i1.25

World J Virol 2015 February 12; 4(1): 25-32
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Current molecular methods for the detection of hepatitis C virus in high risk group population: A systematic review

Rushna Firdaus, Kallol Saha, Aritra Biswas, Provash Chandra Sadhukhan

Rushna Firdaus, Kallol Saha, Aritra Biswas, Provash Chandra Sadhukhan, ICMR Virus Unit, I.D and B.G Hospital Campus, GB-4 (East Wing), Beliaghata, Kolkata 700010, India
Author contributions: Firdaus R and Saha K contributed equally to the work, wrote the manuscript and prepared the figures; Biswas A helped them and Sadhukhan PC looked into overall aspect in manuscript study design and checked the draft.
Conflict-of-interest: The authors have no conflict of interest to report

Correspondence to: Dr. Provash Chandra Sadhukhan, I.C.M.R. Virus Unit Kolkata, I.D and B.G Hospital Campus, GB-4 (East Wing), 1st Floor, 57, Dr. Suresh Chandra Banerjee Road, Beliaghata, Kolkata 700010,
India. provash2000@gmail.com
Telephone: +91-33-23537425
Fax: +91-33-23537424
Received: September 24, 2014
Peer-review started: September 26, 2014
First decision: October 28, 2014
Revised: December 13, 2014
Accepted: December 29, 2014
Article in press: December 31, 2014
Published online: February 12, 2015

Abstract

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) is an emerging infection worldwide and the numbers of persons infected are increasing every year. Poor blood transfusion methods along with unsafe injection practices are potential sources for the rapid spread of infection. Early detection of HCV is the need of the hour especially in high risk group population as these individuals are severely immunocompromised. Enzyme Immunoassays are the most common detection techniques but they provide no evidence of active viremia or identification of infected individuals in the antibody-negative phase and their efficacy is limited in individuals within high risk group population. Molecular virological techniques have an important role in detecting active infection with utmost specificity and sensitivity. Technologies for assessment of HCV antibody and RNA levels have improved remarkably, as well as our understanding of how to best use these tests in patient management. This review aims to give an overview of the different serological and molecular methods employed in detecting HCV infection used nowadays. Additionally, the review gives an insight in the new molecular techniques that are being developed to improve the detection techniques particularly in High Risk Group population who are severely immunocompromised.

Key words: Molecular detection; Enzyme immunoassay; High risk group population; Nucleic acid amplification assays; Polymerase chain reaction

Core tip: The review focuses on the current molecular diagnostic techniques that are being used to detect hepatitis C virus worldwide. Special emphasis is given on the detection techniques that can be used to screen the individuals with repeated blood transfusion history; particularly thalassaemic individuals, intravenous drug users and persons on hemodialysis.

Firdaus R, Saha K, Biswas A, Sadhukhan PC. Current molecular methods for the detection of hepatitis C virus in high risk group population: A systematic review. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(1): 25-32 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i1/25.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i1.25

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is a global health problem which has affected around 170 million people worldwide and is one of the major causes of deaths related to liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma[1]. HCV can be classified to seven major genotypes and 80 subtypes[2-4]. HCV genotypes vary in patterns of geographical distribution and therapeutic response. However, the geographical and genetic diversity of this RNA virus is constantly evolving because of rapid globalization. In India, HCV infection has been reported in 0%-21% population and responsible for 14%-26% cases of chronic liver disease[5]. HCV infection is mostly transmitted through transfusion of blood or blood products. A high prevalence of HCV is found in many high-risk groups (HRG) exposed to blood or blood products like intra venous drug users (IDUs), patients with pediatric hematologic malignancies and those with thalassemia and hemophilia. India reported a higher percentage of blood donors (1%-1.5%) than in any developed country[6,7].

An increasing burden of HCV related liver complications has been estimated particularly taking into account those who were infected before safety precautions of blood transfusions happened. A major concern is careful screening of blood and blood related products, but in developing countries like in India, the regulations for strict checking of blood and blood related products came to place only in 2001[8,9]. Recent surveys have reported that testing of blood and blood related products are poorly regulated in India[10]. In United States, data showed that death related to HCV exceeded than those by HIV. Though novel antiviral therapies are recently in the horizon with enhanced efficacy and fewer side effects but the challenge remains in detecting HCV at an early stage.

During HCV infection, though attempts are made to diagnose and differentiate acute from chronic hepatitis C infection, it is often not possible to distinguish between the two phases. The infection may be recognized only when it becomes chronic[11,12]. The serologic diagnostic tests used as first step for detecting the infection cannot distinguish between acute and chronic infection[13]. Investigations for patients with HCV infection include serological assays for antibodies to hepatitis C (anti-HCV) and molecular assays for detection of viral RNA.

The importance of low cost molecular diagnostic assays are especially important for the developing nations as they are already burdened with increasing number of hepatitis C patients who are generally economically backward. The advent of molecular diagnostic approaches has allowed for the development of nucleic acid assays that are more sensitive and specific than antibody based technologies. The linking of these assays with appropriate detection systems, therefore, makes them highly desirable for detecting HCV RNA in patient samples. Molecular techniques not only help to detect HCV RNA but confirm active state of infection, *i.e.*, the virus is in replicating state in the patient's body. In individuals falling in high risk diagnosis of HCV can give false negative results as these patients are already immuno-suppressed, in this scenario, molecular testing remains the best choice for detection.

This review aims to give an overview of the different serological and viral genome based laboratory tests which has become instrumental in the management of HCV infection to diagnose viral infection, and more importantly guide treatment decisions which could be of enormous help to clinicians.

LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

The investigation of HCV diagnosis starts with serological assays for detecting antibodies to HCV followed by molecular assays for detecting HCV RNA (Figure 1). Initial diagnosis of HCV infection is classically done by serologic methods either by determining anti HCV antibody by EIAs or by immunoblot assays and by determining the presence of HCV RNA. The advent of simple rapid immunoassays has significantly reduced the risk of HCV transmission, but concern remains for patients in high risk groups[13-16]. Studies have shown that false negative results in rapid tests might arise in patients who are severely immunocompromised such as those co-infected with HIV[17], in patients on hemodialysis, IDUs, thalassaemic. In these patient groups molecular detection by reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) remains the best method for detection.

RAPID IMMUNOASSAYS FOR DETECTION OF HCV IN SERUM OR PLASMA

Rapid immunoassay tests are based on the principle to detect HCV antigens from core, NS3, NS4 and NS5 regions of the virus. In western countries, these tests are used besides nucleic acid testing, and used only as point of care tests, but in developing countries these tests are solely relied in commercial places for detection of HCV[18]. Commercial kits like OraQuick rapid HCV antibody test use device that delivers HCV antibody test results in 20 min using a single drop of whole blood. The kit was approved for laboratory use in United States from June 2010. The OraQuick is very accurate, with sensitivity and specificity performance that meets the standards for FDA approval[19]. Though rapid kits have been extensively used for surveillance purposes, they are not well suited for high risk groups and immunocompromised patients[20,21]. In developing countries like India, WHO has recommended certain kits for rapid testing for surveillance purposes.

ENZYME IMMUNOASSAY FOR HCV DETECTION IN SERUM OR PLASMA

Enzyme immunoassays are the most common screening test for HCV [enzyme immunoassay (EIA), microparticle EIA, chemiluminescence immunoassay (CIA)] that detects anti-HCV antibodies in plasma or serum. These assays are

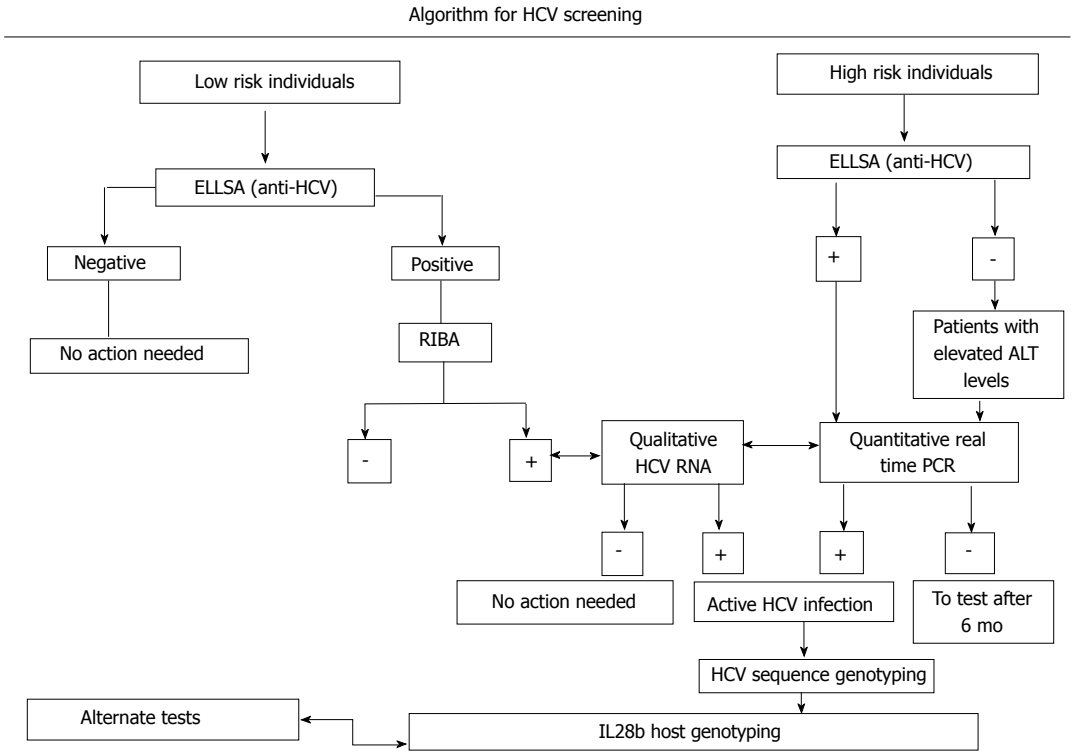


Figure 1 Algorithm for hepatitis C virus screening and detection. HCV: Hepatitis C virus; PCR: Polymerase chain reaction.

relatively easy to use, does not require expert technicians, automation is simple, have a low variability and are inexpensive.

Three generations of EIA antibody testing have been developed since 1989. In the first generation of EIA developed in 1992, c100-3 epitope from the non-structural NS4 regions was incorporated. A newer and better second generation EIA-2 was developed next which contained HCV antigens from core, NS3, NS4 regions[22-24]. The third generation of EIA developed contained modified antigens from core, NS3, and a slightly modified antigen from NS5 region. The incorporation of these antigens increased the overall sensitivity to 97%, which was better than the second generation assays. The mean time to seroconversion in the improved third generation kits has gone down to 2-3 wk as compared to 4-6 wk in the second generation kits. EIA methods have several advantages as the kits are relatively inexpensive and highly sensitive too, but one of the disadvantages is that it may give false positive results in routine blood donors and asymptomatic adults. For this reason, Centres for Disease control and prevention has recommended the supplementary tests like RIBA or PCR based methods to confirm positive ELISA tests unless the signal-to-cut-off ratio is above a predetermined threshold[25].

False-negative EIA especially occur in patients with major immunosuppression (advanced HIV infection or organ transplantation recipients), patients with chronic renal failure on long-term hemodialysis, and patients with acute or early HCV infection have been reported in HCV EIA[26].

In developing countries like India, WHO recommends the use of 3rd generation HCV EIA kits. Several commercial kits which employ the structural and non-structural antigens *i.e.*, core, E1, E2, NS3, NS4 and NS5 are in use. The 3rd generation kits are better than the previous versions with improved specificity and sensitivity. The use of EIA kits in India is limited as it requires expertise in handling and in developing countries like India where the health care resources are already burdened; it becomes very difficult to reach the people[27].

RECOMBINANT IMMUNOBLOT ASSAY FOR HCV ANTIGEN DETECTION

In the recombinant immunoblot assay (RIBA) assays, multiple HCV antigens are individually displayed on a nitrocellulose strips as bands. In positive HCV infection, RIBA results show two reactive bands, in intermediate infection show one positive band. Since positive cases in RIBA, show two bands they are considered more sensitive than EIA. However, they are not considered as independent gold standard as two tests contain similar antigens to detect HCV antibody[28-30].

DETECTION OF HCV CORE ANTIGEN IN PLASMA OR SERUM

HCV core antigen testing was developed as an alternative to nucleic acid testing (NAT assays). The HCV core antigen detects viral antibodies within the sero-conversion period and can be used to utilize to monitor antiviral therapy. But till now is not commercially used as detection

system[31]. The Architect HCV Ag assay (Abbott) which is a quantitative core antigen based assay, is commercially available in Europe. The assay is chemiluminesce based immunoassay in an automated platform[32]. In these assay, micro particles are coated with a monoclonal antibody against HCV core antigen. Studies have shown that HCV core antigen could be detected within first two weeks of acute infection. The core antigen based testing has a sensitivity ranging from 80% to 99% and a specificity ranging from 96% to 100%. The core antigen based assay could be an important detection technique in individuals who are in High Risk Group, because the core protein is the most conserved viral antigen amongst HCV types and, was therefore, a likely antigenic probe. Also the core protein is one the first protein which is synthesized and therefore could be an attractive target for molecular detection in high risk group patients who are immunocompromised. Studies have demonstrated two major B-cell epitopes at the N-terminus of core: amino acids (aa) 5-23 and 39-74 using peptide reactivity to sera from patients with chronic HCV can be used as antigenic determinants[33,34].

NAT FOR DETECTION OF HCV RNA

Molecular diagnostic assays are an integral part in the management of HCV patients. Both qualitative and quantitative HCV molecular assays are used in the diagnosis of acute and chronic infection. The principle of qualitative HCV assays includes viral RNA isolation, complementary DNA (cDNA) synthesis, PCR amplification and detection of PCR amplicons. Qualitative HCV RNA test detects the presence of HCV circulating in the blood and is among the most sensitive tests available. Since HCV is a RNA virus, reverse transcription PCR is used to detect viral RNA[35-37]. The viral genome is 9.6kb long, contains a single open reading frame that is translated to produce a single protein product, which is then further processed to produce functional proteins for viral replication and propagation[36]. At the 5' and 3' ends of the viral RNA are the untranslated region (UTR) that are not translated into proteins but are important to translation and replication of the viral RNA. Most of the commercial and in-house PCR amplification strategies are targeted against the 5' UTR region as there is more than 90% sequence identity among different HCV genotypes, with some segments nearly identical among different strains[37-39]. The secondary and tertiary structures of this region are also largely conserved and this is one of the first regions which is transcribed of the first regions which is transcribed.

Other than the 5' UTR region, the core and the 3' UTR region are also targeted for PCR based detection of HCV[40-44]. A recent study showed that detection based on the sequence of the core region could reliably identify subtypes as well as major genotypes since the sequence divergence was greater than the divergence of the 5'UTR sequence. Though there are other regions like the E1, E2, NS2, which can be used as detection targets for PCR amplification but they are not in much use as there is a lack of conservation in the primer binding sites[45-50].

Detection of viral RNA is useful in diagnosing HCV infection prior to sero-conversion, distinguishing active from resolved infection, and diagnosing chronic hepatitis carriers who are HCV antibody negative, especially among HRGs. Nucleic acid testing is recommended: (1) for confirmation of HCV RNA in cases where patients are HCV seropositive; (2) to confirm the presence of HCV viremia in patients who are seronegative but immunocompromised such as HIV infected individuals; (3) in babies who are born to HCV positive mothers- as antibody testing in babies can give false positive results upto 18 mo of age; and (4) for determining the baseline value before starting the anti-viral therapy. Molecular detection of HCV includes both qualitative and quantitative assays. The qualitative HCV RNA testing is very popular due to its higher sensitivity, but a major disadvantage of the qualitative assays is that it only determines the presence or absence of HCV RNA. On the other hand, quantitative HCV RNA determines the HCV RNA level and thus provides prognostic information for treatment. Nowadays, there are several widely used commercial tests which are used to detect the presence of HCV RNA in patient's serum. One of the commercial assays used is the Cobas Amplicor HCV version 2.0 (Roche Molecular Diagnostics, Pleasonton, CA, United States) based on a standard RT-PCR is available for the qualitative measurement of HCV RNA. The lowest detection limit is 50 IU/mL whatever the HCV genotype[51,52]. Another assay commercially used is versant HCV qualitative assay (Siemens Healthcare Diagnostics, Deerfield, IL, United States) which is based on transcription mediated amplification technique. In this assay, first viral RNA is isolated from the patient's serum and then amplified by utilizing two enzymes (reverse transcriptase and T7 RNA polymerase). These amplicons are further detected *via* hybridization protection assay (HPA) in which only hybridized probes remain chemiluminescent and are detected in a luminometer. Analytical sensitivity is 10 IU/mL for most genotypes and 5.3 IU/mL for genotype 1[53].

QUANTITATIVE ASSAY

HCV quantitative assay is used to determine the number of international units of HCV RNA per millimeter of serum or plasma (IU/mL) in known HCV positive patients.

Recently, real time PCR based detection systems have become widely available and are considered as the detection method of choice by many clinicians. The advantages of this technique are that they have a very low limit of detection, have a broad dynamic range. Several companies now market the real time PCR assays: the COBASs Ampliprep/Cobas TaqMan assay (CAP/CTM, Roche Molecular Diagnostics) and the real-time HCV assay (also named AccuGenes HCV, Abbott Molecular Inc., Des Plaines, IL, United States). These assays have the advantage of having a broad dynamic range of amplification, thus improving the limits of detection (LOD) to 10 IU/mL, and linear quantification up to 10^7-10^8 IU/mL[54,55].

The quantitation of HCV viral RNA in Cobas Amplicor is performed using the HCV Quantitation

Standard. The HCV quantitation standard is a non-infectious armoured RNA construct of HCV sequences with identical primer binding sites as the HCV RNA target and a unique probe binding region that allows HCV Quantitation Standard amplicon to be distinguished from HCV target amplicon. The HCV Quantitation Standard is pipetted into each individual sample and control at a known copy number and is and is then amplified by PCR. The COBAS TaqMan HCV Test, v2.0 uses reverse transcription and PCR amplification primers against the highly conserved 5' untranslated region of the HCV genome[56].

The Versant HCV quantitative test (Siemens Healthcare Diagnostics) which is HCV RNA assay based on signal amplification by branched DNA (bDNA). In this assay, single stranded DNA molecules are present; which acts as probe DNA molecules. Next an extender DNA molecule is added. Once the capture and extender molecules are in their proper place they are hybridized and the sample is added. The bDNA assay version 3.0 has been reported to have a lower detection limit of 615 IU/mL to 8 million IU/mL whatever the HCV genotype[57].

The advantage of RT-PCR is that it allows continuous monitoring of amplicon kinetics during the exponential phase before the amplification reaches its plateau. This allows for a good correlation between the initial numbers of template copies whereas in qualitative assays based on PCR, amplicon detection was at the end[56,58]. Thus the use of quantitation techniques have greatly enhanced the sensitivity and reliability in detection techniques.

VIRAL GENOTYPING ASSAYS

There are at least seven genotypes and over 80 subtypes of HCV. Different assays are used to determine genotype such as sequencing and hybridization[2]. Most genotype assays use amplification of specific region of viral genome by PCR followed by direct DNA sequencing. While a variety of techniques are used, the gold standard for HCV genotyping is nucleotide sequencing, which can be done by using core (C), envelope (E1), or the non-structural (NS5B) regions which can be amplified by reverse transcription followed by polymerase chain reaction[59-63]. Most diagnostic assays commonly target the 5' UTR but in research settings core and or NS5B region is usually sequenced as this region is more conserved amongst all genotypes. Genotypes are very useful for determining the duration of treatment regimens and predicting treatment response[64-68].

EMERGING MOLECULES TECHNIQUES

One of the emerging diagnostic assays is nanoparticle based diagnostic assay. Quantum dot and gold based nanoparticle based diagnostic assay[69-71]. Quantum dots are nanoparticles made of semiconductors that emit light at different spectra; the emission is dependent on the size which greatly increases the ability to multiplex[72-74]. Another novel technique being developed recently is the use of aptamers as capture molecules. Aptamers are short, single stranded oligonucleotide that can fold into specific 3-dimensional structures and recognize target molecules such as small chemicals, proteins, and even cells[75]. These techniques have been used for various diagnostic applications because of their ability to bind their targets with high affinity and specificity.

CONCLUSION

Molecular diagnostic testing for HCV has provided a crucial tool for addressing significant controversies in HCV management. NATs for detecting HCV RNA remain the mainstay for detecting HCV infection in individuals in high risk group population. Nucleic acid test not only helps to detect HCV RNA but confirms active state of viral infection, *i.e.*, the virus is in replicating state in the patient's body. However, in developing countries due to financial constraints and lack of technical expertise in clinical settings, these tests are difficult to perform and time consuming. In these settings, the most widely employed screening tests are the HCV rapid immunoassays. However, it is the need of the hour to effectively design strategies to detect HCV infection even in sero-conversion period.

REFERENCES

1 **WHO.** Global surveillance and control of hepatitis C. Report of a WHO Consultation organized in collaboration with the Viral Hepatitis Prevention Board, Antwerp, Belgium. *J Viral Hepat* 1999; **6**: 35-47 [PMID: 10847128]

2 **Smith DB**, Bukh J, Kuiken C, Muerhoff AS, Rice CM, Stapleton JT, Simmonds P. Expanded classification of hepatitis C virus into 7 genotypes and 67 subtypes: updated criteria and genotype assignment web resource. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 318-327 [PMID: 24115039 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26744]

3 **Kuiken C**, Simmonds P. Nomenclature and numbering of the hepatitis C virus. *Methods Mol Biol* 2009; **510**: 33-53 [PMID: 19009252 DOI: 10.1007/978-1-59745-394-3_4]

4 **Kato N**. Genome of human hepatitis C virus (HCV): gene organization, sequence diversity, and variation. *Microb Comp Genomics* 2000; **5**: 129-151 [PMID: 11252351]

5 **Mehta SK**, Singh V, Bhasin DK, Kumar YR, Kochhar R. Hepatitis C virus in patients with acute and chronic liver disease. *Indian J Gastroenterol* 1992; **11**: 146 [PMID: 1380490]

6 **Jindal N**, Arora U, Singh K. Prevalence of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hepatitis B virus, and hepatitis C virus in three groups of populations at high risk of HIV infection in Amritsar (Punjab), Northern India. *Jpn J Infect Dis* 2008; **61**: 79-81 [PMID: 18219142]

7 **Irshad M**, Acharya SK, Joshi YK. Prevalence of hepatitis C virus antibodies in the general population & amp; in selected groups of patients in Delhi. *Indian J Med Res* 1995; **102**: 162-164 [PMID: 8543360]

8 **Agarwal N**, Chatterjee K, Coshic P, Borgohain M. Nucleic acid testing for blood banks: an experience from a tertiary care centre in New Delhi, India. *Transfus Apher Sci* 2013; **49**: 482-484 [PMID: 23541414]

9 **Pahuja S**, Sharma M, Baitha B, Jain M. Prevalence and trends of markers of hepatitis C virus, hepatitis B virus and human immunodeficiency virus in Delhi blood donors: a hospital based study. *Jpn J Infect Dis* 2007; **60**: 389-391 [PMID: 18032841]

10 **Chandrashekar S**. Half a decade of mini-pool nucleic acid testing: Cost-effective way for improving blood safety in India. *Asian J Transfus Sci* 2014; **8**: 35-38 [PMID: 24678172 DOI: 10.4103/0973-6247.126688]

11 **Morishima C**, Gretch DR. Clinical use of hepatitis C virus tests for diagnosis and monitoring during therapy. *Clin Liver Dis* 1999; **3**: 717-740 [PMID: 11291247]

12 **Richter SS**. Laboratory assays for diagnosis and management of hepatitis C virus infection. *J Clin Microbiol* 2002; **40**: 4407-4412 [PMID: 12454127 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.40.12.4407-4412.2002]

13 **Clemens JM**, Taskar S, Chau K, Vallari D, Shih JW, Alter HJ, Schleicher JB, Mimms LT. IgM antibody response in acute hepatitis C viral infection. *Blood* 1992; **79**: 169-172 [PMID: 1309424]

14 **Somi MH**, Etemadi J, Ghojazadeh M, Farhang S, Faramarzi M, Foroutan S, Soleimanpour M. Risk factors of HCV seroconversion in hemodialysis patients in tabriz, iran. *Hepat Mon* 2014; **14**: e17417 [PMID: 24976839 DOI: 10.5812/hepatmon.17417]

15 **Nafishah A**, Asiah MN, Syimah AT, Mohd Zahari TH, Yasmin A, Normi M, Anza E, Shahnaz M, Narazah MY. Rate of seroconversion in repeat blood donors at the national blood centre, kuala lumpur. *Indian J Hematol Blood Transfus* 2014; **30**: 105-110 [PMID: 24839364 DOI: 10.1007/s12288-012-0213-4]

16 **Atrah HI**, Hutchinson F, Gough D, Ala FA, Ahmed MM. Hepatitis C virus seroconversion rate in established blood donors. *J Med Virol* 1995; **46**: 329-333 [PMID: 7595409]

17 **van der Helm J**, Geskus R, Sabin C, Meyer L, Del Amo J, Chêne G, Dorrucci M, Muga R, Porter K, Prins M. Effect of HCV infection on cause-specific mortality after HIV seroconversion, before and after 1997. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: 751-760.e2 [PMID: 23266560 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.12.026]

18 HCV TRI-DOT rapid visual test for the qualitative detection of antibodies to hepatitis C virus in human serum/plasma HCV antigens for Core, NS3, NS4 & NS5 protocol. Available from: URL: http://jmitra.co.in/download/Procedure/Manual-HCV-Tri-Dot.pdf

19 **OraSure Technologies**. Step-by-Step Instructions: For OraQuick® HCV Rapid Antibody Test. Available from: URL: http://hcvadvocate.org/Hepatitis/factsheets_pdf/OraQuick_HCV_Rapid_Antibody_Test.pdf

20 **WHO**. List of prequalified in vitro diagnostic products (updated 2014 December 16). Available from: URL: http: // www.who.int/diagnostics_laboratory/evaluations/PQ_list/en/

21 **Martinot-Peignoux M**, Marcellin P, Xu LZ, Bernuau J, Erlinger S, Benhamou JP, Larzul D. Reactivity to c33c antigen as a marker of hepatitis C virus multiplication. *J Infect Dis* 1992; **165**: 595-596 [PMID: 1371538 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/165.3.595]

22 **Filice G**, Patruno S, Campisi D, Chiesa A, Orsolini P, Debiaggi M, Bruno R, Tinelli M. Specificity and sensitivity of 3rd generation EIA for detection of HCV antibodies among intravenous drug-users. *New Microbiol* 1993; **16**: 35-42 [PMID: 7682283]

23 **Hart-Malloy R**, Carrascal A, Dirienzo AG, Flanigan C, McClamroch K, Smith L. Estimating HCV prevalence at the state level: a call to increase and strengthen current surveillance systems. *Am J Public Health* 2013; **103**: 1402-1405 [PMID: 23763407 DOI: 10.2105/AJPH.2013.301231]

24 **François M**, Dubois F, Brand D, Bacq Y, Guerois C, Mouchet C, Tichet J, Goudeau A, Barin F. Prevalence and significance of hepatitis C virus (HCV) viremia in HCV antibody-positive subjects from various populations. *J Clin Microbiol* 1993; **31**: 1189-1193 [PMID: 7684749]

25 **Chevaliez S**, Pawlotsky JM. Diagnosis and management of chronic viral hepatitis: antigens, antibodies and viral genomes. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2008; **22**: 1031-1048 [PMID: 19187865 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpg.2008.11.004]

26 **Kamili S**, Drobeniuc J, Araujo AC, Hayden TM. Laboratory diagnostics for hepatitis C virus infection. *Clin Infect Dis* 2012; **55** Suppl 1: S43-S48 [PMID: 22715213 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cis368]

27 **Thakur V**, Gupta RC, Arankale V, Sarin SK. Low specificity of the third generation ELISA for HCV detection in voluntary blood donors in India. *J Int Fed Clin Chem* 1999; **14**: 1

28 **Damen M**, Zaaijer HL, Cuypers HT, Vrielink H, van der Poel CL, Reesink HW, Lelie PN. Reliability of the third-generation recombinant immunoblot assay for hepatitis C virus. *Transfusion* 1995; **35**: 745-749 [PMID: 7570934]

29 **Tobler LH**, Stramer SL, Kleinman SH, Brodsky JP, Todd DS, Busch MP. Misclassification of HCV-viremic blood donors as indeterminate by RIBA 3.0 because of human superoxide dismutase reactivity. *Transfusion* 2001; **41**: 1625-1626 [PMID: 11778082]

30 **Pawtosky JM**. Significance of indeterminate second generation RIBA and resolution by third generation RIBA. In: Groupe Francais d'Eludes Moleculaires des Hepatites (GENM HEP), ed. Hepatitis C virus: New Diagnostic Tools. Paris: John Libbey Eurotext, 1994: 177-188

31 **Chevaliez S**, Soulier A, Poiteau L, Bouvier-Alias M, Pawlotsky JM. Clinical utility of hepatitis C virus core antigen quantification in patients with chronic hepatitis C. *J Clin Virol* 2014; **61**: 145-148 [PMID: 24973282 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2014.05.014]

32 **Ross RS**, Viazov S, Salloum S, Hilgard P, Gerken G, Roggendorf M. Analytical performance characteristics and clinical utility of a novel assay for total hepatitis C virus core antigen quantification. *J Clin Microbiol* 2010; **48**: 1161-1168 [PMID: 20107102 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.01640-09]

33 **Song D**, Kang JE, Kim SY, Hwang SH, Kim HH, Lee EY, Son HC. Evaluation of ARCHITECT HCV core antigen assay. *Korean J Lab Med* 2010; **30**: 654-659 [PMID: 21157153 DOI: 10.3343/kjlm.2010.30.6.654]

34 **Medici MC**, Furlini G, Rodella A, Fuertes A, Monachetti A, Calderaro A, Galli S, Terlenghi L, Olivares M, Bagnarelli P, Costantini A, De Conto F, Sainz M, Galli C, Manca N, Landini MP, Dettori G, Chezzi C. Hepatitis C virus core antigen: analytical performances, correlation with viremia and potential applications of a quantitative, automated immunoassay. *J Clin Virol* 2011; **51**: 264-269 [PMID: 21621454 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2011.05.003]

35 **Moradpour D**, Penin F. Hepatitis C virus proteins: from structure to function. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2013; **369**: 113-142 [PMID: 23463199 DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-27340-7_5]

36 **Bukh J**, Purcell RH, Miller RH. Sequence analysis of the 5′ noncoding region of hepatitis C virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1992; **89**: 4942-4946 [PMID: 1317578]

37 **Yanagi M**, St Claire M, Emerson SU, Purcell RH, Bukh J. In vivo analysis of the 3′ untranslated region of the hepatitis C virus after in vitro mutagenesis of an infectious cDNA clone. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1999; **96**: 2291-2295 [PMID: 10051634 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.96.5.2291]

38 **Choo QL**, Richman KH, Han JH, Berger K, Lee C, Dong C, Gallegos C, Coit D, Medina-Selby R, Barr PJ. Genetic organization and diversity of the hepatitis C virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1991; **88**: 2451-2455 [PMID: 1848704]

39 **Simmonds P**. Variability of hepatitis C virus. *Hepatology* 1995; **21**: 570-583 [PMID: 7531173]

40 **Bartenschlager R**, Cosset FL, Lohmann V. Hepatitis C virus replication cycle. *J Hepatol* 2010; **53**: 583-585 [PMID: 20579761 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.04.015]

41 **McLauchlan J**. Properties of the hepatitis C virus core protein: a structural protein that modulates cellular processes. *J Viral Hepat* 2000; **7**: 2-14 [PMID: 10718937 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2893.2000.00201.x]

42 **Yasui K**, Wakita T, Tsukiyama-Kohara K, Funahashi SI, Ichikawa M, Kajita T, Moradpour D, Wands JR, Kohara M. The native form and maturation process of hepatitis C virus core protein. *J Virol* 1998; **72**: 6048-6055 [PMID: 9621068]

43 **Kunkel M**, Watowich SJ. Conformational changes accompanying self-assembly of the hepatitis C virus core protein. *Virology* 2002; **294**: 239-245 [PMID: 12009865]

44 **Goffard A**, Dubuisson J. Glycosylation of hepatitis C virus envelope proteins. *Biochimie* 2003; **85**: 295-301 [PMID:

12770768]
45 **Keck ZY**, Op De Beeck A, Hadlock KG, Xia J, Li TK, Dubuisson J, Foung SK. Hepatitis C virus E2 has three immunogenic domains containing conformational epitopes with distinct properties and biological functions. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 9224-9232 [PMID: 15308717]
46 **Han JH**, Houghton M. Group specific sequences and conserved secondary structures at the 3′ end of HCV genome and its implication for viral replication. *Nucleic Acids Res* 1992; **20**: 3520 [PMID: 1321416]
47 **Blight KJ**, Rice CM. Secondary structure determination of the conserved 98-base sequence at the 3′ terminus of hepatitis C virus genome RNA. *J Virol* 1997; **71**: 7345-7352 [PMID: 9311812]
48 **Tanaka T**, Kato N, Cho MJ, Shimotohno K. A novel sequence found at the 3′ terminus of hepatitis C virus genome. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1995; **215**: 744-749 [PMID: 7488017]
49 **Yamada N**, Tanihara K, Takada A, Yorihuzi T, Tsutsumi M, Shimomura H, Tsuji T, Date T. Genetic organization and diversity of the 3′ noncoding region of the hepatitis C virus genome. *Virology* 1996; **223**: 255-261 [PMID: 8806561]
50 **Vernelen K**, Claeys H, Verhaert H, Volckaerts A, Vermylen C. Significance of NS3 and NS5 antigens in screening for HCV antibody. *Lancet* 1994; **343**: 853 [PMID: 7511194]
51 **Albadalejo J**, Alonso R, Antinozzi R, Bogard M, Bourgault AM, Colucci G, Fenner T, Petersen H, Sala E, Vincelette J, Young C. Multicenter evaluation of the COBAS AMPLICOR HCV assay, an integrated PCR system for rapid detection of hepatitis C virus RNA in the diagnostic laboratory. *J Clin Microbiol* 1998; **36**: 862-865 [PMID: 9542899]
52 **DiDomenico N**, Link H, Knobel R, Caratsch T, Weschler W, Loewy ZG, Rosenstraus M. COBAS AMPLICOR: fully automated RNA and DNA amplification and detection system for routine diagnostic PCR. *Clin Chem* 1996; **42**: 1915-1923 [PMID: 8969626]
53 **Colucci G**, Gutekunst K. Development of a quantitative PCR assay for monitoring HCV viraemia levels in patients with chronic hepatitis C. *J Viral Hepat* 1997; **4** Suppl 1: 75-78 [PMID: 9097282]
54 **Hawkins A**, Davidson F, Simmonds P. Comparison of plasma virus loads among individuals infected with hepatitis C virus (HCV) genotypes 1, 2, and 3 by quantiplex HCV RNA assay versions 1 and 2, Roche Monitor assay, and an in-house limiting dilution method. *J Clin Microbiol* 1997; **35**: 187-192 [PMID: 8968905]
55 **Beld M**, Sentjens R, Rebers S, Weegink C, Weel J, Sol C, Boom R. Performance of the New Bayer VERSANT HCV RNA 3.0 assay for quantitation of hepatitis C virus RNA in plasma and serum: conversion to international units and comparison with the Roche COBAS Amplicor HCV Monitor, Version 2.0, assay. *J Clin Microbiol* 2002; **40**: 788-793 [PMID: 11880394]
56 **Lee SC**, Antony A, Lee N, Leibow J, Yang JQ, Soviero S, Gutekunst K, Rosenstraus M. Improved version 2.0 qualitative and quantitative AMPLICOR reverse transcription-PCR tests for hepatitis C virus RNA: calibration to international units, enhanced genotype reactivity, and performance characteristics. *J Clin Microbiol* 2000; **38**: 4171-4179 [PMID: 11060086]
57 **Desombere I**, Van Vlierberghe H, Couvent S, Clinckspoor F, Leroux-Roels G. Comparison of qualitative (COBAS AMPLICOR HCV 2.0 versus VERSANT HCV RNA) and quantitative (COBAS AMPLICOR HCV monitor 2.0 versus VERSANT HCV RNA 3.0) assays for hepatitis C virus (HCV) RNA detection and quantification: impact on diagnosis and treatment of HCV infections. *J Clin Microbiol* 2005; **43**: 2590-2597 [PMID: 15956369]
58 **Zeuzem S**, Lee JH, Franke A, Rüster B, Prümmer O, Herrmann G, Roth WK. Quantification of the initial decline of serum hepatitis C virus RNA and response to interferon alfa. *Hepatology* 1998; **27**: 1149-1156 [PMID: 9537457]
59 **Davidson F**, Simmonds P, Ferguson JC, Jarvis LM, Dow BC, Follett EA, Seed CR, Krusius T, Lin C, Medgyesi GA. Survey of major genotypes and subtypes of hepatitis C virus using RFLP of sequences amplified from the 5′ non-coding region. *J Gen Virol* 1995; **76** (Pt 5): 1197-1204 [PMID: 7730804 DOI: 10.1099/0022-1317-76-5-1197]
60 **Murphy DG**, Willems B, Deschênes M, Hilzenrat N, Mousseau R, Sabbah S. Use of sequence analysis of the NS5B region for routine genotyping of hepatitis C virus with reference to C/E1 and 5′ untranslated region sequences. *J Clin Microbiol* 2007; **45**: 1102-1112 [PMID: 17287328]
61 **Casanova YS**, Boeira Tda R, Sisti E, Celmer Á, Fonseca AS, Ikuta N, Simon D, Lunge VR. A complete molecular biology assay for hepatitis C virus detection, quantification and genotyping. *Rev Soc Bras Med Trop* 2014; **47**: 287-294 [PMID: 25075478]
62 **Furione M**, Simoncini L, Gatti M, Baldanti F, Grazia Revello M, Gerna G. HCV genotyping by three methods: analysis of discordant results based on sequencing. *J Clin Virol* 1999; **13**: 121-130 [PMID: 10443788]
63 **Bouchardeau F**, Cantaloube JF, Chevaliez S, Portal C, Razer A, Lefrère JJ, Pawlotsky JM, De Micco P, Laperche S. Improvement of hepatitis C virus (HCV) genotype determination with the new version of the INNO-LiPA HCV assay. *J Clin Microbiol* 2007; **45**: 1140-1145 [PMID: 17251399 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.01982-06]
64 **Saha K**, Firdaus R, Biswas A, Mukherjee A, Sadhukhan PC. A novel nested reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction method for rapid hepatitis C virus detection and genotyping. *Indian J Med Microbiol* 2014; **32**: 130-136 [PMID: 24713897 DOI: 10.4103/0255-0857.129782]
65 **Cantaloube JF**, Laperche S, Gallian P, Bouchardeau F, de Lamballerie X, de Micco P. Analysis of the 5′ noncoding region versus the NS5b region in genotyping hepatitis C virus isolates from blood donors in France. *J Clin Microbiol* 2006; **44**: 2051-2056 [PMID: 16757597 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02463-05]
66 **Saha K**, Firdaus R, Biswas A, Mukherjee A, Sarkar K, Chakrabarti S, Sadhukhan PC. Transmission dynamics of hepatitis C virus among intra venous drug users in the border state of Manipur, India. *Infect Genet Evol* 2014; **24**: 57-67 [PMID: 24650917 DOI: 10.1016/j.meegid.2014.03.008]
67 **Lole KS**, Jha JA, Shrotri SP, Tandon BN, Prasad VG, Arankalle VA. Comparison of hepatitis C virus genotyping by 5′ noncoding region- and core-based reverse transcriptase PCR assay with sequencing and use of the assay for determining subtype distribution in India. *J Clin Microbiol* 2003; **41**: 5240-5244 [PMID: 14605173]
68 **Shawky SM**, Guirgis BS, Azzazy HM. Detection of unamplified HCV RNA in serum using a novel two metallic nanoparticle platform. *Clin Chem Lab Med* 2014; **52**: 565-572 [PMID: 24158422 DOI: 10.1515/cclm-2013-0521]
69 **Liu J**, Zhang GX. [A protein array based on quantum dots (QDs) encoded microbeads for detection of hepatitis C virus]. *Zhonghua Shi Yan He Lin Chuang Bing Du Xue Za Zhi* 2013; **27**: 67-69 [PMID: 23855136]
70 **Roh C**, Lee HY, Kim SE, Jo SK. A highly sensitive and selective viral protein detection method based on RNA oligonucleotide nanoparticle. *Int J Nanomedicine* 2010; **5**: 323-329 [PMID: 20517476]
71 **Biju V**, Itoh T, Anas A, Sujith A, Ishikawa M. Semiconductor quantum dots and metal nanoparticles: syntheses, optical properties, and biological applications. *Anal Bioanal Chem* 2008; **391**: 2469-2495 [PMID: 18548237]
72 **Ghasemi Y**, Peymani P, Afifi S. Quantum dot: magic nanoparticle for imaging, detection and targeting. *Acta Biomed* 2009; **80**: 156-165 [PMID: 19848055]
73 **Ellington AD**, Szostak JW. In vitro selection of RNA molecules that bind specific ligands. *Nature* 1990; **346**: 818-822 [PMID: 1697402]
74 **Tuerk C**, Gold L. Systematic evolution of ligands by

exponential enrichment: RNA ligands to bacteriophage T4 DNA polymerase. *Science* 1990; **249**: 505-510 [PMID: 2200121]
75 **Yang D**, Meng X, Yu Q, Xu L, Long Y, Liu B, Fang X, Zhu H. Inhibition of hepatitis C virus infection by DNA aptamer against envelope protein. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2013; **57**: 4937-4944 [PMID: 23877701 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00897]

P- Reviewer: Bare P **S- Editor**: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Wu HL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i1.33

World J Virol 2015 February 12; 4(1): 33-35
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

LETTERS TO THE EDITOR

Ledipasvir and sofosbuvir: Interferon free therapy for hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection

Yasir Waheed

Yasir Waheed, Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences, National University of Sciences and Technology, Islamabad 44000, Pakistan
Yasir Waheed, Foundation University Medical College, Foundation University Islamabad, DHA Phase I, Islamabad 44000, Pakistan
Author contributions: Waheed Y solely contributed to this manuscript.
Conflict-of-interest: The author does not have any conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: Yasir Waheed, PhD, Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences, National University of Sciences and Technology, H-12, Islamabad 44000, Pakistan. yasir_waheed_199@hotmail.com
Telephone: +92-300-5338171
Received: September 1, 2014
Peer-review started: September 2, 2014
First decision: November 19, 2014
Revised: December 3, 2014
Accepted: December 16, 2014
Article in press: December 17, 2014
Published online: February 12, 2015

Abstract

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) has infected more than 200 million people around the globe. From 2001-2011, interferon plus ribavirin remained the standard of care for patients with HCV infection. The therapy had a limited response with a number of side effects. Recently, results for phase III trials of ledipasvir and sofosbuvir combination therapy have been announced. In treatment naïve patients, 12 wk of therapy with ledipasvir and sofosbuvir showed a sustained virological response (SVR) rate of 99%. In treatment experienced patients, 12-24 wk of therapy with ledipasvir and sofosbuvir in the absence or presence of ribavirin showed an SVR rate of 94%-99%. In cirrhotic patients the rate of SVR was 86% and 99% for 12 and 24 wk of therapy, respectively. The ledipasvir and sofosbuvir therapy showed very good results in different subgroups of patients regardless of patient's race, alanine aminotransferase levels, sex and host genetic factors. The combination therapy was well tolerated with no emergence of resistant mutants. The most common adverse effects were nausea, headache and fatigue. With the availability of interferon free therapy with minimal adverse effects, it will be easy to decrease the future morbidity and mortality caused by HCV infection.

Key words: Hepatitis C; Interferon; Ledipasvir; Sofosbuvir; Genotype

Core tip: The interferon based therapy for hepatitis C patients has a limited response with a number of adverse effects. The ledipasvir and sofosbuvir combination therapy showed a sustained virological response (SVR) rate of 99% in treatment naïve patients. The rate of SVR was 94%-99% in treatment experienced patients, while in cirrhotic patients the rate of SVR was 86%-99%. The treatment response was not affected by ethnicity or host genetic factors.

Waheed Y. Ledipasvir and sofosbuvir: Interferon free therapy for hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(1): 33-35 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i1/33.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i1.33

TO THE EDITOR

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is a major health problem around the globe, with more than 200 million people infected worldwide. Although the rate of HCV infection is continuously declining, the rates of HCV associated morbidity and mortality are continuously increasing.

From 2001-2011, interferon and ribavirin therapy remained the standard of care for patients living with HCV. The therapy had a limited response with a number of side effects. The major adverse effects associated with interferon administration were flu like symptoms, cytopenia and depression, whereas ribavirin therapy causes fatigue, anemia, rash and pruritus. The major objective of recent treatment regimens is to eliminate the interferon and ribavirin from the treatment regimen so that the adverse effects of therapy can be reduced and the therapy become available for patients who are ineligible for the interferon and ribavirin therapy.

Sofosbuvir is a nucleoside analogue that can inhibit the HCV polymerase, approved by the Food and Drug Administration for the treatment of patients living with HCV. Ledipasvir is an inhibitor of HCV NS5A protein, showing antiviral activity against HCV genotype 1 infection.

In a phase Ⅱ clinical trial, 100 patients with HCV genotype 1 infection who were treatment naïve or previously treated with protease inhibitors were enrolled at a centre in the United States. The patients were given a fixed-dose combination of sofosbuvir (400 mg) and ledipasvir (90 mg). In cohort A, 60 treatment naïve, non-cirrhotic patients who were given sofosbuvir plus ledipasvir (8 wk), sofosbuvir plus ledipasvir along with ribavirin (8 wk), or sofosbuvir plus ledipasvir (12 wk) showed an SVR rate of 95%, 100%, and 95% respectively. In cohort B, 40 previous non-responders to protease therapy were included. They were given sofosbuvir plus ledipasvir (12 wk) or sofosbuvir plus ledispavir along with ribavirin (12 wk), and the sustained virological response (SVR) rate was 95% and 100%, respectively[1]. The sofosbuvir-ledipasvir combination therapy cured most of patients with HCV genotype 1 infection, irrespective of their treatment history. Further investigations were required to optimize the treatment duration and the role of ribavirin in treatment response.

In a phase Ⅲ clinical trial, 865 previously untreated patients were enrolled and they were randomly divided into four groups. Group 1 received ledipasvir and sofosbuvir for 12 wk and showed an SVR rate of 99%. Group 2 received ledipasvir and sofosbuvir along with ribavirin for 12 wk and showed an SVR rate of 97%. Group 3 received ledipasvir and sofosbuvir for 24 wk and showed an SVR rate of 98%. Group 4 received ledipasvir and sofosbuvir along with ribavirin for 24 wk and showed an SVR rate of 99%. The study concluded that the 12 wk therapy with ledipasvir and sofosbuvir was highly effective for patients living with HCV genotype 1 infection. No additional benefit was observed by the addition of ribavirin or by the extension of therapy to 24 wk[2].

In another phase Ⅲ trial, 440 previously treated patients were enrolled, 20% of whom had cirrhosis. The patients were given ledipasvir and sofosbuvir in the presence or absence of ribavirin from 12 or 24 wk. The rate of SVR achieved was 94%-99%. In patients with cirrhosis the rate of SVR was 86% (ledipasvir-sofosbuvir) and 82% (ledipasvir-sofosbuvir plus ribavirin) with 12 wk of treatment, while the rate of SVR was 99% (with both regimens) in patients having 24 wk of treatment. The study concluded that the single tablet of ledipasvir–sofosbuvir showed a better rate of SVR even in the patients who were not responders to the interferon based therapy[3].

The ledipasvir and sofosbuvir therapy produced very good results in different subgroups of patients regardless of patient's race, alanine aminotransferase levels, sex and host genetic factors. The combination therapy was well tolerated. No S282T variant was observed. The most common adverse effects were nausea, headache and fatigue[2-4].

A total of 1952 patients were enrolled in three different phase III trials of ledipasvir and sofosbuvir, out of which 97% showed SVR[2-4]. Out of the remaining 3%, half of them withdrew consent or were lost to follow-up. Undetectable viral RNA was not achieved in only two patients. The rate of relapse was observed in only 2% after stopping therapy. The rate of relapse was also linked with the treatment duration. The rate of relapse was observed in 5%, 2% and 0.2% of patients who received 8 wk, 12 wk and 24 wk of treatment, respectively[5].

With the availability of oral, short duration, interferon free therapy with minimal adverse effects, the future morbidity and mortality associated with HCV infection will decrease. The major problem with the therapy is its cost. The cost of 12 wk therapy with sofosbuvir alone is $84000 and the addition of ledispavir will further increase the cost[5]. The high cost of the therapy will affect the goal of providing safe and effective treatment for millions of patients living with HCV around the globe.

REFERENCES

1 **Lawitz E**, Poordad FF, Pang PS, Hyland RH, Ding X, Mo H, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Membreno FE. Sofosbuvir and ledipasvir fixed-dose combination with and without ribavirin in treatment-naive and previously treated patients with genotype 1 hepatitis C virus infection (LONESTAR): an open-label, randomised, phase 2 trial. *Lancet* 2014; **383**: 515-523 [PMID: 24209977 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(13)62121-2]

2 **Afdhal N**, Zeuzem S, Kwo P, Chojkier M, Gitlin N, Puoti M, Romero-Gomez M, Zarski JP, Agarwal K, Buggisch P, Foster GR, Bräu N, Buti M, Jacobson IM, Subramanian GM, Ding X, Mo H, Yang JC, Pang PS, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Muir AJ, Mangia A, Marcellin P. Ledipasvir and sofosbuvir for untreated HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1889-1898 [PMID: 24725239 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1402454]

3 **Afdhal N**, Reddy KR, Nelson DR, Lawitz E, Gordon SC, Schiff E, Nahass R, Ghalib R, Gitlin N, Herring R, Lalezari J, Younes ZH, Pockros PJ, Di Bisceglie AM, Arora S, Subramanian GM, Zhu Y, Dvory-Sobol H, Yang JC, Pang PS, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Muir AJ, Sulkowski M, Kwo P. Ledipasvir and sofosbuvir for previously treated HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1483-1493 [PMID: 24725238

DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1316366]
4 **Kowdley KV**, Gordon SC, Reddy KR, Rossaro L, Bernstein DE, Lawitz E, Shiffman ML, Schiff E, Ghalib R, Ryan M, Rustgi V, Chojkier M, Herring R, Di Bisceglie AM, Pockros PJ, Subramanian GM, An D, Svarovskaia E, Hyland RH, Pang PS, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Muir AJ, Pound D, Fried MW. Ledipasvir and sofosbuvir for 8 or 12 weeks for chronic HCV without cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1879-1888 [PMID: 24720702 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1402355]
5 **Hoofnagle JH**, Sherker AH. Therapy for hepatitis C--the costs of success. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1552-1553 [PMID: 24725236 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMe1401508]

P- Reviewer: Valenti L, Wong DKH **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: Wang TQ **E- Editor**: Wu HL

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

World Journal of *Virology*

World J Virol 2015 May 12; 4(2): 36-155

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJV World Journal of Virology

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of virology

Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Virology* Editorial Board consists of 341 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in virology. They are from 58 countries, including Argentina (5), Australia (6), Austria (3), Barbados (1), Belgium (2), Brazil (6), Bulgaria (1), Cameroon (1), Canada (11), Chile (1), China (52), Croatia (2), Cuba (1), Czech Republic (1), Denmark (1), Egypt (2), Ethiopia (1), Finland (4), France (11), Germany (12), Ghana (1), Greece (2), Hungary (1), India (11), Indonesia (1), Iran (1), Ireland (3), Israel (5), Italy (24), Japan (13), Kazakhstan (1), Kenya (1), Kosovo (1), Mexico (2), Netherlands (6), New Zealand (1), Nigeria (1), Pakistan (2), Palestine (1), Poland (1), Portugal (1), Romania (1), Russia (2), Saudi Arabia (1), Senegal (1), Singapore (2), Slovakia (1), Slovenia (2), South Africa (3), South Korea (4), Spain (14), Sweden (3), Thailand (8), Tunisia (1), Turkey (4), United Kingdom (7), United States (82), and Uruguay (1).

WJV World Journal of Virology

Contents

Quarterly Volume 4 Number 2 May 12, 2015

META-ANALYSIS

World Journal of Virology
Volume 4 Number 2 May 12, 2015

Contents

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Virology

ISSN
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
February 12, 2012

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF
Ling Lu, MD, PhD, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, University of Kansas Medical Center, Kansas City, 3901 Rainbow Blvd, WHE 3020, KS 66160, United States

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director

World Journal of Virology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center, No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
May 12, 2015

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.36

World J Virol 2015 May 12; 4(2): 36-41
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

EDITORIAL

Molecular interactions between hepatitis B virus and delta virus

Elham Shirvani-Dastgerdi, Frank Tacke

Elham Shirvani-Dastgerdi, Frank Tacke, Department of Medicine III, University Hospital Aachen, 52074 Aachen, Germany
Author contributions: Shirvani-Dastgerdi E and Tacke F wrote this editorial.
Supported by The German Research Foundation (DFG Ta434/2-1 and SFB/TRR57); and by the Interdisciplinary Center for Clinical Research (IZKF) Aachen.
Conflict-of-interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: Frank Tacke, MD, PhD, Department of Medicine III, RWTH-University Hospital Aachen, Pauwelsstrasse 30, 52074 Aachen, Germany. frank.tacke@gmx.net
Telephone: +49-241-8035848
Fax: +49-241-8082455
Received: January 13, 2015
Peer-review started: January 15, 2015
First decision: February 7, 2015
Revised: February 12, 2015
Accepted: March 5, 2015
Article in press: March 9, 2015
Published online: May 12, 2015

Abstract

As a deficient virus due to the lack of envelope proteins, hepatitis D virus (HDV) causes chronic or fulminant "delta hepatitis" only in people with simultaneous hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection. HBV encodes three types of surface proteins known as small (S), medium (M) and large (L) envelope proteins. All three types of HBV surface antigens (HBsAgs) are present on HDV virions. The envelopment process of HDV occurs through interactions between the HDV ribonucleoprotein (RNP) complex and HBV HBsAgs. While HBsAg is the only protein required by HDV, the exact interaction sites between the S protein and pre-mature HDV are not well defined yet. In fact, these sites are distributed along the S protein with some hot spots for the envelopment process. Moreover, in most clinically studied samples, HDV infection is associated with a dramatically reduced HBV viral load, temporarily or permanently, while HBsAg resources are available for HDV packaging. Thus, beyond interacting with HBV envelope proteins, controlling mechanisms exist by which HDV inhibits HBV-DNA replication while allowing a selective transcription of HBV proteins. Here we discuss the molecular interaction sites between HBsAg and the HDV-RNP complex and address the proposed indirect mechanisms, which are employed by HBV and HDV to facilitate or inhibit each other's viral replication. Understanding molecular interactions between HBV and HDV may help to design novel therapeutic strategies for delta hepatitis.

Key words: Viral hepatitis; Hepatitis B virus; Hepatitis D virus; Hepatitis B virus surface antigens; Hepatitis D virus antigen; Ag loop; Liver cirrhosis

Core tip: Hepatitis D virus (HDV) causes accelerated liver disease in form of fulminant or chronic hepatitis in patients with hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection. HBV supports HDV replication by sharing its surface proteins. Even without overt HBV-DNA replication, transcription of HBV surface proteins (HBsAgs) remains stable in HDV infected cells, which is essential for assembly of HDV virions containing HBsAg proteins. HDV replication is oftentimes associated with a suppression of HBV-DNA levels, and several mechanisms have been suggested how HBV or HDV may influence each other's replication. Understanding molecular interactions between HBV and HDV may help to design novel therapeutic strategies.

Shirvani-Dastgerdi E, Tacke F. Molecular interactions between hepatitis B virus and delta virus. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(2): 36-41 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i2/36.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.36

INTRODUCTION

Globally, about 350 million people are chronically infected with hepatitis B virus (HBV), of which 15 million are positive for hepatitis D virus (HDV) antibodies[1]. HDV causes chronic or fulminant "delta hepatitis", in form of co- or super-infection in HBV infected patients[2]. Delta virus is considered as a very deleterious pathogen since its infection commonly leads to progression of hepatic fibrosis, cirrhosis and increased risk of hepatocellular carcinoma[2,3]. There are eight known genotypes of HDV (from 1 to 8), of which genotype 1 has a worldwide distribution and genotype 3 has been associated with the most severe outcome of liver disease[4,5]. With a virion size of 36 nm and a 1.7 Kb genomic circular RNA, HDV is the smallest known human virus. Its genome encodes only two structural proteins termed small- and large-HD-antigens (S- and L-HDAg). The proteins are transcribed from the same open reading frame (ORF) and are identical except for a 19 amino acid extension in C-terminal domain of L-HDAg[2].

HDV requires the function of a helper virus as an envelope source for virion envelopment and propagation. This function can be provided through HBV (all genotypes from A to H) or other *Orthohepadnaviridae* members, such as Woodchuck hepatitis virus (WHV), by sharing the surface proteins[2]. The 19 amino acid extension of L-HDAg, which is called the "packaging signal", is responsible for this interaction[6]. While HBV thereby provides an essential basis for HDV viremia and infectivity, most clinical studies reported that HBV replication is diminished in HBV-HDV-infected patients and that HDV co-infection is associated with lower HBV viremia than HBV mono-infection[7]. However, HBV-DNA, HDV-RNA and HBsAg apparently fluctuate in longitudinally studied patients indicating ongoing and dynamic interactions between HBV and HDV in infected cells[8].

Although the direct contact between HBsAg and HDAg for HDV virion envelopment can be considered the main interaction, other less well understood mechanisms may also interfere with the replication of both viruses in infected cells[9]. Here we describe possible mechanisms for HBV/HDV interactions and their probable molecular cross-talks in infected cells. These mechanisms include HBsAg-HDAg interactions and HDV-trans-controlling of HBV genome replication/transcription, cellular transcriptional pathways and RNA polymerase activity in dually infected hepatocytes.

HBsAg-HDAg INTERACTIONS

HBV encodes three surface proteins with different initiation-of-replication sites from one ORF. These proteins are large, medium and small HBsAgs (L-, M- and S-HBsAg)[10]. As an integral protein, S-HBsAg (226 amino acids) is anchored in the lipid bilayer of the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) through its N-terminal (residues 4-28 and 80-100) and C-terminal (residues 165-226) transmembrane domains (TMDs). It also includes an antigenic loop (Ag loop, residues 101-164) with immunodominant epitopes, facing the ER lumen. The rest of residues located between TMDs face the cytoplasm and are called cytosolic loops (CYLs). These are expected to be residues 29 to 79 (CYL-Ⅰ) and 194 to 201 (CYL-Ⅱ)[11]. The M-HBsAg (281 amino acids), contains the whole S-HBsAg plus an N-terminal preS2 region facing the ER lumen. The L-HBsAg (389-400 amino acids), contains preS1, preS2 (preS) and S domains[12]. This protein has two conformations based on the positioning of preS in ER membrane towards the cytoplasm (for virion formation) or ER lumen (for receptor binding)[11]. All three types of HBsAgs are found on the surface of mature HDV particles[2]. The schematic features of HBsAg proteins and their localization in ER membrane are shown in Figure 1.

Both HDV small and large proteins form connections to one another as well as to HDV RNA through RNA binding domains to assemble the HDV ribonucleoprotein (RNP) complex[6]. The L-HDAg is responsible for RNP localization in the ER membrane through a CXXX farnesylation signal (C stands for cytosine, and X for any amino acid) and also interactions with HBV surface proteins through its packaging signal (Figure 1)[2]. The packaging signal is very genotype specific in HDV (74% divergence between genotypes 1 and 2) and plays an important role in the envelopment. Although an association between HDV-1/HBV-A and -D and HDV-3/HBV-F and -A has been observed, independent investigations suggest that the co-infections are mainly representative of common genotypes of each of the viruses in certain geographical areas and not specific for distinct HBV or HDV genotypes[13-15]. Studies indicate that HDV genotype 2 is associated with a less aggressive disease compared to genotype 1 which has been attributed to the higher packaging efficiency of genotype 1 than that of genotype 2[16,17]. Moreover, a variation in the packaging efficiency has been observed among different isolates of the same genotype, which reflects the critical role of this length in HDAg interactions with HBsAg. It has been reported that the hydrophobic nature of the L-HDAg C-terminal domain provided by C211-farnesylation as well as the number of hydrophobic residues of the packaging signal (which differs among HDV genotypes) enhance HDV interactions with surface proteins of HBV and therefore the packaging efficiency[17].

While HBV requires both S- and L-HBAgs for viral

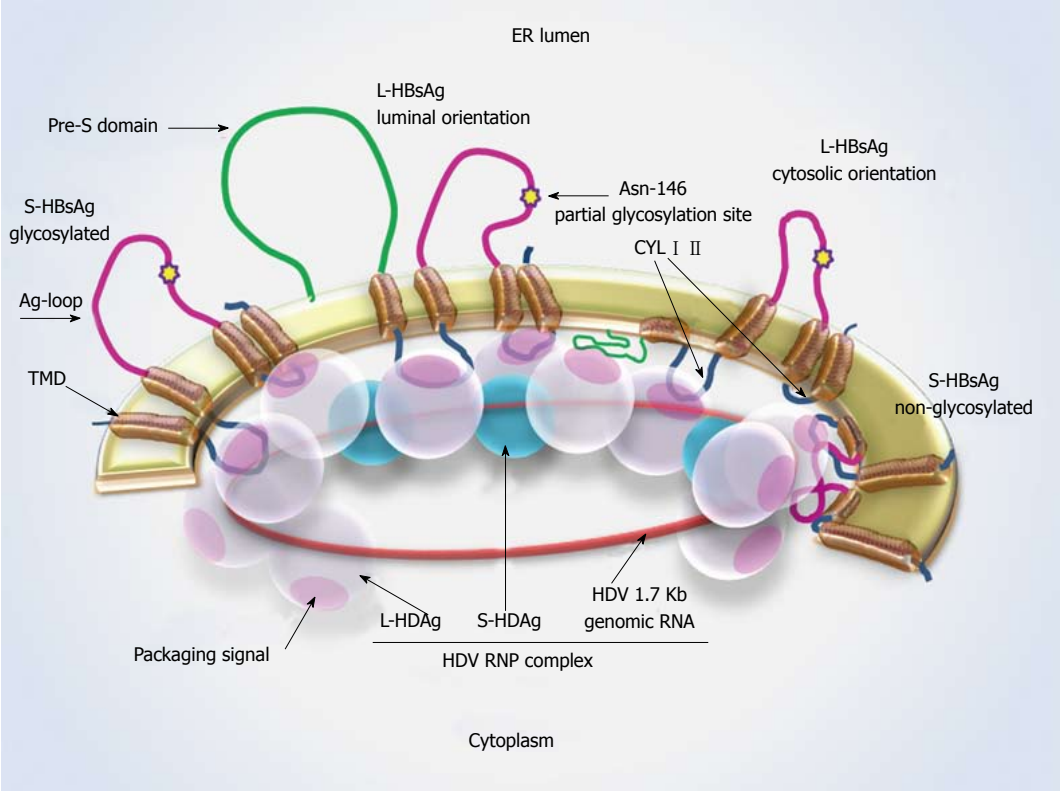


Figure 1 Hepatitis D virus-ribonucleoprotein complex interaction with S-hepatitis B virus surface antigen. Schematic representation of L- and S-HBsAg locations in the ER membrane and the interaction sites with the HDV-RNP complex. The Asn-146 glycosylation site is highlighted by a star. About half of the residues remain non-glycosylated at this site. A cytosolic orientation has been suggested for the non-glycosylated Ag loop, which may interfere with HBsAg-HDAg interaction. L-HDAg mediates HDV assembly at the late stage of viral replication through forming connections with HDV-RNA, S-HDAg and HBsAg. Ag loop: Antigenic loop; CYL I, II: Cytosolic loop I, II; ER: Endoplasmic reticulum; L-/ S-HBsAg: Large and small hepatitis B virus surface antigens; L-/ S-HDAg: Large and small hepatitis D virus proteins; RNP: Ribonucleoprotein; TMD: Transmembrane domain.

assembly, HDV needs S-HBsAg for its *in vitro* virion packaging and L-HBsAg for infectivity[18,19]. Therefore, it is very likely that most of the HDAg binding sites are located on the S domain of HBsAg[20]. While an intact HBsAg is not able to interact with L-HDAg, a denatured form of HBsAg is competent for such interactions suggesting that L-HDAg has no connection to the external domains of HBsAg but rather to the domains inside the particles[21]. The cytoplasmic orientation of the CYLs of the S protein, provides a reasonable condition for these sites to interact with pre-mature HDV virions in the cytosol (Figure 1)[22].

The importance of S-HBsAg residues 24 to 28 and 56 to 80 for HDV secretion has been shown in previous studies[23,24]. Also, a C-terminal truncation of HBsAg by 50 amino acids inhibits HDV envelopment and secretion[25]. Based on these data and also from our recent observation indicating a high rate of amino acid selection at CYLs of S-HBsAg in HBV isolates from HBV/HDV infected patients (own unpublished observations), these domains are expected to make a significant contribution in HDV packaging. Of special importance are tryptophan residues at positions 196, 199 and 201 at the C-terminal domain of S-HBsAg, which are suggested to have a central localization in binding interface with HDV-RNP complex[26].

Mutational studies revealed that in addition to the receptor binding site on the pre-S1 domain of L-HBsAg, the Ag loop is also responsible for HDV virion infectivity[27]. On the other hand, *in vitro* experiments using mutant HBsAg with deletions in Ag loop resulted in the lack of subviral particles as well as HDV virion secretion[27]. In more detailed studies it was shown that N-glycosylation of S-HBsAg, which is mediated by the C-terminal domain of S protein and occurs partially on Asn-146, affects HDV envelopment and secretion[12]. Based on these studies, HDV secretion is delayed or reduced (about ten folds) in the presence of non-glycosylated HBsAg, while HBV and HBsAg formation is not affected[21]. Although a weakened interaction between HBsAg and other components of HDV-RNP complex (rather than L-HDAg) has been suggested for this reduction, based on the luminal positioning of Ag loop in the ER membrane, a direct interaction of this domain and HDV components is unlikely[21,27]. Different mechanisms have been suggested to explain the effects of the antigenic domain, especially in its non-glycosylated form, on HDV packaging and secretion. One is a modified maturation and trafficking process for non-glycosylated HBsAg, which in turn will affect the rate of interactions with HDV[21]. The association of HBsAg with calnexin (a molecular chaperon in

ER membrane) is also affected by the glycosylation process[28]. Therefore, a non-glycosylated HBsAg is more prone to misfolding and late maturation[29]. Furthermore, it has been suggested that a non-glycosylated Ag loop faces the cytoplasm, which possibly masks the cytosolic interaction sites with HDV or hinders appropriate connections between HBsAg and HDV (Figure 1)[11]. Due to deferent propagation responses of HBV and HDV to non-glycosylated Ag loop, it is possible that these viruses apply different mechanisms to interact with HBsAg[21]. Likewise, the lateral S-S interactions between S protein carbohydrates, which play a critical role in virion stability, are suggested to occur differently for HBV and HDV due to their particle sizes[12].

INDIRECT INTERACTIONS BETWEEN HBV AND HDV AFFECTING VIRAL REPLICATION

There are several indications of low HBV replication levels in patients co-infected with HDV[7,9,30]. On the other hand, longitudinal analyses of HBV/HDV co-infected individuals demonstrated a fluctuating pattern of HBV and HDV replication over time[8]. In case that HDV is temporarily or permanently the dominant virus during dual infection with HBV, there should be a molecular scenario for these viruses to control each other's replication. Most of the studies so far, indicate a controlling role of HDV over HBV replication or its protein expression in infected cells[7,9,31].

Previous investigations showed that HBV DNA in the host cell genome can produce enough surface antigen molecules for HDV virion assembly even in the absence of precore and pregenomic RNAs and regardless of an active HBV replication[32,33]. These cells, which still produce some of the viral products, may be selected through immune responses, appear as a result of a resolved infection or just due to the support of the infected cells for parts of the viral proteins such as envelope antigens but not the complete replication of the virus[33-35]. Nonetheless, regarding the role of HBV as an envelope provider, HDV nucleoproteins can be considered as competitors with HBV for HBsAg. Therefore, they may induce a selective suppression on HBV replication associated with an increase in PreS/S RNAs and HBsAg levels in co-infected patients[9]. Investigations on the effects of S- and L-HDAgs on HBV replication have shown that these proteins inhibit HBV replication through a strong suppression of HBV enhancers (EnhI and II) and also trans-activation of the IFN-alpha-inducible MxA gene[31]. The inhibitory effects of L-HDAg on RNA polymerase II, which is involved in replication of both HBV and HDV viruses, might be another reason for reduced HBV replication in the presence of co-infection with HDV[36].

Another indication of HBV controlled replication/gene expression in HDV infected cells is the presence of basal core promoter (BCP) and precore (PC) mutations in the HBV genome of patients co-infected with HDV. Occurrence of HBV BCP and PC mutations is associated with lower levels of HBV DNA in both serum and liver without affecting HDV replication and clinical manifestations in patients[9,37]. In contrast, PC/BCP point mutations with HBeAg negative phenotype can significantly increase HBV viremia and replication of polymerase mutated strains in HDV-negative patients[38].

Other instances of indirect effects of HBV and HDV on each other's replication include the synergistic activation of serum response element (SRE)-dependent pathways by HBxAg and L-HDAg, thus affecting factors which are involved in transcription regulation mediated by SRE[39]. From the cross-talks between HBV and HDV we can also refer to the NF-κB activation, which results from ER stress (induced by HBsAgs) or TNFα secretion from immune cells (in response to HBV infection) and correlates with L-HDAg nuclear export and HDV secretion[40].

CONCLUSION

The clinical observation of aggravated liver disease in patients with HBV/HDV co- or super-infection has prompted intense research on molecular interactions between both viruses. A major interaction between HBV and HDV is that they share a surface protein supply; this fact is currently being translated into novel therapeutic approaches using entry inhibitors in clinical trials for delta hepatitis[41]. However, in spite of the direct interaction sites between HBsAg and HDV-RNP, it seems that the key interference between HBV and HDV cannot be devoted to a certain domain or residue of the S protein but connection spots are rather distributed along the HBsAg. Moreover, besides the main reason for HBV/HDV interactions to share a surface protein supply, this is not the only interface between the two viruses in infected cells. Further investigations are required to unravel yet unknown molecular interactions that are employed by HBV or HDV to dominate in dual infections.

REFERENCES

1 **Price J**. An update on hepatitis B, D, and E viruses. *Top Antivir Med* 2014; **21**: 157-163 [PMID: 24531556]

2 **Dastgerdi ES**, Herbers U, Tacke F. Molecular and clinical aspects of hepatitis D virus infections. *World J Virol* 2012; **1**: 71-78 [PMID: 24175212 DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v1.i3.71]

3 **Wedemeyer H**. Re-emerging interest in hepatitis delta: new insights into the dynamic interplay between HBV and HDV. *J Hepatol* 2010; **52**: 627-629 [PMID: 20334947 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.02.001]

4 **Le Gal F**, Gault E, Ripault MP, Serpaggi J, Trinchet JC, Gordien E, Dény P. Eighth major clade for hepatitis delta virus. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2006; **12**: 1447-1450 [PMID: 17073101 DOI: 10.3201/eid1209.060112]

5 **Alexopoulou A**, Dourakis SP. Genetic heterogeneity of hepatitis viruses and its clinical significance. *Curr Drug Targets Inflamm Allergy* 2005; **4**: 47-55 [PMID: 15720236]

6 **Shirvani-Dastgerdi E**, Amini-Bavil-Olyaee S, Alavian SM,

Trautwein C, Tacke F. Comprehensive analysis of mutations in the hepatitis delta virus genome based on full-length sequencing in a nationwide cohort study and evolutionary pattern during disease progression. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2014; in press [PMID: 25656625 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmi.2014.12.008]

7 **Jardi R**, Rodriguez F, Buti M, Costa X, Cotrina M, Galimany R, Esteban R, Guardia J. Role of hepatitis B, C, and D viruses in dual and triple infection: influence of viral genotypes and hepatitis B precore and basal core promoter mutations on viral replicative interference. *Hepatology* 2001; **34**: 404-410 [PMID: 11481626 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2001.26511]

8 **Schaper M**, Rodriguez-Frias F, Jardi R, Tabernero D, Homs M, Ruiz G, Quer J, Esteban R, Buti M. Quantitative longitudinal evaluations of hepatitis delta virus RNA and hepatitis B virus DNA shows a dynamic, complex replicative profile in chronic hepatitis B and D. *J Hepatol* 2010; **52**: 658-664 [PMID: 20346531 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2009.10.036]

9 **Pollicino T**, Raffa G, Santantonio T, Gaeta GB, Iannello G, Alibrandi A, Squadrito G, Cacciola I, Calvi C, Colucci G, Levrero M, Raimondo G. Replicative and transcriptional activities of hepatitis B virus in patients coinfected with hepatitis B and hepatitis delta viruses. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 432-439 [PMID: 20962099 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01609-10]

10 **Liang TJ**. Hepatitis B: the virus and disease. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: S13-S21 [PMID: 19399811 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22881]

11 **Prange R**, Streeck RE. Novel transmembrane topology of the hepatitis B virus envelope proteins. *EMBO J* 1995; **14**: 247-256 [PMID: 7835336]

12 **Sureau C**, Fournier-Wirth C, Maurel P. Role of N glycosylation of hepatitis B virus envelope proteins in morphogenesis and infectivity of hepatitis delta virus. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 5519-5523 [PMID: 12692255]

13 **Gomes-Gouvêa MS**, Pereira Soares Mdo C, Guedes de Carvalho Mello IM, Brito EM, Pereira Moia Lde J, Bensabath G, Nunes HM, Carrilho FJ, Pinho JR. Hepatitis D and B virus genotypes in chronically infected patients from the Eastern Amazon Basin. *Acta Trop* 2008; **106**: 149-155 [PMID: 18420172 DOI: 10.1016/j.actatropica.2008.02.009]

14 **Alvarado-Mora MV**, Romano CM, Gomes-Gouvêa MS, Gutierrez MF, Carrilho FJ, Pinho JR. Dynamics of hepatitis D (delta) virus genotype 3 in the Amazon region of South America. *Infect Genet Evol* 2011; **11**: 1462-1468 [PMID: 21645647 DOI: 10.1016/j.meegid.2011.05.020]

15 **Amini N**, Alavian SM, Kabir A, Aalaei-Andabili SH, Saiedi Hosseini SY, Rizzetto M. Prevalence of hepatitis d in the eastern mediterranean region: systematic review and meta analysis. *Hepat Mon* 2013; **13**: e8210 [PMID: 23554822 DOI: 10.5812/hepatmon.8210]

16 **Hsu SC**, Wu JC, Sheen IJ, Syu WJ. Interaction and replication activation of genotype I and II hepatitis delta antigens. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 2693-2700 [PMID: 14990689]

17 **Hsu SC**, Syu WJ, Sheen IJ, Liu HT, Jeng KS, Wu JC. Varied assembly and RNA editing efficiencies between genotypes I and II hepatitis D virus and their implications. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 665-672 [PMID: 11870382 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2002.31777]

18 **Sureau C**, Guerra B, Lanford RE. Role of the large hepatitis B virus envelope protein in infectivity of the hepatitis delta virion. *J Virol* 1993; **67**: 366-372 [PMID: 8416375]

19 **Bruss V**, Ganem D. The role of envelope proteins in hepatitis B virus assembly. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1991; **88**: 1059-1063 [PMID: 1992457]

20 **Gudima S**, Meier A, Dunbrack R, Taylor J, Bruss V. Two potentially important elements of the hepatitis B virus large envelope protein are dispensable for the infectivity of hepatitis delta virus. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 4343-4347 [PMID: 17251287 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02478-06]

21 **Wang CJ**, Sung SY, Chen DS, Chen PJ. N-linked glycosylation of hepatitis B surface antigens is involved but not essential in the assembly of hepatitis delta virus. *Virology* 1996; **220**: 28-36 [PMID: 8659125 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1996.0282]

22 **Persson B**, Argos P. Prediction of transmembrane segments in proteins utilising multiple sequence alignments. *J Mol Biol* 1994; **237**: 182-192 [PMID: 8126732 DOI: 10.1006/jmbi.1994.1220]

23 **Jenna S**, Sureau C. Effect of mutations in the small envelope protein of hepatitis B virus on assembly and secretion of hepatitis delta virus. *Virology* 1998; **251**: 176-186 [PMID: 9813213 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1998.9391]

24 **Hourioux C**, Sureau C, Poisson F, Brand D, Goudeau A, Roingeard P. Interaction between hepatitis delta virus-encoded proteins and hepatitis B virus envelope protein domains. *J Gen Virol* 1998; **79** (Pt 5): 1115-1119 [PMID: 9603326]

25 **Chen PJ**, Lai WJ, Wang CJ, Chen DS. Hepatitis B surface antigen and large-form hepatitis delta antigen in HDV assembly: a further study. *Prog Clin Biol Res* 1993; **382**: 29-34 [PMID: 8502694]

26 **Komla-Soukha I**, Sureau C. A tryptophan-rich motif in the carboxyl terminus of the small envelope protein of hepatitis B virus is central to the assembly of hepatitis delta virus particles. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 4648-4655 [PMID: 16641257 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.80.10.4648-4655.2006]

27 **Jaoudé GA**, Sureau C. Role of the antigenic loop of the hepatitis B virus envelope proteins in infectivity of hepatitis delta virus. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 10460-10466 [PMID: 16051838 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.16.10460-10466.2005]

28 **Hammond C**, Helenius A. Folding of VSV G protein: sequential interaction with BiP and calnexin. *Science* 1994; **266**: 456-458 [PMID: 7939687]

29 **Ou WJ**, Cameron PH, Thomas DY, Bergeron JJ. Association of folding intermediates of glycoproteins with calnexin during protein maturation. *Nature* 1993; **364**: 771-776 [PMID: 8102790 DOI: 10.1038/364771a0]

30 **Sakugawa H**, Nakasone H, Nakayoshi T, Kawakami Y, Yamashiro T, Maeshiro T, Kinjo F, Saito A, Zukeran H. Hepatitis B virus concentrations in serum determined by sensitive quantitative assays in patients with established chronic hepatitis delta virus infection. *J Med Virol* 2001; **65**: 478-484 [PMID: 11596082]

31 **Williams V**, Brichler S, Radjef N, Lebon P, Goffard A, Hober D, Fagard R, Kremsdorf D, Dény P, Gordien E. Hepatitis delta virus proteins repress hepatitis B virus enhancers and activate the alpha/beta interferon-inducible MxA gene. *J Gen Virol* 2009; **90**: 2759-2767 [PMID: 19625466 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.011239-0]

32 **Freitas N**, Cunha C, Menne S, Gudima SO. Envelope proteins derived from naturally integrated hepatitis B virus DNA support assembly and release of infectious hepatitis delta virus particles. *J Virol* 2014; **88**: 5742-5754 [PMID: 24623409 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00430-14]

33 **Mason WS**, Liu C, Aldrich CE, Litwin S, Yeh MM. Clonal expansion of normal-appearing human hepatocytes during chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 8308-8315 [PMID: 20519397 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00833-10]

34 **Mason WS**, Litwin S, Jilbert AR. Immune selection during chronic hepadnavirus infection. *Hepatol Int* 2008; **2**: 3-16 [PMID: 19669275 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-007-9024-3]

35 **Mason WS**, Litwin S, Xu C, Jilbert AR. Hepatocyte turnover in transient and chronic hepadnavirus infections. *J Viral Hepat* 2007; **14** Suppl 1: 22-28 [PMID: 17958639 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2007.00911.x]

36 **Modahl LE**, Lai MM. The large delta antigen of hepatitis delta virus potently inhibits genomic but not antigenomic RNA synthesis: a mechanism enabling initiation of viral replication. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 7375-7380 [PMID: 10906190]

37 **Wu JC**, Chen CM, Chen TZ, Lee SD, Yen FS, Choo KB. Prevalence and type of precore hepatitis B virus mutants in hepatitis D virus superinfection and its clinical implications. *J Infect Dis* 1996; **173**: 457-459 [PMID: 8568311]

38 **Tacke F**, Gehrke C, Luedde T, Heim A, Manns MP, Trautwein C. Basal core promoter and precore mutations in the hepatitis B virus genome enhance replication efficacy of Lamivudine-resistant mutants. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 8524-8535 [PMID: 15280461 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.16.8524-8535.2004]

39 **Goto T**, Kato N, Yoshida H, Otsuka M, Moriyama M, Shiratori Y, Koike K, Matsumura M, Omata M. Synergistic activation of the serum response element-dependent pathway by hepatitis B virus x protein and large-isoform hepatitis delta antigen. *J Infect Dis* 2003; **187**: 820-828 [PMID: 12599056 DOI: 10.1086/368389]

40 **Huang CR**, Lo SJ. Hepatitis D virus infection, replication and cross-talk with the hepatitis B virus. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 14589-14597 [PMID: 25356023 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i40.14589]

41 **Urban S**, Bartenschlager R, Kubitz R, Zoulim F. Strategies to inhibit entry of HBV and HDV into hepatocytes. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **147**: 48-64 [PMID: 24768844 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.04.030]

P- Reviewer: Rodriguez-Frias F, Rizzetto M **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.42

World J Virol 2015 May 12; 4(2): 42-55
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

New advances on glial activation in health and disease

Kim Mai Lee, Andrew G MacLean

Kim Mai Lee, Andrew G MacLean, Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Tulane University School of Medicine, Covington, LA 70433, United States
Author contributions: Lee KM was primary author on this manuscript; MacLean AG supervised and edited the manuscript.
Conflict-of-interest: The authors declare no conflicts of interest.

Correspondence to: Andrew G MacLean, PhD, Assistant Professor, Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Division of Comparative Pathology, Tulane University School of Medicine, 18703 Three Rivers Road, Covington, LA 70433, United States. amaclean@tulane.edu
Telephone: +1-985-8716489
Fax: +1-985-8716489
Received: October 28, 2014
Peer-review started: November 6, 2014
First decision: December 12, 2014
Revised: January 23, 2015
Accepted: February 9, 2015
Article in press: February 11, 2015
Published online: May 12, 2015

Abstract

In addition to being the support cells of the central nervous system (CNS), astrocytes are now recognized as active players in the regulation of synaptic function, neural repair, and CNS immunity. Astrocytes are among the most structurally complex cells in the brain, and activation of these cells has been shown in a wide spectrum of CNS injuries and diseases. Over the past decade, research has begun to elucidate the role of astrocyte activation and changes in astrocyte morphology in the progression of neural pathologies, which has led to glial-specific interventions for drug development. Future therapies for CNS infection, injury, and neurodegenerative disease are now aimed at targeting astrocyte responses to such insults including astrocyte activation, astrogliosis and other morphological changes, and innate and adaptive immune responses.

Key words: Astrocyte; Microglia; Neuroinflammation; Aging; Alzheimer's; Neurodegeneration

Core tip: Over the past decade, research has begun to elucidate the role of astrocyte activation and changes in astrocyte morphology in the progression of neural pathologies, which has led to glial-specific interventions for drug development. This review addresses astrocyte response to central nervous system (CNS) injury and disease in relation to astrocyte activation, immune response, and changes in morphology. Further discussion addresses potential therapeutics targeting astrocytes, which consider these heterogeneous responses to CNS insults.

Lee KM, MacLean AG. New advances on glial activation in health and disease. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(2): 42-55 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i2/42.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.42

INTRODUCTION

In addition to being the support cells of the central nervous system (CNS), glial cells, specifically astrocytes, are now recognized as active players in the regulation of synaptic function, neural repair, and CNS immunity[1,2]. Astrocytes are among the most structurally complex cells in the brain, and activation of these cells has been shown in a wide spectrum of CNS injuries and diseases. Over the past decade, research has begun to elucidate the role of astrocyte activation and changes in astrocyte morphology in the progression of neural pathologies,

which has led to glial-specific interventions for drug development. Future therapies should look at targeting astrocyte responses to CNS insults including astrocyte activation, astrogliosis and other morphological changes, and innate and adaptive immune responses.

Astrocytes are the most numerous cells in the mammalian brain, yet much remains to be learned about their functional and morphological characteristics. Astrocytes have well-characterized roles in regulating cerebral blood flow, water transport, and extracellular concentrations of ions, metabolites, and neurotransmitters[3]. Their processes comprise an important component of the blood-brain barrier (BBB), directly contacting endothelial cells with vascular end-feet and contributing to the structural and functional integrity of the BBB. Importantly, astrocytes contribute to the CNS's response to injury and infection[4,5]. Recent studies have demonstrated the importance of astrocytes in innate and adaptive immune responses in the CNS and the roles that astrocyte morphology plays in these functions.

Astrocyte heterogeneity: Differences between protoplasmic and fibrous astrocytes

Although several types of astrocytes have been identified, pathological studies tend to classify them as protoplasmic or fibrous based on their morphology and localization in the CNS[6,7]. Protoplasmic astrocytes are found in gray matter and are generally spongiform in nature. The processes of protoplasmic astrocytes spread radially from the cell body and have extensive fine branching that is distributed uniformly around the cell. The dense and complex ramifications of these fine processes extend from the primary processes reaching out to synaptic connections and contributing to metabolic, homeostatic, and BBB functions[8].

Fibrous astrocytes, on the other hand, are present in white matter and have fewer, but longer, processes that extend along axon bundles providing structural support for axonal tracts[9]. Studies indicate that both fibrous and protoplasmic astrocytes make contacts with blood vessels[10]; however, fibrous astrocytes also send processes that contact axons at the nodes of Ranvier[11] while protoplasmic astrocytic foot processes ensheath neuronal synapses[12]. Additionally, protoplasmic astrocytes occupy their own domains in relatively independent structural units[13], defining the micro-architecture of the parenchyma by "tiling" the gray matter. These domains are most clearly defined in areas of high synaptic density, such as the hippocampus, which suggests that domain organization may be important for modulation of synaptic transmission[14]. Disruption of protoplasmic astrocytic domains is observed during glial scar formation in CNS trauma and infection as well as in the epileptic brain[15,16]. Fibrous astrocytes, on the other hand, show extensive intersection of their processes, and therefore, do not appear to have the same organization as protoplasmic astrocytes[17].

Astrocyte functions in the CNS

Gray and white matter astrocytes provide extensive metabolic support to the CNS as well as regulate water homeostasis and energy metabolism[18]. Through gap junction communication, astrocytes can relay information from neurons to blood vessels in order to coordinate oxygen and glucose delivery with the energy demands of the tissue[19]. Astrocytes also control extracellular ion concentrations; for instance, clearing extracellular potassium through inward rectifying channels[20] and gap junction coupling[21]. Furthermore, glutathione release by astrocytes provides antioxidant support[22] protecting other neural cell types against the toxicity of various compounds by supplying glutathione precursors to neighboring cells[23].

Astrocytes greatly outnumber neurons in the brain and play many roles essential for modulating synaptic formation and normal neurotransmission[24]. Astrocytes have the potential to release their own chemical signals, or "gliotransmitters," such as glutamate, ATP, gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA), and D-serine through Ca^{2+} mediated exocytosis, diffusion through pore channels, or the cysteine-glutamate antiporter system[25]. Furthermore, studies have shown that astrocyte-neuron lactate shuttles couple synaptic plasticity and glucose metabolism in order to facilitate learning and memory[26]. By forming connections to neuronal synapses as well as to each other through gap junctions, astrocytes can modulate neuronal activity and metabolic function.

The tripartite synapse, which includes astrocytic processes at the synaptic cleft, has thus replaced the traditional concept of a synapse as a contact between two neurons[27]. Recently, Bernardinelli and colleagues demonstrated a bidirectional interaction between synapses and astrocytes[28]. Synaptic activity, specifically long-term potentiation (LTP), was shown to regulate plasticity of astrocytic processes. In turn, coverage and motility of astrocytic endfeet in hippocampal synapses have been shown to predict synapse stability[29]. For example, LTP increases the surface area of the astrocyte process enwrapping a synapse and the number of synapses receiving astrocyte coverage[30]. Dynamic changes in astrocyte morphology were also found in electron microscopy studies of the visual cortex of rats raised in a complex environment[31,32]. Astrocytes display a structural response to glutamate by increasing the number of astrocytic processes and surface filapodia contacting neuronal synapses[12]. These actin-based cytoskeletal arrangements are closely linked to transformations in neighboring neuronal and vascular elements and appear as motile as dendritic processes in neurons[33].

Research increasingly shows that astrocytes also serve important roles as an integral player in the brain's defense system[6]. In the adaptive immune system, astrocytes have phagocytic and antigen presentation capabilitie[34,35], and summarized in Table 1. Astrocytes are able to express major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class

Table 1 Immunological molecules expressed in astrocytes and associated conditions

Immunological molecules	Effects	Conditions
Class II MHC	Autoimmune reactions	MS
ICAM-1, VCAM-1	Increased expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines	MS, AD
B7 (B7-1, B7-2)	T cell activation and differentiation	EAE
CD40	Promotes production of cytokines, chemokines, and neurotoxins	MS
CD1 (CD1b)	Antigen presentation to specialized T-cells	MS

MHC: Major immunohistocompatibility complex; ICAM: Intercellular adhesion molecule; VCAM: Vascular cell adhesion molecule; CD: Cluster of differentiation; MS: Multiple sclerosis; AD: Alzheimer's disease; EAE: Experimental autoimmune encephalitis.

I and II antigens and co-stimulatory molecules when stimulated by IFN-γ *in vitro*, which are important in T-cell activation and antigen presentation[4]. The expression of MHC class II antigens in astrocytes *in vivo*, however, is controversial. Examination of post-mortem samples from multiple sclerosis (MS) patients showed evidence of MHC class II expression in astrocytes located in active MS lesions. Additionally, in MS lesions, reactive astrocytes express CD1 molecules (particularly CD1b), which then present lipid antigens to specialized T-cell subsets[36], suggesting that astrocytes can participate in the presentation of non-peptide antigens to T cells. When stimulated, astrocytes also produce a wide array of cytokines and chemokines, which serve as immunological mediators in innate immune function[1]. Glial cells may also perpetuate the progression and severity of brain pathologies associated with chronic inflammation, such as diabetes[37] and Alzheimer's disease (AD)[38]. Since astrocytes may serve as potential therapeutic targets, it is important to understand their functional and immunological roles in the CNS.

ASTROCYTE ACTIVATION: OVERVIEW

Astrocytes respond to CNS trauma and infection through a heterogeneous process that occurs on a continuum of molecular and cellular events. Generally, astrocytes react to CNS disturbances with increases in intermediate filament expression, progressive cellular hypertrophy and proliferation[39,40]. Reactive astrocytes also respond with a diverse combination of intracellular and extracellular events including activation of ERK[41] and c-Fos[42] signaling pathways, increased production of cytokines and chemokines, and the recruitment of monocytes/microglia to the injured area[4]. Recent research suggests that reactive astrocytes are key players in a number of neurological diseases, such as Alexander's disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), and AD, underscoring the need for a better understanding of reactive astrocytes[43-45].

Accumulating evidence indicates that reactive astrogliosis is not a simple all or none response. Instead, astrocyte activation is variable in regards to changes in cell morphology, proliferation, and molecular expression, all of which can be modified in a context-specific manner to different CNS insults[8,16,39,46-48]. Additionally, these molecular and cellular changes are graded in a manner that coincides with the level of injury to the CNS[49]. Recent studies monitoring the progression of reactive gliosis show that a wide range of morphological changes occur in astrocytes and that their response varied depending on astrocyte subtype, type of injury and the location relative to the lesion site[15,50,51]. For instance, gray and white matter astrocytes show different responses in reactive gliosis, with more dramatic morphological changes often observed in the gray matter[15]. The signals that drive the reactive phenotype also differ with respect to the type and extent of injury sustained[10,39]. For example, studies indicate that CNS injuries, such as ischemia and stab wounds, produce reactive astrocytes with neural stem cell potential, while astrocytes in neurodegenerative models lack such capabilities[52,53].

Reactive astrocytes: Beneficial or harmful?

Astrocyte activation has often been classified into two categories: the first of which is beneficial and occurs soon after the CNS insult, and the second, which occurs later, inhibits neuronal regeneration, and contributes to sustained inflammation in the CNS[54,55]. Perhaps the most well studied astroglial reaction is the formation of the glial scar from proliferative reactive astrocytes. Following an insult resulting in neuronal damage, astrocytes surround and isolate dying neurons. This is thought to prevent contact between dying and healthy neurons, preventing the progression of tissue damage, but may ultimately impede any functional recovery[56]. Studies examining selectively ablated dividing astrocytes after spinal cord injury found that depletion of reactive astrocytes results in greatly expanded invasion of inflammatory cells beyond the lesion center resulting in a larger lesion volume and more extensive motor deficits[57]. This suggests that the glial scar prevents inflammatory processes from spreading to healthy tissue. The glial scar reaction also produces a wide range of molecules, including tenascin-C, chondroitin sulfate proteoglycan, and matrix metalloproteinases (MMP), which inhibit axonal regeneration[58,59].

Alternatively, further evidence shows that cytokine-activated astrocytes produce energy substrates and trophic factors for neurons and oligodendrocytes, aid in antioxidant support, promote revascularization, and restore CNS homeostasis[60]. For instance, TGF-beta signaling in astrocytes limits immune cell migration and decreases pro-inflammatory cytokine/chemokine

production, limiting neuronal injury in *Toxoplasma gondii* infection[61]. Astrocytes also defend against oxidative stress, containing high concentrations of antioxidants[23], and neuroprotection by reactive astrocytes is, thus, thought to occur through upregulation of glutathione following oxidative stress[62,63].

Intermediate filaments, such as glial fibrillary acidic protein (GFAP) and vimentin, are upregulated in reactive astrocytes. While this increase aids in CNS protection and axonal regeneration, it has proved to be a double-edge sword. Intermediate filaments are thought to assist with synaptic elimination after lesion, guidance of axonal regrowth, formation of neuromuscular contacts, and timing of recovery[64]. Conditional ablation of proliferating astrocytes leads to increased inflammation and increased neuronal death in spinal cord injury models and in experimental autoimmune encephalitis[10]. However, studies in *GFAP*$^{-/-}$*Vim*$^{-/-}$ aged mice demonstrated increased cell survival/proliferation in the hippocampus compared to control mice[65]. Astrocytes of null mice exhibit fewer morphologic changes and less glial scarring after CNS insult than mice devoid of intermediate filament deficiencies[66], indicating that chronically reactive astrocytes may restrict neurogenesis with increasing age. Furthermore, the absence of intermediate filament proteins has also been shown to decrease reactive gliosis, and subsequently, photoreceptor degeneration that results from retinal injury[67].

Astrogliosis can be classified as anisomorphic, where astrocytes surround a lesion forming a glial scar, or isomorphic, whereby astrocytes remain distal to the site of injury and promote neurite outgrowth and facilitate synaptogenesis[68]. Activation of astrocytes and other glial cells influence the rate and intensity of regeneration of peripheral nerves in the peripheral nervous system after injury[64]. Experimentally, prevention of reactive gliosis improved the integration of neural progenitor cells grafted into the rodent hippocampus[69], indicating that the survival and generation of new neurons may benefit from astroglial modifications. Overall, activation of astrocytes may be both beneficial and harmful in the setting of CNS trauma and/or disease. More research is needed to clarify therapeutic potential in astroglial responses.

Functional consequences of astrocyte activation

In the healthy CNS, astrocytes play an important role in maintaining homeostatic balance, directing the development of synapses, uptake and clearance of neurotransmitters, and modulation of cerebral blood flow[2,19]. However, the degree to which reactive astrocytes maintain these functions, or gain new ones, remains to be elucidated. Recent studies in a transgenic mouse model of AD observed aberrant GABA production in reactive astrocytes surrounding amyloid plaques in the hippocampus[45]. GABA, an inhibitory gliotransmitter, binds to neuronal GABAergic receptors inhibiting neuronal synaptic release and impairing synaptic plasticity and memory function. Furthermore, studies in genetic null animal models can examine both benefits and detriments associated with gain or loss of reactive astrocytes[70]. As mentioned above, loss intermediate filament expression attenuated reactive astrocytosis resulting, in some cases, progression of neuronal death and inflammation, and in others, increased neuronal survival. Further research will clarify the timing and situational consequence of activated astrocytes.

As such, therapeutics targeting astrocyte activation, like a recently developed TrkA agonist, has shown promise by reducing reactive gliosis and subsequent neural sequelae of neuroinflammation[71]. Additionally, *in vitro* studies have shown that reactive astrogliosis can be suppressed by up-regulation of mitofusin 2 (Mfn2), a key protein in mitochondrial networks[72]. Increasing Mfn2 expression in cells attenuated injury-induced astrocytic hyperplasia, activation-relevant protein synthesis, and cellular proliferation. Based on the impact of reactive astrogliosis in neurodegenerative pathologies, novel drugs targeting gliosis may be suitable for therapeutic applications in a wide number of neurological conditions.

CHANGES IN ASTROCYTE MORPHOLOGY

It is well established that astrocytes carry the potential to change their morphology in reaction to CNS injury[73] as well as in interactions with CNS vasculature[74] and neurons[12]. In the same way that neuronal dendrites are adaptable and respond to changes in CNS activity by altering their structure, astrocytic processes dynamically alter their morphology and interact with synapses in response to their environment[75]. Morphological changes in astrocytes have been documented in chronic stress[76], traumatic brain injury[77], neurodegenerative disease[78], CNS viral and bacterial infections[79,80], and behavioral and mood disorders[81,82]. Experimentally, changes in astrocyte morphology have been reported after ethanol administration[83], dietary-induced obesity[84], and physical exercise[85]. These structural changes can be detected not only at the level of their cell body and proximal processes, but more importantly, through their fine, lamellate distal processes that surround synapses and ensheath axonal nodes[86]. Effective regulation of the perisynaptic space is attributed, in part, to astrocyte morphology[87], and perturbations in fine morphology of these glial cells can ultimately contribute to synaptic dysfunction and disrupted neurotransmission[88].

Astrocyte hypertrophy

Astrocyte hypertrophy is postulated to serve many functions in neuronal protection and recovery and repair. After traumatic injury, stroke, infection, or other severe CNS insult, areas of focal tissue damage become

filled with inflammatory, fibrotic, and other cells that derive from the perivascular cells, endothelia, bone marrow, and meninges. These tissue lesions become surrounded by reactive astrocytes forming glial scars that serve to separate necrotic from healthy tissue[10,89]. Astrocytes and other glial cells surround infected or necrotic tissue providing a physical barrier between the CNS insult and healthy tissue. Longer and more complex processes would allow the astrocytes to envelop synaptic terminals and influence synaptic transmission through gliotransmitter release and neurotransmitter clearance[90,91]. In experimental entorhinal lesions in the rat, hypertrophic astrocytes line the denervated outer molecular layer of the dentate gyrus, potentially providing trophic support for the sprouting process[92]. Furthermore, astrocytes with more complex morphologies could come about as a compensatory mechanism for neuronal and synaptic degeneration[93,94]. Studies have shown a significant increase in GFAP-positive hypertrophic astrocytes in the hippocampus in AD patients[95].

The hypertrophic response in astrocytes may depend on the type and extent of CNS injury. It is hypothesized that glial scars are formed in two ways: one, through newly proliferated, elongated astrocytes that extensively overlap to form scar borders and secondly, through hypertrophic stellate reactive astrocytes that are derived from local populations of mature astrocytes[51]. In contrast to microglia, which proliferate at a high frequency, reactive astrocytes proliferate very little in chronic disease[53,78]. In a chronic disease model, low degrees of astrocyte proliferation were observed in the presence of pronounced astrocyte hypertrophy[53]. Hypertrophy, but not proliferation, of GFAP-positive astrocytes also occurs alongside increased expression of proteins expressed in neural stem cells[96,97]. Clarifying the roles that subsets of astrocytes have in injury response will have important implications for future therapeutics.

Astrocyte atrophy

While astrocyte hypertrophy/astrogliosis serves to contain brain damage and assist in neuronal survival[39], the converse can be said about astroglial degeneration and atrophy. Atrophy of astrocyte processes has been detected in normal aging[98] and chronic stres[76] as well as in the early stages of various neurodegenerative diseases including AD[99] and ALS[44]. Atrophic astrocytes result in reduced support for neuronal networks, which may ultimately decrease neuronal connectivity and plasticity. We have recently shown that, in the setting of simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV) infection and SIV-induced encephalitis, gray and white matter astrocytes retract their processes resulting in an overall decreased arbor irrespective of encephalitic status[79]. It is hypothesized that reduced numbers of astrocytes is directly linked to disruptions in cognitive behavior and that astrocyte loss may be a primary driver of pathology[100,101]. Furthermore, Tynan *et al*[76] observed decreases in astrocyte morphology without concomitant reductions in astrocyte number in rodents exposed to chronic stress. We observed similar effects in macaques that exhibited self-injurious behavior, a classic behavior following social stress[81]. This suggests that atrophy and decreased GFAP expression, rather than reductions in astrocyte number, are related to neuropathological changes in stress and mood disorders[76].

Conversely, global CNS insults, such as ischemia/hypoxia, induce changes in astrocyte morphology that are distinctly different from focal insults. Studies examining hypoxia/ischemia in the neonatal pig model showed significant decreases in astrocytic processes (length and number) with hypertrophy of the cell body post-insult[102]. These changes were observed in both white and gray matter astrocytes and were evident as soon as eight hours after the insult and were concurrent with dysfunction in glutamate clearance[102].

Furthermore, increasing or decreasing the numbers and sizes of astrocytes impacts the volume and alters the composition of the space between astrocytes[103]. As a consequence of this, there would be neuronal dysfunction through excitotoxicity[104], homeostatic imbalances[105,106], damage to synapses[107,108]. For instance, post-mortem examinations of human brains following TBI show enlarged perivascular spaces, which potentially reflect astrocyte retraction[109]. The uncoupling of astrocytes and microvascular endothelium can interfere with homeostasis and metabolic support – ultimately resulting in an imbalanced energy supply to the brain[110].

Factors controlling astrocyte morphology

There are two distinct mechanisms whereby astrocytes can be activated in the absence of infectious agents. In the first, gap junction proteins are down regulated[111] restricting the overall syncytia of astrocytes. This would also alter the morphology of the astrocytes including the number of synapses they can form with neurons and the BBB. Alternatively, changes in astrocyte morphology can occur as a consequence of immune regulation and inflammation[112].

Several genes are implicated in morphological alterations in astrocytes. GFAP, an intermediate filament protein highly expressed in white matter astrocytes and a subset of gray matter astrocytes, is thought to modulate astrocyte motility and shape, providing structural stability to processes[113]. Studies in GFAP-null mice have shown that GFAP as well as vimentin, an intermediate filament necessary to stabilize GFAP, are required for proper glial scar formation in the injured CNS[66]. Additionally, fibroblast growth factor (FGF) signaling has been shown to be responsible for alterations in astrocyte morphology during glial activation[114]. The blockade of FGF signaling at the site of reactive gliosis reduced astrocyte branch formation and minimized hypertrophic responses during reactive gliosis. Selective deletion of transcription factor, signal

Table 2 Immune function of astrocytes

Pattern recognition receptors (expressed in astrocytes)	Effects	Conditions
TLRs (TLR2, TLR3, TLR4, TLR5, TLR9)	Upregulation cytokine/chemokine expression, induction of costimulatory molecules	Viral and bacterial infection, DAMPs
NOD receptors (NOD1, NOD2)	Upregulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines through NF-κB	Bacterial CNS infections
Scavenger receptors (SR-BI, SR-MARCO, RAGE, SRCL)	Mediates adhesion/uptake of A-beta in the CNS	AD
Mannose receptors (expressed)	Receptor-mediated endocytosis, CD4 independent HIV-1 entry	HIV
Complement factors (C1q, C4, C2, C3, C3d, C5, C5b-9, C6, C8)	CNS inflammation, cell activation and astrogliosis	TBI, synaptic plasticity, Pick's disease, MS
Complement receptors (CR1, CR2, C3aR, C5aR)	CNS inflammation, cell activation and astrogliosis	TBI, synaptic plasticity

TLR: Toll-like receptor; NOD: Nucleotide-oligomerization domain; SR: Scavenger receptor; RAGE: Receptor for advanced glycation end products; DAMP: Damage-associated molecular pattern; TBI: Traumatic brain injury; CNS: Central nervous system; SR-BI: Scavenger receptor class B type I; SR-MARCO: Scavenger receptor - macrophage receptor with collagenous structure; SRCL: Scavenger receptor C-type lectin; CR1: Complement receptor type 1; CR2: Complement receptor type 2; C3aR: Complement component 3a receptor; C5aR: Complement component 5a receptor; NF-kappaB: Nuclear factor kappa-light-chain enhancer of activated B cells; AD: Alzheimer's disease; HIV: Human immunedeficiency virus; MS: Multiple sclerosis.

transducer and activator of transcription 3, from astrocytes disrupted glial scar borders, which allowed the spread of inflammatory cells from the site of injury and increased neuronal loss[51]. Furthermore, studies have shown that aquaporin-4 (AQP4) is important for sustaining astrocyte morphology, indicating a functional role of AQP4 in astrocyte plasticity. Knockdown of AQP4 in primary cultures resulted in a drastic reduction in membrane water permeability, impaired cell growth, and altered cell morphology[115] as well as the down-regulation of three genes (glucose transporter 1, hexokinase, and metallothionein-1) involved in brain edema.

Furthermore, changes in astrocyte morphology may not necessarily be permanent and can change with amelioration of CNS insult[116] and/or the administration of therapeutic medication (Lee *et al*, under review). Recovery in changes in astrocyte morphology, such as decreases in process hypertrophy and an increase in primary processes, has been observed two weeks after optic nerve injury[117]. We showed that changes in astrocyte morphology associated with self-injury in rhesus macaques were reversed with opioid antagonist treatment. Furthermore, valproate has been shown to reduce the overlap between adjacent astrocytic domains seen in epilepsy[16]. Valproate was also used to treat a transgenic mouse model of AD. The investigators found that APP/PS1 mice had markedly improved symptoms as well as decreased astrogliosis and microgliosis after valproate treatment[118].

ASTROCYTE ACTIVATION AND INFECTIOUS DISEASE

Immune function of astrocytes

The CNS is considered an immune-privileged system with the presence of the BBB, low levels of MHC molecules, and the absence of lymphatic irrigation[119]. Increasing evidence shows that astrocytes participate in local innate immune responses triggered by a variety of insults.

Astrocytes are an important source of cytokines and have the capacity to respond to a wide variety of cytokines themselves[60]. In the resting state, glial cells express a wide variety of receptors for inflammatory cytokines, chemokines, pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs), and damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs)[120,121]. Once activated, glial cells have the capacity to induce numerous other receptors and inflammatory mediators following stimulation from other CNS cells, infiltrating leukocytes, and/or invading pathogens[1]. Additionally, both microglia and astrocytes display an array of receptors involved in innate immunity and damage detection, including Toll-like receptors (TLRs), nucleotide-binding oligomerization domains, double-stranded RNA-dependent protein kinases, scavenger receptors, and mannose receptors[122,123], and summarized in Table 2.

These pattern-recognition receptors detect infectious particles and damage-associated molecules associated with CNS trauma and neurodegeneration[124]. TLRs, type I transmembrane receptors most commonly found in innate immune cells, are highly expressed in microglia and have also been observed in astrocytes[125]. Under resting physiological conditions, astrocytes express TLR3[126] as well as low levels of TLR2, TLR4, TLR5, and TLR9[127,128]. Binding of PAMPs to TLRs on astrocytes alters cytokine secretion, cytoskeletal protein expression, and adhesion[126].

Viral infection of astrocytes

Astrocytes can be targeted, as well as directly infected, by several pathogens and possess the ability to recognize structures belonging to various types of pathogens. For example, astrocytes display functional CXCR4 and CCR5 co-receptors, which render them permissive to HIV-1 infection[129,130]. Direct infection of astrocytes has also been demonstrated in SIV[131], group B streptococcal bacteria[132], Borna virus[133], and herpes simplex virus[134]. Furthermore, TLRs may also increase or decrease susceptibility to viral infection in astrocytes, depending on the viral agent studied. For example, in rodent models,

Table 3 Mediators of astroglial function

Mediators	Examples	Effects on astroglial function
Cytokines	IL-6, IFNβ, TNF-α, TGF-β, GM-CSF, BAFF, IL-1β, MCP-1, RANTES	Increase BBB permeability, astrocyte activation, endothelial cell activation, microglial and monocyte activation, differentiation and proliferation, immunosuppression, release of neuroprotective mediators
Chemokines	CCL2, CCL5, CCL20, CXCL10, CXCL1, CXCl1, CXCl2, CX3CL1	Recruitment of monocytes and macrophages, dendritic T cells, T and B lymphocytes, and neutrophils/regulation of myelination and microglial activity, astrocyte proliferation and survival, migration of microglia and neural progenitors
Trophic Factors	EGF, FGF, NGF, BDNF, VEGF, IGF1	Astrocyte activation and morphological modification, neuronal/astrocytic survival, differentiation, function, and regeneration, oligodendrocyte survival, remyelination, neurogenesis
Endothelins	Et1, Et3	Inhibit gap junction coupling, disrupts direct intercellular communication in astrocytes, intracellular and extracellular ion homeostasis, metabolic trafficking, cellular swelling

IL: Interleukin; IFN: Interferon; TNF: Tumor necrosis factor; TGF: Transforming growth factor; GM-CSF: Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor; BAFF: B-cell activating factor; MCP: Monocyte chemoattractant protein; CCL: Chemokine ligand; CXCL: CXC motif ligand; EGF; Epidermal growth factor; FGF: Fibroblast growth factor; NGF: Nerve growth factor; BDNF: Bone derived neurotrophic factor; VEGF: Vascular endothelial growth factor; IGF: Insulin-like growth factor; Et: Endothelin.

TLR3 in astrocytes protect against herpes simplex virus type-2 infection[134], but has been reported to mediate entry of West Nile Virus into the CNS, causing encephalitis[135].

Furthermore, recent evidence indicates that TLRs are also capable of sensing endogenous ligands produced during stress or injury called DAMPs, linking TLRs with the host response to CNS damage[136]. Astrocytes can express receptors for DAMPs[137]. Endogenous DAMP molecules released from damaged neurons can bind to TLR2 on nearby glia, and in turn, activate glial cells during CNS trauma and infection[138]. As such, astrocyte and microglial activation was decreased in TLR2-null mice[138]. Interestingly, studies in an intracerebral hemorrhage stroke model utilizing TLR2-null mice found no differences in microglial activation, indicating that inflammation and neurotoxicity were mediated by TLR2 on astrocytes[124]. Since TLRs have been implicated in both infectious and noninfectious diseases of the CNS[122], understanding their potential to influence the course of neuroinflammation is important in developing new therapeutic interventions aimed at minimizing tissue damage during neuroinflammatory disorders.

Following infection and/or activation, astrocytes secrete cytokines and chemokines, such as CXC motif ligand 10 (CXCL10), Chemokine ligand 2 (CCL2), interleukin-6 (IL-6), and BAFF, which influence both innate and adaptive immune responses[4]. These responses are important in eliciting local CNS immune responses through inflammatory mediators and recruiting additional immune effector cells from the peripheral circulation. Increased CCL2 secretion in astrocytes initiates the recruitment of immune cells and activation of glial cells in the CNS during chronic neuroinflammatory disease and autoimmune inflammation[139]. Experimentally, astrocytes activated by heat-killed bacteria or lipoproteins react by secreting chemokines, proliferate, or enter apoptosis[140]. For instance, astrocyte infection by *Brucella* has been shown to induce MMPs, which are known to induce tissue remodeling[80,141]. In cultured astrocytes, viral mimic poly(I:C) induces the expression of several cytokines (TNF-α, IL-6, IFNβ, granulocyte–macrophage colony-stimulating factor and transforming growth factor) and chemokines (CCL2, CCL5, CCL20, CXCL8 and CXCL10)[142]. Astrocytes can also express receptors for and respond to a wide variety of other growth factors and cytokines, including, but by no means limited to, TNF-α, EGF, FGF, endothelins and interleukins (for review, see[143]). Such factors can induce the expression of molecules associated with reactive astrogliosis, such as GFAP, and have also been implicated in astrocyte proliferation[144]. The downstream effects are summarized in Table 3.

Astrocyte contributions to sustained inflammation

Evidence has demonstrated that astrocytes contribute to sustained inflammation in the CNS after trauma or infection[145,146] and growing research implicates sustained glial inflammation in neurodegenerative disorders[147]. Chronically activated microglia and astrocytes can release reactive oxygen intermediates, nitric oxide, inflammatory cytokines, which are toxic to neurons. In AD, amyloid β-peptide (Aβ) peptides activate astrocytes, which increase production of inflammatory mediators[148]. Furthermore, astrocytes are able to remove and degrade Aβ, and chronically activated astrocytes may eventually lose their neuroprotective functions[149]. Furthermore, in a rodent model of multiple sclerosis, investigators found that the enzyme, *LacCer*, which promotes astrocyte activation and controls the transcription of genes related to neuroinflammation and neurodegeneration, is upregulated in astrocytes[150].

One mechanism by which astrocytes may contribute to sustained inflammation in the CNS is through upregulation of inflammatory pathways modulated by TLR expression. A single injection of LPS in aged rats, which mimics systemic infection in the elderly, resulted in sustained astrocyte activation and prolonged increases in cytokine expression[151]. Increases in astrocytic TLR2 have been implicated in sustained inflammation

by increasing the likelihood of the cells to respond to subsequent inflammatory insults[152]. HIV infection increases TLR2 expression in astrocytes, which can increase susceptibility to additional insults, either from a secondary/opportunistic infection or from a second round of virus entering the brain[79,153]. Additionally, enhanced TLR expression would upregulate the secretion of proinflammatory cytokines by astrocytes[154,155], triggering a self-sustaining inflammatory loop and long-term glial activation.

Astrocytes can release both pro- and anti-inflam matory factors, contributing crucially to inflammatory processes in the CNS. In addition, the astrocytes that are part of the BBB are among the first cells to encounter blood-derived leukocytes entering the brain during certain types of neuroinflammatory insult[156]. Increased leukocyte migration also occurs in neurological conditions such as stroke or multiple sclerosis. As such, astrocytes are strategically located to influence direct interactions with leukocytes or interaction with endothelial cells of the BBB[157]. Under inflammatory conditions, the integrity and function of the BBB is modified and enables greater leukocyte passage into the CNS[158]. Recent studies examining human T-lymphocytic virus type-1 infection in the CNS show that astrocytes contribute to positive feedback loop that promotes chronic inflammation. Infected T cells produce INF-γ, which causes astrocytes to secrete CXCL10 and recruit more infected T cells, creating an immunological positive feedback loop[159]. Another study by Owens and colleagues demonstrate that astrocyte ablation results in enhanced inflammatory monocyte cell migration into the CNS[160,161]. Furthermore, astrocytes mediate microglial activation through RANTES-dependent mechanism in Borna disease virus infection[162], indicating that activated astrocytes produce soluble factors that activate microglia.

Therapies targeting astrocyte contributions to chronic inflammation

Chronic activation of the innate immune system can indirectly contribute to neuropathology and neuronal death. Sustained neuroinflammation is implicated in HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder[163], neurodegenerative disease[150], and chronic pain[164], and compromises CNS function causing progressive neurodegeneration and BBB compromise[165]. In the clinical setting, pharmacological antagonists and immunosuppressive agents can used to prevent chronic CNS inflammation responses. Such therapies can be appropriated from existing medications or can be the result of new developments in glial-activated neuroinflammation research[166]. The development of novel therapeutic interventions targeted at glial activation pathways and glia-mediated inflammation appears to be promising and may lead to more effective prevention and treatment of neuroinflammation and resulting pathologies. For example, riluzole, the only FDA-approved treatment for amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), enhances astrocytic glutamate uptake through increased GLT-1 activity reducing the activation of neurons by glutamate[167]. Riluzole also stimulates astrocytic synthesis of NGF, BDNF and GDNF in culture[168] as well as increase levels of BDNF and TGF-1β in patients with Huntington's disease[169]. Further research into novel methods for targeting inflammation by reducing the activity of glutamatergic system activation are thus necessary[112].

Generally, astrocytic function in neuroprotection is greatly compromised during chronic neuroinflammation. New perspectives for therapeutic approaches include the replacement of dysfunctional astrocytes or pharmacological treatments that specifically target detrimental signaling pathways while preserving their neuroprotective functions. Signaling pathways, such as JNK and p38 MAPK, were found to be relevant to reactive gliosis in response to a variety of cytokines and pathogenetic stimuli; and as such, several MAPK inhibitors have been characterized *in vitro* and in animal models as potential therapeutic interventions targeting reactive astrocytes[170,171].

Chronically proinflammatory astrocyte and microglia phenotypes, showing a reduction in genes involved in neuronal support and neuronal signaling, may contribute to neuronal dysfunction and cognitive decline in AD[172]. Astrocytes contribute to the clearance of amyloid β-peptide[173]. In sporadic AD, impaired removal of Aβ contributes to elevated extracellular levels that drive amyloid plaque pathogenesis. Enhancing lysosomal function in astrocytes with transcription factor EB, a master regulator of lysosome biogenesis, could promote Aβ uptake and catabolism and attenuate plaque pathogenesis[174]. Furthermore, reactive astrocytes have recently been shown to produce and release the inhibitory gliotransmitter, GABA, which impaired synaptic plasticity in a rodent model of AD[45]. Increased GABA synthesis and/or release may become a therapeutic target for treating memory impairment in neurodegenerative disease.

DIRECTIONS AND THERAPEUTICS

Research into the morphological changes in astrocytes will provide insight into the pathophysiology of the disease. In the future, disease models will consider "gliopathies" as a part of disease etiology. Further research on acute changes in astrocyte morphology would help elucidate the dynamics of astrocyte morphology. For example, analysis through the xCELLigence system provides data output in real time and is thought to measure cell adhesion[175]. Studies using the xCELLigence system have shown that astrocytes exposed to cytokine treatment show loss of cellular adhesion[176] and cell death[177]. These changes occurred 24-48 h prior to astrocyte cell loss, demonstrating the ability of xCELLigence to detect changes in astrocyte composition long before cell death.

Furthermore, targets of intervention would seek to limit the inflammatory process where inflammatory environment is cytotoxic to the surrounding cells, or where glial cell damage would impact the ability of the CNS to repair itself. Reactive astrocytes have already emerged as an attractive target for improved recovery after stroke[178]. Regardless of the type of ischemic injury, reactive astrocytes express hyperpolarization-activated cyclic nucleotide-gate channels, which have potential as a therapeutic target in post-stroke therapy[179]. Post-traumatic axonal regeneration can be enhanced by inhibition of chondroitin sulfate proteoglycans produced by reactive astrocytes[180].

Potential therapeutics targeting astrocytes should consider the heterogeneous responses to CNS insults including astrocyte activation, astrogliosis and other morphological changes, in addition to innate and adaptive immune responses. A key role in establishing a therapeutic intervention for astrocytes in CNS insults would be to clarify of the role of glial activation and the formation of the glial scar. A hallmark of CNS injury of any origin is the formation of scar tissue composed of activated or reactive astrocytes and microglia surrounding a distinctly inflammatory response. The cost-benefit analysis of the formation of this scar is debated as it restricts axonal growth within the lesion. However, several studies indicate that this process may have potential neuroprotective functions. Reactive astrocytes can also serve as potential sources of new neurons in the brain, replenishing the neurons damaged by neurodegenerative disease. Guo and colleagues have demonstrated the reprogramming of reactive astrocytes generated by brain injury or in a mouse AD model into functional glutamatergic neurons *in vivo*[181]. Astrocytes represent an important therapeutic target in a number of neurological conditions, specifically where astrocyte activation exacerbates brain injury or where astrocyte loss may reduce BBB integrity or neuronal support. While CNS research in the past decade has dramatically shifted its focus to include astrocytes and other glial cells, more research to further clarify the roles of these cells in CNS injury and damage is needed to produce effective therapeutic interventions.

REFERENCES

1 **Farina C**, Aloisi F, Meinl E. Astrocytes are active players in cerebral innate immunity. *Trends Immunol* 2007; **28**: 138-145 [PMID: 17276138 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2007.01.005]

2 **Ransom B**, Behar T, Nedergaard M. New roles for astrocytes (stars at last). *Trends Neurosci* 2003; **26**: 520-522 [PMID: 14522143 DOI: 10.1016/j.tins.2003.08.006]

3 **Anderson CM**, Swanson RA. Astrocyte glutamate transport: review of properties, regulation, and physiological functions. *Glia* 2000; **32**: 1-14 [PMID: 10975906]

4 **Dong Y**, Benveniste EN. Immune function of astrocytes. *Glia* 2001; **36**: 180-190 [PMID: 11596126]

5 **Norenberg MD**. Astrocyte responses to CNS injury. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol* 1994; **53**: 213-220 [PMID: 8176405]

6 **Oberheim NA**, Goldman SA, Nedergaard M. Heterogeneity of astrocytic form and function. *Methods Mol Biol* 2012; **814**: 23-45 [PMID: 22144298 DOI: 10.1007/978-1-61779-452-0_3]

7 **Oberheim NA**, Takano T, Han X, He W, Lin JH, Wang F, Xu Q, Wyatt JD, Pilcher W, Ojemann JG, Ransom BR, Goldman SA, Nedergaard M. Uniquely hominid features of adult human astrocytes. *J Neurosci* 2009; **29**: 3276-3287 [PMID: 19279265]

8 **Wilhelmsson U**, Bushong EA, Price DL, Smarr BL, Phung V, Terada M, Ellisman MH, Pekny M. Redefining the concept of reactive astrocytes as cells that remain within their unique domains upon reaction to injury. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; **103**: 17513-17518 [PMID: 17090684 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0602841103]

9 **Sun JD**, Liu Y, Yuan YH, Li J, Chen NH. Gap junction dysfunction in the prefrontal cortex induces depressive-like behaviors in rats. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 2012; **37**: 1305-1320 [PMID: 22189291 DOI: 10.1038/npp.2011.319]

10 **Sofroniew MV**, Vinters HV. Astrocytes: biology and pathology. *Acta Neuropathol* 2010; **119**: 7-35 [PMID: 20012068 DOI: 10.1007/s00401-009-0619-8]

11 **Butt AM**, Duncan A, Berry M. Astrocyte associations with nodes of Ranvier: ultrastructural analysis of HRP-filled astrocytes in the mouse optic nerve. *J Neurocytol* 1994; **23**: 486-499 [PMID: 7983475]

12 **Theodosis DT**, Poulain DA, Oliet SH. Activity-dependent structural and functional plasticity of astrocyte-neuron interactions. *Physiol Rev* 2008; **88**: 983-1008 [PMID: 18626065]

13 **Bushong EA**, Martone ME, Ellisman MH. Maturation of astrocyte morphology and the establishment of astrocyte domains during postnatal hippocampal development. *Int J Dev Neurosci* 2004; **22**: 73-86 [PMID: 15036382 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijdevneu.2003.12.008]

14 **Xu G**, Wang W, Zhou M. Spatial organization of NG2 glial cells and astrocytes in rat hippocampal CA1 region. *Hippocampus* 2014; **24**: 383-395 [PMID: 24339242 DOI: 10.1002/hipo.22232]

15 **Sun D**, Lye-Barthel M, Masland RH, Jakobs TC. Structural remodeling of fibrous astrocytes after axonal injury. *J Neurosci* 2010; **30**: 14008-14019 [PMID: 20962222]

16 **Oberheim NA**, Tian GF, Han X, Peng W, Takano T, Ransom B, Nedergaard M. Loss of astrocytic domain organization in the epileptic brain. *J Neurosci* 2008; **28**: 3264-3276 [PMID: 18367594 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.4980-07.2008]

17 **Elston GN**, Oga T, Fujita I. Spinogenesis and pruning scales across functional hierarchies. *J Neurosci* 2009; **29**: 3271-3275 [PMID: 19279264 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.4707-08.2009]

18 **Fukuda AM**, Badaut J. Aquaporin 4: a player in cerebral edema and neuroinflammation. *J Neuroinflammation* 2012; **9**: 279 [PMID: 23270503 DOI: 10.1186/1742-2094-9-279]

19 **Howarth C**. The contribution of astrocytes to the regulation of cerebral blood flow. *Front Neurosci* 2014; **8**: 103 [PMID: 24847203 DOI: 10.3389/fnins.2014.00103]

20 **Higashi K**, Fujita A, Inanobe A, Tanemoto M, Doi K, Kubo T, Kurachi Y. An inwardly rectifying K(+) channel, Kir4.1, expressed in astrocytes surrounds synapses and blood vessels in brain. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol* 2001; **281**: C922-C931 [PMID: 11502569]

21 **Vernadakis A**. Glia-neuron intercommunications and synaptic plasticity. *Prog Neurobiol* 1996; **49**: 185-214 [PMID: 8878303]

22 **Chen Y**, Vartiainen NE, Ying W, Chan PH, Koistinaho J, Swanson RA. Astrocytes protect neurons from nitric oxide toxicity by a glutathione-dependent mechanism. *J Neurochem* 2001; **77**: 1601-1610 [PMID: 11413243]

23 **Dringen R**. Metabolism and functions of glutathione in brain. *Prog Neurobiol* 2000; **62**: 649-671 [PMID: 10880854]

24 **Newman EA**. New roles for astrocytes: regulation of synaptic transmission. *Trends Neurosci* 2003; **26**: 536-542 [PMID: 14522146 DOI: 10.1016/S0166-2236(03)00237-6]

25 **Araque A**, Carmignoto G, Haydon PG, Oliet SH, Robitaille R, Volterra A. Gliotransmitters travel in time and space. *Neuron* 2014; **81**: 728-739 [PMID: 24559669 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuron.2014.02.007]

26 **Yang J**, Ruchti E, Petit JM, Jourdain P, Grenningloh G, Allaman I, Magistretti PJ. Lactate promotes plasticity gene expression by potentiating NMDA signaling in neurons. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2014; **111**: 12228-12233 [PMID: 25071212 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1322912111]

27 **Halassa MM**, Fellin T, Haydon PG. The tripartite synapse: roles for gliotransmission in health and disease. *Trends Mol Med* 2007; **13**: 54-63 [PMID: 17207662 DOI: 10.1016/j.molmed.2006.12.005]

28 **Bernardinelli Y**, Muller D, Nikonenko I. Astrocyte-synapse structural plasticity. *Neural Plast* 2014; **2014**: 232105 [PMID: 24511394 DOI: 10.1155/2014/232105]

29 **Haber M**, Zhou L, Murai KK. Cooperative astrocyte and dendritic spine dynamics at hippocampal excitatory synapses. *J Neurosci* 2006; **26**: 8881-8891 [PMID: 16943543 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.1302-06.2006]

30 **Lushnikova I**, Skibo G, Muller D, Nikonenko I. Synaptic potentiation induces increased glial coverage of excitatory synapses in CA1 hippocampus. *Hippocampus* 2009; **19**: 753-762 [PMID: 19156853 DOI: 10.1002/hipo.20551]

31 **Jones TA**, Greenough WT. Ultrastructural evidence for increased contact between astrocytes and synapses in rats reared in a complex environment. *Neurobiol Learn Mem* 1996; **65**: 48-56 [PMID: 8673406 DOI: 10.1006/nlme.1996.0005]

32 **Soffié M**, Hahn K, Terao E, Eclancher F. Behavioural and glial changes in old rats following environmental enrichment. *Behav Brain Res* 1999; **101**: 37-49 [PMID: 10342398]

33 **Nishida H**, Okabe S. [Visualization of synapse-glia dynamics]. *Brain Nerve* 2007; **59**: 755-761 [PMID: 17663147]

34 **Sokolowski JD**, Mandell JW. Phagocytic clearance in neurodegeneration. *Am J Pathol* 2011; **178**: 1416-1428 [PMID: 21435432 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajpath.2010.12.051]

35 **Lööv C**, Hillered L, Ebendal T, Erlandsson A. Engulfing astrocytes protect neurons from contact-induced apoptosis following injury. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e33090 [PMID: 22461890 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0033090]

36 **Aloisi F**, Ria F, Adorini L. Regulation of T-cell responses by CNS antigen-presenting cells: different roles for microglia and astrocytes. *Immunol Today* 2000; **21**: 141-147 [PMID: 10689302]

37 **Nagayach A**, Patro N, Patro I. Astrocytic and microglial response in experimentally induced diabetic rat brain. *Metab Brain Dis* 2014; **29**: 747-761 [PMID: 24833555 DOI: 10.1007/s11011-014-9562-z]

38 **Akiyama H**, Arai T, Kondo H, Tanno E, Haga C, Ikeda K. Cell mediators of inflammation in the Alzheimer disease brain. *Alzheimer Dis Assoc Disord* 2000; **14** Suppl 1: S47-S53 [PMID: 10850730]

39 **Sofroniew MV**. Molecular dissection of reactive astrogliosis and glial scar formation. *Trends Neurosci* 2009; **32**: 638-647 [PMID: 19782411 DOI: 10.1016/j.tins.2009.08.002]

40 **Gallo V**, Deneen B. Glial development: the crossroads of regeneration and repair in the CNS. *Neuron* 2014; **83**: 283-308 [PMID: 25033178 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuron.2014.06.010]

41 **Neary JT**, Kang Y, Shi YF. Signaling from nucleotide receptors to protein kinase cascades in astrocytes. *Neurochem Res* 2004; **29**: 2037-2042 [PMID: 15662837]

42 **Butler TL**, Pennypacker KR. Temporal and regional expression of Fos-related proteins in response to ischemic injury. *Brain Res Bull* 2004; **63**: 65-73 [PMID: 15121240 DOI: 10.1016/j.brainresbull.2003.12.005]

43 **Brenner M**, Johnson AB, Boespflug-Tanguy O, Rodriguez D, Goldman JE, Messing A. Mutations in GFAP, encoding glial fibrillary acidic protein, are associated with Alexander disease. *Nat Genet* 2001; **27**: 117-120 [PMID: 11138011 DOI: 10.1038/83679]

44 **Rossi D**, Brambilla L, Valori CF, Roncoroni C, Crugnola A, Yokota T, Bredesen DE, Volterra A. Focal degeneration of astrocytes in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. *Cell Death Differ* 2008; **15**: 1691-1700 [PMID: 18617894 DOI: 10.1038/cdd.2008.99]

45 **Jo S**, Yarishkin O, Hwang YJ, Chun YE, Park M, Woo DH, Bae JY, Kim T, Lee J, Chun H, Park HJ, Lee da Y, Hong J, Kim HY, Oh SJ, Park SJ, Lee H, Yoon BE, Kim Y, Jeong Y, Shim I, Bae YC, Cho J, Kowall NW, Ryu H, Hwang E, Kim D, Lee CJ. GABA from reactive astrocytes impairs memory in mouse models of Alzheimer's disease. *Nat Med* 2014; **20**: 886-896 [PMID: 24973918 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3639]

46 **Hatten ME**, Liem RK, Shelanski ML, Mason CA. Astroglia in CNS injury. *Glia* 1991; **4**: 233-243 [PMID: 1827781 DOI: 10.1002/glia.440040215]

47 **Zamanian JL**, Xu L, Foo LC, Nouri N, Zhou L, Giffard RG, Barres BA. Genomic analysis of reactive astrogliosis. *J Neurosci* 2012; **32**: 6391-6410 [PMID: 22553043 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.6221-11.2012]

48 **Hamby ME**, Coppola G, Ao Y, Geschwind DH, Khakh BS, Sofroniew MV. Inflammatory mediators alter the astrocyte transcriptome and calcium signaling elicited by multiple G-protein-coupled receptors. *J Neurosci* 2012; **32**: 14489-14510 [PMID: 23077035 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.1256-12.2012]

49 **Kunkler PE**, Kraig RP. Reactive astrocytosis from excitotoxic injury in hippocampal organ culture parallels that seen in vivo. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab* 1997; **17**: 26-43 [PMID: 8978384 DOI: 10.1097/00004647-199701000-00005]

50 **Cahoy JD**, Emery B, Kaushal A, Foo LC, Zamanian JL, Christopherson KS, Xing Y, Lubischer JL, Krieg PA, Krupenko SA, Thompson WJ, Barres BA. A transcriptome database for astrocytes, neurons, and oligodendrocytes: a new resource for understanding brain development and function. *J Neurosci* 2008; **28**: 264-278 [PMID: 18171944 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.4178-07.2008]

51 **Wanner IB**, Anderson MA, Song B, Levine J, Fernandez A, Gray-Thompson Z, Ao Y, Sofroniew MV. Glial scar borders are formed by newly proliferated, elongated astrocytes that interact to corral inflammatory and fibrotic cells via STAT3-dependent mechanisms after spinal cord injury. *J Neurosci* 2013; **33**: 12870-12886 [PMID: 23904622 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.2121-13.2013]

52 **Maragakis NJ**, Rothstein JD. Mechanisms of Disease: astrocytes in neurodegenerative disease. *Nat Clin Pract Neurol* 2006; **2**: 679-689 [PMID: 17117171]

53 **Sirko S**, Behrendt G, Johansson PA, Tripathi P, Costa M, Bek S, Heinrich C, Tiedt S, Colak D, Dichgans M, Fischer IR, Plesnila N, Staufenbiel M, Haass C, Snapyan M, Saghatelyan A, Tsai LH, Fischer A, Grobe K, Dimou L, Götz M. Reactive glia in the injured brain acquire stem cell properties in response to sonic hedgehog. [corrected]. *Cell Stem Cell* 2013; **12**: 426-439 [PMID: 23561443 DOI: 10.1016/j.stem.2013.01.019]

54 **Pekny M**, Nilsson M. Astrocyte activation and reactive gliosis. *Glia* 2005; **50**: 427-434 [PMID: 15846805 DOI: 10.1002/glia.20207]

55 **Akassoglou K**, Probert L, Kontogeorgos G, Kollias G. Astrocyte-specific but not neuron-specific transmembrane TNF triggers inflammation and degeneration in the central nervous system of transgenic mice. *J Immunol* 1997; **158**: 438-445 [PMID: 8977220]

56 **Silver J**, Miller JH. Regeneration beyond the glial scar. *Nat Rev Neurosci* 2004; **5**: 146-156 [PMID: 14735117 DOI: 10.1038/nrn1326]

57 **Faulkner JR**, Herrmann JE, Woo MJ, Tansey KE, Doan NB, Sofroniew MV. Reactive astrocytes protect tissue and preserve function after spinal cord injury. *J Neurosci* 2004; **24**: 2143-2155 [PMID: 14999065 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.3547-03.2004]

58 **Fawcett JW**, Asher RA. The glial scar and central nervous system repair. *Brain Res Bull* 1999; **49**: 377-391 [PMID: 10483914]

59 **Yiu G**, He Z. Glial inhibition of CNS axon regeneration. *Nat Rev Neurosci* 2006; **7**: 617-627 [PMID: 16858390 DOI: 10.1038/nrn1956]

60 **Liberto CM**, Albrecht PJ, Herx LM, Yong VW, Levison SW. Pro-regenerative properties of cytokine-activated astrocytes. *J Neurochem* 2004; **89**: 1092-1100 [PMID: 15147501 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-4159.2004.02420.x]

61 **Cekanaviciute E**, Dietrich HK, Axtell RC, Williams AM, Egusquiza R, Wai KM, Koshy AA, Buckwalter MS. Astrocytic TGF-β signaling limits inflammation and reduces neuronal damage during central nervous system Toxoplasma infection. *J Immunol* 2014; **193**: 139-149 [PMID: 24860191 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1303284]

62 **Iwata-Ichikawa E**, Kondo Y, Miyazaki I, Asanuma M, Ogawa N. Glial cells protect neurons against oxidative stress via transcriptional up-regulation of the glutathione synthesis. *J Neurochem* 1999; **72**: 2334-2344 [PMID: 10349842]

63 **Chen Y**, Chan PH, Swanson RA. Astrocytes overexpressing Cu,Zn superoxide dismutase have increased resistance to oxidative injury. *Glia* 2001; **33**: 343-347 [PMID: 11246233]

64 **Berg A**, Zelano J, Pekna M, Wilhelmsson U, Pekny M, Cullheim S. Axonal regeneration after sciatic nerve lesion is delayed but complete in GFAP- and vimentin-deficient mice. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e79395 [PMID: 24223940 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0079395]

65 **Larsson A**, Wilhelmsson U, Pekna M, Pekny M. Increased cell proliferation and neurogenesis in the hippocampal dentate gyrus of old GFAP(-/-)Vim(-/-) mice. *Neurochem Res* 2004; **29**: 2069-2073 [PMID: 15662841]

66 **Pekny M**, Johansson CB, Eliasson C, Stakeberg J, Wallén A, Perlmann T, Lendahl U, Betsholtz C, Berthold CH, Frisén J. Abnormal reaction to central nervous system injury in mice lacking glial fibrillary acidic protein and vimentin. *J Cell Biol* 1999; **145**: 503-514 [PMID: 10225952]

67 **Nakazawa T**, Takeda M, Lewis GP, Cho KS, Jiao J, Wilhelmsson U, Fisher SK, Pekny M, Chen DF, Miller JW. Attenuated glial reactions and photoreceptor degeneration after retinal detachment in mice deficient in glial fibrillary acidic protein and vimentin. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 2007; **48**: 2760-2768 [PMID: 17525210 DOI: 10.1167/iovs.06-1398]

68 **Mansour H**, Asher R, Dahl D, Labkovsky B, Perides G, Bignami A. Permissive and non-permissive reactive astrocytes: immunofluorescence study with antibodies to the glial hyaluronate-binding protein. *J Neurosci Res* 1990; **25**: 300-311 [PMID: 1691306 DOI: 10.1002/jnr.490250306]

69 **Widestrand A**, Faijerson J, Wilhelmsson U, Smith PL, Li L, Sihlbom C, Eriksson PS, Pekny M. Increased neurogenesis and astrogenesis from neural progenitor cells grafted in the hippocampus of GFAP-/- Vim-/- mice. *Stem Cells* 2007; **25**: 2619-2627 [PMID: 17628017 DOI: 10.1634/stemcells.2007-0122]

70 **Bush TG**, Puvanachandra N, Horner CH, Polito A, Ostenfeld T, Svendsen CN, Mucke L, Johnson MH, Sofroniew MV. Leukocyte infiltration, neuronal degeneration, and neurite outgrowth after ablation of scar-forming, reactive astrocytes in adult transgenic mice. *Neuron* 1999; **23**: 297-308 [PMID: 10399936]

71 **Colangelo AM**, Bianco MR, Vitagliano L, Cavaliere C, Cirillo G, De Gioia L, Diana D, Colombo D, Redaelli C, Zaccaro L, Morelli G, Papa M, Sarmientos P, Alberghina L, Martegani E. A new nerve growth factor-mimetic peptide active on neuropathic pain in rats. *J Neurosci* 2008; **28**: 2698-2709 [PMID: 18337399 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.5201-07.2008]

72 **Liu T**, Xue CC, Shi YL, Bai XJ, Li ZF, Yi CL. Overexpression of mitofusin 2 inhibits reactive astrogliosis proliferation in vitro. *Neurosci Lett* 2014; **579**: 24-29 [PMID: 25017825 DOI: 10.1016/j.neulet.2014.07.002]

73 **Mayer CL**, Huber BR, Peskind E. Traumatic brain injury, neuroinflammation, and post-traumatic headaches. *Headache* 2013; **53**: 1523-1530 [PMID: 24090534 DOI: 10.1111/head.12173]

74 **Takano T**, Tian GF, Peng W, Lou N, Libionka W, Han X, Nedergaard M. Astrocyte-mediated control of cerebral blood flow. *Nat Neurosci* 2006; **9**: 260-267 [PMID: 16388306 DOI: 10.1038/nn1623]

75 **Allen NJ**, Barres BA. Signaling between glia and neurons: focus on synaptic plasticity. *Curr Opin Neurobiol* 2005; **15**: 542-548 [PMID: 16144764 DOI: 10.1016/j.conb.2005.08.006]

76 **Tynan RJ**, Beynon SB, Hinwood M, Johnson SJ, Nilsson M, Woods JJ, Walker FR. Chronic stress-induced disruption of the astrocyte network is driven by structural atrophy and not loss of astrocytes. *Acta Neuropathol* 2013; **126**: 75-91 [PMID: 23512378 DOI: 10.1007/s00401-013-1102-0]

77 **Mannix R**, Berglass J, Berkner J, Moleus P, Qiu J, Andrews N, Gunner G, Berglass L, Jantzie LL, Robinson S, Meehan WP. Chronic gliosis and behavioral deficits in mice following repetitive mild traumatic brain injury. *J Neurosurg* 2014; **121**: 1342-1350 [PMID: 25267088 DOI: 10.3171/2014.7.JNS14272]

78 **Kamphuis W**, Middeldorp J, Kooijman L, Sluijs JA, Kooi EJ, Moeton M, Freriks M, Mizee MR, Hol EM. Glial fibrillary acidic protein isoform expression in plaque related astrogliosis in Alzheimer's disease. *Neurobiol Aging* 2014; **35**: 492-510 [PMID: 24269023 DOI: 10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2013.09.035]

79 **Lee KM**, Chiu KB, Renner NA, Sansing HA, Didier PJ, MacLean AG. Form follows function: astrocyte morphology and immune dysfunction in SIV neuroAIDS. *J Neurovirol* 2014; **20**: 474-484 [PMID: 24970236 DOI: 10.1007/s13365-014-0267-1]

80 **Lee KM**, Chiu KB, Sansing HA, Didier PJ, Ficht TA, Arenas-Gamboa AM, Roy CJ, Maclean AG. Aerosol-induced brucellosis increases TLR-2 expression and increased complexity in the microanatomy of astroglia in rhesus macaques. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol* 2013; **3**: 86 [PMID: 24350061 DOI: 10.3389/fcimb.2013.00086]

81 **Lee KM**, Chiu KB, Sansing HA, Inglis FM, Baker KC, MacLean AG. Astrocyte atrophy and immune dysfunction in self-harming macaques. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e69980 [PMID: 23922882 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0069980]

82 **Torres-Platas SG**, Hercher C, Davoli MA, Maussion G, Labonté B, Turecki G, Mechawar N. Astrocytic hypertrophy in anterior cingulate white matter of depressed suicides. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 2011; **36**: 2650-2658 [PMID: 21814185 DOI: 10.1038/npp.2011.154]

83 **Kane CJ**, Phelan KD, Douglas JC, Wagoner G, Johnson JW, Xu J, Phelan PS, Drew PD. Effects of ethanol on immune response in the brain: region-specific changes in adolescent versus adult mice. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2014; **38**: 384-391 [PMID: 24033454 DOI: 10.1111/acer.12244]

84 **Cano V**, Valladolid-Acebes I, Hernandez-Nuno F, Merino B, Del Olmo N, Chowen JA, Ruiz-Gayo M. Morphological changes in glial fibrillary acidic protein immunopositive astrocytes in the hippocampus of dietary-induced obese mice. *Neuroreport* 2014; Epub ahead of print: [PMID: 24911388 DOI: 10.1097/WNR.0000000000000180]

85 **Saur L**, Baptista PP, de Senna PN, Paim MF, do Nascimento P, Ilha J, Bagatini PB, Achaval M, Xavier LL. Physical exercise increases GFAP expression and induces morphological changes in hippocampal astrocytes. *Brain Struct Funct* 2014; **219**: 293-302 [PMID: 23288255 DOI: 10.1007/s00429-012-0500-8]

86 **Black JA**, Waxman SG. The perinodal astrocyte. *Glia* 1988; **1**: 169-183 [PMID: 2976037 DOI: 10.1002/glia.440010302]

87 **Baorto DM**, Mellado W, Shelanski ML. Astrocyte process growth induction by actin breakdown. *J Cell Biol* 1992; **117**: 357-367 [PMID: 1313815]

88 **Pannasch U**, Freche D, Dallérac G, Ghézali G, Escartin C, Ezan P, Cohen-Salmon M, Benchenane K, Abudara V, Dufour A, Lübke JH, Déglon N, Knott G, Holcman D, Rouach N. Connexin 30 sets synaptic strength by controlling astroglial synapse invasion. *Nat Neurosci* 2014; **17**: 549-558 [PMID: 24584052 DOI: 10.1038/nn.3662]

89 **Kawano H**, Kimura-Kuroda J, Komuta Y, Yoshioka N, Li HP, Kawamura K, Li Y, Raisman G. Role of the lesion scar in the response to damage and repair of the central nervous system. *Cell Tissue Res* 2012; **349**: 169-180 [PMID: 22362507 DOI: 10.1007/s00441-012-1336-5]

90 **Theodosis DT**, El Majdoubi M, Pierre K, Poulain DA. Factors governing activity-dependent structural plasticity of the hypothalamoneurohypophysial system. *Cell Mol Neurobiol* 1998; **18**: 285-298 [PMID: 9535294]

91 **Wang DD**, Bordey A. The astrocyte odyssey. *Prog Neurobiol* 2008; **86**: 342-367 [PMID: 18948166 DOI: 10.1016/j.pneurobio.2008.09.015]

92 **Chen Y**, Swanson RA. Astrocytes and brain injury. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab* 2003; **23**: 137-149 [PMID: 12571445]

93 **Adams I**, Jones DG. Synaptic remodelling and astrocytic hypertrophy in rat cerebral cortex from early to late adulthood. *Neurobiol Aging* 1982; **3**: 179-186 [PMID: 7162548]

94 **Gylys KH**, Fein JA, Yang F, Wiley DJ, Miller CA, Cole GM. Synaptic changes in Alzheimer's disease: increased amyloid-beta and gliosis in surviving terminals is accompanied by decreased PSD-95 fluorescence. *Am J Pathol* 2004; **165**: 1809-1817 [PMID: 15509549]

95 **Vanzani MC**, Iacono RF, Caccuri RL, Berria MI. Immunochemical and morphometric features of astrocyte reactivity vs. plaque location in Alzheimer's disease. *Medicina* (B Aires) 2005; **65**: 213-218 [PMID: 16042131]

96 **Gates MA**, Thomas LB, Howard EM, Laywell ED, Sajin B,

Faissner A, Götz B, Silver J, Steindler DA. Cell and molecular analysis of the developing and adult mouse subventricular zone of the cerebral hemispheres. *J Comp Neurol* 1995; **361**: 249-266 [PMID: 8543661 DOI: 10.1002/cne.903610205]

97 **Robel S**, Berninger B, Götz M. The stem cell potential of glia: lessons from reactive gliosis. *Nat Rev Neurosci* 2011; **12**: 88-104 [PMID: 21248788 DOI: 10.1038/nrn2978]

98 **Heneka MT**, O'Banion MK, Terwel D, Kummer MP. Neuroinflammatory processes in Alzheimer's disease. *J Neural Transm* 2010; **117**: 919-947 [PMID: 20632195 DOI: 10.1007/s00702-010-0438-z]

99 **Verkhratsky A**, Rodriguez JJ, Parpura V. Astroglia in neurological diseases. *Future Neurol* 2013; **8**: 149-158 [PMID: 23658503 DOI: 10.2217/fnl.12.90]

100 **Banasr M**, Duman RS. Glial loss in the prefrontal cortex is sufficient to induce depressive-like behaviors. *Biol Psychiatry* 2008; **64**: 863-870 [PMID: 18639237 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopsych.2008.06.008]

101 **Banasr M**, Dwyer JM, Duman RS. Cell atrophy and loss in depression: reversal by antidepressant treatment. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 2011; **23**: 730-737 [PMID: 21996102 DOI: 10.1016/j.ceb.2011.09.002]

102 **Sullivan SM**, Björkman ST, Miller SM, Colditz PB, Pow DV. Morphological changes in white matter astrocytes in response to hypoxia/ischemia in the neonatal pig. *Brain Res* 2010; **1319**: 164-174 [PMID: 20079338]

103 **Shao Y**, Enkvist MO, McCarthy KD. Glutamate blocks astroglial stellation: effect of glutamate uptake and volume changes. *Glia* 1994; **11**: 1-10 [PMID: 7915251 DOI: 10.1002/glia.440110103]

104 **Ernst T**, Jiang CS, Nakama H, Buchthal S, Chang L. Lower brain glutamate is associated with cognitive deficits in HIV patients: a new mechanism for HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder. *J Magn Reson Imaging* 2010; **32**: 1045-1053 [PMID: 21031507 DOI: 10.1002/jmri.22366]

105 **Giaume C**, Kirchhoff F, Matute C, Reichenbach A, Verkhratsky A. Glia: the fulcrum of brain diseases. *Cell Death Differ* 2007; **14**: 1324-1335 [PMID: 17431421]

106 **Pierozan P**, Zamoner A, Soska ÂK, de Lima BO, Reis KP, Zamboni F, Wajner M, Pessoa-Pureur R. Signaling mechanisms downstream of quinolinic acid targeting the cytoskeleton of rat striatal neurons and astrocytes. *Exp Neurol* 2012; **233**: 391-399 [PMID: 22116044]

107 **Cisneros IE**, Ghorpade A. HIV-1, methamphetamine and astrocyte glutamate regulation: combined excitotoxic implications for neuro-AIDS. *Curr HIV Res* 2012; **10**: 392-406 [PMID: 22591363]

108 **Rossi DJ**. Astrocytes join the plasticity party. *Nat Neurosci* 2012; **15**: 649-651 [PMID: 22534575 DOI: 10.1038/nn.3095]

109 **Inglese M**, Bomsztyk E, Gonen O, Mannon LJ, Grossman RI, Rusinek H. Dilated perivascular spaces: hallmarks of mild traumatic brain injury. *AJNR Am J Neuroradiol* 2005; **26**: 719-724 [PMID: 15814911]

110 **Abbott NJ**, Rönnbäck L, Hansson E. Astrocyte-endothelial interactions at the blood-brain barrier. *Nat Rev Neurosci* 2006; **7**: 41-53 [PMID: 16371949]

111 **Brand-Schieber E**, Werner P, Iacobas DA, Iacobas S, Beelitz M, Lowery SL, Spray DC, Scemes E. Connexin43, the major gap junction protein of astrocytes, is down-regulated in inflamed white matter in an animal model of multiple sclerosis. *J Neurosci Res* 2005; **80**: 798-808 [PMID: 15898103 DOI: 10.1002/jnr.20474]

112 **Leonard BE**. The concept of depression as a dysfunction of the immune system. *Curr Immunol Rev* 2010; **6**: 205-212 [PMID: 21170282 DOI: 10.2174/157339510791823835]

113 **Eng LF**, Ghirnikar RS, Lee YL. Glial fibrillary acidic protein: GFAP-thirty-one years (1969-2000). *Neurochem Res* 2000; **25**: 1439-1451 [PMID: 11059815]

114 **Kang K**, Lee SW, Han JE, Choi JW, Song MR. The complex morphology of reactive astrocytes controlled by fibroblast growth factor signaling. *Glia* 2014; **62**: 1328-1344 [PMID: 24796693 DOI: 10.1002/glia.22684]

115 **Nicchia GP**, Frigeri A, Liuzzi GM, Svelto M. Inhibition of aquaporin-4 expression in astrocytes by RNAi determines alteration in cell morphology, growth, and water transport and induces changes in ischemia-related genes. *FASEB J* 2003; **17**: 1508-1510 [PMID: 12824287 DOI: 10.1096/fj.02-1183fje]

116 **Risher WC**, Andrew RD, Kirov SA. Real-time passive volume responses of astrocytes to acute osmotic and ischemic stress in cortical slices and in vivo revealed by two-photon microscopy. *Glia* 2009; **57**: 207-221 [PMID: 18720409 DOI: 10.1002/glia.20747]

117 **Sun D**, Jakobs TC. Structural remodeling of astrocytes in the injured CNS. *Neuroscientist* 2012; **18**: 567-588 [PMID: 21982954 DOI: 10.1177/1073858411423441]

118 **Xuan AG**, Pan XB, Wei P, Ji WD, Zhang WJ, Liu JH, Hong LP, Chen WL, Long DH. Valproic acid alleviates memory deficits and attenuates amyloid-β deposition in transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. *Mol Neurobiol* 2015; **51**: 300-312 [PMID: 24854198 DOI: 10.1007/s12035-014-8751-4]

119 **Muldoon LL**, Alvarez JI, Begley DJ, Boado RJ, Del Zoppo GJ, Doolittle ND, Engelhardt B, Hallenbeck JM, Lonser RR, Ohlfest JR, Prat A, Scarpa M, Smeyne RJ, Drewes LR, Neuwelt EA. Immunologic privilege in the central nervous system and the blood-brain barrier. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab* 2013; **33**: 13-21 [PMID: 23072749 DOI: 10.1038/jcbfm.2012.153]

120 **Liu T**, Gao YJ, Ji RR. Emerging role of Toll-like receptors in the control of pain and itch. *Neurosci Bull* 2012; **28**: 131-144 [PMID: 22466124 DOI: 10.1007/s12264-012-1219-5]

121 **Sofroniew MV**. Multiple roles for astrocytes as effectors of cytokines and inflammatory mediators. *Neuroscientist* 2014; **20**: 160-172 [PMID: 24106265 DOI: 10.1177/1073858413504466]

122 **Kielian T**. Overview of toll-like receptors in the CNS. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2009; **336**: 1-14 [PMID: 19688325 DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-00549-7_1]

123 **Kigerl KA**, de Rivero Vaccari JP, Dietrich WD, Popovich PG, Keane RW. Pattern recognition receptors and central nervous system repair. *Exp Neurol* 2014; **258**: 5-16 [PMID: 25017883 DOI: 10.1016/j.expneurol.2014.01.001]

124 **Hayward JH**, Lee SJ. A Decade of Research on TLR2 Discovering Its Pivotal Role in Glial Activation and Neuroinflammation in Neurodegenerative Diseases. *Exp Neurobiol* 2014; **23**: 138-147 [PMID: 24963278 DOI: 10.5607/en.2014.23.2.138]

125 **Heiman A**, Pallottie A, Heary RF, Elkabes S. Toll-like receptors in central nervous system injury and disease: a focus on the spinal cord. *Brain Behav Immun* 2014; **42**: 232-245 [PMID: 25063708 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbi.2014.06.203]

126 **Jack CS**, Arbour N, Manusow J, Montgrain V, Blain M, McCrea E, Shapiro A, Antel JP. TLR signaling tailors innate immune responses in human microglia and astrocytes. *J Immunol* 2005; **175**: 4320-4330 [PMID: 16177072]

127 **Bowman CC**, Rasley A, Tranguch SL, Marriott I. Cultured astrocytes express toll-like receptors for bacterial products. *Glia* 2003; **43**: 281-291 [PMID: 12898707 DOI: 10.1002/glia.10256]

128 **Gurley C**, Nichols J, Liu S, Phulwani NK, Esen N, Kielian T. Microglia and Astrocyte Activation by Toll-Like Receptor Ligands: Modulation by PPAR-gamma Agonists. *PPAR Res* 2008; **2008**: 453120 [PMID: 18584038 DOI: 10.1155/2008/453120]

129 **Klein RS**, Williams KC, Alvarez-Hernandez X, Westmoreland S, Force T, Lackner AA, Luster AD. Chemokine receptor expression and signaling in macaque and human fetal neurons and astrocytes: implications for the neuropathogenesis of AIDS. *J Immunol* 1999; **163**: 1636-1646 [PMID: 10415069]

130 **Liu Y**, Liu H, Kim BO, Gattone VH, Li J, Nath A, Blum J, He JJ. CD4-independent infection of astrocytes by human immunodeficiency virus type 1: requirement for the human mannose receptor. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 4120-4133 [PMID: 15047828]

131 **Guillemin G**, Croitoru J, Le Grand RL, Franck-Duchenne M, Dormont D, Boussin FD. Simian immunodeficiency virus mac251 infection of astrocytes. *J Neurovirol* 2000; **6**: 173-186 [PMID: 10878708]

132 **Alkuwaity K**, Taylor A, Heckels JE, Doran KS, Christodoulides M. Group B Streptococcus interactions with human meningeal cells and astrocytes in vitro. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e42660 [PMID: 22900037 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0042660]

133 **Carbone KM**, Moench TR, Lipkin WI. Borna disease virus replicates in astrocytes, Schwann cells and ependymal cells in persistently infected rats: location of viral genomic and messenger RNAs by in situ hybridization. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol* 1991; **50**: 205-214 [PMID: 2022964]

134 **Reinert LS**, Harder L, Holm CK, Iversen MB, Horan KA, Dagnæs-Hansen F, Ulhøi BP, Holm TH, Mogensen TH, Owens T, Nyengaard JR, Thomsen AR, Paludan SR. TLR3 deficiency renders astrocytes permissive to herpes simplex virus infection and facilitates establishment of CNS infection in mice. *J Clin Invest* 2012; **122**: 1368-1376 [PMID: 22426207 DOI: 10.1172/JCI60893]

135 **Wang T**, Town T, Alexopoulou L, Anderson JF, Fikrig E, Flavell RA. Toll-like receptor 3 mediates West Nile virus entry into the brain causing lethal encephalitis. *Nat Med* 2004; **10**: 1366-1373 [PMID: 15558055 DOI: 10.1038/nm1140]

136 **Rubartelli A**, Lotze MT. Inside, outside, upside down: damage-associated molecular-pattern molecules (DAMPs) and redox. *Trends Immunol* 2007; **28**: 429-436 [PMID: 17845865 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2007.08.004]

137 **Hayakawa K**, Miyamoto N, Seo JH, Pham LD, Kim KW, Lo EH, Arai K. High-mobility group box 1 from reactive astrocytes enhances the accumulation of endothelial progenitor cells in damaged white matter. *J Neurochem* 2012;Epub ahead of print: [PMID: 23227954 DOI: 10.1111/jnc.12120]

138 **Park C**, Cho IH, Kim D, Jo EK, Choi SY, Oh SB, Park K, Kim JS, Lee SJ. Toll-like receptor 2 contributes to glial cell activation and heme oxygenase-1 expression in traumatic brain injury. *Neurosci Lett* 2008; **431**: 123-128 [PMID: 18164130 DOI: 10.1016/j.neulet.2007.11.057]

139 **Kim RY**, Hoffman AS, Itoh N, Ao Y, Spence R, Sofroniew MV, Voskuhl RR. Astrocyte CCL2 sustains immune cell infiltration in chronic experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Neuroimmunol* 2014; **274**: 53-61 [PMID: 25005117 DOI: 10.1016/j.jneuroim.2014.06.009]

140 **Baldi PC**, Giambartolomei GH. Immunopathology of Brucella infection. *Recent Pat Antiinfect Drug Discov* 2013; **8**: 18-26 [PMID: 22812614]

141 **Abdul Muneer PM**, Alikunju S, Szlachetka AM, Haorah J. The mechanisms of cerebral vascular dysfunction and neuroinflammation by MMP-mediated degradation of VEGFR-2 in alcohol ingestion. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2012; **32**: 1167-1177 [PMID: 22402362 DOI: 10.1161/ATVBAHA.112.247668]

142 **Carpentier PA**, Begolka WS, Olson JK, Elhofy A, Karpus WJ, Miller SD. Differential activation of astrocytes by innate and adaptive immune stimuli. *Glia* 2005; **49**: 360-374 [PMID: 15538753 DOI: 10.1002/glia.20117]

143 **Ridet JL**, Malhotra SK, Privat A, Gage FH. Reactive astrocytes: cellular and molecular cues to biological function. *Trends Neurosci* 1997; **20**: 570-577 [PMID: 9416670]

144 **Gadea A**, Schinelli S, Gallo V. Endothelin-1 regulates astrocyte proliferation and reactive gliosis via a JNK/c-Jun signaling pathway. *J Neurosci* 2008; **28**: 2394-2408 [PMID: 18322086 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.5652-07.2008]

145 **Moynagh PN**. The interleukin-1 signalling pathway in astrocytes: a key contributor to inflammation in the brain. *J Anat* 2005; **207**: 265-269 [PMID: 16185251 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-7580.2005.00445.x]

146 **Glass CK**, Saijo K, Winner B, Marchetto MC, Gage FH. Mechanisms underlying inflammation in neurodegeneration. *Cell* 2010; **140**: 918-934 [PMID: 20303880 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2010.02.016]

147 **Li C**, Zhao R, Gao K, Wei Z, Yin MY, Lau LT, Chui D, Hoi Yu AC. Astrocytes: implications for neuroinflammatory pathogenesis of Alzheimer's disease. *Curr Alzheimer Res* 2011; **8**: 67-80 [PMID: 21143158]

148 **Blasko I**, Stampfer-Kountchev M, Robatscher P, Veerhuis R, Eikelenboom P, Grubeck-Loebenstein B. How chronic inflammation can affect the brain and support the development of Alzheimer's disease in old age: the role of microglia and astrocytes. *Aging Cell* 2004; **3**: 169-176 [PMID: 15268750 DOI: 10.1111/j.1474-9728.2004.00101.x]

149 **Thal DR**. The role of astrocytes in amyloid β-protein toxicity and clearance. *Exp Neurol* 2012; **236**: 1-5 [PMID: 22575598 DOI: 10.1016/j.expneurol.2012.04.021]

150 **Mayo L**, Trauger SA, Blain M, Nadeau M, Patel B, Alvarez JI, Mascanfroni ID, Yeste A, Kivisäkk P, Kallas K, Ellezam B, Bakshi R, Prat A, Antel JP, Weiner HL, Quintana FJ. Regulation of astrocyte activation by glycolipids drives chronic CNS inflammation. *Nat Med* 2014; **20**: 1147-1156 [PMID: 25216636 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3681]

151 **Fu HQ**, Yang T, Xiao W, Fan L, Wu Y, Terrando N, Wang TL. Prolonged neuroinflammation after lipopolysaccharide exposure in aged rats. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e106331 [PMID: 25170959 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0106331]

152 **Henn A**, Kirner S, Leist M. TLR2 hypersensitivity of astrocytes as functional consequence of previous inflammatory episodes. *J Immunol* 2011; **186**: 3237-3247 [PMID: 21282508 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1002787]

153 **El-Hage N**, Podhaizer EM, Sturgill J, Hauser KF. Toll-like receptor expression and activation in astroglia: differential regulation by HIV-1 Tat, gp120, and morphine. *Immunol Invest* 2011; **40**: 498-522 [PMID: 21425908 DOI: 10.3109/08820139.2011.561904]

154 **Butchi NB**, Du M, Peterson KE. Interactions between TLR7 and TLR9 agonists and receptors regulate innate immune responses by astrocytes and microglia. *Glia* 2010; **58**: 650-664 [PMID: 19998480 DOI: 10.1002/glia.20952]

155 **Burda JE**, Sofroniew MV. Reactive gliosis and the multicellular response to CNS damage and disease. *Neuron* 2014; **81**: 229-248 [PMID: 24462092 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuron.2013.12.034]

156 **Persidsky Y**, Ghorpade A, Rasmussen J, Limoges J, Liu XJ, Stins M, Fiala M, Way D, Kim KS, Witte MH, Weinand M, Carhart L, Gendelman HE. Microglial and astrocyte chemokines regulate monocyte migration through the blood-brain barrier in human immunodeficiency virus-1 encephalitis. *Am J Pathol* 1999; **155**: 1599-1611 [PMID: 10550317]

157 **Renner NA**, Lackner AA, MacLean AG. Blood-Brain Barrier Disruption and Encephalitis in Animal Models of AIDS. In: Tkachev S, editor. Non-Flavivirus Encephalitis: In Tech, 2011: 87-102

158 **Sansing HA**, Renner NA, MacLean AG. An inverted blood-brain barrier model that permits interactions between glia and inflammatory stimuli. *J Neurosci Methods* 2012; **207**: 91-96 [PMID: 22484463]

159 **Ando H**, Sato T, Tomaru U, Yoshida M, Utsunomiya A, Yamauchi J, Araya N, Yagishita N, Coler-Reilly A, Shimizu Y, Yudoh K, Hasegawa Y, Nishioka K, Nakajima T, Jacobson S, Yamano Y. Positive feedback loop via astrocytes causes chronic inflammation in virus-associated myelopathy. *Brain* 2013; **136**: 2876-2887 [PMID: 23892452 DOI: 10.1093/brain/awt183]

160 **Owens T**, Wekerle H, Antel J. Genetic models for CNS inflammation. *Nat Med* 2001; **7**: 161-166 [PMID: 11175845 DOI: 10.1038/84603]

161 **Toft-Hansen H**, Füchtbauer L, Owens T. Inhibition of reactive astrocytosis in established experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis favors infiltration by myeloid cells over T cells and enhances severity of disease. *Glia* 2011; **59**: 166-176 [PMID: 21046558 DOI: 10.1002/glia.21088]

162 **Ovanesov MV**, Ayhan Y, Wolbert C, Moldovan K, Sauder C, Pletnikov MV. Astrocytes play a key role in activation of microglia by persistent Borna disease virus infection. *J Neuroinflammation* 2008; **5**: 50 [PMID: 19014432 DOI: 10.1186/1742-2094-5-50]

163 **McArthur JC**, Steiner J, Sacktor N, Nath A. Human immunodeficiency virus-associated neurocognitive disorders: Mind the gap. *Ann Neurol* 2010; **67**: 699-714 [PMID: 20517932 DOI: 10.1002/ana.22053]

164 **Hulsebosch CE**. Gliopathy ensures persistent inflammation and chronic pain after spinal cord injury. *Exp Neurol* 2008; **214**: 6-9 [PMID: 18708053 DOI: 10.1016/j.expneurol.2008.07.016]

165 **Zlokovic BV**. The blood-brain barrier in health and chronic neurodegenerative disorders. *Neuron* 2008; **57**: 178-201 [PMID: 18215617 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuron.2008.01.003]

166 **Jha MK**, Kim JH, Suk K. Proteome of brain glia: the molecular basis of diverse glial phenotypes. *Proteomics* 2014; **14**: 378-398 [PMID: 24124134 DOI: 10.1002/pmic.201300236]

167 **Carbone M**, Duty S, Rattray M. Riluzole elevates GLT-1 activity and levels in striatal astrocytes. *Neurochem Int* 2012; **60**: 31-38 [PMID: 22080156 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuint.2011.10.017]

168 **Mizuta I**, Ohta M, Ohta K, Nishimura M, Mizuta E, Kuno S. Riluzole stimulates nerve growth factor, brain-derived neurotrophic factor and glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor synthesis in cultured mouse astrocytes. *Neurosci Lett* 2001; **310**: 117-120 [PMID: 11585581]

169 **Squitieri F**, Orobello S, Cannella M, Martino T, Romanelli P, Giovacchini G, Frati L, Mansi L, Ciarmiello A. Riluzole protects Huntington disease patients from brain glucose hypometabolism and grey matter volume loss and increases production of neurotrophins. *Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging* 2009; **36**: 1113-1120 [PMID: 19280185 DOI: 10.1007/s00259-009-1103-3]

170 **Branger J**, van den Blink B, Weijer S, Madwed J, Bos CL, Gupta A, Yong CL, Polmar SH, Olszyna DP, Hack CE, van Deventer SJ, Peppelenbosch MP, van der Poll T. Anti-inflammatory effects of a p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase inhibitor during human endotoxemia. *J Immunol* 2002; **168**: 4070-4077 [PMID: 11937566]

171 **Piao CS**, Kim JB, Han PL, Lee JK. Administration of the p38 MAPK inhibitor SB203580 affords brain protection with a wide therapeutic window against focal ischemic insult. *J Neurosci Res* 2003; **73**: 537-544 [PMID: 12898538 DOI: 10.1002/jnr.10671]

172 **Orre M**, Kamphuis W, Osborn LM, Jansen AH, Kooijman L, Bossers K, Hol EM. Isolation of glia from Alzheimer's mice reveals inflammation and dysfunction. *Neurobiol Aging* 2014; **35**: 2746-2760 [PMID: 25002035 DOI: 10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2014.06.004]

173 **Birch AM**. The contribution of astrocytes to Alzheimer's disease. *Biochem Soc Trans* 2014; **42**: 1316-1320 [PMID: 25233409 DOI: 10.1042/BST20140171]

174 **Xiao Q**, Yan P, Ma X, Liu H, Perez R, Zhu A, Gonzales E, Burchett JM, Schuler DR, Cirrito JR, Diwan A, Lee JM. Enhancing astrocytic lysosome biogenesis facilitates Aβ clearance and attenuates amyloid plaque pathogenesis. *J Neurosci* 2014; **34**: 9607-9620 [PMID: 25031402 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.3788-13.2014]

175 **Ke N**, Wang X, Xu X, Abassi YA. The xCELLigence system for real-time and label-free monitoring of cell viability. *Methods Mol Biol* 2011; **740**: 33-43 [PMID: 21468966 DOI: 10.1007/978-1-61779-108-6_6]

176 **Renner NA**, Sansing HA, Inglis FM, Mehra S, Kaushal D, Lackner AA, Maclean AG. Transient acidification and subsequent proinflammatory cytokine stimulation of astrocytes induce distinct activation phenotypes. *J Cell Physiol* 2013; **228**: 1284-1294 [PMID: 23154943 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.24283]

177 **van Kralingen C**, Kho DT, Costa J, Angel CE, Graham ES. Exposure to inflammatory cytokines IL-1β and TNFα induces compromise and death of astrocytes; implications for chronic neuroinflammation. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e84269 [PMID: 24367648 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0084269]

178 **Zhao Y**, Rempe DA. Targeting astrocytes for stroke therapy. *Neurotherapeutics* 2010; **7**: 439-451 [PMID: 20880507 DOI: 10.1016/j.nurt.2010.07.004]

179 **Honsa P**, Pivonkova H, Harantova L, Butenko O, Kriska J, Dzamba D, Rusnakova V, Valihrach L, Kubista M, Anderova M. Increased expression of hyperpolarization-activated cyclic nucleotide-gated (HCN) channels in reactive astrocytes following ischemia. *Glia* 2014; **62**: 2004-2021 [PMID: 25042871 DOI: 10.1002/glia.22721]

180 **Pekny M**, Wilhelmsson U, Pekna M. The dual role of astrocyte activation and reactive gliosis. *Neurosci Lett* 2014; **565**: 30-38 [PMID: 24406153 DOI: 10.1016/j.neulet.2013.12.071]

181 **Guo Z**, Zhang L, Wu Z, Chen Y, Wang F, Chen G. In vivo direct reprogramming of reactive glial cells into functional neurons after brain injury and in an Alzheimer's disease model. *Cell Stem Cell* 2014; **14**: 188-202 [PMID: 24360883 DOI: 10.1016/j.stem.2013.12.001]

P- Reviewer: Pimentel-Coelho PM, Riva N **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.56

World J Virol 2015 May 12; 4(2): 56-77
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Impact of antiretroviral therapy on lipid metabolism of human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients: Old and new drugs

Joel da Cunha, Luciana Morganti Ferreira Maselli, Ana Carolina Bassi Stern, Celso Spada, Sérgio Paulo Bydlowski

Joel da Cunha, Luciana Morganti Ferreira Maselli, Ana Carolina Bassi Stern, Sérgio Paulo Bydlowski, Laboratory of Genetics and Molecular Hematology (LIM31), University of São Paulo Medical School (FMUSP), São Paulo SP 05403-000, Brazil
Joel da Cunha, Celso Spada, Clinical Analysis Department, Health Sciences Center, Federal University of Santa Catarina (CCS/UFSC), Florianópolis SC 88040-900, Brazil
Luciana Morganti Ferreira Maselli, Molecular Genetics and Biotechnology Department, Research Division, Pró-Sangue Foundation/Blood Center of São Paulo, São Paulo SP 05403-000, Brazil
Author contributions: All authors had equally contributed to this work.
Conflict-of-interest: The authors state that there are no conflicts of interest regarding the publication of this work.

Correspondence to: Sérgio Paulo Bydlowski, MD, PhD, Associate Professor of Hematology, Director, Laboratory of Genetics and Molecular Hematology (LIM-31), University of São Paulo Medical School (FMUSP), Av. Dr. Enéas de Carvalho Aguiar, 155, 1 andar, Sala 43, São Paulo SP 05403-000, Brazil. spbydlow@usp.br
Telephone: +55-11-30822398
Fax: +55-11-30822398
Received: October 27, 2014
Peer-review started: October 28, 2014
First decision: November 27, 2014
Revised: February 9, 2015
Accepted: March 5, 2015
Article in press: March 9, 2015
Published online: May 12, 2015

Abstract

For human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected patients, the 1990s were marked by the introduction of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) representing a new perspective of life for these patients. The use of HAART was shown to effectively suppress the replication of HIV-1 and dramatically reduce mortality and morbidity, which led to a better and longer quality of life for HIV-1-infected patients. Apart from the substantial benefits that result from the use of various HAART regimens, laboratory and clinical experience has shown that HAART can induce severe and considerable adverse effects related to metabolic complications of lipid metabolism, characterized by signs of lipodystrophy, insulin resistance, central adiposity, dyslipidemia, increased risk of cardiovascular disease and even an increased risk of atherosclerosis. New drugs are being studied, new therapeutic strategies are being implemented, and the use of statins, fibrates, and inhibitors of intestinal cholesterol absorption have been effective alternatives. Changes in diet and lifestyle have also shown satisfactory results.

Key words: Human immunodeficiency virus-1 infection; Highly active antiretroviral therapy; Protease inhibitors; Dyslipidemia; Atherosclerosis; Lipodystrophy; Statins; Fibrates; Diet; Lifestyle

Core tip: Antiretroviral therapy inhibits human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-1 replication, reduces mortality and increases survival. On the other hand, HIV-1 infection and antiretroviral therapy affect lipid metabolism. In fact, lipodystrophy is a well-documented

side effect of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART). Switching to a less metabolically active drug improve HAART-associated dyslipidemia. Other therapies may include statins, fibrates, inhibitors cholesterol absorption, fish oils, niacin. Moreover, changes in diet and lifestyle are needed to revert the dyslipidemia.

da Cunha J, Maselli LMF, Stern ACB, Spada C, Bydlowski SP. Impact of antiretroviral therapy on lipid metabolism of human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients: Old and new drugs. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(2): 56-77 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i2/56.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.56

INTRODUCTION

The introduction of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected patients in the early nineties (1990) represented a new perspective on life for these patients[1]. The use of HAART was shown to effectively suppress the replication of HIV-1 and dramatically reduce mortality and morbidity, which has led to a better and longer quality of life for HIV-1 patients[2]. The different HAART regimens, all composed of at least three different antiretroviral drugs, are effective in reducing viral load (HIV-1-RNA) to undetectable levels after its inception[3]. HAART regimes inhibit viral replication by acting at different stages with their different combinations of drugs[4]. This allows them to reach the viral cycle and/or viral enzymes and causes them to be classified in different therapeutic groups according to their mechanisms of action: nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs)[5], non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs)[6], protease inhibitors (PIs)[7], fusion inhibitors[8], entry inhibitors [CC chemokine receptor-5 antagonists][9] and integrase strand transfer inhibitors (InSTIs)[10] (Table 1). Apart from the substantial benefits that result from the use of various HAART regimens, laboratory and clinical experience has shown that HAART can induce severe and considerable adverse effects on metabolic complications of lipid metabolism, characterized by signs of lipodystrophy, insulin resistance, central adiposity, dyslipidemia, increased risk of cardiovascular disease and even an increased risk of atherosclerosis[11-14]. However, other factors, such as virological, genetic, and individual immunological features, may be involved in the metabolic and lipid alterations observed because not all of the patients exposed to the same HAART regimens are similarly affected[15-17]. All of these changes in the aspects of lipid metabolism during HIV-1 infection, specifically changes in high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL), low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL), very low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (VLDL), triglycerides (TG), lipid peroxidation, and their relationship with atherosclerosis in HIV-1 patients, are a result of the critical role of cholesterol in the mechanism of HIV-1 replication[11,12,18,19]. HIV-1 decreases plasma HDL by impairing the cholesterol-dependent efflux transporter ATP-binding cassette protein A1 in human macrophages, which is a condition that has a high atherogenic risk[20,21]. The use of PI-based HAART currently constitutes a more potent option against HIV-1 infection, preventing the maturation of viral particles and effectively controlling the infection of new cells by HIV-1. However, observed changes in lipid metabolism in HIV-1 patients have been associated with this class of antiretroviral drugs[13,14,22,23]. There is significant support in the literature showing that the PIs are associated with increased hepatic triglycerides-synthesis, VLDL, and to a lesser extent, total cholesterol (TC)[11-14]. Moreover, it was observed that these drugs impair the hydrolysis of triglyceride-rich lipoproteins by lipase, which reduces the storage of free fatty acids and interferes with the normal postprandial metabolism of free fatty acids[23,24]. The PIs are analogous substrates of the aspartyl protease enzyme of HIV-1 that are involved in the cleavage process of viral proteins and form smaller functional viral particles with infective capacity. After the cleavage process, the newly formed infectious viral particles are released from infected cells in a mature form[7,25,26]. Once the PIs bind to the active site of the protease enzyme, and this process of cleavage is blocked, there is interference in the enzyme activity and inhibition in the process of viral maturation and the formation of infectious viral particles[25,26]. The different mechanisms by which PIs promote these changes remain unknown. However, the main effect of PIs seems to be suppressing the breakdown of the nuclear form of sterol-regulatory element binding protein-1 in the liver and adipose tissue. This regulator is a key element in the proteolytic pathway responsible for regulating cellular and plasma levels of fat and cholesterol[27]. Finally, other classes of antiretroviral drugs are available, including those with excellent activity against viral replication without having any apparent effect on lipid metabolism[12,23,28]. However, it is clear that the use and recommendation of PIs occurs in situations where other drugs and/or regimens have not achieved the desired effect, either by non-adherence to treatment, viral resistance or lack of an immune response[29,30]. Moreover, once the therapy with PIs is initiated, a change to a more conservative therapy without their use is not recommended nor used in clinical practice[31,32]. Thus, a continuous search that considers the individual characteristics of each PI available as a current therapy is needed to achieve alternative HAART regimens that can maintain a suppression of viremia with minor effects on the lipid metabolism of HIV-1 patients[32,33].

HIV-ASSOCIATED LIPID DISORDERS

Lipid disorders during the course of HIV-1 infection and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) were observed long before the advent of antiretroviral

Table 1 Antiretroviral drugs class

Antiretroviral class	Generic name drug	Trade name/manufacturer/approval (yr)
Nucleos(t)ide reverse transcriptase inhibitors	Abacavir (ABC)	Ziagen® ViiV Healthcare (1998)
	Didanozine (ddl)	Videx® Bristol-Myers Squibb Co. (1991)
	Emtricitabine (FTC)	Emtriva® Gilead Sci. (2003)
	Lamivudine (3TC)	Epivir® GlaxoSmithKline (1995)
	Stavudine (d4T)	Zerit® Bristol-Myers Squibb Co. (1994)
	Tenofovir (TDF)	Viread® Gilead Sci. (2001)
	Zidovudine (AZT)	Retrovir® ViiV Healthcare (1987)
	Zalcitabine (ddC)	Hivid® Roche (1992)
Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors	Delavirdine (DLV)	Rescriptor® Pfizer (1997)
	Efavirenz (EFV)	Sustiva® Bristol-Myers Squibb Co. (1998)
		Stocrin® Merck Sharp, Dohme (1998)
	Nevirapine (NVP)	Viramune® Boehringer Ingelheim (1996)
	Etravirine (ETR)	Intelence® Janssen-Cilag (2008)
	Rilpivirine (RPV)	Edurant® Janssen-Cilag (2011)
Protease inhibitors	Amprenavir	Agenerase® GlaxoSmithKline (1999)
	Atazanavir	Reyataz® Bristol-Myers Squibb Co. (2003)
	Darunavir	Prezista® Janssen-Cilag (2006)
	Fosamprenavir	Lexiva® ViiV Healthcare (2003)
	Indinavir	Crixivan® Merck and Co. (1996)
	Lopinavir	Kaletra® Abbott (2000)
	Nelfinavir	Viracept® ViiV Healthcare (1997)
	Ritonavir	Norvir® AbbVie Inc. (1996)
	Saquinavir	Invirase® Roche (1995)
	Tipranavir	Aptivus® Boehringer Ingelheim (2005)
Fusion inhibitors	Enfuvirtide, T-20	Fuzeon® Hoffmann La Roche (2003)
Integrase strand transfer inhibitors	Dolutegravir (DTG)	Tivicay® GlaxoSmithKline (2013)
	Elvitegravir (EVG)	Stribild® Gilead Sci. (2012)
	Raltegravir (RAL)	Isentress® Merck and Co. (2007)
Entry inhibitors (CC chemokine receptor 5 antagonists)	Selzentry	Maraviroc® Pfizer (2007)

regimens[34,35]. In the early phase of acute HIV-1 infection, patients display several varied clinical signs of immunosuppression such as fever, intestinal infections, weight loss and depletion of protein reserves[35,36]. The possibility of HIV-1 infection, by itself, causing changes in lipid metabolism was already postulated, because it is evident that plasma viremia may promote a decrease in the plasma concentrations of TC, HDL and LDL and, in later stages of infection, an elevation in the concentration of TG[35,36]. Specifically, the reduction of HDL likely occurs as a result of an activation of the immune system in early HIV-1 infection, which promotes an increase in lipid peroxidation, inflammatory cytokine production, and alterations in the reverse cholesterol transport. This process promotes an imbalance in the antioxidant system, a decrease in the production of anti-inflammatory cytokines and an elevation of pro-inflammatory cytokines, which increases the chance of developing atherosclerotic diseases[31-39]. As a result of the inflammatory process initiated by viral infection, the stimulation of endothelial lipase and phospholipase A2 occurs, which in turn can reduce HDL concentration[38-40]. The inflammatory process may also be characterized by an elevation of interferon-γ levels (IFNγ) originating from lymphocytes and macrophages. IFNγ levels are elevated at early stages of infection and are also correlated with the presence of hypertriglyceridemia[41,42]. Tumor necrosis factor-α (TNFα) is another potent pro-inflammatory mediator whose concentrations increase in HIV-1 infected ART-naïve patients. TNFα promotes lipid peroxidation and disturbances in the metabolism of free fatty acids and also acts on the suppression of lipolysis mediated by hormones[43] (Figure 1).

HAART-ASSOCIATED LIPID DISORDERS

HAART-associated dyslipidemia is complex and involves immunological, hormonal, and genetic predisposition aspects, as well as effects induced by various antiretroviral drugs[13,44]. The observed dyslipidemia is characterized by hypertriglyceridemia, hypercholesterolemia, and decreased serum levels of HDL, either accompanied or not by increased levels of LDL (Table 2)[44,45]. Other metabolic and/or clinical common disorders include insulin resistance with hyperinsulinemia, increased C-peptide levels, diabetes mellitus and lipodystrophy syndrome[44-48]. HAART also affects the hydrolysis of triglyceride-rich lipoproteins and tissue lipase, disrupts normal post-prandial free fatty acid and lipoprotein catabolism and interferes with peripheral fatty acid trapping; all of these effects could be due to the interaction of these fatty acids with the master transcriptional regulator sterol regulatory element binding protein 1[47-51]. Nevertheless, the presence of dyslipidemia in individuals who use HAART therapy is not necessarily accompanied by lipodystrophy and/or an evident insulin resistance, which suggests that the mechanisms involved in these disorders are independent[44,46,51,52]. The NNRTI-based

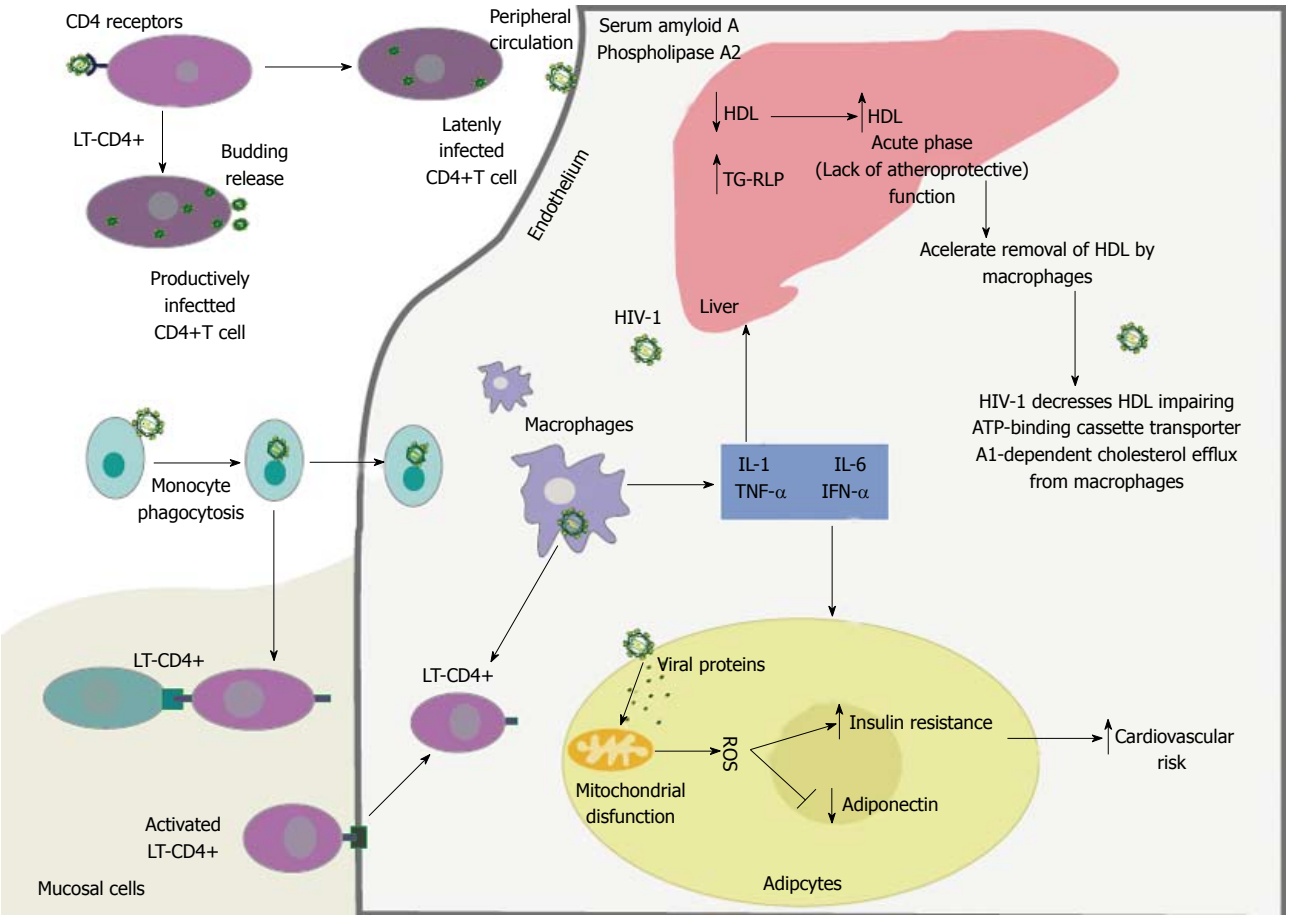


Figure 1 The human immunodeficiency virus type 1, upon entering peripheral circulation, will infect lymphocytes and macrophages. The viral proteins gp120 and gp41 of HIV-1 bind to the CD4+ receptor and coreceptors, C-C chemokine receptor type 5 and C-X-C chemokine receptor type 4, on the surface of these cells. The lymphocytes T-CD4 that are infected with HIV-1 produce viral particles and may remain in a latent form within circulation. Infected monocytes can directly present antigen to lymphocytes T-CD4, or transform into tissue macrophages. This process stimulates the host inflammatory response and amplifies the production of proinflammatory cytokines and promotes increased cellular oxidative stress. The production of proinflammatory cytokines by macrophages and lymphocytes promotes a decrease in plasma high-density lipoprotein cholesterol by impairing the cholesterol dependent efflux transporter ATP-binding cassette protein A1 in human macrophages. Additionally, viral proteins and proinflammatory cytokines including interleukin-1, interleukin-6, tumor necrosis factor α and interferon gamma stimulate endothelial lipase enzyme and different acute phase proteins, such as serum amyloid A. Viral proteins also exert effects on adipocytes resulting in mitochondrial dysfunction, production of reactive oxygen species, increased insulin resistance, decreased adiponectin, and change the clearance of triglyceride-rich lipoproteins and insulin resistance. Finally, all of the different cellular mechanisms involved and affected by HIV-1 infection promote an increased risk of cardiovascular disease. Source: de Almeida *et al*[211]. Gp120: Glycoprotein 120; gp41: Glycoprotein 41; CCR5: C-C chemokine receptor type 5; CXCR4: C-X-C chemokine receptor type 4; LT-CD4: Lymphocytes T-CD4; HDL: High-density lipoprotein; ABCA1: ATP-binding cassette protein A1; IL-1: Interleukin-1; IL-6: Interleukin-6; TNFα: Tumor necrosis factor α; IFN-γ: Interferon gamma; TG-RLP: Triglyceride-rich lipoproteins; ROS: Reactive oxygen species; HIV-1: Human immunodeficiency virus type 1.

HAART, zidovudine, stavudine or lamivudine, have become associated with the occurrence of dyslipidemia; however, lipid metabolism disorders are most evident in individuals who make use of PI-based therapy[44,45,52,53]. The mechanisms involved in PI-associated dyslipidemia are not fully understood; however, the prevailing hypothesis is based on the structural similarity between the catalytic region of the HIV-1 protease and two homologous human proteins involved in the metabolism of lipids, called cytoplasmic retinoic acid-binding protein type 1 (CRABP-1) and low-density lipoprotein-receptor-related protein type 1 (LRP1) (Figure 2).

CRABP-1

CRABP-1 exhibits 58% homology in its amino acid sequence of the C-terminal region of the catalytic region of the HIV-1 protease. CRABP-1 usually binds intracellular retinoic acid and presents it to cytochrome P450 (CYP450) or 3A (CYP3A) enzymes, which convert retinoic acid to cis-9-retinoic acid and bind to the retinoid X receptor-peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ (RXR-PPARγ) heterodimer, stimulating adipocyte differentiation and inhibiting apoptosis[20,45,54]. The PIs likely bind to CRABP-1, which is homologous to the viral protease and erroneously inhibits the formation of cis-9-retinoic acid, leading to reduced RXR-PPARγ activity, increased apoptosis and diminished proliferation of peripheral adipocytes. Such events cause peripheral lipoatrophy syndrome and hyperlipidemia due to adipocyte loss, decreased lipid storage and lipid release into the bloodstream. The inhibition of CYP3A by ritonavir is another possible mechanism involved in lipid

Table 2 Antiretroviral drugs: Impact on lipid and glucose metabolism

Antiretroviral class	Drug	Effects on lipids	Effects on glucose
NRTIs	Abacavir (ABC)	↑ Dyslipidemia	No effect
	Didanozine (ddl)	↑↑ Dyslipidemia	Insulin resistance
	Emtricitabine (FTC)	↑ Dyslipidemia	No effect
	Lamivudine (3TC)	↑ Dyslipidemia	No effect
	Stavudine (d4T)	↑↑ Dyslipidemia	Insulin resistance
	Tenofovir (TDF)	↑ Dyslipidemia	No effect
	Zidovudine (AZT)	↑↑ Dyslipidemia	Insulin resistance
NNRTIs	Efavirenz (EFV)	↑↑ HDL, ↑ Dyslipidemia	No effect
	Etravirine (ETR)	Neutral effects	No effect
	Nevirapine (NVP)	↑↑ HDL, ↑LDL	
	Rilpivirine (RPV)	Neutral effect	
PIs	Amprenavir/ritonavir	↑↑↑ Dyslipidemia	Insulin resistance
	Atazanavir/ritonavir	↑ Dyslipidemia	Insulin resistance
	Darunavir/ritonavir	↑ Dyslipidemia	Insulin resistance
	Fosamprenavir/ritonavir	↑↑↑ Dyslipidemia	Insulin resistance
	Indinavir	↑↑ Dyslipidemia	Insulin resistance
	Lopinavir/ritonavir	↑↑↑ Dyslipidemia	Insulin resistance
	Nelfinavir	↑↑ Dyslipidemia	Insulin resistance
	Saquinavir	↑ Dyslipidemia	Insulin resistance
	Tipranavir/ritonavir	↑↑↑ Dyslipidemia	Insulin resistance
Fusion inhibitors	Enfuvirtide, T-20	Neutral effect	No effect
InSTIs	Dolutegravir (DTG)	Neutral effect	No effect
	Elvitegravir (EVG)	Neutral effect	No effect
	Raltegravir (RAL)	Neutral effect	No effect
Entry inhibitors	Selzentry	Neutral effect	No effect

NRTIs: Nucleos(t)ide reverse transcriptase inhibitors; NNRTIs: Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors; PIs: Protease inhibitors; InSTIs: Integrase strand transfer inhibitors.

abnormalities in HIV-1-infected patients and associated PI-based therapy and would promote a reduction in the formation of cis-9-retinoic acid and reduced enzymatic activity of RXR-PPARγ. The decrease in RXR-PPARγ activity results in apoptosis within peripheral adipose stores, decreased adiponectin, and insulin resistance. However, central and visceral adipose stores are spared and expand with weight gain, contributing to insulin resistance[20,45,54].

LRP

LRP shares 63% homology with the catalytic region of HIV-1 protease. LRP binds to lipoprotein lipase (LPL) on the capillary endothelium, and the formation of this LRP-LPL complex promotes cleavage of fatty acids from TG, thereby promoting free fatty acid accumulation in peripheral adipocytes. A possible hypothesis is that the binding of PIs to LRP may inhibit the complex normal function of LRP-LPL and interfere with fatty acid storage, leading to hyperlipidemia. This hyperlipidemia is characterized by elevations in cholesterol levels, principally in the LDL and VLDL cholesterol fractions, because fatty acids released into the bloodstream subsequently reach the liver and promote a secondary hepatic synthesis of TG and VLDL[4,55].

Mitochondrial alterations

Another proposed mechanism for HAART-associated dyslipidemia is the mitochondrial alterations induced by HAART, especially with PI-based therapy. The hypothesis is that the HAART regimen will cause mitochondrial disturbances by inhibiting the mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA)-polymerase γ, leading to mitochondrial DNA depletion, respiratory chain dysfunction and reduced energy production by cells[56,57]. This disturbance in the mitochondrial respiratory chain may promote metabolic disorders in adipocytes, promote lipodystrophy syndrome and increase plasma lipid levels. Moreover, interference between PIs and cellular proteases could also trigger the development of metabolic alterations because some proteases are essential for mitochondrial biogenesis and metabolic function. Furthermore, functional changes of mitochondria in skeletal tissue promote insulin resistance and consequent dyslipidemia[56-58].

Genetic factors

HAART-associated lipodystrophy and dyslipidemia may be related to genetic predisposition, and studies with HIV-1 patients with hypertriglyceridemia and low HDL subjects were associated with different polymorphisms in the *APOCIII* gene. Promoter polymorphisms -455T > C and -482C > T in the *APOCIII* gene are both associated with increased levels of TG containing lipoproteins (VLDL) and low HDL values. Carriers of the -455T > C genetic variant had 30% lower levels of HDL cholesterol compared to those without this polymorphism, and plasma lipid concentrations increase according to the number of these variant alleles. Another variant nucleoside, the -1131T > C promoter

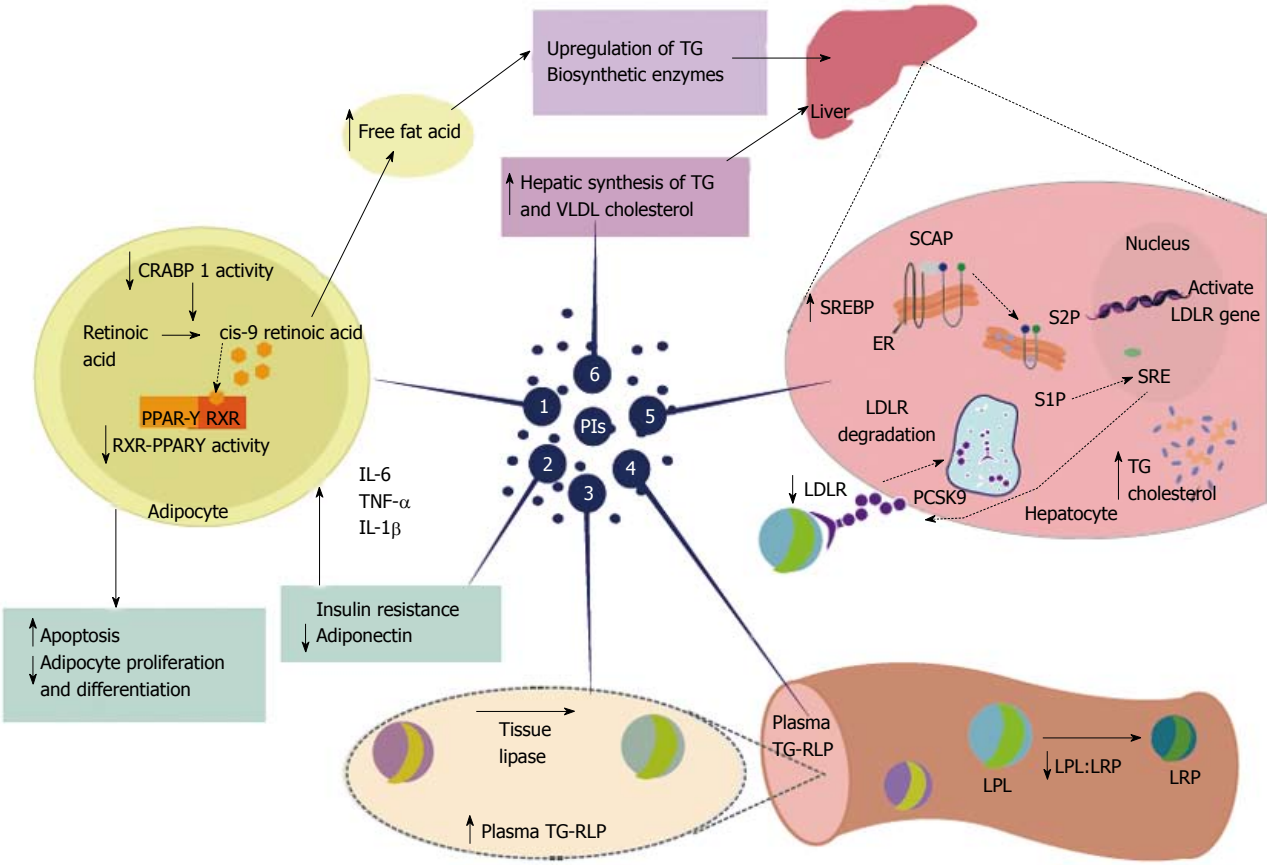


Figure 2 Highly active antiretroviral therapy-associated dyslipidemia is especially evident with the use of protease inhibitors. Protease inhibitors (PIs) promote a decrease in plasma high-density lipoprotein cholesterol and increased overall cholesterol, triglycerides(TG), and low-density lipoprotein cholesterol. These changes, induced by PIs, promote an increased risk of cardiovascular disease. Proposed mechanisms for PI-based dyslipidemia include the following: (1) There is structural similarity with the amino acid sequence of the C-terminal region of cytoplasmic retinoic acid-binding protein type 1 (CRABP1); thus, the PIs likely bind to CRABP-1, increasing apoptosis and diminishing the proliferation of peripheral adipocytes; (2) PI-mediated increases in the expression and secretion of proinflammatory cytokines, such as tumor necrosis factor alpha, interleukin 1 β and interleukin-6 are involved in altered adipocyte functions and decreased adiponectin; (3-4) PI-induced dyslipidemia is based on the structural similarity between the catalytic region of HIV-1 protease and the LDL-receptor-related protein that interferes with lipoprotein lipase complex formation (LRP-LPL). As a result the adipose storage capacity is reduced and plasma TG-rich lipoproteins are increased; (5) PI suppresses proteasome-mediated degradation of the sterol regulatory element binding proteins (SREBP) in the liver and adipocytes, which are transcription factors responsible for fatty acid and triglyceride synthesis in the liver and adipose tissue and control several steps of cholesterol synthesis. The suppression promotes nSREBP accumulation in the liver and an increase in the biosynthesis of total cholesterol and triglycerides, and adipose tissue, promoting increased insulin resistance, reduced expression of leptin and lipodystrophy; (6) PI-based therapy increases the hepatic synthesis of triglycerides, and to a lesser extent, very-low density lipoprotein cholesterol. Source: de Almeida *et al*[211]. PIs: Protease inhibitors; HDL: High-density lipoprotein; TG: Triglycerides; LDL: Low-density lipoprotein; CRABP1: C-terminal region of cytoplasmic retinoic acid-binding protein type 1; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor alpha; IL-1β: Interleukin 1β; IL-6: Interleukin-6; LRP: LDL-receptor-related protein; LPL: Lipoprotein lipase; TG-RLP: Triglyceride -rich lipoproteins are increased; SREBP: Sterol regulatory element binding proteins; VLDL: Very-low density lipoprotein; RXR-PPARγ: Retinoid X receptor-peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ; LDL-R: Low-density lipoprotein-receptor; PCSK9: Proprotein convertase subtilisin-kexin type 9; SCAP; Sterol regulatory element binding protein cleavage activating protein; S1P: Site 1 protease; S2P: Site 2 protease.

polymorphism in the *APOA5* gene, was associated with hypertriglyceridemia in PI-based patients[59-62].

Paraoxonases

Changes in antioxidant enzymes, such as the family of paraoxonases (PONs), may partially explain some of the mechanisms involved in HAART-associated dyslipidemia and consequently characterize a higher risk for cardiovascular diseases and atherosclerosis[63]. The hypothesis that the PIs can promote reductions in the activity of PONs and an increased risk for atherosclerotic disease in HIV-1 patients has been shown through previous evidence. PON1 is an antioxidant enzyme present in serum that is strongly associated with apolipoprotein-A1 (apoAI) from HDL and protects LDL against oxidative modifications[63,64]. The action of serum PON1 most likely occurs through the involvement of the enzyme in reverse cholesterol transport, a well-established anti-atherogenic propriety of HDL[65]. PON1 has the ability to inhibit LDL oxidation (oxLDL) and significantly reduce the lipid peroxidase enzyme, which decreases the accumulation of cholesterol in peripheral tissues[66]. The oxidative modification of LDL in the arterial wall plays a central role in the pathogenesis of atherosclerosis, which is characterized by the deposition of lipids and the formation of atherosclerotic plaques

Table 3 Clinical diagnosis and treatment to human immunodeficiency virus-associated lipodystrophy syndrome

Clinical diagnosis	Treatment options
Lipoatrophy Sunken eyes, sunken cheeks, prominent zygomatic arch, prominent veins, skinny or muscular appearance, loose skin folds loss of contour	Switching antiviral therapies: stavudine or zidovudineto abacavir or tenofovir, other switch, and/or reconstructive procedures
Lipohypertrophy Increased abdominal girth with visceral fat accumulation, dorsocervical or supraclavicular fat pad	Diet, exercise, liposuction
Related findings Hypertriglyceridemia, usually with depressed HDL, hypercholesterolemia, insulin resistance, glucose intolerance	Statins, fibrates, inhibits intestinal cholesterol absorption, fish oils, diet, exercise, drugs (metformin, acarbose, sulfonylureas, glinides or leptin)

that cause narrowing of the blood vessels[67]. The inhibition of LDL oxidation by HDL is attributed to the high antioxidant content of this lipoprotein due to the antioxidant properties of apoA1 and by the presence of other different antioxidant enzymes, such as glutathione peroxidase and PON itself, which prevent the formation of or degrade bioactive products of LDL oxidation[68]. Some studies have shown that the activity of PON1 may be affected and/or inactivated by oxidative stress, which could explain its reduced activity during HIV-1 infection[63-65]. In HIV-1 patients and those who undergo HAART, there is a significant increase in oxidative stress. In turn, in asymptomatic individuals infected with HIV-1 and/or with AIDS, there is an increase in oxidative stress characterized by increased plasma metabolites of lipid peroxidation and/or a quantitative decrease in antioxidants compared to seronegative controls that are considered to be in a healthy condition. Therefore, possible reductions in the activity of PON1 and HDL concentrations may characterize an increased cardiovascular risk in individuals infected with HIV-1[64,65,69]. The PON1 activity that was reduced in ART-naïve patients, and restored in patients treated with HAART, suggested that the activity of PON1 is associated with the immune status in HIV-1 patients. However, in individuals treated with lopinavir/ritonavir, even with low plasma viremia, PON1 activity was reduced and a higher atherogenic risk was shown by the high TC:HDL ratio, suggesting that a PI-based regimen affects the mechanisms involved in the oxidation of LDL, thereby promoting greater atherogenic risk[63-68].

LDL oxidation

Oxidation is a common feature in lipid metabolism[70-72]. Oxidative modifications to LDL, which are considered the initial event in the pathogenesis of atherosclerosis, are attributed to oxidative stress mechanisms initiated by agents such as superoxide, nitric oxide and hydrogen peroxide that transform LDL into oxLDL[73,74]. The deposition of oxLDL in the arterial intimal layer promotes a cytotoxic effect on the vascular endothelium, followed by inflammation and modification of monocytes into macrophages that phagocytose oxLDL particles to form the foam cells that accumulate in the intima and lead to the development of atheromatous plaques[75]. The oxLDL particles are immunogenic, and serum levels of anti-oxLDL antibodies (Abs) can be used as indicators of oxidative stress[73-75]. The IgG anti-oxLDL Abs are pro-atherogenic and can predict the progression of coronary and carotid atherosclerosis, whereas IgM anti-oxLDL Abs appear to be associated with a possible protective role against the development of atheromatous plaques[76]. During the process of infection by HIV-1, the increase in atherogenic risk results from changes in lipid metabolism associated with the severity, duration, and stages of infection. Different degrees of lipodystrophy occur in patients along with a decrease in LDL receptor expression, which could lead to increased oxidation of LDL particles and the consequent development of atherosclerosis[77]. HIV-1 patients treated with lopinavir/ritonavir have shown higher levels of IgG anti-oxLDL Abs compared to patients treated with efavirenz or nevirapine regimens, and these levels were associated with an increase in the atherogenic indices[75-77].

HAART-ASSOCIATED LIPODYSTROPHY

Lipodystrophy is a syndrome that includes peripheral fat wasting and central obesity and is a well-documented side effect of HAART (Table 3)[16,48,78]. In addition to the decrease in the expression of LDL receptors, and a consequent increase in serum concentrations of LDL, the most obvious mechanisms involved in HAART-associated lipodystrophy and dyslipidemia are the mitochondrial changes induced by HAART[13,56-58]. The inhibition of mtDNA-polymerase γ, which leads to mitochondrial DNA depletion in respiratory chain dysfunction and a reduced energy production in cells, may promote metabolic disorders in adipocytes and promote increased lipodystrophy syndrome and plasma lipid levels[56-58,79,80]. Both therapies, PIs- and NRTIs-based, are associated with the inhibition of mtDNA-polymerase γ[79-81]. The abnormalities observed in lipodystrophy syndrome include lipoatrophy, lipohypertrophy, and metabolic disturbances. Lipoatrophy is associated with the loss of subcutaneous fat, usually in the lower limbs, face and buttocks. The observation of lipoatrophy in HIV patients has been demonstrated in therapy with both PIs- and NRTIs-based therapies. Several studies initially suggested that lipoatrophy in HIV-1 patients is primarily associated with the use of PI-based therapies; however,

more recent reports show that the incidence of lipoatrophy was significantly higher in the efavirenz plus two NRTIs group than in the lopinavir or efavirenz plus two NRTIs plus lopinavir groups[82-84]. The association of lipoatrophy with efavirenz use was mainly in combination with either stavudine or zidovudine but not with tenofovir/lamivudine.

Lipohypertrophy is the result of a metabolic disorder in which there is excess fat accumulation in the adipose tissue, resulting in a central obesity process. The most affected regions are the intra-abdominal, trunk and/or breast, anterior neck, and dorsocervical region (*i.e.*, buffalo hump)[14,85]. There may be co-existing fat deposition in the liver, muscle, myocardium, and epicardium[86,87]. The most accepted hypothesis regarding the development of lipohypertrophy suggests that a defect in peripheral adipocytes promotes increased availability of fatty acids in the general circulation. The available fatty acids are then selectively deposited in visceral adipose tissue owing to the higher rate of lipid turnover and uptake in visceral adipocytes[88]. This disruption in the metabolism of fatty acids characterized by increased uptake in the visceral adipose tissue could be related to the effects of HIV itself *via* the HIV-1 accessory protein Vpr or to the effects of HAART[89]. In patients infected with HIV and treated with HAART, especially with PIs, there seems to be an association between HIV treatment and the development of lipohypertrophy[84,90,91]. However, various longitudinal studies have failed to demonstrate that HAART is the main cause of lipohypertrophy in HIV-1 patients[92-95]. The contribution of PIs to lipohypertrophy is based on several hypothetical mechanisms. PIs impair adipocyte differentiation through interactions with adipocyte proteasomal gene expression systems, down-regulation of cellular retinoic acid binding protein (CRABP), sterol regulatory binding protein levels with resultant dysregulation of gene expression stimulated by cortisol, activation of the adipocyte renin-angiotensin system and adipokine effects (including adiponectin and leptin), and decrease in peroxisomal proliferator-activator receptors α and γ[96-98]. This metabolic disorder results in the hypertrophy of adipose tissue, particularly in visceral tissues, resulting in increased TG levels, lowered HDL cholesterol levels, hypertension, increased propensity for type 2 diabetes, and increased insulin resistance[98-100]. This metabolic disorder results in hypertrophy of adipose tissue, particularly in visceral tissues, with the consequent increase of TG and reduced HDL cholesterol, and hypertension, increased propensity for type 2 diabetes, and an increased insulin resistance in adipocytes[98-100]. Insulin resistance is a common metabolic disorder that can accompany lipodystrophy (*i.e.*, lipohypertrophy) and is associated with an increased cardiovascular risk, especially among HIV-infected individuals with lipodystrophy[101]. As described in the literature, HIV-infected individuals exhibit a higher prevalence of dyslipidemia, including both abnormal distribution of fatty acids and altered glucose homeostasis, compared to HIV seronegative individuals after adjustment for age and body mass index[102]. The disturbance in glucose metabolism appears to be closely linked to abnormal fat distribution, particularly visceral adiposity and lower extremity lipoatrophy. Lipodystrophy promotes accumulation of intramuscular lipids, which is associated with a reduction of insulin action in this tissue[103]. Importantly, in addition to the lipohypertrophy observed in HIV-infected individuals taking HAART, there appears to be an increase in fat distribution and deposition in places such as the liver and muscles regardless of the use of HAART[86,104]. The mechanisms involved in HIV-associated lipodystrophy are diverse, but it is suggested that HAART plays an important role[105], as well as the endothelial dysfunction associated with the HIV infection itself[106], vascular endothelial injury[107], and inflammation with elevated serum levels of C-reactive protein[108], TNF-α, IL-6, and adiponectin[102,109-111].

SWITCHING ANTIVIRAL THERAPIES

The search for different therapeutic strategies to reverse HAART-associated dyslipidemia has led to the use of less metabolically active antiretroviral drugs without compromising antiretroviral efficacy. Ritonavir is the most representative drug in HAART-associated dyslipidemia, and in combination with lopinavir confers higher risks for cardiovascular disease in HIV-1 patients. Amprenavir and nelfinavir promote lower impacts compared to the therapy with lopinavir/ritonavir[29,45,64,77,112]. In turn, the use of indinavir and saquinavir shows even less of an effect on lipid metabolism in HIV-1 patients receiving HAART. Currently, atazanavir has the least impact on lipid metabolism[113,114]. In contrast, nelfinavir promotes the elevation of TC, TG and LDL levels, and its replacement by atazanavir permits the reduction of the concentrations of these parameters without affecting antiretroviral activity[115]. A more recent alternative is tipranavir, a non-peptide PI prescribed for patients with multidrug resistance. However, it has shown deleterious effects that promote atherogenic risk by increasing the levels of TC and TG[116]. Another strategy to control dyslipidemia has been the discontinuation of the PI-based regimens and a switch to a NRTI- or NNRTI-based protocol. For ART-naïve patients, HAART regimens that include at least one NNRTI, or abacavir and two NRTIs, might be as efficient as PI-based therapy, although they are not the standard choice. This exchange of HAART in patients with viral suppression did not reduce antiretroviral efficacy during long-term use[116,117]. A strategy that must be better evaluated is the long-term use of the NRTI/NNRTI class of drugs before the use of PI-based therapy. The use of NRTI-associated nevirapine reduces levels of TC and TG promotes an increase in HDL and a decrease in atherogenic risk. The use of NNRTIs may also alter the lipid profile due

Table 4 Statins to highly active antiretroviral therapy-associated dyslipidemia

Drug	Metabolism and interactions
Simvastatin	Considerable CYP3A4 metabolism. ↑ simvastatin levels with PIs and ↓↓ levels with efavirenz. Not recommended with atazanavir, atazanavir/ritonavir, fosamprenavir/ritonavir, saquinavir/ritonavir, tipranavir/ritonavir, lopinavir/ritonavir, indinavir/ritonavir, darunavir/ritonavir and nelfinavir. Doses of 80 mg/d with NNRTIs, raltegravir and selzentry
Lovastatin	Not recommended with atazanavir, atazanavir/ritonavir, fosamprenavir/ritonavir, saquinavir/ritonavir, tipranavir/ritonavir, lopinavir/ritonavir, indinavir/ritonavir, darunavir/ritonavir and nelfinavir. Doses of 80 mg/d with NNRTIs, raltegravir and selzentry
Atorvastatin	Somewhat CYP3A4 metabolism, ↑ levels with PIs darunavir, lopinavir, saquinavir/ritonavir, fosamprenavir. ↓levels with efavirenz. Doses of 20 mg/d with PIs, 80 mg/d with NNRTIs, raltegravir and selzentry
Pravastatin	Reduced interaction with CYP450 metabolism, primarily renal excretion but 50% ↓ with lopinavir/ritonavir, 45% ↓with nelfinavir, 80% ↑ with darunavir/ritonavir, and 40% ↓ with efavirenz. Doses of 80 mg/d with PIs, NNRTIs, raltegravir and selzentry
Fluvastatin	Metabolized by CYP2C9, and occasional interactions with nelfinavir and efavirenz. Doses of 80 mg/d with PIs, NNRTIs, raltegravir and selzentry
Rosuvastatin	Not CYP3A4 metabolized but 5 × ↑ levels with lopinavir/ritonavir and darunavir/ritonavir (uncertain). Low starting doses (5-10 mg) recommended with PIs. Doses of 20 mg/d with PIs, 40 mg/d with NNRTIs, raltegravir and selzentry

NNRTIs: Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors.

mostly to the use of efavirenz. Using this medication, TG levels were higher in comparison to the use of nevirapine. However, in studies with a large number of HIV-1 patients, accompanied at intervals of ninety days and with undetectable HIV-1-RNA, the levels of TC, LDL and TG were kept within the desirable limit in the groups treated with nevirapine and efavirenz, including HDL levels within the reference values[116-118]. Only the HIV-1 patients treated with a PI-based regimen showed lipid abnormalities and increased risks for cardiovascular disease[13,22,117]. In addition, possible alterations in lipid metabolism resulting from the use of NNRTI-based therapy are easier and faster to reverse with the use of statins, fibrates, diet and lifestyle. Although the individual effects of NRTIs remain unclear, stavudine was associated with TC and TG elevations greater than zidovudine and tenofovir. The addition of fusion inhibitors to the existing therapies, such as enfuvirtide/T-20, had little effect on plasma lipids. The possibility of different HAART strategies eliminating or reducing the dyslipidemia in HIV-1 patients must be evaluated, and the risk of development of variants of the virus with multi-drug resistance must be taken into account[119]. In HIV-1 patients with favorable historical responses to HAART and accompanied by a physician experienced in HIV-infection, the transition from a PI-based to a therapy with nevirapine, abacavir, or even atazanavir may be preferable to the use of a hypolipidemic. In practice, many patients will show pre-existing resistance to the drugs, limiting options for the exchange of the treatment[77,113-115]. Experts must assess the risks of toxicity of the new treatment and the possibility of virologic relapse when switching HAART regimens.

OTHER THERAPIES FOR HAART-ASSOCIATED DYSLIPIDEMIA

The use of hypolipidemic drug therapy becomes necessary when HAART-associated dyslipidemia occurs or persists for a long period and when alterations in diet, exercise and other HAART strategies are ineffective. Difficulties in the treatment of dyslipidemia in HIV-1 patients involve potential interaction between drugs, toxicity, intolerance, and low patient adherence to multiple drug regimens. Several alternatives are available, which, when adequately monitored, may be beneficial in reducing HAART-associated dyslipidemia.

Statins

Statins are a group of drugs that inhibit the enzyme HMG-CoA reductase (3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A reductase) and are considered the primary drugs for the treatment of primary hypercholesterolemia[120] in addition to others effects[121,122]. In clinical practice, the use of statins has achieved excellent results in reducing TC and LDL, leading to a decreased risk of coronary artery events and in the primary and secondary prevention of heart diseases[123,124]. Statins inhibit the key rate-controlling enzyme in the de novo synthesis of cholesterol, which is responsible for production of > 50% of total body cholesterol. Inhibition of HMG-CoA reductase also promotes an increase in the synthesis of hepatic LDL receptors and reduced VLDL production[123-125]. The most important drugs of this class are simvastatin, fluvastatin, atorvastatin, lovastatin, pravastatin and rosuvastatin. All of these drugs reduce LDL concentrations, although the use of simvastatin and atorvastatin has shown superior effects in HIV-1 seronegative patients[123-125]. In HIV-1-infected patients affected with dyslipidemia, the use of simvastatin, pravastatin, fluvastatin and rosuvastatin promotes reduction of dyslipidemia, but not is complete remission once other factors and elements are associated with the dyslipidemia in these patients[123-126]. The different drugs that compose HAART have metabolizing effects similar to statin (Table 4). Most of these compounds are metabolized by CYP3A4 and may cause clinically relevant interactions with other agents that are changed by this enzymatic complex, such as cyclosporine, erythromycin, itaconazole, ketoconazole, oral anticoagulants, PIs and NNRTIs[126-128]. An additional complicating feature is that individual statins are metabolized at differing degrees,

in some cases producing active metabolites. They are also substrates for P-glycoprotein, a drug transporter present in the small intestine, which may influence their oral bioavailability[127-129]. The presence of elevated statin levels in plasma increases the risk of liver toxicity, promoting elevations of serum transaminases and possible toxic hepatitis as well as skeletal muscle toxicity and myalgia with elevations of serum creatine kinase elevations, especially in the case simvastatin and atorvastatin[127-131]. Fluvastatin is metabolized by CYP2C9 enzyme; pravastatin and rosuvastatin are not significantly metabolized by the CYP450 system and have a very low risk of drug interactions. Reductions in the levels of TC and TG were observed in patients with dyslipidemia associated with HIV-1 and treated with a PI and the use of rosuvastatin. Simvastatin, lovastatin and atorvastatin should be avoided because they present a high risk of pharmacological interactions with PIs. Moreover, in a recent study, pravastatin had the lowest binding to plasma proteins of the statin agents and dietary advice associated with this statin compound significantly reduced total cholesterol levels in HIV patients treated with HAART, without significant adverse events[126-130]. It is reasonable to recommend the use of pravastatin and/or rosuvastatin as a first-line treatment for hypercholesterolemia in PI-treated patients and the use of fluvastatin, characterized by a slightly lower efficacy, as a second-line regimen. Additional benefits are obtained in patients treated with indinavir or pravastatin and fluvastatin, which significantly reduces the levels of TC and LDL, while maintaining good tolerability. Different associations between statins and antiretrovirals present considerable tolerability but always require monitoring of serum transaminases and creatine kinase. Different clinical studies and the routine use of fluvastatin, pravastatin, or rosuvastatin have shown that they are most suitable and safe to reduce LDL cholesterol levels in HIV patients[126-132].

Fibrates

Fibrates represent the cornerstone of drug therapy for hypertriglyceridemia and mixed hyperlipidemia. These compounds are characterized by an extended activity on the hepatic synthesis of both TC and TG, LPL and acetyl-CoA-carboxylase, and the favorable effects on peripheral lipolysis inhibition and glycemic control[133]. Fibrates are also metabolized by CYP450 system, but they appear to affect only CYP4A enzymes and do not show clinically relevant interactions with PIs. However, concomitant use of both fibrates and statins can increase the risk of skeletal muscle toxicity and should be avoided[134-136]. In HIV-1 seronegative individuals, the use of a fibrate and a statin in a monotherapy regimen exhibits moderate lipid-lowering effects and good tolerability[136-138]. In HIV-1 patients, fibrates do not have the same efficacy of statins in preventing cardiovascular disease. Studies with HIV-1 patients treated with PI-based therapy and fibrates, including gemfibrozil, bezafibrate or fenofibrate, showed a significant reduction in the concentration of TC, TG and hypertriglyceridemia[135,137,138]. Fibrates appear as a suitable alternative for the treatment of dyslipidemia associated with HIV, especially in the presence of hypertriglyceridemia. Periodic monitoring of serum creatinine, creatine kinase, and transaminases should be performed for the use of fibrates[137-139]. The association between fibrates and statins has been used with relative safety and demonstrated in different studies with large numbers of HIV-1 seronegative volunteers, except for the use of the combination of statins and gemfibrozil, which is not recommended[138-140]. The use of statins, fibrates, or associates has shown positive results in HIV-associated dyslipidemia, and the pravastatin/fenofibrate combination has promoted an improvement in lipid parameters and is safe and efficacious[141,142]. However, as already described, there is a need for clinical and laboratory monitoring, with careful evaluations of possible clinical symptoms, such as myalgia, and laboratory symptoms such as serum transaminases, creatine kinase and creatinine.

Inhibitors of intestinal cholesterol absorption

Ezetimibe is effective at lowering lipid levels because it has the ability to inhibit the intestinal cholesterol absorption, and it shows good tolerability because it does not interact with the metabolism of CYPA4 enzymes[143,144]. In non-HIV-1-infected patients who have dyslipidemia, the monotherapy with ezetimibe or when combined with statins or fenofibrate has shown considerable efficacy and safety[145,146]. In HIV-1 patients with high serum levels of LDL, the use of ezetimibe has also been considered an effective alternative[144]. Monotherapy using 10 mg/d of ezetimibe has promoted reductions of more than 20% of serum LDL and, in addition, reduces the concentrations of TC and TG and increases HDL concentrations[143-146]. Studies have shown that in individuals with HIV that is beyond effective treatments, ezetimibe has no interaction with HAART, and those receiving a PI-based association of fenofibrate/ezetimibe showed greater efficacy compared with pravastatin in monotherapy resolution of dyslipidemia[147-149].

Fish oil

The ability of fish oil, commonly known as omega-3 fatty acids [namely, eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA)], to reduce elevated TG concentrations has been observed in different studies[150,151]. HIV-1 patients using both HAART and fish oil showed an effective reduction in the concentration of TG[152]. This ability to reduce TG levels promotes a direct benefit in risk reduction of atherogenic cardiovascular disease through a combination of anti-inflammatory and anti-platelet actions[152-154]. For HIV-1 patients, the use of fish oil associated with fenofibrate showed additive effects in reducing TG. Given these considerable results, the American Heart Association's (AHA) dietary

guidelines, recommends that healthy adults have a minimum of two portions of fish per week, and those who have elevated TG should consume 2-4 g of EPA and DHA daily as a dietary supplement[152-155].

Niacin

Niacin (water-soluble vitamin B3), or nicotinic acid, is a powerful reducing agent of serum lipids when administered at pharmacological doses. Its ability to reduce the levels of lipoproteins and apolipoprotein-B-containing lipoproteins and to raise HDL levels has been shown, characterizing it as an atheroprotective drug[156,157]. Niacin has beneficial effects on other cardiovascular risk factors, including lipoprotein (a), C-reactive protein, platelet-activating factor acety lhydrolase, plasminogen activator inhibitor 1 and fibrinogen[158,159]. The molecular mechanisms involving the action of niacin are not fully understood, but its effect on hypertriglyceridemia in uninfected individuals is recognized[157-159]. In HIV-1 patients, the use of niacin in an extended release formulation significantly reduced the levels of TC, TG and HDL. However, the use of niacin in HIV-1 patients with dyslipidemia need to be carefully monitored because the presence of adverse events have been commonly shown, including headache, flushing, pruritus, rash, hyperuricemia, and exacerbation of insulin resistance[160,161].

OTHER AGENTS

Other agents may contribute to HIV-associated dyslipidemia. The use of recombinant methionyl human leptin was associated with reduced insulin resistance and increased HDL levels[162]. Tetradecylthio acetic acid, an agent whose mechanism is still unknown, promotes a reduction in levels of plasma lipoproteins[163]. Additionally, Acipimox, a drug with sustained action and a structure similar to niacin, has been associated with decreased insulin resistance and significantly reduced levels of TG in HIV-1 adults[164]. In a double-blind study, the use of cholestin was able to reduce the levels of TC and LDL cholesterol without modifying HDL and TG, and without showing adverse effects[165]. The use of L-carnitine (3 g/d) resulted in a significant reduction in serum triglycerides in patients with HIV-associated dyslipidemia[166]. These and other drugs studied aimed to revert the HIV-associated dyslipidemia but require more control to be considered appropriate for the treatment of dyslipidemia.

NEW DRUGS TO TREATMENT HIV INFECTION

Since the introduction of zidovudine (1987) for the treatment of HIV-1 infection, followed by the emergence of fusion inhibitors, such as enfuvirtide/T-20 (2003), and more recently the approval by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) of raltegravir (2007) and dolutegravir (2013), both InSTIs drugs, HIV-1 treatments have been adapting to new challenges. Once the inability of different HAART regimens to cure infection was recognized, new drugs, strategies and therapeutic regimens were developed with the goal of greater efficiency associated with safety and fewer adverse effects. The common adverse effects observed by the use of the first class of drugs such as zidovudine, and the dyslipidemia caused by the use of PIs, are obstacles that are being minimized in newer experimental drugs. Currently, more than 30 drugs are approved and available in various forms (the different classes of antiretroviral drugs), and many others are in experimental stages.

NRTIs

Festinavir (BMS986001) is a thymidine analogue drug, derived from stavudine, but with less potential toxicity[167]. It has been used in cases where there is HIV-1 resistance to abacavir and tenofovir and is an oral drug recommended for HIV-1 patients with multi-drug resistance. The compound has a 50% effective concentration (EC_{50}) for the inhibition of mtDNA-polymerase γ and is 100 times less toxic to the mtDNA-polymerase γ in renal proximal tubular cells, muscle cells, and adipocytes and on the cellular levels of adenosine triphosphate and/or lactate production (ATP) than stavudine. The mitochondrial toxic effects of stavudine are the main cause of the adverse effects associated with lipodystrophy and peripheral neuropathy, which has led to the decline in its use and indicated that festinavir has a minor impact on lipid metabolism[167-169]. Apricitabine (AVX754, formerly SPD754) is a drug for oral administration and is currently in the experimental phase (Phase IIB clinical trial). It is structurally related to lamivudine and emtricitabine and, as such, is an analog of cytidine[170]. This drug is well tolerated, and its most common side effects include headache, nausea, muscle aches and diarrhea. The use of apricitabine in HIV-1 infected patients had no effect on bone marrow, liver or kidney toxicity, and lipase. However, its use caused changes in lipid metabolism, most noticeably elevated serum TG, indicating that its use should be evaluated in patients who initiated therapy with apricitabine or who already have a dyslipidemic profile[170-172]. GS-7340 is a prodrug of tenofovir called tenofovir disoproxil fumarate. Unlike tenofovir, GS-7340 is stable in plasma and is then converted to tenofovir inside of cells by the cellular enzyme cathepsin, which is highly expressed in lymphoid tissue[173]. Within the cell, the drug is transformed into the active metabolite tenofovir diphosphate, an inhibitor of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase. Phase III studies are underway to better define the safety profile and efficacy, and initially, the drug does not show effects on lipid metabolism. However, formulations containing 300 mg of the drug promoted adverse effects on the kidneys and bone marrow toxicity[173-175]. Other drugs of the NRTI class are in the experimental phase, such as racivir (an enantiomer of emtricitabine), elvucitabine (Phase

II clinical trial), and amdoxovir (AMDX or DAPD). For these drugs, current data about the adverse effects are insufficient to characterize their impact on lipid metabolism[174-178].

NNRTIs

Etravirine (ETR, Intelence®) is a drug from the second generation of NNRTIs and shows efficacy, safety and good tolerability in HIV-1 patients[179]. One of the primary advantages of etravirine is as a replacement for other NNRTIs to which the HIV-1 virus is resistant, mainly due to the presence of the K103N and Y181C mutations in the case of efavirenz and nevirapine, respectively. The FDA approved the drug in 2008 for use in patients with multiple drug resistance. However, the drug is a substrate and an inhibitor of different CYP3A4 enzymes, which in turn are contraindicated in the use with antimicrobial and anticonvulsant drugs metabolized by the CYP450 system. In patients receiving HAART who have alterations in lipid metabolism, the switch to a therapy containing etravirine has shown satisfactory results and a reversal of dyslipidemia[179-182]. Rilpivirine (Edurant®) is a second-generation NNRTI class drug. It is more potent than diarylpyrimidine (DAPY), and adverse effects are considerably reduced compared to older NNRTIs such as efavirenz. After clinical trials, rilpivirine was approved by the FDA in 2011, and its use is often combined with emtricitabine and tenofovir. Rilpivirine produces few changes in TC, LDL, HDL and TG in HIV-1 patients. In comparison to treatment with efavirenz, this drug promotes an increase in lipids and in the TC:HDL ratio, which is characterized by an increased risk of cardiovascular diseases in these patients[183,184]. MK-1439 is a new and effective drug against a variety of HIV-1 mutants that are resistant to NNRTIs[185]. Preclinical studies (Phase I clinical trial) that are currently in progress show that this drug has a good pharmacokinetic profile with the possibility of a low concentration daily dose needed to obtain an optimal effect. Additionally, it has good absorption, low potential for toxicity and the ability to be used with other antiretroviral agents. MK-1439 showed good results in cases where the K103N mutation of HIV-1 led to resistance against nevirapine and efavirenz, as well as in the presence of the Y1818C mutation, which leads to a lower susceptibility in treatment with nevirapine, rilpivirine and etravirine. *In vitro* data suggest that MK-1439 has beneficial properties that warrant additional development as a new antiviral drug; however, no data are available about its potential impact on lipid metabolism[185-187]. New drugs of the third generation of NNRTIs are in various experimental stages such as BILR 355 BS (Phase IIa), (+)-Calanolide A (Phase I), GSK 2248761 (Phase IIb), MK-4965 (Phase I), MK-6186 (Phase I), RDEA806 (Phase IIa), and UK-453061 (Phase IIb). These new drugs have not been approved by the FDA and still require different clinical trials prior to their release as drugs available for the treatment of HIV-1 infection, and they currently have no scientific information regarding their possible effects on lipid metabolism.

Fusion/entry inhibitors

The HIV-1 envelope glycoprotein (Env) complex, which is composed of three receptor-binding gp120 subunits and three fusion protein gp41 subunits, mediates virus entry by fusing viral and cellular membranes and offers an attractive target for developing antiviral agents[188]. In succession with enfuvirtide/T20, a number of design strategies have been applied to develop new peptide-based fusion inhibitors with improved stability, bioavailability and potency[188,189]. There are several drug classes that are in two experimental phases. Albuvirtide (FB006M), T649, T2634, T2544, T1249, SC34EK, and SC29EK are in the class of fusion inhibitors. BMS 663068, BMS 626529, vicriviroc (SCH 417690), and cenicriviroc (TAK-652, TBR-652) are in the class of entry inhibitors. These and other drugs are in experimental stages or have been suspended, and there are no initial and/or conclusive data about their potential toxic effects and the impact on lipid metabolism.

InSTIs

Cobicistat (GS-9350) is a new InSTIs drug recently approved by the FDA (2012). This drug, similar to ritonavir, has the ability to inhibit hepatic enzymes that metabolize other drugs used to treat HIV-1 infection, such as raltegravir[190]. Cobicistat has become increasingly important, and its use has been associated with elvitegravir, permitting it to have higher blood concentrations with the use of smaller doses, which theoretically allows for greater suppression of viral replication when used with elvitegravir, and with fewer adverse effects. Cobicistat has been employed in combination with elvitegravir/emtricitabine/tenofovir (Stribild®)[190,191]. Cobicistat is a potent inhibitor of CYP3A enzymes that concurrently affect administered medications metabolized by this pathway. It also inhibits intestinal transport proteins, increasing the overall absorption of several drugs including atazanavir, darunavir, and tenofovir alafenamide fumarate. Phase III trials of the cobicistat-containing combination antiretroviral therapy regimens in ART-naïve patients have shown a small elevation of serum fasting lipid, with a relative increase in the levels of TC and TG, in addition to bilirubin elevations, jaundice, nausea and diarrhea[190-192]. Other drugs of the InSTI class are experimental, such as MK2048. MK-2048 represents a prototype second-generation InSTIs developed with the goal of retaining activity against viruses containing mutations associated with resistance to first-generation InSTIs (raltegravir and elvitegravir)[193]. It is a drug that acts by inhibiting the integrase enzyme four times longer and shows superior efficacy to raltegravir. Additionally, it is being investigated for use as part of a pre-exposure prophylaxis[193,194]. BI 224436 is the first non-catalytic site integrase inhibitor. It inhibits HIV

replication *via* binding to a conserved allosteric pocket of the HIV integrase enzyme. This makes the drug distinct in its mechanism of action compared to raltegravir and elvitegravir, which bind at the catalytic site[195,196]. Another experimental drug is GSK744 (S/GSK1265744, Cabotegravir®), which has a structure similar to that of carbamoyl pyridone and dolutegravir. In investigational studies, the therapeutic agent has been packaged into nanoparticles (GSK744LAP), which confer an exceptionally long half-life of 21–50 d following a single dose. In theory, this would make suppression of HIV possible when dosing as infrequently as once every three months. These drugs do not have sufficient data on their toxicity profile and/or on lipid metabolism; however, they have been previously considered to have low metabolic toxicity[197,198].

DIET AND LIFESTYLE

Changes in diet and lifestyle, and the adequacy of a hypocaloric diet, are recommendations that seek to reduce the concentrations of TC and its fractions, especially LDL[199-201]. These changes bring benefits over short periods of time and reduce the risk for cardiovascular and atherosclerotic diseases. These recommendations are addressed to the entire population, as well as HIV-1 infected patients, and are measures that should be applied to delay the need for lipid-lowering drugs, even before the treatment of dyslipidemia is needed[199-202]. Changes in diet can directly alter the levels of circulating LDL including saturated fats, cholesterol, and trans-unsaturated fats. The biggest impact comes from saturated fats, which are generally those that have a solid state at room temperature or under refrigeration. The major sources of saturated fats are meat and meat products (poultry, pork, beef, lard, and sausages), dairy (milk and cheeses), and vegetable oils (derived from palm or coconut). For an adequate daily diet, the recommended consumption is equal or < 7% of saturated fats, for the total daily caloric intake. Dietary cholesterol is exclusively found in animal products such as meats (particularly organ meats and tissues such as brain, kidney, and liver), egg yolks, and dairy products[203,204]. It is recommended to keep dietary cholesterol consumption to < 200 mg/d. Trans fats and unsaturated fats are found in breads and cookies, doughnuts, stick margarine, and fried foods. This type of fat is added to foods to enhance the substance or texture of the product, to replace some of the animal fats, and even to increase the shelf life of certain products. The recommendation is to keep the consumption of trans fats as low as possible. The amount of trans fat is not included in the < 7% of calories/day allowed from saturated fats[203-205]. The consumption of unsaturated fats is preferred; sources include fish such as salmon, mackerel, tuna, and vegetables such as avocado, olives and olive oil and vegetable oils[206]. Other foods that are recommended for their maintenance and/or lipid-lowering effects are the omega-3 fats, which are polyunsaturated fats that can lower TG levels. Omega-3 fats are frequently referred to as fish oils because the most common sources are fatty fishes such as salmon, tuna, mackerel, and halibut. However, they are also found in krill and flax seed oil. The current recommendation is that 25%-35% of daily calories can come from fat sources, including saturated fats, which should be < 7%[206]. In addition, physical activity improves cardiorespiratory function, promotes the reduction of LDL and TG, and decreases insulin resistance (in both uninfected and HIV-1 patients)[207,208]. Physical exercise is effective in reducing TC and TG, reducing total fat mass and increasing muscle mass in HIV-1 infected patients with hypertriglyceridemia[45,119,208]. Additionally, physical exercise is associated with greater cardiovascular fitness, improved muscle strength and endurance, and the reduction of depression and anxiety. In addition, exercise lessens problems resulting from lipodystrophy (dyslipidemia, insulin resistance, and osteoporosis) and cardiovascular disease[208-210]. However, there are several factors that can directly influence the reduction of metabolic disorders observed in seropositive patients. The common observation of gastrointestinal diseases in patients in advanced stages of infection may offset the positive effects of a balanced dietary regimen[209,210].

PERSPECTIVES

The advances in antiretroviral therapy are clear, and practical results are observed in clinical practice where HIV-1 infected patients enjoy a better quality of life and a higher rate of survival, something unthinkable upon the discovery of HIV/AIDS in the early 1980s. New challenges for curing HIV-1 infection continue, and different approaches are the focus of several studies. The development of vaccines, the use of cell therapy, and the continuous development of new drugs that are more effective and have fewer side effects are obstacles that persist. Recently, approaches that target the intracellular trafficking of viral proteins and post-translational modifications of viral proteins have been considered as promising new treatments. Knowledge of the intracellular trafficking of viral proteins and the role of the polyprotein Gag of HIV-1 suggests that this process, once locked, would change the viral replication cycle by preventing formation of mature forms of the virus. Therefore, inhibitors could block viral maturation by interrupting the final stage of processing the Gag protein or by inhibiting intermolecular bond to the capsid protein immature.

This immature form, when connected to a new host cell, would suffer a disruption of the protein structure by the action of potent intracellular factors that restrict the subsequent phase of viral replication[211-213]. Additionally, viral PIs for HIV-1 that block viral maturation have become a therapeutic target. In addition to the maturation inhibitors that inhibit the formation of viral capsids, another issue of interest is that the cells themselves have intrinsic antiviral factors that may

inhibit or restrict viral replication. One of the major families of cell restriction factors is tripartite motif 5 (TRIM5) composed of proteins that block retroviral infection, represented by two distinct forms of TRIM: TRIM5, which is expressed in most primates[214,215], and TRIM-Cyp, which is expressed in monkeys[216]. Both recognize the viral capsid but by different routes. The TRIM5 proteins are trimeric structures bind to one or two sites on the surface of the viral capsid and prevent the accumulation of reverse transcriptase. However, in late stages of viral replication, blocking is observed under some conditions of viral restriction[217]. The TRIM5α is associated with an accelerated degree of dissociation of the viral capsid, suggesting that this protein and its cofactors destabilize the structure of the capsid[218,219].

Other therapeutic factors that restrict the cellular antiviral protein APOBEC (apolipoprotein B mRNA-editing catalytic polypeptide) are the group of cytidine deaminases, which include APOBEC1 (A1), AID, APOBEC2 (A2), a subgroup of APOBEC3 (A3) proteins in humans and recently a protein, APOBEC4 (A4), expressed in some humans. These proteins have been presented as intracellular antiviral factors capable of blocking viral replication[220,221]. The function of the *A3* gene remains unknown, but it has been reported that human A3G has the ability to block viral replication[222]. Similarly, A3G, A3B and A3F are also able to inhibit viral replication of HIV-1 and of other viruses, such as simian immunodeficiency virus and Hepatitis B virus[221-223]. Additionally, the tetherin protein, originally described as BST-2 (CD137/HM1.24), was identified as a new surface marker of malignant B cells and characterized as an antiviral intrinsic factor with the ability to restrict the exit of viral capsids from the membrane surface[224,225]. The same protein was also recognized as a target of the Vpu protein of HIV-1, a potential antagonist against tetherin[226,227]. Further studies on TRIM5, tetherin and APOBEC proteins, as well as potential inhibitors of the viral capsid maturation acting on the Gag polyprotein are necessary; however, the information obtained so far allow us to suggest that understanding the intracellular trafficking of viral proteins and mechanisms for post-translational modification of viral proteins could turn out to elucidate the complex replication cycle of HIV-1 from HIV-1 fusion in the host cell until the final stage of release of mature, infectious viral particles.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We wish to thank Ana Stern, from the Laboratory of Genetics and Molecular Hematology, Laboratory of Genetics and Molecular Hematology (LIM31), University of São Paulo Medical School, for her contributions to our drawings graphics. Even, for all studies financially supported in the our laboratory with resources from The National Council of Technological and Scientific Development, the State of São Paulo Research Foundation and the National Institute of Science and Technology of Complex Fluids.

REFERENCES

1 **Deeks SG**, Lewin SR, Havlir DV. The end of AIDS: HIV infection as a chronic disease. *Lancet* 2013; **382**: 1525-1533 [PMID: 24152939 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(13)61809-7]

2 **Passaes CP**, Sáez-Cirión A. HIV cure research: advances and prospects. *Virology* 2014; **454-455**: 340-352 [PMID: 24636252 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2014.02.021]

3 **Calvo KR**, Daar ES. Antiretroviral therapy: treatment-experienced individuals. *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 2014; **28**: 439-456 [PMID: 25151565 DOI: 10.1016/j.idc.2014.06.005]

4 **Sobieszczyk ME**, Talley AK, Wilkin T, Hammer SM. Advances in antiretroviral therapy. *Top HIV Med* 2005; **13**: 24-44 [PMID: 15849370]

5 **Rigourd M**, Lanchy JM, Le Grice SF, Ehresmann B, Ehresmann C, Marquet R. Inhibition of the initiation of HIV-1 reverse transcription by 3'-azido-3'-deoxythymidine. Comparison with elongation. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 26944-26951 [PMID: 10864929]

6 **Balzarini J**. Current status of the non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *Curr Top Med Chem* 2004; **4**: 921-944 [PMID: 15134549 DOI: 10.2174/1568026043388420]

7 **Randolph JT**, DeGoey DA. Peptidomimetic inhibitors of HIV protease. *Curr Top Med Chem* 2004; **4**: 1079-1095 [PMID: 15193140 DOI: 10.2174/1568026043388330]

8 **Miyamoto F**, Kodama EN. Development of small molecule HIV-1 fusion inhibitors: linking biology to chemistry. *Curr Pharm Des* 2013; **19**: 1827-1834 [PMID: 23092276 DOI: 10.2174/1381612811319100007]

9 **Boesecke C**, Pett SL. Clinical studies with chemokine receptor-5 (CCR5)-inhibitors. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS* 2012; **7**: 456-462 [PMID: 22832708 DOI: 10.1097/COH.0b013e328356e933]

10 **Arribas JR**, Pialoux G, Gathe J, Di Perri G, Reynes J, Tebas P, Nguyen T, Ebrahimi R, White K, Piontkowsky D. Simplification to coformulated elvitegravir, cobicistat, emtricitabine, and tenofovir versus continuation of ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitor with emtricitabine and tenofovir in adults with virologically suppressed HIV (STRATEGY-PI): 48 week results of a randomised, open-label, phase 3b, non-inferiority trial. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2014; **14**: 581-589 [PMID: 24908551 DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(14)70782-0]

11 **Carr A**, Emery S, Law M, Puls R, Lundgren JD, Powderly WG. An objective case definition of lipodystrophy in HIV-infected adults: a case-control study. *Lancet* 2003; **361**: 726-735 [PMID: 12620736 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(03)12656-6]

12 **Wohl DA**, McComsey G, Tebas P, Brown TT, Glesby MJ, Reeds D, Shikuma C, Mulligan K, Dube M, Wininger D, Huang J, Revuelta M, Currier J, Swindells S, Fichtenbaum C, Basar M, Tungsiripat M, Meyer W, Weihe J, Wanke C. Current concepts in the diagnosis and management of metabolic complications of HIV infection and its therapy. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **43**: 645-653 [PMID: 16886161 DOI: 10.1086/507333]

13 **Carr A**, Samaras K, Burton S, Law M, Freund J, Chisholm DJ, Cooper DA. A syndrome of peripheral lipodystrophy, hyperlipidaemia and insulin resistance in patients receiving HIV protease inhibitors. *AIDS* 1998; **12**: F51-F58 [PMID: 9619798 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-199807000-00003]

14 **Sprinz E**, Lazzaretti RK, Kuhmmer R, Ribeiro JP. Dyslipidemia in HIV-infected individuals. *Braz J Infect Dis* 2010; **14**: 575-588 [PMID: 21340298 DOI: 10.1016/S1413-8670(10)70115-X]

15 **Grunfeld C**. Dyslipidemia and its Treatment in HIV Infection. *Top HIV Med* 2010; **18**: 112-118 [PMID: 20921577]

16 **Freitas P**, Carvalho D. Lipodystrophy: beyond generalization? *Panminerva Med* 2013; **55**: 253-268 [PMID: 24088799]

17 **Behrens GM**, Stoll M, Schmidt RE. Lipodystrophy syndrome in HIV infection: what is it, what causes it and how can it be managed? *Drug Saf* 2000; **23**: 57-76 [PMID: 10915032 DOI:

10.2165/00002018-200023010]
18 **Campbell SM**, Crowe SM, Mak J. Virion-associated cholesterol is critical for the maintenance of HIV-1 structure and infectivity. *AIDS* 2002; **16**: 2253-2261 [PMID: 12441796 DOI: 10.1097/0000 2030-200211220-00004]
19 **Chan R**, Uchil PD, Jin J, Shui G, Ott DE, Mothes W, Wenk MR. Retroviruses human immunodeficiency virus and murine leukemia virus are enriched in phosphoinositides. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 11228-11238 [PMID: 18799574 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00981-08]
20 **Hanley TM**, Blay Puryear W, Gummuluru S, Viglianti GA. PPARgamma and LXR signaling inhibit dendritic cell-mediated HIV-1 capture and trans-infection. *PLoS Pathog* 2010; **6**: e1000981 [PMID: 20617179 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000981]
21 **Hanley TM**, Viglianti GA. Nuclear receptor signaling inhibits HIV-1 replication in macrophages through multiple trans-repression mechanisms. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 10834-10850 [PMID: 21849441 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00789-11]
22 **Wang X**, Chai H, Yao Q, Chen C. Molecular mechanisms of HIV protease inhibitor-induced endothelial dysfunction. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2007; **44**: 493-499 [PMID: 17245228 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3180322542]
23 **Sankatsing RR**, Wit FW, Vogel M, de Groot E, Brinkman K, Rockstroh JK, Kastelein JJ, Stroes ES, Reiss P. Increased carotid intima-media thickness in HIV patients treated with protease inhibitors as compared to non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. *Atherosclerosis* 2009; **202**: 589-595 [PMID: 18599064 DOI: 10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2008.05.028]
24 **Riddler SA**, Li X, Otvos J, Post W, Palella F, Kingsley L, Visscher B, Jacobson LP, Sharrett AR. Antiretroviral therapy is associated with an atherogenic lipoprotein phenotype among HIV-1-infected men in the Multicenter AIDS Cohort Study. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2008; **48**: 281-288 [PMID: 18545156 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e31817bbbf0]
25 **Qiu X**, Liu ZP. Recent developments of peptidomimetic HIV-1 protease inhibitors. *Curr Med Chem* 2011; **18**: 4513-4537 [PMID: 21864279 DOI: 10.2174/092986711797287566]
26 **Rawlings ND**, Tolle DP, Barrett AJ. Evolutionary families of peptidase inhibitors. *Biochem J* 2004; **378**: 705-716 [PMID: 14705960 DOI: 10.1042/BJ20031825]
27 **Hui DY**. Effects of HIV protease inhibitor therapy on lipid metabolism. *Prog Lipid Res* 2003; **42**: 81-92 [PMID: 12547652 DOI: 10.1016/S0163-7827(02)00046-2]
28 **Riddler SA**, Li X, Chu H, Kingsley LA, Dobs A, Evans R, Palella F, Visscher B, Chmiel JS, Sharrett A. Longitudinal changes in serum lipids among HIV-infected men on highly active antiretroviral therapy. *HIV Med* 2007; **8**: 280-287 [PMID: 17561873 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1293.2007.00470.x]
29 **Arribas JR**, Pulido F, Delgado R, Lorenzo A, Miralles P, Arranz A, González-García JJ, Cepeda C, Hervás R, Paño JR, Gaya F, Carcas A, Montes ML, Costa JR, Peña JM. Lopinavir/ritonavir as single-drug therapy for maintenance of HIV-1 viral suppression: 48-week results of a randomized, controlled, open-label, proof-of-concept pilot clinical trial (OK Study). *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2005; **40**: 280-287 [PMID: 16249701 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000180077.59159.f4]
30 **Patick AK**, Potts KE. Protease inhibitors as antiviral agents. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 1998; **11**: 614-627 [PMID: 9767059]
31 **Helleberg M,** Kronborg G, Larsen CS, Pedersen G, Pedersen C, Nielsen L, Laursen A, Obel N, Gerstoft J. Decreasing rate of multiple treatment modifications among individuals who initiated antiretroviral therapy in 1997-2009 in the Danish HIV Cohort Study. *Antivir Ther* 2012; Epub ahead of print: [PMID: 23072939 DOI: 10.3851/IMP436]
32 **Carr A**, Hudson J, Chuah J, Mallal S, Law M, Hoy J, Doong N, French M, Smith D, Cooper DA. HIV protease inhibitor substitution in patients with lipodystrophy: a randomized, controlled, open-label, multicentre study. *AIDS* 2001; **15**: 1811-1822 [PMID: 11579243 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200109280-00010]
33 **Prosperi MC**, Fabbiani M, Fanti I, Zaccarelli M, Colafigli M, Mondi A, D'Avino A, Borghetti A, Cauda R, Di Giambenedetto S. Predictors of first-line antiretroviral therapy discontinuation due to drug-related adverse events in HIV-infected patients: a retrospective cohort study. *BMC Infect Dis* 2012; **12**: 296 [PMID: 23145925 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-12-296]
34 **Grunfeld C**, Pang M, Doerrler W, Shigenaga JK, Jensen P, Feingold KR. Lipids, lipoproteins, triglyceride clearance, and cytokines in human immunodeficiency virus infection and the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 1992; **74**: 1045-1052 [PMID: 1373735 DOI: 10.1210/jc.74.5.1045]
35 **Sellmeyer DE**, Grunfeld C. Endocrine and metabolic disturbances in human immunodeficiency virus infection and the acquired immune deficiency syndrome. *Endocr Rev* 1996; **17**: 518-532 [PMID: 8897023 DOI: 10.1210/edrv-17-5-518]
36 **Pedersen C**, Lindhardt BO, Jensen BL, Lauritzen E, Gerstoft J, Dickmeiss E, Gaub J, Scheibel E, Karlsmark T. Clinical course of primary HIV infection: consequences for subsequent course of infection. *BMJ* 1989; **299**: 154-157 [PMID: 2569901 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.299.6692.154]
37 **Rose H**, Woolley I, Hoy J, Dart A, Bryant B, Mijch A, Sviridov D. HIV infection and high-density lipoprotein: the effect of the disease vs the effect of treatment. *Metabolism* 2006; **55**: 90-95 [PMID: 16324925 DOI: 10.1016/j.metabol.2005.07.012]
38 **Baker J**, Ayenew W, Quick H, Hullsiek KH, Tracy R, Henry K, Duprez D, Neaton JD. High-density lipoprotein particles and markers of inflammation and thrombotic activity in patients with untreated HIV infection. *J Infect Dis* 2010; **201**: 285-292 [PMID: 19954384 DOI: 10.1086/649560]
39 **Zangerle R**, Sarcletti M, Gallati H, Reibnegger G, Wachter H, Fuchs D. Decreased plasma concentrations of HDL cholesterol in HIV-infected individuals are associated with immune activation. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 1994; **7**: 1149-1156 [PMID: 7932082]
40 **Chi D**, Henry J, Kelley J, Thorpe R, Smith JK, Krishnaswamy G. The effects of HIV infection on endothelial function. *Endothelium* 2000; **7**: 223-242 [PMID: 11201521]
41 **Schroecksnadel K**, Frick B, Winkler C, Fuchs D. Crucial role of interferon-gamma and stimulated macrophages in cardiovascular disease. *Curr Vasc Pharmacol* 2006; **4**: 205-213 [PMID: 16842138 DOI: 10.2174/157016106777698379]
42 **Cobos Jiménez V**, Booiman T, de Taeye SW, van Dort KA, Rits MA, Hamann J, Kootstra NA. Differential expression of HIV-1 interfering factors in monocyte-derived macrophages stimulated with polarizing cytokines or interferons. *Sci Rep* 2012; **2**: 763 [PMID: 23094138 DOI: 10.1038/srep00763]
43 **Vaidya SA**, Korner C, Sirignano MN, Amero M, Bazner S, Rychert J, Allen TM, Rosenberg ES, Bosch RJ, Altfeld M. Tumor necrosis factor α is associated with viral control and early disease progression in patients with HIV type 1 infection. *J Infect Dis* 2014; **210**: 1042-1046 [PMID: 24688071 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jiu206]
44 **Fisher SD**, Miller TL, Lipshultz SE. Impact of HIV and highly active antiretroviral therapy on leukocyte adhesion molecules, arterial inflammation, dyslipidemia, and atherosclerosis. *Atherosclerosis* 2006; **185**: 1-11 [PMID: 16297390 DOI: 10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2005.09.025]
45 **Penzak SR**, Chuck SK. Hyperlipidemia associated with HIV protease inhibitor use: pathophysiology, prevalence, risk factors and treatment. *Scand J Infect Dis* 2000; **32**: 111-123 [PMID: 10826894 DOI: 10.1080/003655400750045196]
46 **Behrens G**, Dejam A, Schmidt H, Balks HJ, Brabant G, Körner T, Stoll M, Schmidt RE. Impaired glucose tolerance, beta cell function and lipid metabolism in HIV patients under treatment with protease inhibitors. *AIDS* 1999; **13**: F63-F70 [PMID: 10416516 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-199907090-00001]
47 **Mulligan K**, Grunfeld C, Tai VW, Algren H, Pang M, Chernoff DN, Lo JC, Schambelan M. Hyperlipidemia and insulin resistance are induced by protease inhibitors independent of changes in body composition in patients with HIV infection. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2000; **23**: 35-43 [PMID: 10708054 DOI: 10.1097/00126334-200001010-00005]
48 **Savès M**, Raffi F, Capeau J, Rozenbaum W, Ragnaud JM,

Perronne C, Basdevant A, Leport C, Chêne G. Factors related to lipodystrophy and metabolic alterations in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection receiving highly active antiretroviral therapy. *Clin Infect Dis* 2002; **34**: 1396-1405 [PMID: 11981737 DOI: 10.1086/339866]

49 **Sekhar RV**, Jahoor F, Pownall HJ, Rehman K, Gaubatz J, Iyer D, Balasubramanyam A. Severely dysregulated disposal of postprandial triacylglycerols exacerbates hypertriacylglycerolemia in HIV lipodystrophy syndrome. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2005; **81**: 1405-1410 [PMID: 15941894]

50 **van Wijk JP**, Cabezas MC, de Koning EJ, Rabelink TJ, van der Geest R, Hoepelman IM. In vivo evidence of impaired peripheral fatty acid trapping in patients with human immunodeficiency virus-associated lipodystrophy. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2005; **90**: 3575-3582 [PMID: 15784707 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2004-2343]

51 **Miserez AR**, Muller PY, Spaniol V. Indinavir inhibits sterol-regulatory element-binding protein-1c-dependent lipoprotein lipase and fatty acid synthase gene activations. *AIDS* 2002; **16**: 1587-1594 [PMID: 12172079 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200208160-00003]

52 **Abebe M**, Kinde S, Belay G, Gebreegziabxier A, Challa F, Gebeyehu T, Nigussie P, Tegbaru B. Antiretroviral treatment associated hyperglycemia and dyslipidemia among HIV infected patients at Burayu Health Center, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia: a cross-sectional comparative study. *BMC Res Notes* 2014; **7**: 380 [PMID: 24950924 DOI: 10.1186/1756-0500-7-380]

53 **Crane HM**, Grunfeld C, Willig JH, Mugavero MJ, Van Rompaey S, Moore R, Rodriguez B, Feldman BJ, Lederman MM, Saag MS, Kitahata MM. Impact of NRTIs on lipid levels among a large HIV-infected cohort initiating antiretroviral therapy in clinical care. *AIDS* 2011; **25**: 185-195 [PMID: 21150555 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328341f925]

54 **Carr A**, Samaras K, Thorisdottir A, Kaufmann GR, Chisholm DJ, Cooper DA. Diagnosis, prediction, and natural course of HIV-1 protease-inhibitor-associated lipodystrophy, hyperlipidaemia, and diabetes mellitus: a cohort study. *Lancet* 1999; **353**: 2093-2099 [PMID: 10382692 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(98)08468-2]

55 **Hu C**, Oliver JA, Goldberg MR, Al-Awqati Q. LRP: a new adhesion molecule for endothelial and smooth muscle cells. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2001; **281**: F739-F750 [PMID: 11553521]

56 **Zaera MG**, Miró O, Pedrol E, Soler A, Picón M, Cardellach F, Casademont J, Nunes V. Mitochondrial involvement in antiretroviral therapy-related lipodystrophy. *AIDS* 2001; **15**: 1643-1651 [PMID: 11546938 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200109070-00006]

57 **Chattopadhyay K,** Aldous CA. A brief review on human mtDNA mutations and NRTI-associated mtDNA toxicity and mutations. *Mitochondrial DNA* 2014; Epub ahead of print: 1-3 [PMID: 25211089]

58 **Apostolova N**, Blas-García A, Esplugues JV. Mitochondrial interference by anti-HIV drugs: mechanisms beyond Pol-γ inhibition. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 2011; **32**: 715-725 [PMID: 21899897 DOI: 10.1016/j.tips.2011.07.007]

59 **Arnedo M**, Taffé P, Sahli R, Furrer H, Hirschel B, Elzi L, Weber R, Vernazza P, Bernasconi E, Darioli R, Bergmann S, Beckmann JS, Telenti A, Tarr PE. Contribution of 20 single nucleotide polymorphisms of 13 genes to dyslipidemia associated with antiretroviral therapy. *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 2007; **17**: 755-764 [PMID: 17700364 DOI: 10.1097/FPC.0b013e32814db8b7]

60 **Egaña-Gorroño L**, Martínez E, Cormand B, Escribà T, Gatell J, Arnedo M. Impact of genetic factors on dyslipidemia in HIV-infected patients starting antiretroviral therapy. *AIDS* 2013; **27**: 529-538 [PMID: 23262498 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32835d0da1]

61 **Fauvel J**, Bonnet E, Ruidavets JB, Ferrières J, Toffoletti A, Massip P, Chap H, Perret B. An interaction between apo C-III variants and protease inhibitors contributes to high triglyceride/low HDL levels in treated HIV patients. *AIDS* 2001; **15**: 2397-2406 [PMID: 11740190 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200112070-00007]

62 **Foulkes AS**, Wohl DA, Frank I, Puleo E, Restine S, Wolfe ML, Dube MP, Tebas P, Reilly MP. Associations among race/ethnicity, ApoC-III genotypes, and lipids in HIV-1-infected individuals on antiretroviral therapy. *PLoS Med* 2006; **3**: e52 [PMID: 16417409 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.0030052]

63 **Parra S**, Alonso-Villaverde C, Coll B, Ferré N, Marsillach J, Aragonès G, Mackness M, Mackness B, Masana L, Joven J, Camps J. Serum paraoxonase-1 activity and concentration are influenced by human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Atherosclerosis* 2007; **194**: 175-181 [PMID: 16942773 DOI: 10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2006.07.024]

64 **Maselli LM**, da Cunha J, Gutierrez EB, Maranhão RC, Spada C, Bydlowski SP. Human paraoxonase-1 activity is related to the number of CD4+ T-cells and is restored by antiretroviral therapy in HIV-1-infected individuals. *Dis Markers* 2014; **2014**: 480201 [PMID: 24719500 DOI: 10.1155/2014/480201]

65 **Aviram M**, Rosenblat M. Paraoxonases and cardiovascular diseases: pharmacological and nutritional influences. *Curr Opin Lipidol* 2005; **16**: 393-399 [PMID: 15990587 DOI: 10.1097/01.mol.0000174398.84185.0f]

66 **Mackness MI**, Arrol S, Abbott C, Durrington PN. Protection of low-density lipoprotein against oxidative modification by high-density lipoprotein associated paraoxonase. *Atherosclerosis* 1993; **104**: 129-135 [PMID: 8141836 DOI: 10.1016/0021-9150(93)90183-U]

67 **Aviram M**, Rosenblat M. Paraoxonases 1, 2, and 3, oxidative stress, and macrophage foam cell formation during atherosclerosis development. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2004; **37**: 1304-1316 [PMID: 15454271 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2004.06.030]

68 **Assmann G**, Nofer JR. Atheroprotective effects of high-density lipoproteins. *Annu Rev Med* 2003; **54**: 321-341 [PMID: 12414916 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.med.54.101601.152409]

69 **Ngondi JL**, Oben J, Forkah DM, Etame LH, Mbanya D. The effect of different combination therapies on oxidative stress markers in HIV infected patients in Cameroon. *AIDS Res Ther* 2006; **3**: 19 [PMID: 16859567 DOI: 10.1186/1742-6405-3-19]

70 **Bydlowski SP**, Yunker RL, Rymaszewski Z, Subbiah MT. Coffee extracts inhibit platelet aggregation in vivo and in vitro. *Int J Vitam Nutr Res* 1987; **57**: 217-223 [PMID: 3115908]

71 **Bydlowski SP**, Yunker RL, Subbiah MT. Ontogeny of 6-keto-PGF1 alpha synthesis in rabbit aorta and the effect of premature weaning. *Am J Physiol* 1987; **252**: H14-H21 [PMID: 3101515]

72 **Ruiz JL**, Fernandes LR, Levy D, Bydlowski SP. Interrelationship between ATP-binding cassette transporters and oxysterols. *Biochem Pharmacol* 2013; **86**: 80-88 [PMID: 23500544 DOI: 10.1016/j.bcp.2013.02.033]

73 **Matsuura E**, Hughes GR, Khamashta MA. Oxidation of LDL and its clinical implication. *Autoimmun Rev* 2008; **7**: 558-566 [PMID: 18625445 DOI: 10.1016/j.autrev.2008.04.018]

74 **Kádár A**, Glasz T. Development of atherosclerosis and plaque biology. *Cardiovasc Surg* 2001; **9**: 109-121 [PMID: 11250172 DOI: 10.1016/S0967-2109(00)00097-1]

75 **Navab M**, Ananthramaiah GM, Reddy ST, Van Lenten BJ, Ansell BJ, Fonarow GC, Vahabzadeh K, Hama S, Hough G, Kamranpour N, Berliner JA, Lusis AJ, Fogelman AM. The oxidation hypothesis of atherogenesis: the role of oxidized phospholipids and HDL. *J Lipid Res* 2004; **45**: 993-1007 [PMID: 15060092 DOI: 10.1194/jlr.R400001-JLR200]

76 **Faviou E**, Vourli G, Nounopoulos C, Zachari A, Dionyssiou-Asteriou A. Circulating oxidized low density lipoprotein, autoantibodies against them and homocysteine serum levels in diagnosis and estimation of severity of coronary artery disease. *Free Radic Res* 2005; **39**: 419-429 [PMID: 16028367 DOI: 10.1080/10715760500072156]

77 **da Cunha J**, Ferreira Maselli LM, Treitinger A, Monteiro AM, Gidlund M, Maranhão RC, Spada C, Bydlowski SP. Serum levels of IgG antibodies against oxidized LDL and atherogenic indices in HIV-1-infected patients treated with protease inhibitors. *Clin Chem Lab Med* 2013; **51**: 371-378 [PMID: 23241595 DOI: 10.1515/cclm-2012-0225]

78 **Monnerat BZ**, Cerutti Junior C, Caniçali SC, Motta TR. Clinical and biochemical evaluation of HIV-related lipodystrophy in an ambulatory population from the Hospital Universitário Cassiano Antonio de Morais, Vitória, ES, Brazil. *Braz J Infect*

Dis 2008; **12**: 364-368 [PMID: 19030742 DOI: 10.1590/S1413-86702008000400002]

79 **Cossarizza A**, Riva A, Pinti M, Ammannato S, Fedeli P, Mussini C, Esposito R, Galli M. Increased mitochondrial DNA content in peripheral blood lymphocytes from HIV-infected patients with lipodystrophy. *Antivir Ther* 2003; **8**: 315-321 [PMID: 14518701]

80 **Pinti M**, Salomoni P, Cossarizza A. Anti-HIV drugs and the mitochondria. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2006; **1757**: 700-707 [PMID: 16782042 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbabio.2006.05.001]

81 **Joly V**, Flandre P, Meiffredy V, Leturque N, Harel M, Aboulker JP, Yeni P. Increased risk of lipoatrophy under stavudine in HIV-1-infected patients: results of a substudy from a comparative trial. *AIDS* 2002; **16**: 2447-2454 [PMID: 12461419 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200212060-00010]

82 **de Waal R**, Cohen K, Maartens G. Systematic review of antiretroviral-associated lipodystrophy: lipoatrophy, but not central fat gain, is an antiretroviral adverse drug reaction. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e63623 [PMID: 23723990 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0063623]

83 **Haubrich RH**, Riddler SA, DiRienzo AG, Komarow L, Powderly WG, Klingman K, Garren KW, Butcher DL, Rooney JF, Haas DW, Mellors JW, Havlir DV. Metabolic outcomes in a randomized trial of nucleoside, nonnucleoside and protease inhibitor-sparing regimens for initial HIV treatment. *AIDS* 2009; **23**: 1109-1118 [PMID: 19417580 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32832b4377]

84 **Kotler DP**. HIV lipodystrophy etiology and pathogenesis. Body composition and metabolic alterations: etiology and pathogenesis. *AIDS Read* 2003; **13**: S5-S9 [PMID: 12762287]

85 **Mulligan K**, Parker RA, Komarow L, Grinspoon SK, Tebas P, Robbins GK, Roubenoff R, Dubé MP. Mixed patterns of changes in central and peripheral fat following initiation of antiretroviral therapy in a randomized trial. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2006; **41**: 590-597 [PMID: 16652032 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000214811.72916.67]

86 **Torriani M**, Hadigan C, Jensen ME, Grinspoon S. Psoas muscle attenuation measurement with computed tomography indicates intramuscular fat accumulation in patients with the HIV-lipodystrophy syndrome. *J Appl Physiol* (1985) 2003; **95**: 1005-1010 [PMID: 12766180]

87 **Lo J**, Abbara S, Rocha-Filho JA, Shturman L, Wei J, Grinspoon SK. Increased epicardial adipose tissue volume in HIV-infected men and relationships to body composition and metabolic parameters. *AIDS* 2010; **24**: 2127-2130 [PMID: 20588167]

88 **Van Harmelen V**, Lönnqvist F, Thörne A, Wennlund A, Large V, Reynisdottir S, Arner P. Noradrenaline-induced lipolysis in isolated mesenteric, omental and subcutaneous adipocytes from obese subjects. *Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord* 1997; **21**: 972-979 [PMID: 9368819 DOI: 10.1038/sj.ijo.0800504]

89 **Kino T**, Gragerov A, Kopp JB, Stauber RH, Pavlakis GN, Chrousos GP. The HIV-1 virion-associated protein vpr is a coactivator of the human glucocorticoid receptor. *J Exp Med* 1999; **189**: 51-62 [PMID: 9874563]

90 **Sax PE**, Kumar P. Tolerability and safety of HIV protease inhibitors in adults. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2004; **37**: 1111-1124 [PMID: 15319670 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000138420.38995.86]

91 **Brown TT**, Chu H, Wang Z, Palella FJ, Kingsley L, Witt MD, Dobs AS. Longitudinal increases in waist circumference are associated with HIV-serostatus, independent of antiretroviral therapy. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 1731-1738 [PMID: 17690571 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328270356a]

92 **Alves MD**, Brites C, Sprinz E. HIV-associated lipodystrophy: a review from a Brazilian perspective. *Ther Clin Risk Manag* 2014; **10**: 559-566 [PMID: 25083134 DOI: 10.2147/TCRM.S35075]

93 **Justman JE**, Hoover DR, Shi Q, Tan T, Anastos K, Tien PC, Cole SR, Hyman C, Karim R, Weber K, Grinspoon S. Longitudinal anthropometric patterns among HIV-infected and HIV-uninfected women. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2008; **47**: 312-319 [PMID: 18197125 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e318162f597]

94 **Bacchetti P**, Gripshover B, Grunfeld C, Heymsfield S, McCreath H, Osmond D, Saag M, Scherzer R, Shlipak M, Tien P. Fat distribution in men with HIV infection. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2005; **40**: 121-131 [PMID: 16186728 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000182230.47819.aa]

95 **Study of Fat Redistribution and Metabolic Change in HIV Infection (FRAM)**. Fat distribution in women with HIV infection. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2006; **42**: 562-571 [PMID: 16837863]

96 **Ene L**, Goetghebuer T, Hainaut M, Peltier A, Toppet V, Levy J. Prevalence of lipodystrophy in HIV-infected children: a cross-sectional study. *Eur J Pediatr* 2007; **166**: 13-21 [PMID: 16896646]

97 **Beregszaszi M**, Dollfus C, Levine M, Faye A, Deghmoun S, Bellal N, Houang M, Chevenne D, Hankard R, Bresson JL, Blanche S, Levy-Marchal C. Longitudinal evaluation and risk factors of lipodystrophy and associated metabolic changes in HIV-infected children. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2005; **40**: 161-168 [PMID: 16186733 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000178930.93033.f2]

98 **Desai N**, Mullen P, Mathur M. Lipodystrophy in pediatric HIV. *Indian J Pediatr* 2008; **75**: 351-354 [PMID: 18536889 DOI: 10.1007/s12098-008-0037-2]

99 **Bastard JP**, Caron M, Vidal H, Jan V, Auclair M, Vigouroux C, Luboinski J, Laville M, Maachi M, Girard PM, Rozenbaum W, Levan P, Capeau J. Association between altered expression of adipogenic factor SREBP1 in lipoatrophic adipose tissue from HIV-1-infected patients and abnormal adipocyte differentiation and insulin resistance. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 1026-1031 [PMID: 11937183 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)08094-7]

100 **Martinez E**, Gatell J. Metabolic abnormalities and use of HIV-1 protease inhibitors. *Lancet* 1998; **352**: 821-822 [PMID: 9737319 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(05)60719-2]

101 **Gutierrez AD**, Balasubramanyam A. Dysregulation of glucose metabolism in HIV patients: epidemiology, mechanisms, and management. *Endocrine* 2012; **41**: 1-10 [PMID: 22134974 DOI: 10.1007/s12020-011-9565-z]

102 **Hadigan C**, Meigs JB, Corcoran C, Rietschel P, Piecuch S, Basgoz N, Davis B, Sax P, Stanley T, Wilson PW, D'Agostino RB, Grinspoon S. Metabolic abnormalities and cardiovascular disease risk factors in adults with human immunodeficiency virus infection and lipodystrophy. *Clin Infect Dis* 2001; **32**: 130-139 [PMID: 11118392 DOI: 10.1086/317541]

103 **Brown TT**, Tassiopoulos K, Bosch RJ, Shikuma C, McComsey GA. Association between systemic inflammation and incident diabetes in HIV-infected patients after initiation of antiretroviral therapy. *Diabetes Care* 2010; **33**: 2244-2249 [PMID: 20664016 DOI: 10.2337/dc10-0633]

104 **Hadigan C**, Liebau J, Andersen R, Holalkere NS, Sahani DV. Magnetic resonance spectroscopy of hepatic lipid content and associated risk factors in HIV infection. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2007; **46**: 312-317 [PMID: 17721396 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181568cc2]

105 **Shlay JC**, Sharma S, Peng G, Gibert CL, Grunfeld C. The effect of individual antiretroviral drugs on body composition in HIV-infected persons initiating highly active antiretroviral therapy. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2009; **51**: 298-304 [PMID: 19412117 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181aa1308]

106 **Seigneur M**, Constans J, Blann A, Renard M, Pellegrin JL, Amiral J, Boisseau M, Conri C. Soluble adhesion molecules and endothelial cell damage in HIV infected patients. *Thromb Haemost* 1997; **77**: 646-649 [PMID: 9134636]

107 **Grunfeld C**, Delaney JA, Wanke C, Currier JS, Scherzer R, Biggs ML, Tien PC, Shlipak MG, Sidney S, Polak JF, O'Leary D, Bacchetti P, Kronmal RA. Preclinical atherosclerosis due to HIV infection: carotid intima-medial thickness measurements from the FRAM study. *AIDS* 2009; **23**: 1841-1849 [PMID: 19455012 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32832d3b85]

108 **Triant VA**, Meigs JB, Grinspoon SK. Association of C-reactive protein and HIV infection with acute myocardial infarction. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2009; **51**: 268-273 [PMID: 19387353 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181a9992c]

109 **Samaras K**, Gan SK, Peake PW, Carr A, Campbell LV. Proinflammatory markers, insulin sensitivity, and cardiometabolic risk factors in treated HIV infection. *Obesity (Silver Spring)* 2009;

17: 53-59 [PMID: 19008869 DOI: 10.1038/oby.2008.500]

110 **Sankalé JL**, Tong Q, Hadigan CM, Tan G, Grinspoon SK, Kanki PJ, Hotamisligil GS. Regulation of adiponectin in adipocytes upon exposure to HIV-1. *HIV Med* 2006; **7**: 268-274 [PMID: 16630040 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1293.2006.00372.x]

111 **Jones SP**, Qazi N, Morelese J, Lebrecht D, Sutinen J, Yki-Jărvinen H, Back DJ, Pirmohamed M, Gazzard BG, Walker UA, Moyle GJ. Assessment of adipokine expression and mitochondrial toxicity in HIV patients with lipoatrophy on stavudine- and zidovudine-containing regimens. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2005; **40**: 565-572 [PMID: 16284533 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000187443.30838.3e]

112 **Friis-Møller N**, Reiss P, Sabin CA, Weber R, Monforte Ad, El-Sadr W, Thiébaut R, De Wit S, Kirk O, Fontas E, Law MG, Phillips A, Lundgren JD. Class of antiretroviral drugs and the risk of myocardial infarction. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **356**: 1723-1735 [PMID: 17460226]

113 **Young J**, Weber R, Rickenbach M, Furrer H, Bernasconi E, Hirschel B, Tarr PE, Vernazza P, Battegay M, Bucher HC. Lipid profiles for antiretroviral-naive patients starting PI- and NNRTI-based therapy in the Swiss HIV cohort study. *Antivir Ther* 2005; **10**: 585-591 [PMID: 16152752]

114 **Cahn PE**, Gatell JM, Squires K, Percival LD, Piliero PJ, Sanne IA, Shelton S, Lazzarin A, Odeshoo L, Kelleher TD, Thiry A, Giordano MD, Schnittman SM. Atazanavir--a once-daily HIV protease inhibitor that does not cause dyslipidemia in newly treated patients: results from two randomized clinical trials. *J Int Assoc Physicians AIDS Care (Chic)* 2004; **3**: 92-98 [PMID: 15573713 DOI: 10.1177/154510970400300304]

115 **Grover SA**, Coupal L, Gilmore N, Mukherjee J. Impact of dyslipidemia associated with Highly Active Antiretroviral Therapy (HAART) on cardiovascular risk and life expectancy. *Am J Cardiol* 2005; **95**: 586-591 [PMID: 15721096 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjcard.2004.11.004]

116 **Hicks CB**, Cahn P, Cooper DA, Walmsley SL, Katlama C, Clotet B, Lazzarin A, Johnson MA, Neubacher D, Mayers D, Valdez H. Durable efficacy of tipranavir-ritonavir in combination with an optimised background regimen of antiretroviral drugs for treatment-experienced HIV-1-infected patients at 48 weeks in the Randomized Evaluation of Strategic Intervention in multi-drug reSistant patients with Tipranavir (RESIST) studies: an analysis of combined data from two randomised open-label trials. *Lancet* 2006; **368**: 466-475 [PMID: 16890833 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(06)69154-X]

117 **Calza L**, Manfredi R, Colangeli V, Tampellini L, Sebastiani T, Pocaterra D, Chiodo F. Substitution of nevirapine or efavirenz for protease inhibitor versus lipid-lowering therapy for the management of dyslipidaemia. *AIDS* 2005; **19**: 1051-1058 [PMID: 15958836 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000174451.78497.8f]

118 **Clotet B**, van der Valk M, Negredo E, Reiss P. Impact of nevirapine on lipid metabolism. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2003; **34** Suppl 1: S79-S84 [PMID: 14562862 DOI: 10.1097/00126334-200309011-00012]

119 **Dubé MP**, Stein JH, Aberg JA, Fichtenbaum CJ, Gerber JG, Tashima KT, Henry WK, Currier JS, Sprecher D, Glesby MJ. Guidelines for the evaluation and management of dyslipidemia in human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected adults receiving antiretroviral therapy: recommendations of the HIV Medical Association of the Infectious Disease Society of America and the Adult AIDS Clinical Trials Group. *Clin Infect Dis* 2003; **37**: 613-627 [PMID: 12942391 DOI: 10.1086/378131]

120 **Gould AL**, Rossouw JE, Santanello NC, Heyse JF, Furberg CD. Cholesterol reduction yields clinical benefit: impact of statin trials. *Circulation* 1998; **97**: 946-952 [PMID: 9529261 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.97.10.946]

121 **Favero GM**, F Otuki M, Oliveira KA, Bohatch MS, Borelli P, Barros FE, Maria DA, Fernandes D, Bydlowski SP. Simvastatin impairs murine melanoma growth. *Lipids Health Dis* 2010; **9**: 142 [PMID: 21162733 DOI: 10.1186/1476-511X-9-142]

122 **de Lara Janz F**, Favero GM, Bohatch MS, Aguiar Debes A, Bydlowski SP. Simvastatin induces osteogenic differentiation in human amniotic fluid mesenchymal stem cells (AFMSC). *Fundam Clin Pharmacol* 2014; **28**: 211-216 [PMID: 23094676 DOI: 10.1111/fcp.12006]

123 **Baigent C**, Keech A, Kearney PM, Blackwell L, Buck G, Pollicino C, Kirby A, Sourjina T, Peto R, Collins R, Simes R. Efficacy and safety of cholesterol-lowering treatment: prospective meta-analysis of data from 90,056 participants in 14 randomised trials of statins. *Lancet* 2005; **366**: 1267-1278 [PMID: 16214597 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(05)67394-1]

124 **Boccara F**, Simon T, Lacombe K, Cohen A, Laloux B, Bozec E, Durant S, Girard PM, Laurent S, Boutouyrie P. Influence of pravastatin on carotid artery structure and function in dyslipidemic HIV-infected patients receiving antiretroviral therapy. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 2395-2398 [PMID: 17117030 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32801120e3]

125 **Stein JH**, Merwood MA, Bellehumeur JL, Aeschlimann SE, Korcarz CE, Underbakke GL, Mays ME, Sosman JM. Effects of pravastatin on lipoproteins and endothelial function in patients receiving human immunodeficiency virus protease inhibitors. *Am Heart J* 2004; **147**: E18 [PMID: 15077088 DOI: 10.1016/j.ahj.2003.10.018]

126 **Calza L**, Colangeli V, Manfredi R, Legnani G, Tampellini L, Pocaterra D, Chiodo F. Rosuvastatin for the treatment of hyperlipidaemia in HIV-infected patients receiving protease inhibitors: a pilot study. *AIDS* 2005; **19**: 1103-1105 [PMID: 15958843 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000174458.86121.43]

127 **Fichtenbaum CJ**, Gerber JG, Rosenkranz SL, Segal Y, Aberg JA, Blaschke T, Alston B, Fang F, Kosel B, Aweeka F. Pharmacokinetic interactions between protease inhibitors and statins in HIV seronegative volunteers: ACTG Study A5047. *AIDS* 2002; **16**: 569-577 [PMID: 11873000 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200203080-00008]

128 **Fichtenbaum CJ**, Gerber JG. Interactions between antiretroviral drugs and drugs used for the therapy of the metabolic complications encountered during HIV infection. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 2002; **41**: 1195-1211 [PMID: 12405866 DOI: 10.2165/00003088-200241140-00004]

129 **Williams D**, Feely J. Pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic drug interactions with HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 2002; **41**: 343-370 [PMID: 12036392 DOI: 10.2165/00003088-200241050-00003]

130 **Hare CB**, Vu MP, Grunfeld C, Lampiris HW. Simvastatin-nelfinavir interaction implicated in rhabdomyolysis and death. *Clin Infect Dis* 2002; **35**: e111-e112 [PMID: 12410494 DOI: 10.1086/344179]

131 **Moro H**, Tsukada H, Tanuma A, Shirasaki A, Iino N, Nishibori T, Nishi S, Gejyo F. Rhabdomyolysis after simvastatin therapy in an HIV-infected patient with chronic renal failure. *AIDS Patient Care STDS* 2004; **18**: 687-690 [PMID: 15659879 DOI: 10.1089/apc.2004.18.687]

132 **Moyle GJ**, Lloyd M, Reynolds B, Baldwin C, Mandalia S, Gazzard BG. Dietary advice with or without pravastatin for the management of hypercholesterolaemia associated with protease inhibitor therapy. *AIDS* 2001; **15**: 1503-1508 [PMID: 11504982 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200108170-00007]

133 **Calza L**, Manfredi R, Chiodo F. Use of fibrates in the management of hyperlipidemia in HIV-infected patients receiving HAART. *Infection* 2002; **30**: 26-31 [PMID: 11876511 DOI: 10.1007/s15010-001-2052-3]

134 **Mastroianni CM**, d'Ettorre G, Forcina G, Lichtner M, Corpolongo A, Coletta S, Vullo V. Rhabdomyolysis after cerivastatin-gemfibrozil therapy in an HIV-infected patient with protease inhibitor-related hyperlipidemia. *AIDS* 2001; **15**: 820-821 [PMID: 11371708 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200104130-00029]

135 **Thomas JC**, Lopes-Virella MF, Del Bene VE, Cerveny JD, Taylor KB, McWhorter LS, Bultemeier NC. Use of fenofibrate in the management of protease inhibitor-associated lipid abnormalities. *Pharmacotherapy* 2000; **20**: 727-734 [PMID: 10853629 DOI: 10.1592/phco.20.7.727.35179]

136 **Rubins HB**, Robins SJ, Collins D, Fye CL, Anderson JW, Elam MB, Faas FH, Linares E, Schaefer EJ, Schectman G, Wilt TJ, Wittes J. Gemfibrozil for the secondary prevention of coronary heart disease in men with low levels of high-density lipoprotein cholesterol. Veterans Affairs High-Density Lipoprotein Cholesterol Intervention Trial Study Group. *N Engl J Med* 1999; **341**: 410-418 [PMID: 10438259 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199908053410604]

137 **Calza L**, Manfredi R, Chiodo F. Statins and fibrates for the treatment of hyperlipidaemia in HIV-infected patients receiving HAART. *AIDS* 2003; **17**: 851-859 [PMID: 12660532 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200304110-00010]

138 **Visnegarwala F**, Maldonado M, Sajja P, Minihan JL, Rodriguez-Barradas MC, Ong O, Lahart CJ, Hasan MQ, Balasubramanyam A, White AC. Lipid lowering effects of statins and fibrates in the management of HIV dyslipidemias associated with antiretroviral therapy in HIV clinical practice. *J Infect* 2004; **49**: 283-290 [PMID: 15474625 DOI: 10.1016/j.jinf.2003.09.006]

139 **Miller J**, Brown D, Amin J, Kent-Hughes J, Law M, Kaldor J, Cooper DA, Carr A. A randomized, double-blind study of gemfibrozil for the treatment of protease inhibitor-associated hypertriglyceridaemia. *AIDS* 2002; **16**: 2195-2200 [PMID: 12409741 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200211080-00012]

140 **Keech A**, Simes RJ, Barter P, Best J, Scott R, Taskinen MR, Forder P, Pillai A, Davis T, Glasziou P, Drury P, Kesäniemi YA, Sullivan D, Hunt D, Colman P, d'Emden M, Whiting M, Ehnholm C, Laakso M. Effects of long-term fenofibrate therapy on cardiovascular events in 9795 people with type 2 diabetes mellitus (the FIELD study): randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2005; **366**: 1849-1861 [PMID: 16310551 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(05)67667-2]

141 **Aberg JA**, Zackin RA, Brobst SW, Evans SR, Alston BL, Henry WK, Glesby MJ, Torriani FJ, Yang Y, Owens SI, Fichtenbaum CJ. A randomized trial of the efficacy and safety of fenofibrate versus pravastatin in HIV-infected subjects with lipid abnormalities: AIDS Clinical Trials Group Study 5087. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 2005; **21**: 757-767 [PMID: 16218799 DOI: 10.1089/aid.2005.21.757]

142 **Nolan DP**, O'Connor MB, O'Connor C, Moriarty M, O'Leary A, Bergin C. HIV-associated dyslipidaemia among HIV antibody-positive patients in Ireland: prevalence and management strategies. *Int J STD AIDS* 2010; **21**: 75-76 [PMID: 19884356 DOI: 10.1258/ijsa.2009.009364]

143 **Negredo E**, Moltó J, Puig J, Cinquegrana D, Bonjoch A, Pérez-Alvarez N, López-Blázquez R, Blanco A, Clotet B, Rey-Joly C. Ezetimibe, a promising lipid-lowering agent for the treatment of dyslipidaemia in HIV-infected patients with poor response to statins. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 2159-2164 [PMID: 17086055 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000247573.95880.db]

144 **Coll B**, Aragonés G, Parra S, Alonso-Villaverde C, Masana L. Ezetimibe effectively decreases LDL-cholesterol in HIV-infected patients. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 1675-1677 [PMID: 16868453 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000238418.43937.3b]

145 **Patel SB**. Ezetimibe: a novel cholesterol-lowering agent that highlights novel physiologic pathways. *Curr Cardiol Rep* 2004; **6**: 439-442 [PMID: 15485605 DOI: 10.1007/s11886-004-0052-5]

146 **Stein E**. Results of phase I/II clinical trials with ezetimibe, a novel selective cholesterol absorption inhibitor. *Eur Heart J* 2001; **3**: E11–E16 [DOI: 10.1016/S1520-765X(01)90107-5]

147 **Wohl DA**, Waters D, Simpson RJ, Richard S, Schnell A, Napravnik S, Keys J, Eron JJ, Hsue P. Ezetimibe alone reduces low-density lipoprotein cholesterol in HIV-infected patients receiving combination antiretroviral therapy. *Clin Infect Dis* 2008; **47**: 1105-1108 [PMID: 18781882 DOI: 10.1086/592116]

148 **Chastain LM**, Bain AM, Edwards KL, Bedimo R, Busti AJ. A retrospective study of the lipid-lowering efficacy and safety of ezetimibe added to hydroxy methylglutaryl coenzyme A reductase therapy in HIV-infected patients with hyperlipidemia. *J Clin Lipidol* 2007; **1**: 634-639 [PMID: 21291706 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacl.2007.10.003]

149 **Grandi AM**, Nicolini E, Rizzi L, Caputo S, Annoni F, Cremona AM, Marchesi C, Guasti L, Maresca AM, Grossi P. Dyslipidemia in HIV-positive patients: a randomized, controlled, prospective study on ezetimibe+fenofibrate versus pravastatin monotherapy. *J Int AIDS Soc* 2014; **17**: 19004 [PMID: 25148829 DOI: 10.7448/IAS.17.1.19004]

150 **Phillipson BE**, Rothrock DW, Connor WE, Harris WS, Illingworth DR. Reduction of plasma lipids, lipoproteins, and apoproteins by dietary fish oils in patients with hypertriglyceridemia. *N Engl J Med* 1985; **312**: 1210-1216 [PMID: 3990714 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM198505093121902]

151 **Harris WS**. n-3 fatty acids and serum lipoproteins: human studies. *Am J Clin Nutr* 1997; **65**: 1645S-1654S [PMID: 9129504]

152 **Gerber JG**, Kitch DW, Fichtenbaum CJ, Zackin RA, Charles S, Hogg E, Acosta EP, Connick E, Wohl D, Kojic EM, Benson CA, Aberg JA. Fish oil and fenofibrate for the treatment of hypertriglyceridemia in HIV-infected subjects on antiretroviral therapy: results of ACTG A5186. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2008; **47**: 459-466 [PMID: 17971707 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e31815bace2]

153 **De Truchis P**, Kirstetter M, Perier A, Meunier C, Zucman D, Force G, Doll J, Katlama C, Rozenbaum W, Masson H, Gardette J, Melchior JC. Reduction in triglyceride level with N-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids in HIV-infected patients taking potent antiretroviral therapy: a randomized prospective study. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2007; **44**: 278-285 [PMID: 17179770 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e31802c2f3d]

154 **Schmidt EB**. Marine N-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids and coronary heart disease: come a long way but expect more. *Cell Mol Biol (Noisy-le-grand)* 2010; **56**: 1-3 [PMID: 20225403]

155 **Bang HO**, Dyerberg J. Plasma lipids and lipoproteins in Greenlandic west coast Eskimos. *Acta Med Scand* 1972; **192**: 85-94 [PMID: 5052396]

156 **Farmer JA**. Nicotinic acid: a new look at an old drug. *Curr Atheroscler Rep* 2009; **11**: 87-92 [PMID: 19228480 DOI: 10.1007/s11883-009-0014-x]

157 **Brown BG**, Zhao XQ, Chait A, Fisher LD, Cheung MC, Morse JS, Dowdy AA, Marino EK, Bolson EL, Alaupovic P, Frohlich J, Albers JJ. Simvastatin and niacin, antioxidant vitamins, or the combination for the prevention of coronary disease. *N Engl J Med* 2001; **345**: 1583-1592 [PMID: 11757504 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa011090]

158 **Meyers CD**, Carr MC, Park S, Brunzell JD. Varying cost and free nicotinic acid content in over-the-counter niacin preparations for dyslipidemia. *Ann Intern Med* 2003; **139**: 996-1002 [PMID: 14678919 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-139-12-200312160-00009]

159 **Digby JE**, Lee JM, Choudhury RP. Nicotinic acid and the prevention of coronary artery disease. *Curr Opin Lipidol* 2009; **20**: 321-326 [PMID: 19494772 DOI: 10.1097/MOL.0b013e32832d3b9d]

160 **Gerber MT**, Mondy KE, Yarasheski KE, Drechsler H, Claxton S, Stoneman J, DeMarco D, Powderly WG, Tebas P. Niacin in HIV-infected individuals with hyperlipidemia receiving potent antiretroviral therapy. *Clin Infect Dis* 2004; **39**: 419-425 [PMID: 15307011 DOI: 10.1086/422144]

161 **Rader DJ**. Effects of nonstatin lipid drug therapy on high-density lipoprotein metabolism. *Am J Cardiol* 2003; **91**: 18E-23E [PMID: 12679199 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9149(02)03384-2]

162 **Lee JH**, Chan JL, Sourlas E, Raptopoulos V, Mantzoros CS. Recombinant methionyl human leptin therapy in replacement doses improves insulin resistance and metabolic profile in patients with lipoatrophy and metabolic syndrome induced by the highly active antiretroviral therapy. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2006; **91**: 2605-2611 [PMID: 16636130 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2005-1545]

163 **Fredriksen J**, Ueland T, Dyrøy E, Halvorsen B, Melby K, Melbye L, Skalhegg BS, Bohov P, Skorve J, Berge RK, Aukrust P, Frøland SS. Lipid-lowering and anti-inflammatory effects of tetradecylthioacetic acid in HIV-infected patients on highly active antiretroviral therapy. *Eur J Clin Invest* 2004; **34**: 709-715 [PMID: 15473896 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2362.2004.01410.x]

164 **Hadigan C**, Liebau J, Torriani M, Andersen R, Grinspoon S. Improved triglycerides and insulin sensitivity with 3 months of acipimox in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients

with hypertriglyceridemia. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2006; **91**: 4438-4444 [PMID: 16940448 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2006-1174]

165 **Keithley JK**, Swanson B, Sha BE, Zeller JM, Kessler HA, Smith KY. A pilot study of the safety and efficacy of cholestin in treating HIV-related dyslipidemia. *Nutrition* 2002; **18**: 201-204 [PMID: 11844656 DOI: 10.1016/S0899-9007(01)00688-8]

166 **Loignon M**, Toma E. L-Carnitine for the treatment of highly active antiretroviral therapy-related hypertriglyceridemia in HIV-infected adults. *AIDS* 2001; **15**: 1194-1195 [PMID: 11416731]

167 **Haraguchi K**, Takeda S, Kubota Y, Kumamoto H, Tanaka H, Hamasaki T, Baba M, Paintsil E, Cheng YC. From the chemistry of epoxy-sugar nucleosides to the discovery of anti-HIV agent 4'-ethynylstavudine-Festinavir. *Curr Pharm Des* 2013; **19**: 1880-1897 [PMID: 23092278 DOI: 10.2174/1381612811319100011]

168 **Flexner C**, Saag M. The antiretroviral drug pipeline: prospects and implications for future treatment research. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS* 2013; **8**: 572-578 [PMID: 24100879 DOI: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000011]

169 **Vere Hodge RA**. Meeting report: 26th International Conference on Antiviral Research. *Antiviral Res* 2013; **100**: 276-285 [PMID: 23973733 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2013.08.00]

170 **Cahn P**, Altclas J, Martins M, Losso M, Cassetti I, Cooper DA, Cox S. Antiviral activity of apricitabine in treatment-experienced HIV-1-infected patients with M184V who are failing combination therapy. *HIV Med* 2011; **12**: 334-342 [PMID: 21054750 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1293.2010.00887.x]

171 **Cox S**, Moore S, Southby J. Safety profile of apricitabine, a novel NRTI, during 24-week dosing in experienced HIV-1 infected patients. XVII International AIDS Conference (AIDS 2008). Mexico City, 2008: Abstract TUAB0106

172 **Cahn P**, Cassetti I, Wood R, Phanuphak P, Shiveley L, Bethell RC, Sawyer J. Efficacy and tolerability of 10-day monotherapy with apricitabine in antiretroviral-naive, HIV-infected patients. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 1261-1268 [PMID: 16816554 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000232233.41877.63]

173 **Markowitz M**, Zolopa A, Squires K, Ruane P, Coakley D, Kearney B, Zhong L, Wulfsohn M, Miller MD, Lee WA. Phase I/II study of the pharmacokinetics, safety and antiretroviral activity of tenofovir alafenamide, a new prodrug of the HIV reverse transcriptase inhibitor tenofovir, in HIV-infected adults. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2014; **69**: 1362-1369 [PMID: 24508897 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkt532]

174 **Zolopa A**, Ortiz R, Sax P. Comparative study of tenofovir alafenamide vs tenofovir disoproxil fumarate, each with elvitegravir, cobicistat, and emtricitabine, for HIV treatment. In: Abstracts of the Twentieth Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections. Foundation for Retrovirology and Human Health, Alexandria, VA, USA. Atlanta, GA, 2013: Abstract 99LB

175 **Ruane PJ**, DeJesus E, Berger D, Markowitz M, Bredeek UF, Callebaut C, Zhong L, Ramanathan S, Rhee MS, Fordyce MW, Yale K. Antiviral activity, safety, and pharmacokinetics/pharmacodynamics of tenofovir alafenamide as 10-day monotherapy in HIV-1-positive adults. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2013; **63**: 449-455 [PMID: 23807155 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3182965d45]

176 **Ghosh RK**, Ghosh SM, Chawla S. Recent advances in antiretroviral drugs. *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 2011; **12**: 31-46 [PMID: 20698725 DOI: 10.1517/14656566.2010.509345]

177 **Desai M**, Iyer G, Dikshit RK. Antiretroviral drugs: critical issues and recent advances. *Indian J Pharmacol* 2012; **44**: 288-298 [PMID: 22701234 DOI: 10.4103/0253-7613.96296]

178 **Colucci P**, Pottage JC, Robison H, Turgeon J, Ducharme MP. Effect of a single dose of ritonavir on the pharmacokinetic behavior of elvucitabine, a nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor, administered in healthy volunteers. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2009; **53**: 646-650 [PMID: 19015353 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00905-08]

179 **Vingerhoets J**, Azijn H, Fransen E, De Baere I, Smeulders L, Jochmans D, Andries K, Pauwels R, de Béthune MP. TMC125 displays a high genetic barrier to the development of resistance: evidence from in vitro selection experiments. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 12773-12782 [PMID: 16188980 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.20.12773-12782.2005]

180 **Yanakakis LJ**, Bumpus NN. Biotransformation of the antiretroviral drug etravirine: metabolite identification, reaction phenotyping, and characterization of autoinduction of cytochrome P450-dependent metabolism. *Drug Metab Dispos* 2012; **40**: 803-814 [PMID: 22269145 DOI: 10.1124/dmd.111.044404]

181 **Casado JL**, de Los Santos I, Del Palacio M, García-Fraile L, Pérez-Elías MJ, Sanz J, Moreno S. Lipid-lowering effect and efficacy after switching to etravirine in HIV-infected patients with intolerance to suppressive HAART. *HIV Clin Trials* 2013; **14**: 1-9 [PMID: 23372109 DOI: 10.1310/hct1401-1]

182 **Poveda E**, Garrido C, de Mendoza C, Corral A, Cobo J, González-Lahoz J, Soriano V. Prevalence of etravirine (TMC-125) resistance mutations in HIV-infected patients with prior experience of non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2007; **60**: 1409-1410 [PMID: 17913723 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkm372]

183 **Goebel F**, Yakovlev A, Pozniak AL, Vinogradova E, Boogaerts G, Hoetelmans R, de Béthune MP, Peeters M, Woodfall B. Short-term antiviral activity of TMC278--a novel NNRTI--in treatment-naive HIV-1-infected subjects. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 1721-1726 [PMID: 16931936 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000242818.65215.bd]

184 **Tebas P**, Sension M, Arribas J, Duiculescu D, Florence E, Hung CC, Wilkin T, Vanveggel S, Stevens M, Deckx H. Lipid levels and changes in body fat distribution in treatment-naive, HIV-1-Infected adults treated with rilpivirine or Efavirenz for 96 weeks in the ECHO and THRIVE trials. *Clin Infect Dis* 2014; **59**: 425-434 [PMID: 24729492 DOI: 10.1093/cid/ciu234]

185 **Côté B**, Burch JD, Asante-Appiah E, Bayly C, Bédard L, Blouin M, Campeau LC, Cauchon E, Chan M, Chefson A, Coulombe N, Cromlish W, Debnath S, Deschênes D, Dupont-Gaudet K, Falgueyret JP, Forget R, Gagné S, Gauvreau D, Girardin M, Guiral S, Langlois E, Li CS, Nguyen N, Papp R, Plamondon S, Roy A, Roy S, Seliniotakis R, St-Onge M, Ouellet S, Tawa P, Truchon JF, Vacca J, Wrona M, Yan Y, Ducharme Y. Discovery of MK-1439, an orally bioavailable non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor potent against a wide range of resistant mutant HIV viruses. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett* 2014; **24**: 917-922 [PMID: 24412110 DOI: 10.1016/j.bmcl.2013.12.070]

186 **Saag MS**. New and investigational antiretroviral drugs for HIV infection: mechanisms of action and early research findings. *Top Antivir Med* 2012; **20**: 162-167 [PMID: 23363694]

187 **Lai MT**, Feng M, Falgueyret JP, Tawa P, Witmer M, DiStefano D, Li Y, Burch J, Sachs N, Lu M, Cauchon E, Campeau LC, Grobler J, Yan Y, Ducharme Y, Côté B, Asante-Appiah E, Hazuda DJ, Miller MD. In vitro characterization of MK-1439, a novel HIV-1 nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2014; **58**: 1652-1663 [PMID: 24379202 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.02403-13]

188 **Chong H**, Yao X, Zhang C, Cai L, Cui S, Wang Y, He Y. Biophysical property and broad anti-HIV activity of albuvirtide, a 3-maleimimidopropionic acid-modified peptide fusion inhibitor. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e32599 [PMID: 22403678 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0032599]

189 **He Y**, Cheng J, Lu H, Li J, Hu J, Qi Z, Liu Z, Jiang S, Dai Q. Potent HIV fusion inhibitors against Enfuvirtide-resistant HIV-1 strains. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 16332-16337 [PMID: 18852475 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0807335105]

190 **Nathan B**, Bayley J, Waters L, Post FA. Cobicistat: a Novel Pharmacoenhancer for Co-Formulation with HIV Protease and Integrase Inhibitors. *Infect Dis Ther* 2013; **2**: 111-122 [PMID: 25134475 DOI: 10.1007/s40121-013-0013-7]

191 **Lepist EI**, Phan TK, Roy A, Tong L, Maclennan K, Murray B, Ray AS. Cobicistat boosts the intestinal absorption of transport substrates, including HIV protease inhibitors and GS-7340, in vitro. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2012; **56**: 5409-5413 [PMID: 22850510 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01089-12]

192 **Sax PE**, DeJesus E, Mills A, Zolopa A, Cohen C, Wohl D, Gallant JE, Liu HC, Zhong L, Yale K, White K, Kearney BP, Szwarcberg

J, Quirk E, Cheng AK. Co-formulated elvitegravir, cobicistat, emtricitabine, and tenofovir versus co-formulated efavirenz, emtricitabine, and tenofovir for initial treatment of HIV-1 infection: a randomised, double-blind, phase 3 trial, analysis of results after 48 weeks. *Lancet* 2012; **379**: 2439-2448 [PMID: 22748591 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(12)60917-9]

193 **Bar-Magen T**, Sloan RD, Donahue DA, Kuhl BD, Zabeida A, Xu H, Oliveira M, Hazuda DJ, Wainberg MA. Identification of novel mutations responsible for resistance to MK-2048, a second-generation HIV-1 integrase inhibitor. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 9210-9216 [PMID: 20610719 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01164-10]

194 **Bera S**, Pandey KK, Vora AC, Grandgenett DP. HIV-1 integrase strand transfer inhibitors stabilize an integrase-single blunt-ended DNA complex. *J Mol Biol* 2011; **410**: 831-846 [PMID: 21295584 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmb.2011.01.043]

195 **Fader LD**, Malenfant E, Parisien M, Carson R, Bilodeau F, Landry S, Pesant M, Brochu C, Morin S, Chabot C, Halmos T, Bousquet Y, Bailey MD, Kawai SH, Coulombe R, LaPlante S, Jakalian A, Bhardwaj PK, Wernic D, Schroeder P, Amad M, Edwards P, Garneau M, Duan J, Cordingley M, Bethell R, Mason SW, Bös M, Bonneau P, Poupart MA, Faucher AM, Simoneau B, Fenwick C, Yoakim C, Tsantrizos Y. Discovery of BI 224436, a Noncatalytic Site Integrase Inhibitor (NCINI) of HIV-1. *ACS Med Chem Lett* 2014; **5**: 422-427 [PMID: 24900852 DOI: 10.1021/ml500002n]

196 **Fenwick C**, Amad M, Bailey MD, Bethell R, Bös M, Bonneau P, Cordingley M, Coulombe R, Duan J, Edwards P, Fader LD, Faucher AM, Garneau M, Jakalian A, Kawai S, Lamorte L, LaPlante S, Luo L, Mason S, Poupart MA, Rioux N, Schroeder P, Simoneau B, Tremblay S, Tsantrizos Y, Witvrouw M, Yoakim C. Preclinical profile of BI 224436, a novel HIV-1 non-catalytic-site integrase inhibitor. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2014; **58**: 3233-3244 [PMID: 24663024 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.02719-13]

197 **Taha H**, Morgan J, Das A, Das S. Parenteral patent drug S/GSK1265744 has the potential to be an effective agent in pre-exposure prophylaxis against HIV infection. *Recent Pat Antiinfect Drug Discov* 2013; **8**: 213-218 [PMID: 24738551 DOI: 10.2174/1574891X09666140417154727]

198 **Ford SL**, Gould E, Chen S, Lou Y, Dumont E, Spreen W, Piscitelli S. Effects of etravirine on the pharmacokinetics of the integrase inhibitor S/GSK1265744. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2013; **57**: 277-280 [PMID: 23114768 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01685-12]

199 **Loonam CR**, Mullen A. Nutrition and the HIV-associated lipodystrophy syndrome. *Nutr Res Rev* 2012; **25**: 267-287 [PMID: 23174511 DOI: 10.1017/S0954422411000138]

200 **Fields-Gardner C**, Campa A. Position of the American Dietetic Association: Nutrition Intervention and Human Immunodeficiency Virus Infection. *J Am Diet Assoc* 2010; **110**: 1105-1119 [PMID: 20645459 DOI: 10.1016/j.jada.2010.05.020]

201 **Shah M**, Tierney K, Adams-Huet B, Boonyavarakul A, Jacob K, Quittner C, Dinges W, Peterson D, Garg A. The role of diet, exercise and smoking in dyslipidaemia in HIV-infected patients with lipodystrophy. *HIV Med* 2005; **6**: 291-298 [PMID: 16011535 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1293.2005.00309.x]

202 **Hadigan C**, Jeste S, Anderson EJ, Tsay R, Cyr H, Grinspoon S. Modifiable dietary habits and their relation to metabolic abnormalities in men and women with human immunodeficiency virus infection and fat redistribution. *Clin Infect Dis* 2001; **33**: 710-717 [PMID: 11486294 DOI: 10.1086/322680]

203 Executive Summary of The Third Report of The National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, And Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol In Adults (Adult Treatment Panel III). *JAMA* 2001; **285**: 2486-2497 [PMID: 11368702 DOI: 10.1001/jama.285.19.2486]

204 **Grundy SM**, Cleeman JI, Merz CN, Brewer HB, Clark LT, Hunninghake DB, Pasternak RC, Smith SC, Stone NJ. Implications of recent clinical trials for the National Cholesterol Education Program Adult Treatment Panel III guidelines. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2004; **24**: e149-e161 [PMID: 15297292 DOI: 10.1161/01.ATV.0000133317.49796.0E]

205 **Lazzaretti R**. Nutritional intervention protects against the development of dyslipidemia in patients who start HAART: a randomized trial. XIV International AIDS Conference; Toronto, Canada, Aug 13–18, 2006: Abstract 2192713

206 **Schwellenbach LJ**, Olson KL, McConnell KJ, Stolcpart RS, Nash JD, Merenich JA. The triglyceride-lowering effects of a modest dose of docosahexaenoic acid alone versus in combination with low dose eicosapentaenoic acid in patients with coronary artery disease and elevated triglycerides. *J Am Coll Nutr* 2006; **25**: 480-485 [PMID: 17229894 DOI: 10.1080/07315724.2006.10719562]

207 **Elosua R**, Molina L, Fito M, Arquer A, Sanchez-Quesada JL, Covas MI, Ordoñez-Llanos J, Marrugat J. Response of oxidative stress biomarkers to a 16-week aerobic physical activity program, and to acute physical activity, in healthy young men and women. *Atherosclerosis* 2003; **167**: 327-334 [PMID: 12818416 DOI: 10.1016/S0021-9150(03)00018-2]

208 **Wilson IB**, Jacobson DL, Roubenoff R, Spiegelman D, Knox TA, Gorbach SL. Changes in lean body mass and total body weight are weakly associated with physical functioning in patients with HIV infection. *HIV Med* 2002; **3**: 263-270 [PMID: 12444944 DOI: 10.1046/j.1468-1293.2002.00122.x]

209 **Lindegaard B**, Hansen T, Hvid T, van Hall G, Plomgaard P, Ditlevsen S, Gerstoft J, Pedersen BK. The effect of strength and endurance training on insulin sensitivity and fat distribution in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients with lipodystrophy. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2008; **93**: 3860-3869 [PMID: 18628529 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2007-2733]

210 **Roubenoff R**, Wilson IB. Effect of resistance training on self-reported physical functioning in HIV infection. *Med Sci Sports Exerc* 2001; **33**: 1811-1817 [PMID: 11689729 DOI: 10.1097/00005768-200111000-00003]

211 **de Almeida ER**, Reiche EM, Kallaur AP, Flauzino T, Watanabe MA. The roles of genetic polymorphisms and human immunodeficiency virus infection in lipid metabolism. *Biomed Res Int* 2013; **2013**: 836790 [PMID: 24319689 DOI: 10.1155/2013/836790]

212 **Alcaraz LA**, del Alamo M, Barrera FN, Mateu MG, Neira JL. Flexibility in HIV-1 assembly subunits: solution structure of the monomeric C-terminal domain of the capsid protein. *Biophys J* 2007; **93**: 1264-1276 [PMID: 17526561]

213 **Forshey BM**, von Schwedler U, Sundquist WI, Aiken C. Formation of a human immunodeficiency virus type 1 core of optimal stability is crucial for viral replication. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 5667-5677 [PMID: 11991995 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.11.5667-5677.2002]

214 **Perron MJ**, Stremlau M, Song B, Ulm W, Mulligan RC, Sodroski J. TRIM5alpha mediates the postentry block to N-tropic murine leukemia viruses in human cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2004; **101**: 11827-11832 [PMID: 15280539 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0403364101]

215 **Stremlau M**, Owens CM, Perron MJ, Kiessling M, Autissier P, Sodroski J. The cytoplasmic body component TRIM5alpha restricts HIV-1 infection in Old World monkeys. *Nature* 2004; **427**: 848-853 [PMID: 14985764 DOI: 10.1038/nature02343]

216 **Sayah DM**, Sokolskaja E, Berthoux L, Luban J. Cyclophilin A retrotransposition into TRIM5 explains owl monkey resistance to HIV-1. *Nature* 2004; **430**: 569-573 [PMID: 15243629 DOI: 10.1038/nature02777]

217 **Ohkura S**, Yap MW, Sheldon T, Stoye JP. All three variable regions of the TRIM5alpha B30.2 domain can contribute to the specificity of retrovirus restriction. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 8554-8565 [PMID: 16912305 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00688-06]

218 **Nakayama EE**, Shioda T. Role of Human TRIM5α in Intrinsic Immunity. *Front Microbiol* 2012; **3**: 97 [PMID: 22435067 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2012.00097]

219 **Zhang J**, Ge W, Zhan P, De Clercq E, Liu X. Retroviral restriction factors TRIM5α: therapeutic strategy to inhibit HIV-1 replication. *Curr Med Chem* 2011; **18**: 2649-2654 [PMID: 21568899 DOI: 10.2174/092986711795933687]

220 **Jarmuz A**, Chester A, Bayliss J, Gisbourne J, Dunham I, Scott J, Navaratnam N. An anthropoid-specific locus of orphan C to U RNA-editing enzymes on chromosome 22. *Genomics* 2002; **79**: 285-296 [PMID: 11863358 DOI: 10.1006/geno.2002.6718]

221 **Zheng YH**, Irwin D, Kurosu T, Tokunaga K, Sata T, Peterlin BM. Human APOBEC3F is another host factor that blocks human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 6073-6076 [PMID: 15141007 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.11.6073-6076.2004]

222 **Wiegand HL**, Doehle BP, Bogerd HP, Cullen BR. A second human antiretroviral factor, APOBEC3F, is suppressed by the HIV-1 and HIV-2 Vif proteins. *EMBO J* 2004; **23**: 2451-2458 [PMID: 15152192 DOI: 10.1038/sj.emboj.7600246]

223 **Cullen BR**. Role and mechanism of action of the APOBEC3 family of antiretroviral resistance factors. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 1067-1076 [PMID: 16414984 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.80.3.1067-1076.2006]

224 **Ishikawa J**, Kaisho T, Tomizawa H, Lee BO, Kobune Y, Inazawa J, Oritani K, Itoh M, Ochi T, Ishihara K. Molecular cloning and chromosomal mapping of a bone marrow stromal cell surface gene, BST2, that may be involved in pre-B-cell growth. *Genomics* 1995; **26**: 527-534 [PMID: 7607676 DOI: 10.1016/0888-7543(95)80171-H]

225 **Douglas JL**, Gustin JK, Viswanathan K, Mansouri M, Moses AV, Früh K. The great escape: viral strategies to counter BST-2/tetherin. *PLoS Pathog* 2010; **6**: e1000913 [PMID: 20485522 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000913]

226 **Neil SJ**, Zang T, Bieniasz PD. Tetherin inhibits retrovirus release and is antagonized by HIV-1 Vpu. *Nature* 2008; **451**: 425-430 [PMID: 18200009 DOI: 10.1038/nature06553]

227 **Van Damme N**, Goff D, Katsura C, Jorgenson RL, Mitchell R, Johnson MC, Stephens EB, Guatelli J. The interferon-induced protein BST-2 restricts HIV-1 release and is downregulated from the cell surface by the viral Vpu protein. *Cell Host Microbe* 2008; **3**: 245-252 [PMID: 18342597 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2008.03.001]

P- Reviewer: Ayieko J **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.78

World J Virol 2015 May 12; 4(2): 78-95
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Therapeutic and prevention strategies against human enterovirus 71 infection

Chee Choy Kok

Chee Choy Kok, SEALS Microbiology, Level 4, Campus Centre, Prince of Wales Hospital, Randwick 2031 NSW, Australia
Author contributions: Kok CC solely contributed to this paper.
Conflict-of-interest: Kok CC is an employee of SEALS Microbiology. The author declares that there is no conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: Chee Choy Kok, PhD, SEALS Microbiology, Level 4, Campus Centre, Prince of Wales Hospital, Barker Street, Randwick 2031 NSW, Australia. cheechoy.kok@sesiahs.health.nsw.gov.au
Telephone: +61-2-93829197
Fax: +61-2-93829180
Received: October 4, 2014
Peer-review started: October 5, 2014
First decision: October 28, 2014
Revised: November 21, 2014
Accepted: February 9, 2015
Article in press: February 11, 2015
Published online: May 12, 2015

Abstract

Human enterovirus 71 (HEV71) is the cause of hand, foot and mouth disease and associated neurological complications in children under five years of age. There has been an increase in HEV71 epidemic activity throughout the Asia-Pacific region in the past decade, and it is predicted to replace poliovirus as the extant neurotropic enterovirus of highest global public health significance. To date there is no effective antiviral treatment and no vaccine is available to prevent HEV71 infection. The increase in prevalence, virulence and geographic spread of HEV71 infection over the past decade provides increasing incentive for the development of new therapeutic and prevention strategies against this emerging viral infection. The current review focuses on the potential, advantages and disadvantages of these strategies. Since the explosion of outbreaks leading to large epidemics in China, research in natural therapeutic products has identified several groups of compounds with anti-HEV71 activities. Concurrently, the search for effective synthetic antivirals has produced promising results. Other therapeutic strategies including immunotherapy and the use of oligonucleotides have also been explored. A sound prevention strategy is crucial in order to control the spread of HEV71. To this end the ultimate goal is the rapid development, regulatory approval and widespread implementation of a safe and effective vaccine. The various forms of HEV71 vaccine designs are highlighted in this review. Given the rapid progress of research in this area, eradication of the virus is likely to be achieved.

Key words: Human enterovirus 71; Infection; Therapy; Prevention; Drugs; Vaccine

Core tip: This review focuses on therapeutic and prevention strategies for the control of human enterovirus 71 infection. Therapeutic strategies highlighted include natural products, synthetic antivirals, immunotherapy, and the use of olignucleotides. Prevention strategies such as surveillance, physical prevention, and vaccine development form the second part of the review.

Kok CC. Therapeutic and prevention strategies against human enterovirus 71 infection. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(2): 78-95 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i2/78.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.78

INTRODUCTION

Human enterovirus 71 (HEV71) is a member of the human enterovirus A species within the genus *Enterovirus* of the family *Picornaviridae*. It is a positive-stranded RNA virus of approximately 7500 nucleotides. The viral genome contains an open reading frame (ORF) encoding a polyprotein of 2194 amino acids. The ORF is divided into three regions: P1 encodes four structural proteins (VP1-VP4); P2 (2A-2C) and P3 (3A-3D) encode seven non-structural proteins. The ORF is flanked by 5′ and 3′ untranslated regions. A poly-A tail of variable length is covalently attached to the 3′ terminus of the genome[1].

Since its discovery in 1969, HEV71 has been iden tified as the cause of epidemics of hand-foot-and-mouth disease (HFMD) associated with severe neurological complications, including aseptic meningitis, brainstem encephalitis, acute flaccid paralysis and neurogenic pulmonary oedema, in children under five years of age[1]. There has been a large increase in HEV71 epidemic activity throughout the Asia-Pacific region since 1997. A large epidemic occurred in Taiwan in 1998, with 1.3×10^5 cases of HFMD, 405 cases of severe neurological disease and 78 fatalities attributed to HEV71 infection[2-4]. In 1999, a large HFMD outbreak occurred in Perth, Western Australia, with approximately 6×10^3 cases reported and 29 cases of severe neurological disease identified[5]. From 2008 to 2011, circulating HFMD outbreaks occurred throughout mainland China, increasing the annual number of HFMD cases from 488955 (126 deaths) to 1619706 (509 deaths)[6]. In 2010, the largest recorded outbreak of HEV71-associated HFMD occurred in the country, comprising more than 1.7 million cases, including 27000 patients who exhibited severe neurological complications, and 905 deaths[7]. Smaller epidemics have been detected in the United States and European countries, such as Austria, Germany, France, Norway, United Kingdom, Hungary and Greece[8-14].

The reasons for the emergence of HEV71 as a cause of large epidemics of HFMD and acute neurological disease in the Asia-Pacific region remain elusive. Upon successful completion of the WHO-sponsored eradication of poliomyelitis, HEV71 will become the extant neurotropic enterovirus of highest global public health significance. However there are currently no effective clinical therapies or vaccine for HEV71 associated HFMD. Symptoms such as fever, encephalitis and meningitis are eased by supportive medication. In some cases viral infections are treated with broad-spectrum antiviral drugs, including Ribavirin, Ganciclovir, and Acyclovir[15]. These common remedies only partially alleviate the symptoms instead of controlling the infections, and usually come with high cytotoxicity. Although ribavirin has been reported to inhibit virus production *in vivo*, a very high dose is used for treat ment, which may raise safety concerns. Other than symptomatic treatment, intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) is clinically used to neutralise the virus and to non-specifically suppress inflammation. Considering the morbidity and mortality caused by the disease, it is important to develop new specialised drugs and ultimately a safe and effective vaccine for the control of HEV71 infection. This review focuses on the efforts and progress towards development of effective therapeutic and prevention strategies.

THERAPEUTIC STRATEGIES

In recent years, significant amount of effort has been made to develop antiviral drugs for the treatment of HEV71 associated HFMD. Promising candidates have been identified through the screening of natural therapeutic products, repositioning of existing antiviral drugs, as well as the development of new synthetic compounds. Many of these drugs show anti-HEV71 activity *in vitro*, and some have been evaluated in animal models. However, clinical application of these drugs is not yet available.

Natural therapeutic products

Natural therapeutic products have been used in many countries in Asia for centuries, and have gradually been adopted by Western medical treatment and health care[16,17]. The WHO estimates that approximately 80% of the global population still relies on traditional medicine for primary health care[18]. As such, the search for new bioactive molecules in plants is still an active part of pharmaceutical research in many key therapeutic areas, including immunosuppression and infectious disease[19]. Antiviral activities have been identified in several hundred natural compounds worldwide. Compared to synthetic pharmaceutical drugs, an advantage of natural molecules is the exclusion of extra chemical synthesis. This may reduce the cost of production, which is particularly attractive to affected patient population from low income countries.

Most natural therapeutic products work as a mixture, and thus it is difficult to characterise the detailed antiviral mechanisms and to further develop into effective clinical drugs. Up till recently, no single compound has been identified to potently inhibit HEV71. However, during the HFMD outbreaks in China, traditional Chinese medicines have demonstrated therapeutic efficacy by ameliorating the symptoms of the disease and/or shortening the course of the disease[20]. Most of the herbs with reported therapeutic effectiveness have been used traditionally or folklorically for inflammatory and/or infectious diseases. As disease outbreaks become more common in China, a significant increase of research in this area followed. Table 1 compares natural therapeutic products that have been well studied.

Hydrolysable ellagitannins: The most widely published natural molecules in association with HEV71 infection are ellagitannins, from the family of hydrolysable tannins. Ellagitannins are characterised by the presence of one or more hexahydroxydiphenoyl

Table 1 Natural therapeutic products tested for anti-human enterovirus 71 activity

Natural product (Group)	Tested	Possible mechanism	Advantages	Disadvantages	Ref.
Hydrolysable Ellagitannins	*in vitro*/*in vivo*	Inhibit viral absorption/penetration	No obvious side effects	Weak oral activity	[21-30]
Flavonoids	*in vitro*	Inhibit viral RNA/protein synthesis	Low escape mutants	Mechanism not clear	[18,31–35]
Alkaloids	*in vitro*/*in vivo*	Inhibit protein synthesis	No obvious side effects	Mechanism not clear	[36-38]
Deferoxamine	*in vitro*/*in vivo*	Upregulation of B cells	Previous US FDA approval for treatment of iron overload	N/A	[39,40]

N/A: Not available; US FDA : United States Food and Drug Administration.

(HHDP) unit(s) on a glucopyranose core. The HHDP group is biosynthetically formed through intramolecular, oxidative C-C bond formation between neighboring galloyl groups in galloylglucoses[21]. They are easily hydrolysed, either enzymatically or with acid, to liberate a stable ellagic acid as the dilactone form of hexahydroxydiphenic acid. Hydrolysable ellagitannins have previously shown medicinal values and antiviral effects[22-25].

Treatment with hydrolysable ellagitannins such as corilagin[26], geraniin[27], punicalagin[25] and chebulagic acid[28] enhanced the survival of HEV71-infected cells *in vitro* with low cytotoxicity. Further, geraniin, punicalagin and chebulagic acid was shown to greatly prolong the survival time and reduce mortality of HEV71-infected mice. Virus replication in the muscle of treated mice was shown to be significantly inhibited. In general, treatment did not cause any obvious side effects in the mice and full recovery was observed after two weeks. The antiviral mechanism of chebulagic acid against herpes simplex virus-1 (HSV-1) was previously published[22]. It was found to block interactions between cell surface glycosaminoglycans and HSV-1 glycoproteins, and could prevent binding, entry, and cell-to-cell spread, as well as secondary infection. Based on these observations, it is possible that chebulagic acid activity against HEV71 is related to the inhibition of viral absorption and/or entry. Further studies are required to elucidate the anti-HEV71 mechanism of hydrolysable ellagitannins, but results thus far suggest that they constitute a potential source for antiviral discovery, particularly in the field of HEV71 infection. Interestingly another hydrolysable tannin, punicalin, did not demonstrate obvious antiviral efficacy. This prompted the suggestion of key structural requirements for anti-HEV71 activity[28]. Although the *in vitro* antiviral activity of corilagin seemed promising, oral administration of corilagin was not shown to induce significant biological activity[29,30]. On the contrary, intraperitoneally administrated geraniin, punicalagin and chebulagic acid demonstrated good inhibitory effects on HEV71[25,27,28]. This may have been due to the difficulty in the absorption and metabolism of corilagin by intestinal microflora. The incubation of tannins with anaerobic microflora in faeces of animal led to the hydrolysis of the compound into metabolites including gallic acid and ellagic acid[30]. To circumvent this problem, *in vivo* studies using intravenous or intraperitoneal administration may be required.

Flavonoids: Another group of compounds commonly tested for anti-HEV71 activity are the flavonoids. Flavonoids are a broad class of low molecular weight secondary metabolites that are present in all vascular plants. The flavonoid structure is usually characterised by a C6-C3-C6 carbon skeleton[31]. These phenolic compounds are known to be responsible for the bioactivities of plant crude extracts to confer protection against UV radiation, pathogens, and herbivores[32]. Their relatively low toxicity and strong bioactive potential to increase human health prompted many studies in the field of pharmaceutical drug development.

Chrysosplenetin and penduletin[33], 7-hydro xyisoflavone[34], chrysin and its phosphate esther[18], epigenin and its analog luteoline[35], are flavonoids that have all been shown to exhibit *in vitro* anti-HEV71 activity. Experimental evidence indicated that these compounds could inhibit viral RNA and protein synthesis. To understand the mechanism of action, Zhu *et al*[33] attempted to select chrysosplenetin- and penduletin-resistant HEV71 through continuous passage in the presence of the compounds. However, after 13 passages, HEV71 remained sensitive to the compounds. Although the mechanism of action is still unclear, time-of-addition studies suggested that flavonoids function in post virus-attachment, during the early stages of virus infection[33-35].

Alkaloids: Alkaloids have also been shown to possess anti-HEV71 activities. Liu *et al*[36] found that lycorine, one of the most abundant alkaloids of Amaryllidaceae, inhibited HEV71 replication in cultured cells, and lycorine treatment significantly enhanced the survival rate of HEV71-infected mice. Further investigation suggested that the drug inhibits the elongation of viral polyprotein during protein synthesis, and may lead to imbalanced synthesis of viral proteins and interrupted packaging of the virus. Matrine, a quinolizidine alkaloid, is one of the main active components of the root of Chinese *Sophora* herb plants[37]. It proved effective in reducing the mortality rate of HEV71-infected mice[38]. Treatment with matrine delayed the appearance of paralysis, reduced the clinical scores and prevented other symptoms of the infected mice compared with that of the placebo. Virus replication in mouse muscle tissues was significantly decreased and no obvious side effects

Table 2 Synthetic antiviral compounds tested for anti- human enterovirus 71 activity

Synthetic antivirals	Tested	Mechanism	Advantages	Disadvantages	Ref.
Pre-infection					
Pleconaril	*In vivo*	Prevents attachment by binding to viral capsid	High oral availability	Varied capacity of inhibition	[47-49]
BPROZ	*In vitro*	Prevents attachment by binding to viral capsid	High oral availability	Resistant mutants	[49-54]
Soluble and anti-SCARB2/PSGL-1	*In vitro*	Prevents attachment	N/A	N/A	[55-57]
Lactoferrin	*In vitro / in vivo*	Prevents entry by binding to VP1/ cellular receptor	No obvious side effects (animal)	Mechanism not clear	[58-62]
Suramin	*In vitro*	Prevents attachment	May inhibit other multiple stages of HEV71 life cycle	Mechanism not clear	[63]
Peptides (SP40)	*In vitro*	Prevents attachment by binding to glycosaminoglycans	Small size, high activity/specificity, low toxicity	Low bioavailability	[64-66]
Post-infection					
Rupintrivir	*In vitro /in vivo*	Inhibits viral 3C protein	Low quantity, low toxicity, high barrier for drug resistace	Lack efficacy in natural infection	[67,68]
DTrip-22	*In vitro*	Inhibits viral 3D polymerase activity	Broad spectrum activity	N/A	[69]
Aurintricarboxylic acid	*In vitro*	Inhibits viral 3D polymerase activity	N/A	N/A	[76-81]
NITD008	*In vitro / in vivo*	Inhibits viral 3D polymerase activity	More potent than ribavirin in vivo	May have toxicity issue, resistant mutants	[82,83]
Sorafenib	*In vitro*	Block virus induced activation of ERK/p38 signalling pathways	Licensed for cancer treatment	N/A	[84,85]

N/A: Not available.

were observed.

Deferoxamine: Besides plants, marine microorganisms are also a major source for natural products[39]. Deferoxamine (DFO), a marine natural product derived from *Streptomyces pilosus*, was found to compensate for the decreased levels of B cells caused by HEV71 infection in mice, and to improve the levels of the neutralising antibodies against the virus[40]. The clinical symptoms, muscle damage and mortality were ameliorated by DFO treatment. Interestingly DFO did not significantly inhibit viral replication in Rhabdomyosarcoma (RD) cells. In contrast, viral replication in the muscle tissues of DFO-treated mice was slightly inhibited. These results suggested that the possible mechanism of DFO activity against HEV71 in infected mice was through the upregulation of B cells, and not the direct inhibition of HEV71.

Other natural products: Other natural products shown to exhibit antiviral activity against HEV71 include *Glycyrrhiza* spp. and its active component glycyrrhizic acid[20,41], *Fructus gardenia* and its primary component geniposide[42], chlorogenic acid[43], the *Ganoderma lucidum* triterpenoids, Lanosta-7,9(11),24-trien-3-one,15;26-dihydroxy and Ganoderic acid Y[15], and hederasaponin B[44]. Whilst the *in vitro* results of these compounds looked promising, *in vivo* studies were not performed.

Synthetic antiviral compounds

A growing body of literature on synthetic anti-HEV71 drug development has been published in recent years, but most of these drugs are still in the early phase of development and need further optimisation of their pharmacokinetics and absorption, distribution, metabolism, excretion, and toxicity profiles. Ribavirin, a wide spectrum synthetic antiviral, was reported to reduce mortality caused by HEV71 in Institute for Cancer Research (ICR) mice[45]. However, the dosage used was much higher than the clinical recommended dosage prescribed to adults with Hepatitis C Virus (HCV) infection. Given that most HEV71 infections affect children younger than 5 years old, high dose of ribavirin may raise serious safety concerns.

The life cycle of HEV71 generally involves virus attachment, uncoating and entry, polyprotein translation and cleavage, viral RNA replication, and virus assembly. These critical steps are currently considered targets for synthetic antiviral development. Lead compounds that inhibit virus attachment, uncoating and entry are being actively pursued and may be used as potential prophylactic against HEV71, whereas inhibitors of post-infection stages may be suitable for treatment. Both pre- and post-infection inhibitors of HEV71 are discussed in detail below and further summarised in Table 2.

Pre-infection inhibitors: The most widely studied chemical structures amongst capsid binding molecules as antiviral agents for HEV71 are the series of "WIN" compounds[46]. Pleconaril (WIN 61893) was the first of a new generation of metabolically stable capsid

function inhibitors. In a mouse model of infection following intracranial inoculation of enteroviruses, pleconaril reduced viral titres in all affected organs and prevented death in animals. Furthermore, there was high oral bioavailability in humans and other animals[47,48]. However, the HEV71 inhibition capacity of pleconaril could vary for different isolates of the virus. It was nearly ineffective in neutralising HEV71 isolates from the outbreak in Taiwan[49]. Using pleconaril as a template for computational drug design, a Taiwanese group succeeded in discovering a new class of pyridyl imidazolidinones with anti-HEV71 activity. A series of imidazolidinone derivatives, designated BPROZ (*e.g.*, BPROZ-194, BPROZ-103 and BPROZ-074), demonstrated effectiveness against HEV71 infec tion[49-54]. Their therapeutic potential is still under active investigation.

The soluble form of HEV71 receptors, SCARB2 and PSGL-1, has been shown to block virus-host interaction[55,56]. It was proposed that these soluble receptors could act as molecular decoys of cell-associated receptors[57]. Antibodies against these receptors have also been shown to inhibit *in vitro* virus infection[55,56]. However, further studies are required to determine the potential of these molecules as therapeutic antivirals. In their study, Weng *et al*[58] demonstrated that lactoferrin (LF) inhibited HEV71 infection *in vitro* and *in vivo* by binding to the VP1 protein of HEV71, as well as to host cells. The anti-HEV71 mechanism of LF is unclear, but may relate to the prevention of viral entry by blocking cellular receptors and/or by direct binding to the virus particles, as suggested by the above finding. Binding of LF to several different cell ligands such as heparan sulfate, chondroitin sulphate and nucleolin has been reported[59-61]. However, antiviral activity of LF analogues is only partly related to their affinity for heparin sulfate[62]. Although lactoferrin has not been approved for therapeutic purposes, it could be considered an agent for preventing virus entry. Another group of researchers screened a library of compounds and identified suramin as having the ability to inhibit HEV71 proliferation by blocking the attachment of HEV71 to host cells, as well as affect other steps of the HEV71 life cycle[63].

Peptides have also been used as therapeutic agents to block viral attachment or entry into host cells. A major advantage is their small size and their high activity and specificity when compared to antibodies and other larger molecules. Peptides accumulate in lesser quantity in tissues, and have very low cell toxicity when compared to synthetic molecules[64]. A 15-mer peptide spanning from position 118 to 132 in the VP1 capsid region, SP40, exhibited antiviral activity in all three genotypes of HEV71 (genotypes A, B and C), coxsackievirus A16 (CVA16) and poliovirus Mahoney (PV1)[65]. It also reduced viral induced CPE and viral RNA synthesis in Vero, HeLa and HT-29 cell lines in a dose-dependent manner. Data from further research suggested that the SP40 peptide could have interacted with cell surface glycosaminoglycans and prevented HEV71 attachment. A major disadvantage of peptides is their low bioavailability due to their rapid degradation in the gastrointestinal system. To circumvent this issue, new formulations such as the D-isomer peptide[64], addition of N-terminal pyroglutamate and C-terminal homoserine lactone to the peptide, are being developed to improve the resistance to peptidase[66].

Attachment and entry inhibitors stop the virus from entering cells, and therefore may be useful as prophylactic agents. However, a major obstacle of this approach is for it to be cost-effective for resource-limited countries where large outbreaks frequently occur. Furthermore, the effectiveness of the drug itself would be highly dependent on the timing of the treatment provided. It is a challenge to deliver a sufficient amount of the inhibitor to the targeted site early enough to prevent disease progression, or to prevent the spread of infection to others.

Post-infection inhibitors: Various synthetic antiviral compounds were designed to target post-entry stages of the HEV71 life-cycle. The anti-HEV71 activity of rupintrivir, an irreversible peptidomimetic inhibitor of viral 3C protein, has been evaluated in a mouse model[67]. Complete protection against HEV71-induced cell death was observed at low nanomolar concentrations, with very little cell toxicity. Consistent with the symptoms, a significant decline in viral RNA was witnessed in intestine, lung, muscle, brain stem, and cardiac muscle when rupintrivir was administered *in vivo*. Rupintrivir also significantly improved the integrity of limb muscle structure and suppressed the expression of VP1 in infected mouse muscle. Another potential clinical advantage is the high barrier for emergence of drug resistance, as tested by the researchers[67]. However, it is worth noting that a previous clinical trial for rupintrivir for the treatment of human rhinovirus infection was halted due to a lack of efficacy in natural infection studies[68].

Several compounds were found to inhibit the 3D polymerase. DTriP-22, a piperazine-containing pyrazolo [3,4-d] pyrimidine derivative, was shown to inhibit HEV71 RNA accumulation during virus infection, but not IRES-driven translation[69]. It may interfere with 3D activity by obstructing the nucleoside triphosphate entry cavity of 3D polymerase but not by incorporation into the growing RNA chains. This compound is considered novel because most other polymerase inhibitors that exhibit anti-enterovirus activity are nucleoside analogues[70-75]. DTrip-22 has a broad spectrum activity against RNA viruses, including different genotypes of HEV71, coxsackieviruses A and B, and echovirus 9[69]. Aurintricarboxylic acid (ATA), a polyanionic compound originally reported to be an inhibitor for the replication of HIV, HCV and SARS-CoV[76-80], also exhibited the ability to inhibit HEV71 3D polymerase[81]. Results showed that ATA slows down viral RNA synthesis at early stages after a single round of viral replication in HEV71-infected cells. However, ATA did not inhibit the activity of HEV71 viral

2A/3C protease activity. A nucleoside analog, NITD008, has been reported to selectively inhibit viruses within the family *Flaviviridae*[82]. Although NITD008 showed efficacy in a dengue mouse model, it was not further developed due to the adverse findings observed in a preclinical toxicity study[83]. Deng *et al*[83] reported that NITD008 potently inhibits HEV71 in cell culture and in a mouse model, and demonstrated the feasibility that this compound could potentially be developed for HEV71 therapy, if the toxicity issue is resolved. Their data further showed that mutations in viral 3A and 3D polymerase regions could confer resistance against NITD008, suggesting an intimate crosstalk between 3A and 3D during viral replication.

Sorafenib, previously known as BAY 43-9006 and marketed commercially as Nexavar, is a multi-target tyrosine and serine-threonine kinase inhibitor currently used in cancer therapy[84]. A significant reduction of infectious HEV71 titres and viral RNA was observed in infected cells when sorafenib was added 1 and 3 h post-infection. However, no difference was seen compared to non-treated cells when sorafenib was added 2 h pre-infection and during virus adsorption. Experimental data indicated that sorafenib treatment was able to block the HEV71 mediated CPE through blocking of virus induced activation of the ERK and p38 signaling pathways. A previous study has shown that HEV71 infection induced cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2)/prostaglandins (PG) E_2 expression *via* mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPKs) including ERK and p38, and further that inhibition of HEV71-induced COX-2/PGE2 expression may reduce CNS inflammation[85]. Thus it was proposed that sorafenib treatment may alleviate HEV71-induced inflammatory responses[84]. Further *in vivo* studies are required to validate the effectiveness of the drug.

Other therapeutic strategies

Immunoglobulin: A number of animal studies have shown that neutralising antibodies stimulated by immunisation with inactivated virus, virus-like proteins, or VP1 subunit vaccines, are cross-protective against heterologous strains of HEV71 and can passively protect mice and monkeys (see section on vaccine development). Further, studies on patients have indicated that HEV71 infection is cleared by humoral immunity, and clinical trials have shown the presence of neutralising antibodies in the serum of immunised healthy adults and children[86-88]. The significant involvement of neutralising antibody responses in the control of HEV71 infection in humans would render IVIG treatment an ideal complimentary therapeutic agent. In fact since the year 2000, IVIG has been used in China as the last resort for treatment of severe cases of HEV71 infection, with some measure of success[89].

However, treatment of patients with IVIG has its disadvantages. Besides the risk of transmitting human pathogens using pooled human sera, necessitating screening and treatment, it also requires donor availability. Other disadvantages include batch to batch variability, and the presence in the serum of virus specific but non-neutralising antibodies[90]. A phenomenon termed antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE) was recently confirmed in experimental and clinical settings[91,92], in which sub-neutralising concentration of antibodies was evidenced to enhance HEV71 infection in Fc receptor-bearing human monocytes and contributed to exacerbation of HEV71 infection in mice. The wide existence of cross reactivity between enterovirus antibodies may also become the underlying risk for HEV71 ADE infections.

A solution would be to exploit future passive immunotherapy based on monoclonal antibodies (mAb) produced in cell culture. They offer a selective advantage over pooled human sera that are more commonly used in IVIG treatment by reducing the risks mentioned above. Based on the success of a United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved humanised mAb for respiratory syncytial virus infection of the lower respiratory tract[93], a similar approach was taken to develop neutralising anti-HEV71 mAb for the treatment of severe HFMD caused by HEV71[89]. Using previously identified peptides containing amino acids of the VP1 region known to be potent in eliciting neutralising antibody[94,95], a mAb (clone 22A12) with strong neutralising activity against HEV71 in an *in vitro* neutralisation assay was successfully generated. Because clone 22A12 is a murine antibody, further work for the chimerisation and/or humanisation of the antibody is currently underway to reduce human anti-mouse antibody response for therapeutic application. Another group of researchers generated and characterised several mAbs by immunising mice with purified HEV71 virus, strain Henan2[96]. They identified a mAb, clone 4E8, with strong neutralising activity against HEV71 and that specifically reacted with synthetic peptides containing amino acids 240-250 and 250-260 of VP1 by Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay (ELISA) assay. Clone 4E8 partially protected mice against the lethal challenge of HEV71 strain Henan2. Kiener *et al*[90] succeeded in isolating a novel mAb against HEV71 that targets a conformational neutralisation epitope outside of VP1. The mAb 10D3 targets the highly conserved "knob" region of VP3. The protective efficacy of mAb 10D3 was evaluated and verified by an animal challenge experiment using a lethal dose of HEV71. All mice prophylactically treated with mAb 10D3 survived the lethal challenge without showing any disease symptoms.

Several factors have to be considered when using mAbs instead of polyclonal serum. First, due to the antigenic variability of circulating strains, the mAb must cross-neutralise all existing subtypes to be useful. Second, there is a risk of escape mutations, which may be circumvented by administering two or more antiviral mAbs against non-overlapping epitopes. A combination of synergistic mAbs may also reduce the required dosage[97,98].

The use of non-human immunoglobulins in the

treatment of HEV71 infection has also been investigated. Immunoglobulin Y (IgY) antibodies are the predominant serum immunoglobulin in birds, reptiles, and amphibians, and are transferred from serum to egg yolk in the females to confer passive immunity to their embryos and neonates[99]. The potential of orally administered IgY for the prevention and treatment of many pathogens has been widely reported[100-103]. It was found that chicken as bio-factory can produce a higher yield of IgY antibodies compared to the production of IgG in mammals. In HEV71-infected ICR mice, a survival rate of 98.3% was achieved when the challenged mice were given intraperitoneal injection 1 to 3 d post-infection for 3 consecutive days with a purified IgY antibody at neutralisation titre of 128 or more[104]. Oral administration at a higher dose also conferred protection to infected mice. The study suggested that IgY in the form of an egg-yolk-added drink, yolk powder tablet, or capsule, can potentially be used to prevent the early infection of HEV71.

Adoptive transfer of macrophage: The adoptive transfer or activation of macrophages has been used in the immunotherapy of cancer, liver ischemia, reperfusion injury and pneumonia[105-108]. Liu *et al*[109] showed that the adoptive transfer of macrophage cells from adult mice can partly protect young mice from lethal HEV71 infection. The macrophages displayed anti-HEV71 activity *in vitro* and could alleviate the pathology of infected mice, possibly by engulfing the virus directly through phagocytosis. The application of macrophages in antiviral therapy *via* adoptive transfer is a novel proposal. Unlike human macrophage, murine macrophage can be easily obtained either from the peritoneal cavity or grown from bone marrow precursor cells. Technology for the isolation or growth of large scale human macrophage is still unavailable. Future studies using activated macrophage derived from peripheral blood monocytes of adults were proposed.

Interferons: The effectiveness of interferons (IFNs) in the treatment of HEV71 infection has been studied with contradictory findings. Liu *et al*[110] demonstrated that early treatment of HEV71-infected newborn mice with a recombinant murine IFN-α resulted in an increased survival rate. However another study demonstrated that HEV71 $2A^{pro}$ could be an IFN antagonist, because it reduces the expression level of the type I IFN receptor[111], making it questionable whether type I IFN will be active against HEV71 infection. There are about 20 different human type I IFNs identified to date[112]. Although they are highly homologous in amino acid sequence and share the same receptors, the biological effect of each IFN is apparently different. It has been shown that the anti-HEV71 activities of various IFN subtypes differ from each other[113]. Based on their antiviral activities, they can be divided into three subgroups: IFNs with high anti-HEV71 activities at low concentrations, IFNs with moderate anti-HEV71 activity at high concentrations, and IFNs with nearly no antiviral activities. Hung *et al*[114] showed that the $3C^{pro}$ of HEV71 was able to cleave IRF9, a host protein involved in the signaling cascade triggered by type I IFN. They found that HEV71 could be effectively inhibited by a combination of IFN-α and a $3C^{pro}$ inhibitor such as rupintrivir.

All-trans-retinoic-acid: Most HEV71-infected children present with vitamin A (VA) deficiency, which is associated with decreased immunity and more severe pathogenic conditions[115]. It was shown that serum IFN-α levels were markedly reduced and positively related to the lack of VA in HEV71-infected children. The active VA metabolite, all-trans-retinoic acid (ATRA), is the natural ligand for the retinoic acid receptors (RAR). In various *in vitro* systems, ATRA has been shown to regulate the expression of a number of IFN-stimulated genes, including retinoid-induced gene I (RIG-I), a pattern recognition receptor involved in the innate immune response of the host[116-118]. It was proposed that the inhibition of RIG-I-mediated type I IFN responses may contribute to the pathogenesis of HEV71 infection[119]. Chen *et al*[120] demonstrated that ATRA is a potent IFN inducer that effectively inhibits HEV71 and significantly regulates the RIG-I signalling pathway in the human monocytic cell line. They proposed that the antiviral effect of ATRA occurred through a RAR-α pathway, and further suggested that ATRA may directly contribute to anti-HEV71 infection by reinforcing innate immunity.

Oligonucleotides: Previous reports have described the antiviral effects of RNA-based therapeutics, such as siRNA,shRNA and miRNA, targeting the VP1, 3D, 2C genes, or the 3′ UTR of the HEV71 genome, resulting in antiviral activity[121-128]. However, whilst plasmid-derived shRNAs are widely used for laboratory studies, they are not suitable for antiviral therapy. Further, the limitations of RNAs are short half-life and the requirement of a delivery agent that may be toxic to the host. There is currently no approved marketed siRNA drug. On the contrary, the use of antisense oligodeoxynucleotide (ASODN) technology to inhibit pathogen replication has shown promising results. Since the United States FDA approved the first antisense drug, Fomivirsen, for the treatment of cytomegalovirus (CMV) retinitis in 1998, more than 30 types of ASODNs have been evaluated in clinical trials[129].

Unmodified oligonucleotides are highly unstable *in vivo* due to rapid nuclease digestion. In order to circumvent this problem, a number of chemically modified oligonucleotides such as classic phosphorothioate oligonucleotides, phosphorodiamidate morpholino oligomers, locked nucleic acids, and gene-silencing oligonucleotides have been developed[130].

Liu *et al*[131] designed and tested 5 antisense

phosphorothioate oligonucleotides targeting the 5′-terminal conserved sequence found in HEV71 RNA. One of the oligonucleotides, EV5, effectively inhibited HEV71 amplification both *in vitro* and *in vivo* in a sequence-specific and dose-dependent manner. It was also capable of providing effective protection to HEV71-infected mice and inhibited virus replication in the lungs, intestines, muscle, but not brain, of infected mice. Tan *et al*[132] tested 3 octoguanidium dendrimer conjugated-morpholino oligomers (vivo-MOs) that are complementary to the HEV71 IRES (vivo-MO-1 and -2) and 3D polymerase (vivo-MO-3). Vivo-MO-1 and -2 showed significantly reduced plaque numbers, viral RNA copies, and viral capsid expression in RD cells in a dose-dependent manner. In contrast, vivo-MO-3 exhibited less antiviral activity. Both vivo-MO-1 and 2 remained active when administered within 4 h before or 6 h after HEV71 infection. Resistant mutants arose after serial passages in the presence of vivo-MO-1, but not vivo-MO-2. Thus vivo-MO-2 was proposed to be a favourable candidate for further development as an antiviral agent.

PREVENTION STRATEGIES

HEV71 is highly contagious and can be isolated from throat swabs, rectal swabs, and stool specimens of sick children. Virus shedding can persist for nearly 4-5 wk in the respiratory tract and through faeces[133,134]. As a result, HEV71 transmission may occur not only through direct contact with infected people, but also contact with respiratory secretions or faeces of an infected person. The virus can subsequently spread from one person to another through the faecal-oral route by contaminated hands or objects[135], rapidly causing outbreaks. Due to the long periods of viral shedding in children, HEV71 is frequently transmitted in families, kindergartens, and schools[136]. Therefore to successfully control the devastating outcome of HEV71 epidemics, prevention of infection remains the top priority.

Surveillance

Until a vaccine becomes available, the best way to prevent HEV71 infection is through infection control practices such as hand-washing, disinfection and social distancing during epidemics[137]. Early intervention can lessen the spread of the virus. For these actions to be effective, adequate clinical and laboratory surveillance of HEV71 activity and identity in the community is essential to provide early warning of impending epidemics. As such many countries in the Asia-Pacific region, including Japan, Malaysia, Singapore, Taiwan, Vietnam and China, have implemented heightened surveillance for HEV71[138-142]. HFMD has now become a notifiable disease in many countries in the region. However, since other enteroviruses such as CVA8, CVA10, and CVA16 can also cause HFMD, concurrent virological surveillance may provide invaluable molecular epidemiological data to help track the spread of the virus across the region[143]. In some instances surveillance programs have provided information that resulted in early control of HEV71 epidemics and reduced the total number of cases of acute neurological disease[144].

Physical prevention

Transmission of the viruses responsible for HFMD, including HEV71 and CVA16, is mainly through the faecal-oral route. Therefore the first line of defense is to contain the disease causing agent. Infected children are quarantined and non-infected children are also kept from crowds. During the 2000 outbreak in Singapore, spread of viruses was prevalent in child-care centres. One of the measures taken to break the chain of transmission was a 2-wk nationwide closure of preschool centres[145]. However, it was suggested that even though such controls may decrease the peak incidence of disease, the outbreak may be prolonged, and therefore the overall number of cases may not be lowered[143].

Health education plays an important role to inform and educate parents about the virus infection and prevention strategies. It should focus on observance of good personal hygiene, and cleaning and disinfection of premises and articles. Alcohols are widely used as active ingredients in many hand disinfectants. However, their effectiveness is largely dependent on the type and concentration used. A recent study showed that 95% ethanol instead of 70%-95% isopropanol has the most virucidal activity against HEV71, but did not result in complete inactivation of HEV71[146]. Further, high concentration of ethanol may cause skin irritation and a decrease in antibacterial activity. New formulations are needed for routine use to prevent the spread of enteroviruses.

Vaccine development

Similarities between HEV71 and poliovirus in many virological and clinical aspects have strongly suggested that a vaccine strategy, similar to that against poliovirus infection, could be effectively adopted to control HEV71 infection. Because it mainly threatens the children in developing countries, an ideal HEV71 vaccine would have to be inexpensive, safe, convenient to administer, and acceptable to parents. In addition, a successful vaccine strain would also provide cross-protection to different HEV71 genotypes.

Live-attenuated vaccine: Based on the similarities between PV and HEV71, Arita *et al*[147] developed a HEV71 attenuated strain carrying mutations in the 5′-and 3′-untranslated regions and 3D polymerase, based on the temperature-sensitive determinants of poliovirus Sabin 1 vaccine strain. The EV71 (S1-3′) strain, which belongs to HEV71 genotype A, was characterised by attenuated neurovirulence and limited spread of virus. In a subsequent study, cynomolgus monkeys inoculated with EV71 (S1-3′) *via* the intravenous

route had a mild neurological symptom in the form of tremor, but survived lethal challenge by virulent HEV71 (BrCr-TR) without exacerbation of the symptom[148]. The immunised monkey sera demonstrated a broad spectrum of cross-genotype neutralising activity, including genotypes A, B1, B4, C2, and C4. Although EV71 (S1-3′) demonstrated promise as a live attenuated vaccine against HEV71, the vaccine itself was not completely attenuated, as evidenced by mild neurological symptoms and isolation of virus from the spinal cord.

Due to the lack of proof-reading activity by enteroviral 3D polymerase, a high incidence of error leading to random mutations occur during replication. This phenomenon makes it easier for the reversion of mutants to wild-type virus. To overcome this issue, researchers have explored the possibility of replacement or deletion of bigger fragments. Replacement of the PV internal ribosome entry site (IRES), with that of a non-neurotropic human rhinovirus (HRV), was found to stably attenuate PV in animal models[149,150]. In HEV71, it was shown that deletion of stem-loop domain Z within the 3′-untranslated region attenuates the growth of a HEV71-HRV2-IRES chimera in neuroblastoma cells[151]. Another strategy employed to generate stably attenuated vaccine strains is to increase the replication fidelity of the 3D polymerase. Mutations at amino acid positions G64R and S264L in the HEV71 3D polymerase have recently been shown to increase replication fidelity and the genetic stability of the HEV71 genome by greater than ten-fold during growth in cell culture[152]. Further, the HEV71 3D-G64R and 3D-S264L mutant virus populations were attenuated in a mouse model of HEV71 infection[153].

Inactivated vaccine: In response to the Bulgarian outbreak in 1975, a formalin-inactivated HEV71 vaccine was developed, but was not used to control the epidemic[154]. However since then, the value of inactivated vaccine for the effective control of HEV71 has been shown by various researchers. Suckling mice immunised with the adjuvant-carrying formaldehyde-inactivated mouse-adapted HEV71 vaccine were effectively protected from lethal virus challenge and disease[155]. Another experimentally inactivated vaccine produced using the FY-23K-B strain of HEV71 was capable of inducing an immune response and offered protection to rhesus monkeys against future virus attacks[156]. Additionally, passive transfer of serum from formalin-inactivated and heat-inactivated virus vaccine immunised adult mice, could provide protection against HEV71 challenge in neonatal mice[157,158]. The efficacy of this model of maternal vaccination-neonatal challenge is consistent with the results of other similar studies using maternal vaccination to protect offspring from infectious disease[159-162]. Bek *et al*[159] provided the first demonstration of cross-genotype protective efficacy of a candidate HEV71 vaccine which suggested that inactivated vaccines may confer broad protection against HEV71 infection. On the other hand, another study showed that HEV71 type specificity of neutralisation was unidirectional[163]. The antisera used against newly emerging subgenogroups could cross-neutralise their ancestor subgenogroups, but not vice versa. Chen *et al*[164] demonstrated that co-immunisation of a formaldehyde-inactivated HEV71 vaccine with a commercial pentavalent vaccine that contained inactivated polio vaccine, did not interfere in antibody production nor protective efficacy of the HEV71 vaccine. This indicates that the two vaccines are compatible after co-immunisation, and that formaldehyde-inactivated HEV71 vaccine may be used in designing multivalent vaccines.

Due to their inability to replicate, inactivated HEV71 vaccines are favoured over the live attenuated vaccines for safety reasons. However, the manufacturing costs of inactivated vaccines and potential supply problems cause substantial difficulties in practical implementation, particularly in developing countries. Further, viruses are sensitive to chemical treatment and neutralising epitopes could be destroyed during inactivation, as it is reported in formalin inactivated C4D HEV71 vaccine strain[165]. Nevertheless, research and development of HEV71 inactivated vaccines have progressed further than the other types of HEV71 vaccines, with some currently in phase III clinical trial[166].

Subunit vaccine: Like all enterovirus the antigenic diversity of HEV71 is caused by variations within capsid proteins VP1, VP2 and VP3, but the VP1 protein displays a number of important neutralising epitopes[157,167,168]. Key neutralising antibody determinants have been found in the N-terminal half of VP1 when tested with high titre human neutralising antibodies[169,170]. The potential safety advantage of subunit vaccines over conventional whole virus vaccines has prompted researchers to query whether the VP1 subunit of HEV71 is sufficient to provoke adequate protective immunity against viral infection. Different delivery systems have been tested for their suitability in expressing the VP1 and to stimulate immune response. They include recombinant VP1 protein expressed in *Escherichia coli* BL21[157], recombinant Newcastle disease virus capsid displaying VP1[171], and VP1 expressed in yeast *Pischia pastoris*[172]. All induced high levels of neutralising antibodies.

The mucosal immune system serves as the first line of defense against HEV71 as it initiates disease following implantation in the gut mucosa[173]. Thus an oral vaccine for immunisation against HEV71 has its advantages over injected vaccines. Oral subunit vaccines stimulate production of mucosal antibodies more effectively than is the usual case with injected vaccines[174]. Oral administration is also widely accepted in children who need a HEV71 vaccine. The use of attenuated Salmonella as a vector for the VP1 subunit demonstrated the advantages of oral vaccine vectors[175].

Yu *et al*[176] showed that VP1-expressing *Bifidobacterium longum*, a gastrointestinal probiotic, can confer protection from the mother to neonatal mice, suggesting the potential of this recombinant *B. longum* as an oral vaccine against HEV71 infection. Transgenic plants and animals are possible alternatives to prokaryotic and eukaryotic vectors. They offer a palatable oral delivery system that can elicit a good mucosal immune response as well as systemic humoral and cellular immune responses, making it particularly suitable for protecting against infectious agents intruding *via* the mucosal surface[177,178]. In one study, transgenic tomato fruit expressing the VP1 subunit was developed as a free-feeding oral vaccine[179]. Serum from immunised mice was able to neutralise the infection of HEV71 in RD cells. In another study, the bovine α-lactalbumin promoter and αS1-casein signal peptide sequence were fused with the VP1 cDNA to generate transgenic mice with mammary gland-specific VP1 expression[180]. Expression of the HEV71 VP1 capsid protein was shown to be highly specific to the mammary gland and was secreted in the milk of transgenic mice, reaching satisfactory expression level for oral vaccine development and is much higher than that achieved in bacterial or transgenic plant system[157,158,179,181,182].

Gastric acid and enzymatic digestion are major concerns for oral vaccines because they may interfere with vaccine conformation and absorption. Moreover, it is difficult to determine the precise dose of antigens for immunisation, since competition with food and microbial antigens interferes with the absorption rate of vaccine components. Many strategies have been employed to improve oral vaccine delivery, including the use of tissue-specific promoters, mucosal immune adjuvant, liposomes, and N-trimethyl chitosan nanoparticles[173,174]. New strategies are necessary to achieve a high level of expression of VP1 protein in the correct antigen conformation. If these prototypes can be refined to yield similar immunogenicity levels as inactivated vaccines, they could become strong preventive options.

Synthetic peptide: Epitope-based vaccination using synthetic peptides is another area under intense investigation for the delivery of precise vaccine components to the immune system. A series of overlapping synthetic peptides spanning the VP1 capsid protein of HEV71 was used to immunise BALB/c mice in order to identify neutralising linear epitopes[94]. Peptides containing amino acids 163–177 and 208–222 of the VP1 were capable of eliciting neutralising antibodies against HEV71. Additionally, mouse antisera raised against the peptide 208-222, designated SP70, demonstrated *in vivo* passive protective efficacy in BALB/c mice[183]. Hydrophobic profile assays showed that this highly conserved sequence is located within the major hydrophilic regions and is expected to be exposed at the surface of the protein, hence making it a promising and attractive candidate for synthetic peptide-based HEV71 vaccine[94]. Further, the amino acid sequence represented by SP70 was totally conserved amongst 25 HEV71 strains from subgenogroups A, B1-B5 and C1-C4, which suggested possible cross-protection against infectivity of all HEV71 strains. A different delivery approach for the synthetic peptide was explored using adenovirus (Ad) vectors[184]. Compared to the recombinant GST-fused SP70 protein, immunisation with the Ads containing SP70 elicited higher SP70-specific IgG titres, higher neutralisation titres, and conferred more effective protection to neonatal mice.

Nevertheless, mouse antisera raised against HEV71 whole virions provide higher *in vivo* passive protection to suckling mice against lethal HEV71 challenge when compared with the anti-SP70 antisera, possibly due to higher titres of neutralising antibodies elicited by several neutralising epitopes located on the virus other than that represented by the synthetic peptide SP70 alone. Further, the short epitopes can easily change to avoid antibody mediated neutralisation. To circumvent this issue, 6 peptides without cross-reactivity were selected and combined into three vaccine candidates and applied in further evaluation in neonatal mice[185]. The Vac6 comprising the peptides of P70–159, P140–249, P324–443 and P746–876 of the structural proteins could provide effective protection on pups against virus infection.

Virus-like particles: Another method of vaccine development is the construction of virus-like particles (VLPs). The baculovirus expression system is the most widely used platform for generating VLPs. To assemble the HEV71 VLPs, the P1 polyprotein needs to be cleaved by viral protease 3CD into individual structural proteins. Hu *et al*[186] developed VLPs by co-expressing the P1 and 3CD regions of HEV71 in the pFastBac™ Dual vector, which contains two strong baculovirus promoters, polyhedron (PPH) and p10 (Pp10). The P1 region was controlled by a strong baculovirus promoter, PPH, whilst the protease 3CD was controlled by weak promoters such as CMV promoter or baculovirus IE1 promoter. The expressed 3CD successfully cleaved P1 *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Also, the co-infection in insect cells resulted in crystalline virus-like particle structures morphologically resembling the authentic HEV71 aggregates. A patent for these recombinant baculoviruses has been applied for in Taiwan, the United States and mainland China[166].

In a study using monkeys, Lin *et al*[187] found that VLPs and formalin-inactivated vaccines generated comparable amount of HEV71-binding antibodies measured by ELISA, and induced memory T and B cell responses. However, monkeys immunised with inactivated HEV71 virus showed relatively greater neutralisation titre, proliferation, and cytokine production than those immunised with VLPs. This may be partially due to the conformation difference between VLPs and viral particles, which was not detected under the

Table 3 Comparison of human enterovirus 71 vaccine strategies

Vaccines	Tested	Advantages	Disadvantages	Ref.
Live-attenuated vaccine	*In vitro / in vivo*	Broad spectrum, low cost	Incomplete attenuation	[143-149]
Inactivated vaccine	*In vitro / in vivo / clinical trial*	Inability to replicate	High cost	[150-162]
Subunit vaccine	*In vitro / in vivo*	Safe to use	Low immunogenicity	[153,154,163-178]
Synthetic peptides	*In vitro / in vivo*	Small and safe to use	Low immunogenicity, escape mutants	[94,179-181]
Virus-like particles	*In vitro / in vivo*	Safe to use	Unstable, need purification, high cost	[162,182-185]
DNA vaccine	*In vitro / in vivo*	Most resemble native virus, fast production, low cost, can be manipulated	Low neutralising effect	[153,186-190]

assays performed. Even though immunisation with VLPs has less of a response than inactivated vaccine, nevertheless they provide a safer method for preventing viral infection with regards to clinical treatment.

The main problem associated with VLPs is their stability, purification and cost. At present, the VLPs are mostly developed using insect cells and the strict culture conditions limit the required large scale of vaccine production. Thus, transgenic plants or yeast that can produce VLPs to be delivered by either oral administration or injection may prove to be promising platforms. Recently Li *et al*[188] coexpressed the P1 and 3CD regions in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* to yield VLPs. The *S. cerevisiae* system is a low cost platform and it is easy to scale-up production. As a eukaryotic expression system, it benefits from the processes of protein expression, folding, and modification, which are lacking in prokaryotic expression systems. Compared to the insect cell expression systems, the use of stable yeast transformants avoid the generation of initial large quantities of recombinant baculoviruses. In laboratory conditions, however, the yield of *S. cerevisiae*-derived VLPs was not sufficient for clinical use. However the use of fermentation engineering and automation control, which have been used for the production of other types of VLPs[189], may overcome this issue. The patent for *S. cerevisiae* production of VLPs has been applied for in China[166].

DNA vaccine: DNA immunisation offers many advantages over the traditional forms of vaccination. It is able to induce the expression of antigens that resemble native viral epitopes more closely than standard vaccines do, since live attenuated and inactivated vaccines are often altered in their protein structure and antigenicity. Plasmid vectors can be constructed and produced quickly, at relatively lower cost, and the coding sequence can be manipulated in many ways. Further, DNA vaccines encoding several antigens or proteins can be delivered to the host in a single dose at low quantity to induce immune responses. They are also very temperature stable making storage and transport much easier.

Tung *et al*[190] developed a HEV71 DNA vaccine by inserting the VP1 gene into a eukaryotic expression vector and evaluated the immune response in mice. They showed that whilst anti-VP1 IgG level was increased in immunised mice, the level declined after boosting immunisation. Further, although the anti-VP1 IgG exhibited neutralising activity against HEV71, the neutralising effect of the sera of mice immunised with the VP1 DNA vaccine was much lower than that of HEV71-infected human serum. Another DNA vaccine was developed by inserting the entire VP1 gene into plasmid pcDNA3[157]. Intramuscular administration elicited a high and stable level of neutralisation titre in both ICR and BALB/c mice, which could be detected post-immunisation. However, it induced a weaker immune stimulation compared to whole virus particles.

Various strategies to increase the immune stimulation ability of DNA vaccines have been explored. Amongst these are the incorporation of immunostimulatory sequences in the backbone of the plasmid, co-expression of stimulatory molecules, use of localisation/secretory signals, and an appropriate delivery system, as well as adjuvants and optimisation of transgene expression[191-194]. While therapeutic and prophylactic DNA vaccine clinical trials are underway for a variety of infectious diseases and cancers, the scientific basis of DNA vaccines has yet to be clearly defined. If DNA vaccines pass all scientific and regulatory scrutiny, they promise to be products of the next generation. A comparison of DNA vaccine with other vaccine strategies is shown in Table 3.

CONCLUSION

During the past decade, HFMD and associated neurological complications caused by HEV71 infection have resulted in the loss of many paediatric lives in the Asia-Pacific region. Whilst a significant amount of research have been published in the field of HEV71 antivirals and vaccine development lately, an effective therapeutic and/or prevention strategy is still elusive. Various groups of natural compounds have demonstrated anti-HEV71 activities. However more work is needed to characterise the detailed antiviral mechanisms and to further develop into effective clinical drugs. The use of synthetic antiviral compounds in clinical setting has been hampered by potential adverse effects to the host and emergence of drug resistance mutants. New strategies such as computer-aided drug

design, screening of licensed drugs against HEV71 infection, and combination therapy targeting different replication steps of HEV71, may play an important role in antiviral drug development.

The recent identification of HEV71 receptors SCARB2 and PSGL-1 will enable the development of humanised transgenic mice for testing of antivirals and vaccines. Vaccine candidates in the form of inactivated HEV71 have progressed into clinical trials and look most promising. However, the unit cost of inactivated HEV71 vaccines is likely to be high, restricting their usefulness in resource-limited countries in Southeast Asia. By contrast, self-propagating live attenuated vaccines can be produced at much lower unit cost and are thus likely to be more cost-effective for use in vaccine prevention programs in developing countries and in regional and global control strategies. However, in order for this potential to be realised, it will be necessary to design a HEV71 vaccine in which attenuation is fully defined and which possesses a demonstrably higher stability and safety profile than the oral polio vaccine. Together with a good surveillance program, these strategies will hopefully lead to the containment and eradication of HEV71.

REFERENCES

1 **McMinn PC**. An overview of the evolution of enterovirus 71 and its clinical and public health significance. *FEMS Microbiol Rev* 2002; **26**: 91-107 [PMID: 12007645]

2 **Hsiung GD**, Wang JR. Enterovirus infections with special reference to enterovirus 71. *J Microbiol Immunol Infect* 2000; **33**: 1-8 [PMID: 10806956]

3 **Liao HT**, Hung KL. Neurologic involvement in an outbreak of enterovirus 71 infection: a hospital-based study. *Acta Paediatr Taiwan* 2001; **42**: 27-32 [PMID: 11270182]

4 **Liu CC**, Tseng HW, Wang SM, Wang JR, Su IJ. An outbreak of enterovirus 71 infection in Taiwan, 1998: epidemiologic and clinical manifestations. *J Clin Virol* 2000; **17**: 23-30 [PMID: 10814935]

5 **McMinn P**, Stratov I, Nagarajan L, Davis S. Neurological manifestations of enterovirus 71 infection in children during an outbreak of hand, foot, and mouth disease in Western Australia. *Clin Infect Dis* 2001; **32**: 236-242 [PMID: 11170913 DOI: 10.1086/318454]

6 **Yip CC**, Lau SK, Woo PC, Yuen KY. Human enterovirus 71 epidemics: what's next? *Emerg Health Threats J* 2013; **6**: 19780 [PMID: 24119538 DOI: 10.3402/ehtj.v6i0.19780]

7 **Zeng M**, El Khatib NF, Tu S, Ren P, Xu S, Zhu Q, Mo X, Pu D, Wang X, Altmeyer R. Seroepidemiology of Enterovirus 71 infection prior to the 2011 season in children in Shanghai. *J Clin Virol* 2012; **53**: 285-289 [PMID: 22265829 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2011.12.025]

8 **Bible JM**, Iturriza-Gomara M, Megson B, Brown D, Pantelidis P, Earl P, Bendig J, Tong CY. Molecular epidemiology of human enterovirus 71 in the United Kingdom from 1998 to 2006. *J Clin Microbiol* 2008; **46**: 3192-3200 [PMID: 18650362 DOI: 10.1128/jcm.00628-08]

9 **Fowlkes AL**, Honarmand S, Glaser C, Yagi S, Schnurr D, Oberste MS, Anderson L, Pallansch MA, Khetsuriani N. Enterovirus-associated encephalitis in the California encephalitis project, 1998-2005. *J Infect Dis* 2008; **198**: 1685-1691 [PMID: 18959496 DOI: 10.1086/592988]

10 **Kapusinszky B**, Szomor KN, Farkas A, Takács M, Berencsi G. Detection of non-polio enteroviruses in Hungary 2000-2008 and molecular epidemiology of enterovirus 71, coxsackievirus A16, and echovirus 30. *Virus Genes* 2010; **40**: 163-173 [PMID: 20044791 DOI: 10.1007/s11262-009-0440-4]

11 **Mirand A**, Schuffenecker I, Henquell C, Billaud G, Jugie G, Falcon D, Mahul A, Archimbaud C, Terletskaia-Ladwig E, Diedrich S, Huemer HP, Enders M, Lina B, Peigue-Lafeuille H, Bailly JL. Phylogenetic evidence for a recent spread of two populations of human enterovirus 71 in European countries. *J Gen Virol* 2010; **91**: 2263-2277 [PMID: 20505012 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.021741-0]

12 **Siafakas N**, Attilakos A, Vourli S, Stefos E, Meletiadis J, Nikolaidou P, Zerva L. Molecular detection and identification of enteroviruses in children admitted to a university hospital in Greece. *Mol Cell Probes* 2011; **25**: 249-254 [PMID: 21803150 DOI: 10.1016/j.mcp.2011.06.001]

13 **van der Sanden S**, Koopmans M, Uslu G, van der Avoort H. Epidemiology of enterovirus 71 in the Netherlands, 1963 to 2008. *J Clin Microbiol* 2009; **47**: 2826-2833 [PMID: 19625480 DOI: 10.1128/jcm.00507-09]

14 **Witsø E**, Palacios G, Rønningen KS, Cinek O, Janowitz D, Rewers M, Grinde B, Lipkin WI. Asymptomatic circulation of HEV71 in Norway. *Virus Res* 2007; **123**: 19-29 [PMID: 16965832 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2006.07.015]

15 **Zhang W**, Tao J, Yang X, Yang Z, Zhang L, Liu H, Wu K, Wu J. Antiviral effects of two Ganoderma lucidum triterpenoids against enterovirus 71 infection. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2014; **449**: 307-312 [PMID: 24845570 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2014.05.019]

16 **Li T**, Peng T. Traditional Chinese herbal medicine as a source of molecules with antiviral activity. *Antiviral Res* 2013; **97**: 1-9 [PMID: 23153834 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2012.10.006]

17 **Zhu YP**, Woerdenbag HJ. Traditional Chinese herbal medicine. *Pharm World Sci* 1995; **17**: 103-112 [PMID: 7581215]

18 **Wang J**, Zhang T, Du J, Cui S, Yang F, Jin Q. Anti-enterovirus 71 effects of chrysin and its phosphate ester. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e89668 [PMID: 24598537 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0089668]

19 **Newman DJ**, Cragg GM. Natural products as sources of new drugs over the 30 years from 1981 to 2010. *J Nat Prod* 2012; **75**: 311-335 [PMID: 22316239 DOI: 10.1021/np200906s]

20 **Wang J**, Chen X, Wang W, Zhang Y, Yang Z, Jin Y, Ge HM, Li E, Yang G. Glycyrrhizic acid as the antiviral component of Glycyrrhiza uralensis Fisch. against coxsackievirus A16 and enterovirus 71 of hand foot and mouth disease. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2013; **147**: 114-121 [PMID: 23454684 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2013.02.017]

21 **Yoshida T**, Amakura Y, Yoshimura M. Structural features and biological properties of ellagitannins in some plant families of the order Myrtales. *Int J Mol Sci* 2010; **11**: 79-106 [PMID: 20162003 DOI: 10.3390/ijms11010079]

22 **Lin LT**, Chen TY, Chung CY, Noyce RS, Grindley TB, McCormick C, Lin TC, Wang GH, Lin CC, Richardson CD. Hydrolyzable tannins (chebulagic acid and punicalagin) target viral glycoprotein-glycosaminoglycan interactions to inhibit herpes simplex virus 1 entry and cell-to-cell spread. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 4386-4398 [PMID: 21307190 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.01492-10]

23 **Lin LT**, Chen TY, Lin SC, Chung CY, Lin TC, Wang GH, Anderson R, Lin CC, Richardson CD. Broad-spectrum antiviral activity of chebulagic acid and punicalagin against viruses that use glycosaminoglycans for entry. *BMC Microbiol* 2013; **13**: 187 [PMID: 23924316 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2180-13-187]

24 **Satomi H**, Umemura K, Ueno A, Hatano T, Okuda T, Noro T. Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors from the pericarps of Punica granatum L. *Biol Pharm Bull* 1993; **16**: 787-790 [PMID: 8220326]

25 **Yang Y**, Xiu J, Zhang L, Qin C, Liu J. Antiviral activity of punicalagin toward human enterovirus 71 in vitro and in vivo. *Phytomedicine* 2012; **20**: 67-70 [PMID: 23146421 DOI: 10.1016/j.phymed.2012.08.012]

26 **Yeo SG**, Song JH, Hong EH, Lee BR, Kwon YS, Chang SY, Kim SH, Lee SW, Park JH, Ko HJ. Antiviral effects of Phyllanthus urinaria containing corilagin against human enterovirus 71 and Coxsackievirus A16 in vitro. *Arch Pharm Res* 2015; **38**: 193-202 [PMID: 24752860 DOI: 10.1007/s12272-014-0390-9]

27 **Yang Y**, Zhang L, Fan X, Qin C, Liu J. Antiviral effect of geraniin

on human enterovirus 71 in vitro and in vivo. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett* 2012; **22**: 2209-2211 [PMID: 22342145 DOI: 10.1016/j.bmcl.2012.01.102]

28 **Yang Y**, Xiu J, Liu J, Zhang L, Li X, Xu Y, Qin C, Zhang L. Chebulagic Acid, a Hydrolyzable Tannin, Exhibited Antiviral Activity in Vitro and in Vivo against Human Enterovirus 71. *Int J Mol Sci* 2013; **14**: 9618-9627 [PMID: 23644889 DOI: 10.3390/ijms14059618]

29 **Park JH**, Joo HS, Yoo KY, Shin BN, Kim IH, Lee CH, Choi JH, Byun K, Lee B, Lim SS, Kim MJ, Won MH. Extract from Terminalia chebula seeds protect against experimental ischemic neuronal damage via maintaining SODs and BDNF levels. *Neurochem Res* 2011; **36**: 2043-2050 [PMID: 21667226 DOI: 10.1007/s11064-011-0528-9]

30 **Shiota S**, Shimizu M, Sugiyama J, Morita Y, Mizushima T, Tsuchiya T. Mechanisms of action of corilagin and tellimagrandin I that remarkably potentiate the activity of beta-lactams against methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. *Microbiol Immunol* 2004; **48**: 67-73 [PMID: 14734860]

31 **Harborne JB**, Williams CA. Advances in flavonoid research since 1992. *Phytochemistry* 2000; **55**: 481-504 [PMID: 11130659]

32 **Heim KE**, Tagliaferro AR, Bobilya DJ. Flavonoid antioxidants: chemistry, metabolism and structure-activity relationships. *J Nutr Biochem* 2002; **13**: 572-584 [PMID: 12550068]

33 **Zhu QC**, Wang Y, Liu YP, Zhang RQ, Li X, Su WH, Long F, Luo XD, Peng T. Inhibition of enterovirus 71 replication by chrysosplenetin and penduletin. *Eur J Pharm Sci* 2011; **44**: 392-398 [PMID: 21914477 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejps.2011.08.030]

34 **Wang HQ**, Meng S, Li ZR, Peng ZG, Han YX, Guo SS, Cui XL, Li YH, Jiang JD. The antiviral effect of 7-hydroxyisoflavone against Enterovirus 71 in vitro. *J Asian Nat Prod Res* 2013; **15**: 382-389 [PMID: 23464760 DOI: 10.1080/10286020.2013.770737]

35 **Lv X**, Qiu M, Chen D, Zheng N, Jin Y, Wu Z. Apigenin inhibits enterovirus 71 replication through suppressing viral IRES activity and modulating cellular JNK pathway. *Antiviral Res* 2014; **109**: 30-41 [PMID: 24971492 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2014.06.004]

36 **Liu J**, Yang Y, Xu Y, Ma C, Qin C, Zhang L. Lycorine reduces mortality of human enterovirus 71-infected mice by inhibiting virus replication. *Virol J* 2011; **8**: 483 [PMID: 22029605 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422x-8-483]

37 **Chen ZF**, Mao L, Liu LM, Liu YC, Peng Y, Hong X, Wang HH, Liu HG, Liang H. Potential new inorganic antitumour agents from combining the anticancer traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) matrine with Ga(III), Au(III), Sn(IV) ions, and DNA binding studies. *J Inorg Biochem* 2011; **105**: 171-180 [PMID: 21194615 DOI: 10.1016/j.jinorgbio.2010.10.007]

38 **Yang Y**, Xiu J, Zhang X, Zhang L, Yan K, Qin C, Liu J. Antiviral effect of matrine against human enterovirus 71. *Molecules* 2012; **17**: 10370-10376 [PMID: 22932217 DOI: 10.3390/molecules170910370]

39 **Xiong ZQ**, Wang JF, Hao YY, Wang Y. Recent advances in the discovery and development of marine microbial natural products. *Mar Drugs* 2013; **11**: 700-717 [PMID: 23528949 DOI: 10.3390/md11030700]

40 **Yang Y**, Ma J, Xiu J, Bai L, Guan F, Zhang L, Liu J, Zhang L. Deferoxamine compensates for decreases in B cell counts and reduces mortality in enterovirus 71-infected mice. *Mar Drugs* 2014; **12**: 4086-4095 [PMID: 25003792 DOI: 10.3390/md12074086]

41 **Kuo KK**, Chang JS, Wang KC, Chiang LC. Water extract of Glycyrrhiza uralensis inhibited enterovirus 71 in a human foreskin fibroblast cell line. *Am J Chin Med* 2009; **37**: 383-394 [PMID: 19507280 DOI: 10.1142/s0192415x09006904]

42 **Lin YJ**, Lai CC, Lai CH, Sue SC, Lin CW, Hung CH, Lin TH, Hsu WY, Huang SM, Hung YL, Tien N, Liu X, Chen CL, Tsai FJ. Inhibition of enterovirus 71 infections and viral IRES activity by Fructus gardeniae and geniposide. *Eur J Med Chem* 2013; **62**: 206-213 [PMID: 23353754 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejmech.2012.12.038]

43 **Li X**, Liu Y, Hou X, Peng H, Zhang L, Jiang Q, Shi M, Ji Y, Wang Y, Shi W. Chlorogenic acid inhibits the replication and viability of enterovirus 71 in vitro. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e76007 [PMID: 24098754 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0076007]

44 **Song J**, Yeo SG, Hong EH, Lee BR, Kim JW, Kim J, Jeong H, Kwon Y, Kim H, Lee S, Park JH, Ko HJ. Antiviral Activity of Hederasaponin B from Hedera helix against Enterovirus 71 Subgenotypes C3 and C4a. *Biomol Ther (Seoul)* 2014; **22**: 41-46 [PMID: 24596620 DOI: 10.4062/biomolther.2013.108]

45 **Li ZH**, Li CM, Ling P, Shen FH, Chen SH, Liu CC, Yu CK, Chen SH. Ribavirin reduces mortality in enterovirus 71-infected mice by decreasing viral replication. *J Infect Dis* 2008; **197**: 854-857 [PMID: 18279075 DOI: 10.1086/527326]

46 **Shang L**, Xu M, Yin Z. Antiviral drug discovery for the treatment of enterovirus 71 infections. *Antiviral Res* 2013; **97**: 183-194 [PMID: 23261847 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2012.12.005]

47 **De Palma AM**, Vliegen I, De Clercq E, Neyts J. Selective inhibitors of picornavirus replication. *Med Res Rev* 2008; **28**: 823-884 [PMID: 18381747 DOI: 10.1002/med.20125]

48 **Pevear DC**, Tull TM, Seipel ME, Groarke JM. Activity of pleconaril against enteroviruses. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1999; **43**: 2109-2115 [PMID: 10471549]

49 **Shia KS**, Li WT, Chang CM, Hsu MC, Chern JH, Leong MK, Tseng SN, Lee CC, Lee YC, Chen SJ, Peng KC, Tseng HY, Chang YL, Tai CL, Shih SR. Design, synthesis, and structure-activity relationship of pyridyl imidazolidinones: a novel class of potent and selective human enterovirus 71 inhibitors. *J Med Chem* 2002; **45**: 1644-1655 [PMID: 11931618]

50 **Chang CS**, Lin YT, Shih SR, Lee CC, Lee YC, Tai CL, Tseng SN, Chern JH. Design, synthesis, and antipicornavirus activity of 1-[5-(4-arylphenoxy)alkyl]-3-pyridin-4-ylimidazolidin-2-one derivatives. *J Med Chem* 2005; **48**: 3522-3535 [PMID: 15887961 DOI: 10.1021/jm050033v]

51 **Chen TC**, Liu SC, Huang PN, Chang HY, Chern JH, Shih SR. Antiviral activity of pyridyl imidazolidinones against enterovirus 71 variants. *J Biomed Sci* 2008; **15**: 291-300 [PMID: 18196474 DOI: 10.1007/s11373-007-9228-5]

52 **Chern JH**, Shia KS, Hsu TA, Tai CL, Lee CC, Lee YC, Chang CS, Tseng SN, Shih SR. Design, synthesis, and structure-activity relationships of pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidines: a novel class of potent enterovirus inhibitors. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett* 2004; **14**: 2519-2525 [PMID: 15109643 DOI: 10.1016/j.bmcl.2004.02.092]

53 **Shih SR**, Chen SJ, Hakimelahi GH, Liu HJ, Tseng CT, Shia KS. Selective human enterovirus and rhinovirus inhibitors: An overview of capsid-binding and protease-inhibiting molecules. *Med Res Rev* 2004; **24**: 449-474 [PMID: 15170592 DOI: 10.1002/med.10067]

54 **Shih SR**, Tsai MC, Tseng SN, Won KF, Shia KS, Li WT, Chern JH, Chen GW, Lee CC, Lee YC, Peng KC, Chao YS. Mutation in enterovirus 71 capsid protein VP1 confers resistance to the inhibitory effects of pyridyl imidazolidinone. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2004; **48**: 3523-3529 [PMID: 15328120 DOI: 10.1128/aac.48.9.3523-3529.2004]

55 **Nishimura Y**, Shimojima M, Tano Y, Miyamura T, Wakita T, Shimizu H. Human P-selectin glycoprotein ligand-1 is a functional receptor for enterovirus 71. *Nat Med* 2009; **15**: 794-797 [PMID: 19543284 DOI: 10.1038/nm.1961]

56 **Yamayoshi S**, Yamashita Y, Li J, Hanagata N, Minowa T, Takemura T, Koike S. Scavenger receptor B2 is a cellular receptor for enterovirus 71. *Nat Med* 2009; **15**: 798-801 [PMID: 19543282 DOI: 10.1038/nm.1992]

57 **Tan CW**, Lai JK, Sam IC, Chan YF. Recent developments in antiviral agents against enterovirus 71 infection. *J Biomed Sci* 2014; **21**: 14 [PMID: 24521134 DOI: 10.1186/1423-0127-21-14]

58 **Weng TY**, Chen LC, Shyu HW, Chen SH, Wang JR, Yu CK, Lei HY, Yeh TM. Lactoferrin inhibits enterovirus 71 infection by binding to VP1 protein and host cells. *Antiviral Res* 2005; **67**: 31-37 [PMID: 15916817 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2005.03.005]

59 **Legrand D**, Vigié K, Said EA, Elass E, Masson M, Slomianny MC, Carpentier M, Briand JP, Mazurier J, Hovanessian AG. Surface nucleolin participates in both the binding and endocytosis of lactoferrin in target cells. *Eur J Biochem* 2004; **271**: 303-317 [PMID: 14717698]

60 **Marchetti M**, Trybala E, Superti F, Johansson M, Bergström T. Inhibition of herpes simplex virus infection by lactoferrin is dependent on interference with the virus binding to glycosaminoglycans. *Virology* 2004; **318**: 405-413 [PMID: 14972565 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2003.09.029]

61 **van der Strate BW**, Beljaars L, Molema G, Harmsen MC, Meijer DK. Antiviral activities of lactoferrin. *Antiviral Res* 2001; **52**: 225-239 [PMID: 11675140]

62 **Jenssen H**, Andersen JH, Uhlin-Hansen L, Gutteberg TJ, Rekdal Ø. Anti-HSV activity of lactoferricin analogues is only partly related to their affinity for heparan sulfate. *Antiviral Res* 2004; **61**: 101-109 [PMID: 14670583]

63 **Wang Y**, Qing J, Sun Y, Rao Z. Suramin inhibits EV71 infection. *Antiviral Res* 2014; **103**: 1-6 [PMID: 24374150 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2013.12.008]

64 **Huther A**, Dietrich U. The emergence of peptides as therapeutic drugs for the inhibition of HIV-1. *AIDS Rev* 2007; **9**: 208-217 [PMID: 18219364]

65 **Tan CW**, Chan YF, Sim KM, Tan EL, Poh CL. Inhibition of enterovirus 71 (EV-71) infections by a novel antiviral peptide derived from EV-71 capsid protein VP1. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e34589 [PMID: 22563456 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0034589]

66 **Kajiwara K**, Watanabe K, Tokiwa R, Kurose T, Ohno H, Tsutsumi H, Hata Y, Izumi K, Kodama E, Matsuoka M, Oishi S, Fujii N. Bioorganic synthesis of a recombinant HIV-1 fusion inhibitor, SC35EK, with an N-terminal pyroglutamate capping group. *Bioorg Med Chem* 2009; **17**: 7964-7970 [PMID: 19864148 DOI: 10.1016/j.bmc.2009.10.017]

67 **Zhang X**, Song Z, Qin B, Zhang X, Chen L, Hu Y, Yuan Z. Rupintrivir is a promising candidate for treating severe cases of enterovirus-71 infection: evaluation of antiviral efficacy in a murine infection model. *Antiviral Res* 2013; **97**: 264-269 [PMID: 23295352 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2012.12.029]

68 **Park KS**, Choi YJ, Park JS. Enterovirus infection in Korean children and anti-enteroviral potential candidate agents. *Korean J Pediatr* 2012; **55**: 359-366 [PMID: 23133481 DOI: 10.3345/kjp.2012.55.10.359]

69 **Chen TC**, Chang HY, Lin PF, Chern JH, Hsu JT, Chang CY, Shih SR. Novel antiviral agent DTriP-22 targets RNA-dependent RNA polymerase of enterovirus 71. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2009; **53**: 2740-2747 [PMID: 19414569 DOI: 10.1128/aac.00101-09]

70 **Chen TC**, Weng KF, Chang SC, Lin JY, Huang PN, Shih SR. Development of antiviral agents for enteroviruses. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2008; **62**: 1169-1173 [PMID: 18931391 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkn424]

71 **De Palma AM**, Pürstinger G, Wimmer E, Patick AK, Andries K, Rombaut B, De Clercq E, Neyts J. Potential use of antiviral agents in polio eradication. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2008; **14**: 545-551 [PMID: 18394270 DOI: 10.3201/eid1404.070439]

72 **Goris N**, De Palma A, Toussaint JF, Musch I, Neyts J, De Clercq K. 2'-C-methylcytidine as a potent and selective inhibitor of the replication of foot-and-mouth disease virus. *Antiviral Res* 2007; **73**: 161-168 [PMID: 17055073 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2006.09.007]

73 **Graci JD**, Too K, Smidansky ED, Edathil JP, Barr EW, Harki DA, Galarraga JE, Bollinger JM, Peterson BR, Loakes D, Brown DM, Cameron CE. Lethal mutagenesis of picornaviruses with N-6-modified purine nucleoside analogues. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2008; **52**: 971-979 [PMID: 18180344 DOI: 10.1128/aac.01056-07]

74 **Harki DA**, Graci JD, Galarraga JE, Chain WJ, Cameron CE, Peterson BR. Synthesis and antiviral activity of 5-substituted cytidine analogues: identification of a potent inhibitor of viral RNA-dependent RNA polymerases. *J Med Chem* 2006; **49**: 6166-6169 [PMID: 17034123 DOI: 10.1021/jm060872x]

75 **Kishimoto C**, Crumpacker CS, Abelmann WH. Ribavirin treatment of murine coxsackievirus B3 myocarditis with analyses of lymphocyte subsets. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1988; **12**: 1334-1341 [PMID: 2844874]

76 **Chen Y**, Bopda-Waffo A, Basu A, Krishnan R, Silberstein E, Taylor DR, Talele TT, Arora P, Kaushik-Basu N. Characterization of aurintricarboxylic acid as a potent hepatitis C virus replicase inhibitor. *Antivir Chem Chemother* 2009; **20**: 19-36 [PMID: 19794229 DOI: 10.3851/imp1286]

77 **De Clercq E**. Potential antivirals and antiviral strategies against SARS coronavirus infections. *Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther* 2006; **4**: 291-302 [PMID: 16597209 DOI: 10.1586/14787210.4.2.291]

78 **Santhosh KC**, Paul GC, De Clercq E, Pannecouque C, Witvrouw M, Loftus TL, Turpin JA, Buckheit RW, Cushman M. Correlation of anti-HIV activity with anion spacing in a series of cosalane analogues with extended polycarboxylate pharmacophores. *J Med Chem* 2001; **44**: 703-714 [PMID: 11262081]

79 **Witvrouw M**, Fikkert V, Pluymers W, Matthews B, Mardel K, Schols D, Raff J, Debyser Z, De Clercq E, Holan G, Pannecouque C. Polyanionic (i.e., polysulfonate) dendrimers can inhibit the replication of human immunodeficiency virus by interfering with both virus adsorption and later steps (reverse transcriptase/integrase) in the virus replicative cycle. *Mol Pharmacol* 2000; **58**: 1100-1108 [PMID: 11040059]

80 **Yap Y**, Zhang X, Andonov A, He R. Structural analysis of inhibition mechanisms of aurintricarboxylic acid on SARS-CoV polymerase and other proteins. *Comput Biol Chem* 2005; **29**: 212-219 [PMID: 15979041 DOI: 10.1016/j.compbiolchem.2005.04.006]

81 **Hung HC**, Chen TC, Fang MY, Yen KJ, Shih SR, Hsu JT, Tseng CP. Inhibition of enterovirus 71 replication and the viral 3D polymerase by aurintricarboxylic acid. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2010; **65**: 676-683 [PMID: 20089540 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkp502]

82 **Yin Z**, Chen YL, Schul W, Wang QY, Gu F, Duraiswamy J, Kondreddi RR, Niyomrattanakit P, Lakshminarayana SB, Goh A, Xu HY, Liu W, Liu B, Lim JY, Ng CY, Qing M, Lim CC, Yip A, Wang G, Chan WL, Tan HP, Lin K, Zhang B, Zou G, Bernard KA, Garrett C, Beltz K, Dong M, Weaver M, He H, Pichota A, Dartois V, Keller TH, Shi PY. An adenosine nucleoside inhibitor of dengue virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 20435-20439 [PMID: 19918064 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0907010106]

83 **Deng CL**, Yeo H, Ye HQ, Liu SQ, Shang BD, Gong P, Alonso S, Shi PY, Zhang B. Inhibition of enterovirus 71 by adenosine analog NITD008. *J Virol* 2014; **88**: 11915-11923 [PMID: 25100827 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.01207-14]

84 **Gao M**, Duan H, Liu J, Zhang H, Wang X, Zhu M, Guo J, Zhao Z, Meng L, Peng Y. The multi-targeted kinase inhibitor sorafenib inhibits enterovirus 71 replication by regulating IRES-dependent translation of viral proteins. *Antiviral Res* 2014; **106**: 80-85 [PMID: 24680956 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2014.03.009]

85 **Tung WH**, Hsieh HL, Yang CM. Enterovirus 71 induces COX-2 expression via MAPKs, NF-kappaB, and AP-1 in SK-N-SH cells: Role of PGE(2) in viral replication. *Cell Signal* 2010; **22**: 234-246 [PMID: 19800403 DOI: 10.1016/j.cellsig.2009.09.018]

86 **Li YP**, Liang ZL, Gao Q, Huang LR, Mao QY, Wen SQ, Liu Y, Yin WD, Li RC, Wang JZ. Safety and immunogenicity of a novel human Enterovirus 71 (EV71) vaccine: a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind, Phase I clinical trial. *Vaccine* 2012; **30**: 3295-3303 [PMID: 22426327 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2012.03.010]

87 **Lin YW**, Chang KC, Kao CM, Chang SP, Tung YY, Chen SH. Lymphocyte and antibody responses reduce enterovirus 71 lethality in mice by decreasing tissue viral loads. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 6477-6483 [PMID: 19386699 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.00434-09]

88 **Meng FY**, Li JX, Li XL, Chu K, Zhang YT, Ji H, Li L, Liang ZL, Zhu FC. Tolerability and immunogenicity of an inactivated enterovirus 71 vaccine in Chinese healthy adults and children: an open label, phase 1 clinical trial. *Hum Vaccin Immunother* 2012; **8**: 668-674 [PMID: 22634437 DOI: 10.4161/hv.19521]

89 **Li X**, Mao C, Ma S, Wang X, Sun Z, Yi Y, Guo M, Shen X, Sun L, Bi S. Generation of neutralizing monoclonal antibodies against Enterovirus 71 using synthetic peptides. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2009; **390**: 1126-1128 [PMID: 19799860 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2009.09.103]

90 **Kiener TK**, Jia Q, Meng T, Chow VT, Kwang J. A novel universal neutralizing monoclonal antibody against enterovirus 71 that targets the highly conserved "knob" region of VP3 protein. *PLoS*

Negl Trop Dis 2014; **8**: e2895 [PMID: 24875055 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pntd.0002895]

91 **Han JF**, Cao RY, Deng YQ, Tian X, Jiang T, Qin ED, Qin CF. Antibody dependent enhancement infection of enterovirus 71 in vitro and in vivo. *Virol J* 2011; **8**: 106 [PMID: 21385398 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422x-8-106]

92 **Wang SM**, Chen IC, Su LY, Huang KJ, Lei HY, Liu CC. Enterovirus 71 infection of monocytes with antibody-dependent enhancement. *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 2010; **17**: 1517-1523 [PMID: 20685937 DOI: 10.1128/cvi.00108-10]

93 Palivizumab, a humanized respiratory syncytial virus monoclonal antibody, reduces hospitalization from respiratory syncytial virus infection in high-risk infants. The IMpact-RSV Study Group. *Pediatrics* 1998; **102**: 531-537 [PMID: 9738173]

94 **Foo DG**, Alonso S, Phoon MC, Ramachandran NP, Chow VT, Poh CL. Identification of neutralizing linear epitopes from the VP1 capsid protein of Enterovirus 71 using synthetic peptides. *Virus Res* 2007; **125**: 61-68 [PMID: 17222936 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2006.12.005]

95 **Lal SK**, Kumar P, Yeo WM, Kar-Roy A, Chow VT. The VP1 protein of human enterovirus 71 self-associates via an interaction domain spanning amino acids 66-297. *J Med Virol* 2006; **78**: 582-590 [PMID: 16555287 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.20579]

96 **Chang GH**, Luo YJ, Wu XY, Si BY, Lin L, Zhu QY. Monoclonal antibody induced with inactived EV71-Hn2 virus protects mice against lethal EV71-Hn2 virus infection. *Virol J* 2010; **7**: 106 [PMID: 20500892 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422x-7-106]

97 **Prabakaran M**, Prabhu N, He F, Hongliang Q, Ho HT, Qiang J, Meng T, Goutama M, Kwang J. Combination therapy using chimeric monoclonal antibodies protects mice from lethal H5N1 infection and prevents formation of escape mutants. *PLoS One* 2009; **4**: e5672 [PMID: 19478856 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0005672]

98 **ter Meulen J**, van den Brink EN, Poon LL, Marissen WE, Leung CS, Cox F, Cheung CY, Bakker AQ, Bogaards JA, van Deventer E, Preiser W, Doerr HW, Chow VT, de Kruif J, Peiris JS, Goudsmit J. Human monoclonal antibody combination against SARS coronavirus: synergy and coverage of escape mutants. *PLoS Med* 2006; **3**: e237 [PMID: 16796401 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.0030237]

99 **Leslie GA**, Clem LW. Phylogen of immunoglobulin structure and function. 3. Immunoglobulins of the chicken. *J Exp Med* 1969; **130**: 1337-1352 [PMID: 5352783]

100 **Amaral JA**, Tino De Franco M, Carneiro-Sampaio MM, Carbonare SB. Anti-enteropathogenic Escherichia coli immunoglobulin Y isolated from eggs laid by immunised Leghorn chickens. *Res Vet Sci* 2002; **72**: 229-234 [PMID: 12076119 DOI: 10.1053/rvsc.2002.0551]

101 **Kweon CH**, Kwon BJ, Woo SR, Kim JM, Woo GH, Son DH, Hur W, Lee YS. Immunoprophylactic effect of chicken egg yolk immunoglobulin (Ig Y) against porcine epidemic diarrhea virus (PEDV) in piglets. *J Vet Med Sci* 2000; **62**: 961-964 [PMID: 11039591]

102 **Shin JH**, Yang M, Nam SW, Kim JT, Myung NH, Bang WG, Roe IH. Use of egg yolk-derived immunoglobulin as an alternative to antibiotic treatment for control of Helicobacter pylori infection. *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 2002; **9**: 1061-1066 [PMID: 12204960]

103 **Yokoyama H**, Umeda K, Peralta RC, Hashi T, Icatlo FC, Kuroki M, Ikemori Y, Kodama Y. Oral passive immunization against experimental salmonellosis in mice using chicken egg yolk antibodies specific for Salmonella enteritidis and S. typhimurium. *Vaccine* 1998; **16**: 388-393 [PMID: 9607060]

104 **Liou JF**, Chang CW, Tailiu JJ, Yu CK, Lei HY, Chen LR, Tai C. Passive protection effect of chicken egg yolk immunoglobulins on enterovirus 71 infected mice. *Vaccine* 2010; **28**: 8189-8196 [PMID: 20937321 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2010.09.089]

105 **Andreesen R**, Hennemann B, Krause SW. Adoptive immunotherapy of cancer using monocyte-derived macrophages: rationale, current status, and perspectives. *J Leukoc Biol* 1998; **64**: 419-426 [PMID: 9766621]

106 **Hart ML**, Mosier DA, Chapes SK. Toll-like receptor 4-positive macrophages protect mice from Pasteurella pneumotropica-induced pneumonia. *Infect Immun* 2003; **71**: 663-670 [PMID: 12540543]

107 **Ke B**, Shen XD, Gao F, Ji H, Qiao B, Zhai Y, Farmer DG, Busuttil RW, Kupiec-Weglinski JW. Adoptive transfer of ex vivo HO-1 modified bone marrow-derived macrophages prevents liver ischemia and reperfusion injury. *Mol Ther* 2010; **18**: 1019-1025 [PMID: 20029397 DOI: 10.1038/mt.2009.285]

108 **Lang PA**, Recher M, Honke N, Scheu S, Borkens S, Gailus N, Krings C, Meryk A, Kulawik A, Cervantes-Barragan L, Van Rooijen N, Kalinke U, Ludewig B, Hengartner H, Harris N, Häussinger D, Ohashi PS, Zinkernagel RM, Lang KS. Tissue macrophages suppress viral replication and prevent severe immunopathology in an interferon-I-dependent manner in mice. *Hepatology* 2010; **52**: 25-32 [PMID: 20578253 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23640]

109 **Liu J**, Li X, Fan X, Ma C, Qin C, Zhang L. Adoptive transfer of macrophages from adult mice reduces mortality in mice infected with human enterovirus 71. *Arch Virol* 2013; **158**: 387-397 [PMID: 23065110 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-012-1495-4]

110 **Liu ML**, Lee YP, Wang YF, Lei HY, Liu CC, Wang SM, Su IJ, Wang JR, Yeh TM, Chen SH, Yu CK. Type I interferons protect mice against enterovirus 71 infection. *J Gen Virol* 2005; **86**: 3263-3269 [PMID: 16298971 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.81195-0]

111 **Lu J**, Yi L, Zhao J, Yu J, Chen Y, Lin MC, Kung HF, He ML. Enterovirus 71 disrupts interferon signaling by reducing the level of interferon receptor 1. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 3767-3776 [PMID: 22258259 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.06687-11]

112 **Jaks E**, Gavutis M, Uzé G, Martal J, Piehler J. Differential receptor subunit affinities of type I interferons govern differential signal activation. *J Mol Biol* 2007; **366**: 525-539 [PMID: 17174979 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmb.2006.11.053]

113 **Yi L**, Lu J, Kung HF, He ML. The virology and developments toward control of human enterovirus 71. *Crit Rev Microbiol* 2011; **37**: 313-327 [PMID: 21651436 DOI: 10.3109/1040841x.2011.580723]

114 **Hung HC**, Wang HC, Shih SR, Teng IF, Tseng CP, Hsu JT. Synergistic inhibition of enterovirus 71 replication by interferon and rupintrivir. *J Infect Dis* 2011; **203**: 1784-1790 [PMID: 21536800 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jir174]

115 **Chen S**, Yang Y, Yan X, Chen J, Yu H, Wang W. Influence of vitamin A status on the antiviral immunity of children with hand, foot and mouth disease. *Clin Nutr* 2012; **31**: 543-548 [PMID: 22197454 DOI: 10.1016/j.clnu.2011.12.005]

116 **Dimberg A**, Nilsson K, Oberg F. Phosphorylation-deficient Stat1 inhibits retinoic acid-induced differentiation and cell cycle arrest in U-937 monoblasts. *Blood* 2000; **96**: 2870-2878 [PMID: 11023524]

117 **Luo XM**, Ross AC. Physiological and receptor-selective retinoids modulate interferon gamma signaling by increasing the expression, nuclear localization, and functional activity of interferon regulatory factor-1. *J Biol Chem* 2005; **280**: 36228-36236 [PMID: 16085646 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M505749200]

118 **Soye KJ**, Trottier C, Richardson CD, Ward BJ, Miller WH. RIG-I is required for the inhibition of measles virus by retinoids. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e22323 [PMID: 21811588 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0022323]

119 **Lei X**, Liu X, Ma Y, Sun Z, Yang Y, Jin Q, He B, Wang J. The 3C protein of enterovirus 71 inhibits retinoid acid-inducible gene I-mediated interferon regulatory factor 3 activation and type I interferon responses. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 8051-8061 [PMID: 20519382 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.02491-09]

120 **Chen S**, Yang Y, Xu J, Su L, Wang W. Effect of all-trans-retinoic acid on enterovirus 71 infection in vitro. *Br J Nutr* 2014; **111**: 1586-1593 [PMID: 24495389 DOI: 10.1017/s0007114513004133]

121 **Lu WW**, Hsu YY, Yang JY, Kung SH. Selective inhibition of enterovirus 71 replication by short hairpin RNAs. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2004; **325**: 494-499 [PMID: 15530419 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2004.10.062]

122 **Sim AC**, Luhur A, Tan TM, Chow VT, Poh CL. RNA interference against enterovirus 71 infection. *Virology* 2005; **341**: 72-79 [PMID: 16083932 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2005.06.047]

123 **Tan EL**, Tan TM, Chow VT, Poh CL. Enhanced potency and

efficacy of 29-mer shRNAs in inhibition of Enterovirus 71. *Antiviral Res* 2007; **74**: 9-15 [PMID: 17316836 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2007.01.004]

124 **Tan EL**, Tan TM, Tak Kwong Chow V, Poh CL. Inhibition of enterovirus 71 in virus-infected mice by RNA interference. *Mol Ther* 2007; **15**: 1931-1938 [PMID: 17712333 DOI: 10.1038/sj.mt.6300287]

125 **Li Y**, Xie J, Xu X, Wang J, Ao F, Wan Y, Zhu Y. MicroRNA-548 down-regulates host antiviral response via direct targeting of IFN-λ1. *Protein Cell* 2013; **4**: 130-141 [PMID: 23150165 DOI: 10.1007/s13238-012-2081-y]

126 **Wen BP**, Dai HJ, Yang YH, Zhuang Y, Sheng R. MicroRNA-23b inhibits enterovirus 71 replication through downregulation of EV71 VPl protein. *Intervirology* 2013; **56**: 195-200 [PMID: 23594713 DOI: 10.1159/000348504]

127 **Zheng Z**, Ke X, Wang M, He S, Li Q, Zheng C, Zhang Z, Liu Y, Wang H. Human microRNA hsa-miR-296-5p suppresses enterovirus 71 replication by targeting the viral genome. *J Virol* 2013; **87**: 5645-5656 [PMID: 23468506 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.02655-12]

128 **Zhang L**, Chen X, Shi Y, Zhou B, Du C, Liu Y, Han S, Yin J, Peng B, He X, Liu W. miR-27a suppresses EV71 replication by directly targeting EGFR. *Virus Genes* 2014; **49**: 373-382 [PMID: 25212431 DOI: 10.1007/s11262-014-1114-4]

129 **Rayburn ER**, Zhang R. Antisense, RNAi, and gene silencing strategies for therapy: mission possible or impossible? *Drug Discov Today* 2008; **13**: 513-521 [PMID: 18549978 DOI: 10.1016/j.drudis.2008.03.014]

130 **Jones D**. The long march of antisense. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2011; **10**: 401-402 [PMID: 21629279 DOI: 10.1038/nrd3474]

131 **Liu J**, Zhou Z, Li K, Han M, Yang J, Wang S. In vitro and in vivo protection against enterovirus 71 by an antisense phosphorothioate oligonucleotide. *Arch Virol* 2014; **159**: 2339-2347 [PMID: 24756344 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-014-2054-y]

132 **Tan CW**, Chan YF, Quah YW, Poh CL. Inhibition of enterovirus 71 infection by antisense octaguanidinium dendrimer-conjugated morpholino oligomers. *Antiviral Res* 2014; **107**: 35-41 [PMID: 24769243 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2014.04.004]

133 **Chung PW**, Huang YC, Chang LY, Lin TY, Ning HC. Duration of enterovirus shedding in stool. *J Microbiol Immunol Infect* 2001; **34**: 167-170 [PMID: 11605806]

134 **Han J**, Ma XJ, Wan JF, Liu YH, Han YL, Chen C, Tian C, Gao C, Wang M, Dong XP. Long persistence of EV71 specific nucleotides in respiratory and feces samples of the patients with Hand-Foot-Mouth Disease after recovery. *BMC Infect Dis* 2010; **10**: 178 [PMID: 20565813 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-10-178]

135 **Chang LY**. Enterovirus 71 in Taiwan. *Pediatr Neonatol* 2008; **49**: 103-112 [PMID: 19054914 DOI: 10.1016/s1875-9572(08)60023-6]

136 **Chang LY**, King CC, Hsu KH, Ning HC, Tsao KC, Li CC, Huang YC, Shih SR, Chiou ST, Chen PY, Chang HJ, Lin TY. Risk factors of enterovirus 71 infection and associated hand, foot, and mouth disease/herpangina in children during an epidemic in Taiwan. *Pediatrics* 2002; **109**: e88 [PMID: 12042582]

137 **Bek EJ**, McMinn PC. The Pathogenesis and Prevention of Encephalitis due to Human Enterovirus 71. *Curr Infect Dis Rep* 2012; **14**: 397-407 [PMID: 22639066 DOI: 10.1007/s11908-012-0267-3]

138 **Ang LW**, Koh BK, Chan KP, Chua LT, James L, Goh KT. Epidemiology and control of hand, foot and mouth disease in Singapore, 2001-2007. *Ann Acad Med Singapore* 2009; **38**: 106-112 [PMID: 19271036]

139 **Chen KT**, Chang HL, Wang ST, Cheng YT, Yang JY. Epidemiologic features of hand-foot-mouth disease and herpangina caused by enterovirus 71 in Taiwan, 1998-2005. *Pediatrics* 2007; **120**: e244-e252 [PMID: 17671037 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2006-3331]

140 **Mizuta K**, Abiko C, Murata T, Matsuzaki Y, Itagaki T, Sanjoh K, Sakamoto M, Hongo S, Murayama S, Hayasaka K. Frequent importation of enterovirus 71 from surrounding countries into the local community of Yamagata, Japan, between 1998 and 2003. *J Clin Microbiol* 2005; **43**: 6171-6175 [PMID: 16333123 DOI: 10.1128/jcm.43.12.6171-6175.2005]

141 **Podin Y**, Gias EL, Ong F, Leong YW, Yee SF, Yusof MA, Perera D, Teo B, Wee TY, Yao SC, Yao SK, Kiyu A, Arif MT, Cardosa MJ. Sentinel surveillance for human enterovirus 71 in Sarawak, Malaysia: lessons from the first 7 years. *BMC Public Health* 2006; **6**: 180 [PMID: 16827926 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-6-180]

142 **Yu SC**, Hao YT, Zhang J, Xiao GX, Liu Z, Zhu Q, Ma JQ, Wang Y. Using interrupted time series design to analyze changes in hand, foot, and mouth disease incidence during the declining incidence periods of 2008-2010 in China. *Biomed Environ Sci* 2012; **25**: 645-652 [PMID: 23228834 DOI: 10.3967/0895-3988.2012.06.006]

143 **Solomon T**, Lewthwaite P, Perera D, Cardosa MJ, McMinn P, Ooi MH. Virology, epidemiology, pathogenesis, and control of enterovirus 71. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2010; **10**: 778-790 [PMID: 20961813 DOI: 10.1016/s1473-3099(10)70194-8]

144 **Wu TN**, Tsai SF, Li SF, Lee TF, Huang TM, Wang ML, Hsu KH, Shen CY. Sentinel surveillance for enterovirus 71, Taiwan, 1998. *Emerg Infect Dis* 1999; **5**: 458-460 [PMID: 10341187 DOI: 10.3201/eid0503.990321]

145 **Chan KP**, Goh KT, Chong CY, Teo ES, Lau G, Ling AE. Epidemic hand, foot and mouth disease caused by human enterovirus 71, Singapore. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2003; **9**: 78-85 [PMID: 12533285 DOI: 10.3201/eid0901.020112]

146 **Chang SC**, Li WC, Huang KY, Huang YC, Chiu CH, Chen CJ, Hsieh YC, Kuo CY, Shih SR, Lin TY. Efficacy of alcohols and alcohol-based hand disinfectants against human enterovirus 71. *J Hosp Infect* 2013; **83**: 288-293 [PMID: 23399482 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhin.2012.12.010]

147 **Arita M**, Shimizu H, Nagata N, Ami Y, Suzaki Y, Sata T, Iwasaki T, Miyamura T. Temperature-sensitive mutants of enterovirus 71 show attenuation in cynomolgus monkeys. *J Gen Virol* 2005; **86**: 1391-1401 [PMID: 15831951 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.80784-0]

148 **Arita M**, Nagata N, Iwata N, Ami Y, Suzaki Y, Mizuta K, Iwasaki T, Sata T, Wakita T, Shimizu H. An attenuated strain of enterovirus 71 belonging to genotype a showed a broad spectrum of antigenicity with attenuated neurovirulence in cynomolgus monkeys. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 9386-9395 [PMID: 17567701 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.02856-06]

149 **Dobrikova EY**, Goetz C, Walters RW, Lawson SK, Peggins JO, Muszynski K, Ruppel S, Poole K, Giardina SL, Vela EM, Estep JE, Gromeier M. Attenuation of neurovirulence, biodistribution, and shedding of a poliovirus: rhinovirus chimera after intrathalamic inoculation in Macaca fascicularis. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 2750-2759 [PMID: 22171271 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.06427-11]

150 **Gromeier M**, Alexander L, Wimmer E. Internal ribosomal entry site substitution eliminates neurovirulence in intergeneric poliovirus recombinants. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1996; **93**: 2370-2375 [PMID: 8637880]

151 **Kok CC**, Phuektes P, Bek E, McMinn PC. Modification of the untranslated regions of human enterovirus 71 impairs growth in a cell-specific manner. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 542-552 [PMID: 22031931 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.00069-11]

152 **Sadeghipour S**, Bek EJ, McMinn PC. Ribavirin-resistant mutants of human enterovirus 71 express a high replication fidelity phenotype during growth in cell culture. *J Virol* 2013; **87**: 1759-1769 [PMID: 23175376 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.02139-12]

153 **Sadeghipour S**, McMinn PC. A study of the virulence in mice of high copying fidelity variants of human enterovirus 71. *Virus Res* 2013; **176**: 265-272 [PMID: 23856384 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2013.06.019]

154 **Chumakov M**, Voroshilova M, Shindarov L, Lavrova I, Gracheva L, Koroleva G, Vasilenko S, Brodvarova I, Nikolova M, Gyurova S, Gacheva M, Mitov G, Ninov N, Tsylka E, Robinson I, Frolova M, Bashkirtsev V, Martiyanova L, Rodin V. Enterovirus 71 isolated from cases of epidemic poliomyelitis-like disease in Bulgaria. *Arch Virol* 1979; **60**: 329-340 [PMID: 228639]

155 **Ong KC**, Devi S, Cardosa MJ, Wong KT. Formaldehyde-inactivated whole-virus vaccine protects a murine model of enterovirus 71 encephalomyelitis against disease. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 661-665 [PMID: 19864378 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.00999-09]

156 **Dong C**, Wang J, Liu L, Zhao H, Shi H, Zhang Y, Jiang L, Li Q.

Optimized development of a candidate strain of inactivated EV71 vaccine and analysis of its immunogenicity in rhesus monkeys. *Hum Vaccin* 2010; **6**: 1028-1037 [PMID: 21150270]
157 **Wu CN**, Lin YC, Fann C, Liao NS, Shih SR, Ho MS. Protection against lethal enterovirus 71 infection in newborn mice by passive immunization with subunit VP1 vaccines and inactivated virus. *Vaccine* 2001; **20**: 895-904 [PMID: 11738755]
158 **Yu CK**, Chen CC, Chen CL, Wang JR, Liu CC, Yan JJ, Su IJ. Neutralizing antibody provided protection against enterovirus type 71 lethal challenge in neonatal mice. *J Biomed Sci* 2000; **7**: 523-528 [PMID: 11060501 DOI: 10.1007/BF02253368]
159 **Bek EJ**, Hussain KM, Phuektes P, Kok CC, Gao Q, Cai F, Gao Z, McMinn PC. Formalin-inactivated vaccine provokes cross-protective immunity in a mouse model of human enterovirus 71 infection. *Vaccine* 2011; **29**: 4829-4838 [PMID: 21550375 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2011.04.070]
160 **Chen CS**, Yao YC, Lin SC, Lee YP, Wang YF, Wang JR, Liu CC, Lei HY, Yu CK. Retrograde axonal transport: a major transmission route of enterovirus 71 in mice. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 8996-9003 [PMID: 17567704 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.00236-07]
161 **Iiai T**, Watanabe H, Seki S, Sugiura K, Hirokawa K, Utsuyama M, Takahashi-Iwanaga H, Iwanaga T, Ohteki T, Abo T. Ontogeny and development of extrathymic T cells in mouse liver. *Immunology* 1992; **77**: 556-563 [PMID: 1493929]
162 **Paoletti LC**, Pinel J, Kennedy RC, Kasper DL. Maternal antibody transfer in baboons and mice vaccinated with a group B streptococcal polysaccharide conjugate. *J Infect Dis* 2000; **181**: 653-658 [PMID: 10669351 DOI: 10.1086/315285]
163 **van der Sanden S**, van der Avoort H, Lemey P, Uslu G, Koopmans M. Evolutionary trajectory of the VP1 gene of human enterovirus 71 genogroup B and C viruses. *J Gen Virol* 2010; **91**: 1949-1958 [PMID: 20375223 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.019695-0]
164 **Chen CW**, Lee YP, Wang YF, Yu CK. Formaldehyde-inactivated human enterovirus 71 vaccine is compatible for co-immunization with a commercial pentavalent vaccine. *Vaccine* 2011; **29**: 2772-2776 [PMID: 21315698 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2011.01.094]
165 **Chang JY**, Chang CP, Tsai HH, Lee CD, Lian WC, Ih-Jen-Su IH, Liu CC, Chou AH, Lu YJ, Chen CY, Lee PH, Chiang JR, Chong PC. Selection and characterization of vaccine strain for Enterovirus 71 vaccine development. *Vaccine* 2012; **30**: 703-711 [PMID: 22142585 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2011.11.087]
166 **Kung YA**, Hung CT, Liu YC, Shih SR. Update on the development of enterovirus 71 vaccines. *Expert Opin Biol Ther* 2014; **14**: 1455-1464 [PMID: 24989170 DOI: 10.1517/14712598.2014.935330]
167 **Mateu MG**. Antibody recognition of picornaviruses and escape from neutralization: a structural view. *Virus Res* 1995; **38**: 1-24 [PMID: 8546007]
168 **Minor PD**. Antigenic structure of picornaviruses. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 1990; **161**: 121-154 [PMID: 2169382]
169 **Sivasamugham LA**, Cardosa MJ, Tan WS, Yusoff K. Recombinant Newcastle Disease virus capsids displaying enterovirus 71 VP1 fragment induce a strong immune response in rabbits. *J Med Virol* 2006; **78**: 1096-1104 [PMID: 16789020 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.20668]
170 **Tan CS**, Cardosa MJ. High-titred neutralizing antibodies to human enterovirus 71 preferentially bind to the N-terminal portion of the capsid protein VP1. *Arch Virol* 2007; **152**: 1069-1073 [PMID: 17318736 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-007-0941-1]
171 **Ch'ng WC**, Stanbridge EJ, Wong KT, Ong KC, Yusoff K, Shafee N. Immunization with recombinant enterovirus 71 viral capsid protein 1 fragment stimulated antibody responses in hamsters. *Virol J* 2012; **9**: 155 [PMID: 22877087 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422x-9-155]
172 **Wang M**, Jiang S, Wang Y. Recombinant VP1 protein expressed in Pichia pastoris induces protective immune responses against EV71 in mice. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2013; **430**: 387-393 [PMID: 23159634 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2012.11.035]
173 **Chen F**, Zhang ZR, Yuan F, Qin X, Wang M, Huang Y. In vitro and in vivo study of N-trimethyl chitosan nanoparticles for oral protein delivery. *Int J Pharm* 2008; **349**: 226-233 [PMID: 17825506 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2007.07.035]
174 **Zhao W**, Wu W, Xu X. Oral vaccination with liposome-encapsulated recombinant fusion peptide of urease B epitope and cholera toxin B subunit affords prophylactic and therapeutic effects against H. pylori infection in BALB/c mice. *Vaccine* 2007; **25**: 7664-7673 [PMID: 17913305 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2007.08.034]
175 **Chiu CH**, Chu C, He CC, Lin TY. Protection of neonatal mice from lethal enterovirus 71 infection by maternal immunization with attenuated Salmonella enterica serovar Typhimurium expressing VP1 of enterovirus 71. *Microbes Infect* 2006; **8**: 1671-1678 [PMID: 16815726 DOI: 10.1016/j.micinf.2006.01.021]
176 **Yu Z**, Huang Z, Sao C, Huang Y, Zhang F, Ma G, Chen Z, Zeng Z, Qiwen D, Zeng W. Oral immunization of mice using Bifidobacterium longum expressing VP1 protein from enterovirus 71. *Arch Virol* 2013; **158**: 1071-1077 [PMID: 23275129 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-012-1589-z]
177 **Cárdenas L**, Clements JD. Oral immunization using live attenuated Salmonella spp. as carriers of foreign antigens. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 1992; **5**: 328-342 [PMID: 1498769]
178 **Wang L**, Coppel RL. Oral vaccine delivery: can it protect against non-mucosal pathogens? *Expert Rev Vaccines* 2008; **7**: 729-738 [PMID: 18665772 DOI: 10.1586/14760584.7.6.729]
179 **Chen HF**, Chang MH, Chiang BL, Jeng ST. Oral immunization of mice using transgenic tomato fruit expressing VP1 protein from enterovirus 71. *Vaccine* 2006; **24**: 2944-2951 [PMID: 16448730 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2005.12.047]
180 **Chen HL**, Huang JY, Chu TW, Tsai TC, Hung CM, Lin CC, Liu FC, Wang LC, Chen YJ, Lin MF, Chen CM. Expression of VP1 protein in the milk of transgenic mice: a potential oral vaccine protects against enterovirus 71 infection. *Vaccine* 2008; **26**: 2882-2889 [PMID: 18450335 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2008.03.041]
181 **Carrillo C**, Wigdorovitz A, Oliveros JC, Zamorano PI, Sadir AM, Gómez N, Salinas J, Escribano JM, Borca MV. Protective immune response to foot-and-mouth disease virus with VP1 expressed in transgenic plants. *J Virol* 1998; **72**: 1688-1690 [PMID: 9445079]
182 **Shih SR**, Li YS, Chiou CC, Suen PC, Lin TY, Chang LY, Huang YC, Tsao KC, Ning HC, Wu TZ, Chan EC. Expression of capsid [correction of caspid] protein VP1 for use as antigen for the diagnosis of enterovirus 71 infection. *J Med Virol* 2000; **61**: 228-234 [PMID: 10797379]
183 **Foo DG**, Alonso S, Chow VT, Poh CL. Passive protection against lethal enterovirus 71 infection in newborn mice by neutralizing antibodies elicited by a synthetic peptide. *Microbes Infect* 2007; **9**: 1299-1306 [PMID: 17890123 DOI: 10.1016/j.micinf.2007.06.002]
184 **Tian X**, Su X, Li X, Li H, Li T, Zhou Z, Zhong T, Zhou R. Protection against enterovirus 71 with neutralizing epitope incorporation within adenovirus type 3 hexon. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e41381 [PMID: 22848478 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0041381]
185 **Liu JN**, Wang W, Duo JY, Hao Y, Ma CM, Li WB, Lin SZ, Gao XZ, Liu XL, Xu YF, Xu WB, Qin C, Zhang LF. Combined peptides of human enterovirus 71 protect against virus infection in mice. *Vaccine* 2010; **28**: 7444-7451 [PMID: 20831911 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2010.08.080]
186 **Hu YC**, Hsu JT, Huang JH, Ho MS, Ho YC. Formation of enterovirus-like particle aggregates by recombinant baculoviruses co-expressing P1 and 3CD in insect cells. *Biotechnol Lett* 2003; **25**: 919-925 [PMID: 12889824]
187 **Lin YL**, Yu CI, Hu YC, Tsai TJ, Kuo YC, Chi WK, Lin AN, Chiang BL. Enterovirus type 71 neutralizing antibodies in the serum of macaque monkeys immunized with EV71 virus-like particles. *Vaccine* 2012; **30**: 1305-1312 [PMID: 22214888 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2011.12.081]
188 **Li HY**, Han JF, Qin CF, Chen R. Virus-like particles for enterovirus 71 produced from Saccharomyces cerevisiae potently elicits protective immune responses in mice. *Vaccine* 2013; **31**: 3281-3287 [PMID: 23726823 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2013.05.019]
189 **Rodríguez-Limas WA**, Tyo KE, Nielsen J, Ramírez OT, Palomares LA. Molecular and process design for rotavirus-like particle production in Saccharomyces cerevisiae. *Microb Cell Fact* 2011; **10**: 33 [PMID: 21569612 DOI: 10.1186/1475-2859-10-33]
190 **Tung WS**, Bakar SA, Sekawi Z, Rosli R. DNA vaccine constructs against enterovirus 71 elicit immune response in mice. *Genet Vaccines*

Ther 2007; **5**: 6 [PMID: 17445254 DOI: 10.1186/1479-0556-5-6]
191 **Cui Z**, Baizer L, Mumper RJ. Intradermal immunization with novel plasmid DNA-coated nanoparticles via a needle-free injection device. *J Biotechnol* 2003; **102**: 105-115 [PMID: 12697387]
192 **Garmory HS**, Brown KA, Titball RW. DNA vaccines: improving expression of antigens. *Genet Vaccines Ther* 2003; **1**: 2 [PMID: 14606963 DOI: 10.1186/1479-0556-1-2]
193 **Greenland JR**, Letvin NL. Chemical adjuvants for plasmid DNA vaccines. *Vaccine* 2007; **25**: 3731-3741 [PMID: 17350735 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2007.01.120]
194 **Gurunathan S**, Klinman DM, Seder RA. DNA vaccines: immunology, application, and optimization*. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2000; **18**: 927-974 [PMID: 10837079 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.18.1.927]

P- Reviewer: Arriagada GL, Christodoulou CG, Chen SH, Qiu HJ, Tetsuya T
S- Editor: Song XX **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.96

World J Virol 2015 May 12; 4(2): 96-104
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Viral hepatitis and human immunodeficiency virus co-infections in Asia

Takako Utsumi, Maria I Lusida

Takako Utsumi, Maria I Lusida, Indonesia-Japan Collaborative Research Center for Emerging and Re-emerging Infectious Diseases, Institute of Tropical Disease, Airlangga University, Surabaya 60115, Indonesia
Takako Utsumi, Center for Infectious Diseases, Kobe University Graduate School of Medicine, Kobe 650-0017, Japan
Maria I Lusida, Faculty of Medicine, Airlangga University, Surabaya 60131, Indonesia
Author contributions: Both authors made a substantial contribution to the conception and design of the study, data acquisition and to drafting and critically revising the manuscript. Both authors approved the final version.
Supported by The Japan Initiative for Global Research Network on Infectious Diseases (J-GRID) program from the Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science and Technology, Japan.
Conflict-of-interest: The authors declare that they have no conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: Takako Utsumi, PhD, Center for Infectious Diseases, Kobe University Graduate School of Medicine, 7-5-1 Kusunoki-cho, Chuo-ku, Kobe 650-0017, Japan. tutsumi@people.kobe-u.ac.jp
Telephone: +62-31-5992445
Fax: +62-31-5992445
Received: October 30, 2014
Peer-review started: November 2, 2014
First decision: December 2, 2014
Revised: January 5, 2015
Accepted: February 4, 2015
Article in press: February 9, 2015
Published online: May 12, 2015

Abstract

Hepatitis B virus (HBV), hepatitis C virus (HCV), and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) affect many people in Asian countries, although there are geographic differences. Both HBV and HIV (HBV/HIV) and HCV/HIV co-infections are highly prevalent in Asia. Hetero- and homosexual, injection drug use, and geographic area are strong predictors of HBV, HCV, and HIV serostatus. In HBV endemic regions, the prevalence and genotype distribution of HBV/HIV co-infection is almost comparable with that in the general population. In Japan, where HBV has low endemicity, the prevalence of HBV/HIV co-infection is approximately 10-fold higher than that in the general population, and HBV Ae is the most common subgenotype among HIV infected individuals. Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) is an effective treatment for HIV/Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome. Lamivudine, a component of HAART, is an effective treatment for HBV, HIV, and HBV/HIV co-infection; however, cost, emerging drug resistance, antiretroviral-associated liver toxicity and liver-related morbidity due to HCV progression are particular concerns. HCV/HIV co-infection may accelerate the clinical progression of both HCV and HIV. The high prevalence of HBV/HIV and HCV/HIV co-infections in Asia underscores the need to improve prevention and control measures, as fewer evidence-based prevention strategies are available (compared with Western countries). In this review, the most recent publications on the prevalence of HBV/HIV and HCV/HIV co-infections and related issues, such as therapy and problems in Asia, are updated and summarized.

Key words: Hepatitis B virus; Hepatitis C virus; Co-infection; Human immunodeficiency virus; Prevalence; Asia; Pathogenicity; Natural history; Problems; Drug resistance

Core tip: Hepatitis B virus (HBV) and hepatitis C virus (HCV), infections are common among human

immunodeficiency virus (HIV) positive individuals due to similar blood-borne transmission routes. Highly active antiretroviral therapy is an effective treatment for HIV/acquired immune deficiency syndrome; however, emerging drug-resistant viruses and drug-induced hepatotoxicity are particular concerns. The high prevalence of HBV/HIV and HCV/HIV co-infections in Asia highlights the need to improve prevention and control measures because, unlike in Western countries, few evidence-based prevention strategies are available. Here, we review the epidemiologically and clinically important aspects of HBV/HIV and HCV/HIV co-infections in Asian countries.

Utsumi T, Lusida MI. Viral hepatitis and human immunodeficiency virus co-infections in Asia. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(2): 96-104 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i2/96.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.96

INTRODUCTION

An estimated 240 million people worldwide are chronically infected with hepatitis B virus (HBV), and 170 and 34 million people are infected with HCV and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), respectively[1]. Although the prevalence of these viral infections varies according to geographic region, the majority of cases occur in developing Asian and African countries[2,3]. Co-infection with HBV or HCV is common among HIV-positive patients due to their similar blood-borne transmission routes (*e.g.*, sexual and perinatal for HBV[4], and percutaneous for HCV).

HIV co-infection has a deleterious effect on the outcome of patients with chronic viral hepatitis and greatly complicates their management. HIV-positive individuals with chronic hepatitis (caused by either HBV or HCV) have greater liver mortality than those infected with HIV alone. Moreover, the highest reported mortality is among those with multiple hepatitis infections[5]. Although the burden of HBV and HCV infection is greatest in Asia, the biological characteristics associated with either HBV or HCV infection among HIV-infected individuals are unclear. YMDD motif mutants in HBV and occult hepatitis virus infection were observed in Asia[6] and these were found to be related to severe liver diseases and resistance to treatment and prevention[7]. This article provides an overview of the epidemiology of hepatitis B and C virus infections among HIV-infected individuals in Asian countries.

HIV EPIDEMIOLOGY IN ASIA

In the early-to-mid 1980s, much of the world was dealing with serious HIV and acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) epidemics, although Asia remained relatively unaffected. However, by the early 1990s, AIDS epidemics had emerged in several Asian countries and, by the end of the decade, had spread rapidly across the continent. Today, almost 5 million people in South, East, and Southeast Asia are infected with HIV. The epidemiology of the disease in different Asian countries is unique. In fact, the epidemiology can be different among areas/districts/provinces within the same country. By 2010, between 3.0 and 3.9 million people in Southeast Asia were living with HIV/AIDS, which was up from 3.3 million in 2009. Women account for 37% of those infected, the majority of whom were infected by a partner. However, the HIV epidemic in Southeast Asia is now declining: the number of new infections has fallen by 34% (from 320000 in 2001 to 210000 in 2010). According to the Joint United Nations Program on the global HIV/AIDS epidemic, 2011, Southeast Asia recorded above-average declines in the number of new HIV infections[8]. The WHO Southeast Asia Region (SEAR) comprises 11 countries: Bangladesh, Bhutan, South Korea, India, Indonesia, the Maldives, Myanmar, Nepal, Sri Lanka, Thailand, and Timor-Leste. The region has a combined population of over 1.8 billion. Five countries (India, Indonesia, Myanmar, Nepal and Thailand) account for the majority (99%) of HIV cases. India has the second highest HIV burden of any country in the world. There are few reports of HIV cases in Korea, Bangladesh, Bhutan, the Maldives, Sri Lanka, or Timor-Leste, which together represent less than 1% of all HIV infections recorded in the SEAR. The annual number of new infections reported in four of the five countries with a high HIV burden (namely India, Myanmar, Nepal, and Thailand) is declining. However, the number of cases in Indonesia continues to rise, making the epidemic in this country one of the fastest growing in Asia[9,10].

HBV/HIV CO-INFECTION IN ASIA

Epidemiology and risk factors

Approximately 240 million people are chronically infected with HBV, approximately 600000 of whom die each year of HBV-related diseases or hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)[11]. Although the global prevalence of HBV varies from region to region, approximately 5%-10% of HIV-infected individuals are chronically infected, which is defined as persistent detection of hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) for more than 6 mo. In areas with a low HBV prevalence (< 2% of individuals are HBsAg-positive), such as Western countries and Japan, chronic HBV infection among HIV-positive individuals is approximately 10-fold higher than that in the general population[12]. On the other hand, the prevalence of HBV infection in some parts of Africa and Asia is approximately 10%-15%, regardless of HIV co-infection[13].

The major route of HBV infection, especially in HBV endemic regions, is mother-to-child transmission. In HBV endemic regions, the prevalence and genotype distribution of HBV in HIV-infected patients is comparable

Table 1 Prevalence, risk factors, and the main vital genotypes identified in hepatitis B virus/human immunodeficiency virus co-infected individuals in Asia

Country	Prevalence (%)	Risk factors	Main genotype	Ref.
Southeast Asia				
Indonesia	3.2	Sexual	B3	Anggorowati *et al*[15], 2012
	15.3	IDU	B3	Utsumi *et al*[6], 2013
	7.0	Men with IDU	B3, D1, B2, C1	Fibriani *et al*[16], 2014
Myanmar	8.7	Homosexual men		Zaw SK *et al*[17], 2013
Thailand	13.0	HB vaccination women		Aurpibul *et al*[18], 2012
	3.3			Peters *et al*[19], 2013
	11.9			Tsuchiya *et al*[20], 2013
Vietnam	28.0	IDU	B4, B2, C1,	Dunford *et al*[21], 2012
	15.2	CSW	C5	
	10.3			Sereno *et al*[22], 2012
East Asia				
China	4.9	Older children ethnicity		Zhou *et al*[23], 2010
	6.3	Sexual		He *et al*[24], 2011
	7.2	Sexual		Maimaiti[25], 2012
	6.1			Chen *et al*[26], 2013
Japan	8.8	Homosexual men		Gatanaga *et al*[27], 2007
	6.4	Homosexual men		Koike *et al*[28], 2008
	7.9	Homosexual men	Ae	Fujisaki *et al*[29], 2011
	6.0	Homosexual men		Yanagimoto *et al*[30], 2012
South Asia				
India	9.0	Hetero sexual		Saravanan *et al*[31], 2007
	11.3	Hetero sexual men		Saha *et al*[32], 2013
	1.5		D > A > C	Saravanan *et al*[33], 2014

IDU: Injecting drug user; CSW: Commercial sex worker.

with that in the general population[6,14]. Table 1 shows the prevalence of HBsAg and lists the risk factors and major HBV genotypes identified in HIV-infected individuals in Asia. Japan is the only country with low endemicity of HBV infection in Asia[7]; however, it is 10 times more prevalent among HIV-infected individuals. A higher prevalence of HBV/HIV co-infection compared with the prevalence of HBV infection alone is observed in Indonesia, Vietnam, and India. Interestingly, Ae (HBV/Ae), which originated in Europe and the United States, is the most common HBV genotype in HBV/HIV co-infected patients in Japan, even though HBV/B and HBV/C are indigenous[34]. An individual infected with HBV/Ae (as opposed to other HBV genotypes) is at a higher risk of co-infection with HIV. Furthermore, HBV/Ae (which tends to be chronic)[29] is detected almost exclusively in homosexual men[28-30]. Indeed, in Myanmar, homosexual men carry the greatest risk of being co-infected with HBV and HIV[17], and an increased prevalence of HBV/HIV infection is also observed in men with a history of IDU[26]. A substantial number of HBV-infected individuals in Indonesia, Vietnam, Thailand, and India are also infected with HIV (15.3%, 28.0%, 13.0% and 11.3%, respectively)[6,15,16,19,21,32,35]. Indonesia is currently experiencing an increasing HIV incidence and a high HBV burden[6,15,17]; however, no HBV/HIV co-infection cases have been identified in commercial sex workers (CSW)[35]. In Thailand, HBV/HIV co-infection is more common in HIV-infected adolescents who are negative for anti-HBV antibodies[18]. HBV/HIV co-infection is also common in China, where sexual transmission is an independent risk factor, followed by ethnicity and occupation[24]. Additionally, the incidence of co-infection among HIV-infected children receiving antiretroviral therapy (ART) is high. Significant levels of co-infection by blood-borne viruses are observed among IDUs and CSWs in Vietnam[21]. The main risk factor for HBV/HIV co-infection in India is heterosexual sex, whereas it is homosexual sex and IDU in other Asian countries.

Treatment and drug resistance

Several of the antiretroviral drugs used to treat HIV infection can also be used to treat HBV infection; therefore, they can be used to treat some co-infected patients[36]. On the other hand, HBV/HIV co-infection may complicate the delivery of ART by increasing the risk of drug-related hepatotoxicity and impacting the selection of specific agents, such as drugs that are effective against both HBV and HIV[37].

Lamivudine, a component of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), is used widely because it is easy to obtain, relatively cheap, and its clinical efficacy has been shown in long-term follow-up studies[36,38,39]. However, lamivudine often induces mutations within the RT domain of the viral polymerase region, resulting in multidrug-resistance and a poor prognoses for some HBV/HIV co-infected individuals. Table 2 shows the effects of ART on HBV/HIV co-infection and drug resistance in Asian countries. Because lamivudine is associated with the emergence of drug-resistant strains, the current recommended treatment for co-infected individuals is a tenofovir (TDF)-based regimen[22]. Drug-

Table 2 Antiretroviral therapies for hepatitis B virus/human immunodeficiency virus co-infection, and drug-resistant mutations in Asian countries

	Indonesia	Japan	Thailand	Vietnam	China	India
Recommendation for ART on HBV/HIV co-infection	Initiate with WHO clinical stage IV and/or a CD4 count less than 200/mm[3][40]	TDF + 3TC/FTC-based regimen	Screening for HBV. Two antiretroviral regimen with anti-HBV/anti-HIV activity (*e.g.*, TDF, 3TC)	TDF-based regimen	Combination of TDF with FTC or 3TC	HBeAg positivity is indicator to initiate ART with combination of two dually-active drugs
Currently used therapy for HBV/HIV co-infection	Telbivudine (LDT) Lamivudine (3TC) Zidovudine (ZDV) Nevirapine (NVP) Efavirenz (EFV) Stavudine (d4T) Tenofovir (TDF)	3TC Entecavir (ETV) TDF Adefovir dipivoxil (ADV) Emtricitabine (FTC)	3TC Nevirapine (NVP) EFV Stavudine (d4T)	Stavudine (d4T) 3TC NVP	d4T ZDV 3TC NVP EFV[41]	ZDV 3TC NVP EFV d4T[42]
Drug-resistant mutation	Lamivudine M204I M204I + L180M	Lamivudine[1] *V173L + L180M + M204V* Lamivudine L180M, M204V, L217R M184V, I195M	Lamivudine M204V/I	Lamivudine L180M M204V		Lamivudine[1] *M204V* *L180M*

[1]Lamibudin naïve case. WHO: World Health Organization; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus; FTC: Emtricitabine; TDF: Tenofovir; LDT: Telbivudine; ETV: Entecavir; ZDV: Zidovudine; ADV:Adefovir dipivoxil; NVP: Nevirapine.

resistant mutations, particularly multidrug-resistant mutations, are the major concern for patients receiving long-term therapy with nucleoside analogues, such as lamivudine[7]. A high prevalence of lamivudine-resistant mutation has been reported in adolescents from Thailand (M204V/I)[18], Vietnam (L180M and M204V)[13], and Indonesia (M204I and M204I + L180M)[6]. However, V173L + L180M + M204V was identified in HBV/HIV co-infected patients who were not treated with lamivudine[29]; L217R, M184V, and I195M were identified in lamivudine-treated patients[43] in Japan; and L180M and M204V were identified in ART-naïve patients in India[32]. One study suggests that all patients should be screened for HBV prior to ART initiation, as this would enable the most appropriate regimen to be selected[18]. Combination treatment with TDF plus either emtricitabine or lamivudine is recommended for patients who are co-infected with HBV/HIV[25]. However, many countries/regions are experiencing difficulty in accessing effective drugs (even the drugs recommended in their own guidelines) due to the lack of availability and/or high cost. Moreover, some developing Asian countries/regions lack experienced hepatologists and HIV specialists who can manage HBV, HIV, and HBV/HIV co-infection effectively.

Antiretroviral-associated liver toxicity (due to use of nevirapine use) was reported in both Thailand and Indonesia, and in some cases, ART with lamivudine did not suppress HBV[6,19]. In Vietnam, the precore mutation, G1896A, which is highly associated with HCC, is more common in HBV/HIV co-infected individuals harboring the HBV genotype B (HBV/B) than in those harboring HBV/C[32]. HBV replication can occur in the absence of HBsAg [known as occult HBV (OHBV) infection]. OHBV has been reported in HIV-infected individuals, although the underlying mechanisms are unclear[6,44]. The majority of perinatally infected HIV-positive adolescents in Thailand do not produce HBV protective antibodies, even though hepatitis B vaccination coverage is high. Thus, the HBV seroprotection level is low despite childhood vaccination, suggesting that the populations at risk for HBV infection require a booster dose of an HBV vaccine[18]. The current recommendation in Japan is that all newborn babies are vaccinated against hepatitis B.

HCV/HIV CO-INFECTION IN ASIA

Epidemiology

HCV and HIV are among the top ten leading causes of death due to infectious disease worldwide. HCV accounts for an estimated 170 million chronic infections and HIV accounts for approximately 34 million infections[1]. These viruses, together with HBV, share transmission routes, although their prevalence differs according to the transmission efficiency and geographic region[4].

The overall prevalence of HCV/HIV co-infection ranges from 1.2% to 98.5% in South and Southeast Asia[45]. These estimates are influenced by several factors, including geographic differences in the prevalence of chronic infection in different age groups, transmission efficiency *via* certain routes, and the number of individuals at high risk for infection[4]. The HCV transmission risk is significantly higher among patients who acquired HIV infection *via* the parenteral route rather than the sexual route. Although the sexual route is a common mode of HIV transmission, it is less common for HCV[46]. Today approximately one-quarter of HIV-infected individuals in Europe and the USA are co-infected with HCV[47]. HCV infection outbreaks have been reported in HIV-positive men who have sex with men (MSM) in North America, Europe, and Asia.

Transmission is believed to be the result of exposure to blood during sexual contact[48]. HCV-RNA was detected in 38.2% of anti-HCV-negative samples in Indonesia[10]. Sexual contact is still the main HIV transmission route in Indonesia, whereas HCV is less easily transmitted via the sexual route. Thus, among the heterosexual transmission history, the HCV-seropositive rate (26.9%) was significantly higher compared with the HCV infection rate alone, which may be due to the HCV transmission mechanisms between sexual partners, particularly those who engage in practices that are associated with a high virus transmission risk[10]. Sulkovski *et al*[49] and others also reported HCV infection with sexual transmission between HIV-infected MSM and other individuals with abnormal sexual activities[49]. The European AIDS Clinical Society guidelines on co-infection suggest that patients who are beginning HIV therapy should be serologically tested for HCV. It also suggests that HCV RNA-negative and anti-HCV antibody-negative patients exhibiting an unexplained increase in alanine transaminase levels, and those at high risk for HCV infection (*e.g.*, IDU and those likely to suffer mucosal trauma during intercourse) should be tested annually thereafter[46].

A study regarding HIV and HCV infection among those receiving methadone maintenance treatment (MMT) in clinics in Yunnan, China, showed that the prevalence of HIV seropositivity in rural and urban areas was 27.7% and 10.0%, respectively, and the prevalence of HCV seropositivity was 75.6% and 46%, respectively; however, the prevalence of HIV/HCV co-infection was 20% and 7%, respectively. Over three-quarters (76.2%) of the HIV-infected participants in this study were also infected with HCV[50]. The majority of heroin is smuggled into Yunnan province from Myanmar. It then moves along drug trafficking routes to other areas of the country. Thus, high levels of illicit drug use and HIV and HCV epidemics are common in Yunnan[51-53]. Urban and rural MMT patients know little about HIV and HCV; therefore, education programs in MMT clinics must be improved. Studies performed in Beijing, Henan, Guangxi, Kunming, Sichuan, Hunan, Xinjiang, and Shanxi reveal that the prevalence of HCV co-infection among HIV-infected individuals ranges from 11.6% to 85.0%, depending on the area surveyed. The primary transmission route favored by each of these viruses may explain these differences. The co-infection rates in IDUs (58.2%-91.6%) and commercial blood donors (15.8%-71.6%) are significantly higher than those in individuals who become co-infected *via* sex (5.3%-20.0%)[54]. Another study from Central China shows that only 62.4% of HIV-infected individuals have anti-HCV antibodies[26]. In Vietnam, 89.8%-98.5% of HIV-positive IDUs are infected with HCV. A study in southern India found that 18 (15%) and 10 (8.3%) out of 120 HIV-infected patients were also positive for HBsAg and anti-HCV antibodies, respectively. The study, which was carried out in a tertiary care center, also found that the most common transmission routes were sexual promiscuity (79%), followed by sex with a positive spouse (15%), and a blood transfusion history (6%)[55]. A cross-sectional study performed in Mazandaran province, Iran, from 2008 to 2010 showed that of 80 HIV-positive patients, only 33.8% were co-infected with HCV, whereas 25% were co-infected with both HBV and HCV. Thus, 58.8% of HIV-positive patients were also infected with HCV[56]. A study of 33255 blood samples from in Kathmandu, Nepal, reported that the HIV seroprevalence was 0.19% and that 10.8% of the donors were co-infected with HCV[57]. Additionally, the study found similar HIV seroprevalence rates between first-time and repeat donors, and between volunteer and replacement donors, indicating the need for more effective donor recruitment, education, and counseling strategies.

Natural history

HCV and HIV co-infection enhances liver damage and increases the risk of developing end-stage liver disease and HCC. From a clinical perspective, HCV/HIV co-infection is the most common cause of liver cirrhosis in these patients; therefore, monitoring and treatment of these infections must be prioritized, even though this is more difficult to achieve than in HCV-monoinfected individuals[58,59]. A meta-analysis that examined the impact of HIV infection on HCV-infected individuals revealed that HCV/HIV co-infection was associated with a 6.14-fold increase in the relative risk for end-stage liver disease and a 2.07-fold increase in the relative risk for cirrhosis compared with HCV mono-infection[60,61]. On the other hand, HCV/HIV co-infected patients respond less well to antiviral therapy with peginterferon + ribavirin (pegIFN + RBV), resulting in a lower sustained virological response (SVR) after antiviral therapy. HIV/HCV co-infected individuals develop end-stage liver disease more quickly than either HIV- or HCV-monoinfected patients[26,55], particularly those receiving long-term immunosuppressive regimens. Thus, early HCV/HIV co-infection diagnosis may allow for prompt co-morbidity recognition of and prevent future complications.

Problems

Unsafe therapeutic injections performed by both professionals and non-professionals appear to be the predominant HCV transmission mode in countries/regions with moderate-to-high prevalence; indeed, such cases account for up to 40% of all HCV infections worldwide. The predominant transmission mode in most low prevalence areas is IDU[4,62-64]. Although transfusion- and transplant-associated HCV infections are minimized by routine testing of donors, and preventing a new generation of young injectors from becoming infected with HIV or HCV is paramount[65].

The introduction of HAART has meant that HCV infection is now considered the principal cause of morbidity and mortality among HIV-infected indi-

viduals[10,49,66,67]. Liver-related morbidity occurs due to the acceleration of HCV-related disease, drug-induced hepatotoxicity, and, possibly, direct damage caused by HIV itself. Chronic viral hepatitis accounts for > 80% of liver-related deaths. End-stage liver disease and HCC are common complications in HIV-infected patients. Co-infection may accelerate clinical progression in both of these diseases, which are caused by HCV and HIV, and successful treatment for one disease is undermined if the other is neglected[45]. The infectious diseases physicians that care for HIV-infected patients with advanced HCV-related liver disease need to know how to assess a patient for advanced fibrosis, when to refer a patient for endoscopic screening for varices, and when/how to enroll patients in an HCC screening program[67]. Data from The TREAT Asia HIV Observational Database, a multi-center cohort of HIV patients in the Asia-Pacific region, showed that the impact of hepatitis co-infection on immunological and virological responses to ART, and on AIDS progression, are similar among Asian and Western populations[68]. That said, the high prevalence of HIV/HCV co-infection in Asian countries underscores the need to implement improved prevention and control measures because, compared with Western nations, fewer evidence-based prevention strategies are available.

Medical management

Hepatitis C has a limited impact on HIV disease progression. However, HIV does affect HCV with regard to several important areas[69]. The hepatitis C treatment goal is to eradicate HCV infection. Only then can complications associated with HCV-related liver disease, including HCC, be prevented. The therapy endpoint is the achievement of SVR, defined as undetectable HCV RNA levels in the serum 24 wk after the completion of antiviral therapy. SVR is associated with an improved outcome in terms of liver fibrosis and reduced liver-related morbidity and mortality[59]. Similar results have been described in HIV/HCV co-infected patients[59].

The availability of Direct Acting Antivirals (DAAs) for the treatment of patients infected with HCV genotype 1 has markedly improved SVR[70]. The Asian Pacific Association for the Study of the Liver[69] and other studies[49,71] suggest that DAAs, either with or without pegIFN + RBV, show much higher HCV eradication rates in HCV/HIV co-infected individuals than conventional pegIFN + RBV, with manageable toxicity and pharmacologic interactions. However, the promise of new oral DAAs comes with a substantial up-front financial cost, particularly for poorer Asian countries. Indeed, the majority of HCV-infected patients in low- or middle-income countries remain untreated. The global rollout of ART for HIV shows us that it is possible to make these agents both widely available and affordable[72]. Robust efforts to ensure equitable access to these advanced drugs for co-infected patients are imperative.

In the past, HIV-individuals were not considered candidates for solid organ transplantation due to concerns about a heightened risk of opportunistic infection and malignancy. However, recent single- and multi-center studies show that liver transplantation can be performed in HIV-infected patients who satisfy commonly accepted eligibility criteria, including an undetectable HIV RNA load in the plasma, current treatment with a stable HAART regimen or the ability to tolerate ART after transplantation, a minimum CD4+ T-cell count of 100-200 cells/mm^3, and an absence of opportunistic infections[66].

HBV/HCV/HIV TRIPLE INFECTION IN ASIA

Few reports are available regarding the prevalence of HIV/HBV/HCV triple infection in Asia. The prevalence of triple infection in Chinese IDUs (19.1%) is a little bit higher than that in Burmese IDUs (10.4%) in the China-Myanmar border region, which is an important transfer station for drug trafficking from the "Golden Triangle"[53]. As we have seen in mainland Myanmar, triple infection is markedly low (0.35%)[17]. The other studies in mainland China show triple infection were 3.3% in a cohort study, that was carried out between 2010-2012[73] and 12.2% in central China[26]. Therefore, the endemicity of triple infection greatly varies even within the (China) country. Triple infection was not detected in North India[74], but it was manifested in 2.5% of subjects in South India[56], and in 4.8% in Indonesia[15].

HBV/HCV/HIV triple infection raised the chance of death, virological failure, and dropping out of care programs[73]. The incidence of hepatic decompensation was higher in patients with triple infection than in those with HIV/HCV co-infection[75].

CONCLUSION

Both HIV/HBV and HIV/HCV co-infection are highly prevalent in Asia. IDU, MSM, and geographic area are strong predictors for HBV, HCV, and HIV serostatus. Differences in the HBV and HCV co-infection rates among Asian countries may be due to the epidemiology of these viruses in specific countries/areas. Differences in the HBV/HIV co-infection rates. among countries are more pronounced than the differences in the HCV/HIV co-infection rates. The success of HBV vaccination programs and the HBV endemicity in a particular country may also play a role. Unlike HBV infection, the prevalence of which has been reduced by vaccination, HCV (which is mostly transmitted through the blood) cannot be tackled effectively in developing countries unless people are educated about the transmission routes and the dangers of certain practices. A detailed analysis of the progression and activity of liver disease in HIV co-infected patients is needed, along with the urgent implementation of comprehensive prevention

strategies, such as community education and control programs, for both HBV/HIV and HIV/HCV co-infected individuals.

REFERENCES

1 **HIV/AIDS Programme**. Guidance on prevention of viral hepatitis B and C among people WHO inject drugs. WHO, 2012. Available from: URL: http: //apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/75357/1/9789241504041_eng.pdf

2 **Matthews PC**, Geretti AM, Goulder PJ, Klenerman P. Epidemiology and impact of HIV coinfection with hepatitis B and hepatitis C viruses in Sub-Saharan Africa. *J Clin Virol* 2014; **61**: 20-33 [PMID: 24973812 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2014.05.018]

3 **Hoffmann CJ**, Thio CL. Clinical implications of HIV and hepatitis B co-infection in Asia and Africa. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2007; **7**: 402-409 [PMID: 17521593]

4 **Alter MJ**. Epidemiology of viral hepatitis and HIV co-infection. *J Hepatol* 2006; **44**: S6-S9 [PMID: 16352363]

5 **Chen JJ**, Yu CB, Du WB, Li LJ. Prevalence of hepatitis B and C in HIV-infected patients: a meta-analysis. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2011; **10**: 122-127 [PMID: 21459717]

6 **Utsumi T**, Yano Y, Lusida MI, Nasronudin M, Juniastuti H, Hayashi Y. Detection of highly prevalent hepatitis B virus co-infection with HIV in Indonesia. *Hepatol Res* 2013; **43**: 1032-1039 [PMID: 23336705 DOI: 10.1111/hepr.12053]

7 **Utsumi T**, Yano Y, Hotta H. Molecular epidemiology of hepatitis B virus in Asia. *World J Med Genet* 2014; **4**: 19-26 [DOI: 10.5496/wjmg.v4.i2.19]

8 **HIV/AIDS in the South-East Asia Region**. Progress Report 2011. World Health Organization. Regional Office for South-East Asia, 2012. Available from: URL: www.searo.who.int/entity/hiv/documents/hiv-aids_in_south-east_asia.pdf

9 Review of the health sector response to HIV and AIDS in Indonesia 2007: World Health Organization Regional Office for South-East Asia 2007; 2. Available from: URL: www.ino.searo.who.int/LinkFiles/HIV-AIDS_and_sexually_transmitted_infections_Publications_REVIEW_HIV_AIDS_Indonesia_2007

10 **Juniastuti**, Utsumi T, Nasronudin, Alimsardjono L, Amin M, Adianti M, Yano Y, Soetjipto, Hayashi Y, Hotta H, Lusida MI. High rate of seronegative HCV infection in HIV-positive patients. *Biomed Rep* 2014; **2**: 79-84 [PMID: 24649073]

11 **Abbas Z**, Siddiqui AR. Management of hepatitis B in developing countries. *World J Hepatol* 2011; **3**: 292-299 [PMID: 22216369 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v3.i12.292]

12 **Núñez M**, Soriano V. Management of patients co-infected with hepatitis B virus and HIV. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2005; **5**: 374-382 [PMID: 15919623]

13 **Lacombe K**, Bottero J, Lemoine M, Boyd A, Girard PM. HIV/hepatitis B virus co-infection: current challenges and new strategies. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2010; **65**: 10-17 [PMID: 19900950 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkp414]

14 **Mehta KD**, Antala S, Mistry M, Goswami Y. Seropositivity of hepatitis B, hepatitis C, syphilis, and HIV in antenatal women in India. *J Infect Dev Ctries* 2013; **7**: 832-837 [PMID: 24240041 DOI: 10.3855/jidc.2764]

15 **Anggorowati N**, Yano Y, Heriyanto DS, Rinonce HT, Utsumi T, Mulya DP, Subronto YW, Hayashi Y. Clinical and virological characteristics of hepatitis B or C virus co-infection with HIV in Indonesian patients. *J Med Virol* 2012; **84**: 857-865 [PMID: 22499006 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.23293]

16 **Fibriani A**, Wisaksana R, Alisjahbana B, Indrati A, Schutten M, van Crevel R, van der Ven A, Boucher CA. Hepatitis B virus prevalence, risk factors and genotype distribution in HIV infected patients from West Java, Indonesia. *J Clin Virol* 2014; **59**: 235-241 [PMID: 24529845 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2014.01.012]

17 **Zaw SK**, Tun ST, Thida A, Aung TK, Maung W, Shwe M, Aye MM, Clevenbergh P. Prevalence of hepatitis C and B virus among patients infected with HIV: a cross-sectional analysis of a large HIV care programme in Myanmar. *Trop Doct* 2013; **43**: 113-115 [PMID: 23800421 DOI: 10.1177/0049475513493416]

18 **Aurpibul L**, Lumbiganon P, Kolasaraksa P, Hansudewechakul R, Sa-Nguanmoo P, Taeprasert P, Bunupuradah T, Poovorawan Y, Sirisanthana V, Puthanakit T. HIV and Hepatitis B coinfection among perinatally HIV-infected Thai adolescents. *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 2012; **31**: 943-947 [PMID: 22592516]

19 **Peters PJ**, McNicholl JM, Raengsakulrach B, Wasinrapee P, Mueanpai F, Ratanasuwan W, Intalapaporn P, Drobeniuc J, Ramachandran S, Thai H, Xia GL, Kamili S, Khudyakov Y, Weidle PJ, Teo CG, McConnell MS. An evaluation of hepatitis B virus diagnostic methods and responses to antiretroviral therapy among HIV-infected women in Thailand. *J Int Assoc Provid AIDS Care* 2013; **12**: 349-353 [PMID: 23792710 DOI: 10.1177/2325957413488201]

20 **Tsuchiya N**, Pathipvanich P, Rojanawiwat A, Wichukchinda N, Koga I, Koga M, Auwanit W, Kilgore PE, Ariyoshi K, Sawanpanyalert P. Chronic hepatitis B and C co-infection increased all-cause mortality in HAART-naive HIV patients in Northern Thailand. *Epidemiol Infect* 2013; **141**: 1840-1848 [PMID: 23114262 DOI: 10.1017/S0950268812002397]

21 **Dunford L**, Carr MJ, Dean J, Nguyen LT, Ta Thi TH, Nguyen BT, Connell J, Coughlan S, Nguyen HT, Hall WW, Thi LA. A multicentre molecular analysis of hepatitis B and blood-borne virus coinfections in Viet Nam. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e39027 [PMID: 22720022 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0039027]

22 **Sereno L**, Mesquita F, Kato M, Jacka D, Nguyen TT, Nguyen TN. Epidemiology, responses, and way forward: the silent epidemic of viral hepatitis and HIV coinfection in Vietnam. *J Int Assoc Physicians AIDS Care* (Chic) 2012; **11**: 311-320 [PMID: 22828983]

23 **Zhou S**, Zhao Y, He Y, Li H, Bulterys M, Sun X, Dou Z, Robinson M, Zhang F. Hepatitis B and hepatitis C seroprevalence in children receiving antiretroviral therapy for human immunodeficiency virus-1 infection in China, 2005-2009. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2010; **54**: 191-196 [PMID: 20032784 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181c99226]

24 **He N**, Chen L, Lin HJ, Zhang M, Wei J, Yang JH, Gabrio J, Rui BL, Zhang ZF, Fu ZH, Ding YY, Zhao GM, Jiang QW, Detels R. Multiple viral coinfections among HIV/AIDS patients in China. *Biosci Trends* 2011; **5**: 1-9 [PMID: 21422594]

25 **Maimaiti R**, Zhang Y, Pan K, Wubuli M, Andersson R. Frequent coinfection with hepatitis among HIV-positive patients in Urumqi, China. *J Int Assoc Provid AIDS Care* 2015; **12**: 58-61 [PMID: 23087203 DOI: 10.1177/1545109712446176]

26 **Chen X**, He JM, Ding LS, Zhang GQ, Zou XB, Zheng J. Prevalence of hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection in Central China. *Arch Virol* 2013; **158**: 1889-1894 [PMID: 23553454 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-013-1681-z]

27 **Gatanaga H**, Ibe S, Matsuda M, Yoshida S, Asagi T, Kondo M, Sadamasu K, Tsukada H, Masakane A, Mori H, Takata N, Minami R, Tateyama M, Koike T, Itoh T, Imai M, Nagashima M, Gejyo F, Ueda M, Hamaguchi M, Kojima Y, Shirasaka T, Kimura A, Yamamoto M, Fujita J, Oka S, Sugiura W. Drug-resistant HIV-1 prevalence in patients newly diagnosed with HIV/AIDS in Japan. *Antiviral Res* 2007; **75**: 75-82 [PMID: 17194486]

28 **Koike K**, Kikuchi Y, Kato M, Takamatsu J, Shintani Y, Tsutsumi T, Fujie H, Miyoshi H, Moriya K, Yotsuyanagi H. Prevalence of hepatitis B virus infection in Japanese patients with HIV. *Hepatol Res* 2008; **38**: 310-314 [PMID: 17877726]

29 **Fujisaki S**, Yokomaku Y, Shiino T, Koibuchi T, Hattori J, Ibe S, Iwatani Y, Iwamoto A, Shirasaka T, Hamaguchi M, Sugiura W. Outbreak of infections by hepatitis B virus genotype A and transmission of genetic drug resistance in patients coinfected with HIV-1 in Japan. *J Clin Microbiol* 2011; **49**: 1017-1024 [PMID: 21248087 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02149-10]

30 **Yanagimoto S**, Yotsuyanagi H, Kikuchi Y, Tsukada K, Kato M, Takamatsu J, Hige S, Chayama K, Moriya K, Koike K. Chronic hepatitis B in patients coinfected with human immunodeficiency virus in Japan: a retrospective multicenter analysis. *J Infect*

Chemother 2012; **18**: 883-890 [PMID: 22760340 DOI: 10.1007/s10156-012-0433-4]

31 **Saravanan S**, Velu V, Kumarasamy N, Nandakumar S, Murugavel KG, Balakrishnan P, Suniti S, Thyagarajan SP. Coinfection of hepatitis B and hepatitis C virus in HIV-infected patients in south India. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 5015-5020 [PMID: 17854146]

32 **Saha D**, Pal A, Biswas A, Panigrahi R, Sarkar N, Sarkar J, Pal M, Guha SK, Saha B, Chakrabarti S, Chakravarty R. Characterization of treatment-naive HIV/HBV co-infected patients attending ART clinic of a tertiary healthcare centre in eastern India. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e73613 [PMID: 24023688 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0073613]

33 **Saravanan S**, Madhavan V, Velu V, Murugavel KG, Waldrop G, Solomon SS, Balakrishnan P, Kumarasamy N, Smith DM, Mayer KH, Solomon S, Thyagarajan SP. High prevalence of hepatitis delta virus among patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection and HIV-1 in an intermediate hepatitis B virus endemic region. *J Int Assoc Provid AIDS Care* 2014; **13**: 85-90 [PMID: 23722085 DOI: 10.1177/2325957413488166]

34 **Orito E**, Ichida T, Sakugawa H, Sata M, Horiike N, Hino K, Okita K, Okanoue T, Iino S, Tanaka E, Suzuki K, Watanabe H, Hige S, Mizokami M. Geographic distribution of hepatitis B virus (HBV) genotype in patients with chronic HBV infection in Japan. *Hepatology* 2001; **34**: 590-594 [PMID: 11526547]

35 **Kotaki T**, Khairunisa SQ, Sukartiningrum SD, Arfijanto MV, Utsumi T, Normalina I, Handajani R, Widiyanti P, Rusli M, Rahayu RP, Lusida MI, Hayashi Y, Nasronudin M. High prevalence of HIV-1 CRF01_AE viruses among female commercial sex workers residing in Surabaya, Indonesia. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e82645 [PMID: 24367533 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0082645]

36 **Selabe SG**, Lukhwareni A, Song E, Leeuw YG, Burnett RJ, Mphahlele MJ. Mutations associated with lamivudine-resistance in therapy-naïve hepatitis B virus (HBV) infected patients with and without HIV co-infection: implications for antiretroviral therapy in HBV and HIV co-infected South African patients. *J Med Virol* 2007; **79**: 1650-1654 [PMID: 17854040]

37 **Sulkowski MS**. Viral hepatitis and HIV coinfection. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48**: 353-367 [PMID: 18155314]

38 **Eun JR**, Lee HJ, Kim TN, Lee KS. Risk assessment for the development of hepatocellular carcinoma: according to on-treatment viral response during long-term lamivudine therapy in hepatitis B virus-related liver disease. *J Hepatol* 2010; **53**: 118-125 [PMID: 20471129 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.02.026]

39 **Kurokawa M**, Hiramatsu N, Oze T, Yakushijin T, Miyazaki M, Hosui A, Miyagi T, Yoshida Y, Ishida H, Tatsumi T, Kiso S, Kanto T, Kasahara A, Iio S, Doi Y, Yamada A, Oshita M, Kaneko A, Mochizuki K, Hagiwara H, Mita E, Ito T, Inui Y, Katayama K, Yoshihara H, Imai Y, Hayashi E, Hayashi N, Takehara T. Long-term effect of lamivudine treatment on the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with hepatitis B virus infection. *J Gastroenterol* 2012; **47**: 577-585 [PMID: 22231575 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-011-0522-7]

40 **Wisaksana R**, Indrati AK, Fibriani A, Rogayah E, Sudjana P, Djajakusumah TS, Sumantri R, Alisjahbana B, van der Ven A, van Crevel R. Response to first-line antiretroviral treatment among human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients with and without a history of injecting drug use in Indonesia. *Addiction* 2010; **105**: 1055-1061 [PMID: 20331555 DOI: 10.1111/j.1360-0443.2010.02898.x]

41 **Yang R**, Gui X, Xiong Y, Gao SC, Yan Y. Impact of hepatitis B virus infection on HIV response to antiretroviral therapy in a Chinese antiretroviral therapy center. *Int J Infect Dis* 2014; **28**: 29-34 [PMID: 25236390 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijid.2014.07.018]

42 **Ghate M**, Tripathy S, Gangakhedkar R, Thakar M, Bhattacharya J, Choudhury I, Risbud A, Bembalkar S, Kadam D, Rewari BB, Paranjape R. Use of first line antiretroviral therapy from a free ART programme clinic in Pune, India - a preliminary report. *Indian J Med Res* 2013; **137**: 942-949 [PMID: 23760381]

43 **Aizawa M**, Tsubota A, Fujise K, Kato T, Sakamoto M, Ohkusa T, Tajiri H. Highly active antiretroviral therapy improved persistent lamivudine-resistant viremia in acute hepatitis B virus genotype Ae infection with coinfection of human immunodeficiency virus. *Hepatol Res* 2010; **40**: 229-235 [PMID: 20377825 DOI: 10.1111/j.1872-034X.2009.00570.x]

44 **Reuter S**, Oette M, Wilhelm FC, Beggel B, Kaiser R, Balduin M, Schweitzer F, Verheyen J, Adams O, Lengauer T, Fätkenheuer G, Pfister H, Häussinger D. Prevalence and characteristics of hepatitis B and C virus infections in treatment-naïve HIV-infected patients. *Med Microbiol Immunol* 2011; **200**: 39-49 [PMID: 20853118 DOI: 10.1007/s00430-010-0172-z]

45 **Ye S**, Pang L, Wang X, Liu Z. Epidemiological implications of HIV-hepatitis C co-infection in South and Southeast Asia. *Curr HIV/AIDS Rep* 2014; **11**: 128-133 [PMID: 24682917]

46 **Rockstroh JK**, Bhagani S, Benhamou Y, Bruno R, Mauss S, Peters L, Puoti M, Soriano V, Tural C. European AIDS Clinical Society (EACS) guidelines for the clinical management and treatment of chronic hepatitis B and C coinfection in HIV-infected adults. *HIV Med* 2008; **9**: 82-88 [PMID: 18257771]

47 **Andreoni M**, Giacometti A, Maida I, Meraviglia P, Ripamonti D, Sarmati L. HIV-HCV co-infection: epidemiology, pathogenesis and therapeutic implications. *Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci* 2012; **16**: 1473-1483 [PMID: 23111959]

48 **Hagan H**, Neurer J, Jordan AE, Des Jarlais DC, Wu J, Dombrowski K, Khan B, Braithwaite RS, Kessler J. Hepatitis C virus infection among HIV-positive men who have sex with men: protocol for a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Syst Rev* 2014; **3**: 31 [PMID: 24669911]

49 **Sulkowski MS**. Current management of hepatitis C virus infection in patients with HIV co-infection. *J Infect Dis* 2013; **207** Suppl 1: S26-S32 [PMID: 23390302 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jis764]

50 **Chang YJ**, Hsieh J, Peng CY, Li J, Hser YI. HIV and HCV Serostatus and Knowledge Among Patients in Urban Versus Rural Methadone Maintenance Clinics in Kunming. *J Drug Issues* 2014; **44**: 281 [DOI: 10.1177/0022042613511438]

51 **Beyrer C**, Razak MH, Lisam K, Chen J, Lui W, Yu XF. Overland heroin trafficking routes and HIV-1 spread in south and south-east Asia. *AIDS* 2000; **14**: 75-83 [PMID: 10714570]

52 **Jia M**, Luo H, Ma Y, Wang N, Smith K, Mei J, Lu R, Lu J, Fu L, Zhang Q, Wu Z, Lu L. The HIV epidemic in Yunnan Province, China, 1989-2007. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2010; **53** Suppl 1: S34-S40 [PMID: 20104107]

53 **Zhou YH**, Liu FL, Yao ZH, Duo L, Li H, Sun Y, Zheng YT. Comparison of HIV-, HBV-, HCV- and co-infection prevalence between Chinese and Burmese intravenous drug users of the China-Myanmar border region. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e16349 [PMID: 21283696]

54 **Lu Y**, Robinson M, Zhang FJ. Human immunodeficiency virus and hepatitis C virus co-infection: epidemiology, natural history and the situation in China. *Chin Med J* (Engl) 2009; **122**: 93-97 [PMID: 19187624 DOI: 10.3760/cma.j.issn.0366-6999.2009.01.017]

55 **Chandra N**, Joshi N, Raju YS, Kumar A, Teja VD. Hepatitis B and/or C co-infection in HIV infected patients: a study in a tertiary care centre from South India. *Indian J Med Res* 2013; **138**: 950-954 [PMID: 24521641]

56 **Babamahmoodi F**, Heidari Gorji MA, Mahdi Nasehi M, Delavarian L. The prevalence rate of hepatitis B and hepatitis C co-infection in HIV positive patients in Mazandaran province, Iran. *Med Glas* (Zenica) 2012; **9**: 299-303 [PMID: 22926367]

57 **Karki S**, Ghimire P, Tiwari BR, Shrestha AC, Gautam A, Rajkarnikar M. Seroprevalence of HIV and hepatitis C co-infection among blood donors in Kathmandu Valley, Nepal. *Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health* 2009; **40**: 66-70 [PMID: 19323036]

58 **Soriano V**, Martin-Carbonero L, Vispo E, Labarga P, Barreiro P. [Human immunodeficiency virus infection and viral hepatitis]. *Enferm Infecc Microbiol Clin* 2011; **29**: 691-701 [PMID: 21978797 DOI: 10.1016/j.eimc.2011.07.003]

59 **Fernández-Montero JV**, Soriano V. Management of hepatitis C in HIV and/or HBV co-infected patients. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2012; **26**: 517-530 [PMID: 23199509]

60 **Graham CS**, Baden LR, Yu E, Mrus JM, Carnie J, Heeren T,

Koziel MJ. Influence of human immunodeficiency virus infection on the course of hepatitis C virus infection: a meta-analysis. *Clin Infect Dis* 2001; **33**: 562-569 [PMID: 11462196]

61 **Soriano V**, Vispo E, Labarga P, Medrano J, Barreiro P. Viral hepatitis and HIV co-infection. *Antiviral Res* 2010; **85**: 303-315 [PMID: 19887087]

62 **Busch MP**, Kleinman SH, Nemo GJ. Current and emerging infectious risks of blood transfusions. *JAMA* 2003; **289**: 959-962 [PMID: 12597733]

63 **Wasley A**, Alter MJ. Epidemiology of hepatitis C: geographic differences and temporal trends. *Semin Liver Dis* 2000; **20**: 1-16 [PMID: 10895428]

64 **Alter MJ**. Prevention of spread of hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: S93-S98 [PMID: 12407581]

65 **Mateu-Gelabert P**, Gwadz MV, Guarino H, Sandoval M, Cleland CM, Jordan A, Hagan H, Lune H, Friedman SR. The staying safe intervention: training people who inject drugs in strategies to avoid injection-related HCV and HIV infection. *AIDS Educ Prev* 2014; **26**: 144-157 [PMID: 24694328 DOI: 10.1521/aeap.2014.26.2.144]

66 **Camino N**, Sheldon J, Soriano V. Update on hepatitis C treatment in HIV-coinfected patients. *Minerva Gastroenterol Dietol* 2004; **50**: 67-77 [PMID: 15719008]

67 **Curry MP**. HIV and hepatitis C virus: special concerns for patients with cirrhosis. *J Infect Dis* 2013; **207** Suppl 1: S40-S44 [PMID: 23390304 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jis763]

68 **Zhou J**, Dore GJ, Zhang F, Lim PL, Chen YM. Hepatitis B and C virus coinfection in The TREAT Asia HIV Observational Database. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **22**: 1510-1518 [PMID: 17645479 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2007.05062.x]

69 **Omata M**, Kanda T, Yu M, Yokosuka O, Lim S, Jafri W, Tateishi R, Hamid SS, Chuang W, Chutaputti A, Wei L, Sollano J, Sarin SK, Kao J, McCaughan GW. APASL consensus statements and management algorithms for hepatitis C virus infection. *Hepatol Int* 2012; **6**: 409-435 [DOI: 10.1007/s12072-012-9342-y]

70 **Rockstroh JK**, Bhagani S. Managing HIV/hepatitis C co-infection in the era of direct acting antivirals. *BMC Med* 2013; **11**: 234 [PMID: 24228933]

71 **Kabiri M**, Jazwinski AB, Roberts MS, Schaefer AJ, Chhatwal J. The changing burden of hepatitis C virus infection in the United States: model-based predictions. *Ann Intern Med* 2014; **161**: 170-180 [PMID: 25089861 DOI: 10.7326/M14-0095]

72 **Jayasekera CR**, Barry M, Roberts LR, Nguyen MH. Treating hepatitis C in lower-income countries. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1869-1871 [PMID: 24720680]

73 **Zhang F**, Zhu H, Wu Y, Dou Z, Zhang Y, Kleinman N, Bulterys M, Wu Z, Ma Y, Zhao D, Liu X, Fang H, Liu J, Cai WP, Shang H. HIV, hepatitis B virus, and hepatitis C virus co-infection in patients in the China National Free Antiretroviral Treatment Program, 2010-12: a retrospective observational cohort study. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2014; **14**: 1065-1072 [PMID: 25303841 DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(14)70946-6]

74 **Gupta S**, Singh S. Hepatitis B and C virus co-infections in human immunodeficiency virus positive North Indian patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 6879-6883 [PMID: 17106941]

75 **Lo Re V**, Wang L, Devine S, Baser O, Olufade T. Hepatic decompensation in patients with HIV/Hepatitis B Virus (HBV)/Hepatitis C Virus (HCV) triple infection versus HIV/HCV coinfection and the effect of anti-HBV nucleos(t)ide therapy. *Clin Infect Dis* 2014; **59**: 1027-1031 [PMID: 24944235 DOI: 10.1093/cid/ciu476]

P- Reviewer: Cunha C, Juan Ernesto L, Kawasaki H
S- Editor: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.105

World J Virol 2015 May 12; 4(2): 105-112
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Debunking the myths perpetuating low implementation of isoniazid preventive therapy amongst human immunodeficiency virus-infected persons

Christopher Akolo, Florence Bada, Evaezi Okpokoro, Ogochukwu Nwanne, Sharon Iziduh, Eno Usoroh, Taofeekat Ali, Vivian Ibeziako, Olanrewaju Oladimeji, Michael Odo

Christopher Akolo, Population Services International, Washington, DC 20036, United States
Florence Bada, Evaezi Okpokoro, Ogochukwu Nwanne, Sharon Iziduh, Eno Usoroh, Taofeekat Ali, Vivian Ibeziako, Institute of Human Virology, Nigeria (IHVN), Plot 252, PO Box 9396, Abuja, Nigeria
Olanrewaju Oladimeji, Zankli Medical Center, Plot 1021, PO Box 7745, Abuja, Nigeria
Olanrewaju Oladimeji, Liverpool School of Tropical Medicine, Pembroke Place, L3 5QA Liverpool, United Kingdom
Michael Odo, Family Health International (FHI360), Plot 1073, Garki, Area 3| P.M.B. 44, Abuja, Nigeria
Author contributions: Akolo C and Bada F were both responsible for the conceptualization of this article; Akolo C, Bada F, Okpokoro E, Iziduh S, Usoroh E, Nwanne O, Ali T, Ibeziako V, Oladimeji O and Odo M all contributed equally to the writing, editing and final approval of this work.
Conflict-of-interest: The authors have no conflict of interest related to this manuscript.

Correspondence to: Christopher Akolo, MBBS, MSc, FWACP, Senior Technical Advisor HIV/TB, Population Services International, 1120 19th Street, N.W. Ste. 600, Washington, DC 20036, United States. akolochris@yahoo.com
Telephone: +1-240-5810853
Received: October 23, 2014
Peer-review started: October 23, 2014
First decision: November 14, 2014
Revised: December 4, 2014
Accepted: February 9, 2015
Article in press: February 11, 2015
Published online: May 12, 2015

Abstract

Isoniazid preventive therapy (IPT) is the administration of isoniazid (INH) to people with latent tuberculosis (TB) infection (LTBI) to prevent progression to active TB disease. Despite being life-saving for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected persons who do not have active TB, IPT is poorly implemented globally due to misconceptions shared by healthcare providers and policy makers. However, amongst HIV-infected patients especially those living in resource-limited settings with a high burden of TB, available evidence speaks for IPT: Among HIV-infected persons, active TB- the major contraindication to IPT, can be excluded with symptom screening; chest X-ray and tuberculin skin testing are unreliable and often lead to logistic delays resulting in increased numbers of people with LTBI progressing to active TB; the use of IPT has not been found to increase the risk of the development of INH mono-resistance; IPT is cost-effective and cheaper than the cost of treating cases of active TB that would develop without IPT; ART and IPT have an additive effect on the prevention of TB, and both are safe and beneficial even in children. In order to sustain the recorded gains from ART scale-up and to further reduce TB-related morbidity and mortality, more efforts are needed to scale-up IPT implementation globally.

Key words: Human immunodeficiency virus; Isoniazid preventive therapy; Tuberculosis; Chemoprophylaxis

Core tip: To better inform healthcare providers, policy makers and human immunodeficiency virus-infected persons about isoniazid preventive therapy (IPT), this article summarizes the existing evidence in support

of IPT including recommendations for scale-up of implementation globally.

Akolo C, Bada F, Okpokoro E, Nwanne O, Iziduh S, Usoroh E, Ali T, Ibeziako V, Oladimeji O, Odo M. Debunking the myths perpetuating low implementation of isoniazid preventive therapy amongst human immunodeficiency virus-infected persons. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(2): 105-112 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i2/105.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.105

INTRODUCTION

The human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection and tuberculosis (TB) have both remained significant global health challenges claiming millions of lives every year. Despite improved access to antiretroviral therapy (ART), the burden of TB among HIV-infected individuals has remained high. In 2012, the World Health Organization (WHO), reported an estimated 8.6 million TB cases and 1.3 million deaths from the disease (including 320000 deaths among HIV-positive people)[1]. Majority of these deaths are preventable with the use of available evidence-based strategies.

Active TB disease can be prevented among HIV-infected individuals either by protecting them from being exposed to *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (*M. tuberculosis*), the organism responsible for the disease or by preventing those already infected from progressing from latent infection to active disease. This is important because HIV-infected persons who are co-infected with latent TB are not likely to transmit TB to others nor develop drug resistant TB. Therefore, treatment of latent TB infection (LTBI) has the added benefit of reducing the incidence of resistant TB and thus contributing to the control of multi-drug resistant TB and extensively drug resistant TB.

A Cochrane review that included 12 trials with a total of 8578 randomized participants showed that preventive therapy with any anti-TB drug *vs* placebo was associated with a 32% lower incidence of active TB [Risk ratio (RR) 0.68, 95%CI: 0.54 to 0.85], although this benefit was found to be more pronounced in individuals who were tuberculin skin test (TST) positive (RR 0.38, 95%CI: 0.25 to 0.57) than in those who had a negative test (RR 0.89, 95%CI: 0.64 to 1.24) and efficacy was similar for all regimens (regardless of drug type, frequency or duration of treatment)[2]. However, among the available regimens for treatment of LTBI, isoniazid (INH) preventive therapy (IPT) is the one commonly recommended and has been shown to be very effective and safe among people living with HIV[2]. IPT is the administration of INH to people with latent tuberculosis (TB) infection (LTBI) to prevent progression to active TB disease. Its use is a component of the TB/HIV collaborative activities recommended by the WHO to decrease the burden of TB in people living with HIV[3].

The use of IPT for at least six months has been recommended by the WHO for HIV-infected children and adults without active TB including pregnant women, those receiving ART, and those who have successfully completed TB treatment[4]. Furthermore, the guidelines also emphasize that a TST is no longer required for the initiation of IPT in people living with HIV. However, despite available evidence regarding the efficacy of IPT, and the recommendation from WHO that IPT be included in the minimum care package for people living with HIV, this life saving and cost-effective intervention is still not being widely implemented.

In 2008, WHO reported that the provision of IPT remains at very low levels, with the number of people who received IPT reaching only 27056 in 2006 – equivalent to less than 0.1% of the 33.0 million people estimated to be infected with HIV globally and Botswana alone accounted for 70% of the total number of people reported globally[5]. In a cross-sectional survey conducted *via* email by the WHO amongst HIV programme officers in 69 selected countries having a high burden of HIV and HIV/TB co-infection, 21 of 41 countries (51.0%) that responded had a national policy but only 6 (28.0%) had achieved nationwide IPT implementation[6]. This picture seems to have improved but is still far below what is generally expected. According to the WHO, an estimated 50.0% of those newly enrolled in HIV care globally meet the eligibility criteria for IPT[4]. However, of the reported 1.6 million people newly enrolled in HIV care in 2012, only 0.5 million (31.0%) were provided with IPT with South Africa accounting for 71.0% of the global total with 370000 people[1]. In contrast, of the 0.14 million HIV-infected people screened for TB in Nigeria in 2012, only 2300 (1.6%) of them received IPT while of the 69000 HIV-infected persons screened for TB in Swaziland in 2012, only 1900 (2.8%) of them were prescribed IPT[1].

The low level of implementation can be attributed to several reasons given by healthcare providers and policy makers. Most of these excuses or challenges can be termed myths because there is enough evidence in support of full scale implementation of IPT globally. These myths include the following: (1) it is difficult to exclude active TB among people living with HIV; (2) chest X-ray is necessary before initiating IPT; (3) use of IPT will increase the risk of the development of INH mono-resistance; (4) ART alone is sufficient for preventing TB among people living with HIV; (5) it is difficult for those on ART to adhere to treatment with IPT; (6) the use of IPT is associated with increased side effects of INH and therefore not safe; (7) use of IPT is not cost effective; (8) IPT cannot be used in children; and (9) TST is needed before prescribing IPT.

We hereby discuss the range of evidence available in support of IPT implementation even in the face of the above challenges or myths.

AVAILABLE EVIDENCE

Active TB can be excluded using symptom screening

Excluding active TB disease before the initiation of preventive therapy is required to minimize the risk of drug resistance as a result of inadvertent treatment of active TB with an inadequate regimen[7]. Within all HIV care and treatment centers, TB screening should be considered as one of the first services to be offered to all patients irrespective of their treatment status. Among asymptomatic HIV-positive patients, it is possible to use symptom screening to exclude active TB. Interestingly, reports from Botswana and Zambia suggest that the rate of TB is very low among asymptomatic HIV-positive individuals[8,9]. In a study conducted in South Africa, it was reported that symptoms alone were adequate to exclude TB in 129 Cape Town patients, all of whom were in WHO stage 3 or 4[10].

A good screening rule was developed using results from a meta-analysis of 12 observational studies that involved over 8000 HIV-infected persons[11]. The analysis showed that individuals exhibiting none of 4 symptoms namely current cough, night sweats, fever or weight loss have a very low probability of having TB disease (negative predictive value of 97.7% at 5.0% TB prevalence among people living with HIV). Therefore, those who do not have current cough, fever, weight loss or night sweats are unlikely to have active TB and should be offered IPT[4] while those with symptoms should have further work-up for TB and those found positive should be offered a full treatment course for TB. There is the need to avoid a situation where HIV-infected persons are not placed on anti-TB medications and are also not offered the benefits of IPT. Therefore, the algorithm for TB screening in adults and adolescents living with HIV in HIV-prevalent and resource-constrained settings developed by the WHO should be adequately followed[4].

Chest X-ray is not mandatory before prescribing IPT

The data on the utility of chest X-ray on IPT programmes is still not very clear[8,9]. Though chest X-ray is helpful in the diagnosis of active TB, it must be noted that HIV-infected patients with active TB may have normal chest X-rays. In one study, about 8.0% of HIV-infected patients with pulmonary TB had normal chest X-rays[12] and chest X-rays were normal or not consistent with TB in 23.0% of patients in another study[13]. One study that evaluated the impact of HIV co-infection on the chest radiographic pattern and extent of pulmonary TB in Ethiopian out-patients showed that HIV-infected patients had chest X-rays classified as normal or with minimal involvement compared with HIV-negative individuals[14]. These findings may be partially due to the subjective components of reviewing X-rays which include correctly taking and interpreting the X-rays.

In view of the above, symptom screening alone is recommended currently for the exclusion of TB in resource limited settings[4]. This recommendation is based on the burden of evidence that currently exists. A study conducted in Cape Town, South Africa to validate screening instruments found that a combination of 2 or more of weight loss, cough, night sweats or fever had a sensitivity of 100.0% and specificity of 81.0% and had the best fit using logistic regression (Wald statistic 19.64, $P < 0.001$) and also that including Mantoux Testing and Chest X-ray did not improve the performance of the screening instruments[10]. This finding is in line with several other studies that have found that chest X-rays are not sensitive especially in patients with HIV.

A study by Samandari *et al*[15] comparing 3 screening policies namely symptom screening alone, symptom screening with Chest X-ray and Symptom screening with Chest X-ray and tracking showed that though the inclusion of Chest X-ray reduced the number of new cases of INH resistance (because additional cases of active TB were recognized and therefore IPT was given to fewer people with active TB), the inclusion of chest X-rays actually increased the number of TB cases by 15.8% and the number of deaths from TB by 13.0% because there was attrition of patients during the Chest X-ray screening process and less people benefitted from the protective benefits of IPT[15]. Thus according to the WHO, for IPT, chest X-ray can be done if available, but is not required to classify patients into TB and non-TB groups[4].

IPT does not increase the risk of the development of INH mono-resistance

One of the major reasons given for poor utilization of IPT to prevent active TB is the belief that IPT can result in subsequent resistance to INH in patients who later develop active TB[16,17]. Theoretically, if active TB is missed and the bacterial load is large enough, treatment with monotherapy or an inadequate regimen has the potential to generate drug resistance[18]. Though the impact of widespread use of IPT on drug resistance is not well known, a systematic review of data from studies published in English, French and Spanish between 1951 and October, 2003 that assessed the effect of primary IPT on the risk of INH-resistant TB in populations without HIV reported that the risk of resistance in those given IPT was not statistically different from those that received placebo[16]. The study authors support the expansion of IPT use in line with the recommendations from the HIV/TB working group of the Stop TB partnership[3].

Van Halsema *et al*[19] described a case series of miners derived from a cluster randomized trial in which clusters were randomized either to receive TB screening and IPT or routine TB control consisting of annual case finding by chest radiograph and targeted IPT offered to individuals with HIV or silicosis with results that do not suggest an increase in the proportion of INH resistance cases among those exposed to TB screening and IPT[19]. Randomized controlled trails (RCT) of the effect

of IPT in HIV-infected patients in Botswana, India and South Africa also did not show an increased risk of INH resistance amongst patients given IPT[20-22].

Furthermore, it has been reported that patients with INH-resistant TB respond to standard short course anti-TB therapy just as well as patients without INH-resistant TB, though those with INH-resistant TB do suffer a slightly increased risk of relapse[23]. Therefore, even though there is a possibility of INH-resistant TB following the use of IPT in HIV-infected people, the benefits in terms of its effectiveness and efficacy must be balanced against this risk.

IPT is useful in combination with ART

To reduce the burden of TB among HIV-infected persons, the WHO recommends intensified case finding (ICF), IPT, infection control, and early initiation of ART[4]. ART is the most potent and widely implemented TB preventive intervention among people living with HIV (PLHIV)[4]; its use profoundly reduces the incidence of TB in PLHIV and with continued use, the risk of TB progressively declines. Although treatment with ART has been estimated to result in more than 80.0% reduction in the risk of TB[24], some reports showed that even after ART initiation TB incidence remains very high[24-26]. This suggests that, even among those with adequate response to ART, other interventions are needed to control the TB epidemic in PLHIV[25].

Observational studies from Brazil and South Africa have shown that the combined effect of ART and IPT in preventing TB among PLHIV is significantly higher compared to ART alone[27,28]. Two retrospective analyses on assessing the advantages of using IPT with ART concluded that the benefit of combining INH and ART was additive[27,29]. In a study in Ethiopia it was found that using either IPT or ART alone among PLHIVs reduced the incidence of TB by 68.0% and 65.0% respectively while co administration of IPT and ART reduced the incidence by 80.0% to 82.0% when either initiated together or IPT was initiated before ART[30]. Concomitant use of IPT and ART also improves adherence to IPT, as shown in a study in Brazil where being on ART was associated with higher completion of IPT[31].

There is good treatment adherence with the use of IPT

Good treatment adherence with the use of IPT has been reported and has been found to be associated with several factors, including availability and access to quality health care, favorable economic, social and cultural environments[32]. A study conducted in Thailand to determine the level of and reasons associated with adherence to TB preventive therapy among asymptomatic HIV-infected individuals recorded 74.3% completion of a nine-month IPT regimen[33]. Swaminathan *et al*[22] in their RCT conducted in India to compare the efficacy of a 6 mo and 36 mo regimen for prevention of TB in HIV-infected patients also recorded high adherence, even with the 36-mo IPT regimen.

In addition to the existing evidence in support of good adherence to IPT are the results obtained from a cross-sectional study conducted in Ethiopia to assess adherence to IPT and associated factors among PLHIV[34]. In this study, the level of self-reported adherence of IPT was found to be 89.5% (CI 86.1 to 92.3). Another important finding in this study was the fact that patients who were on ART were more likely to be adherent [95%CI, COR = 1.97 (1.01–3.84)] than patients who were on Pre-ART[34].

Good adherence to IPT has also been recorded among children. In a cohort study conducted in Cape Town, South Africa to investigate the combined effect of IPT and ART on TB risk amongst HIV-infected children, INH was well tolerated with excellent adherence[35]. Similar results were also obtained in another RCT conducted in the same city but compared daily to three times a week dosing of INH among HIV-infected children[36]. The overall adherence to INH was excellent, with a mean adherence of 94.7%[36]. From these studies, it is clear that good adherence with the use of IPT can be achieved even with concurrent treatment with ART.

IPT is safe and is not associated with increased risk of INH side-effects

Like most other medications, anti-TB medications are primarily metabolized by the liver and potentially can lead to drug-induced hepatitis and other adverse events (*e.g.*, nausea, vomiting, gastritis, peripheral neuropathy, and rashes)[22]. This understanding has retarded the implementation of INH as a prophylaxis for TB among many care givers despite WHO recommendations. The side effect of major concern with regards to IPT is hepato-toxicity, which has been found to occur in a very small proportion of individuals receiving treatment[37,38]. The hepato-toxic effect of INH could be mild (subclinical) with good prognosis or fatal which is less common. Fatal INH-induced hepatitis occurs in 0.001% to 0.06% depending on several other factors such as increasing age (*i.e.*, over 35 years) and frequent alcohol ingestion[39,40]. Clinical monitoring and good patient education can help in reducing the risk of toxicity[41]. In a study in Seattle, without laboratory monitoring, only 11 cases of hepatitis were reported after about seven years of monitoring over 11000 patients on INH and only one case needed hospitalization[41]. The authors concluded that the rate of INH hepato-toxicity during clinically monitored preventive therapy was lower than has been reported previously suggesting that clinicians should have greater confidence in the safety of IPT.

A report from a RCT conducted in Botswana showed no difference in adverse events between participants on placebo *vs* those on INH for 30 mo (1.0% *vs* 1.3% respectively; P = 0.36). A similar trial conducted in India reported only 3.0% (22/683) of participants in both study arms (*i.e.*, Ethambutol *vs* INH) with side effects related to study drugs[22]. This risk of side effects was marginally higher in another trial reported by

Rangaka *et al*[42] with 1.5% of participants on placebo *vs* 2.9% of participants on INH developing side effects (*i.e.*, grade 3 or above raised alanine transaminase level; clinical hepatitis; grade 2 or above rash or peripheral neuropathy), but the use of INH by participants on ART had no additive toxic effect[42]. The experience from Brazil indicated that expanded use of IPT in HIV-infected persons is achievable with high adherence and low adverse events[31]. Therefore, the fear of INH side effects should not prevent the implementation of IPT.

IPT use is cost-effective

Cost-effectiveness analytical studies conducted in the United States and South Africa found that compared with no prophylaxis, short and long course IPT use amongst PLHIV saved an average of $5 in medical care, for every $1 spent on prophylaxis[43,44]. In addition, the 6-mo regimen reduced the incidence of TB by an average of 23.0% to 47.5% and increased life expectancy by an average of 7.2 mo[43,45]. The cost-utility analysis of an IPT program in Uganda showed that the provision of IPT for HIV-infected persons was cost-effective[46].

In the pre-ART era, Bell *et al*[47] found that in sub-Saharan Africa, when IPT was given daily for 6 mo, there was a savings of $24.16 per person on medical care, social costs and costs associated with treating secondary infections. In resource-limited settings, where ART was not always available, the savings made and demonstrated reduction of TB and HIV-associated morbidity and mortality using IPT is desirable[47]. Even as recent as 2012, with expanded access to ART, an analysis in Southern India found that the ART-induced increases in CD4 counts attenuated the absolute IPT efficacy of reducing the risk of TB infection and related mortality, thus increasing the cost-effectiveness of IPT and making it good value for money[48].

IPT is recommended for use in children

TB is a leading cause of death in adults and more so in children due to their increased vulnerability to infection[49]. This vulnerability is even more pronounced in children living with HIV as TB is the leading cause of death among children with HIV in TB endemic areas[50]. HIV-infected children are also more likely to have severe respiratory disease and extra pulmonary TB and acquire TB at all ages compared with HIV negative children who are more at risk only during infancy[35,51]. Therefore, the need to protect HIV-infected children from acquiring TB cannot be over emphasized. Over the years the efficacy of INH as prophylaxis for TB in children has given rise to a lot of controversy due to inadequate data and trials revealing conflicting results[35,49].

A study by Madhi *et al*[51] showed no significant effect when INH is used for prophylaxis in children with or without HIV. This study was included in a recent meta-analysis by Ayieko *et al*[50] and the authors explained that the reason for the null results could be due to the fact that TB was over-diagnosed in the study since few cases were confirmed microbiologically and many of the TB cases met only minimal criteria[49,50]. Another explanation given was that the initial study involved mostly infants (median age 96 d, range 90-120 d) while the studies with a positive effect included older children suggesting that age may be an effect modifier of TB development in children receiving IPT.

On the other hand more recent studies have shown promising results making the body of evidence available stronger. The safety of the use of INH in children has also been reported by several studies[49,52]. In 2006 a randomized control trial found a 72.0% risk reduction in TB in children receiving INH compared to placebo. This study also found a 54.0% risk reduction in mortality[53]. A cohort analysis of another RCT conducted by Frigati *et al*[35] found a reduction in TB incidence in HIV-infected children randomized to receive IPT compared with placebo[35]. Further reduction in the risk of TB was found when comparing children receiving ART and IPT to those receiving ART and placebo[35]. The meta-analysis by Ayieko *et al*[50] found a strong positive effect against TB in HIV negative children although, the results for the effect on HIV-infected children was inconclusive because the analysis included only 2 studies.

Based on this moderate quality of evidence, the WHO strongly recommends IPT for use amongst HIV-infected children above 12 mo of age who are unlikely to have active TB or have not had any contact with a person infected with TB and for those less than 12 mo of age, prophylaxis is strongly recommended for those who have had contact with an infected person and in whom active TB has been ruled out[4].

TST is not necessarily required for the implementation of IPT

TST is the administration of purified protein derivative (PPD) in individuals with exposure risk to TB in order to identify those who may have acquired latent infection and for whom prevention would be beneficial[54]. The previous WHO policy statement on preventive therapy against TB in people living with HIV recommended TST as a condition for IPT implementation in developing countries[55]. Additionally, results of a meta-analysis of RCT showed that TB preventive therapy was more effective amongst HIV-infected person who are TST positive than those who are TST negative[2]. However, while TST was successfully implemented as a screening tool in developed countries[56,57], it has not been so well received in resource-poor nations where TB burden is greatest. Apart from limitations of low sensitivity and specificity (51.0% in HIV-infected persons *vs* 94.0% in HIV negative persons with active pulmonary TB)[56,58], it requires a lot of resources including adequately trained manpower to administer and read the test, need for repeat visits by patients, difficult logistics of cold chain maintenance and cost of tuberculin procurement which may be prohibitive for a large scale prevention program[4,54].

TST status of an individual is influenced largely by the degree of immunodeficiency[59]. An RCT conducted in India assessed two cohorts of HIV-infected patients; one with active pulmonary TB and the other without evidence of active TB. The cohort without active TB was found to have a lower TST-positive rate of 27.6% at CD4 < 100 cells/μL against 42.0%-48.0% of those with CD4 > 100 cells/μL in the same group[58]. The authors concluded that TST is a poor predictor of both latent and active TB in HIV-infected individuals in TB endemic countries and that programmes offering treatment for LTBI should consider including all HIV-infected individuals regardless of TST status, or use other indicators, such as CD4 count[58]. Thus a negative TST in an HIV-infected person may be due to anergy leading to missed opportunity for those who should have been offered chemoprophylaxis[4].

Botswana, one of the few African countries that have implemented a successful national IPT program since 2001 uses the WHO symptom checklist alone without the need for a TST or chest X-ray as this was found to increase loss to follow up[21]. After its pilot in 2005, Brazil made a similar recommendation to WHO that TST not be used as a screening tool to reduce waiting time between diagnosis and those who are TST positive would likely benefit more from implementation of IPT in patients[31].

In its 2011 revised guidelines, WHO makes a strong recommendation for the provision of IPT to all HIV-infected patients in TB-endemic countries (prevalence of latent TB > 30%) irrespective of TST status[4]. However, since TST positive individuals derive greater benefits from treatment of LTBI, TST could still be requested where feasible[4].

CONCLUSION

With the available evidence discussed above, the benefits of IPT are far more than the perceived risks. Therefore, to scale up implementation of IPT at both global and country levels, more efforts are needed in order to fully implement the recommendations contained in the WHO Policy Guidelines for IPT (2008)[45]. HIV programs should own IPT services and provision of IPT must be fully included as part of the basic care package for all PLHIV. Perhaps, the use of IPT should be included in the range of palliative care services provided to all PLHIV, like Cotrimoxazole, nutritional supplements and anti-malarial medication during visits to most ART clinics. Additionally, patients should be properly educated in order to know the importance of IPT and thus be able to demand prescription of IPT from their providers. Others measures include the inclusion of IPT as part of ART scale-up, integration of HIV and TB services, full development of national policies for IPT, continued promotion of the concept of the Three I's, improved and stronger advocacy at all levels, improved monitoring and evaluation of IPT programmes, and pursuing the possibility of co-formulation of Cotrimoxazole and INH to further aid treatment adherence and improve access.

Furthermore, implementation studies to further understand the best models for IPT implementation and scale-up at country level are needed. Since the fear of INH mono-resistance is one of the barriers to full scale IPT implementation, reports on the risks and benefits associated with the administration of INH in error to undiagnosed people with active TB are also needed[4]. Although, a recent report showed that in HIV-infected persons, 36 mo IPT was more effective than the current 6 mo regimen[21], additional studies are needed to clarify this. With all these efforts, the gains achieved through ART scale-up globally would be better consolidated with further reduction in TB incidence, improved survival and lower mortality among PLHIV. Conclusively, more needs to be done by the policy makers and the experts to ensure effective and strategic implementation of IPT especially in high HIV burden resource-constraint settings.

REFERENCES

1 **World Health Organization (WHO)**. WHO Global Tuberculosis Report, 2013. Geneva 2013. Available from: URL: http: //apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/91355/1/9789241564656_eng.pdf

2 **Akolo C**, Adetifa I, Shepperd S, Volmink J. Treatment of latent tuberculosis infection in HIV infected persons. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2010; **(1)**: CD000171 [PMID: 20091503 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000171.pub3]

3 **World Health Organization (WHO) Stop TB**. Interim Policy on Collaborative TB/HIV activities. Geneva, Switzerland. 2004. Available from: URL: http: //whqlibdoc.who.int/hq/2004/WHO_HTM_TB_2004.330_eng.pdf?ua=1

4 **World Health Organization (WHO)**. Guidelines for intensified case finding and isoniazid preventive therapy for people living with HIV in resource constrained settings. Geneva, Switzerland. 2011. Available from: URL: http: //whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2011/9789241500708_eng.pdf

5 **World Health Organization (WHO)**. Global tuberculosis control 2008 - surveillance, planning, financing. Geneva, Switzerland: 2008

6 **Date AA**, Vitoria M, Granich R, Banda M, Fox MY, Gilks C. Implementation of co-trimoxazole prophylaxis and isoniazid preventive therapy for people living with HIV. *Bull World Health Organ* 2010; **88**: 253-259 [PMID: 20431788 DOI: 10.2471/BLT.09.066522]

7 **Churchyard GJ**, Scano F, Grant AD, Chaisson RE. Tuberculosis preventive therapy in the era of HIV infection: overview and research priorities. *J Infect Dis* 2007; **196** Suppl 1: S52-S62 [PMID: 17624827]

8 **Mosimaneotsile B**, Talbot EA, Moeti TL, Hone NM, Moalosi G, Moffat HJ, Lee EJ, Kenyon TA. Value of chest radiography in a tuberculosis prevention programme for HIV-infected people, Botswana. *Lancet* 2003; **362**: 1551-1552 [PMID: 14615113 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(03)14745-9]

9 **Ayles H**, Mukombo D, Khare R, Godfrey-Faussett P. The role of chest-Xrays as a screening tool prior to TB preventive therapy. XIth Int. Conference AIDS/STDs Africa; 1999 Sep 12-19; Lusaka Zambia

10 **Mohammed A**, Ehrlich R, Wood R, Cilliers F, Maartens G. Screening for tuberculosis in adults with advanced HIV infection prior to preventive therapy. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2004; **8**: 792-795 [PMID: 15182152]

11 **Getahun H**, Kittikraisak W, Heilig CM, Corbett EL, Ayles H,

Cain KP, Grant AD, Churchyard GJ, Kimerling M, Shah S, Lawn SD, Wood R, Maartens G, Granich R, Date AA, Varma JK. Development of a standardized screening rule for tuberculosis in people living with HIV in resource-constrained settings: individual participant data meta-analysis of observational studies. *PLoS Med* 2011; **8**: e1000391 [PMID: 21267059 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1000391]

12 **Perlman DC**, el-Sadr WM, Nelson ET, Matts JP, Telzak EE, Salomon N, Chirgwin K, Hafner R. Variation of chest radio graphic patterns in pulmonary tuberculosis by degree of human immunodeficiency virus-related immunosuppression. The Terry Beirn Community Programs for Clinical Research on AIDS (CPCRA). The AIDS Clinical Trials Group (ACTG). *Clin Infect Dis* 1997; **25**: 242-246 [PMID: 9332519 DOI: 10.1086/514546]

13 **Hargreaves NJ**, Kadzakumanja O, Phiri S, Nyangulu DS, Salaniponi FM, Harries AD, Squire SB. What causes smear-negative pulmonary tuberculosis in Malawi, an area of high HIV seroprevalence? *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2001; **5**: 113-122 [PMID: 11258504]

14 **Aderaye G**, Bruchfeld J, Assefa G, Feleke D, Källenius G, Baat M, Lindquist L. The relationship between disease pattern and disease burden by chest radiography, M. tuberculosis Load, and HIV status in patients with pulmonary tuberculosis in Addis Ababa. *Infection* 2004; **32**: 333-338 [PMID: 15597222 DOI: 10.1007/s15010-004-3089-x]

15 **Samandari T**, Bishai D, Luteijn M, Mosimaneotsile B, Motsamai O, Postma M, Hubben G. Costs and consequences of additional chest x-ray in a tuberculosis prevention program in Botswana. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2011; **183**: 1103-1111 [PMID: 21148723 DOI: 10.1164/rccm.201004-0620OC]

16 **Balcells ME**, Thomas SL, Godfrey-Faussett P, Grant AD. Isoniazid preventive therapy and risk for resistant tuberculosis. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2006; **12**: 744–751 [PMID: 16704830 DOI: 10.3201/eid1205.050681]

17 **Cobelens FG**. For whom the bell tolls: isoniazid preventive therapy and tuberculosis drug resistance. *Sci Transl Med* 2013; **5**: 180fs12 [PMID: 23576813 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3006094]

18 **Churchyard GJ**, Chaisson RE, Maartens G, Getahun H. Tuberculosis preventive therapy: an underutilised strategy to reduce individual risk of TB and contribute to TB control. *S Afr Med J* 2014; **104**: 339-343 [PMID: 25212199 DOI: 10.7196/samj.8290]

19 **van Halsema CL**, Fielding KL, Chihota VN, Russell EC, Lewis JJ, Churchyard GJ, Grant AD. Tuberculosis outcomes and drug susceptibility in individuals exposed to isoniazid preventive therapy in a high HIV prevalence setting. *AIDS* 2010; **24**: 1051-1055 [PMID: 20299958 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32833849df]

20 **Martinson NA**, Barnes GL, Moulton LH, Msandiwa R, Hausler H, Ram M, McIntyre JA, Gray GE, Chaisson RE. New regimens to prevent tuberculosis in adults with HIV infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 11-20 [PMID: 21732833 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1005136]

21 **Samandari T**, Agizew TB, Nyirenda S, Tedla Z, Sibanda T, Shang N, Mosimaneotsile B, Motsamai OI, Bozeman L, Davis MK, Talbot EA, Moeti TL, Moffat HJ, Kilmarx PH, Castro KG, Wells CD. 6-month versus 36-month isoniazid preventive treatment for tuberculosis in adults with HIV infection in Botswana: A randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2011; **377**: 1588–1598 [DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(11)60204-3]

22 **Swaminathan S**, Menon PA, Gopalan N, Perumal V, Santhanakrishnan RK, Ramachandran R, Chinnaiyan P, Iliayas S, Chandrasekaran P, Navaneethapandian PD, Elangovan T, Pho MT, Wares F, Paranji Ramaiyengar N. Efficacy of a six-month versus a 36-month regimen for prevention of tuberculosis in HIV-infected persons in India: a randomized clinical trial. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e47400 [PMID: 23251327 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0047400]

23 **Aït-Khaled N**, Alarcon E, Bissell K, Boillot F, Caminero JA, Chiang CY, Clevenbergh P, Dlodlo R, Enarson DA, Enarson P, Ferroussier O, Fujiwara PI, Harries AD, Heldal E, Hinderaker SG, Kim SJ, Lienhardt C, Rieder HL, Rusen ID, Trébucq A, Van Deun A, Wilson N. Isoniazid preventive therapy for people living with HIV: public health challenges and implementation issues. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2009; **13**: 927-935 [PMID: 19723371]

24 **Badri M**, Wilson D, Wood R. Effect of highly active antiretroviral therapy on incidence of tuberculosis in South Africa: a cohort study. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 2059-2064 [PMID: 12086758 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)08904-3]

25 **Girardi E**, Sabin CA, d'Arminio Monforte A, Hogg B, Phillips AN, Gill MJ, Dabis F, Reiss P, Kirk O, Bernasconi E, Grabar S, Justice A, Staszewski S, Fätkenheuer G, Sterne JA. Incidence of Tuberculosis among HIV-infected patients receiving highly active antiretroviral therapy in Europe and North America. *Clin Infect Dis* 2005; **41**: 1772-1782 [PMID: 16288403 DOI: 10.1086/498315]

26 **Lawn SD**, Badri M, Wood R. Tuberculosis among HIV-infected patients receiving HAART: long term incidence and risk factors in a South African cohort. *AIDS* 2005; **19**: 2109-2116 [PMID: 16284460 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000194808.20035.c1]

27 **Golub JE**, Pronyk P, Mohapi L, Thsabangu N, Moshabela M, Struthers H, Gray GE, McIntyre JA, Chaisson RE, Martinson NA. Isoniazid preventive therapy, HAART and tuberculosis risk in HIV-infected adults in South Africa: a prospective cohort. *AIDS* 2009; **23**: 631-636 [PMID: 19525621 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328327964f]

28 **Gupta A**, Wood R, Kaplan R, Bekker LG, Lawn SD. Tuberculosis incidence rates during 8 years of follow-up of an antiretroviral treatment cohort in South Africa: comparison with rates in the community. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e34156 [PMID: 22479548 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0034156]

29 **Golub JE**, Saraceni V, Cavalcante SC, Pacheco AG, Moulton LH, King BS, Efron A, Moore RD, Chaisson RE, Durovni B. The impact of antiretroviral therapy and isoniazid preventive therapy on tuberculosis incidence in HIV-infected patients in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 1441-1448 [PMID: 17589190 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328216f441]

30 **Yirdaw KD**, Jerene D, Gashu Z, Edginton ME, Kumar AM, Letamo Y, Feleke B, Teklu AM, Zewdu S, Weiss B, Ruff A. Beneficial effect of isoniazid preventive therapy and antiretroviral therapy on the incidence of tuberculosis in people living with HIV in Ethiopia. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e104557 [PMID: 25105417 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0104557]

31 **Durovni B**, Cavalcante SC, Saraceni V, Vellozo V, Israel G, King BS, Cohn S, Efron A, Pacheco AG, Moulton LH, Chaisson RE, Golub JE. The implementation of isoniazid preventive therapy in HIV clinics: the experience from the TB/HIV in Rio (THRio) study. *AIDS* 2010; **24** Suppl 5: S49-S56 [PMID: 21079428 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000391022.95412.a6]

32 **Rowe KA**, Makhubele B, Hargreaves JR, Porter JD, Hausler HP, Pronyk PM. Adherence to TB preventive therapy for HIV-positive patients in rural South Africa: implications for antiretroviral delivery in resource-poor settings? *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2005; **9**: 263-269 [PMID: 15786888]

33 **Ngamvithayapong J**, Uthaivoravit W, Yanai H, Akarasewi P, Sawanpanyalert P. Adherence to tuberculosis preventive therapy among HIV-infected persons in Chiang Rai, Thailand. *AIDS* 1997; **11**: 107-112 [PMID: 9110083 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-199701000-00016]

34 **Berhe M**, Demissie M, Tesfaye G. Isoniazid Preventive Therapy Adherence and Associated Factors among HIV Positive Patients in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. *Adv Epidemiol* 2014; **2014**: 1–6 [DOI: 10.1155/2014/230587]

35 **Frigati LJ**, Kranzer K, Cotton MF, Schaaf HS, Lombard CJ, Zar HJ. The impact of isoniazid preventive therapy and antiretroviral therapy on tuberculosis in children infected with HIV in a high tuberculosis incidence setting. *Thorax* 2011; **66**: 496-501 [PMID: 21460373 DOI: 10.1136/thx.2010.156752]

36 **le Roux SM**, Cotton MF, Golub JE, le Roux DM, Workman L, Zar HJ. Adherence to isoniazid prophylaxis among HIV-infected children: a randomized controlled trial comparing two dosing schedules. *BMC Med* 2009; **7**: 67 [PMID: 19886982 DOI: 10.1186/1741-7015-7-67]

37 **Woldehanna S**, Volmink J. Treatment of latent tuberculosis

infection in HIV infected persons. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2004; **(1)**: CD000171 [PMID: 14973947]

38 **Smieja MJ**, Marchetti CA, Cook DJ, Smaill FM. Isoniazid for preventing tuberculosis in non-HIV infected persons. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2000; **(2)**: CD001363 [PMID: 10796642]

39 **Kopanoff DE**, Snider DE, Caras GJ. Isoniazid-related hepatitis: a U.S. Public Health Service cooperative surveillance study. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1978; **117**: 991-1001 [PMID: 666111]

40 **Salpeter SR**. Fatal isoniazid-induced hepatitis. Its risk during chemoprophylaxis. *West J Med* 1993; **159**: 560-564 [PMID: 8279152]

41 **Nolan CM**, Goldberg SV, Buskin SE. Hepatotoxicity associated with isoniazid preventive therapy: a 7-year survey from a public health tuberculosis clinic. *JAMA* 1999; **281**: 1014-1018 [PMID: 10086436 DOI: 10.1001/jama.281.11.1014]

42 **Rangaka MX**, Wilkinson RJ, Boulle A, Glynn JR, Fielding K, van Cutsem G, Wilkinson KA, Goliath R, Mathee S, Goemaere E, Maartens G. Isoniazid plus antiretroviral therapy to prevent tuberculosis: a randomised double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2014; **384**: 682–690 [DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)60162-8]

43 **Rose DN**. Short-course prophylaxis against tuberculosis in HIV-infected persons. A decision and cost-effectiveness analysis. *Ann Intern Med* 1998; **129**: 779-786 [PMID: 9841583 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-129-10-199811150-00005]

44 **Kumaranayake GCL**, Fielding K, Grant A, Roux S, Charala mbous S, Day J. Cost-effectiveness of isoniazid prevent ative therapy of averting tuberculosis among HIV-infected employees in South African: evaluation of a randomised intervention. XV Int. AIDS Conference; 2004 Jul 11-16; Bangkok, Thailand

45 **World Health Organization (WHO)**. Report of a WHO Joint HIV and TB Department Meeting. 2008. Report from WHO's Three I's Meeting: intensified case finding (ICF), isoniazid preventive therapy (IPT) and TB infection control (IC) for people living with HIV, 2–4 April 2008. Available from: http: //www.who.int/hiv/pub/meetingreports/WHO_3Is_meeting_report.pdf

46 **Shrestha RK**, Mugisha B, Bunnell R, Mermin J, Odeke R, Madra P, Hitimana-Lukanika C, Adatu-Engwau F, Blandford JM. Cost-utility of tuberculosis prevention among HIV-infected adults in Kampala, Uganda. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2007; **11**: 747-754 [PMID: 17609049]

47 **Bell JC**, Rose DN, Sacks HS. Tuberculosis preventive therapy for HIV-infected people in sub-Saharan Africa is cost-effective. *AIDS* 1999; **13**: 1549-1556 [PMID: 10465080 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-199908200-00016]

48 **Pho MT**, Swaminathan S, Kumarasamy N, Losina E, Ponnuraja C, Uhler LM, Scott CA, Mayer KH, Freedberg KA, Walensky RP. The cost-effectiveness of tuberculosis preventive therapy for HIV-infected individuals in southern India: a trial-based analysis. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e36001 [PMID: 22558301 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0036001]

49 **Madhi SA**, Nachman S, Violari A, Kim S, Cotton MF, Bobat R, Jean-Philippe P, McSherry G, Mitchell C. Primary isoniazid prophylaxis against tuberculosis in HIV-exposed children. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 21-31 [PMID: 21732834 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1011214]

50 **Ayieko J**, Abuogi L, Simchowitz B, Bukusi EA, Smith AH, Reingold A. Efficacy of isoniazid prophylactic therapy in prevention of tuberculosis in children: a meta-analysis. *BMC Infect Dis* 2014; **14**: 91 [PMID: 24555539 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-14-91]

51 **Madhi SA**, Huebner RE, Doedens L, Aduc T, Wesley D, Cooper PA. HIV-1 co-infection in children hospitalised with tuberculosis in South Africa. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2000; **4**: 448-454 [PMID: 10815739]

52 **le Roux SM**, Cotton MF, Myer L, le Roux DM, Schaaf HS, Lombard CJ, Zar HJ. Safety of long-term isoniazid preventive therapy in children with HIV: a comparison of two dosing schedules. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2013; **17**: 26-31 [PMID: 23146410 DOI: 10.5588/ijtld.11.0820]

53 **Zar HJ**, Cotton MF, Strauss S, Karpakis J, Hussey G, Schaaf HS, Rabie H, Lombard CJ. Effect of isoniazid prophylaxis on mortality and incidence of tuberculosis in children with HIV: randomised controlled trial. *BMJ* 2007; **334**: 136 [PMID: 17085459 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.39000.486400.55]

54 **Getahun H**, Granich R, Sculier D, Gunneberg C, Blanc L, Nunn P, Raviglione M. Implementation of isoniazid preventive therapy for people living with HIV worldwide: barriers and solutions. *AIDS* 2010; **24** Suppl 5: S57-S65 [PMID: 21079430 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000391023.03037.1f]

55 **World Health Organization (WHO)**. Policy statement on preventive therapy against tuberculosis in people living with HIV. (WHO/TB/98.255). Geneva, Switzerland, 1998

56 **Elzi L**, Schlegel M, Weber R, Hirschel B, Cavassini M, Schmid P, Bernasconi E, Rickenbach M, Furrer H. Reducing tuberculosis incidence by tuberculin skin testing, preventive treatment, and antiretroviral therapy in an area of low tuberculosis transmission. *Clin Infect Dis* 2007; **44**: 94-102 [PMID: 17143823 DOI: 10.1086/510080]

57 **Sackoff JE**, Torian LV, Frieden TR, Brudney KF, Menzies IB. Purified protein derivative testing and tuberculosis preventive therapy for HIV-infected patients in New York City. *AIDS* 1998; **12**: 2017-2023 [PMID: 9814870 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-199815000-00013]

58 **Swaminathan S**, Subbaraman R, Venkatesan P, Subramanyam S, Kumar SR, Mayer KH, Narayanan PR. Tuberculin skin test results in HIV-infected patients in India: implications for latent tuberculosis treatment. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2008; **12**: 168-173 [PMID: 18230249]

59 **Klein RS**, Flanigan T, Schuman P, Smith D, Vlahov D. The effect of immunodeficiency on cutaneous delayed-type hypersensitivity testing in HIV-infected women without anergy: implications for tuberculin testing. HER Study Group. HIV Epidemiology Research. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 1999; **3**: 681-688 [PMID: 10460100]

P- Reviewer: Bisen P, Ingrosso L **S- Editor**: Song XX
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.113

World J Virol 2015 May 12; 4(2): 113-123
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Is transfusion-transmitted dengue fever a potential public health threat?

Bruno Pozzetto, Meriam Memmi, Olivier Garraud

Bruno Pozzetto, Meriam Memmi, Olivier Garraud, Groupe Immunité des Muqueuses et Agents Pathogènes (GIMAP EA3064), Faculty of Medicine Jacques Lisfranc, University of Lyon, 42023 Saint-Etienne cedex 02, France
Bruno Pozzetto, Laboratory of Infectious Agents and Hygiene, University-Hospital of Saint-Etienne, 42055 Saint-Etienne, France
Olivier Garraud, Institut National de la Transfusion Sanguine , 75011 Paris, France
Author contributions: Pozzetto B conceived the review and wrote the paper; Memmi M updated the bibliography, took care of the figures, contributed to the redaction of the manuscript and approved it; Garraud O improved substantially the content of the manuscript and approved it.
Conflict-of-interest: The authors declared no conflict of interest with regard to the subject of this article.

Correspondence to: Bruno Pozzetto, MD, PhD, Professor of Medicine, Groupe Immunité des Muqueuses et Agents Pathogènes (GIMAP-EA 3064), Faculty of Medicine Jacques Lisfranc, University of Lyon, 15 rue Ambroise Paré, 42023 Saint-Etienne cedex 02, France. bruno.pozzetto@univ-st-etienne.fr
Telephone: +33-4-77828434
Received: August 23, 2014
Peer-review started: August 24, 2014
First decision: September 16, 2014
Revised: October 29, 2014
Accepted: Janurary 18, 2015
Article in press: Janurary 20, 2015
Published online: May 12, 2015

Abstract

Dengue is an arboviruses due to single-stranded enveloped ribonucleic acid viruses, named dengue viruses (DENV), that include four serotypes and are mainly transmitted *via* the bite of mosquitoes of the genus *Aedes* (*A. aegypti* and *A. albopictus*). The distribution of the disease was historically limited to intertropical areas; however, during the last thirty years, the perimeter of the disease extended considerably and temperate areas are now at risk of outbreaks. The present global burden of dengue is considerable: 2.5 billion people over more than 100 countries are concerned; 50 to 100 million infections occur every year, with a number of fatal cases of approximately 20000. Although frequently asymptomatic or limited to a mild fever, dengue is responsible for severe cases mainly consecutive to the occurrence of hemorrhagic complications that can lead to shock and death, notably in children from poor-resource settings. The place of DENV as a transfusion-transmitted pathogen has been recognized only in 2008. At the present time, only five cases of transfusion-transmitted dengue, including one case of dengue hemorrhagic fever, have been formerly documented. This review provides a general overview of dengue, its viruses and their vectors. It replaces the disease in the context of other viral diseases transmitted by arthropods. It discusses the threat of dengue on the supply of blood products in endemic and non endemic areas. Finally, it describes the specific and non specific measures available for improving the security of blood products with regards to this emerging risk. Interestingly, in 2009, the American Association of Blood Banks placed DENV in the highest category of emerging infectious agents for their potential impact on transfusion recipient safety for the next years in North America.

Key words: Dengue; Dengue viruses; *A. aegypti*; *A. albopictus*; Transfusion-transmitted virus; Blood safety

Core tip: The place of dengue viruses as transfusion-transmitted pathogens has been recognized only in 2008. By now, only five cases of transfusion-transmitted dengue, including one case of dengue haemorrhagic fever, have been formerly documented. This review provides a general overview of dengue, its viruses and their vectors. It replaces the disease in the context of other viral diseases transmitted by arthropods. It discusses the threat of dengue on the supply of blood products in endemic and non-endemic areas. Finally, it describes the specific and non-specific measures available for improving the security of blood products concerning this emerging risk.

Pozzetto B, Memmi M, Garraud O. Is transfusion-transmitted dengue fever a potential public health threat? *World J Virol* 2015; 4(2): 113-123 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i2/113.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.113

INTRODUCTION

Dengue is an arboviruses mainly transmitted by mosquito bite that constitutes a major public health concern: two-fifths of the world's population, mainly located in the intertropical regions, are exposed to the risk of infection. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), an estimated 500000 people with severe dengue require hospitalization each year, a large proportion of whom are children; about 2.5% of those affected die[1]. Despite the large distribution of this "old" infection and the fact that the virus can be present for about one week in the blood of infected patients, the risk of dengue as a transfusion-transmitted disease emerged very recently (first publications in 2008). An attempt to explain this paradox is proposed later in this review. After a few recalls concerning dengue, its viruses and their vectors, the disease is replaced in the larger context of arboviruses associated to a demonstrated or possible risk of transmission *via* blood products. The third part of the manuscript intends to answer the question formulated in the title of the paper: "Is transfusion-transmitted dengue fever a potential public health threat?" The last part of the study describes the measures available for reducing this risk.

RECALLS ON DENGUE, ITS VIRUSES AND THEIR VECTORS

Dengue viruses

Dengue viruses (DENV) are single-stranded ribonucleic acid (RNA) viruses, 40 to 60 nm in size, belonging to the *Flaviviridae* family (Table 1) and exhibiting an icosahedral capsid and a lipid envelope. The viral genome codes for ten viral proteins: three structural (core, membrane-associated and envelope) and seven non structural ones. The envelope protein is responsible for the specific recognition of host cells and for the development of protective neutralizing antibodies. Non structural proteins have been associated with the pathogenesis of severe forms of the disease. Dengue viruses include four serotypes entitled DEN-1, DEN-2, DEN-3 and DEN-4. The infection by one serotype confers a strong protection against the corresponding serotype but only a partial immunity against the three other ones, which explains that an individual can be infected several times during life by DENV. It is worthwhile to note that a fifth dengue serotype has been identified on virus samples that were collected during an outbreak in Malaysia in 2007[2]. More data are awaited about the epidemiological significance of this observation.

Vectors of DENV

The main vectors of DENV are mosquitoes of the *Aedes* genus (also called *Stegomya*).

The most common vector of dengue viruses is *Aedes aegypti* whose distribution is very large in intertropical regions of the world (Figure 1). In the Americas, discontinuation of *Aedes aegypti* control efforts in the mid-20th century has led to a resurgence of dengue throughout South and Central America, resulting in hundreds of thousands of dengue cases in these areas. In October 2012, an outbreak of DEN-1 infection was documented for the first time in the Portuguese island of Madeira[3]; the viral strain was shown to be very close to a virus strain originated from Venezuela[4].

Aedes albopictus (the tiger mosquito) is also involved in dengue outbreaks or isolated cases, notably in temperate regions as Europe where the mosquito is able to survive in cooler environment and expended very quickly (Figure 1) from Asia following the international trade in used tyres and other goods such as lucky bamboo. In 2010, an autochthonous outbreak of dengue was documented in Croatia[5] and two sporadic cases were identified in Nice city in the South-East of France[6].

A third species, *Aedes polynesiensis*, has been involved in rare cases. *Aedes* mosquitoes are highly domesticated mosquitoes that are able to grow in urban environment, notably in human-made containers filed with stagnant water (*e.g.*, water storage tanks, subterranean pits, flowerpot trays). Interestingly, when both viruses are present in the same area, *Aedes albopictus* is able to displace *Aedes aegypti* from competing environment, which would facilitate the dissemination of DENV into temperate regions that are refractory to colonization by *Aedes aegypti*[7].

Routes of transmission of DENV

Dengue is mainly a mosquito-borne infectious disease. Besides the sylvatic reservoir that involves not human primates with occasional contamination of humans, the human cases are mostly related to the urban or

Table 1 Main arboviruses exhibiting a potential or demonstrated transfusion-associated risk

	Dengue virus	West Nile virus	Saint-Louis encephalitis virus	Tick-borne encephalitis virus	Chikungunya virus	Colorado tick fever virus
Family	*Flaviviridae*	*Flaviviridae*	*Flaviviridae*	*Flaviviridae*	*Togaviridae*	*Reoviridae*
Virus characteristics						
Nucleic acid	ssRNA	ssRNA	ssRNA	ssRNA	ssRNA	dsRNA
Envelope	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Vectors	Mosquitoes (*Aedes aegypti* and *Aedes albopictus*)	Mosquitoes (genus *Culex* but also Aedes albopictus)	Mosquitoes (genus *Culex*)	Ticks (genus *Ixodes*)	Mosquitoes (*Aedes aegypti*, *Aedes albopictus*)	Ticks (*Dermacentor andersoni*)
Usual vertebrate hosts	Humans	Birds	Birds	Rodents	Humans, primates	Humans
Geographical distribution	World (mainly intertropical regions)	Asia, Africa, Europe, Americas	Americas	Europe, Asia	Africa, Asia, West Pacific, Europe,	Western USA and Canada
Clinical features						
Incubation period in days	2-14	2-14	4-21	7-14	1-12	3-6
Asymptomatic forms	75%	80%	> 99%	80%	15%	low%
Clinical manifestations	DF-DHF-DSS	Fever-encephalitis	Fever-encephalitis	Fever-encephalitis	Fever-joint pains	Fever-encephalitis
Vaccine	Phase Ⅲ trials	No	No	Yes	No	No
Demonstrated transfusion-transmitted cases	Yes	Yes (high number)	No	Yes	No	Yes

ssRNA: Single-stranded RNA; dsRNA: Double-stranded RNA; DF: Dengue fever; DHF: Dengue hemorrhagic fever; DSS: Dengue shock syndrome; CHIKV: Chikungunya virus.

peri-urban cycle where human beings are the main amplifying host for DENV (Figure 2). Female mosquitoes get infected by biting infected humans during their viremic phase; after 7 to 14 d of incubation, the mosquito is able to transmit the virus *via* blood feeding. Besides mosquito biting, DENV may be accidentally acquired after vertical transmission, especially in near-term pregnant women through the placenta[8], *via* the organ transplantation process[9,10], after needle-stick injury[11] and, as evidenced below, after transfusion of blood products.

Clinical presentation

The infection occurs after an incubation period of 3-14 d (average 3-7 d). Approximately 75% of all DENV infections are asymptomatic, notably in adults. The common symptomatic infection, which appears as a mild febrile illness associated or not with more evocative symptoms, represent approximately 20% of DENV infections. In endemic areas, about 5% of all acute febrile illnesses can be related to DENV[12]. Severe forms may represent up to 5% of symptomatic infections; they are more frequent at the two extremes of life (very young children and elderly) and in patients with diabetes mellitus, hypertension and renal insufficiency[13]. As shown in Figure 3, the classification of dengue presentations evolved through time[14]. According to the WHO classifications of 1975 and 1997, symptomatic dengue was divided in undifferentiated fever, dengue fever (DF) and dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) ranging from mild hemorrhagic symptoms (grade Ⅰ) to dengue shock syndrome (DSS) (grades Ⅲ and Ⅳ). In 2009, WHO proposed a new simplified classification in two presentations: dengue (without or with warning signs) and severe dengue (Figure 3). The latter classification is more adapted to clinical evaluations in primary care or resource-limited settings; however, it does not differentiate hemorrhagic forms from other severe presentations. A trend to capillary fragility together with the risk of thrombocytopenia is common features of all dengue cases, even those without hemorrhagic complications. It can be searched for by the tourniquet test that consists in applying and inflating a blood pressure cuff to the midpoint between the systolic and diastolic blood pressures for five minutes. The test is positive if more than 10 to 20 petechiae per square inch develop.

Pathophysiology

From a pathophysiological point of view, many aspects of disease remain unsolved (for a review, see[15]). The fist targets of DENV after mosquito bite seems to be Langerhans cells, dermal cells and interstitial dendritic cells, but many other cells can replicate the virus, including hepatocytes, lymphocytes, endothelial cells, neuronal cells and muscle satellite cells[16]. Dendritic cell-specific intercellular adhesion molecule-3-grabbing non-integrin (DC-SIGN)[17] and the mannose receptor (CD206)[18] have been described as potential host receptors for virus entry. As for other flaviviruses, both signal transducer and activator of transcription 1 and 2 possess the ability to independently limit the severity of DENV pathogenesis. When these signalling pathways are inactivated, notably within the hepatosplenic compartment, the deregulation of cell-mediated immunity may lead to the activation of CD4+ and CD8+ T cells, which results in a "cytokine/chemokine storm" that plays an important role in the vascular permeability leading to leakage of plasma into the extravascular compartment seen in DHF. The resulting

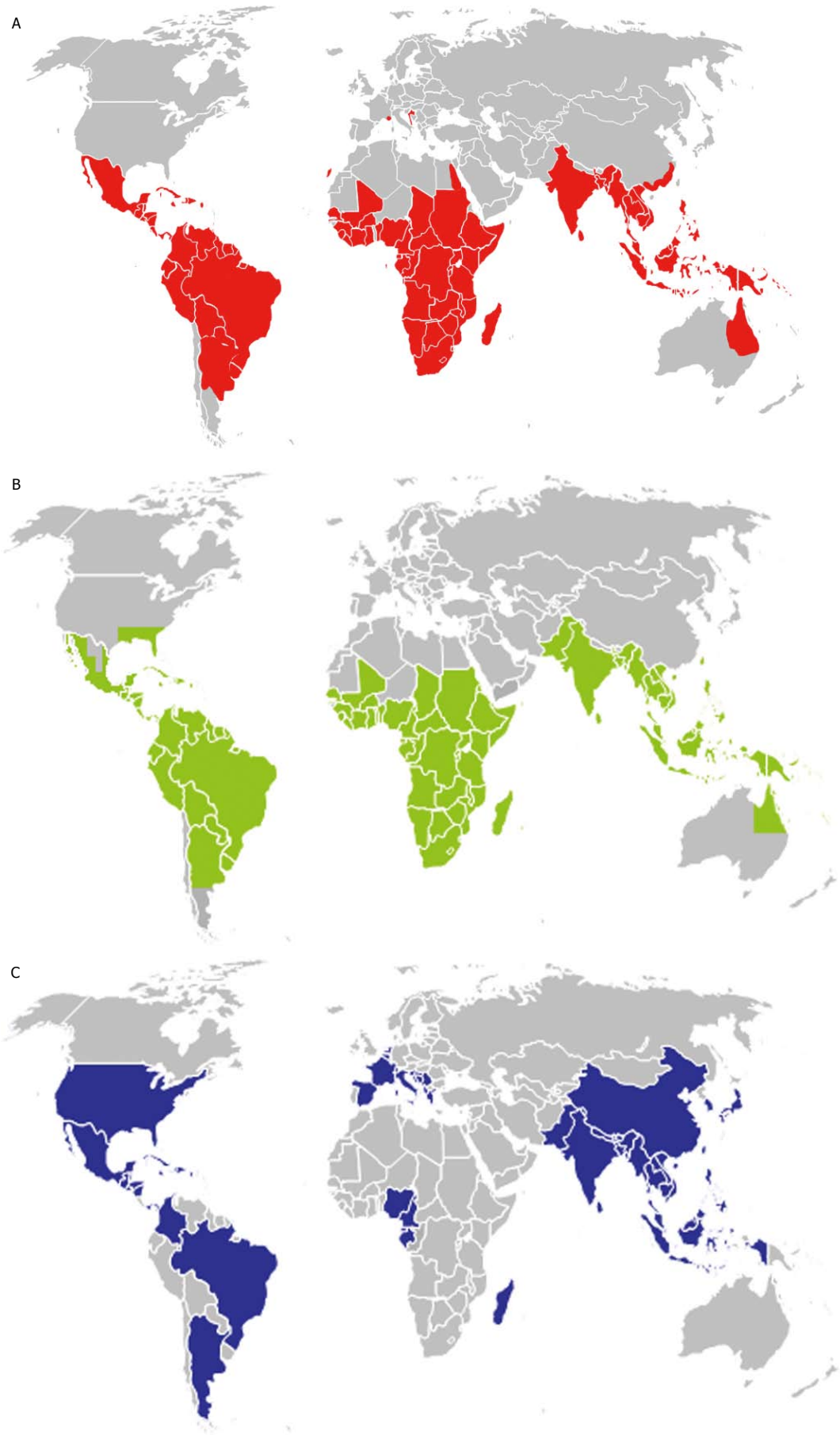


Figure 1 Overall distribution of dengue cases (endemic or epidemic) worldwide (A) and perimeter of expansion of the two main vectors of dengue viruses, *Aedes aegypti* (B) and *Aedes albopictus* (C).

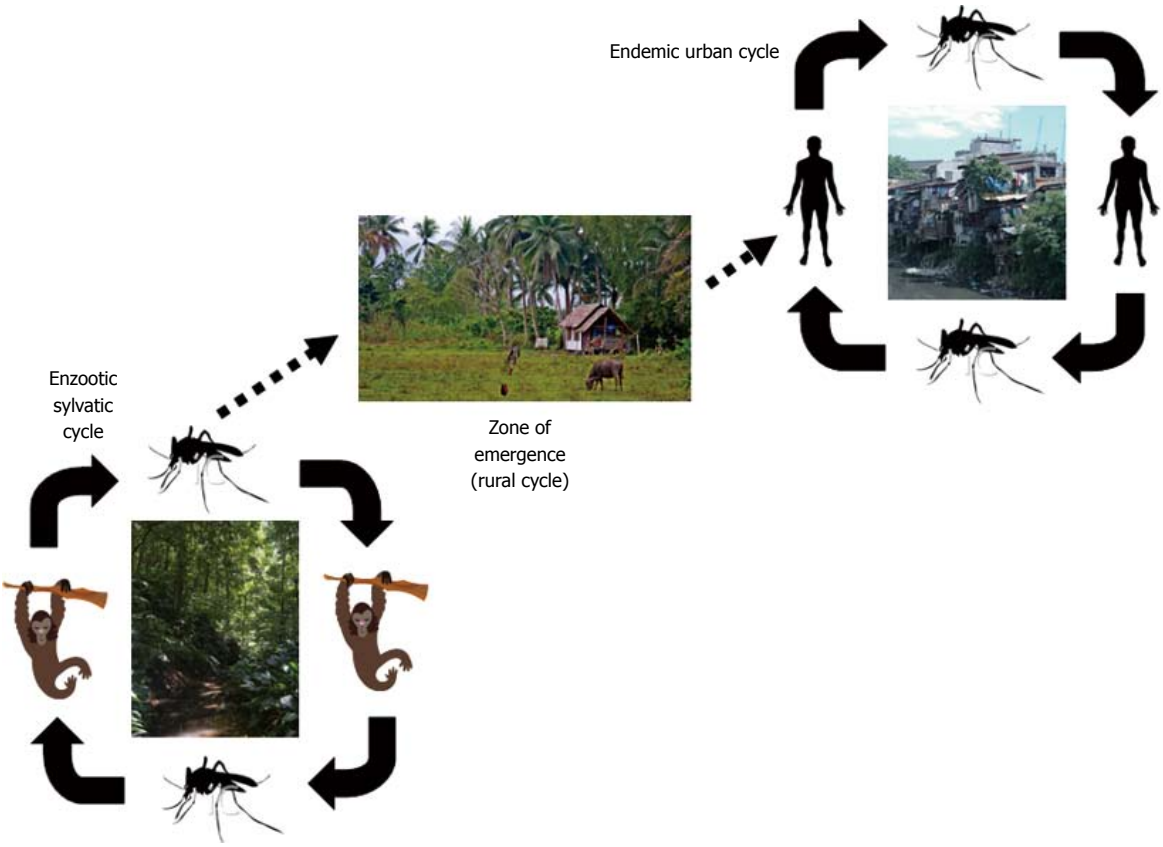


Figure 2 Simplified representation of the sylvatic and urban/peri-urban cycles of dengue that models the natural spread of dengue viruses through bites by infected mosquitoes.

hemoconcentration and decreased blood pressure may result in DSS.

More severe infections are known to occur after secondary infection than after primary infection. It has been suggested that facilitating antibodies against the envelope glycoprotein[19] and the "original antibody sin" theory[20] are involved in this observation.

Laboratory diagnosis

The virological diagnosis of dengue is required in case of severe infection and for confirming an outbreak. Different tools of direct diagnosis including cell culture, antigen detection and nucleic acid technologies (NAT), and of indirect diagnosis (serological tests) are available for documenting a recent infection.

Virus isolation from blood or tissues is possible by inoculation to mosquitoes or cell culture but these techniques are fastidious and limited to specialised laboratories.

In contrast, serological tests are very useful because they are relatively simple to implement, even in the absence of a laboratory of virology. They consists in microplate immunoassays that can measure IgM-specific antibodies, positive as soon as 4-5 d after the beginning of symptoms and lasting for up to 6 mo[21] (with a peak at week 2), and IgG-specific antibodies that become positive a few days after IgM and are a long-lasting marker of past infection. In patients infected at any time by other flaviviruses, which is relatively common in endemic areas, cross-reactive antibodies may interact with dengue serology and lead to false-positive results. The measure of neutralizing antibodies on a late serum specimen, a technique that requires cell culture within a specialised laboratory, may be useful to distinguish specific from unspecific IgM response.

An antigen test detecting the DENV NS1 protein in blood by immunoassay is now available. It is positive during the first 5 d following the initial symptoms. The sensitivity of the test is optimal during primary infection[22]. A negative test does not exclude the diagnosis in case of secondary infection[23,24].

The detection of DENV genome in blood or tissues by NAT has become the gold standard for the diagnosis of recent infection. It is positive within the first 5 d of disease. NAT tests are very sensitive and specific. Different molecular technologies are used for the diagnosis of DENV infection, including realtime polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR), transcription-mediated amplification (TMA) and other isothermal amplification assays. The choice of primers may apply either on highly conserved parts of RNA genome within the 4 serotypes or on a combination of sequences specific of each of the 4 serotypes.

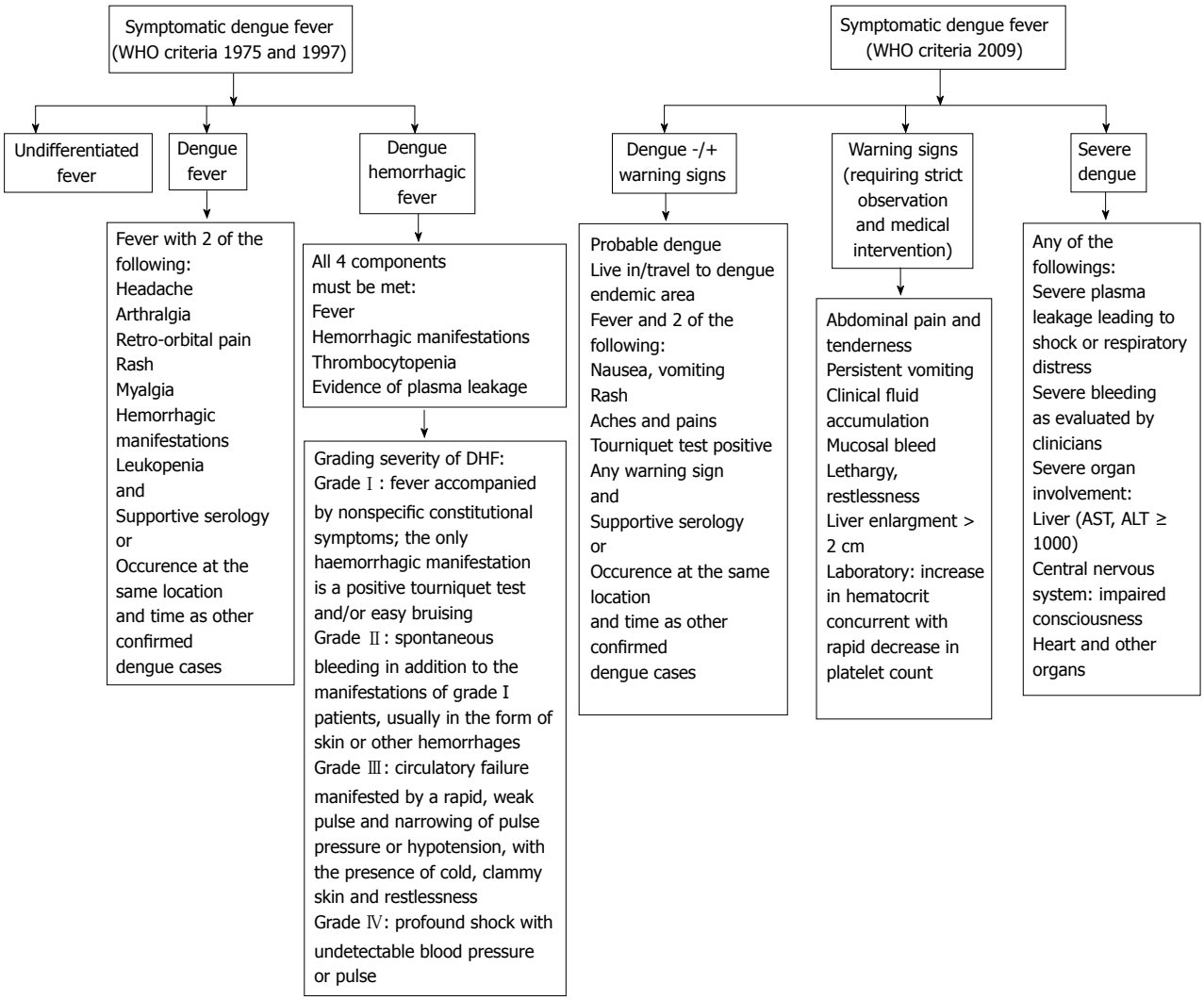


Figure 3 Successive classifications of dengue clinical presentations according to the World Health Organisation definitions. WHO: World Health Organisation. AST: Aspartate transaminase; ALT: Alanine transaminase.

Prevention

At the individual level, the vaccinal approach is certainly the more suitable way to control dengue durably. The existence of at least four serotypes that are sufficiently antigenically different necessitates the use of four monovalent vaccines. However, as mentioned above, there is safety concern about a possible increase of virus infectivity *via* antibody dependent enhancement when a vaccinated subject is exposed to a wild virus. Although no vaccine against dengue is presently available, several approaches have been proposed for controlling the spread of disease (for review, see[25,26]). The most advanced solution is a live-attenuated tetravalent vaccine based on chimeric yellow fever dengue virus that is produced by Sanofi and could be commercially-available before the end of this year.

At the vector level, the eradication of susceptible mosquitoes is the more effective way to contain the epidemic. However, the large use of insecticides has shown its limits in terms of toxicity for the environment together with the rapid development of cross-resistances. A vector control program has been launched by the WHO[27]. It is based on actions combining the elimination of containers harbouring larval and adult mosquitoes (plastic cups, broken bottles, used tyres, flowerpots), the use of insect repellents, mosquito traps and mosquito net in the home. Future strategies are in progress to modify the vectors by biological interventions including transgenic mosquitoes or their infection by the intracellular bacterium *Wolbachia* that reduces the replication of arboviruses in susceptible vectors[28,29].

Curative treatment

The curative treatment is mainly symptomatic. No antiviral drug has yet demonstrated any effect against DENV. DF resolves spontaneously within a few days; analgesics containing ibuprofen and aspirin must be avoided to prevent hemorrhagic complications. Cases of DHF must be hospitalised; with replacement of fluid leakage and intensive monitoring; the mortality can be reduced under 1% when adequate cares are given but may reach up to 20% in case of poor medical intake.

DSS and severe forms of dengue involving organ failure constitute a critical medical issue that needs urgent hospitalisation in an emergency unit.

DENGUE IN THE LARGER CONTEXT OF ARBOVIRAL DISEASES ASSOCIATED TO A DEMONSTRATED OR POSSIBLE RISK OF TRANSMISSION *VIA* BLOOD PRODUCTS

A total of approximately 130 arboviruses are known to cause disease in humans. Since they are transmitted *via* arthropod bite, these viruses are present in the bloodstream for a few days, which imply an at least theoretical risk of transmission *via* blood products if the patients are sampled during the viremic stage. The arboviruses known or suspected to be transmitted to recipients *via* blood products are presented in Table 1.

As reviewed by Petersen *et al*[30], the emergence of West Nile virus (WNV) in New York City in 1999 ant its rapid dissemination through Northern America during the following years is a good illustration of the sudden recognition of the role of transfusions in the spread of the virus, a fact that had been completely occulted before, despite many decades of circulation of WNV in the Ancient world. At the early phase of the USA outbreak, it was relatively difficult to establish a relationship between WNV infection and blood products[31,32], mainly due to the limits of contemporary diagnostic tools (IgM serology and NAT) that were insufficiently sensitive to identify infected donors, even retrospectively[30]. Another lesson driven from the WNV outbreak in USA was the decreased sensitivity of NAT when tested on minipools, a measure intended to decrease the costs and delay of WNV screening in blood donors.

The very successful emergence of Chikungunya virus (CHIKV) in the Indian Ocean and notably in the French Reunion Island is another illustration of the recent recognition of a new transfusion-transmitted risk. Even if no positive case was documented by NAT, probably for the same reasons as those evoked just before, it was modelled that, given a mean duration of 7.5 d for viremia and an exposition rate to CHIKV of 38% in inhabitants of the island, the prevention measures taken (eviction of autochthonous donors for red blood cells and systematic treatment of platelets by the Intercept® technology) had prevented the use of approximately 40 infected gifts during the whole epidemic period[33].

Concerning arboviral diseases in general, these examples illustrate that "planning efforts are hindered by the notoriously unpredictable nature of outbreaks and that importations of exotic arboviruses are random events with uncertain consequences"[30]. The rapid extension of dengue suggests that the subsequent transfusion transmission risk can be partly anticipated.

EVIDENCE FOR THE TRANSMISSION OF DENV BY BLOOD PRODUCTS AND ITS IMPACT ON PUBLIC HEALTH

As stated above, the global burden of dengue is considerable: according to the WHO, 2.5 billion people over more than 100 countries are concerned; 50 to 100 million infections occur every year, with a number of fatal cases of approximately 20000. A recent study[34] estimated that these figures could be increased by a factor of 3 to 4 to reflect the real load of dengue.

Despite the fact that dengue is the leading arboviruses in the world, there are only three reported observations of DENV transmission *via* blood products in the literature. The first report concerned a 76 year-old woman who received a blood transfusion in 2002 in a Hong-Kong hospital following a severe anaemia; two days later, she developed low-grade fever that resolved spontaneously (she received antibiotics for a suspicion of urinary infection). The case was secondarily related to dengue because the donor presented a typical dengue infection documented by serology. Molecular testing performed on the donated blood product was positive for DEN-1. Two months after transfusion, the recipient exhibited IgM antibodies confirmed by seroneutralisation assay. The case was published only six years later[35]. The second study, also published in 2008[36], involved a cluster of three cases contaminated in Singapore by the same donor who developed fever and myalgia after blood donation. Two days after transfusion, 2 of the 3 recipients developed a symptomatic infection that resolved spontaneously. The 3 recipients demonstrated serological evidence of acute dengue infection. A PCR assay performed on blood specimens from the donor and the 2 symptomatic recipients was positive for DEN-2.

The third observation, published in 2012[37] was documented from the outbreak of dengue that occurred in Puerto-Rico in 2007. Of 15350 donation samples tested retrospectively, 29 were found positive for DENV genome by TMA assay. Three of the recipients of these contaminated samples could be tested by NAT and one of them, who received red blood cells containing 10^8 copies/mL DEN-2, was found positive. Three days after transfusion, he developed DHF. Both donor and recipient were shown to harbour viruses with the same envelope sequence. This is the first case of severe dengue infection transmitted by blood products.

One may wonder about the gap between the important role played by dengue in Public Health worldwide and the limited number of transfusion-transmitted documented cases reported so far. Different arguments can be advanced for explaining such a paradox: (1) in the absence of documented inquiry between donor and recipient, it is often difficult to differentiate infection

transmitted by mosquitoes and blood products; (2) the disease is frequently asymptomatic or mild in donor, recipient or both, with spontaneous resolution within a few days; (3) most of transfusion-transmitted cases are intended to occur in areas where dengue is endemic, which contributes to minimize the risk, especially in low-income countries where the virological documentation of dengue cases is not available easily, and, last but not least, and (4) most recipients of blood products have been already exposed to mosquito-transmitted DENV early in their life, which prevents them from being infected again *via* infected blood products.

In 2009, the American Association of Blood Banks stratified in four levels (red, orange, yellow and green) the emergent or re-emergent infectious agents that could represent a potential threat to transfusion in North America for the next years[38]. Besides epidemiological considerations and subjective assessment of public perception, the following scientific criteria were taken into consideration: (1) the agent must be present in blood at least for a few hours or days; (2) this blood phase must be at least in part asymptomatic for allowing the blood donor to pass through the filter of clinical selection; (3) the infectious agent must be able to induce, at least in some cases, a severe disease; and (4) finally, the blood pathogen must resist to inactivation by the innate or adaptative immunity of the donor (*i.e.*, bacterical power of serum). According to these criteria, DENV was classified in the upper red level, together with *Babesia sp* and the human variant of Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease. These agents were considered as low to high scientific/epidemiologic evidence of risk regarding blood safety with the potential for severe clinical outcomes.

The arguments that pleaded for the upper-level classification of DENV with regard to blood safety in North America were as follows[38]: (1) the viremia is frequently asymptomatic and usually lasts for 2 to 7 d; (2) the viral load may be relatively high (from 10^4 to 10^8 copies/mL by NAT) in blood with the four serotypes of DENV, as exemplified by retrospective studies conducted in blood donors from Honduras, Brazil[39] and Puerto-Rico[37], with recovery of live virus from PCR-positive products in a few cases; (3) the disease can occur as important outbreaks; (4) the competent mosquitoes have a large distribution in the considered area (here United States); (5) the viral infection has a high seroprevalence in populations boarding the considered area; and (6) infected blood products could be imported from epidemic or endemic areas. At the opposite, the prevalence of positive samples was relatively low in the retrospective studies cited above (0.07% in 16521 blood gifts from Puerto-Rico[40], 0.30% in 2994 blood gifts from Honduras[39] and 0.06% in 4858 blood gifts from Brazil[39]).

The potential threat of dengue to transfusion safety is majored by the rapid spread of the disease worldwide whose incidence has increased 30-fold in the past 50 years[41]. Half of the planet is already exposed (Figure 1A) and the distribution of competent vectors (Figures 1B and C) is progressing very rapidly, notably with the climate changes[42] and the development of transcontinental travels. Regions with temperate climate as Europe or North America[43] can be the target of future outbreaks as illustrated by the recent cases observed in Croatia[5], Nice[6] or Florida[44]. In non-dengue endemic areas, asymptomatic infection is primarily associated with travellers returning from dengue-endemic areas. A few years ago, the recovery of areas endemic for malaria and dengue favoured the selection of blood donors returning from these countries. By now, dengue, as well as other arbovirosis, constitutes a risk that needs to be taken into consideration specifically.

MEASURES AVAILABLE FOR REDUCING THE RISK OF TRANSFUSION-TRANSMITTED DENGUE

Until a vaccine is widely used for preventing the expansion of dengue through the world population, it will be necessary to implement measures able to reduce the risk of transfusion-transmitted dengue. These measures include (1) the clinical selection of donors; (2) the implementation of screening tests specific for dengue; and (3) the non-specific reduction or inactivation of pathogens by the use of physical or chemical treatments applied to blood products. Their indications may differ in endemic and non-endemic areas[45].

Clinical selection of donors

In endemic areas, this measure would consist in excluding donors who may be at higher risk of infection. Given the fact that the exposition to mosquito bite is rather unpredictable, such a measure is not realistic. On the other hand, the presence of fever in donors of blood products is a general contra-indication of blood gift.

In non endemic areas, the clinical selection of donors consists in excluding travellers returning from endemic regions for a period of 4 wk. For instance, the latter measure was adapted in Europe towards tourists returning from Madeira during the recent 2012-2013 outbreak. The main limit of this strategy is the need for continuous adaptation of these exclusion measures to various epidemiological situations, which may lead to complicate the work of personnel in charge of this selection and to discourage donors from coming again for blood gift.

Screening tests specific for dengue

This strategy is useful in endemic areas or during an outbreak. Serology is not adapted for screening purpose because the viremia precedes of a few days the antibody answer. Only NAT could allow detecting the

presence of viral genome in blood from infected donors. Such a strategy was applied in the Puerto-Rico outbreak in 2005[40] and 2007[37]. During the Madeira outbreak, an in-house RT-PCR assay was implemented for screening blood products; 43 of 1948 donations tested positive for DENV genome (further identified as DEN-1) between 9 September 2012 and 11 March 2013[46]. For large-scale screening purpose as in blood donors, Gen-Probe Inc. (San Diego, CA, United States) developed a prototype TMA assay using highly conserved primers; the analytical sensitivity of the test was of approximately 15 copies/mL for each serotype[39]. The low levels of viremia in many donors with dengue justify the individual testing of blood products, which limit this strategy to countries with high-income economy. By contrast to West Nile virus, no automated molecular screening test is currently commercially available.

In the future, the development of fully automated multiplexing assays detecting simultaneously several blood-transmitted pathogens in microarray plates or using nanotechnology would be very useful for areas where multiple infectious agents at risk for blood safety may circulate at the same time (*i.e.*, in the Caribbean or in South-East Asia)[47].

Non specific reduction or inactivation of pathogens

Many systems are now available for treating blood products in order to inactivate some pathogens (for reviews see[38,48-50]). Most of these techniques are able to inactivate bacteria and lipid-enveloped viruses as DENV. Due to technical purposes, they can be applied to plasma, platelets or red blood cells. The main techniques that are efficient on DENV are briefly describer thereafter.

Some techniques are exclusively dedicated to plasma. Solvent-detergent treatment is able to disrupt viral envelopes. Dyes containing phenothiazine like methylene blue, when activated by visible light, are responsible for an oxidation of guanine present in viral genomes. Nanofiltration is able to retain viral particles whose size is over that of the pores of the nanofilter.

Other techniques based on photoactivation by ultra-violet (UV) rays may be applied to both plasma and platelet concentrates. The Intercept® system from Cerus Corporation (Concord, CA, United States) uses a psoralen derivative, amotosalen, as active compound. The Mirasol® system from Terumo BCT (Lakewood, CO, United States) use riboflavin (vitamin B2) as active compound. The Theraflex UV® system from MacoPharma (Tourcoing, France), by combining an exposition to UV light and strong shaking, induces the formation of cyclobutyl rings. Using those different technologies, a small proportion of platelets may be lost but the properties of activation, adhesion and aggregation of the cells resisting to the treatment are sufficiently well conserved to warrant their clinical use.

For red blood concentrates, some processes are in experimentation, including riboflavin (Caridian), Inactine® (PEN110 from the Vitex Company, Prestons, NSW, Australia) and an alkylating agent, Amustaline, from Cerus Corporation, whose activation occurs through exposition to acidic pH.

The main advantage of these strategies is the inactivation or reduction of a wide range of pathogens, including those that are still unidentified. However, the benefit-risk of each treatment needs a careful evaluation.

Economic considerations

The measures listed above regarding the prevention of transfusion-transmitted dengue represent an extra-cost for the Health system, especially those involving screening molecular tests specific for dengue that would be dedicated to the transmission of a single pathogen. No cost-effectiveness study has already been conducted to evaluate the economic burden of the implementation of a molecular screening targeting DENV neither in endemic or non endemic areas.

Lessons can be drawn from the experience acquired with the systematic screening of blood products for the presence of WNV in the United States during the epidemic period. Two studies were published on this topic in 2005[51] and 2006[52]. They demonstrated that the optimal cost-effectiveness strategy for WNV screening in blood products depends on different factors, including mainly the prevalence of the agent in the considered population, but also the ability to pool or not the samples before screening (*i.e.*, mean viral load), the seasonal period concerned by the screening and the consequences for the recipients. Globally, these studies demonstrated that targeted donor screening seems to be more cost-effective than mass donor screening.

It is too early to consider whether these conclusions regarding WNV in a developed country may be applied to DENV in endemic and non endemic area. In dengue non endemic countries that correspond mostly to places with high living standards, it is likely that the emergence of a dengue outbreak will conduct to the set-up of a molecular screening, as it was done in Madeira recently[46]. In the epidemic of DENV that occurred in northern Queensland, Australia, in 2008-2009, the risk for a dengue-infectious blood donation was estimated as 1 in 7146[53]. Although the temporary exclusion of potentially infected donors was chosen to limit transfusion-transmitted dengue during these outbreaks, the authors raised the question of the better cost-effectiveness of a strategy involving the use of a suitable screening test or of a pathogen reduction technology[53].

In dengue-endemic areas, the risk may be higher, as shown during the 2005 outbreak in Singapore through a mathematical modelling, with an estimated risk for a dengue-infectious blood donation of 1 in 1667 to 6154[54]. The implementation of a screening test would be probably cost-effective as compared to the exclusion of blood donors but it is likely that neither of these two strategies could be implemented in low income

countries where the disease is the more prevalent, at least in a near future.

CONCLUSION

Dengue provides an excellent model of transfusion-transmitted disease. Despite the large distribution of the disease worldwide, the risk with blood products from infected donors was only recognized recently. Except for one case of DHF[37], the disease, when transmitted by blood, does not seem to be more severe than after mosquito bite. However, the area of dengue extended considerably during the last 50 years; after having been limited to intertropical regions for a long time, the disease is now reaching temperate areas because of the worldwide distribution of its two main vectors (Figure 1) and of the climate change[42]. Considering these emerging risks, there is an urgent need for mathematical models able to predict the spread of DENV and its consequence on the supply of blood products. While waiting for an efficient prophylactic vaccine that could be able to reduce the burden of the disease, it is important to develop efficient measures for securing blood products in endemic and non endemic areas. The attention paid to DENV as a transfusion-transmitted pathogen could help to prevent the emergence of other more harmful known or unknown viruses.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors wish to thank Mohammed Jeraiby for his careful rereading of the English style of the manuscript.

REFERENCES

1 **World Health Organization**. Dengue and severe dengue [updated March 2014]. Available from: URL: http: //www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs117/en/

2 **Normile D**. Tropical medicine. Surprising new dengue virus throws a spanner in disease control efforts. *Science* 2013; **342**: 415 [PMID: 24159024 DOI: 10.1126/science.342.6157.415]

3 **Alves MJ**, Fernandes PL, Amaro F, Osório H, Luz T, Parreira P, Andrade G, Zé-Zé L, Zeller H. Clinical presentation and laboratory findings for the first autochthonous cases of dengue fever in Madeira island, Portugal, October 2012. *Euro Surveill* 2013; **18**: [PMID: 23410256]

4 **Wilder-Smith A**, Quam M, Sessions O, Rocklov J, Liu-Helmersson J, Franco L, Khan K. The 2012 dengue outbreak in Madeira: exploring the origins. *Euro Surveill* 2014; **19**: 20718 [PMID: 24602277]

5 **Gjenero-Margan I**, Aleraj B, Krajcar D, Lesnikar V, Klobučar A, Pem-Novosel I, Kurečić-Filipović S, Komparak S, Martić R, Duričić S, Betica-Radić L, Okmadžić J, Vilibić-Čavlek T, Babić-Erceg A, Turković B, Avsić-Županc T, Radić I, Ljubić M, Sarac K, Benić N, Mlinarić-Galinović G. Autochthonous dengue fever in Croatia, August-September 2010. *Euro Surveill* 2011; **16**: [PMID: 21392489]

6 **Gould EA**, Gallian P, De Lamballerie X, Charrel RN. First cases of autochthonous dengue fever and chikungunya fever in France: from bad dream to reality! *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2010; **16**: 1702-1704 [PMID: 21040155 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-0691.2010.03386.x]

7 **Conway MJ**, Colpitts TM, Fikrig E. Role of the vector in arbovirus transmission. *Annu Rev Virol* 2014; **1**: 71-88 [DOI: 10.1146/annurev-virology-031413-085513]

8 **Pouliot SH**, Xiong X, Harville E, Paz-Soldan V, Tomashek KM, Breart G, Buekens P. Maternal dengue and pregnancy outcomes: a systematic review. *Obstet Gynecol Surv* 2010; **65**: 107-118 [PMID: 20100360 DOI: 10.1097/OGX.0b013e3181cb8fbc]

9 **Tan FL**, Loh DL, Prabhakaran K, Tambyah PA, Yap HK. Dengue haemorrhagic fever after living donor renal transplantation. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 2005; **20**: 447-448 [PMID: 15673696 DOI: 10.1093/ndt/gfh601]

10 **Rigau-Pérez JG**, Laufer MK. Dengue-related deaths in Puerto Rico, 1992-1996: diagnosis and clinical alarm signals. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **42**: 1241-1246 [PMID: 16586382 DOI: 10.1086/501355]

11 **Chen LH**, Wilson ME. Nosocomial dengue by mucocutaneous transmission. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2005; **11**: 775 [PMID: 15898174 DOI: 10.3201/eid1105.040934]

12 **Tomashek KM**, Margolis HS. Dengue: a potential transfusion-transmitted disease. *Transfusion* 2011; **51**: 1654-1660 [PMID: 21831182 DOI: 10.1111/j.1537-2995.2011.03269.x]

13 **Lee MS**, Hwang KP, Chen TC, Lu PL, Chen TP. Clinical characteristics of dengue and dengue hemorrhagic fever in a medical center of southern Taiwan during the 2002 epidemic. *J Microbiol Immunol Infect* 2006; **39**: 121-129 [PMID: 16604244]

14 **Srikiatkhachorn A**, Rothman AL, Gibbons RV, Sittisombut N, Malasit P, Ennis FA, Nimmannitya S, Kalayanarooj S. Dengue--how best to classify it. *Clin Infect Dis* 2011; **53**: 563-567 [PMID: 21832264 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cir451]

15 **Guabiraba R**, Ryffel B. Dengue virus infection: current concepts in immune mechanisms and lessons from murine models. *Immunology* 2014; **141**: 143-156 [PMID: 24182427]

16 **Warke RV**, Becerra A, Zawadzka A, Schmidt DJ, Martin KJ, Giaya K, Dinsmore JH, Woda M, Hendricks G, Levine T, Rothman AL, Bosch I. Efficient dengue virus (DENV) infection of human muscle satellite cells upregulates type I interferon response genes and differentially modulates MHC I expression on bystander and DENV-infected cells. *J Gen Virol* 2008; **89**: 1605-1615 [PMID: 18559930 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.2008/000968-0]

17 **Navarro-Sanchez E**, Altmeyer R, Amara A, Schwartz O, Fieschi F, Virelizier JL, Arenzana-Seisdedos F, Desprès P. Dendritic-cell-specific ICAM3-grabbing non-integrin is essential for the productive infection of human dendritic cells by mosquito-cell-derived dengue viruses. *EMBO Rep* 2003; **4**: 723-728 [PMID: 12783086 DOI: 10.1038/sj.embor.embor866]

18 **Miller JL**, de Wet BJ, Martinez-Pomares L, Radcliffe CM, Dwek RA, Rudd PM, Gordon S. The mannose receptor mediates dengue virus infection of macrophages. *PLoS Pathog* 2008; **4**: e17 [PMID: 18266465 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.0040017]

19 **da Silva Voorham JM**, Rodenhuis-Zybert IA, Ayala Nuñez NV, Colpitts TM, van der Ende-Metselaar H, Fikrig E, Diamond MS, Wilschut J, Smit JM. Antibodies against the envelope glycoprotein promote infectivity of immature dengue virus serotype 2. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e29957 [PMID: 22431958 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0029957]

20 **Mongkolsapaya J**, Dejnirattisai W, Xu XN, Vasanawathana S, Tangthawornchaikul N, Chairunsri A, Sawasdivorn S, Duangchinda T, Dong T, Rowland-Jones S, Yenchitsomanus PT, McMichael A, Malasit P, Screaton G. Original antigenic sin and apoptosis in the pathogenesis of dengue hemorrhagic fever. *Nat Med* 2003; **9**: 921-927 [PMID: 12808447 DOI: 10.1038/nm887]

21 **Prince HE**, Matud JL. Estimation of dengue virus IgM persistence using regression analysis. *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 2011; **18**: 2183-2185 [PMID: 22030368 DOI: 10.1128/CVI.05425-11]

22 **Kumarasamy V**, Chua SK, Hassan Z, Wahab AH, Chem YK, Mohamad M, Chua KB. Evaluating the sensitivity of a commercial dengue NS1 antigen-capture ELISA for early diagnosis of acute dengue virus infection. *Singapore Med J* 2007; **48**: 669-673 [PMID: 17609831]

23 **Tricou V**, Vu HT, Quynh NV, Nguyen CV, Tran HT, Farrar J, Wills B, Simmons CP. Comparison of two dengue NS1 rapid tests for sensitivity, specificity and relationship to viraemia and antibody responses. *BMC Infect Dis* 2010; **10**: 142 [PMID: 20509940 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-10-142]

24 **Chaterji S**, Allen JC, Chow A, Leo YS, Ooi EE. Evaluation of the NS1 rapid test and the WHO dengue classification schemes for use as bedside diagnosis of acute dengue fever in adults. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2011; **84**: 224-228 [PMID: 21292888 DOI: 10.4269/ajtmh.2011.10-0316]

25 **Thisyakorn U**, Thisyakorn C. Latest developments and future directions in dengue vaccines. *Ther Adv Vaccines* 2014; **2**: 3-9 [PMID: 24757522 DOI: 10.1177/2051013613507862]

26 **Yauch LE**, Shresta S. Dengue virus vaccine development. *Adv Virus Res* 2014; **88**: 315-372 [PMID: 24373316 DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-800098-4.00007-6]

27 **World Health Organization (WHO)**. Global strategy for dengue prevention and control, 2012-2020. Geneva: WHO Press, 2012

28 **Rodriguez-Roche R**, Gould EA. Understanding the dengue viruses and progress towards their control. *Biomed Res Int* 2013; **2013**: 690835 [PMID: 23936833 DOI: 10.1155/2013/690835]

29 **Murray NE**, Quam MB, Wilder-Smith A. Epidemiology of dengue: past, present and future prospects. *Clin Epidemiol* 2013; **5**: 299-309 [PMID: 23990732 DOI: 10.2147/CLEP.S34440]

30 **Petersen LR**, Busch MP. Transfusion-transmitted arboviruses. *Vox Sang* 2010; **98**: 495-503 [PMID: 19951309 DOI: 10.1111/j.1423-0410.2009.01286.x]

31 **Iwamoto M**, Jernigan DB, Guasch A, Trepka MJ, Blackmore CG, Hellinger WC, Pham SM, Zaki S, Lanciotti RS, Lance-Parker SE, DiazGranados CA, Winquist AG, Perlino CA, Wiersma S, Hillyer KL, Goodman JL, Marfin AA, Chamberland ME, Petersen LR. Transmission of West Nile virus from an organ donor to four transplant recipients. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 2196-2203 [PMID: 12773646 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa022987]

32 **Pealer LN**, Marfin AA, Petersen LR, Lanciotti RS, Page PL, Stramer SL, Stobierski MG, Signs K, Newman B, Kapoor H, Goodman JL, Chamberland ME. Transmission of West Nile virus through blood transfusion in the United States in 2002. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **349**: 1236-1245 [PMID: 14500806 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa030969]

33 **Brouard C**, Bernillon P, Quatresous I, Pillonel J, Assal A, De Valk H, Desenclos JC. Estimated risk of Chikungunya viremic blood donation during an epidemic on Reunion Island in the Indian Ocean, 2005 to 2007. *Transfusion* 2008; **48**: 1333-1341 [PMID: 18298600 DOI: 10.1111/j.1537-2995.2008.01646.x]

34 **Bhatt S**, Gething PW, Brady OJ, Messina JP, Farlow AW, Moyes CL, Drake JM, Brownstein JS, Hoen AG, Sankoh O, Myers MF, George DB, Jaenisch T, Wint GR, Simmons CP, Scott TW, Farrar JJ, Hay SI. The global distribution and burden of dengue. *Nature* 2013; **496**: 504-507 [PMID: 23563266 DOI: 10.1038/nature12060]

35 **Chuang V**, Wong TY, Leung YH, Ma E, Law YL, Tsang O, Chan KM, Tsang I, Que TL, Yung R, Liu SH. Review of dengue fever cases in Hong Kong during 1998 to 2005. *Hong Kong Med J* 2008; **14**: 170-177 [PMID: 18525084]

36 **Tambyah PA**, Koay ES, Poon ML, Lin RV, Ong BK. Dengue hemorrhagic fever transmitted by blood transfusion. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **359**: 1526-1527 [PMID: 18832256 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc0708673]

37 **Stramer SL**, Linnen JM, Carrick JM, Foster GA, Krysztof DE, Zou S, Dodd RY, Tirado-Marrero LM, Hunsperger E, Santiago GA, Muñoz-Jordan JL, Tomashek KM. Dengue viremia in blood donors identified by RNA and detection of dengue transfusion transmission during the 2007 dengue outbreak in Puerto Rico. *Transfusion* 2012; **52**: 1657-1666 [PMID: 22339201 DOI: 10.1111/j.1537-2995.2012.03566.x]

38 **Stramer SL**, Hollinger FB, Katz LM, Kleinman S, Metzel PS, Gregory KR, Dodd RY. Emerging infectious disease agents and their potential threat to transfusion safety. *Transfusion* 2009; **49** Suppl 2: 1S-29S [PMID: 19686562 DOI: 10.1111/j.1537-2995.2009.02279.x]

39 **Linnen JM**, Vinelli E, Sabino EC, Tobler LH, Hyland C, Lee TH, Kolk DP, Broulik AS, Collins CS, Lanciotti RS, Busch MP. Dengue viremia in blood donors from Honduras, Brazil, and Australia. *Transfusion* 2008; **48**: 1355-1362 [PMID: 18503610 DOI: 10.1111/j.1537-2995.2008.01772.x]

40 **Mohammed H**, Linnen JM, Muñoz-Jordán JL, Tomashek K, Foster G, Broulik AS, Petersen L, Stramer SL. Dengue virus in blood donations, Puerto Rico, 2005. *Transfusion* 2008; **48**: 1348-1354 [PMID: 18503611 DOI: 10.1111/j.1537-2995.2008.01771.x]

41 **Allain JP**, Stramer SL, Carneiro-Proietti AB, Martins ML, Lopes da Silva SN, Ribeiro M, Proietti FA, Reesink HW. Transfusion-transmitted infectious diseases. *Biologicals* 2009; **37**: 71-77 [PMID: 19231236 DOI: 10.1016/j.biologicals.2009.01.002]

42 **Naish S**, Dale P, Mackenzie JS, McBride J, Mengersen K, Tong S. Climate change and dengue: a critical and systematic review of quantitative modelling approaches. *BMC Infect Dis* 2014; **14**: 167 [PMID: 24669859 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-14-167]

43 **Añez G**, Rios M. Dengue in the United States of America: a worsening scenario? *Biomed Res Int* 2013; **2013**: 678645 [PMID: 23865061 DOI: 10.1155/2013/678645]

44 **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)**. Locally acquired Dengue--Key West, Florida, 2009-2010. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2010; **59**: 577-581 [PMID: 20489680]

45 **Teo D**, Ng LC, Lam S. Is dengue a threat to the blood supply? *Transfus Med* 2009; **19**: 66-77 [PMID: 19392949 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-3148.2009.00916.x]

46 **ECDC Mission Report**. Dengue outbreak in Madeira, Portugal, March 2013. Available from: URL: http: //www.ecdc.europa.eu/en/publications/Publications/dengue-madeira-ECDC-mission-2013.pdf

47 **de Mendoza C**, Altisent C, Aznar JA, Batlle J, Soriano V. Emerging viral infections--a potential threat for blood supply in the 21st century. *AIDS Rev* 2012; **14**: 279-289 [PMID: 23258302]

48 **Luban NL**. The spectrum of safety: a review of the safety of current hemophilia products. *Semin Hematol* 2003; **40**: 10-15 [PMID: 14690063]

49 **Blajchman MA**. Protecting the blood supply from emerging pathogens: the role of pathogen inactivation. *Transfus Clin Biol* 2009; **16**: 70-74 [PMID: 19427252 DOI: 10.1016/j.tracli.2009.04.004]

50 **Epstein JS**. Alternative strategies in assuring blood safety: An overview. *Biologicals* 2010; **38**: 31-35 [PMID: 20110174 DOI: 10.1016/j.biologicals.2009.10.009]

51 **Custer B**, Busch MP, Marfin AA, Petersen LR. The cost-effectiveness of screening the U.S. blood supply for West Nile virus. *Ann Intern Med* 2005; **143**: 486-492 [PMID: 16204161 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-143-7-200510040-00007]

52 **Korves CT**, Goldie SJ, Murray MB. Cost-effectiveness of alternative blood-screening strategies for West Nile Virus in the United States. *PLoS Med* 2006; **3**: e21 [PMID: 16381598 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.0030021]

53 **Faddy HM**, Seed CR, Fryk JJ, Hyland CA, Ritchie SA, Taylor CT, Van Der Merwe KL, Flower RL, McBride WJ. Implications of dengue outbreaks for blood supply, Australia. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2013; **19**: 787-789 [PMID: 23648012 DOI: 10.3201/eid1905.121664]

54 **Wilder-Smith A**, Chen LH, Massad E, Wilson ME. Threat of dengue to blood safety in dengue-endemic countries. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2009; **15**: 8-11 [PMID: 19116042 DOI: 10.3201/eid1501.071097]

P- Reviewer: Juan Ernesto L, Krishnan T **S- Editor**: Gong XM
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.124

World J Virol 2015 May 12; 4(2): 124-133
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Key role of human leukocyte antigen in modulating human immunodeficiency virus progression: An overview of the possible applications

Alba Grifoni, Carla Montesano, Vittorio Colizzi, Massimo Amicosante

Alba Grifoni, Carla Montesano, Vittorio Colizzi, Department of Biology, University of Rome "Tor Vergata", 00100 Rome, Italy
Massimo Amicosante, Department of Biomedicine and Prevention, University of Rome "Tor Vergata", 00133 Rome, Italy
Author contributions: Grifoni A generated the figures and wrote the manuscript; Montesano C and Colizzi V had equally contributed to the writing of the manuscript; Amicosante M designed the aim of the editorial and wrote the manuscript.
Conflict-of-interest: The authors declare to have not commercial or other conflict of interest within the presentation of the data reported in the manuscript.

Correspondence to: Massimo Amicosante, PhD, Department of Biomedicine and Prevention, University of Rome "Tor Vergata", Via Montpellier 1, 00133 Rome, Italy. amicosan@uniroma2.it
Telephone: +39-6-72596202
Fax: +39-6-72596205
Received: November 9, 2014
Peer-review started: November 10, 2014
First decision: December 26, 2014
Revised: January 20, 2015
Accepted: February 10, 2015
Article in press: February 12, 2015
Published online: May 12, 2015

Abstract

Host and viral factors deeply influence the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease progression. Among them human leukocyte antigen (HLA) locus plays a key role at different levels. In fact, genes of the HLA locus have shown the peculiar capability to modulate both innate and adaptive immune responses. In particular, HLA class I molecules are recognized by $CD8^+$ T-cells and natural killers (NK) cells towards the interaction with T cell receptor (TCR) and Killer Immunoglobulin Receptor (KIR) 3DL1 respectively. Polymorphisms within the different HLA alleles generate structural changes in HLA class I peptide-binding pockets. Amino acid changes in the peptide-binding pocket lead to the presentation of a different set of peptides to T and NK cells. This review summarizes the role of HLA in HIV progression toward acquired immunodeficiency disease syndrome and its receptors. Recently, many studies have been focused on determining the HLA binding-peptides. The novel use of immune-informatics tools, from the prediction of the HLA-bound peptides to the modification of the HLA-receptor complexes, is considered. A better knowledge of HLA peptide presentation and recognition are allowing new strategies for immune response manipulation to be applied against HIV virus.

Key words: Human immunodeficiency virus progression; Human leukocyte antigen; Epitope; Immunoinformatics; $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes

Core tip: Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease progression depends on several host factors. Among them human leukocyte antigen (HLA) locus has a main role due to the peculiar capability to modulate both innate and adaptive immune response. In this review, the role of HLA molecules and its receptors in HIV progression toward acquired immunodeficiency disease syndrome is summarized. A better knowledge about HLA-peptide presentation and recognition by immune cells will open new applications in HIV vaccine and diagnostics design.

Grifoni A, Montesano C, Colizzi V, Amicosante M. Key role of human leukocyte antigen in modulating human immunodeficiency virus progression: An overview of the possible applications. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(2): 124-133 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i2/124.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.124

INTRODUCTION

Different host's genetic factors have been associated both with rapid and slow progression to acquired immunodeficiency disease syndrome (AIDS). This suggests that the efficient control of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) -1 infection lays on different variants of immune response associated genes. In this context, genetic association studies have been strongly limited by different factors. HIV-1 is a quasi-species virus with large variability among the population even if small geographical areas are examined. In this review, the strong contribution of human leukocyte antigen (HLA) locus in HIV progression is highlighted. The use of immune-informatics is capable to efficiently predict the HLA binding peptides, adding important information in this context. Overall, this might lead to the design of preventive vaccine and immunotherapies capable to improve the HIV immune response.

HIV IMMUNE RESPONSE

HIV immune response depends on both innate and adaptive compartment of the immune system. The primary HIV infection typically occurs in the mucosa. At this level, resident memory $CD4^+$ T cells are infected together with dendritic cells, granulocytes, natural killer (NK) cells and macrophages[1]. Subsequently, infected cells and virus particles bounded by dendritic cells and B lymphocytes reach the lymph nodes. Within the lymph nodes, HIV-1 infects also the effector-memory and the activated $CD4^+$ T cells.

These processes are responsible for the increase of viral spread, viremia and decrease in the number of $CD4^+$ T cells[1]. Early events, which occur directly after HIV infection, determine the course of HIV disease progression. The reduction of viral replication often occurs before the development of the adaptive immune response against HIV, suggesting that the innate immune system has an essential role in controlling the infection[2,3].

Studies on primary HIV infection before the seroconversion show the presence of HIV-specific adaptive immune response exert by $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes (CTL)[4-6]. CTL immune responses play a central role in the control of viral replication as it has been observed in Long Term Non-Progressor (LTNP) patients. Different mechanisms for viral inhibition mediated by CTL immune response have been observed.

HIV infected cells are recognized by the TCR of HIV-specific CTLs when viral peptides are presented at the cell surface in the context of HLA class Ⅰ molecules. This recognition leads to CTL cytotoxic immune response[7].

Humoral immune response has a secondary role in the control of HIV infection. Although neutralizing antibodies reduce the virus particles and therefore the viral spread. However, serum of the infected patients does not reduce the viral infectivity *in vitro* and the efficacy of gp120 neutralizing antibodies is reduced. This is due to the fact that gp120, HIV glycoprotein responsible for the viral entry, has a high mutation frequency which leads to conformational changes impairing the antibody binding[7].

Due to the lack of capability of the immune response to eradicate HIV, the infection becomes chronic and the virus is integrated in a latent form in the human genome. Despite the return of circulating $CD4^+$T cells to normal levels, massive immune activation and accelerated cell turnover takes place. The ultimate consequence of immune activation is the depletion of $CD4^+$ T cells. In absence of T helper response the immune system is not able to control other infections, therefore opportunistic infections occur and lead to AIDS[1].

In general, HIV protective immune response is associated with recognition and activation of the cytolytic function exerted mostly by NK and $CD8^+$ T cells. Thus, the contribution of HLA molecules and its ligands play a key role in controlling HIV disease progression[8].

HIV PROGRESSION

The progression of HIV infection has different phases. In the primary infection, HIV infects mainly macrophages and dendritic cells by using the co-receptor C-C chemokine receptor 5 (CCR5) together with the CD4 molecule. Virus replication in the lymph nodes leads to the viremic peak characteristic of acute infection[4,5]. The viremia increases the viral spread in the other lymph nodes of the entire organism. The immune system mounts a response to control the viremia, which decreases towards a stationary phase named "set point". In most of the cases, the immune response is not capable to eradicate the infection. Therefore, an equilibrium between host and virus occurs and the viral DNA is integrated in a latent form that could not be detected by the immune system[6].

In the late phase of the infection, the constant viral replication induces a tropism shift. The virus prefers C-X-C chemokine receptor type 4 co-receptor (CXCR4) and infects mainly the $CD4^+$ T-cells. The $CD4^+$ T-cells depletion (< 200 cell/mm^3) and the increase of the viral load lead to an impairment of the entire immune system. Therefore, opportunistic infections occur, leading to AIDS and often to death[7]. Clinical latency period has a large variability in the HIV-infected subjects with different disease progression rates in absence of antiretroviral therapy.

Most of the infected individuals (70%-80%) are defined as slow progressors (SP). SP are characterized by increasing of viral load and $CD4^+$ T-cell count decline towards AIDS within 6-10 years of HIV infection. A smaller percentage of individuals (10%-15%), defined as fast progressors, have a fast CD4 count decline and develop AIDS within few years after infection. The LTNP represent about 5% of the infected cases and do not have significant changes in CD4 count, viral load or clinical symptoms for over 10 years[7-9]. Among them, a subgroup named elite controllers (EC) is characterized by stable $CD4^+$ T-cell count, undetectable viremia and no clinical symptoms overtime[10].

Overall, the strong individual variability to HIV infection highlights the importance of the host factors in delaying HIV progression toward AIDS. Different host factors have been widely associated with HIV progression and can be classically divided into two different groups: one related to a reduction in the viral entry capability and the other one with the interference with the viral replication process.

Reduction of viral entry has been associated with different receptors, co-receptors and ligands. Among them the CCR5Δ32 in combination with higher C-C Chemokine ligand 3-like 1 (CCL3L1) copy number and RANTES or Stromal cell–derived factor 1 chemokine variants have been extensively studied[9,11-14]. Regarding the viral replication processes, a pioneer work of Brass led to the identification of all the possible host endogenous proteins related with HIV infection[15].

Among them Zinc Ribbon Domain-containing 1 (ZNRD1), HLA Complex P5, (HCP5) Apoipoprotein B mRNA editing enzyme catalytic polypeptide-like 3G (APOBEC3G) genes have been extensively studied in association with delayed HIV progression. However, further studies regarding other possible interacting proteins still need to be addressed[16-18].

More recently, a contribution of micro-RNA has been described in HIV context leading towards interesting alternative approaches[19].

In addition, other immune related mechanisms have been associated with HIV control by immune response. This is the case of TNF-α and Ig enhancer HS1, 2 last but not least in showing a role in controlling HIV progression. Although, these factors barely play a role in delaying HIV progression compared with other host factors[20,21].

Beside the constant discovery of novel host variants, multiple issues such as population dependency might increase the difficulty to perform an association with HIV progression. For these reasons, HLA locus remains the unique factor clearly associated with HIV progression among the human population. However, different HLA alleles play a main role in HIV disease progression depending on the population considered.

Moreover, the HLA locus is the only one capable to modulate both innate and adaptive immune responses against viral infections respect to other immune related genes. Therefore, HLA locus might be used not only for diagnostic purpose, but also for drug and vaccine design approaches.

HLA

The *HLA* gene products are highly polymorphic molecules, characterized by co-dominant expression and polygeny. The combination of polygenicity and polymorphism has two important consequences. First, it ensures that each individual will be able to present a broad range of peptides. Second, the population will be consisted of individuals presenting different peptide's repertoires[22].

It is possible to distinguish the HLA molecules in two different classes: HLA class Ⅰ and HLA class Ⅱ[23].

HLA class Ⅰ is expressed on all nucleated cells and are recognized by $CD8^+$ T-cells[23]. The overall structure of HLA class Ⅰ molecule is shown in Figure 1A. The β2-microglobulin is a monomorphic polypeptidic chain and its main role is to keep the tridimensional structure of HLA class Ⅰ molecules. The α-chain is responsible for the peptide binding and interacts with TCR, CD8 and innate immune receptors. The binding of the peptide as well as the TCR interaction are mediated by α1 and α2 domains. Both of them present two main interaction pockets (B and F), which directly interact with the bound peptide (Figure 1B). HLA class Ⅰ molecules bind peptides between 8–12 amino acids long which are derived from proteolysed endogenous protein fragments[23].

HLA class Ⅱ is expressed only on antigen presenting cells and are recognized by $CD4^+$ T-cells[23].

HLA class Ⅱ molecule is composed by two polypeptidic chains (α and β) with a similar structure and belong to Ig superfamily. Both α and β chains participate in the peptide binding (Figure 2A). The two chains are bound in a non-covalent manner and can be further divided in two different domains. The first domain of each chain (α1 and β1) is responsible for the peptide binding and TCR interaction. The second domain of each chain (α2 and β2) has an important role in the HLA class Ⅱ structure and in the interaction with CD4 molecules.

The two HLA molecules have a distinct pattern of expression and cellular interaction. HLA class Ⅰ molecules are expressed by all nucleated cells and recognized by CTL. HLA class Ⅱ molecules are selectively expressed on antigen presenting cells such as macrophages, monocytes, B lymphocytes and dendritic cells. HLA class Ⅱ molecules are recognized by T helper lymphocytes[24]. The main role of HLA molecules is to present the antigen to different immunological receptors. In first approximation, HLA class Ⅰ molecule presents peptides derived from endogenous/cytosolic proteins, while HLA class Ⅱ presents peptides derived from exogenous proteins[25].

In addition, HLA class Ⅰ molecules play an important role in the activation of the innate immune response. In fact, HLA class Ⅰ molecules interact also with innate immune receptor expressed by NK cells[26]. The wide inter- and intra-population diversity in HLA locus

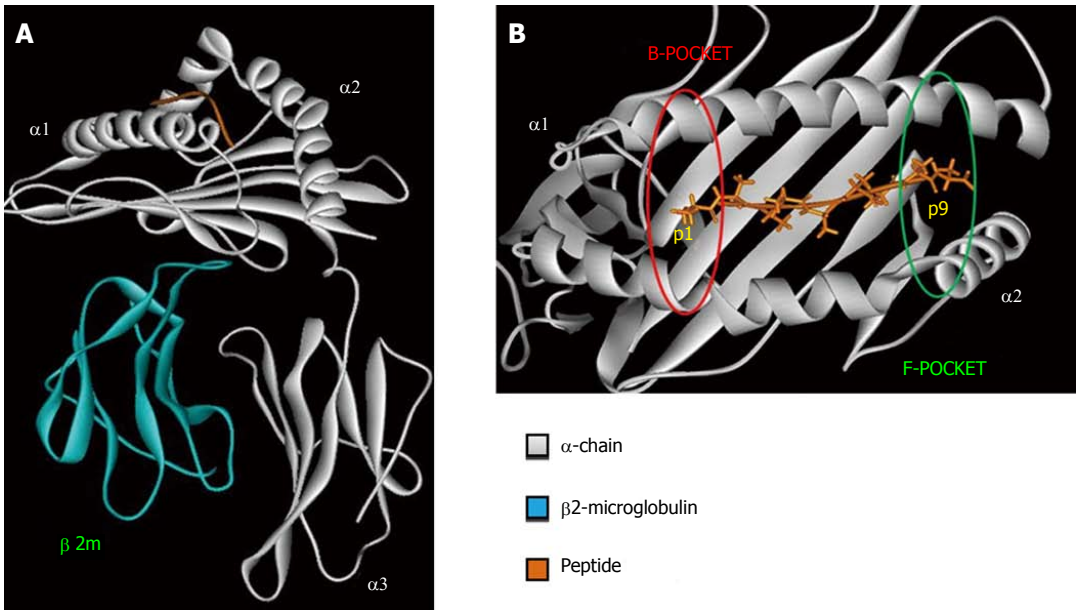


Figure 1 Human leukocyte antigen class I tridimensional structure. Crystal structure of the HLA-B*57:03 (PDB ID: 2YPK); HLA α-chain in gray, β2-microglobulin in blue, the peptide in orange. A: HLA class I overall structure; B: HLA class I peptide binding pocket. In red is shown the HLA pocket B, in green HLA pocket F the most polymorphic regions in HLA peptide binding pocket. The figure has been made using WebLab Viewer Pro 3.7. HLA: Human leukocyte antigen.

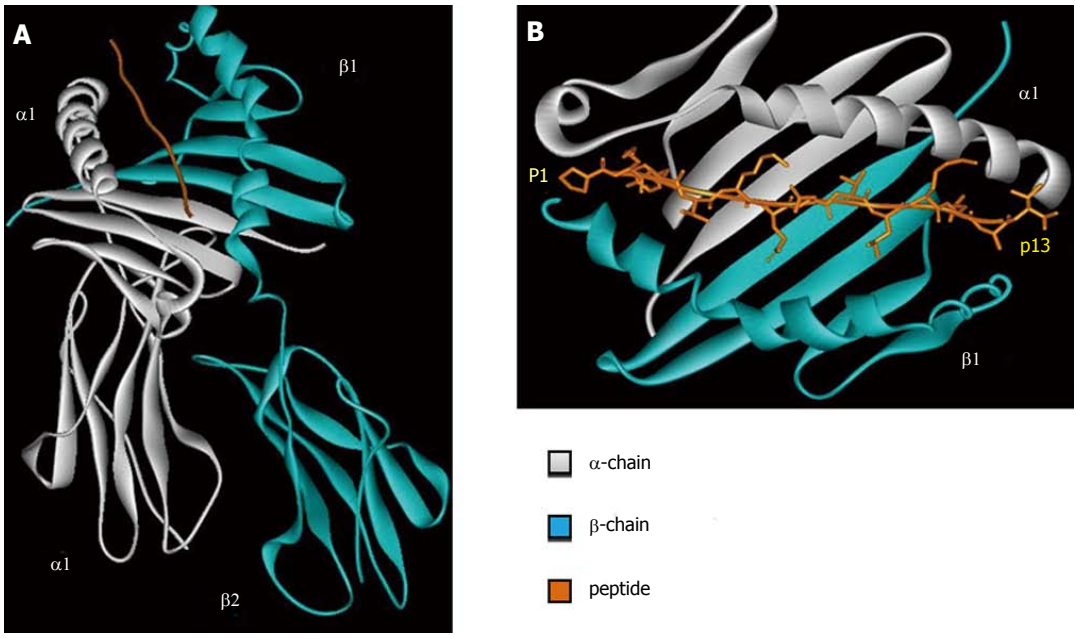


Figure 2 Human leukocyte antigen class II tridimensional structure. Crystal structure of the HLA-DR1 (PDB ID: 1DLH) in gray HLA α-chain, in blue HLA β-chain, in orange the peptide. A: HLA class II overall structure; B HLA class II peptide binding pocket. The figure has been made using WebLab Viewer Pro 3.7. HLA: Human leukocyte antigen.

and the presence of other immune associated genes increases the difficulty to select the genetic variant(s) responsible for the disease susceptibility. However, HLA alleles' association with particular immunological profile has been consistently assessed for different chronic viral infections including HIV.

In this context, heterozygosis for HLA class I molecules has been associated with HIV delayed disease progression and lower mortality in HIV infected patients[27,28]. In addition, various HLA alleles have been associated with an increase or decrease risk of HIV vertical and horizontal transmission and hypersensitivity to anti-HIV therapy[29,30].

HLA IN HIV PROGRESSION

HLA/HIV association studies are useful to evaluate the host-pathogen interaction. HLA is important not only for the adaptive immune response but also for innate immune response. Polymorphisms within the

different HLA class I alleles generate structural changes in peptide-binding pockets. Amino acid changes in the peptide-binding pockets lead to the presentation of a different set of peptides to CTLs[31-33].

The ability of particular HLA alleles to induce a viral selection could predict the HIV viral load. This could provide an "a priori" information about the disease progression[34]. Evaluations of HLA supertypes, group of alleles that share specific peptide-binding preferences, simplify the association studies with different disease progression.

The study of EC sheds light on the contribution of Human Leukocyte Antigen B (HLA-B)*57:01 (Supertype B*58) allele with HIV delayed disease progression. This allele is able to recognize a conserved epitope of HIV Gag protein, leading to a higher $CD4^+$ T-cell count and lower viral load in absence of Highly Active Antiretroviral Therapy therapy (HAART). HLA-B*57:01 is also characterized by the presence of unique valine at position 97 that contributes to the formation of the C-pocket in the peptide-binding cleft[31,33].

When a subject that do not carry HLA-B*57:01 allele is infected with a viral strain derived from a B*58 patient, it resembles the same $CD4^+$ T-cell count and viremia of the B*58 patient. This observation suggests that HLA exerts a strong restriction on the viral replication and the viral mutant selected have a lower fitness[35].

Other studies have associated HLA-B*27 and HLA-B*58 with a low viral load and higher $CD4^+$ T-cell count. In this context, the selectivity exerted by CTL after antigen recognition by HLA class I molecule is responsible for delaying the HIV progression[28,31,33,36-38].

Several HLA-B alleles have been associated with HIV rapid disease progression. Among them HLA-B*35 supertype contributes to a reduction of CTL peptide recognition and therefore leads to a non-efficient viral control[28,37]. Further, supertype B*7 has been associated with high viral load, decrease CTL response and consequently rapid HIV progression towards AIDS[28,31].

Multiple issues such as the viral strain variability within the subjects and the different genetic background of the population have limited the association studies related with HIV progression.

In this context, we performed a study in a defined cohort of children infected during a hospital outbreak with a monophyletic strain of HIV-1[39]. The role of HLA amino acid polymorphisms determining specific characteristics of the HLA peptide-binding pocket has been assessed. In particular, HLA-B peptide binding pockets present a specific set of epitopes against which the subject can mount a HIV-specific immune response. According to previous observations, these findings might represent the basis of the HIV disease progression[40-44].

As expected from previous immunogenetic studies, a large number of residues found in association with LTNP or progression to AIDS have been located in the HLA-B locus[42-46]. Recently, we have further supported this notion with in silico identification of the HIV *gag* protein epitopes. The study has been performed on the same outbreak cohort using HIV-1 viral sequences and HLA alleles. Peptides deriving from the HIV-1 sequences and recognized by the HLA allele combinations of the study subjects have been further analyzed.

Non-progressors recognized a higher number of epitopes compared to progressors in any HLA locus analyzed[47]. This is in agreement with previous observations showing an important contribution of CTL immune response in controlling the HIV disease progression. In a nutshell, HLA class I molecules and the recognition of large set of CTL epitopes are the key factors for delaying HIV progression[48-50].

CTL also determines escape mutants of the virus in different genes of HIV-1 such as Protease, Reverse Transcriptase (RT), Vpr and Nef[38,51]. Different HLA alleles, such as HLA-B*580[52], efficiently cross-recognize HIV-1 $CD8^+$ T-cell epitopes leading to delayed progression[53].

Recently, many studies have been focused on determining the HLA binding-peptides. The approaches are from direct measurement to the development of different Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) class I binding prediction systems[54-56]. Different online databases are capable to extract epitopes obtained from experimental and *in silico* studies giving also the opportunity to predict HLA binding epitopes using any target protein sequence[57-60]. The choice of the prediction system is very important and often the combination of more than one prediction system has shown the best performance[56,61-63].

Once obtained the predicted epitope, it is always very useful to perform a comparison with literature data. Thanks to the large *in vitro* characterization of HIV epitopes, it has been determined that most of the *in silico* predicted epitopes are also described within the literature. This supports the efficiency of prediction methods related with the epitope discovery[59,60].

Overall, HIV-specific T-cell response, and in particular CTL, plays a key role in controlling HIV infection[40,41]. T-cell response depends on HLA molecules. Thus, the individual's variations in the HLA class I and II alleles has a profound effect on the outcome of infection and disease progression toward AIDS[40,42].

NOVEL ASPECT IN HLA-HIV INTERACTION

HLA-B polymorphic variants 80I, 81A, 82L, 83R have been associated with LTNP[46]. These positions interact with the peptide in the F-pocket of HLA-B[46,64]. The LTNP associated pattern 80I, 81A, 82R, 83L is typical for HLA-B supertypes B58 and B27 which are already found associated with a slow progression to AIDS[42]. The same amino acid positions are involved in the formation of the structurally related HLA serotyping epitope Bw4 and Bw6. When HLA-B alleles are classified accordingly with carrying Bw4/Bw6 epitope, we have shown a

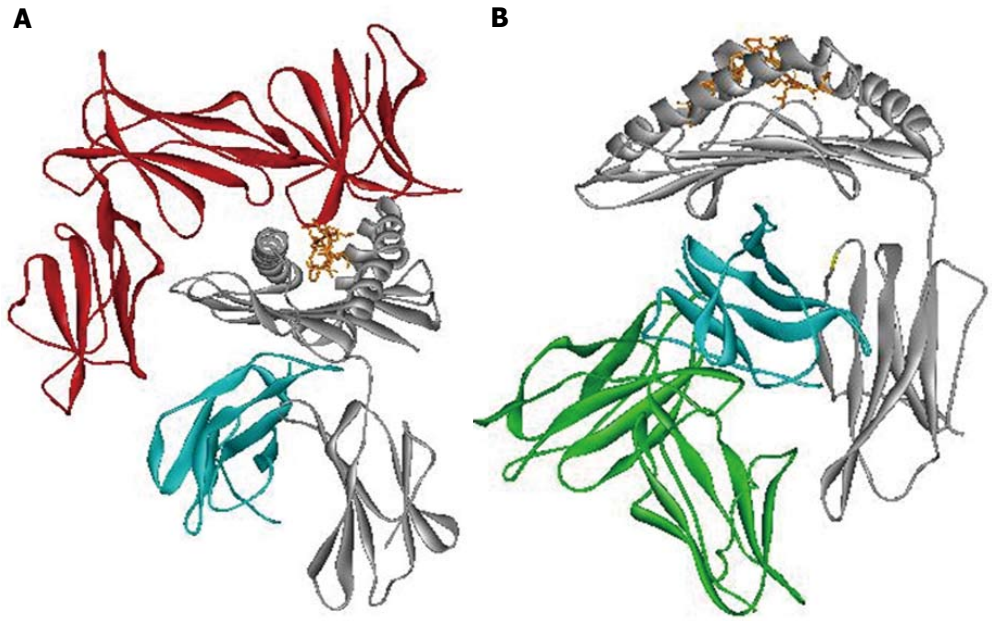


Figure 3 Human leukocyte antigen class I interaction with innate receptor. Crystal structure models of the HLA-B*57:01 interacting respectively with (A): KIR3DL1 receptor (red) (PDB ID: 3HV8); (B): LILRB1 receptor (green). HLA α-chain in gray, β2-microglobulin in blue, the peptide in orange. The figure has been made using WebLab Viewer Pro 3.7. HLA: Human leukocyte antigen.

strong contribution of Bw4 homozygosis in delaying HIV progression[46,65]. These results are in agreement with previous associations between Bw4 homozygosis and the control of HIV viremia[66].

The importance of epitope Bw4 is due to different aspects. First, it has a direct interaction with the HLA bound peptide involved with $CD8^+$ T cell recognition. Second, it is also a ligand for Killer Immunoglobulin Receptor 3DL1 (KIR3DL1), an NK's inhibitory receptor (Figure 3A)[67,68].

This evidence suggests a strong contribution of the innate immune response in controlling HIV progression and confirming the key role played by HLA-B molecules[2]. Recent studies evaluated the different contribution of KIR3DL1/HLA-B allele's interaction in modulating the innate immune system[68-71]. The presence of HLA-B Bw4 epitope leads to a stronger interaction with all the different KIR3DL1 alleles. This is particularly evident within the HLA-B alleles belonging to the same supertype, in agreement with previous data[72-75].

Different studies evaluate the contribution of Leukocyte Immunoglobulin-Like Receptor subfamily B member 1 (LILRB1) interaction with HLA class Ⅰ in the context of several infections (Figure 3B)[76-78]. Among HLA class Ⅰ polymorphisms, we associated the HLA-B alpha 3 domain amino acid position 194 with different HIV progression[46,65]. Amino acid position 194 of HLA-B has been found to take a part in the interaction with LILRB1 receptor (ILT2/LIR1/CD85j) when the Val variant is present[69,78,79]. Moreover, Val 194 was in association with LTNP[46,65]. Change in the strength of interaction between HLA-B alleles carrying Ile 194 and LILRB1 receptor might lead to rapid HIV progression. Previous data suggests that the expression of LILRB1 receptor on the cell surface remains unchanged in subjects with different HIV progression[80]. However, the presence of different amino acids at the polymorphic position 194 of HLA-B might modify the interaction with LILRB1. This might influence the LILRB1 strength of binding, as already reported for the LIR1-HLA-A interaction[77]. These results show the influence of HLA allelic variation and conformation on LILR binding capability. These findings are according to recent studies particular in the HIV context[77,78].

The contribution of the HLA-bound peptide seems to be the key point able to disrupt HLA interaction with the different immune receptors (Figure 4). In the context of HLA-B/KIR3DL1 interaction, the HLA-bound peptide position P8 is the main one that is able to disrupt KIR3DL1 binding. This has been previously observed in KIR3DL1 interaction with HLA-B*27:05 and HLA-B*57:01 alleles due to the conserved amino acid residue Glu282 of KIR3DL1 receptor[68,81-85]. The strong influence of the HLA bound peptide in the modulation of the innate immune response, point out similarity between T-cell and NK cell immune response. Individual selection pressures exerted on HLA class Ⅰ by T-cell and NK-cell might cause a competition between the two different immune responses. Therefore, depending on the HLA class Ⅰ allelic variant and the antigenic peptide loaded on HLA molecule we might observe a beneficial NK or T-cell response with detrimental consequences for the other one[86].

Altogether, the observations suggest that each peptide binding pocket position of the HLA class Ⅰ molecule is capable of modulating innate and adaptive immune

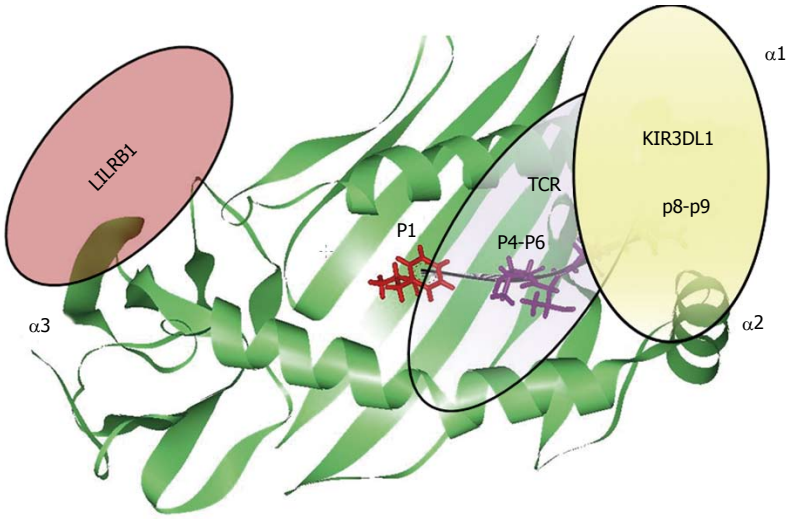


Figure 4 Peptide recognition. Schematic representation of the contribution of each HLA bound peptide position in the modulation of the interaction between HLA-B molecules (green) with TCR (violet) and KIR3DL1 (yellow), respectively. The figure has been made using WebLab Viewer Pro 3.7. HLA: Human leukocyte antigen; TCR: T cell receptor.

receptors leading to different immune responses (Figure 4).

Notably, identification of T-cell epitopes is actually made with the strategy of the reverse vaccinology. This strategy is based on HLA binding specificity and takes in consideration only the interaction with adaptive immune receptor. Future studies should be focused on the prediction of binding epitopes with wider characteristics. Peptides should be capable not only to be recognized by adaptive immune receptor, but also to modulate the innate immune receptor. These peptide characteristics could allow better fitting strategies for vaccination and diagnostics.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, HLA molecules play a key role in modulating both adaptive and innate immune responses. The protective cytotoxic immune response is modulated by the interactions with TCR as well as other innate receptors[31,33]. The modulation of innate immune responses depends also on the peptide-binding capability of HLA-B and on the interaction between HLA-B and NK's inhibitory receptors such as KIR3DL1 and LILRB1. The observed fine tune regulation might play a key role in the progression of HIV infection. The application of immune-informatics to immunogenic studies might shed new lights on the mechanisms behind the association of HLA genetic susceptibility to viral infections. This represents a powerful tool for novel design of vaccine and diagnostics, ensuring wider population coverage with the inclusion of genetically susceptible subjects.

REFERENCES

1 **Mogensen TH**, Melchjorsen J, Larsen CS, Paludan SR. Innate immune recognition and activation during HIV infection. *Retrovirology* 2010; **7**: 54 [PMID: 20569472 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4690-7-54]

2 **Carrington M**, Alter G. Innate immune control of HIV. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med* 2012; **2**: a007070 [PMID: 22762020 DOI: 10.1101/cshperspect.a007070]

3 **Alter G**, Altfeld M. NK cells in HIV-1 infection: evidence for their role in the control of HIV-1 infection. *J Intern Med* 2009; **265**: 29-42 [PMID: 19093958 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2796.2008.02045.x]

4 **Mothe B**, Llano A, Ibarrondo J, Zamarreño J, Schiaulini M, Miranda C, Ruiz-Riol M, Berger CT, Herrero MJ, Palou E, Plana M, Rolland M, Khatri A, Heckerman D, Pereyra F, Walker BD, Weiner D, Paredes R, Clotet B, Felber BK, Pavlakis GN, Mullins JI, Brander C. CTL responses of high functional avidity and broad variant cross-reactivity are associated with HIV control. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e29717 [PMID: 22238642 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0029717]

5 **Draenert R**, Goebel FD. What's new in HIV/AIDS. Protective immunity in HIV infection: where do we stand? *Infection* 2004; **32**: 250-252 [PMID: 15293085 DOI: 10.1007/s15010-004-6404-7]

6 **Leslie AJ**, Pfafferott KJ, Chetty P, Draenert R, Addo MM, Feeney M, Tang Y, Holmes EC, Allen T, Prado JG, Altfeld M, Brander C, Dixon C, Ramduth D, Jeena P, Thomas SA, St John A, Roach TA, Kupfer B, Luzzi G, Edwards A, Taylor G, Lyall H, Tudor-Williams G, Novelli V, Martinez-Picado J, Kiepiela P, Walker BD, Goulder PJ. HIV evolution: CTL escape mutation and reversion after transmission. *Nat Med* 2004; **10**: 282-289 [PMID: 14770175 DOI: 10.1038/nm992]

7 **Sudharshan S**, Biswas J. Introduction and immunopathogenesis of acquired immune deficiency syndrome. *Indian J Ophthalmol* 2008; **56**: 357-362 [PMID: 18711263 DOI: 10.4103/0301-4738.42411]

8 **Goulder PJ**, Walker BD. HIV and HLA class I: an evolving relationship. *Immunity* 2012; **37**: 426-440 [PMID: 22999948 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2012.09.005]

9 **Lama J**, Planelles V. Host factors influencing susceptibility to HIV infection and AIDS progression. *Retrovirology* 2007; **4**: 52 [PMID: 17651505 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4690-4-52]

10 **Julg B**, Pereyra F, Buzón MJ, Piechocka-Trocha A, Clark MJ, Baker BM, Lian J, Miura T, Martinez-Picado J, Addo MM, Walker BD. Infrequent recovery of HIV from but robust exogenous infection of activated CD4(+) T cells in HIV elite controllers. *Clin Infect Dis* 2010; **51**: 233-238 [PMID: 20550452 DOI: 10.1086/653677]

11 **Huik K**, Sadam M, Karki T, Avi R, Krispin T, Paap P, Rüütel K, Uusküla A, Talu A, Abel-Ollo K, Lutsar I. CCL3L1 copy number is a strong genetic determinant of HIV seropositivity in Caucasian intravenous drug users. *J Infect Dis* 2010; **201**: 730-739 [PMID:

20095832 DOI: 10.1086/650491]

12 **Armand-Ugón M**, Moncunill G, Gonzalez E, Mena M, Ballana E, Clotet B, Esté JA. Different selection patterns of resistance and cross-resistance to HIV-1 agents targeting CCR5. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2010; **65**: 417-424 [PMID: 20067983 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkp482]

13 **Bhattacharya T**, Stanton J, Kim EY, Kunstman KJ, Phair JP, Jacobson LP, Wolinsky SM. CCL3L1 and HIV/AIDS susceptibility. *Nat Med* 2009; **15**: 1112-1115 [PMID: 19812561 DOI: 10.1038/nm1009-1112]

14 **Kulkarni H**, Agan BK, Marconi VC, O'Connell RJ, Camargo JF, He W, Delmar J, Phelps KR, Crawford G, Clark RA, Dolan MJ, Ahuja SK. CCL3L1-CCR5 genotype improves the assessment of AIDS Risk in HIV-1-infected individuals. *PLoS One* 2008; **3**: e3165 [PMID: 18776933 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0003165]

15 **Brass AL**, Dykxhoorn DM, Benita Y, Yan N, Engelman A, Xavier RJ, Lieberman J, Elledge SJ. Identification of host proteins required for HIV infection through a functional genomic screen. *Science* 2008; **319**: 921-926 [PMID: 18187620 DOI: 10.1126/science.1152725]

16 **Ballana E**, Senserrich J, Pauls E, Faner R, Mercader JM, Uyttebroeck F, Palou E, Mena MP, Grau E, Clotet B, Ruiz L, Telenti A, Ciuffi A, Esté JA. ZNRD1 (zinc ribbon domain-containing 1) is a host cellular factor that influences HIV-1 replication and disease progression. *Clin Infect Dis* 2010; **50**: 1022-1032 [PMID: 20192730 DOI: 10.1086/651114]

17 **van Manen D**, Kootstra NA, Boeser-Nunnink B, Handulle MA, van't Wout AB, Schuitemaker H. Association of HLA-C and HCP5 gene regions with the clinical course of HIV-1 infection. *AIDS* 2009; **23**: 19-28 [PMID: 19050382 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32831db247]

18 **Singh KK**, Wang Y, Gray KP, Farhad M, Brummel S, Fenton T, Trout R, Spector SA. Genetic variants in the host restriction factor APOBEC3G are associated with HIV-1-related disease progression and central nervous system impairment in children. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2013; **62**: 197-203 [PMID: 23138837 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e31827ab612]

19 **Munshi SU**, Panda H, Holla P, Rewari BB, Jameel S. MicroRNA-150 is a potential biomarker of HIV/AIDS disease progression and therapy. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e95920 [PMID: 24828336 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0095920]

20 **Montesano C**, Giambra V, Frezza D, Palma P, Serone E, Gattinara GC, Mattei M, Mancino G, Colizzi V, Amicosante M. HS1,2 Ig enhancer alleles association to AIDS progression in a pediatric cohort infected with a monophyletic HIV-strain. *Biomed Res Int* 2014; **2014**: 637523 [PMID: 25009819 DOI: 10.1155/2014/637523]

21 **Veloso S**, Olona M, García F, Domingo P, Alonso-Villaverde C, Broch M, Peraire J, Viladés C, Plana M, Pedrol E, López-Dupla M, Aguilar C, Gutiérrez M, Leon A, Tasias M, Gatell JM, Richart C, Vidal F. Effect of TNF-alpha genetic variants and CCR5 Delta 32 on the vulnerability to HIV-1 infection and disease progression in Caucasian Spaniards. *BMC Med Genet* 2010; **11**: 63 [PMID: 20420684 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2350-11-63]

22 **de Verteuil D**, Granados DP, Thibault P, Perreault C. Origin and plasticity of MHC I-associated self peptides. *Autoimmun Rev* 2012; **11**: 627-635 [PMID: 22100331 DOI: 10.1016/j.autrev.2011.11.003]

23 **Binkowski TA**, Marino SR, Joachimiak A. Predicting HLA class I non-permissive amino acid residues substitutions. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e41710 [PMID: 22905104 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0041710]

24 **Jones EY**. MHC class I and class II structures. *Curr Opin Immunol* 1997; **9**: 75-79 [PMID: 9039778]

25 **Wubbolts R**, Neefjes J. Intracellular transport and peptide loading of MHC class II molecules: regulation by chaperones and motors. *Immunol Rev* 1999; **172**: 189-208 [PMID: 10631947]

26 **Carrington M**, Martin MP, van Bergen J. KIR-HLA intercourse in HIV disease. *Trends Microbiol* 2008; **16**: 620-627 [PMID: 18976921 DOI: 10.1016/j.tim.2008.09.002]

27 **Burgner D**, Jamieson SE, Blackwell JM. Genetic susceptibility to infectious diseases: big is beautiful, but will bigger be even better? *Lancet Infect Dis* 2006; **6**: 653-663 [PMID: 17008174 DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(06)70601-6]

28 **Kaur G**, Mehra N. Genetic determinants of HIV-1 infection and progression to AIDS: susceptibility to HIV infection. *Tissue Antigens* 2009; **73**: 289-301 [PMID: 19317737 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-0039.2009.01220.x]

29 **Mallal S**, Nolan D, Witt C, Masel G, Martin AM, Moore C, Sayer D, Castley A, Mamotte C, Maxwell D, James I, Christiansen FT. Association between presence of HLA-B*5701, HLA-DR7, and HLA-DQ3 and hypersensitivity to HIV-1 reverse-transcriptase inhibitor abacavir. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 727-732 [PMID: 11888582]

30 **Mallal S**, Phillips E, Carosi G, Molina JM, Workman C, Tomazic J, Jägel-Guedes E, Rugina S, Kozyrev O, Cid JF, Hay P, Nolan D, Hughes S, Hughes A, Ryan S, Fitch N, Thorborn D, Benbow A. HLA-B*5701 screening for hypersensitivity to abacavir. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 568-579 [PMID: 18256392 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0706135]

31 **Stephens HA**. HIV-1 diversity versus HLA class I polymorphism. *Trends Immunol* 2005; **26**: 41-47 [PMID: 15629408 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2004.11.001]

32 **Sidney J**, Peters B, Frahm N, Brander C, Sette A. HLA class I supertypes: a revised and updated classification. *BMC Immunol* 2008; **9**: 1 [PMID: 18211710 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2172-9-1]

33 **Stephens HA**. Immunogenetic surveillance of HIV/AIDS. *Infect Genet Evol* 2012; **12**: 1481-1491 [PMID: 22575339 DOI: 10.1016/j.meegid.2012.04.011]

34 **Brumme ZL**, Tao I, Szeto S, Brumme CJ, Carlson JM, Chan D, Kadie C, Frahm N, Brander C, Walker B, Heckerman D, Harrigan PR. Human leukocyte antigen-specific polymorphisms in HIV-1 Gag and their association with viral load in chronic untreated infection. *AIDS* 2008; **22**: 1277-1286 [PMID: 18580606 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3283021a8c]

35 **Bailey JR**, Williams TM, Siliciano RF, Blankson JN. Maintenance of viral suppression in HIV-1-infected HLA-B*57+ elite suppressors despite CTL escape mutations. *J Exp Med* 2006; **203**: 1357-1369 [PMID: 16682496]

36 **Bansal A**, Yue L, Conway J, Yusim K, Tang J, Kappes J, Kaslow RA, Wilson CM, Goepfert PA. Immunological control of chronic HIV-1 infection: HLA-mediated immune function and viral evolution in adolescents. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 2387-2397 [PMID: 18025875 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3282f13823]

37 **Blackwell JM**, Jamieson SE, Burgner D. HLA and infectious diseases. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2009; **22**: 370-385, Table of Contents [PMID: 19366919 DOI: 10.1128/CMR.00048-08]

38 **Duda A**, Lee-Turner L, Fox J, Robinson N, Dustan S, Kaye S, Fryer H, Carrington M, McClure M, McLean AR, Fidler S, Weber J, Phillips RE, Frater AJ. HLA-associated clinical progression correlates with epitope reversion rates in early human immunodeficiency virus infection. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 1228-1239 [PMID: 19019964 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01545-08]

39 **de Oliveira T**, Pybus OG, Rambaut A, Salemi M, Cassol S, Ciccozzi M, Rezza G, Gattinara GC, D'Arrigo R, Amicosante M, Perrin L, Colizzi V, Perno CF. Molecular epidemiology: HIV-1 and HCV sequences from Libyan outbreak. *Nature* 2006; **444**: 836-837 [PMID: 17171825]

40 **McMichael AJ**, Rowland-Jones SL. Cellular immune responses to HIV. *Nature* 2001; **410**: 980-987 [PMID: 11309628 DOI: 10.1038/35073658]

41 **Kaur G**, Mehra N. Genetic determinants of HIV-1 infection and progression to AIDS: immune response genes. *Tissue Antigens* 2009; **74**: 373-385 [PMID: 19765261 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-0039.2009.01337.x]

42 **Trachtenberg EA**. A Review of the Role of the Human Leukocyte Antigen (HLA) System as a Host Immunogenetic Factor Influencing HIV Transmission and Progression to AIDS. Korber BT, Brander C, Haynes BF, Koup R, Kuiken C, Moore JP, Walker BD, Watkins D, editors. Los Alamos, NM: Theoretical Biology and Biophysics Group, Los Alamos National Laboratory, 2001: 43-60

43 **Pereyra F,** Jia X, McLaren PJ, Telenti A, de Bakker PI, Walker BD, Ripke S, Brumme CJ, Pulit SL, Carrington M, Kadie CM,

Carlson JM, Heckerman D, Graham RR, Plenge RM, Deeks SG, Gianniny L, Crawford G, Sullivan J, Gonzalez E, Davies L, Camargo A, Moore JM, Beattie N, Gupta S, Crenshaw A, Burtt NP, Guiducci C, Gupta N, Gao X, Qi Y, Yuki Y, Piechocka-Trocha A, Cutrell E, Rosenberg R, Moss KL, Lemay P, O'Leary J, Schaefer T, Verma P, Toth I, Block B, Baker B, Rothchild A, Lian J, Proudfoot J, Alvino DM, Vine S, Addo MM, Allen TM, Altfeld M, Henn MR, Le Gall S, Streeck H, Haas DW, Kuritzkes DR, Robbins GK, Shafer RW, Gulick RM, Shikuma CM, Haubrich R, Riddler S, Sax PE, Daar ES, Ribaudo HJ, Agan B, Agarwal S, Ahern RL, Allen BL, Altidor S, Altschuler EL, Ambardar S, Anastos K, Anderson B, Anderson V, Andrady U, Antoniskis D, Bangsberg D, Barbaro D, Barrie W, Bartczak J, Barton S, Basden P, Basgoz N, Bazner S, Bellos NC, Benson AM, Berger J, Bernard NF, Bernard AM, Birch C, Bodner SJ, Bolan RK, Boudreaux ET, Bradley M, Braun JF, Brndjar JE, Brown SJ, Brown K, Brown ST, Burack J, Bush LM, Cafaro V, Campbell O, Campbell J, Carlson RH, Carmichael JK, Casey KK, Cavacuiti C, Celestin G, Chambers ST, Chez N, Chirch LM, Cimoch PJ, Cohen D, Cohn LE, Conway B, Cooper DA, Cornelson B, Cox DT, Cristofano MV, Cuchural G Jr, Czartoski JL, Dahman JM, Daly JS, Davis BT, Davis K, Davod SM, DeJesus E, Dietz CA, Dunham E, Dunn ME, Ellerin TB, Eron JJ, Fangman JJ, Farel CE, Ferlazzo H, Fidler S, Fleenor-Ford A, Frankel R, Freedberg KA, French NK, Fuchs JD, Fuller JD, Gaberman J, Gallant JE, Gandhi RT, Garcia E, Garmon D, Gathe JC Jr, Gaultier CR, Gebre W, Gilman FD, Gilson I, Goepfert PA, Gottlieb MS, Goulston C, Groger RK, Gurley TD, Haber S, Hardwicke R, Hardy WD, Harrigan PR, Hawkins TN, Heath S, Hecht FM, Henry WK, Hladek M, Hoffman RP, Horton JM, Hsu RK, Huhn GD, Hunt P, Hupert MJ, Illeman ML, Jaeger H, Jellinger RM, John M, Johnson JA, Johnson KL, Johnson H, Johnson K, Joly J, Jordan WC, Kauffman CA, Khanlou H, Killian RK, Kim AY, Kim DD, Kinder CA, Kirchner JT, Kogelman L, Kojic EM, Korthuis PT, Kurisu W, Kwon DS, LaMar M, Lampiris H, Lanzafame M, Lederman MM, Lee DM, Lee JM, Lee MJ, Lee ET, Lemoine J, Levy JA, Llibre JM, Liguori MA, Little SJ, Liu AY, Lopez AJ, Loutfy MR, Loy D, Mohammed DY, Man A, Mansour MK, Marconi VC, Markowitz M, Marques R, Martin JN, Martin HL Jr, Mayer KH, McElrath MJ, McGhee TA, McGovern BH, McGowan K, McIntyre D, Mcleod GX, Menezes P, Mesa G, Metroka CE, Meyer-Olson D, Miller AO, Montgomery K, Mounzer KC, Nagami EH, Nagin I, Nahass RG, Nelson MO, Nielsen C, Norene DL, O'Connor DH, Ojikutu BO, Okulicz J, Oladehin OO, Oldfield EC 3rd, Olender SA, Ostrowski M, Owen WF Jr, Pae E, Parsonnet J, Pavlatos AM, Perlmutter AM, Pierce MN, Pincus JM, Pisani L, Price LJ, Proia L, Prokesch RC, Pujet HC, Ramgopal M, Rathod A, Rausch M, Ravishankar J, Rhame FS, Richards CS, Richman DD, Rodes B, Rodriguez M, Rose RC 3rd, Rosenberg ES, Rosenthal D, Ross PE, Rubin DS, Rumbaugh E, Saenz L, Salvaggio MR, Sanchez WC, Sanjana VM, Santiago S, Schmidt W, Schuitemaker H, Sestak PM, Shalit P, Shay W, Shirvani VN, Silebi VI, Sizemore JM Jr, Skolnik PR, Sokol-Anderson M, Sosman JM, Stabile P, Stapleton JT, Starrett S, Stein F, Stellbrink HJ, Sterman FL, Stone VE, Stone DR, Tambussi G, Taplitz RA, Tedaldi EM, Telenti A, Theisen W, Torres R, Tosiello L, Tremblay C, Tribble MA, Trinh PD, Tsao A, Ueda P, Vaccaro A, Valadas E, Vanig TJ, Vecino I, Vega VM, Veikley W, Wade BH, Walworth C, Wanidworanun C, Ward DJ, Warner DA, Weber RD, Webster D, Weis S, Wheeler DA, White DJ, Wilkins E, Winston A, Wlodaver CG, van't Wout A, Wright DP, Yang OO, Yurdin DL, Zabukovic BW, Zachary KC, Zeeman B, Zhao M; International HIV Controllers Study. The major genetic determinants of HIV-1 control affect HLA class I peptide presentation. *Science* 2010; **330**: 1551-1557 [PMID: 21051598 DOI: 10.1126/science.1195271]

44 **Amicosante M**, Gioia C, Montesano C, Casetti R, Topino S, D' Offizi G, Cappelli G, Ippolito G, Colizzi V, Poccia F, Pucillo LP. Computer-based design of an HLA-haplotype and HIV-clade independent cytotoxic T-lymphocyte assay for monitoring HIV-specific immunity. *Mol Med* 2002; **8**: 798-807 [PMID: 12606814]

45 **Hertz T**, Nolan D, James I, John M, Gaudieri S, Phillips E, Huang JC, Riadi G, Mallal S, Jojic N. Mapping the landscape of host-pathogen coevolution: HLA class I binding and its relationship with evolutionary conservation in human and viral proteins. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 1310-1321 [PMID: 21084470 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01966-10]

46 **Montesano C**, Bonanno CT, Grifoni A, Di Sano C, Palma P, Castelli-Gattinara G, Mattei M, Mancino G, Salerno A, Colizzi V, Massimo A. Impact of Human Leukocyte Antigen Polymorphisms in Human Immunodeficiency Virus Progression in a Paediatric Cohort Infected with a Mono-phyletic Human Immunodeficiency Virus-1 Strain. *J AIDS Clin Res* 2014; In press

47 **Grifoni A**, Montesano C, Palma P, Giovannetti M, Castelli-Gattinara G, Ciccozzi M, Mattei M, Mancino G, Salerno A, Colizzi V, Amicosante M. Role of individual's T-cell immunome in controlling HIV-1 progression. *Immunology* 2014; **143**: 631-639 [PMID: 24954875 DOI: 10.1111/imm.12344]

48 **Zhai S**, Zhuang Y, Song Y, Li S, Huang D, Kang W, Li X, Liao Q, Liu Y, Zhao Z, Lu Y, Sun Y. HIV-1-specific cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) responses against immunodominant optimal epitopes slow the progression of AIDS in China. *Curr HIV Res* 2008; **6**: 335-350 [PMID: 18691032 DOI: 10.2174/157016208785132473]

49 **Chouquet C**, Autran B, Gomard E, Bouley JM, Calvez V, Katlama C, Costagliola D, Rivière Y. Correlation between breadth of memory HIV-specific cytotoxic T cells, viral load and disease progression in HIV infection. *AIDS* 2002; **16**: 2399-2407 [PMID: 12461413]

50 **Schmid BV**, Keşmir C, de Boer RJ. The distribution of CTL epitopes in HIV-1 appears to be random, and similar to that of other proteomes. *BMC Evol Biol* 2009; **9**: 184 [PMID: 19653887 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2148-9-184]

51 **Brumme ZL**, Brumme CJ, Heckerman D, Korber BT, Daniels M, Carlson J, Kadie C, Bhattacharya T, Chui C, Szinger J, Mo T, Hogg RS, Montaner JS, Frahm N, Brander C, Walker BD, Harrigan PR. Evidence of differential HLA class I-mediated viral evolution in functional and accessory/regulatory genes of HIV-1. *PLoS Pathog* 2007; **3**: e94 [PMID: 17616974 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.0030094]

52 **Ngumbela KC**, Day CL, Mncube Z, Nair K, Ramduth D, Thobakgale C, Moodley E, Reddy S, de Pierres C, Mkhwanazi N, Bishop K, van der Stok M, Ismail N, Honeyborne I, Crawford H, Kavanagh DG, Rousseau C, Nickle D, Mullins J, Heckerman D, Korber B, Coovadia H, Kiepiela P, Goulder PJ, Walker BD. Targeting of a CD8 T cell env epitope presented by HLA-B*5802 is associated with markers of HIV disease progression and lack of selection pressure. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 2008; **24**: 72-82 [PMID: 18275350 DOI: 10.1089/aid.2007.0124]

53 **Turnbull EL**, Lopes AR, Jones NA, Cornforth D, Newton P, Aldam D, Pellegrino P, Turner J, Williams I, Wilson CM, Goepfert PA, Maini MK, Borrow P. HIV-1 epitope-specific $CD8^+$ T cell responses strongly associated with delayed disease progression cross-recognize epitope variants efficiently. *J Immunol* 2006; **176**: 6130-6146 [PMID: 16670322]

54 **Calis JJ**, Maybeno M, Greenbaum JA, Weiskopf D, De Silva AD, Sette A, Keşmir C, Peters B. Properties of MHC class I presented peptides that enhance immunogenicity. *PLoS Comput Biol* 2013; **9**: e1003266 [PMID: 24204222 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pcbi.1003266]

55 **HIV Databases**. Division of AIDS of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. Available from: URL: http: // www.hiv.lanl.gov/

56 **Salimi N**, Fleri W, Peters B, Sette A. The immune epitope database: a historical retrospective of the first decade. *Immunology* 2012; **137**: 117-123 [PMID: 22681406 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2012.03611.x]

57 **De Groot AS**, Jesdale B, Martin W, Saint Aubin C, Sbai H, Bosma A, Lieberman J, Skowron G, Mansourati F, Mayer KH. Mapping cross-clade HIV-1 vaccine epitopes using a bioinformatics approach. *Vaccine* 2003; **21**: 4486-4504 [PMID: 14505932]

58 **Erup Larsen M**, Kloverpris H, Stryhn A, Koofhethile CK, Sims S, Ndung'u T, Goulder P, Buus S, Nielsen M. HLArestrictor--a tool for patient-specific predictions of HLA restriction elements and optimal epitopes within peptides. *Immunogenetics* 2011; **63**: 43-55 [PMID: 21079948 DOI: 10.1007/s00251-010-0493-5]

59 **Kumar N**, Mohanty D. Structure-based identification of MHC

binding peptides: Benchmarking of prediction accuracy. *Mol Biosyst* 2010; **6**: 2508-2520 [PMID: 20953500 DOI: 10.1039/c0mb00013b]

60 **Lundegaard C**, Lund O, Buus S, Nielsen M. Major histo compatibility complex class I binding predictions as a tool in epitope discovery. *Immunology* 2010; **130**: 309-318 [PMID: 20518827 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2567.2010.03300.x]

61 **Peters B**, Sette A. Generating quantitative models describing the sequence specificity of biological processes with the stabilized matrix method. *BMC Bioinformatics* 2005; **6**: 132 [PMID: 15927070 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2105-6-132]

62 **Bui HH**, Sidney J, Peters B, Sathiamurthy M, Sinichi A, Purton KA, Mothé BR, Chisari FV, Watkins DI, Sette A. Automated generation and evaluation of specific MHC binding predictive tools: ARB matrix applications. *Immunogenetics* 2005; **57**: 304-314 [PMID: 15868141 DOI: 10.1007/s00251-005-0798-y]

63 **Nielsen M**, Lundegaard C, Worning P, Lauemøller SL, Lamberth K, Buus S, Brunak S, Lund O. Reliable prediction of T-cell epitopes using neural networks with novel sequence representations. *Protein Sci* 2003; **12**: 1007-1017 [PMID: 12717023 DOI: 10.1110/ps.0239403]

64 **Madden DR**. The three-dimensional structure of peptide-MHC complexes. *Annu Rev Immunol* 1995; **13**: 587-622 [PMID: 7612235 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.iy.13.040195.003103]

65 **Grifoni A**, Montesano C, Palma P, Salerno A, Colizzi V, Amicosante M. Role of HLA-B α-3 domain amino acid position 194 in HIV disease progression. *Mol Immunol* 2013; **53**: 410-413 [PMID: 23103378 DOI: 10.1016/j.molimm.2012.09.009]

66 **Flores-Villanueva PO**, Yunis EJ, Delgado JC, Vittinghoff E, Buchbinder S, Leung JY, Uglialoro AM, Clavijo OP, Rosenberg ES, Kalams SA, Braun JD, Boswell SL, Walker BD, Goldfeld AE. Control of HIV-1 viremia and protection from AIDS are associated with HLA-Bw4 homozygosity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2001; **98**: 5140-5145 [PMID: 11309482 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.071548198]

67 **Thananchai H**, Gillespie G, Martin MP, Bashirova A, Yawata N, Yawata M, Easterbrook P, McVicar DW, Maenaka K, Parham P, Carrington M, Dong T, Rowland-Jones S. Cutting Edge: Allele-specific and peptide-dependent interactions between KIR3DL1 and HLA-A and HLA-B. *J Immunol* 2007; **178**: 33-37 [PMID: 17182537 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.178.1.33]

68 **Vivian JP**, Duncan RC, Berry R, O'Connor GM, Reid HH, Beddoe T, Gras S, Saunders PM, Olshina MA, Widjaja JM, Harpur CM, Lin J, Maloveste SM, Price DA, Lafont BA, McVicar DW, Clements CS, Brooks AG, Rossjohn J. Killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor 3DL1-mediated recognition of human leukocyte antigen B. *Nature* 2011; **479**: 401-405 [PMID: 22020283 DOI: 10.1038/nature10517]

69 **Sanjanwala B**, Draghi M, Norman PJ, Guethlein LA, Parham P. Polymorphic sites away from the Bw4 epitope that affect interaction of Bw4+ HLA-B with KIR3DL1. *J Immunol* 2008; **181**: 6293-6300 [PMID: 18941220 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.181.9.6293]

70 **Carr WH**, Pando MJ, Parham P. KIR3DL1 polymorphisms that affect NK cell inhibition by HLA-Bw4 ligand. *J Immunol* 2005; **175**: 5222-5229 [PMID: 16210627 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.175.8.5222]

71 **O'Connor GM**, Guinan KJ, Cunningham RT, Middleton D, Parham P, Gardiner CM. Functional polymorphism of the KIR3DL1/S1 receptor on human NK cells. *J Immunol* 2007; **178**: 235-241 [PMID: 17182560 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.178.1.235]

72 **Gumperz JE**, Valiante NM, Parham P, Lanier LL, Tyan D. Heterogeneous phenotypes of expression of the NKB1 natural killer cell class I receptor among individuals of different human histocompatibility leukocyte antigens types appear genetically regulated, but not linked to major histocompatibililty complex haplotype. *J Exp Med* 1996; **183**: 1817-1827 [PMID: 8666938 DOI: 10.1084/jem.183.4.1817]

73 **Litwin V**, Gumperz J, Parham P, Phillips JH, Lanier LL. NKB1: a natural killer cell receptor involved in the recognition of polymorphic HLA-B molecules. *J Exp Med* 1994; **180**: 537-543 [PMID: 8046332]

74 **Parham P**, Norman PJ, Abi-Rached L, Guethlein LA. Variable NK cell receptors exemplified by human KIR3DL1/S1. *J Immunol* 2011; **187**: 11-19 [PMID: 21690332 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.0902332]

75 **Grifoni A**, Montesano C, Patronov A, Colizzi V, Amicosante M. Immunoinformatic docking approach for the analysis of KIR3DL1/HLA-B interaction. *Biomed Res Int* 2013; **2013**: 283805 [PMID: 23984333 DOI: 10.1155/2013/283805]

76 **Chapman TL**, Heikeman AP, Bjorkman PJ. The inhibitory receptor LIR-1 uses a common binding interaction to recognize class I MHC molecules and the viral homolog UL18. *Immunity* 1999; **11**: 603-613 [PMID: 10591185]

77 **Jones DC**, Kosmoliaptsis V, Apps R, Lapaque N, Smith I, Kono A, Chang C, Boyle LH, Taylor CJ, Trowsdale J, Allen RL. HLA class I allelic sequence and conformation regulate leukocyte Ig-like receptor binding. *J Immunol* 2011; **186**: 2990-2997 [PMID: 21270408 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1003078]

78 **Lichterfeld M**, Yu XG. The emerging role of leukocyte immunoglobulin-like receptors (LILRs) in HIV-1 infection. *J Leukoc Biol* 2012; **91**: 27-33 [PMID: 22028331 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.0811442]

79 **Willcox BE**, Thomas LM, Bjorkman PJ. Crystal structure of HLA-A2 bound to LIR-1, a host and viral major histocompatibility complex receptor. *Nat Immunol* 2003; **4**: 913-919 [PMID: 12897781 DOI: 10.1038/ni961]

80 **Mavilio D**, Benjamin J, Daucher M, Lombardo G, Kottilil S, Planta MA, Marcenaro E, Bottino C, Moretta L, Moretta A, Fauci AS. Natural killer cells in HIV-1 infection: dichotomous effects of viremia on inhibitory and activating receptors and their functional correlates. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 15011-15016 [PMID: 14645713 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.2336091100]

81 **Peruzzi M**, Parker KC, Long EO, Malnati MS. Peptide sequence requirements for the recognition of HLA-B*2705 by specific natural killer cells. *J Immunol* 1996; **157**: 3350-3356 [PMID: 8871631]

82 **Peruzzi M**, Wagtmann N, Long EO. A p70 killer cell inhibitory receptor specific for several HLA-B allotypes discriminates among peptides bound to HLA-B*2705. *J Exp Med* 1996; **184**: 1585-1590 [PMID: 8879234]

83 **Stewart-Jones GB**, di Gleria K, Kollnberger S, McMichael AJ, Jones EY, Bowness P. Crystal structures and KIR3DL1 recognition of three immunodominant viral peptides complexed to HLA-B*2705. *Eur J Immunol* 2005; **35**: 341-351 [PMID: 15657948 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200425724]

84 **Kollnberger S**, Chan A, Sun MY, Chen LY, Wright C, di Gleria K, McMichael A, Bowness P. Interaction of HLA-B27 homodimers with KIR3DL1 and KIR3DL2, unlike HLA-B27 heterotrimers, is independent of the sequence of bound peptide. *Eur J Immunol* 2007; **37**: 1313-1322 [PMID: 17407096 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200635997]

85 **O'Connor GM**, Vivian JP, Widjaja JM, Bridgeman JS, Gostick E, Lafont BA, Anderson SK, Price DA, Brooks AG, Rossjohn J, McVicar DW. Mutational and structural analysis of KIR3DL1 reveals a lineage-defining allotypic dimorphism that impacts both HLA and peptide sensitivity. *J Immunol* 2014; **192**: 2875-2884 [PMID: 24563253 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1303142]

86 **Parham P**, Norman PJ, Abi-Rached L, Guethlein LA. Human-specific evolution of killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor recognition of major histocompatibility complex class I molecules. *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci* 2012; **367**: 800-811 [PMID: 22312047 DOI: 10.1098/rstb.2011.0266]

P- Reviewer: Chen YD, Ghiringhelli PD, Qiu HJ
S- Editor: Tian YL **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.134

World J Virol 2015 May 12; 4(2): 134-141
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Early initiation of antiretroviral treatment: Challenges in the Middle East and North Africa

Sara Sardashti, Mehrnoosh Samaei, Mona Mohammadi Firouzeh, Seyed Ali Mirshahvalad, Fatemeh Golsoorat Pahlaviani, SeyedAhmad SeyedAlinaghi

Sara Sardashti, Mehrnoosh Samaei, Mona Mohammadi Firouzeh, Seyed Ali Mirshahvalad, Fatemeh Golsoorat Pahlaviani, SeyedAhmad SeyedAlinaghi, Iranian Research Center for HIV/AIDS, Iranian Institute for Reduction of High Risk Behaviors, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran 14-19-733141, Iran

Author contributions: Sardashti S and SeyedAlinaghi SA made substantial contributions to conception and design of the study, review of the literature, interpretation of findings, and drafting the article; Samaei M, Firouzeh MM, Mirshahvalad SA and Pahlaviani FG contributed to integration of findings through literature review and drafting of the manuscript; Sardashti S made critical revisions; SeyedAlinaghi SA made the final approval.

Conflict-of-interest: The authors certify that they have no affiliations with or involvement in any organization or entity with any financial or non-financial interest in the subject matter or materials discussed in this manuscript.

Correspondence to: SeyedAhmad SeyedAlinaghi, MD, MPhil, Iranian Research Center for HIV/AIDS, Iranian Institute for Reduction of High Risk Behaviors, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Keshavarz Boulevard, Tehran 14-19-733141, Iran. s_a_alinaghi@yahoo.com
Telephone: +98-21-66947984
Fax: +98-21-66947984

Received: October 28, 2014
Peer-review started: October 30, 2014
First decision: November 27, 2014
Revised: January 30, 2015
Accepted: February 9, 2015
Article in press: February 11, 2015
Published online: May 12, 2015

Abstract

New World Health Organization guidelines recommend the initiation of antiretroviral treatment (ART) for asymptomatic patients with CD4+ T-cell counts of $\leqslant$ 500 cells/mm^3. Substantial reduction of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) transmission is addressed as a major public health outcome of this new approach. Middle East and North Africa (MENA), known as the area of controversies in terms of availability of comprehensive data, has shown concentrated epidemics among most of it's at risk population groups. Serious challenges impede the applicability of new guidelines in the MENA Region. Insufficient resources restrict ART coverage to less than 14%, while only one fourth of the countries had reportable data on patients' CD4 counts at the time of diagnosis. Clinical guidelines need to be significantly modified to reach practical utility, and surveillance systems have not yet been developed in many countries of MENA. Based on available evidence in several countries people who inject drugs and men who have sex with men are increasingly vulnerable to HIV and viral hepatitis, while their sexual partners - either female sex workers or women in monogamous relationships with high-risk men - are potential bridging populations that are not appropriately addressed by regional programs. Research to monitor the response to ART among the mentioned groups are seriously lacking, while drug resistant HIV strains and limited information on adherence patterns to treatment regimens require urgent recognition by health policymakers. Commitment to defined goals in the fight against HIV, development of innovative methods to improve registration and reporting systems, monitoring and evaluation of current programs followed by cost-effective modifications are proposed as effective steps to be acknowledged by National AIDS Programs of the countries of MENA Region.

Key words: Antiretroviral agents; HIV; CD4 counts; Co-infections; Regional health planning

Core tip: The main purpose of the present review was to investigate the feasibility of new World Health Organization guidelines on earlier initiation of antiretroviral treatment in resource-limited settings, specifically in the Middle East and North Africa region.

Sardashti S, Samaei M, Firouzeh MM, Mirshahvalad SA, Pahlaviani FG, SeyedAlinaghi SA. Early initiation of antiretroviral treatment: Challenges in the Middle East and North Africa. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(2): 134-141 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i2/134.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.134

INTRODUCTION

In 2013, recommendations regarding the early initiation of antiretroviral treatment (ART) were published by World Health Organization (WHO) in consolidated HIV treatment and prevention guidelines. Initiation of ART among asymptomatic adults and adolescents with CD4+ T-cell counts of ≤ 500 cells/mm^3, regardless of clinical stage is strongly recommended in this guideline[1].

Previous guidelines (2010) suggested that treatment be initiated for patients with CD4 counts of ≤ 350 cells/mm^3[2]. Several recent studies provide evidence of substantially reduced risks of HIV transmission among serodiscordant couples, if ART is initiated when CD4 counts range from 350 to 550 cells/mm^3[3]. Hence new recommendations have a greater focus on public health issues concerning HIV transmission.

Although the new guidelines delineate the earlier initiation of ART as "highly cost-effective", adaptation of these recommendations is a significant challenge for many countries including those in the Middle East and North Africa (MENA). Evidence from most of the 23 countries of MENA has indicated a significant increase in HIV incidence and AIDS-related deaths in the recent decade; nonetheless, antiretroviral coverage was reported to be less than 14% by the end of 2011[1-4].

From a social perspective, the cultural context that prohibits HIV related high-risk behaviors encourages ubiquitous stigma that affects access to available services in the MENA countries[4-7]. Availability and allocation of resources, on the other hand, has been threatened by ongoing conflicts and high rates of migration[8-12]. From a public health perspective, in many countries of the MENA lack of integrated data on HIV incidence rates and disease progression among known patients requires to be increased[8]. In addition, scarcity of gender-sensitive programs and lack of systematic approach in development of national guidelines hinder enactment of new treatment strategies in MENA[4,5,13,14]. HIV epidemic is characterized by rising incidence and prevalence rates among key at-risk populations, specifically among people who inject drugs (PWIDs)[12].

Hence the co-infections that are diagnosed more commonly among these population groups require particular attention in the implementation of the ART guidelines[15,16]. Additionally, in many countries of the region where cost-effective tests for viral load and CD4+ T-cell counts are not available and retention in care is not well understood, monitoring of response to ART and disease progression inherits location-specific challenges in adapting ART guidelines[17].

Previous studies that have investigated the quality of clinical practice guidelines in the region indicate that serious gaps; including outdated or inconsistent clinical contents, weak methodology in tailoring recommendations, and insufficient applicability[13].

The development of HIV treatment protocols that are coordinated with international standards requires better knowledge of the epidemiological and clinical characteristics of patient populations in the region[13,18]. Hence, we highlight the available evidence-based information that may benefit research scientists, clinicians, and health authorities of the region in their attempts at scaling up of HIV/AIDS programs including ART coverage.

RESEARCH

To conduct the present study, we searched PubMed, Embase, and local databases for all relevant articles published from the MENA region. Also, published results of incomplete cohorts and other related studies that investigated early initiation of antiretroviral regimens or initiation among at-risk populations, including articles not available before June 2013 were accessed through PubMed and Google search engines; online library of the International AIDS Society and Research Gate were also screened for possible research works. Publications with findings that are important in the context of HIV/AIDS responses among low and middle income countries in other parts of the world were also used for the review.

Major search key words and phrases included, but were not limited to, the following: "early antiretroviral initiation + 2013-14", "ART and HIV-Hepatitis C (HCV)", "ART and HIV-hepatitis B (HBV)", "ART and HIV-tuberculosis (TB)", "ART cost-effectiveness", "HIV retention in care", "HIV antiretroviral adherence", "HIV and drug resistance", "HIV-HCV PWIDs", "HIV/AIDS MENA region", "PWIDs in MENA", "Men who have sex with men (MSM), Female sex workers (FSWs) in MENA region"; all the keywords were specifically searched for in publications from countries of the MENA region.

ART INITIATION BASED ON CD4+ T-CELL COUNTS

Available antiretroviral drugs are prescribed to delay

immunologic failure and control HIV-related diseases rather than to eradicate the virus[19]. CD4+ T-cell counts are the most utilized, and probably available, immunologic marker for clinicians to decide for initiation of ART[20]. This test also serves as a predictor of rates of AIDS and non-AIDS related causes of death[21,22]. However, many resource- limited settings still depend on the WHO clinical staging system for decision-making[17].

According to a recent short report, only six of the countries in MENA had reportable data on patients' initial CD4 counts at the time of diagnosis in 2011, and eight countries had provided similar data in 2009. In most countries over 50% of the patients were ART eligible meaning they had CD4 counts of ≤ 350 cells/mm^3 at the time of diagnosis[5,18]. Development or improvement of standard and organized surveillance systems in settings where CD4 measurements are available seems a priority in the region[18,23]. In resource-limited countries, WHO clinical staging if carefully adapted in practice should provide as an accurate substitute to accelerate response in these areas[17].

IMPLEMENTING ART UPTAKE AMONG AT-RISK POPULATIONS

Concentrated HIV epidemics have been reported among at least one of the high-risk population groups (PWIDs, female/male sex workers, MSM) in all countries of the region[11]. However, at least in ten countries out of 23, HIV surveillance is not available among most at risk groups and sample size estimations of most at risk groups using primary data acquisition has been established only in Pakistan[18]. Overall, HIV prevalence, and concurrent high-risk behaviors of injecting drug users have been widely investigated within MENA countries[24,25]. MSM and FSWs are the two other major groups; in recent years their HIV risk behaviors have been better understood in several countries of the region[11]. Evidence also suggests that the disproportionate prevalence of HIV among men is related to unknown sexual behaviors and drug use as overlapping high-risk activities[5]. Nevertheless, no studies are available concerning response to ART or patterns of treatment adherence among HIV infected patients who are affiliated with these high-risk groups; nor is there sufficient evidence from the other countries regarding improved outcomes due to the early initiation of ART among PWIDs and other high risk groups[20].

PWIDs

From 13 MENA countries that have published evidence-based data on PWIDs, epidemics are reported as being concentrated in Pakistan, Iran, Afghanistan, Egypt, Morocco and Libya[26]. While increasing trends are reported in Pakistan, Iran and Egypt, Libya has recently been facing the highest HIV prevalence (87%) among PWIDs in the region[27].

The burden of disease related to blood-borne infections among PWIDs remains high and raises global concerns[4,11,28]. The MENA region is no exception, and expansion of harm reduction programs is essential for effectively fighting HIV. HCV and HBV are also not targeted appropriately despite higher transmission rates compared to HIV[26].

Management of HBV or HCV co-infections in HIV patients has been a matter of controversy for years[20]. Although ART regimens have shown benefits in several studies, despite moderate levels of liver toxicity among non-injectors[23,29], serious hepatic complications impede initiation of ART among PWIDs[24]. Study of a large cohort of more than 60 thousand people living with HIV/AIDS in Europe and North America has led to the proposal that liver-related causes of death, including hepatitis and liver failure, are the most common causes of mortality among PWIDs during and after the first year of ART initiation[15]. For example, Nevirapine-based regimens may lead to elevated CD4 levels in HIV-HBV co-infected patients[29], however, the very complicated immunopathology of viral hepatitis co-infections in these patients requires evidence-based decisions that are suitable for the epidemic in the MENA Region[24]. We underscore the HIV and hepatitis co-infection prevalence among general and high-risk populations in various MENA countries in Table 1.

Bridging populations

New guidelines also suggest that ART should be initiated among HIV patients who are in serodiscordant relationships, to reduce risk of transmission[1]. This recommendation is based on recent findings that indicate substantial decrease (89%) in virus transmission from infected patients to their uninfected partners, who were prescribed ART with CD4 counts of 350 to 550 cells/mm^3 of blood[3]. A recent study from Iran provides valuable data on potential concentrated epidemics among the non-injecting sexual partners of PWIDs[7,30]; this study provides insights into the possibility of overlapping transmission between high-risk groups such as PWIDs and FSWs; considering the disproportionately high male-to-female prevalence and the lack of confirmatory surveys in the region, we cannot rule out the possibility of current or future hidden sub-epidemics among FSWs and MSM in certain countries of the region[18,30,31]. The existing gap between identified and estimated numbers of people infected with HIV may potentially feed the increasing vertical transmission of the virus in the near future[4,5,32].

Women in monogamous relationships with PWIDs or MSM, are perceived to have low rates of high-risk activities, but are at high risk of transmitting HIV, and probably also HBV and HCV to their newborns[26,30]. On the contrary these women do not have consistent access to HIV counseling and lack the willingness to test for HIV[4,33]. Hence, HIV awareness should be developed

Table 1 Evidence-based prevalence rates of human immunodeficiency virus, hepatitis B and C co-infections in 13 countries of the Middle East and North Africa region

Country - city names (yr)	Target population (*n*)[1]	HIV prevalence	Methodology	HCV[2] (Isolated or co-infection prevalence)	HBV[2] (Isolated or co-infection prevalence)
Afghanistan - three cities (2009)[36,56]	FSWs (*n* = 520)	0.19%	Cross-sectional	Isolated: 1.92%	Isolated: 6.54% (range: 3% to 17.5%)
	PWIDs	7.1% (1% to 18.4%)	Cross-sectional	Isolated: 40.3% Co-infection: 94.9%	Isolated: 7.1%
Bahrain - Bahrain (2002-2006)[57]	HCV infected patients (n = 183)	0.5%	Retrospective cohort	HCV-HBV co-infection: 3.3%	-
Egypt - Cairo (2010)[58]	Blood donors-family members (*n* = 15017)	0.01%	Cross-sectional	Isolated: 4.3%	Isolated: 1.7%
Iraq - Karbala (2009)[59]	Healthcare workers (*n* = 124)	0	Cross-sectional	0	0
Iran - Tehran (2007)[60]	PWIDs (*n* = 899)	10.7%	Cross-sectional	Isolated: 34.5% Co-infection: 80.6%	Isolated: 50.7% Co-infection: 7.8%
Jordan (2009)[61]	Blood donors (*n* = 8190)	0	Cross-sectional	Isolated: 0.9%	Isolated: 1.4%
Lebanon - Beirut (2008)[62]	Inmates (*n* = 580)	0.17%	Cross-sectional	Isolated: 3.43%	Isolated: 2.4%
Libya - Tripoli (2013)[27]	PWIDs (*n* = 328)	87%	Respondent-driven sampling	Co-infection: 83%	Co-infection: 4%
Morocco - Casablanca (2006-2010)[63]	HIV infected patients of a referral clinic (*n* = 504)	All patients were infected.	Cohort	5.4%	Co-infection: 5.2%
Pakistan - Lahore (2011)[64]	Inmates (*n* = 4915)	2.01%	Cross-sectional	Co-infection: 73.74%	0.01% (HBV/HCV Co-infections: 77.78%)
Saudi Arabia (2009)[65]	PWIDs (*n* = 344)	Not checked	Cross-sectional	Isolated: 38% (HBV-HCV: 3.5%)	Isolated: 12% (HBV DNA)
(2012)[66]	Rehab center inmates-drug users (*n* = 115)	4%	Cross-sectional	-	Isolated: 4%
Tunisia (2007)[67]	HIV infected patients (*n* = 362)	Not applicable	Cross-sectional	Co-infection: 39.7% (For PWIDs: 87.4%)	-
Yemen - Hodeidah (2010)[68]	Blood donors (*n* = 1483)	0.14%	Cross-sectional	Isolated: 0.79%	Isolated: 2.35%

[1]Sample size; [2]Lab evaluations: Anti-HIV antibody (enzymatic immunoassay or western blot); Anti-HCV antibody; HBs antigen (enzymatic immunoassay). HCV: Hepatitis C virus; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; FSWs: Female sex workers; PWIDs: People who inject drugs.

in parallel with HIV testing facilities to successfully implement HIV clinical guidelines in MENA region.

FSWs that also comprise a proportion of sexual partners of both PWIDs and men with same-sex behaviors are also a potential bridging population in transmitting HIV to the general population in MENA[11,30,34]. Notably rates of syphilis (weighted prevalence: 7.2%) in Iran[35], and of viral hepatitis reported among non-injecting FSWs in Afghanistan is relatively high[36].

HIV AND TB IN MENA REGION

Latest WHO estimates of the burden of disease caused by TB in the Eastern Mediterranean Region indicate a stable trend in TB mortality, prevalence, and incidence; these estimates introduce the region as a medium-burden area. Since 2010, New incidence of TB among HIV-infected patients in the region has remained steady [11 (10-12) thousand in 2012], however, no improvements are evident in case detection rates during this same period. In addition, lack of detection and surveillance systems suggests that these estimates may not fully capture actual incidence[37].

On the other hand, the number of reported patients with multi-drug resistant TB (MDR-TB) has tripled from 2007 to 2010 globally. Estimates show that 56% these MDR-TB patients have been successfully treated in the Eastern Mediterranean Region, and despite better outcomes compared to other regions, this number is much lower than WHO's defined goal of 75% for 2015[37]. Country-specific studies highlight the urgent need for addressing MDR-TB, specifically among patients who are re-treated with anti-TB drugs[38-40]. The situation is becoming especially critical in Saudi Arabia due to high influence of travelers and migrating laborers from TB endemic areas, and also in Somalia which reports the highest prevalence of MDR-TB in the region[41,42]. Similar situations cannot be precluded in other countries, where sufficient measures have not been taken into account.

New guideline recommends initiation of ART among all patients with active TB regardless of CD4 counts or clinical stage[1]. Comparison of migrant and non-migrant patients by the Antiretroviral Therapy Cohort Collaboration revealed different AIDS-defining events

in the two groups, with migrants from MENA displaying significantly higher rates of TB in the first year after initiation of ART[15]. Immune response to tuberculosis is blunted following ART initiation, and this suppression persists for years due to decreased alveolar macrophage activity and specific cellular responses[43]. Hence, patients that receive ART remain susceptible to TB, a challenge that requires further attention in TB endemic countries of MENA.

Simultaneous treatment of HIV and TB, as recommended by WHO, remains controversial because of patients who develop immune reconstitution syndrome (IRIS) after ART initiation, and show higher mortality rates. The reason why IRIS affects certain patients is not thoroughly understood, but may be linked to monocyte-derived responses[44]. Our expanding knowledge about human leukocyte antigens associations observed among non-seroconverting partners of HIV patients should uncover a role for genetic factors in the future[45]. Context-specific decisions on the timing for initiation of ART among TB-infected patients are highly dependent on future findings of large cohorts among different high-risk groups from various ethnic backgrounds. Meanwhile, a scaling up of HIV testing and counseling and of efforts at detecting cases with MDR-TB should be considered a priority[36,46].

ADHERENCE AND DRUG RESISTANCE

Our knowledge about adherence to ART in MENA is limited to a few studies[47,48], which show that the role of stigma and discrimination, specifically among female patients, poses a major barrier to adherence[47]. A cross-sectional study conducted in Iran shows adherence rates of 65.5% (self-report) and 60.4% (pill count) during a three month follow-up; however, the short term follow-up and the limited number of patients evaluated in a single center setting limit our ability to generalize these findings. Results of this study indicate that living with family members, shifting to new ART regimens, and the stage of the disease are major correlates of higher adherence rates[48].

Although most evidence on the antiretroviral resistance profiles of ART-naïve and ART-treated patients is limited to a few studies[47-50], the critically high rates of resistance to antiretroviral regimens requires immediate attention in the countries of the region, with the goal of increasing availability of viral load tests and modification of ART regimens, based on genotype sequencing[51]. Policymakers should consider the cost-effectiveness of early ART initiation compared to scaling up of educational programs that target ART adherence, or to reaching out for the new and cheaper means of viral load measurement[52].

Studies conducted in resource poor settings emphasize that documentation of ART adherence through patient self-reports derived from administration of standard questionnaires, is not costly and helps to improve clinical outcomes (CD4 and viral load). Healthcare managers can also monitor ART distri bution, availability of services, and counseling practices by utilizing metrics from these screenings[53]. Documentation about adherence is helpful in decreasing transmitted drug resistance, which in-turn may require inevitable high expenditure in the future in these countries.

CONCLUSION

Serious challenges need to be tackled before adapting new clinical guidelines in current healthcare settings in MENA counties. The general response of MENA countries to HIV epidemics although effective has not been proportionate to the increasing needs. Insufficient human and financial resources, presence of punitive laws and social stigma are barriers for implementation of prevention, treatment or care programs in this region. Additionally, the lack of consistent documentation, registration and reporting systems that is required for monitoring and evaluating the present situation of HIV impedes appropriate response.

We recommend the following as major areas requiring action by health authorities in MENA countries for successful adaptation of ART guidelines: (1) To manage registration of HIV prevalence and incidence, and to design innovative data registry systems where necessary; (2) To investigate and monitor the genetic sequence of the most common HIV strains, and drug resistance profiles of infected patients (*e.g.*, among different high-risk groups); (3) To conduct cohort studies to investigate clinical outcomes among large groups of patients to empower health policymakers and clinicians with relevant data; (4) To develop standard adherence measurement tools to promote adherence and to document findings required for proper resource allocation; (5) To design disease databases for prevalent HIV co-infections to help in potential revisions required in national guidelines based on local patient needs; and (6) To recognize the concomitant role of social stigma and access to illicit drugs (opiates or stimulants) in the future pattern of HIV epidemic in the region.

Figure 1 summarizes the major areas that we suggest they need to be targeted by healthcare systems for development of new HIV treatment guidelines. We also suggest original research and implementation projects can be of prominent help in MENA. Based on computational models early initiation of ART could be of high impact in reducing immunologic failure[54]. In MENA region such innovative models could be of assistance among the networks of infected people to make size estimations and map distribution where the majority also has high-risk activities[32]. A practical approach could be to strengthen case detection systems through finding vulnerable people in each patient's network to reduce the time to diagnosis in newly identified patients. This will reduce the probability of transmitting

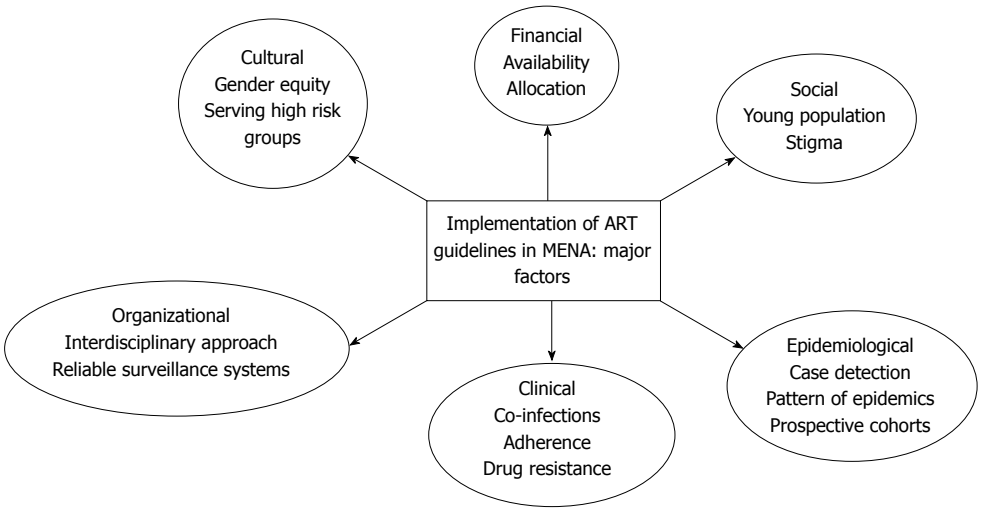


Figure 1 Major challenge for development of human immunodeficiency virus treatment guidelines in Middle East and North Africa. MENA: Middle East and North Africa; ART: Antiretroviral treatment.

drug-resistant strains which could be a major concern in coming years. Recent clinical trials are also suggesting new treatment protocols; as an example alternating regimens that provide patients with intermittent combinations of antiretroviral agents are supposed to reduce the probability of multi-drug resistance[55]. These new protocols may be of prominent significance in the future of HIV epidemic in MENA region; however, their feasibility is yet to be established in settings with limited access to ART.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank the Iranian Research Center for HIV/AIDS, UNAIDS-Iran, and Dana-Farber Cancer Institute for supporting the interactive scientific writing workshop at which this manuscript was edited. The editor was Dr. Sonal Jhaveri and the workshop was funded by an award to Dr. Madani from ViiV Healthcare.

REFERENCES

1 **World Health Organization (WHO)**. The uses of antiretroviral drugs for treating and preventing HIV infection: recommendations for a public health approach at June 2013. Available from: URL: http: //apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/85321/1/9789241505727_eng.pdf

2 **World Health Organization (WHO)**. Antiretroviral therapy for HIV infection in adults and adolescents: recommendations for a public health approach at 2010. Available from: URL: http: // whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2010/9789241599764_eng.pdf

3 **Cohen MS**, Chen YQ, McCauley M, Gamble T, Hosseinipour MC, Kumarasamy N, Hakim JG, Kumwenda J, Grinsztejn B, Pilotto JH, Godbole SV, Mehendale S, Chariyalertsak S, Santos BR, Mayer KH, Hoffman IF, Eshleman SH, Piwowar-Manning E, Wang L, Makhema J, Mills LA, de Bruyn G, Sanne I, Eron J, Gallant J, Havlir D, Swindells S, Ribaudo H, Elharrar V, Burns D, Taha TE, Nielsen-Saines K, Celentano D, Essex M, Fleming TR. Prevention of HIV-1 infection with early antiretroviral therapy. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 493-505 [PMID: 21767103 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1105243]

4 **The United Nation Joint Program on HIV/AIDS (UNAIDS)**. Regional report for the Middle East and North Africa at 2013. Available from: URL: http: //www.unaids.org/sites/default/files/en/media/unaids/contentassets/documents/epidemiology/2013/gr2013/UNAIDS_Global_Report_2013_en.pdf

5 **Bozicevic I**, Riedner G, Haghdoost A. HIV case reporting in the countries of North Africa and the Middle East. *J Int AIDS Soc* 2014; **17**: 18962 [PMID: 24815415 DOI: 10.7448/IAS.17.1.18962]

6 **Chahil-Graf R**, Madani N. Women, culture and the HIV epidemic in MENA. *J Int AIDS Soc* 2014; **17**: 19074 [PMID: 24629846 DOI: 10.7448/IAS.17.1.19074]

7 **Karamouzian M**, Akbari M, Haghdoost AA, Setayesh H, Zolala F. "I am dead to them": HIV-related stigma experienced by people living with HIV in Kerman, Iran. *J Assoc Nurses AIDS Care* 2014; **26**: 46-56 [PMID: 24856436 DOI: 10.1016/j.jana.2014.04.005]

8 **Abu-Raddad LJ**, Ghanem KG, Feizzadeh A, Setayesh H, Calleja JM, Riedner G. HIV and other sexually transmitted infection research in the Middle East and North Africa: promising progress? *Sex Transm Infect* 2013; **89** Suppl 3: iii1-iii4 [PMID: 24191291 DOI: 10.1136/sextrans-2013-051373]

9 **Ávila C**, Loncar D, Amico P, De Lay P. Determinants of government HIV/AIDS financing: a 10-year trend analysis from 125 low- and middle-income countries. *BMC Public Health* 2013; **13**: 673 [PMID: 23870494 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-13-673]

10 **Khajehkazemi R**, Sadeghirad B, Karamouzian M, Fallah MS, Mehrolhassani MH, Dehnavieh R, Haghdoost A. The projection of burden of disease in Islamic Republic of Iran to 2025. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e76881 [PMID: 24146941 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0076881]

11 **Abu-Raddad LJ**, Hilmi N, Mumtaz G, Benkirane M, Akala FA, Riedner G, Tawil O, Wilson D. Epidemiology of HIV infection in the Middle East and North Africa. *AIDS* 2010; **24** Suppl 2: S5-23 [PMID: 20610949 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000386729.56683.33]

12 **Mumtaz GR**, Riedner G, Abu-Raddad LJ. The emerging face of the HIV epidemic in the Middle East and North Africa. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS* 2014; **9**: 183-191 [PMID: 24445372 DOI: 10.1097/COH.0000000000000038]

13 **De Weggheleire A**, Bortolotti V, Zolfo M, Crowley S, Colebunders R, Riedner G, et al. Challenges in developing national HIV guidelines: experience from the eastern Mediterranean. *Bulletin of the World Health Organization* 2011; **89**: 442-450. Available from: URL: http: //www.who.int/bulletin/volumes/89/6/10-083790/en/

14 **Alkaiyat A**, Weiss MG. HIV in the Middle East and North Africa: priority, culture, and control. *Int J Public Health* 2013; **58**: 927-937 [PMID: 23824483 DOI: 10.1007/s00038-013-0485-y]

15 **Collaboration ATC**. Higher rates of AIDS during the first year of antiretroviral therapy among migrants: the importance

of tuberculosis. *AIDS* (London, England) 2013; **27**: 1321. Available from: URL: http: //www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3992322/

16 **Antiretroviral Therapy Cohort Collaboration (ART-CC)**. Influence of geographical origin and ethnicity on mortality in patients on antiretroviral therapy in Canada, Europe, and the United States. *Clin Infect Dis* 2013; **56**: 1800-1809 [PMID: 23457077 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cit111]

17 **Munthali C**, Taegtmeyer M, Garner PG, Lalloo DG, Squire SB, Corbett EL, Ford N, MacPherson P. Diagnostic accuracy of the WHO clinical staging system for defining eligibility for ART in sub-Saharan Africa: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Int AIDS Soc* 2014; **17**: 18932 [PMID: 24929097 DOI: 10.7448/IAS.17.1.18932]

18 **Bozicevic I**, Riedner G, Calleja JM. HIV surveillance in MENA: recent developments and results. *Sex Transm Infect* 2013; **89** Suppl 3: iii11-iii16 [PMID: 23434789 DOI: 10.1136/sextrans-2012-050849]

19 **Chun TW**, Nickle DC, Justement JS, Large D, Semerjian A, Curlin ME, O'Shea MA, Hallahan CW, Daucher M, Ward DJ, Moir S, Mullins JI, Kovacs C, Fauci AS. HIV-infected individuals receiving effective antiviral therapy for extended periods of time continually replenish their viral reservoir. *J Clin Invest* 2005; **115**: 3250-3255 [PMID: 16276421 DOI: 10.1172/JCI26197]

20 **Pandhi D**, Ailawadi P. Initiation of antiretroviral therapy. *Indian J Sex Transm Dis* 2014; **35**: 1-11 [PMID: 24958979 DOI: 10.4103/0253-7184.132399]

21 **Ingle SM**, May MT, Gill MJ, Mugavero MJ, Lewden C, Abgrall S, Fätkenheuer G, Reiss P, Saag MS, Manzardo C, Grabar S, Bruyand M, Moore D, Mocroft A, Sterling TR, D'Arminio Monforte A, Hernando V, Teira R, Guest J, Cavassini M, Crane HM, Sterne JA. Impact of risk factors for specific causes of death in the first and subsequent years of antiretroviral therapy among HIV-infected patients. *Clin Infect Dis* 2014; **59**: 287-297 [PMID: 24771333 DOI: 10.1093/cid/ciu261]

22 **Mellors JW**, Muñoz A, Giorgi JV, Margolick JB, Tassoni CJ, Gupta P, Kingsley LA, Todd JA, Saah AJ, Detels R, Phair JP, Rinaldo CR. Plasma viral load and CD4+ lymphocytes as prognostic markers of HIV-1 infection. *Ann Intern Med* 1997; **126**: 946-954 [PMID: 9182471 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-126-12-199706150-00003]

23 **Holtedahl K**, Salpou D, Braaten T, Berved Z. Optimal starting point for antiretroviral HIV treatment in a town in Cameroon: a randomised controlled study. *BMC Public Health* 2014; **14**: 828 [PMID: 25108448 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-14-828]

24 **Nelson PK**, Mathers BM, Cowie B, Hagan H, Des Jarlais D, Horyniak D, Degenhardt L. Global epidemiology of hepatitis B and hepatitis C in people who inject drugs: results of systematic reviews. *Lancet* 2011; **378**: 571-583 [PMID: 21802134 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(11)61097-0]

25 **Anglaret X**, Scott CA, Walensky RP, Ouattara E, Losina E, Moh R, Becker JE, Uhler L, Danel C, Messou E, Eholié S, Freedberg KA. Could early antiretroviral therapy entail more risks than benefits in sub-Saharan African HIV-infected adults? A model-based analysis. *Antivir Ther* 2013; **18**: 45-55 [PMID: 22809695 DOI: 10.3851/IMP2231]

26 **Mumtaz GR**, Weiss HA, Thomas SL, Riome S, Setayesh H, Riedner G, Semini I, Tawil O, Akala FA, Wilson D, Abu-Raddad LJ. HIV among people who inject drugs in the Middle East and North Africa: systematic review and data synthesis. *PLoS Med* 2014; **11**: e1001663 [PMID: 24937136 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1001663]

27 **Mirzoyan L**, Berendes S, Jeffery C, Thomson J, Ben Othman H, Danon L, Turki AA, Saffialden R, Valadez JJ. New evidence on the HIV epidemic in Libya: why countries must implement prevention programs among people who inject drugs. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2013; **62**: 577-583 [PMID: 23337363 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e318284714a]

28 **The World Bank**. The Global HIV Epidemics among People Who Inject Drugs at 2013. Available from: URL: http: //www.worldbank.org/content/dam/Worldbank/document/obalHIVEpidemicsAmongPeopleWhoInjectDrugs.pdf

29 **Andreotti M**, Pirillo MF, Liotta G, Jere H, Maulidi M, Sagno JB, Luhanga R, Amici R, Mancini MG, Gennaro E, Marazzi MC, Vella S, Giuliano M, Palombi L, Mancinelli S. The impact of HBV or HCV infection in a cohort of HIV-infected pregnant women receiving a nevirapine-based antiretroviral regimen in Malawi. *BMC Infect Dis* 2014; **14**: 180 [PMID: 24708626 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-14-180]

30 **Alipour A**, Haghdoost AA, Sajadi L, Zolala F. HIV prevalence and related risk behaviours among female partners of male injecting drugs users in Iran: results of a bio-behavioural survey, 2010. *Sex Transm Infect* 2013; **89** Suppl 3: iii41-iii44 [PMID: 24064986 DOI: 10.1136/sextrans-2013-051201]

31 **Alkaiyat A**, Schaetti C, Liswi M, Weiss MG. Condom use and HIV testing among men who have sex with men in Jordan. *J Int AIDS Soc* 2014; **17**: 18573 [PMID: 24695243 DOI: 10.7448/IAS.17.1.18573]

32 **Saba HF**, Kouyoumjian SP, Mumtaz GR, Abu-Raddad LJ. Characterising the progress in HIV/AIDS research in the Middle East and North Africa. *Sex Transm Infect* 2013; **89** Suppl 3: iii5-iii9 [PMID: 23596206 DOI: 10.1136/sextrans-2012-050888]

33 **Majid T**, Farhad Y, Sorour A, Soheila A, Farnaz F, Hojjat Z, Leili CT. Preventing Mother-to-Child Transmission of HIV/AIDS: Do Iranian Pregnant Mothers Know about it? *J Reprod Infertil* 2010; **11**: 53-57 [PMID: 23926481]

34 **Ahmadi K**, Rezazade M, Nafarie M, Moazen B, Yarmohmmadi Vasel M, Assari S. Unprotected Sex with Injecting Drug Users among Iranian Female Sex Workers: Unhide HIV Risk Study. *AIDS Res Treat* 2012; **2012**: 651070 [PMID: 22506107 DOI: 10.1155/2012/651070]

35 **Navadeh S**, Mirzazadeh A, Mousavi L, Haghdoost A, Fahimfar N, Sedaghat A. HIV, HSV2 and Syphilis Prevalence in Female Sex Workers in Kerman, South-East Iran; Using Respondent-Driven Sampling. *Iran J Public Health* 2012; **41**: 60-65 [PMID: 23641392]

36 **Todd CS**, Nasir A, Stanekzai MR, Bautista CT, Botros BA, Scott PT, Strathdee SA, Tjaden J. HIV, hepatitis B, and hepatitis C prevalence and associated risk behaviors among female sex workers in three Afghan cities. *AIDS* 2010; **24** Suppl 2: S69-S75 [PMID: 20610952 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000386736.25296.8d]

37 **World Health Organization (WHO)**. Global tuberculosis report at 2014. Available from: URL: http: //www.who.int/tb/publications/global_report/en/

38 **Ghenghesh KS**, Rahouma A, Tawil K, Zorgani A, Franka E. Antimicrobial resistance in Libya: 1970-2011. *Libyan J Med* 2013; **8**: 1-8 [PMID: 23537612 DOI: 10.3402/ljm.v8i0.20567]

39 **Sindani I**, Fitzpatrick C, Falzon D, Suleiman B, Arube P, Adam I, Baghdadi S, Bassili A, Zignol M. Multidrug-resistant tuberculosis, Somalia, 2010-2011. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2013; **19**: 478-480 [PMID: 23621911 DOI: 10.3201/eid1903.121287]

40 **Velayati AA**, Farnia P, Mozafari M, Sheikholeslami MF, Karahrudi MA, Tabarsi P, Hoffner S. High prevelance of rifampin-monoresistant tuberculosis: a retrospective analysis among Iranian pulmonary tuberculosis patients. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2014; **90**: 99-105 [PMID: 24189362 DOI: 10.4269/ajtmh.13-0057]

41 **Jamjoom GA**, Azhar EI, Madani TA, Hindawi SI, Bakhsh HA, Damanhouri GA. Genotype and antiretroviral drug resistance of human immunodeficiency virus-1 in Saudi Arabia. *Saudi Med J* 2010; **31**: 987-992 [PMID: 20844809]

42 **Abouzeid MS**, Al RF, Memish ZA. Mortality among tuberculosis patients in Saudi Arabia (2001-2010). *Ann Saudi Med* 2013; **33**: 247-252 [PMID: 23793426 DOI: 10.5144/0256-4947.2013.247]

43 **Jambo KC**, Banda DH, Afran L, Kankwatira AM, Malamba RD, Allain TJ, Gordon SB, Heyderman RS, Russell DG, Mwandumba HC. Asymptomatic HIV-infected individuals on antiretroviral therapy exhibit impaired lung CD4(+) T-cell responses to mycobacteria. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2014; **190**: 938-947 [PMID: 25225948 DOI: 10.1164/rccm.201405-0864OC]

44 **Andrade BB**, Singh A, Narendran G, Schechter ME, Nayak K, Subramanian S, Anbalagan S, Jensen SM, Porter BO, Antonelli

LR, Wilkinson KA, Wilkinson RJ, Meintjes G, van der Plas H, Follmann D, Barber DL, Swaminathan S, Sher A, Sereti I. Mycobacterial antigen driven activation of CD14++CD16- monocytes is a predictor of tuberculosis-associated immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome. *PLoS Pathog* 2014; **10**: e1004433 [PMID: 25275318 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1004433]

45 **Silva ML,** Melo VH, Aleixo AW, Aleixo LF, Pascoal-Xavier MA, Silva RO, Ferreira LA, Domingos WC, Greco DB. Social and immunological differences among uninfected Brazilians exposed or unexposed to human immunodeficiency virus-infected partners. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2014; **0**: 0 [PMID: 25230129]

46 **Saleeb PG**, Buchwald UK. [Update on the epidemiology, diagnosis and therapy of tuberculosis in HIV-infected patients]. *Pneumologie* 2014; **68**: 666-675 [PMID: 25290921 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1377514]

47 **Badahdah AM**, Pedersen DE. "I want to stand on my own legs": A qualitative study of antiretroviral therapy adherence among HIV-positive women in Egypt. *AIDS Care* 2011; **23**: 700-704 [PMID: 21476148 DOI: 10.1080/09540121.2010.534431]

48 **Khalili H**, Rohani R, Seyedalinaghi S, Hajiabdolbaghi M, Dashti-Khavidaki S, Talasaz AH. Adherence to antiretroviral therapy among Iranian HIV/AIDS patients. *Curr Clin Pharmacol* 2012; **7**: 111-115 [PMID: 22432842]

49 **Feelemyer J,** Des Jarlais D, Arasteh K, Uusküla A. Adherence to Antiretroviral Medications Among Persons Who Inject Drugs in Transitional, Low and Middle Income Countries: An International Systematic Review. *AIDS Behav* 2014; : [PMID: 25331268]

50 **Mohammadpour A**, Yekta ZP, Nikbakht Nasrabadi AR. HIV-infected patients' adherence to highly active antiretroviral therapy: a phenomenological study. *Nurs Health Sci* 2010; **12**: 464-469 [PMID: 21210925 DOI: 10.1111/j.1442-2018.2010.00560.x]

51 **Jahanbakhsh F**, Hattori J, Matsuda M, Ibe S, Monavari SH, Memarnejadian A, Aghasadeghi MR, Mostafavi E, Mohraz M, Jabbari H, Kamali K, Keyvani H, Azadmanesh K, Sugiura W. Prevalence of transmitted HIV drug resistance in Iran between 2010 and 2011. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e61864 [PMID: 23626742 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0061864]

52 **Ekici H**, Rao SD, Sönnerborg A, Ramprasad VL, Gupta R, Neogi U. Cost-efficient HIV-1 drug resistance surveillance using multiplexed high-throughput amplicon sequencing: implications for use in low- and middle-income countries. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2014; **69**: 3349-3355 [PMID: 25085657 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dku278]

53 **Chalker JC**, Andualem T, Gitau LN, Ntaganira J, Obua C, Tadeg H, Waako P, Ross-Degnan D. Measuring adherence to antiretroviral treatment in resource-poor settings: the feasibility of collecting routine data for key indicators. *BMC Health Serv Res* 2010; **10**: 43 [PMID: 20170479 DOI: 10.1186/1472-6963-10-43]

54 **Haering M**, Hördt A, Meyer-Hermann M, Hernandez-Vargas EA. Computational study to determine when to initiate and alternate therapy in HIV infection. *Biomed Res Int* 2014; **2014**: 472869 [PMID: 24900966 DOI: 10.1155/2014/472869]

55 **Martinez-Picado J**, Negredo E, Ruiz L, Shintani A, Fumaz CR, Zala C, Domingo P, Vilaró J, Llibre JM, Viciana P, Hertogs K, Boucher C, D'Aquila RT, Clotet B. Alternation of antiretroviral drug regimens for HIV infection. A randomized, controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2003; **139**: 81-89 [PMID: 12859157 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-139-2-200307150-00007]

56 **Ruiseñor-Escudero H**, Wirtz AL, Berry M, Mfochive-Njindan I, Paikan F, Yousufi HA, Yadav RS, Burnham G, Vu A. Risky behavior and correlates of HIV and Hepatitis C Virus infection among people who inject drugs in three cities in Afghanistan. *Drug Alcohol Depend* 2014; **143**: 127-133 [PMID: 25131717 DOI: 10.1016/j.drugalcdep.2014.07.022]

57 **Abdulla AM**, Al Qamish RJ. Hepatitis C virus infection: a single center experience. *Bahrain Medical Bulletin* 2008; **30**: 1-10. Available from: URL: http: //www.bahrainmedicalbulletin.com/march_2008/Hepatitis_C.pdf

58 **Abdel Messih IY**, Ismail MA, Saad AA, Azer MR. The degree of safety of family replacement donors versus voluntary non-remunerated donors in an Egyptian population: a comparative study. *Blood Transfus* 2014; **12**: 159-165 [PMID: 23245714 DOI: 10.2450/2012.0115-12]

59 **AL-Janabi AAHS**, AL-Masoudy AA. Serosurvey of HIV, HCV and HBV in Clinical Laboratory Workers of Karbala (Iraq) Health Care Units. *GJMS* 2009; **4**: 108-111. Available from: URL: http: //www.idosi.org/gjms/gjms4(2)/11.pdf

60 **SeyedAlinaghi S**, Jam S, Mehrkhani F, Fattahi F, Sabzvari D, Kourorian Z, Jabbari H, Mohraz M. Hepatitis-C and hepatitis-B co-infections in patients with human immunodeficiency virus in Tehran, Iran. *Acta Med Iran* 2011; **49**: 252-257 [PMID: 21713737]

61 **Rahimi-Movaghar A**, Razaghi EM, Sahimi-Izadian E, Amin-Esmaeili M. HIV, hepatitis C virus, and hepatitis B virus co-infections among injecting drug users in Tehran, Iran. *Int J Infect Dis* 2010; **14**: e28-e33 [PMID: 19464218 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijid]

62 **AL-Gani FA**. Prevalence of HBV, HCV and HIV-1, 2 infections among blood donors in Prince Rashed Ben Al-Hassan Hospital in North Region of Jordan. *Int J Biol Med Res* 2011; **2**: 912-916

63 **Mahfoud Z**, Kassak K, Kreidieh K, Shamra S, Ramia S. Prevalence of antibodies to human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hepatitis B and hepatitis C and risk factors in prisoners in Lebanon. *J Infect Dev Ctries* 2010; **4**: 144-149 [PMID: 20351454 DOI: 10.3855/jidc.517]

64 **Rebbani K**, Ouladlahsen A, Bensghir A, Akil A, Lamdini H, Issouf H, Brahim I, Kitab B, Fakhir FZ, Wakrim L, Marhoum El Filali K, Himmich H, Ezzikouri S, Benjelloun S. Co-infections with hepatitis B and C viruses in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients in Morocco. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2013; **19**: E454-E457 [PMID: 23731409 DOI: 10.1111/1469-0691]

65 **Nafees M**, Qasim A, Jafferi Gh, Anwar MS, Muazzam M. HIV infection, HIV/HCV and HIV/HBV co-infections among jail inmates of Lahore. *Pak J Med Sci* 2011; **27**: 837-841

66 **Alzahrani AJ**, Dela Cruz DM, Obeid OE, Bukhari HA, Al-Qahtani AA, Al-Ahdal MN. Molecular detection of hepatitis B, hepatitis C, and torque teno viruses in drug users in Saudi Arabia. *J Med Virol* 2009; **81**: 1343-1347 [PMID: 19551834 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.21487]

67 **Fageeh W**, Iyer A, Almalki N, Alturkistani W, Yaghmoor S, et al. Prevalence and awareness of sexually transmitted infections among inmates of a drug rehabilitation center in Saudi Arabia: a cross-sectional study. *Epidemiology* 2014; **4**: 154 [DOI: 10.4172/2161-1165.1000154]

68 **Kilani B**, Ammari L, Marrakchi C, Letaief A, Chakroun M, Ben Jemaa M, Ben Aïssa HT, Kanoun F, Ben Chaabène T. Seroepidemiology of HCV-HIV coinfection in Tunisia. *Tunis Med* 2007; **85**: 121-123 [PMID: 17665657]

P- Reviewer: Arriagada GL, Farzin R, Qiu HJ **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.142

World J Virol 2015 May 12; 4(2): 142-146
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Cost and safety of assisted reproductive technologies for human immunodeficiency virus-1 discordant couples

Ming-Yih Wu, Hong-Nerng Ho

Ming-Yih Wu, Hong-Nerng Ho, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, College of Medicine, National Taiwan University, Taipei 10002, Taiwan
Author contributions: Wu MY and Ho HN both contributed to this paper.
Conflict-of-interest: We declare no conflicts of interests.

Correspondence to: Hong-Nerng Ho, MD, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, National Taiwan University Hospital, No. 7 Chung-Shan South Road, Taipei 10002, Taiwan. hnho@ntu.edu.tw
Telephone: +886-2-23123456
Fax: +886-2-23116056
Received: October 28, 2014
Peer-review started: October 29, 2014
First decision: December 12, 2014
Revised: December 25, 2014
Accepted: January 19, 2015
Article in press: January 19, 2015
Published online: May 12, 2015

Abstract

Due to significant advances in the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus type-1 (HIV-1), HIV-1 infection gradually has become a treatable chronic disease. Successfully treated HIV-positive individuals can have a normal life expectancy. Hence, more and more HIV-1 discordant couples in Taiwan and the rest of the world are seeking fertility assistance. Pre-treatment of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) combined with sperm washing and RT-polymerase chain reaction examination for HIV-1 viral load has become the standard procedure to assist them to conceive. However, in order to reduce the transmission risk to the lowest level for the couple and to diminish the cost of health care for the insurance institutes or government, *in vitro* fertilization (IVF)-intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) therapy provides the ideal solution for HIV-1 discordant couples with infected men. Intrauterine insemination (IUI) theoretically introduces more than 10^7 times of sperm counts or semen volume to uninfected women *vs* IVF-ICSI. However, since some regimens of HAART may significantly decrease the sperm motility, compared to IVF-ICSI, IUI only produces 1/5 to 1/2 pregnancy rates per cycle. Given the risk of seroconversion of HIV infection which actually happens after successful treatment, IVF-ICSI for these HIV-1 seropositive men is more cost-effective and should be the first line treatment for these cases.

Key words: Highly active antiretroviral therapy; human immunodeficiency virus-1 discordant; Seroconversion; Intrauterine insemination; Intracytoplasmic sperm injection

Core tip: For human immunodeficiency virus type-1 (HIV-1)-infected men and uninfected women, highly active antiretroviral therapy, sperm washing and HIV-1 viral load check by RT-polymerase chain reaction have become the standard procedure to enable conception. Although the risk of seroconversion of HIV infection is very low, it remains possible. Intrauterine insemination may introduce more risk of HIV-1 transmission and also possesses less chance of pregnancy compared to *in vitro* fertilization-intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI). Therefore, ICSI may be the preferred choice.

Wu MY, Ho HN. Cost and safety of assisted reproductive technologies for human immunodeficiency virus-1 discordant couples. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(2): 142-146 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i2/142.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.142

INTRODUCTION

According to the World Health Organization (WHO)'s data and statistics, more and more people were newly infected with human immunodeficiency virus type-1 (HIV-1), *i.e.*, 2.1 million, in 2013. In the beginning, HIV-1 couples were often discouraged from planning a pregnancy due to its poor prognosis. Nowadays, due to many advances in highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) in the last 10 years, the expected age at death of a 35-year-old man could be extended up to 80 years of age[1]. As a result, many seropositive couples are now looking for ways to safely conceive their own babies.

However, pregnancy by natural conception in HIV-negative women with HIV-infected partners may result in 4.3% seroconversion[2]. In the stage of lower HIV-1 load, the rate of HIV-1 transmission per coital act could be as low as 0.1% in HIV-1 discordant couples[3]. This has implications for HIV-1 prevention and for projecting the effects of HAART in this situation. However, the conception rate after a single coital act prior to ovulation is relatively low because the semen volume and spermatozoa motility decreases in HIV-1-infected patients under HAART[4].

The clinical use of semen washing was first reported in 1992 by Semprini *et al*[5] and since then, assisted reproductive technologies, including intrauterine insemination (IUI), *in vitro* fertilization (IVF) and intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI), have widely combined the use of semen washing to help HIV-1-infected discordant couples with an HIV-1-infected man. About 10 years ago, the database of Centers for Reproductive Assistance To HIV couples in Europe reported over 500 infants born following this procedure in 4989 cycles of assisted conception[6]. More recently, assisted reproductive technology has proved to reduce the risk of HIV-1 transmission of uninfected women and helped these discordant couples to conceive[7-11].

Therefore, in 2010, the ASRM Committee on Ethics modified their guidelines concerning assisted reproductive technology for these HIV-1 discordant couples as follows[12]: (1) in couples in which the man is HIV-infected, the use of sperm preparation techniques coupled with either inseminations or IVF with ICSI has proven to be highly effective in avoiding seroconversion of uninfected women and offspring; and (2) fertility clinics, to the extent it is economically and technically feasible, should offer services to HIV-infected individuals and couples who are willing to use risk-reducing therapies. In this article, we would like to discuss which assisted reproductive technology is the most effective and theoretically the safest way to conceive for the couples and most economical for the insurance companies or the government.

HIV-1 SEMEN WASHING

HIV-1 transmission *via* artificial insemination using donor sperm was first reported in 1985[13] and the risk remained high, especially in untreated urethritis[14]. In 1992, Semprini *et al*[5] reported a simple method to eliminate the leukocytes from HIV-infected semen for intrauterine insemination. The method is a three-step system: (1) filtering the liquefied semen through a gradient; (2) washing the recovered spermatozoa to remove seminal plasma; and (3) swim-up to collect highly motile spermatozoa. A testing of the final sample by using a polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assay would assure the clearance of HIV-1 virus throughout the washing procedure.

However, the viral burden is an issue. The amount of HIV-1 present in the original semen sample affects the efficiency of the above procedure[15]. So, in 2004, the Harvard group further decreased HIV-1 RNA copy numbers from 1300 by gradient/swim-up to 200 by double-tube gradient[16]. Moreover, the amount of motile sperm recovered is superior to Semprini's method. In 2005, Loskutoff *et al*[17] used a novel washing method by combining multiple density gradients and trypsin addition for removing HIV-1 from semen, significantly reducing HIV-1 load without affecting sperm quality. Moreover, in 2006, Kato *et al*[11] also used an improved swim-up method to collect HIV-free spermatozoa from the semen of HIV-positive males. They demonstrated complete removal of HIV-1 RNA and proviral DNA by nested PCR assay.

Regarding the efficiency of sperm washing in removing HIV-1, the key depends on the seminal viral load. Fiore *et al*[15] demonstrated that 5×10^4 copies/mL were generally considered as the upper limit for the standard washing methods. From their study, in semen samples containing 1 and 3×10^6 copies/mL, persistence of viral RNA after standard washing procedures was observed in some of the aliquots tested. In light of this finding, pre-treatment with HAART before sperm washing is rational for these HIV-1 discordant couples.

ASSISTED REPRODUCTIVE TECHONOLOGIES IN HIV-1 DISCORDANT COUPLES (MALE HIV-1 POSITIVE)

Originally, these sperm washing techniques were applied in IUI and some of them even presented with relatively high pregnancy rates (24%-52%)[7,18]. As we know, different conditions (*e.g.*, women's age) and policies (*e.g.*, high cancellation rates) resulted in different IUI results. Over the past 30 years, our data showed around 10% pregnancy rates for IUI[19,20] and 45% pregnancy rates for IVF[21,22]. Since 2003, we have performed IUI in these HIV-1 discordant couples, resulting in 10% clinical pregnancy rates (data not shown) and only 26% in fresh IVF cycles (Table 1). One reason is that some cases are of advanced age and therefore sometimes no embryos or even no oocytes could be obtained. On the other hand, the frozen-thawed cycles have normal pregnancy rates (45%).

Table 1 Results of *in vitro* fertilizations in human immunodeficiency virus type-1 discordant couples with a human immunodeficiency virus type-1-infected male partner at National Taiwan University Hospital from 2005-2014

Results	*n*
Couples	38
Fresh cycles	72
Age	35.9 ± 4.9
Oocytes retrieved	11.3 ± 7.7
Total 2PN fertilized	6.4 ± 5.1
Clinical pregnancies[1]	19 (26.4%)
Miscarriage	4 (21.1%)
Ectopic pregnancies	2 (10.5%)
Babies born	18
Thawed cycles	20
Clinical pregnancies[2]	9 (45.0%)
Miscarriage	0
Ectopic pregnancies	0
Babies born	12
Accumulated pregnancies	23 (60.5%)
Seroconversions	0

[1]Per TVOR; [2]Per ET.

Semprini and Fiore[6] favored IUI in the treatment of HIV-1 discordant couples and concluded that "IVF carries a higher pregnancy rate per cycle, but requires ovarian hyperstimulation, egg retrieval under sedation and carries a 20% risk of multi-fatality". Multiple pregnancy is no longer an issue in modern IVF practice since single embryo transfer[23,24] or elective single embryo transfer was developed[25,26].

Although combined pre-treatment with HAART, sperm washing and RT-PCR could provide a relatively safe sperm sample for conception in HIV-1 discordant couples, it is not completely virus-free as our HIV-1 assay detection limit is 40 copies/mL at present[27]. Using more sperm may translate into more volume used or more viruses transmitted. On average, we introduce 40 million spermatozoa into the uterus in IUI, use 0.4 million spermatozoa in the culture dishes for IVF and only one sperm for ICSI. Unless the sperm sample for IUI is extremely concentrated, the volume (means the virus count or the transmission risk of HIV-1) of ICSI will be far less than 1/400000 compared to the IUI procedure.

Furthermore, when HIV-1 RNA is not detectable, is it risk free? Previously, Zhang *et al*[28] demonstrated over 50% cases with positive proviral DNA, even HIV-1 RNA less than 50 copies/mL. Therefore, fewer spermatozoa used to conceive (*e.g.*, ICSI) will have the lowest risk of HIV-1 transmission.

COST/BENEFIT

From a model of antenatal screening for HIV-1 infection in Australia, is it cost-effective in a setting of very low prevalence? The answer is "YES" if the prevalence of HIV-1 > 0.004372%[29]. The expense of massive screening to avoid a new vertical transmission has to be calculated. Here, HIV-1 discordant couples have already decided to get pregnant. Now, the open question is whether IUI or ICSI is safer?

IVF treatment with ICSI provides 2-5 times higher pregnancy rates compared to IUI, meaning less frequent exposure to HIV-1 in ICSI cycles. Moreover, in single reproductive assistance, IUI involved more than 4×10^7 times of sperm or virus exposure, which may result in the tragedy of HIV-1 seroconversion. That might be a strong reason to choose IVF-ICSI in addition to the theoretical risk. In 1997, Columbia University began offering IVF-ICSI but not IUI to HIV-seropositive men to limit viral exposure to a few motile sperm cells[30]. Although some worried about more ovarian hyperstimulation syndrome (OHSS) in IVF protocols than in IUI treatment[9], as a matter of fact that was wrong. The controlled ovarian stimulation protocols are the same and flushing medium into the follicle could remove the most granulosa cells. As we can freeze all embryos and/or use a GnRH agonist to trigger ovulation, the OHSS rates were relatively low in our IVF program. As mentioned, some doctors also criticized the higher multiple pregnancies in IVF cases[6] which was also actually wrong. Single embryo transfer could assure singleton pregnancy but IUI could not.

If we consider the cost difference between IUI and IVF, it is very trivial ($2000-15000 USD per IVF course) when compared to the medical fee of long-term HAART ($28861-40804 USD per person-year) in a new HIV-1 seroconversion[31]. If we consider the sedation for oocyte pickup, the psychological stress, including more trials and longer waiting of IUI, should also be considered when comparing IVF with ICSI treatment.

CONCLUSION

Modern HAART has prolonged the life expectancy of HIV-1 infected men; moreover, modern assisted reproductive technologies also have helped these couples to conceive successfully and safely. Pre-treatment with HAART, standard sperm washing procedure and controlled ovarian stimulation plus IUI/IVF may provide a promising way to improve pregnancy outcome in these couples. IVF treatment with ICSI in recent years may have given patients higher pregnancy rates and less risk of HIV-1 transmission. Furthermore, accurate HIV-1 assays or even embryo biopsy to verify the status of HIV-1 infection may be the future efforts.

REFERENCES

1 **May MT**, Gompels M, Delpech V, Porter K, Orkin C, Kegg S, Hay P, Johnson M, Palfreeman A, Gilson R, Chadwick D, Martin F, Hill T, Walsh J, Post F, Fisher M, Ainsworth J, Jose S, Leen C, Nelson M, Anderson J, Sabin C. Impact on life expectancy of HIV-1 positive individuals of CD4+ cell count and viral load response to antiretroviral therapy. *AIDS* 2014; **28**: 1193-1202 [PMID: 24556869 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0000000000000243]

2 **Mandelbrot L**, Heard I, Henrion-Géant E, Henrion R. Natural conception in HIV-negative women with HIV-infected partners.

Lancet 1997; **349**: 850-851 [PMID: 9121267 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(05)61754-0]

3 **Wawer MJ**, Gray RH, Sewankambo NK, Serwadda D, Li X, Laeyendecker O, Kiwanuka N, Kigozi G, Kiddugavu M, Lutalo T, Nalugoda F, Wabwire-Mangen F, Meehan MP, Quinn TC. Rates of HIV-1 transmission per coital act, by stage of HIV-1 infection, in Rakai, Uganda. *J Infect Dis* 2005; **191**: 1403-1409 [PMID: 15809897 DOI: 10.1086/429411]

4 **Bujan L**, Sergerie M, Moinard N, Martinet S, Porte L, Massip P, Pasquier C, Daudin M. Decreased semen volume and spermatozoa motility in HIV-1-infected patients under antiretroviral treatment. *J Androl* 2007; **28**: 444-452 [PMID: 17215546 DOI: 10.2164/jandrol.106.001529]

5 **Semprini AE**, Levi-Setti P, Bozzo M, Ravizza M, Taglioretti A, Sulpizio P, Albani E, Oneta M, Pardi G. Insemination of HIV-negative women with processed semen of HIV-positive partners. *Lancet* 1992; **340**: 1317-1319 [PMID: 1360037]

6 **Semprini AE**, Fiore S. HIV and reproduction. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol* 2004; **16**: 257-262 [PMID: 15129056]

7 **Savasi V**, Ferrazzi E, Lanzani C, Oneta M, Parrilla B, Persico T. Safety of sperm washing and ART outcome in 741 HIV-1-serodiscordant couples. *Hum Reprod* 2007; **22**: 772-777 [PMID: 17107974 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/del422]

8 **Bujan L**, Hollander L, Coudert M, Gilling-Smith C, Vucetich A, Guibert J, Vernazza P, Ohl J, Weigel M, Englert Y, Semprini AE. Safety and efficacy of sperm washing in HIV-1-serodiscordant couples where the male is infected: results from the European CREAThE network. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 1909-1914 [PMID: 17721098 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3282703879]

9 **Sauer MV**, Wang JG, Douglas NC, Nakhuda GS, Vardhana P, Jovanovic V, Guarnaccia MM. Providing fertility care to men seropositive for human immunodeficiency virus: reviewing 10 years of experience and 420 consecutive cycles of in vitro fertilization and intracytoplasmic sperm injection. *Fertil Steril* 2009; **91**: 2455-2460 [PMID: 18555235 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2008.04.013]

10 **Wu MY**, Chang LJ, Chen MJ, Chao KH, Yang YS, Ho HN. Outcomes of assisted reproductive techniques for HIV-1-discordant couples using thawed washed sperm in Taiwan: comparison with control and testicular sperm extraction/microscopic epididymal sperm aspiration groups. *J Formos Med Assoc* 2011; **110**: 495-500 [PMID: 21783018 DOI: 10.1016/S0929-6646(11)60075-2]

11 **Kato S**, Hanabusa H, Kaneko S, Takakuwa K, Suzuki M, Kuji N, Jinno M, Tanaka R, Kojima K, Iwashita M, Yoshimura Y, Tanaka K. Complete removal of HIV-1 RNA and proviral DNA from semen by the swim-up method: assisted reproduction technique using spermatozoa free from HIV-1. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 967-973 [PMID: 16603847 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000222067.07255.2d]

12 **Ethics Committee of the American Society for Reproductive M**. Human immunodeficiency virus and infertility treatment. *Fertil Steril* 2010; **94**: 11-15 [PMID: 20236636 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2010.01.077]

13 **Stewart GJ**, Tyler JP, Cunningham AL, Barr JA, Driscoll GL, Gold J, Lamont BJ. Transmission of human T-cell lymphotropic virus type III (HTLV-III) by artificial insemination by donor. *Lancet* 1985; **2**: 581-585 [PMID: 2863597]

14 **Cohen MS**, Hoffman IF, Royce RA, Kazembe P, Dyer JR, Daly CC, Zimba D, Vernazza PL, Maida M, Fiscus SA, Eron JJ. Reduction of concentration of HIV-1 in semen after treatment of urethritis: implications for prevention of sexual transmission of HIV-1. AIDSCAP Malawi Research Group. *Lancet* 1997; **349**: 1868-1873 [PMID: 9217758]

15 **Fiore JR**, Lorusso F, Vacca M, Ladisa N, Greco P, De Palo R. The efficiency of sperm washing in removing human immunodeficiency virus type 1 varies according to the seminal viral load. *Fertil Steril* 2005; **84**: 232-234 [PMID: 16009191 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2004.12.060]

16 **Politch JA**, Xu C, Tucker L, Anderson DJ. Separation of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 from motile sperm by the double tube gradient method versus other methods. *Fertil Steril* 2004; **81**: 440-447 [PMID: 14967387 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2003.06.028]

17 **Loskutoff NM**, Huyser C, Singh R, Walker DL, Thornhill AR, Morris L, Webber L. Use of a novel washing method combining multiple density gradients and trypsin for removing human immunodeficiency virus-1 and hepatitis C virus from semen. *Fertil Steril* 2005; **84**: 1001-1010 [PMID: 16213856 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2005.03.082]

18 **van Leeuwen E**, Repping S, Prins JM, Reiss P, van der Veen F. Assisted reproductive technologies to establish pregnancies in couples with an HIV-1-infected man. *Neth J Med* 2009; **67**: 322-327 [PMID: 19767658]

19 **Yang JH**, Wu MY, Chao KH, Chen SU, Ho HN, Yang YS. Controlled ovarian hyperstimulation and intrauterine insemination in subfertility. How many treatment cycles are sufficient? *J Reprod Med* 1998; **43**: 903-908 [PMID: 9800675]

20 **Lee TH**, Lin YH, Seow KM, Hwang JL, Tzeng CR, Yang YS. Effectiveness of cetrorelix for the prevention of premature luteinizing hormone surge during controlled ovarian stimulation using letrozole and gonadotropins: a randomized trial. *Fertil Steril* 2008; **90**: 113-120 [PMID: 18054932 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2007.06.029]

21 **Ho CH**, Chen SU, Peng FS, Chang CY, Lien YR, Yang YS. Prospective comparison of short and long GnRH agonist protocols using recombinant gonadotrophins for IVF/ICSI treatments. *Reprod Biomed Online* 2008; **16**: 632-639 [PMID: 18492366]

22 **Huang CC**, Lien YR, Chen HF, Chen MJ, Shieh CJ, Yao YL, Chang CH, Chen SU, Yang YS. The duration of pre-ovulatory serum progesterone elevation before hCG administration affects the outcome of IVF/ICSI cycles. *Hum Reprod* 2012; **27**: 2036-2045 [PMID: 22561057 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/des141]

23 **Mansour R**, Ishihara O, Adamson GD, Dyer S, de Mouzon J, Nygren KG, Sullivan E, Zegers-Hochschild F. International Committee for Monitoring Assisted Reproductive Technologies world report: Assisted Reproductive Technology 2006. *Hum Reprod* 2014; **29**: 1536-1551 [PMID: 24795090 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/deu084]

24 **Takeshima K**, Saito H, Nakaza A, Kuwahara A, Ishihara O, Irahara M, Hirahara H, Yoshimura Y, Sakumoto T. Efficacy, safety, and trends in assisted reproductive technology in Japan-analysis of four-year data from the national registry system. *J Assist Reprod Genet* 2014; **31**: 477-484 [PMID: 24493386 DOI: 10.1007/s10815-014-0181-8]

25 **Rodríguez Barredo DB**, Tur Padro R, Mancini F, Parriego García M, Rodríguez García I, Coroleu Lletget B, Barri Rague PN. Elective single embryo transfer and cumulative pregnancy rate: five-year experience in a Southern European Country. *Gynecol Endocrinol* 2012; **28**: 425-428 [PMID: 22114913 DOI: 10.3109/09513590.2011.633662]

26 **Wu MY**, Chao KH, Chen CD, Chang LJ, Chen SU, Yang YS. Current status of comprehensive chromosome screening for elective single-embryo transfer. *Obstet Gynecol Int* 2014; **2014**: 581783 [PMID: 24991216 DOI: 10.1155/2014/581783]

27 **Rutstein SE**, Kamwendo D, Lugali L, Thengolose I, Tegha G, Fiscus SA, Nelson JA, Hosseinipour MC, Sarr A, Gupta S, Chimbwandira F, Mwenda R, Mataya R. Measures of viral load using Abbott RealTime HIV-1 Assay on venous and fingerstick dried blood spots from provider-collected specimens in Malawian District Hospitals. *J Clin Virol* 2014; **60**: 392-398 [PMID: 24906641 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2014.05.005]

28 **Zhang H**, Dornadula G, Beumont M, Livornese L, Van Uitert B, Henning K, Pomerantz RJ. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 in the semen of men receiving highly active antiretroviral therapy. *N Engl J Med* 1998; **339**: 1803-1809 [PMID: 9854115 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199812173392502]

29 **Graves N**, Walker DG, McDonald AM, Kaldor JM, Ziegler JB. Would universal antenatal screening for HIV infection be cost-effective in a setting of very low prevalence? Modelling the data for Australia. *J Infect Dis* 2004; **190**: 166-174 [PMID: 15195257 DOI: 10.1086/421247]

30 **Sauer MV**, Chang PL. Establishing a clinical program for human immunodeficiency virus 1-seropositive men to father seronegative children by means of in vitro fertilization with intracytoplasmic

sperm injection. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2002; **186**: 627-633 [PMID: 11967483]

31 **Solem CT**, Snedecor SJ, Khachatryan A, Nedrow K, Tawadrous M, Chambers R, Haider S, Simpson K. Cost of treatment in a US commercially insured, HIV-1-infected population. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e98152 [PMID: 24866200 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0098152]

P- Reviewer: Khajehei M, Shih WL **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: Roemmele A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.147

World J Virol 2015 May 12; 4(2): 147-155
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

META-ANALYSIS

Elevated homocysteine levels in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients under antiretroviral therapy: A meta-analysis

Rafael Deminice, Talita Capoani Vieira Silva, Vitor Hugo Fernando de Oliveira

Rafael Deminice, Talita Capoani Vieira Silva, Vitor Hugo Fernando de Oliveira, Department of Physical Education, State University of Londrina, Londrina 86057-970, Brazil
Author contributions: The study was designed by Deminice R; data were collected and analyzed by Deminice R and Silva TCV; data interpretation and manuscript preparation were undertaken by Deminice R, Silva TCV and de Oliveira VHF; Manuscript preparation Deminice R, Silva TCV and de Oliveira VHF; had final responsibility to the manuscript Deminice R.
Supported by Rafael Deminice is supported by Brazilian grants SETI-PR (Programa Universidade sem Fronteiras, Secretaria da Ciência, Tecnologia e Ensino Superior).
Conflict-of-interest: All authors declared that there is no potential conflict of interests regarding this article.
Data sharing: All data generated during the project will be made freely available *via* correspondent author e-mail (deminice@ig.com.br). Data will be maintained for a minimum of 10 years. There are no security or licensing related to the expected data, and all data used in the project will be generated directly as a result of the project, without any pre-existing data being used.

Correspondence to: Rafael Deminice, PhD, Assistant Professor, Department of Physical Education, State University of Londrina, Rodovia Celso Garcia Cid, Pr 445 Km 380, Campus Universitário, Londrina, Paraná 86057-970, Brazil. deminice@ig.com.br
Telephone: +55-43-33715481
Fax: +55-43-33715481
Received: October 28, 2014
Peer-review started: October 28, 2014
First decision: November 14, 2014
Revised: November 28, 2014
Accepted: March 4, 2015
Article in press: March 5, 2015
Published online: May 12, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To evaluate the association between the levels of homocysteine (Hcy), folate, vitamin B12 in human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected patients who were treated with antiretroviral therapy (ART) or not treated with ART.

METHODS: The PubMed and Scielo databases were searched. Eligible studies regarding plasma Hcy level in HIV-infected patients were firstly identified. After careful analysis by two independent researches, the identified articles were included in the review according to two outcomes (1) Hcy, folate and vitamin B12 blood concentration in HIV-infected subjects *vs* health controls and; (2) Hcy blood concentration in HIV-infected subjects under ART *vs* not treated with ART. RevMan (version 5.2) was employed for data synthesis.

RESULTS: A total of 12 studies were included in outcome 1 (1649 participants, 932 cases and 717 controls). Outcome 1 meta-analysis demonstrated higher plasma Hcy (2.05 μmol/L; 95%CI: 0.10 to 4.00, $P < 0.01$) and decreased plasma folate concentrations (-2.74 ng/mL; 95%CI: -5.18 to -0.29, $P < 0.01$) in HIV-infected patients compared to healthy controls. No changes in vitamin B12 plasma concentration were observed between groups. All studies included in the outcome 2 meta-analysis (1167 participants; 404 HIV-infected exposed to ART and 757 HIV-infected non-ART patients) demonstrated higher mean Hcy concentration in subjects HIV-infected under ART compared to non-ART HIV subjects (4.13 μmol/L; 95%CI: 1.34 to 6.92, $P < 0.01$).

CONCLUSION: This meta-analysis demonstrated that the levels of Hcy and folate, but not vitamin B12, were associated with HIV infection. In addition, Hcy levels were higher in HIV-infected patients who were under ART compared to HIV-infected patients who

were not exposed to ART. Our results suggest that hyperhomocysteinemia should be included among the several important metabolic disturbances that are associated with ART in patients with HIV infection.

Key words: Antiretroviral therapy; Homocysteine; Folate; Vitamin B12; Human immunodeficiency virus; Acquired immune deficiency syndrome

Core tip: Although antiretroviral therapy (ART) has changed dramatically the speciation of life of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected patients, it has increased the incidence of chronic diseases, especially cardiovascular diseases. Nowadays, elevated levels of homocysteine have been considered to be an independent risk factor for cardiovascular disease development. Our study demonstrated that the levels of Hcy and folate, were associated with HIV infection, especially for those exposed to ART.

Deminice R, Silva TCV, de Oliveira VHF. Elevated homocysteine levels in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients under antiretroviral therapy: A meta-analysis. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(2): 147-155 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i2/147.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i2.147

INTRODUCTION

The introduction of antiretroviral therapy (*ART*) has changed the spectrum of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infections, reducing the risk of opportunistic infections and substantially reducing mortality rates[1]. Although ART has changed HIV infection from an acute to a chronic disease, this therapy has increased the incidence of cardiovascular disease (CVD) among HIV-infected subjects[2], associated with the presentation of risk factors, such as dyslipidemia, insulin resistance, and lipodystrophy, among others. Development of these risk factors may be due to HIV infection itself or ART-associated toxicity[3]. Epidemiological studies have demonstrated an increased incidence of myocardial infarction, atherosclerotic disease, and mortality in HIV-infected patients compared to noninfected individuals, especially when exposed to ART[4-7].

Since McCully *et al*[8] firstly demonstrated elevated incidence of homocystinuria in patients with severe atherosclerosis and arterial thrombosis, elevated levels of homocysteine (Hcy) have been considered to be an independent risk factor for CVD development[9,10]. Recently, several studies have demonstrated an association between hyperhomocysteinemia (HHcy) and a spectrum of diseases, including neurodegenerative diseases, diabetes, chronic kidney disease, and fatty liver disease[11-15]. Much of this association has been attributed to the characteristics of Hcy, which is a potent toxic agent that may increase oxidative stress and promote neurotoxicity, endothelial dysfunction, and accelerate the atherosclerotic process[16-19]. Hcy is an amino acid formed exclusively by demethylation of methionine[10]. In Hcy synthesis, methionine is activated by ATP to form S-adenosylmethionine (SAM). SAM acts primarily as a universal methyl donor in the synthesis of methylated compounds such as neurotransmitters (epinephrine, norepinephrine), DNA, RNA, phosphatidylcholine and creatine[11]. A subproduct of these methylation reactions is S-adenosylhomocysteine, which is hydrolyzed to adenosine and Hcy[10]. Hcy can be remethylated to form metionine by the action of the enzyme methionine synthase which uses $N^{5'10}$-methylene-THF-reductase (MTHFR) as a methyl donor. Vitamins B12 and folate are co-factors in this reaction. The catabolism of methionine is performed by transsulfuration, with Hcy reacting with serine to form cystathionine in an irreversible reaction catalyzed by cystathione-β-synthase and dependent of vitamin B6[16].

Owing to their involvement in the Hcy remethylation pathway, vitamin B12 and folate deficiencies have been associated with elevated Hcy concentrations[20,21]. However, studies examining this association in HIV patients have reported conflicting results. Folate and vitamin B12 deficiencies have been reported in HIV-infected patients due to low intake and/or malabsorption[22,23]. Remacha *et al*[23] demonstrated that HIV-infected subjects with low serum vitamin B12 and red blood cell folate concentrations had HHcy. In contrast, studies found no changes in folate and vitamin B12 levels during follow-up after ART[24-26].

Given the inconsistency of the existing literature and the insufficient statistical power of primary studies, we conducted a meta-analysis to clarify the relationship between the levels of Hcy, folate, and vitamin B12 in HIV-infected patients. We also investigated the relationship between Hcy levels in HIV-infected patients who were treated with ART or not treated with ART.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

The PubMed and Scielo databases were searched for English- or Spanish-language articles, by using the following keywords: "homocysteine," "HIV-infected," and "AIDS". Any case-control, cross-sectional, or cohort study that assayed the blood concentrations of Hcy, vitamin B12, or folate in HIV-infected patients was analyzed. After careful analysis by two independent researchers, identified articles were included in the review if they satisfied the following criteria: (1) contained human clinical outcomes (rather than outcomes from animal experiments); (2) used a case-control, cross-sectional trial or cohort design; (3) contained quantitative information regarding Hcy, vitamin B12, or folate plasma or serum concentrations; and (4) included a healthy

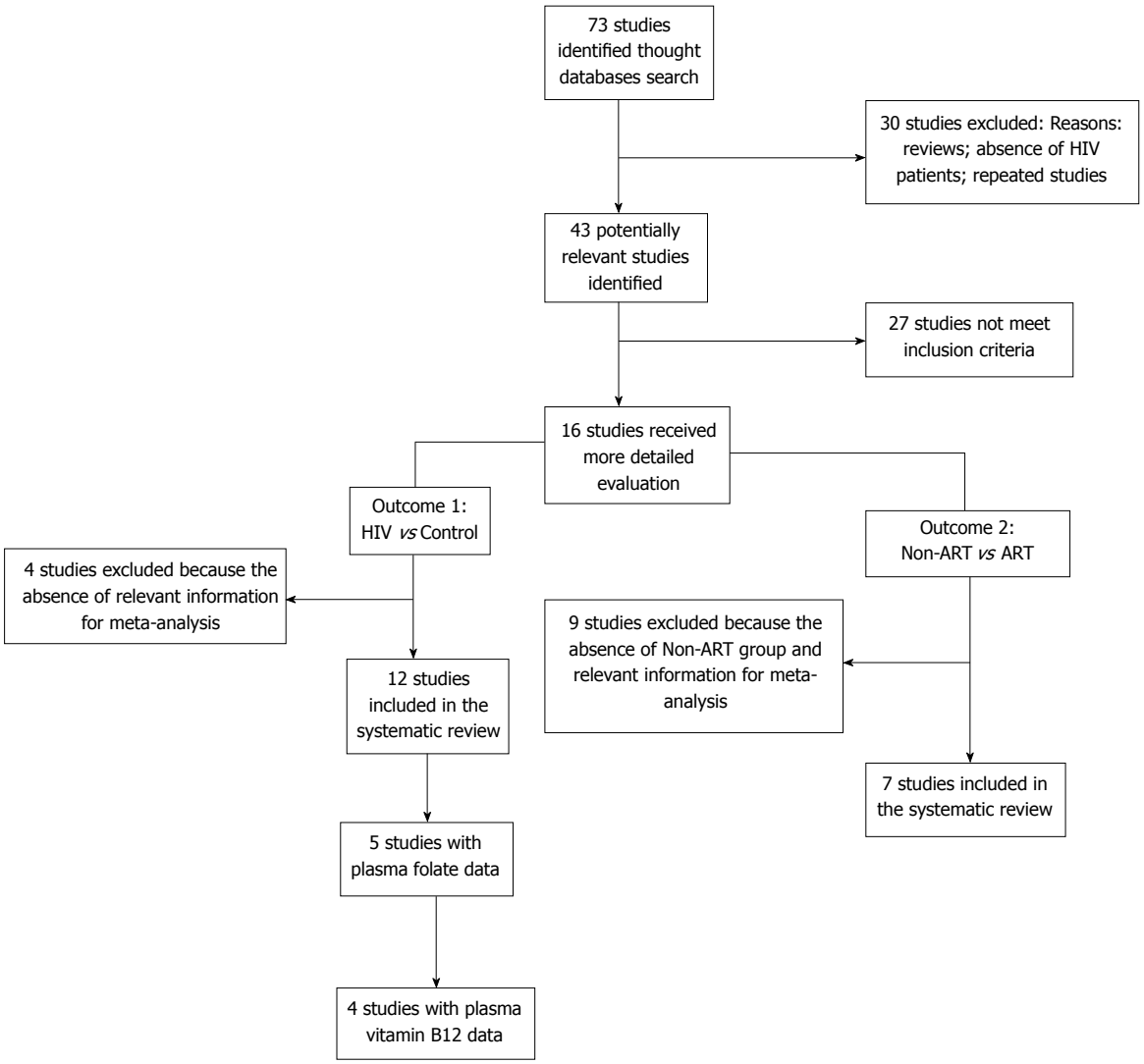


Figure 1 PRISMA flow diagram of the study selection process. After careful discussion between the 3 reviewers, two outcomes were identified and included in the meta-analysis. HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus; ART: Antiretroviral therapy.

control group. Relevant articles that were cited in the publications were reviewed and included in the meta-analysis if they satisfied the inclusion criteria.

The search was conducted considering two main outcomes: (1) Hcy blood concentrations in HIV-infected subjects compared to healthy controls; and (2) Hcy blood concentrations in HIV-infected individuals who were treated by ART compared to HIV-infected individuals who were not treated by ART (HIV-infected ART *vs* non-ART groups, Figure 1). A subgroup of outcome 1 was created to determine the vitamin B12 and folate plasma concentrations in HIV-infected individuals compared to healthy controls. The selection process is described in Figure 1.

For all articles included in the meta-analyses for the two outcomes, the following data were extracted: authors and year of publication; country where the study was conducted; study design; number of subjects in the study; plasma/serum concentrations of Hcy, vitamin B12, percent of each group with HHcy; and folate in HIV-infected and control subjects. Inclusion of studies in the meta-analyses was discussed by the 3 authors. All meta-analysis procedures were conducted as described by Stroup *et al*[27].

Statistical analysis

Effects of HIV infection on the Hcy blood concentration were quantified by performing meta-analyses for the two outcomes described above with the RevMan software package (version 5.0). In outcome 1, two subgroup analyses were performed to access the impact of HIV on the folate and vitamin B12 plasma concentrations. RevMan was used to calculate the weighted mean difference. The 95%CI was employed for presenting the statistical results for continuous outcomes. Weighted percentages were based on the sample sizes of respective studies. Differences with a P value < 0.05 were considered to be statistically significant. Study heterogeneity was evaluated by the I^2 statistic. All meta-analyses were considered to be of high heterogeneity (I^2 > 75%), and the random-effects model was used[28]. All data were analyses with

Table 1 Characteristics of studies included in the outcome 1

Ref.	Country	Sample size (Control/HIV)	Study design	Hcy (μmol/L)		HHcy	Folate (ng/mL)/Vitamin B12 (pg/mL)	
				Control	HIV		Control	HIV
Castagna *et al*[29]	Italy	20/14	CS and CC of some patients	10.8 ± 3.8	6.0 ± 2.2	-	-	-
Muller *et al*[30]	Norway	15/21	CS	9.2 ± 7.3	9.0 ± 5.0	-	-	-
Naisbitt *et al*[31]	England	33/33	CS	11.9 ± 4.7	14.5 ± 5.6	-	-	-
Bernasconi *et al*[32]	Swaziland	80/73	COS	7.6 ± 3.6	8.7 ± 4.1	5% control; 12.3% HIV	-	-
Vilaseca *et al*[33]	Spain	170/69	COS	6.2 (4.0-10.4)[2]	9.9 (5.5-23.3)[2]	50.7% HIV	Folate 19.1 ± 7.5/ B12 455 ± 160[1]	Folate 12.6 ± 6.7/ B12 481 ± 181[1]
de Larrañaga *et al*[34]	Argentina	31/128	CS	9.0 (7.2-13.0)[2]	9.0 (6.5-12.7)[2]	12.9% control; 16.4% HIV	Folate 2.5 (2.1-3.1)[2]/B12 309 (268-477)[2]	Folate 3.6 (2.5-5.6)[2]/B12 337.4 (222-493)[2]
Remacha *et al*[23]	Spain	128/235	CS	7.5 ± 7.8	14.3 ± 12.9	6.2% control;	-	B12 368.6 ± 219
Raiszadeh *et al*[35]	United States	127/249	COS	7.2 ± 2.7	7.4 ± 2.7	13.4% control; 16.90%	-	-
Vigano *et al*[36]	Italy	19/23	CS	9.0 ± 5.0	11.0 ± 8.0	-	Folate 6.9 ± 1.7	Folate 4.7 ± 1.5
Abdollahi and Shoar[37]	Iran	58/58	CC	12.6 ± 1.1	27.1 ± 10.2	91.4% HIV	-	-
Borges-Santos *et al*[38]	Brazil	20/12	CC	13.9 ± 5.5	9.8 ± 1.6	-	Folate 7.5 (6.3-9.0)[2]/B12 288 ± 130	Folate 1.9 (1.4-6.6)[2]/B12 367 ± 139
Deminice *et al*[39]	Brazil	10/23	CS	6.6 ± 1.5	9.4 ± 2.7	0% controls; 30.4% HIV	Folate 11.7 ± 3.4/ B12 713.1 ± 110.1	Folate 7.0 ± 2/B12 514.6 ± 99.3

[1]Folate and vitamin B12 determined in 56 controls and 69 HIV-infected patients only. Values in Hcy, folate and vitamin B12 are expressed as mean ± DP; [2]Values expressed as range (25th-75th percentiles). CC: Case-control; CS: Cross-sectional; COS: Cohort study; Hcy: Homocysteine; HHcy: Hyperhomocysteinenemia; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus.

a biostatistician support.

RESULTS

Outcome 1

The initial search was independently executed by two reviewers, resulting in the selection of 73 articles. Reviews, repeated studies, and studies conducted in the absence of a control group identified 43 relevant studies. Screening by title and abstract was conducted in accordance with inclusion criteria. After extensive discussions between the authors, 16 articles were identified and included in the meta-analyses. Studies were included in either outcome 1 or 2, as described in Figure 1.

Twelve studies were included in the meta-analysis for outcome 1. Table 1 describes the characteristics of the 12 studies included in outcome 1. Four of the 16 selected studies were excluded because of the absence of a control group[40,41,42,43]. These studies included 1649 participants (932 HIV-infected patients and 717 healthy controls). Nine of the 12 studies reported that the mean Hcy concentration was greater in HIV-infected individuals compared to controls. Only five[33,34,36,38,39] and four[33,36,38,39] of the included studies described quantitative folate and vitamin B12 data, respectively (Table 1).

A meta-analysis performed on outcome 1 indicated that the plasma Hcy levels in HIV-infected patients were 2.05 μmol/L higher than the plasma Hcy levels in uninfected controls (95%CI: 0.13-4.01, $P < 0.01$; Figure 2).

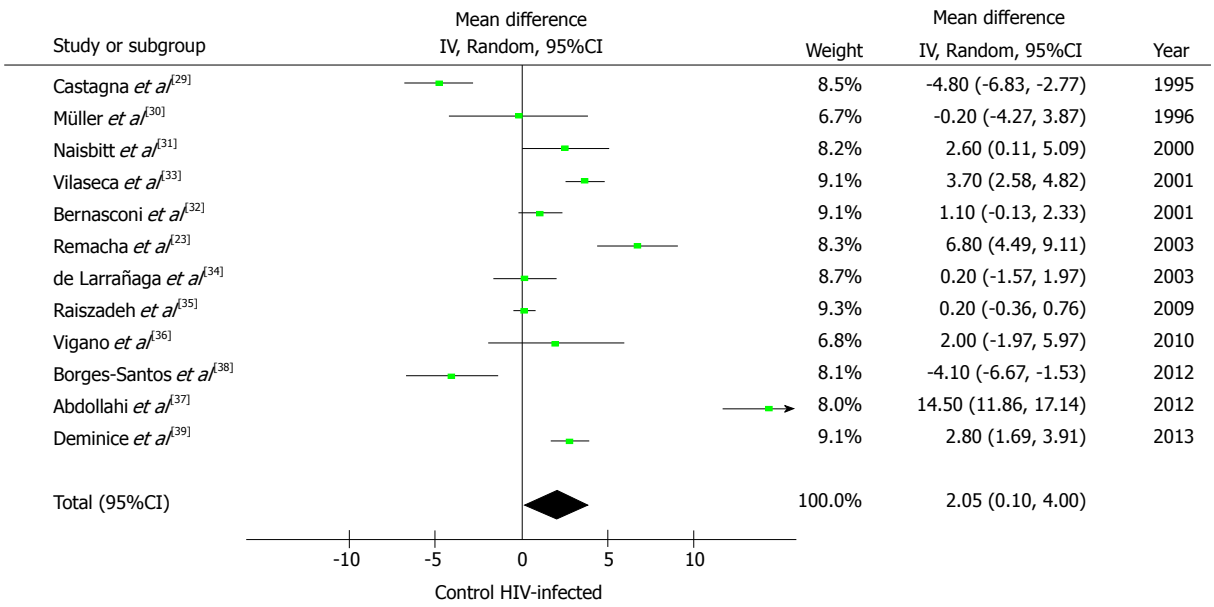
Subgroup analyses on folate and vitamin B12 plasma concentrations between test groups (Figure 3) demonstrated plasma folate levels were -2.74 ng/mL decreased in HIV-infected patients compared to uninfected controls (95%CI: -5.18 - -0.29, $P < 0.01$), but no significant difference in the B12 concentration between the two groups. Funnel plot analysis did not show evidence of substantial publication bias for the association between Hcy level and HIV infection.

Outcome 2

Nine of the 16 studies selected were excluded from outcome 2 because of the absence of an HIV-infected non-ART group[29,30-33,36-39] (Figure 1). Table 2 describes the characteristics of the 7 studies included in outcome 2. These studies included 1167 participants (404 patients in the HIV-infected ART group and 757 patients in the HIV-infected non-ART group). All studies included in the meta-analysis for outcome 2 described a higher mean Hcy concentration in the HIV-infected ART group compared to the HIV-infected non-ART group (4.13 μmol/L; 95%CI: 1.34-6.92, $P < 0.01$; Figure 4).

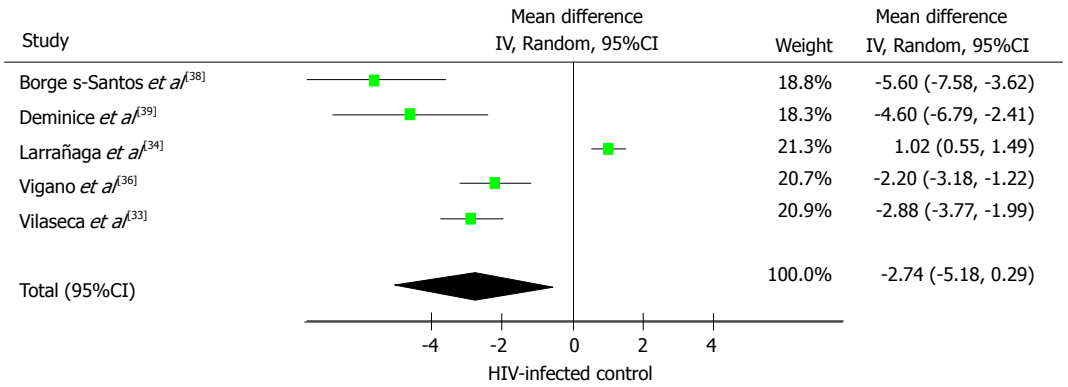
DISCUSSION

Overall, we found that HIV infection and ART were significantly associated with elevated plasma Hcy levels. The pooled mean Hcy concentration was greater in HIV-infected subjects compared to healthy controls. Hcy blood concentrations were elevated among HIV-infected

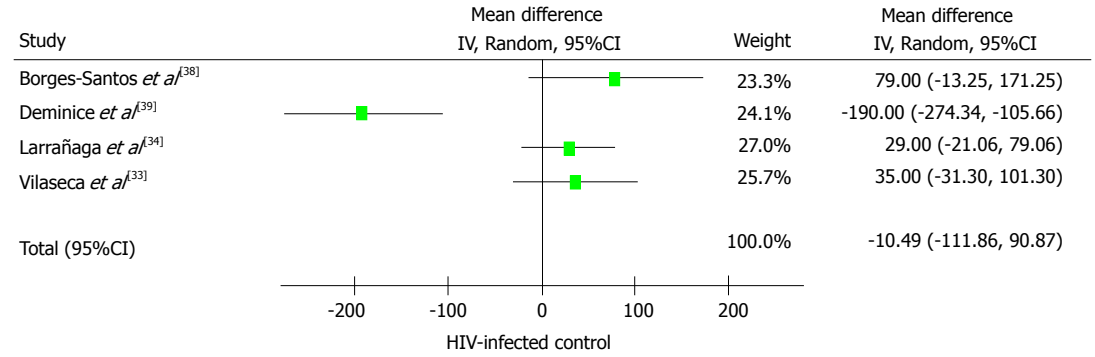


Heterogeneity: Tau^2 = 10.50; Chi^2 = 212.29, df = 11 (P < 0.00001); I^2 = 95%
Test for overall effect: Z = 2.06(P =0.04)

Figure 2 Meta-analysis of blood homocysteine concentration in human immunodeficiency virus-infected subjects compared with healthy controls. Calculation based on random effects model. Results are expressed as weighted mean difference of homocysteine (μmol/L) and 95%CI. HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus.



Heterogeneity: Tau^2 = 7.25; χ^2 = 117.99. df = 4 (P < 0.00001); I^2 = 97%
Test for overall effect: Z = 2.19 (P = 0.03)



Heterogeneity: Tau2 = 9267.92; χ^2 = 24.65, df = 3 (P < 0.0001); I^2 =88%
Test for overall effect: Z = 0.20 (P = 0.84)

Figure 3 Meta-analysis of serum folate and vitamin B12 levels in human immunodeficiency virus-infected subjects compared with healthy controls. Calculation based on random effects model. Results are expressed as weighted mean difference of folate (pg/mL) and vitamin B12 (pg/mL) and 95%CI.

Table 2 Characteristics of studies included in the outcome 2

Ref.	Country	Sample size (Control/HIV)	Study design	Hcy (μmol/L)		HHcy	ART
				ART	Non-ART		
Mercié *et al*[42]	France	78/304	COS	12.5 ± 4.8	11.5 ± 4.3	-	-
de Larrañaga *et al*[34]	Argentina	31/128	CS	9.7 ± 7.1	8.0 ± 6.1	-	-
Remacha *et al*[23]	Spain	128/235	CS	17.3 ± 13	8.2 ± 7.8	-	Patients under ART (taking > 3 antiretroviral drugs)
Martí-Carvajal *et al*[41]	Venezuela	14/40	CS	10 ± 7.5	9.2 ± 6.7	48.6% non-ART; 45.5% ART	-
Currier *et al*[42]	United States	40/41	COS	9.6 ± 5	8.0 ± 6.1	-	Patients on ART including a PI continuously for 2 yr
Raiszadeh *et al*[35]	United States	127/249	COS	7.5 ± 2.8	7.3 ± 2.4	-	-
Coria-Ramirez *et al*[43]	Mexico	69/69	CC	24.8 ± 14.6	7.9 ± 3.4	7.3% non-ART; 79.9% ART	Patients who began ART and maintained the treatment for 6 mo

CC: Case-control; CS: Cross-sectional; COS: Cohort study; Hcy: Homocysteine; HHcy: Hyperhomocysteinenemia; PI: Protease inhibitors; ART: Antiretroviral therapy.

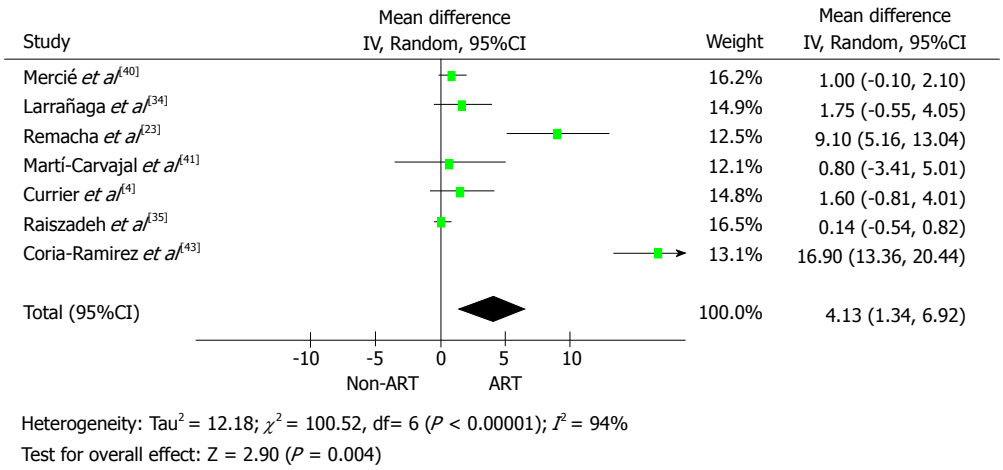


Figure 4 Meta-analysis of blood homocysteine concentration in human immunodeficiency virus-infected exposed and non-exposed to antiretroviral therapy. Calculation based on random effects model. Results are expressed as weighted mean difference of homocysteine (μmol/L) and 95%CI. ART: Antiretroviral therapy.

patients who were exposed to ART compared to patients who were not exposed to ART. In addition, HIV-infected patients presented decreased plasma levels of folate, but not vitamin B12. These findings provide consistent evidence that Hcy and folate levels are associated with HIV infection, especially when patients are also receiving ART.

Studies in rodents and *in vitro* have demonstrated that HHcy may be associated with decreased nitric oxide bioavailability and endothelial dysfunction[44], altered cellular methylation, formation of Hcy adducts (*e.g.*, Hcy-thiolactone), and oxidative stress. These perturbations are linked to cell toxicity[16], in addition to atherosclerosis and thrombotic processes[17-19]. In humans, a total Hcy level of 14.3 μmol/L or greater was independently associated with a relative risk of mortality (54% for all-cause mortality and 52% for cardiovascular mortality)[21,45]. Humphrey *et al*[46] demonstrated that each increase of 5 μmol/L in Hcy levels increased the risk of cardiovascular events by approximately 20%. However, previous studies have provided conflicting results regarding circulating Hcy levels in HIV-infected patients.

In nine of the 12 studies included in the meta-analysis of outcome 1, the mean Hcy concentrations were greater in HIV-infected subjects compared to levels in healthy controls. Our meta-analysis demonstrated that the plasma Hcy levels in HIV-infected patients were 2.05 μmol/L higher compared to levels in healthy controls. This observation is particularly relevant considering the heterogeneity of patients included in those studies with regard to the disease stage, ART status, comorbidities, and gender, among others. Considering the relationship between the Hcy level and ART status, we observed that the Hcy levels were higher by an average of 4.13 μmol/L in HIV-infected subjects who were exposed to ART compared to HIV-infected patients who were not exposed to ART.

ART is a causal factor of increased cardiovascular risk in HIV-infected subjects. ART promotes different metabolic disturbances, including hepatic and neurotoxicities, lipodystrophy syndrome, hyperlactatemia, hyperlipidemia, and insulin resistance[47,48]. The present study demonstrates that HHcy can be included on this list. Different classes of antiretroviral drugs and time exposed to the treatment may generate different ART-

associated adverse metabolic effects[47,49]. However, a lack of data in the revised papers prevents us from determining the contributions of different drug classes and durations of ART on Hcy levels (Table 2).

Although the precise mechanisms by which HIV infection and ART affect Hcy metabolism are not known, the vitamin B12 and folate levels have been shown to affect Hcy levels in HIV-infected patients[23,50]. Specifically, Hcy levels are inversely related to the daily intake of folate and vitamin B12 in general population[20,21]. That is because Hcy remethylation to methionine by methionine synthase requires folate[10]. However, this association appears to be different in the context of HIV infection. Remacha *et al*[23] identified HHcy in 100% and 51.5% of HIV-infected patients who had erythrocyte folate concentrations below the 2.5th and 10th percentiles, respectively. In our results, decreased levels of plasma folate, but not vitamin B12, were associated with elevated Hcy levels in HIV-infected subjects. Deminice *et al*[39] demonstrated that folate intake was higher in HIV-infected patients compared to healthy controls. Coria-Ramirez *et al*[43] noted that nutritional abnormalities, such as decreased vitamin B12 and folate intake, were not responsible for the high incidence of HHcy observed in HIV-infected patients. Taken together, these findings suggest that disturbances in Hcy metabolism and the Hcy levels observed in HIV-infected patients may not be due to nutritional status. Instead, it may be that HIV and/or ART complications are linked to disturbances in Hcy metabolism. One possibility is that ART impairs the metabolism of Hcy, such as its remethylation or transsulfuration because both pathways may be affected[43]. However, to the best of our knowledge, here are no studies demonstrating ART modify Hcy metabolism enzymes. It is probably because liver biopsies are an invasive procedure with a relatively high risk of complications. Animal models could enable studies on ART and Hcy metabolism however; few studies have tested ART in animal models.

This study has some limitations that need to be considered. First, only a few of the included studies analyzed HIV-infected patients in the context of Hcy metabolism. This fact contributed to the lack of clinical homogeneity among subjects of the included studies. Most of the studies did not consider the nature or duration of the ART that was administered. Most studies excluded the effects of comorbidities and diseases that may have affected Hcy levels (*e.g.*, kidney disease). Second, many studies did not include information regarding vitamin levels, or assessed folate plasma levels of determining folate status. Plasma folate levels may not be the best parameter for assessing folate deficiency or intake[43,51,52]. Erythrocyte folate or serum methylmalonic acid levels are better indicators of folate status, because they reflect folate turnover over the preceding 2 to 3 mo[23,43]. Lamarre *et al*[52] recently showed that formate levels provide important information regarding folate metabolism, and that increased Hcy levels can be caused by defects in the remethylation and transsulfuration pathways. Finally, some studies have demonstrated an association of the MTHFR polymorphisms and HHcy in different cases and diseases. However, this association was not considered in our included studies.

In conclusion, the levels of Hcy and folate, but not vitamin B12, were associated with HIV infection. Hcy levels were higher in HIV-infected patients who were exposed to ART compared to HIV-infected patients who were not exposed to ART. Finally, HHcy can be included among the several important metabolic disturbances that are associated with ART in patients with HIV infection.

COMMENTS

Background

Although antiretroviral therapy (ART) has changed dramatically the speciation of life of human immuno deficiency virus (HIV)-infected patients, it has increased the incidence of metabolic disorders as dyslipidemia, insulin resistance, lipodystrophy and others. Elevated homocysteine (Hcy) levels have been considered to be an independent risk factor for cardiovascular disease development. However, few studies have been considered Hcy levels in HIV-infected patients.

Research frontiers

Elevated Hcy levels have been considered to be an independent risk factor for cardiovascular disease development. Recently, several studies have demonstrated an association between hyperhomocysteinemia (HHcy) and a spectrum of diseases, including neurodegenerative diseases, diabetes, chronic kidney disease, and fatty liver disease. However, few researchers have focused in study Hcy levels HIV-infected patients.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The data demonstrated that the levels of Hcy and folate, were associated with HIV infection, especially for those exposed to ART. That is the first meta analysis carried out in search of a relationship between plasma homocysteine levels and HIV infection.

Applications

HHcy is associated to ART can be included among the several important metabolic disturbances that are associated with ART in patients with HIV infection.

Terminology

Hcy is an S-containing amino acid formed exclusively by demethylation of methionine. Hcy has gained attention in medical field because its instability and toxicity, especially in elevated concentrations.

Peer-review

The topic of manuscript is interesting and valuable. The logical thinking is reasonable and convincing. The reference collection and analysis process described in detailed, it is easy to follow.

REFERENCES

1 **Ciccolo JT**, Jowers EM, Bartholomew JB. The benefits of exercise training for quality of life in HIV/AIDS in the post-HAART era. *Sports Med* 2004; **34**: 487-499 [PMID: 15248786]

2 **Sension MG**. Long-Term suppression of HIV infection: benefits and limitations of current treatment options. *J Assoc Nurses AIDS Care* 2007; **18**: S2-10 [PMID: 17275719 DOI: 10.1016/j.jana.2006.11.012]

3 **Gresele P**, Falcinelli E, Momi S, Francisci D, Baldelli F. Highly active antiretroviral therapy-related mechanisms of endothelial and platelet function alterations. *Rev Cardiovasc Med* 2014; **15** Suppl 1: S9-20 [PMID: 24987863]

4 **Currier JS**, Taylor A, Boyd F, Dezii CM, Kawabata H, Burtcel B, Maa JF, Hodder S. Coronary heart disease in HIV-infected individuals. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2003; **33**: 506-512 [PMID:

12869840]
5 **Klein D**, Hurley LB, Quesenberry CP, Sidney S. Do protease inhibitors increase the risk for coronary heart disease in patients with HIV-1 infection? *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2002; **30**: 471-477 [PMID: 12154337]
6 **Obel N**, Thomsen HF, Kronborg G, Larsen CS, Hildebrandt PR, Sørensen HT, Gerstoft J. Ischemic heart disease in HIV-infected and HIV-uninfected individuals: a population-based cohort study. *Clin Infect Dis* 2007; **44**: 1625-1631 [PMID: 17516408 DOI: 10.1086/518285]
7 **Triant VA**, Lee H, Hadigan C, Grinspoon SK. Increased acute myocardial infarction rates and cardiovascular risk factors among patients with human immunodeficiency virus disease. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2007; **92**: 2506-2512 [PMID: 17456578 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2006-2190]
8 **McCully KS**. Vascular pathology of homocysteinemia: implications for the pathogenesis of arteriosclerosis. *Am J Pathol* 1969; **56**: 111-128 [PMID: 5792556]
9 **Lentz SR**. Mechanisms of homocysteine-induced atherothrombosis. *J Thromb Haemost* 2005; **3**: 1646-1654 [PMID: 16102030 DOI: 10.1111/j.1538-7836.2005.01364.x]
10 **Steed MM**, Tyagi SC. Mechanisms of cardiovascular remodeling in hyperhomocysteinemia. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2011; **15**: 1927-1943 [PMID: 21126196 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2010.3721]
11 **Deminice R**, da Silva RP, Lamarre SG, Brown C, Furey GN, McCarter SA, Jordao AA, Kelly KB, King-Jones K, Jacobs RL, Brosnan ME, Brosnan JT. Creatine supplementation prevents the accumulation of fat in the livers of rats fed a high-fat diet. *J Nutr* 2011; **141**: 1799-1804 [PMID: 21880953 DOI: 10.3945/jn.111.144857]
12 **Seshadri S**. Homocysteine and the risk of dementia. *Clin Chem* 2012; **58**: 1059-1060 [PMID: 22510400 DOI: 10.1373/clinchem.2011.181099]
13 **Wijekoon EP**, Brosnan ME, Brosnan JT. Homocysteine metabolism in diabetes. *Biochem Soc Trans* 2007; **35**: 1175-1179 [PMID: 17956306 DOI: 10.1042/BST0351175]
14 **Hu XW**, Qin SM, Li D, Hu LF, Liu CF. Elevated homocysteine levels in levodopa-treated idiopathic Parkinson's disease: a meta-analysis. *Acta Neurol Scand* 2013; **128**: 73-82 [PMID: 23432663 DOI: 10.1111/ane.12106]
15 **Zhang H**, Tao X, Wu J. Association of homocysteine, vitamin B12, and folate with bone mineral density in postmenopausal women: a meta-analysis. *Arch Gynecol Obstet* 2014; **289**: 1003-1009 [PMID: 24193243 DOI: 10.1007/s00404-013-3075-6]
16 **Jakubowski H**. Pathophysiological consequences of homocysteine excess. *J Nutr* 2006; **136**: 1741S-1749S [PMID: 16702349]
17 **Hofmann MA**, Lalla E, Lu Y, Gleason MR, Wolf BM, Tanji N, Ferran LJ, Kohl B, Rao V, Kisiel W, Stern DM, Schmidt AM. Hyperhomocysteinemia enhances vascular inflammation and accelerates atherosclerosis in a murine model. *J Clin Invest* 2001; **107**: 675-683 [PMID: 11254667 DOI: 10.1172/JCI10588]
18 **Morita H**, Kurihara H, Yoshida S, Saito Y, Shindo T, Oh-Hashi Y, Kurihara Y, Yazaki Y, Nagai R. Diet-induced hyperhomocysteinemia exacerbates neointima formation in rat carotid arteries after balloon injury. *Circulation* 2001; **103**: 133-139 [PMID: 11136698 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.103.1.133]
19 **Guo YH**, Chen FY, Wang GS, Chen L, Gao W. Diet-induced hyperhomocysteinemia exacerbates vascular reverse remodeling of balloon-injured arteries in rat. *Chin Med J* (Engl) 2008; **121**: 2265-2271 [PMID: 19080331]
20 **Selhub J**. The many facets of hyperhomocysteinemia: studies from the Framingham cohorts. *J Nutr* 2006; **136**: 1726S-1730S [PMID: 16702347]
21 **Selhub J**, Jacques PF, Dallal G, Choumenkovitch S, Rogers G. The use of blood concentrations of vitamins and their respective functional indicators to define folate and vitamin B12 status. *Food Nutr Bull* 2008; **29**: S67-S73 [PMID: 18709882]
22 **Malavazi I**, Abrão EP, Mikawa AY, Tagliavini SA, da Costa PI. [Evaluation of the polymorphisms in methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase gene and the levels of folate and B12 in HIV-infected patients under antiretroviral therapy]. *Rev Soc Bras Med Trop* 2004; **37**: 469-475 [PMID: 15765596]
23 **Remacha AF**, Cadafalch J, Sardà P, Barceló M, Fuster M. Vitamin B-12 metabolism in HIV-infected patients in the age of highly active antiretroviral therapy: role of homocysteine in assessing vitamin B-12 status. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2003; **77**: 420-424 [PMID: 12540403]
24 **Look MP**, Riezler R, Berthold HK, Stabler SP, Schliefer K, Allen RH, Sauerbruch T, Rockstroh JK. Decrease of elevated N,N-dimethylglycine and N-methylglycine in human immunodeficiency virus infection during short-term highly active antiretroviral therapy. *Metabolism* 2001; **50**: 1275-1281 [PMID: 11699044 DOI: 10.1053/meta.2001.27201]
25 **Hepburn MJ**, Dyal K, Runser LA, Barfield RL, Hepburn LM, Fraser SL. Low serum vitamin B12 levels in an outpatient HIV-infected population. *Int J STD AIDS* 2004; **15**: 127-133 [PMID: 15006076 DOI: 10.1258/095646204322764334]
26 **Drain PK**, Kupka R, Mugusi F, Fawzi WW. Micronutrients in HIV-positive persons receiving highly active antiretroviral therapy. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2007; **85**: 333-345 [PMID: 17284727]
27 **Stroup DF**, Berlin JA, Morton SC, Olkin I, Williamson GD, Rennie D, Moher D, Becker BJ, Sipe TA, Thacker SB. Meta-analysis of observational studies in epidemiology: a proposal for reporting. Meta-analysis Of Observational Studies in Epidemiology (MOOSE) group. *JAMA* 2000; **283**: 2008-2012 [PMID: 10789670 DOI: 10.1001/jama.283.15.2008]
28 **Higgins JP**, Thompson SG, Deeks JJ, Altman DG. Measuring inconsistency in meta-analyses. *BMJ* 2003; **327**: 557-560 [PMID: 12958120 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.327.7414.557]
29 **Castagna A**, Le Grazie C, Accordini A, Giulidori P, Cavalli G, Bottiglieri T, Lazzarin A. Cerebrospinal fluid S-adenosylmethionine (SAMe) and glutathione concentrations in HIV infection: effect of parenteral treatment with SAMe. *Neurology* 1995; **45**: 1678-1683 [PMID: 7675226]
30 **Müller F**, Svardal AM, Aukrust P, Berge RK, Ueland PM, Frøland SS. Elevated plasma concentration of reduced homocysteine in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Am J Clin Nutr* 1996; **63**: 242-248 [PMID: 8561066]
31 **Naisbitt DJ**, Vilar FJ, Stalford AC, Wilkins EG, Pirmohamed M, Park BK. Plasma cysteine deficiency and decreased reduction of nitrososulfamethoxazole with HIV infection. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 2000; **16**: 1929-1938 [PMID: 11153075 DOI: 10.1089/088922200750054657]
32 **Bernasconi E**, Uhr M, Magenta L, Ranno A, Telenti A. Homocysteinaemia in HIV-infected patients treated with highly active antiretroviral therapy. *AIDS* 2001; **15**: 1081-1082 [PMID: 11400001]
33 **Vilaseca MA**, Sierra C, Colomé C, Artuch R, Valls C, Muñoz-Almagro C, Vilches MA, Fortuny C. Hyperhomocysteinaemia and folate deficiency in human immunodeficiency virus-infected children. *Eur J Clin Invest* 2001; **31**: 992-998 [PMID: 11737242 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2362.2001.00916.x]
34 **de Larrañaga G**, Alonso B, Puga L, Benetucci J. [Plasma homocysteine in human immunodeficiency virus infected patient]. *Medicina* (B Aires) 2003; **63**: 393-398 [PMID: 14628648]
35 **Raiszadeh F**, Hoover DR, Lee I, Shi Q, Anastos K, Gao W, Kaplan RC, Glesby MJ. Plasma homocysteine is not associated with HIV serostatus or antiretroviral therapy in women. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2009; **51**: 175-178 [PMID: 19333128 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181a42bdf]
36 **Vigano A**, Bedogni G, Cerini C, Meroni L, Giacomet V, Stucchi S, Fabiano V, Coletto S, Catalano M, Minola M, Zuccotti GV. Both HIV-infection and long-term antiretroviral therapy are associated with increased common carotid intima-media thickness in HIV-infected adolescents and young adults. *Curr HIV Res* 2010; **8**: 411-417 [PMID: 20426755 DOI: 10.2174/1570162107913304 19]
37 **Abdollahi A**, Shoar TS. Hyperhomocysteinemia in HIV-

Infected Individuals: Correlation of a Frequent Prothrombotic Factor with CD4+ Cell Count. *Oman Med J* 2012; **27**: 224-227 [PMID: 22811772 DOI: 10.5001/omj.2012.50]

38 **Borges-Santos MD**, Moreto F, Pereira PC, Ming-Yu Y, Burini RC. Plasma glutathione of HIV$^+$ patients responded positively and differently to dietary supplementation with cysteine or glutamine. *Nutrition* 2012; **28**: 753-756 [PMID: 22261571 DOI: 10.1016/j.nut.2011.10.014]

39 **Deminice R**, Vassimon HS, Machado AA, de Paula FJ, Monteiro JP, Jordao AA. Plasma homocysteine levels in HIV-infected men with and without lipodystrophy. *Nutrition* 2013; **29**: 1326-1330 [PMID: 24045000 DOI: 10.1016/j.nut.2013.04.017]

40 **Mercié P**, Thiébaut R, Lavignolle V, Pellegrin JL, Yvorra-Vives MC, Morlat P, Ragnaud JM, Dupon M, Malvy D, Bellet H, Lawson-Ayayi S, Roudaut R, Dabis F. Evaluation of cardiovascular risk factors in HIV-1 infected patients using carotid intima-media thickness measurement. *Ann Med* 2002; **34**: 55-63 [PMID: 12014436]

41 **Martí-Carvajal A**, Nicita G, Palma A, Leal U, Brito N, Chacín A. Hiperhomocisteinemia en adultos venezolanos infectados por el virus de la inmunodeficiencia humana. *Gac Méd Caracas* 2007; **115**: 297-303

42 **Currier JS**, Kendall MA, Henry WK, Alston-Smith B, Torriani FJ, Tebas P, Li Y, Hodis HN. Progression of carotid artery intima-media thickening in HIV-infected and uninfected adults. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 1137-1145 [PMID: 17502724 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32811ebf79]

43 **Coria-Ramirez E**, Cisneros LN, Treviño-Perez S, Ibarra-Gonzalez I, Casillas-Rodriguez J, Majluf-Cruz A. Effect of highly active antiretroviral therapy on homocysteine plasma concentrations in HIV-1-infected patients. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2010; **54**: 477-481 [PMID: 20351558 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181d91088]

44 **Chambers JC**, McGregor A, Jean-Marie J, Obeid OA, Kooner JS. Demonstration of rapid onset vascular endothelial dysfunction after hyperhomocysteinemia: an effect reversible with vitamin C therapy. *Circulation* 1999; **99**: 1156-1160 [PMID: 10069782 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.99.9.1156]

45 **Bostom AG**, Silbershatz H, Rosenberg IH, Selhub J, D' Agostino RB, Wolf PA, Jacques PF, Wilson PW. Nonfasting plasma total homocysteine levels and all-cause and cardiovascular disease mortality in elderly Framingham men and women. *Arch Intern Med* 1999; **159**: 1077-1080 [PMID: 10335684 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.159.10.1077]

46 **Humphrey LL**, Fu R, Rogers K, Freeman M, Helfand M. Homocysteine level and coronary heart disease incidence: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Mayo Clin Proc* 2008; **83**: 1203-1212 [PMID: 18990318 DOI: 10.4065/83.11.1203]

47 **Friis-Møller N**, Reiss P, Sabin CA, Weber R, Monforte Ad, El-Sadr W, Thiébaut R, De Wit S, Kirk O, Fontas E, Law MG, Phillips A, Lundgren JD. Class of antiretroviral drugs and the risk of myocardial infarction. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **356**: 1723-1735 [PMID: 17460226 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa062744]

48 **Ridha E**, Devitt E, Boffito M, Boag F. Antiretroviral therapy and cardiovascular risk. *BMJ Case Rep* 2011; **2011**: [PMID: 22707576 DOI: 10.1136/bcr.10.2010.3429]

49 **Apostolova N**, Blas-García A, Esplugues JV. Mitochondrial toxicity in HAART: an overview of in vitro evidence. *Curr Pharm Des* 2011; **17**: 2130-2144 [PMID: 21718249 DOI: 10.2174/138161211796904731]

50 **Uccelli MC**, Torti C, Lapadula G, Labate L, Cologni G, Tirelli V, Moretti F, Costarelli S, Quiros-Roldan E, Carosi G. Influence of folate serum concentration on plasma homocysteine levels in HIV-positive patients exposed to protease inhibitors undergoing HAART. *Ann Nutr Metab* 2006; **50**: 247-252 [PMID: 16508252 DOI: 10.1159/000091682]

51 **Lamarre SG**, Molloy AM, Reinke SN, Sykes BD, Brosnan ME, Brosnan JT. Formate can differentiate between hyperhomocysteinemia due to impaired remethylation and impaired transsulfuration. *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 2012; **302**: E61-E67 [PMID: 21934042 DOI: 10.1152/ajpendo.00345.2011]

52 **Lamarre SG**, MacMillan L, Morrow GP, Randell E, Pongnopparat T, Brosnan ME, Brosnan JT. An isotope-dilution, GC-MS assay for formate and its application to human and animal metabolism. *Amino Acids* 2014; **46**: 1885-1891 [PMID: 24748098 DOI: 10.1007/s00726-014-1738-7]

P- Reviewer: Knysz B, Pajares MA, Shih WL **S- Editor**: Song XX
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Jiao XK

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

World Journal of *Virology*

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 156-312

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJV World Journal of Virology

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of virology

Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Virology* Editorial Board consists of 341 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in virology. They are from 58 countries, including Argentina (5), Australia (6), Austria (3), Barbados (1), Belgium (2), Brazil (6), Bulgaria (1), Cameroon (1), Canada (11), Chile (1), China (52), Croatia (2), Cuba (1), Czech Republic (1), Denmark (1), Egypt (2), Ethiopia (1), Finland (4), France (11), Germany (12), Ghana (1), Greece (2), Hungary (1), India (11), Indonesia (1), Iran (1), Ireland (3), Israel (5), Italy (24), Japan (13), Kazakhstan (1), Kenya (1), Kosovo (1), Mexico (2), Netherlands (6), New Zealand (1), Nigeria (1), Pakistan (2), Palestine (1), Poland (1), Portugal (1), Romania (1), Russia (2), Saudi Arabia (1), Senegal (1), Singapore (2), Slovakia (1), Slovenia (2), South Africa (3), South Korea (4), Spain (14), Sweden (3), Thailand (8), Tunisia (1), Turkey (4), United Kingdom (7), United States (82), and Uruguay (1).

WJV World Journal of Virology

Contents

Quarterly Volume 4 Number 3 August 12, 2015

EDITORIAL

REVIEW

MINIREVIEWS

SYSTEMATIC REVIEWS

World Journal of Virology
Volume 4 Number 3 August 12, 2015

Contents

World Journal of Virology (*World J Virol*, *WJV*, online ISSN 2220-3249, DOI: 10.5501) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJV covers topics concerning arboviral infections, bronchiolitis, central nervous system viral diseases, DNA virus infections, encephalitis, eye infections, fatigue syndrome, hepatitis, meningitis, opportunistic infections, pneumonia, RNA virus infections, sexually transmitted diseases, skin diseases, slow virus diseases, tumor virus infections, viremia, zoonoses, and virology-related traditional medicine, and integrated Chinese and Western medicine. Priority publication will be given to articles concerning diagnosis and treatment of viral diseases. The following aspects are covered: Clinical diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, differential diagnosis, imaging tests, pathological diagnosis, molecular biological diagnosis, immunological diagnosis, genetic diagnosis, functional diagnostics, and physical diagnosis; and comprehensive therapy, drug therapy, surgical therapy, interventional treatment, minimally invasive therapy, and robot-assisted therapy.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJV*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

World Journal of Virology is now indexed in PubMed Central, PubMed, and Digital Object Identifier.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Virology

ISSN
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
February 12, 2012

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF
Ling Lu, MD, PhD, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, University of Kansas Medical Center, Kansas City, 3901 Rainbow Blvd, WHE 3020, KS 66160, United States

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director

World Journal of Virology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center, No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
August 12, 2015

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.156

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 156-168
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

EDITORIAL

Novel antigen delivery systems

Maria Trovato, Piergiuseppe De Berardinis

Maria Trovato, Piergiuseppe De Berardinis, Institute of Protein Biochemistry, National Research Council, 80131 Naples, Italy

Author contributions: All authors contributed to this paper and they approved the final version of the article.

Supported by The grants from Nos. NIH R01AI AI074379 and MIUR-PON 01_00117.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that they have no conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: Piergiuseppe De Berardinis, PhD, Institute of Protein Biochemistry, National Research Council, Via Pietro Castellino 111, 80131 Naples, Italy. p.deberardinis@ibp.cnr.it
Telephone: +39-081-6132566

Received: January 26, 2015
Peer-review started: February 5, 2015
First decision: April 27, 2015
Revised: June 23, 2015
Accepted: July 29, 2015
Article in press: August 3, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

Vaccines represent the most relevant contribution of immunology to human health. However, despite the remarkable success achieved in the past years, many vaccines are still missing in order to fight important human pathologies and to prevent emerging and re-emerging diseases. For these pathogens the known strategies for making vaccines have been unsuccessful and thus, new avenues should be investigated to overcome the failure of clinical trials and other important issues including safety concerns related to live vaccines or viral vectors, the weak immunogenicity of subunit vaccines and side effects associated with the use of adjuvants. A major hurdle of developing successful and effective vaccines is to design antigen delivery systems in such a way that optimizes antigen presentation and induces broad protective immune responses. Recent advances in vector delivery technologies, immunology, vaccinology and system biology, have led to a deeper understanding of the molecular and cellular mechanisms by which vaccines should stimulate both arms of the adaptive immune responses, offering new strategies of vaccinations. This review is an update of current strategies with respect to live attenuated and inactivated vaccines, DNA vaccines, viral vectors, lipid-based carrier systems such as liposomes and virosomes as well as polymeric nanoparticle vaccines and virus-like particles. In addition, this article will describe our work on a versatile and immunogenic delivery system which we have studied in the past decade and which is derived from a non-pathogenic prokaryotic organism: the "E2 scaffold" of the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex from *Geobacillus stearothermophilus*.

Key words: Vaccines; Antigen display; Delivery systems; E2 scaffold; Immune response

Core tip: Several promising strategies of vaccination have been proposed over the past years to treat and/or prevent infectious and cancer diseases. These include live attenuated or inactivated viral vaccines, recombinant viral vectors, DNA vaccines, subunit vaccines, nanoparticle carriers, and lipid-based delivery systems such as liposomes and virosomes. Although some of these suffer from certain limitations (*e.g.*, safety concerns, weak immunogenicity, adverse side-effects associated with adjuvants), recent advances in vaccine technology have

provided further insights for guiding vaccine design. Here, we review the current status of antigen delivery systems with emphasis on a versatile and immunogenic vaccine delivery candidate: the "E2 scaffold".

Trovato M, De Berardinis P. Novel antigen delivery systems. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 156-168 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/156.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.156

LIVE ATTENUATED AND INACTIVATED, RECOMBINANT SUBUNIT VACCINES

Currently, the majority of vaccines licensed for human uses include live-attenuated and inactivated or killed vaccines[1]. They came from disease-causing viruses or bacteria manipulated *in vitro* to reduce or attenuate the pathogenicity, without altering the antigenic properties. Vaccines are manufactured using several different methods[2]. They may contain live microorganisms attenuated by repeated passages in cell-culture or animal embryos; inactivated (viral) or killed (bacterial) microorganisms that have lost the ability to replicate by physical, chemical or radiation treatments; inactivated toxins and conjugated subunits[3] (Table 1). Live attenuated vaccines currently available on the market include those against measles, mumps, rubella, varicella, influenza, rotavirus, and smallpox. Most of them are formulated as dry solids. Commercially available killed or inactivated vaccines, toxoids and subunit vaccines include several products, most of them being formulated in liquid dosage forms to treat other diseases, *e.g.,* rabies, meningitis, diphtheria, tetanus, poliomyelitis, *Haemophilus influenzae* type b, pertussis and hepatitis B. These vaccines are able of eliciting both humoral and cell-mediated immune responses[4]; however, some safety, stability, and efficacy concerns must be considered when developing these vaccines. Live attenuated vaccine can eventually mutate into a more virulent form capable of causing diseases[5], whereas inactivated or killed vaccines and protein subunit vaccines generally generate weak immune responses often requiring the use of adjuvants[6]. Many live attenuated vaccines are capable of eliciting virus-specific T cell and B cell responses and long-term immunity by mimicking the natural infection, and therefore they usually do not require the use of adjuvants. However, for some viruses vaccines have been very difficult to develop, due to the absence of tissue culture systems that allow for efficient propagation and production in a scalable setting. They tend to be more difficult and expensive to store and to distribute, since viability must be maintained, often requiring formulation approaches for stabilization[7]. On the other hand, killed/inactivated vaccines have a number of disadvantages. The major challenge is that since cells are never infected with the live microbe, these vaccines are generally not effective at eliciting a full adaptive immune response. They do not give rise to pathogen-specific cytotoxic T cells, thus often requiring multiple booster shoots and co-administration with adjuvants to increase antigenicity and to create long-term immunity, with subsequent local reactions at the vaccine site. However, for the absence of living pathogens these types of vaccines are usually safe compared to live attenuated vaccines.

Overall, these technologies have allowed to achieve the successes of vaccinology in the last century and to produce the vaccine formulations available on the market. However, many new vaccines are needed and for them new strategies have to be found[8]. In this context, the development of novel delivery technologies aimed to design safer and more effective vaccines is a relevant topic.

DNA VACCINES

DNA vaccines have emerged as a safer alternative to live and inactivated vaccines for treating human and animal infections, allergy, autoimmune disorders and cancer diseases[9]. They exhibit several advantages over traditional strategies in terms of safety, stability, ease of manufacturing, and immunogenicity (Table 1). As DNA-based plasmid vaccines are non-live, non-replicating, non-spreading vaccines, there is a little or no risk of mutation or reversion to the virulent form as with viral vectors, therefore raising fewer safety concerns. They are easy to manufacture and to manipulate compared with live attenuated vaccines, and the DNA product is highly stable and easily stored, without requiring refrigeration procedures. DNA vaccines can activate innate immunity and both arms of the adaptive immune response without inducing anti-vector antibodies unlike viral vector particles, thus being theoretically suitable for repeated booster shots. Furthermore, recent innovations in plasmid host strain and vector engineering increased plasmid manufacturing quality and yield, transgene expression levels, transfection efficiency, for a safer and more effective gene platform compared to first generation vectors[10,11]. Essentially, plasmid DNA vaccines consist of purified vectors that combine an eukaryotic region - which includes a strong enhancer/promoter for the expression of transgene coding for antigenic/therapeutic proteins or peptides in mammalian cells and the transcript termination/polyadenylation (poly A) sequence for mRNA transcript stabilization - with a prokaryotic region that provides selection and propagation in host bacteria. Although the exact mechanism by which DNA vaccines work still remains unclear, recent advances have provided a deeper understanding of the molecular and immunological mechanisms of action of these vectors[12-14]. Generally, once the DNA plasmid is administered *via* intradermal, intravenous, intraperitoneal, subcutaneous, nasal or intramuscular route, the plasmid is internalized into the host cells (myocytes and antigen-presenting cells), it translocates to the cellular nucleus where the host cellular machinery initiates the transgene transcription followed by the cytoplasmic translation of the transgene into protein. Plasmid-encoded proteins may be processed in transfected

Table 1 Overview of the different vaccine formulations

Vaccine type	Description	Advantages	Disadvantages	Immunogenicity	Examples
Live attenuated vaccines	Living weakened microbes that generally show reduced pathogenicity	Induce a protective immune response by activating both B and T cell responses; induce long-term immunity; do not require adjuvants; unable to spread and cause infection	They can revert towards virulent forms or can be insufficiently attenuated for immunosuppressed individuals with risk of infection; difficult to produce in a scalable setting; heat-labile; quality and safety requirements	Humoral and cytotoxic immune responses	Smallpox; yellow fever; rabies; measles; mumps; rubella; typhoid; influenza; rotavirus; varicella
Killed/inactivated vaccines	Bacteria (killed vaccines) or viruses (inactivated vaccines) inactivated by chemical or physical treatments	Due to the absence of living pathogens they do not revert towards virulent forms and can be used in immunodeficient hosts; not heat-labile	Repeated booster shots and adjuvants (with subsequent local reactions at the vaccine site) are required to optimally trigger the adaptive immune system and generate long-term immunity; do not give rise to cytotoxic T cells; poor induction of mucosal immunity; difficult to produce in a scalable setting; quality and safety requirements	Humoral immunity	Diphtheria; tetanus; pertussis; haemophilus influenzae type b; poliomyelitis; rabies; meningitidis; Japanese encephalitis; cholera; hepatitis A; hepatitis B
Toxoids vaccines	Purified exotoxins chemically inactivated into toxoids that retain the ability to induce toxin-neutralizing antibodies	Safe and stable. There is no possibility of reversion to pathogenicity or spread of live microbe to other animals	Poorly immunogenic; need adjuvants and large amounts or multiple doses to ensure efficient activation of the adaptive immune response and generation of long-last immunity; local reactions at vaccine site	B cell activation (T cell dependent)	Diphtheria, tetanus, and pertussis toxoids; acellular pertussis vaccines; anthrax secreted proteins
Subunit/ polysaccharide vaccines	Antigenic components of pathogens: partly or fully purified protein antigens or capsular polysaccharides	Can be chemically linked to protein carrier	Variable degree of immunogenicity; need adjuvants (and often multiple doses); frequent local reactions at the injection site	T-dependent and/ or T-independent immune responses	Hepatitis B and Haemophilus influenzae type b; influenza; meningococcus, pneumococcus, and Haemophilus influenzae type B polysaccharides
Plasmid DNA	Genetically engineered vectors expressing antigens of interest	Inability to revert to pathogenic forms; activation of innate and adaptive immune responses; highly stable; easy storage and transport; large-scale production; optimization of plasmids and transcript is possible	Not-useful for non-protein immunogens; lower immunogenicity in human compared to mice; low transfection efficiency	Activation of antigen-specific B cells, CD4+ and CD8+ T cells	Infectious haematopoietic necrosis virus; West Nile virus; melanoma; growth hormone releasing hormone
Vectored vaccines	Live recombinant viral and bacterial vectors expressing heterologous antigens	Ability to induce specific humoral and cellular immune responses; high transduction efficiency; highly effective in dividing and non-dividing cells; production of high levels of antigens inside target cells; sustained gene expression; vector itself can provide an adjuvant effect	High expense; toxic side effects; limits on transgene size; potential for insertional mutagenesis; anti-vector immunity; difficult to manufacture and store	B cell, CD4+ and cytotoxic CD8+ T cell activation	Adenovirus; adeno-associated virus; retrovirus; lentivirus; Herpes simplex virus; *Salmonella*
Nanoparticles	Nano-scale size materials made of polymers, proteins or lipids used as carrier systems (*e.g.*, PLGA, liposomes, virosomes, Virus-like particles)	Ability to induce humoral and cellular immune responses; increased antigen uptake, processing and presentation; controlled/sustained release of vaccine target; depot effect; targeted delivery; adjuvanticity; high encapsulation; improved cargo bioavailability; transport efficiency; enhanced permeability; biodegradability and biocompatibility	Challenges in vaccine formulation, production, stabilization. Immunotoxicity can occur	B-cell, CD4+ and cytotoxic T-cell responses	Hepatitis A virus; influenza; human papilloma virus; hepatitis B virus; hepatitis E virus

somatic cells *via* the TAP-dependent, endogenous pathway for the presentation on MHC class I molecules, whereas soluble/secreted plasmid product may simultaneously gain access to the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II exogenous pathway in phagocytic cells, for the activation of B cells, CD4+ and CD8+ T lymphocytes[15]. Many reports emphasized on the ability of DNA vaccines to induce immune responses against a variety of infectious agents and cancers in preclinical animal models and more recently in clinical trials[16,17]. Until now, four animal DNA products have been licensed for veterinary uses, demonstrating the well tolerated and safety profile of DNA vaccination. Although there are no US/FDA approved DNA vaccine for human uses, several DNA delivery strategies have been developed and improved in order to increase DNA vaccine performance, including the use of adjuvant plasmids expressing immunostimulatory molecules, such as costimulatory molecules, signaling proteins, cytokine, and chemokines[18]. In addition, the use of mixed vaccines in prime-boost immunization strategies or in simultaneous delivery approaches resulted in an improved immunogenicity in several preclinical models against different pathogens such as HIV-1[19]. Genetically engineered DNA can be administered by different methods following different routes, including physical approaches and viral and non-viral delivery systems[20]. However, so far in human application the efficiency of DNA vaccination has not been so encouraging[21].

GENE DELIVERY SYSTEMS: RECOMBINANT VIRAL AND BACTERIAL VECTORS

A huge amount of delivery systems based on recombinant viruses have emerged recently and have been widely employed as highly evolved natural vehicles for gene therapy and for vaccine purposes[22]. Viral-based delivery systems consist of genetically engineered replication-defective viruses carrying a therapeutic gene expression cassette cloned into the viral backbone (Table 1). Viral vaccine vector systems, such as adenovirus (type 2 and 5), adeno-associated virus, retrovirus, lentivirus, poxvirus, alphavirus, herpes simplex virus (HSV), offer several potential advantages over traditional vaccines, even though each of them show some limitations and side effects[23,24]. Viral vectors can produce high levels of antigens directly within the host cells; they can efficiently deliver antigens to specific subsets of immune cells [such as antigen-presenting cells (APCs)] and potentially act as adjuvant. They can be administered in different combination with other vaccines resulting in enhanced immune responses. However, some issues must be taken into consideration when using viral vectors for vaccination, including potential integration, transcriptional activation of oncogenes, pre-existing immunity against the viral vector, and limitations in transgenic capacity size. Several recombinant viral vectors, both RNA and DNA viruses, have been used and widely investigated as vaccines being able to express the antigenic/therapeutic protein *in vivo* and to stimulate potent specific humoral and cellular immune responses[25]. RNA viral vectors, such as retrovirus and lentivirus, allow long-term expression of the transgene, while DNA viral vectors allow expression in episomal form. Viral vectors based on adenovirus, adeno-associated virus, retrovirus, lentivirus and HSV represent those currently used in clinical trials, with adenovirus being the most commonly used, whereas others are under development[26].

More recently, vaccine based on alphavirus vector has been considered a particular attractive option. All alphavirus vectors take advantage of extremely efficient RNA replication resulting in almost 200000 RNA copies from each RNA template[27].

Although replication-deficient particles provide a high level of safety, there is still a marginal risk of the generation of replication-proficient particles through non-homologous recombination. To minimize this risk, split helper vector systems with capsid and envelope genes expressed from separate vectors have been produced[28]. Furthermore, the potential of alphavirus causing epidemics has raised additional concern. Regarding efficiency, recent alphavirus-based vaccines have been subjected to clinical trials. Disappointingly, no clinical benefit was found, indicating that these types of vaccines require further optimization.

In addition to viral vectors, recombinant bacterial carriers, derived from lactic acid bacteria, *Salmonella* and *L. monocytogenes* strains, have been used extensively as delivery systems being able to stimulate both systemic and mucosal immune responses[29,30].

NANOPARTICLE DELIVERY SYSTEMS

Nanoparticle delivery systems offer several advantages over traditional vaccines. Due to their physicochemical characteristics - nanoparticle size, surface charge, biomaterials composition, hydrophobicity/hydrophilicity - and immunostimulatory properties, nanoparticles-based formulations have extensively been investigated as vaccine and drug delivery systems, adjuvants, nucleic acid delivery platforms, and nanocarriers for imaging approaches[31-34]. Nanoparticle systems can be designed to optimally present antigens in their native conformations to the immune system in controlled, slow release formulations promoting their targeting to specific immune populations with attachment of targeting moiety. They can be engineered to improve antigenicity of the delivered antigens and thus acting as adjuvants. Moreover, by co-delivering antigen and adjuvant to the same antigen presenting cells, these nanocarriers can enhance immunogenicity of vaccines. The antigen multimeric display on the surface of some nanoparticle systems allows cross-linking of the B cell receptor, leading to an enhanced antibody response. Moreover, some of these nanoparticles can be designed for promoting the cytosolic delivery of antigens, enhancing cross-presentation *via* MHC-I pathway and thus leading to cytotoxic T-cell responses. In addition to increased antigen uptake, processing and presentation, nanocarriers also

offer the opportunity to encapsulate or entrap a variety of compounds, preventing their degradation, improving their solubility and half-life, providing site-specific targeting and a sustained release of compounds. Most of nanocarriers are biodegradable, biocompatible for different routes of administration (parenteral and non-parenteral administrations), exhibits low toxicity and stability, and they are able to induce strong humoral and cellular immune responses without anti-vector immunity[35-37].

Nanoparticle delivery systems comprise a wide variety of nano-scale size materials (< 1 μm) including solid particulate delivery systems and emulsion delivery systems. Solid nanoparticles include synthetic or biodegradable polymers (nanospheres and nanocapsules) - such as poly(lactic-co-glycolic acid) (PLGA), chitosan, hydrogel capsules, poly (phosphazenes), polyanhydrides, poly(alkylcyanoacrylate) (PACA) and poly(methyl methacrylate) (PMMA) nanoparticles - solid lipid nanoparticles (SLNs), liposomal delivery systems, virosomes, immune stimulating complexes (ISCOMs), virus-like particles (VLPs), non-degradable nanoparticles, colloidal iron-based preparations and many others, while emulsions include heterogenous liquid systems suitable for the entrapment of hydrophobic drugs, such as nanoemulsions and nanoliposomes (details in[31-33,35]). Some formulations have proceeded to clinical trials and are commercially available, whereas many others are under preclinical development[31].

POLYMERIC NANOPARTICLES

Polymer-based nanoparticle delivery systems (polymeric nanoparticles, polymeric micelles, dendrimers) have emerged as promising and innovative candidates to diagnose, monitor, treat, and prevent infectious, inflammatory and cancer diseases due to their excellent features - including biocompatibility and biodegradability, enhanced permeability, stability, low toxicity, improved cargo bioavailability, controlled/sustained release of vaccine targets, depot effect, high encapsulation and transport efficiency, targeted delivery[38]. Polymeric nanoparticles (NPs) consist of polymeric colloidal nanoparticles prepared from biodegradable and biocompatible, natural or synthetic polymers, ranging in sizes from 10 nm to 1 μm. A wide variety of diagnostic and therapeutic compounds (such as hydrophilic and hydrophobic drugs, proteins, peptides, nucleic acids, biological macromolecules) can be entrapped or encapsulated within the polymeric matrix with good efficacy, protecting them from enzymatic degradation and thus improving their bioavailability, or adsorbed or chemically conjugated on their surface for antigen and targeted delivery. NPs can be made from many different polymer types including natural or synthetic polymers such as poly-d,l-lactide-co-glycolide (PLGA), polylactic acid (PLA), poly-ε-caprolactone (PCL), chitosan, gelatin, poly-alkyl-cyano-acrylates (PAC), gamma polyglutamic acid (γ-PGA), hyaluronan [or hyaluronic acid (HA)][34,35,39]. However, the most commonly studied polymers for parenteral and mucosal drug and antigen delivery are biodegradable and biocompatible synthetic polymers - such as PLGA and PLA - since they provide biological compatibility with less toxicity[40]. According to the structural organization, biodegradable nanoparticles are usually distinguished in nanospheres, where molecules are homogenously dispersed, adsorbed or dissolved within the polymeric matrix, and nanocapsules, where a polymeric wall surround a vesicular core containing the agent of interest. Several methods have been developed to produce structurally stable optimized NPs, including encapsulation and adsorption of drugs, proteins, and nucleic acids[39,40]. NPs can be prepared by polymerization of monomers following emulsion-based methods or by dispersion of polymers following nanoprecipitation (solvent displacement), salting out, or solvent evaporation methods[39,40]. A huge amount of preclinical studies have emphasized the utility of PLGA/PLA-based nanoparticles as drug and antigen delivery systems. It has been reported that PLGA/PLA-based nanocarriers, carrying immunostimulatory molecules and/or vaccine antigens, confer antigenicity and immunogenicity to a large variety of antigens, being able to increase antigen-specific humoral and cellular immune responses[40]. In addition, PLGA-based nanoparticles are able to specifically delivery vaccine compounds to antigen-presenting cells such as dendritic cells, enhancing cross-presentation and thus promoting CTL responses[41]. PLGA nanoparticles are frequently used for encapsulating and successfully delivering a variety of anticancer drugs (reviewed in[39]). Problems of stability, cytotoxicity and conservation may represent constrains that require further optimized formulations[42].

LIPID-BASED ANTIGEN DELIVERY SYSTEMS: THE LIPOSOME FAMILY

Liposomal carrier systems

Liposomes and liposomal-based delivery systems represent a promising technology to deliver a variety of compounds to target sites. Various kinds of lipid vesicles belong to the liposome family, including LPD (liposomes-protamine-DNA complexes), polymerized targeted-liposomes, PEGylated liposomes, archaeosomes, ISCOMs (immune stimulating complex), virosomes, niosomes and many other, which are classified according to their structures, composition, and preparation[43]. Essentially, they are spherical, uni- or multi-lamellar, nano or micro-sized vesicles composed of a phospholipid bilayer capable of encapsulating or incorporating bioactive molecules. Hydrophilic water-soluble compounds can be entrapped within the aqueous hollow cavity, whereas hydrophobic molecules can be intercalated into or attached on the phospholipid bilayer. Several methods of liposome preparation techniques including manufacturing process and process controls have been developed, although all the methods share a common general procedure[43]. Liposome formulations with optimized properties - such as high stability, long blood circulation half-life (GM glycolipid

or PEG polymer-coated liposomes), enhanced target efficiency and activity (immunoliposomes), controllable and prolonged release properties, low toxicity, improved adjuvant and immunostimulatory properties - can be achieved by modulating the lipid membrane composition (neutral, anionic, and cationic lipid species), the liposome size, the net charge and the hydrophilicity of the liposomal surface, and/or by encapsulating additional adjuvants ("conventional" and second-generation liposomes, the stealth technology[44-46]). Since liposomes were first described in 1960, these nanoparticulate carriers were investigated for various purposes - including industrial, pharmaceutical, clinical and therapeutic applications (from vaccination to cancer treatment, gene therapy with cationic liposomes, and diagnostic imaging), due to their adjuvant activity, immunostimulatory properties, safety, biodegradability, and tolerability, following intramuscular, subcutaneous, oral, or intravenous administrations[44,46]. Many reports emphasized on the utility of liposomes as adjuvanted vaccine candidates and drug delivery systems, due to their ability to induce specific immune responses toward the encapsulated or surface-attached antigen, and to treat various diseases, including cancers, infectious, and auto-immunity (reviewed in[46]). Currently, several liposomal formulations are commercially available and clinically approved[44-46].

Virosomes as vaccine and delivery system

In 1975, using preformed liposomes, Almeida *et al*[47] first generated lipid vesicles (named virosomes) containing the envelope proteins, Hemagglutinin and Neuraminidase, purified from influenza virus. Essentially, virosomes are lipid-based semi-synthetic complexes (approximately 150-200 nm in diameter) comprising of functional viral envelope glycoproteins protruding from the surface of a phospholipid bilayer membrane. These lipid vesicles closely mimic the native viral envelope but are devoid of the nucleocapsid including the viral genome of the parenteral virus they are derived from, thus they are not able to replicate. Functionally reconstituted glycoproteins retain the receptor binding property and the pH-dependent membrane fusion activities of the native viral proteins. These functional characteristics have been exploited in the design of vaccine adjuvant and carrier system to deliver molecules[48-51]. After the first description of influenza virosomes, different envelope glycoproteins have been reconstituted to produce virosomes with full biological fusion activity, through detergent solubilization and detergent removal procedures[48,51,52]. Several methods have been described to manufacture virosomes, including antigen loading, and DNA-binding to cationic-virosomes for gene delivery. Essentially, these procedures rely on the use of lipids (egg-derived, purified viral membrane lipids: first-generation virosomes or synthetic phospholipids: second-generation vaccines), envelope proteins (plant-expressed or purified from the inactivated parental virus), and heterologous compounds (details in[51]). A variety of compounds, including antigens, nucleic acids, drug molecules, cancer chemotherapeutic agents, tumor-associated antigen, antibody (targeted-virosomes), can be encapsulated within the aqueous lumen of virosomes, and adsorbed or cross-linked to their surface[53]. Virosomes are qualified for administration *via* different routes (intramuscular, intradermal, intranasal, vaginal routes); they ensure a rapid uptake of the delivered molecule by immune cells (APCs and B cells), for MHC class I and class II presentation. Heterologous antigens exposed on the surface primarily evoke humoral immune responses, while the encapsulation approach give rise to CTL responses; thus, virosomes activate both arms of the adaptive immune response[48]. In addition, due to the presence of the antigenic viral glycoproteins, virosomes can be used as vaccine adjuvant and carrier system to induce immune responses against the viral envelope and the unrelated antigen, being suitable for prophylactic and therapeutic immunizations[46,54]. First-generation virosomes and virosomal adjuvanted formulations are currently applied in commercial vaccines (Hepatitis A vaccines: Epaxal and Epaxal junior; Influenza vaccines: Inflexal V and FluAd). Moreover, several promising virosome vaccine candidates (Malaria, HCV, breast cancer, HIV, Candida vaccines) are currently in preclinical and in clinical development[51].

VIRUS-LIKE PARTICLE DELIVERY TECHNOLOGY

Virus like particles (VLPs), also called pseudovirions, are composed of one or more viral structural proteins (capsid and/or envelope proteins) that retain the ability to self-assemble into multimeric structures (or subviral particles) when expressed *in vitro* using recombinant protein expression systems - including plant, yeast, bacteria, viral vectors, insect cells (baculovirus technology), and mammalian cells[55-57]. They form highly organized monomeric or oligomeric structures with a well-defined geometry (usually icosahedral or rod-like) and diameter ranging approximately from 20 to 120 nm, closely mimicking the native virus but unable to replicate since they lack the infectious viral genome. Thus, VLP-based vaccines offer a safer and more appealing alternative to live, attenuated and inactivated vaccination strategies. Intrinsic characteristics of VLP - such as the particulate nature and the size, the highly ordered and repetitive structure, the charge surface - coupled with immunogenic properties and adjuvanticity, make them particularly attractive as vaccine candidates, targeted drug carriers and antigen delivery systems for prophylactic and therapeutic applications: from vaccination against viral, bacterial, parasitic and fungal infections to gene therapy, immunotherapy against a variety of chronic diseases, including allergies, neurodegenerative and autoimmune disorders, cancers (VLPs targeting self-antigens)[55,57]. Particulate delivery systems similar in size and geometry to pathogens, such as VLPs, are efficiently uptaken by professional antigen-presenting cells for both MHC class

I and II presentation; they efficiently reach lymphoid organs where they can directly interact with immune cells. Most importantly, the highly repetitive surface structures (PAMPs) can induce maturation of antigen-presenting cells (DCs, B cells) by triggering TLRs and cross-linking B cell receptors. These properties increases the ability of VLPs to stimulate strong B and T cell-mediated immune responses[58]. Subviral particles, genetically engineered plant viruses, insect-derived virus-like particles, are suitable as presentation scaffold and adjuvant platform for multimeric display of foreign antigens in a correct, ordered and highly repetitive three-dimensional configuration, to optimally present B and T-cell epitopes and activate immune cells. Antigenic determinants (continuous or conformational immunological epitopes) can be incorporated into adequate permissive insertion sites at high density per particle by genetic fusion (chimeric VLPs) or by *in vitro* chemical conjugation (conjugated VLPs), without compromising the correct folding of VLPs, leading to optimized formulations[59]. Currently, several VLP-based vaccine candidates for human diseases are under clinical development including those directed against Influenza A virus, Norwalk virus, Ebola and Marburg viruses, Hepatitis C virus, HIV and Malaria. To date, VLP-based vaccines for human papilloma virus (HPV), hepatitis B virus (HBV), and hepatitis E virus (HEV) have already been licensed and are commercially available worldwide[59].

The current HPV vaccines are based on virus-like particles (VLPs). The first HPV vaccine to be licensed was Gardasil (Merck and Co., Inc.) - approved by the FDA in 2006 - a quadrivalent (HPV types 6, 11, 16 and 18) VLP-based vaccine made of the recombinant HPV major capsid protein L1 produced in *S. cerevisiae*. In 2009 the FDA approved Cervarix, a bivalent (HPV types 16 and 18) vaccine commercialized by GlaxoSmithKline (GSK). Both the HPV VLP vaccines have shown to have a sustained prophylactic efficacy in clinical trials against infection and genital disease, generating a long-lasting antibody response[60]. VLP vaccines combine many of the advantages of the whole-virus vaccines and recombinant subunit vaccines. In addition, compared to individual proteins or peptides, they closely mimic the organization and conformation of authentic native viruses, leading to a more efficacious activation of the adaptive immune system. They can elicit a protective response without requiring multiple booster shoots, thus significantly reducing the vaccine costs. VLPs do not need attenuation or inactivation - as the live attenuated and killed/inactivated vaccines - avoiding all the possible side effects of inactivation treatments on the epitope modifications. Moreover, but lacking the viral genome VLPs potentially yield safer vaccine candidates compared to whole-virus vaccines. However, some technical challenges need to be considered for VLP production[56], essentially related to the limitations of the size of the expressed antigens and the choice of the expression systems. VLPs are normally expressed in bacteria, and therefore VLP assembly and stability, solubility, yield, endotoxin-free production, and composition may be potentially affected by all the concerns related to the prokaryotic expression machinery. Baculovirus/insect cell systems allow high expression levels. However, co-production of enveloped baculovirus contaminants may significantly impact the vaccine efficiency, and even though VLPs expressed in mammalian cells undergo complex post-translational modifications, this system show high production costs, low controllability and productivities. Currently, researchers are actively investigating methods to produce cheaper optimized VLP-based vaccines with increased half-life.

"E2 SCAFFOLD" AS A VERSATILE VACCINE DELIVERY SYSTEM

The E2 protein scaffold represents a versatile antigen delivery system (E2DISP) where antigenic determinants can be exposed on the surface of an icosahedral dodecahedral nanoparticle[61,62]. The scaffold is composed of the E2 acetyltransferase protein derived from the pyruvate dehydrogenase (PDH) multienzyme complex of *Geobacillus stearothermophilus*. The PDH complex belongs to the family of 2-oxo acid dehydrogenase multienzyme complexes that catalyse the irreversible oxidative decarboxylation of 2-oxo acids. They comprise multiple copies of three different enzymes, and in the case of PDH of *Geobacillus stearothermophilus*, two of these enzymes, E1 and E3, assemble over the surface of a large structural scaffold formed by the multi-domain core enzyme, E2, a specific dihydrolipoyl acetyltransferase. The E2 polypeptide chain is composed of three independently folded domains separated by flexible linker regions: a lypoil domain (LD) of 9.5 kDa, a peripheral (E1 and/or E3) subunit-binding domain (PSBD) of 5.3 kDa and a catalytic acetyltransferase core domain (CD) of 28 kDa (Figure 1A). The E2 CD forms trimers that assemble to generate a pentagonal dodecahedral protein scaffold resembling a virus-like particle (VLP) with icosahedral symmetry, composed of 60 identical E2 subunits (60-mer), that is 24 nm in diameter, with a molecular weight of 1.5 MDa, with an outer and inner domains of 240 Å and 50 Å, respectively[63] (Figure 1A). In the field of antigen display, the acetyltransferase core domain (CD) of the E2 protein is of great potential utility (E2DISP) (Figure 1B). Two engineered plasmids, pET-HE2DISP and pET-E2DISP, allow to insert exogenous oligonucleotides coding for the antigen of interest at the 5′ end of gene encoding the E2 CD, and thus to display foreign peptides/proteins as N-terminal fusions to CD (Figure 1B). Due to the stability and ability of this thermophilic protein to assembly *in vitro*[64], it is possible to display 60 copies of heterologous polypeptides on the surface of the E2 macromolecular scaffold, still capable of self-assembly to the 60-mer. This property is particularly suitable for vaccine design. There is no limitation to the size of peptide displayed, given the ability of the E2 CD to naturally present 60 lipoyl domains plus 60 copies of the E1 (150 kDa) or E3 (100 kDa) enzymes. Domingo *et al*[61] demonstrated that a green fluorescent

Table 2 Preclinical studies based on E2 formulations

E2 construct	Description	Route	Immune response	Ref.
Gag(p17)-E2	HIV-1 Gag p17 matrix protein	sc	Mice immunized with Gag(p17)-E2 mounted a strong and sustained Ab response; the isotype of induced Abs was biased toward IgG1; CD8+ T cells primed with E2 particles were able to exert lytic activity and to produce IFN-γ	[65]
BS1-E2	Mimotope 1 from HIV-1 bridging sheet domain (BS)	IM[1]/sc[1]	The E2-BS1 fusion peptide showed good antigenic results; a moderate neutralizing antibody response was found against two HIV-1 clade B and one clade C primary isolates	[67]
Env(V3)-E2	HIV-1 SF162 Env V3 loop peptide 291-336 from gp120 (HXB2 numbering)	Env-E2: IM[1]; pDNA[2]: ID[1]	Env(V3)-E2 induced potent binding Ab and T-cell responses in mice, as well as autologous NAbs in rabbits, when co-immunized with pDNA; co-immunization with pDNA and E2 multimers generated potent immune responses after only two immunizations	[19]
Env(MPER)-E2	HIV-1 SF162 Env MPER peptide 649-689 from gp41 (HXB2 numbering)	Env-E2: IM[1]; pDNA[2,3]: ID[1]	MPER (membrane proximal external region) displayed on E2 focused Ab responses toward conserved region of HIV-1 Envelope when co-administered with pDNA lacking hypervariable loop regions	[66]
(1-11)-E2	Peptide 1-11 of beta-amyloid	sc	(1-11)E2 vaccine induced fast-rising, robust and persistent Ab responses to beta-amyloid; the Ab response was characterized by a marked prevalence of IgG1 over the IgG2a isotype	[68,69]

[1]Routes of administration for rabbit immunizations; [2]pDNA: codon-optimized HIV-1 SF162 plasmid DNA encoding gp160 full-length; [3]Lacking hypervariable regions. sc: Subcutaneous; IM: Intramuscular; ID: Intradermal administration; Env: Envelope; gp: Glycoprotein; Ab: Antibody; NAbs: Neutralizing antibodies.

protein (EGFP) displayed on the E2 surface folded into its active form. We and others have successfully expressed and refolded several HIV-1 antigens and protein domains[19,65-67]. In addition, peptides 1-11 and 2-6 of beta-amyloid were displayed as N terminal fusions of the E2 core domain[68,69]. N-terminal fusion proteins are displayed without constraint on the surface of the E2 60-mer particles. Efficient expression was achieved in *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*) cells. If soluble, proteins are purified as a large soluble aggregate, according to previously described methodologies[64] with a yield of pure E2 particles of about 15 mg/L of cell culture. Insoluble aggregates can be purified from inclusion bodies (IBs)[70]. It was shown that solubility and stability of HIV-1 Env-E2 fusion proteins substantially increased when they were refolded in the presence of the E2 wild type (E2wt) core protein, with no precipitation[19,66]. In details, pure HIV-1 Env-E2 IBs can be solubilized in presence of 6 M GuHCl (guanidine hydrochloride) and then refolded in the presence of E2 wild-type core protein (E2 monomers without the N-terminal HIV-1 fusion) in step-down dialysis by slow removal of the denaturant in the presence of oxidizing agents and low molecular weight additives, as schematically shown in Figure 1C. HIV-1 Env(V3)-E2 construct was refolded with equimolar amounts of E2wt, requiring a 1:1 ratio of Env-E2 fusion protein: E2wt to remain fully soluble[19]. Solubilized particles typically have more than 50 EU/mL of *E. coli*-derived endotoxin (lipopolysaccharide, LPS) as a result of expression in this system. Endotoxin levels can be reduced to less than 0.05 EU/mL using standard biochemical techniques[71]. The resulting vaccines are non-replicative multimeric particles formed by exogenous antigens inserted on the surface of E2 60-mer scaffold protein that is able to confer high immunogenicity to the displayed determinants.

We previously described that epitopes displayed on the surface of E2 scaffold are able to elicit both B and T cell responses, demonstrating that E2 particles can reach both MHC class I and class II compartments for the processing and presentation of the displayed epitopes[72-74], and we have investigated this system in various preclinical studies demonstrating the immunogenicity of E2-based vaccine formulations (resumed in Table 2). In particular, using this system, we demonstrated that mice immunized with the HIV-1 Gag (p17) protein displayed as an N-terminal fusion to the E2 CD [Gag (p17)-E2] mounted a strong and sustained humoral immune response. High titers of specific-antibodies were induced even in the absence of any adjuvants, and priming of transgenic mice with Gag(p17)-E2 particles induced antigen-specific cytotoxic CD8+ T cells able to produce IFN-γ[65]. Moreover, a moderate neutralizing antibody response was found in rabbits immunized with an E2 scaffold displaying a peptide mimotope of the HIV-1 gp120 bridging sheet[67].

Furthermore, E2 multimeric scaffolds displaying HIV-1 neutralizing antigens, such as the HIV-1 Envelope (Env) V3 loop from gp120 glycoprotein, was able to elicit potent binding antibodies and T-cell responses in mice, as well as autologous neutralizing antibodies in rabbits, when co-immunized with an HIV Env glycoprotein (gp160) expression plasmid DNA[19]. Interestingly, co-immunization of plasmid DNA vaccine with E2 multimeric scaffolds appeared to be more effective in eliciting rapid, specific, and sustained autologous neutralizing antibody responses as well as antigen-specific CD8+ T cells producing IFN-gamma, compared to standard DNA-prime/protein-boost regimen. On this line, the E2 scaffold displaying the membrane proximal external region (MPER) from HIV-1 Env gp41 glycoprotein - N-terminally fused to E2 core domain - was able to focus humoral immune responses

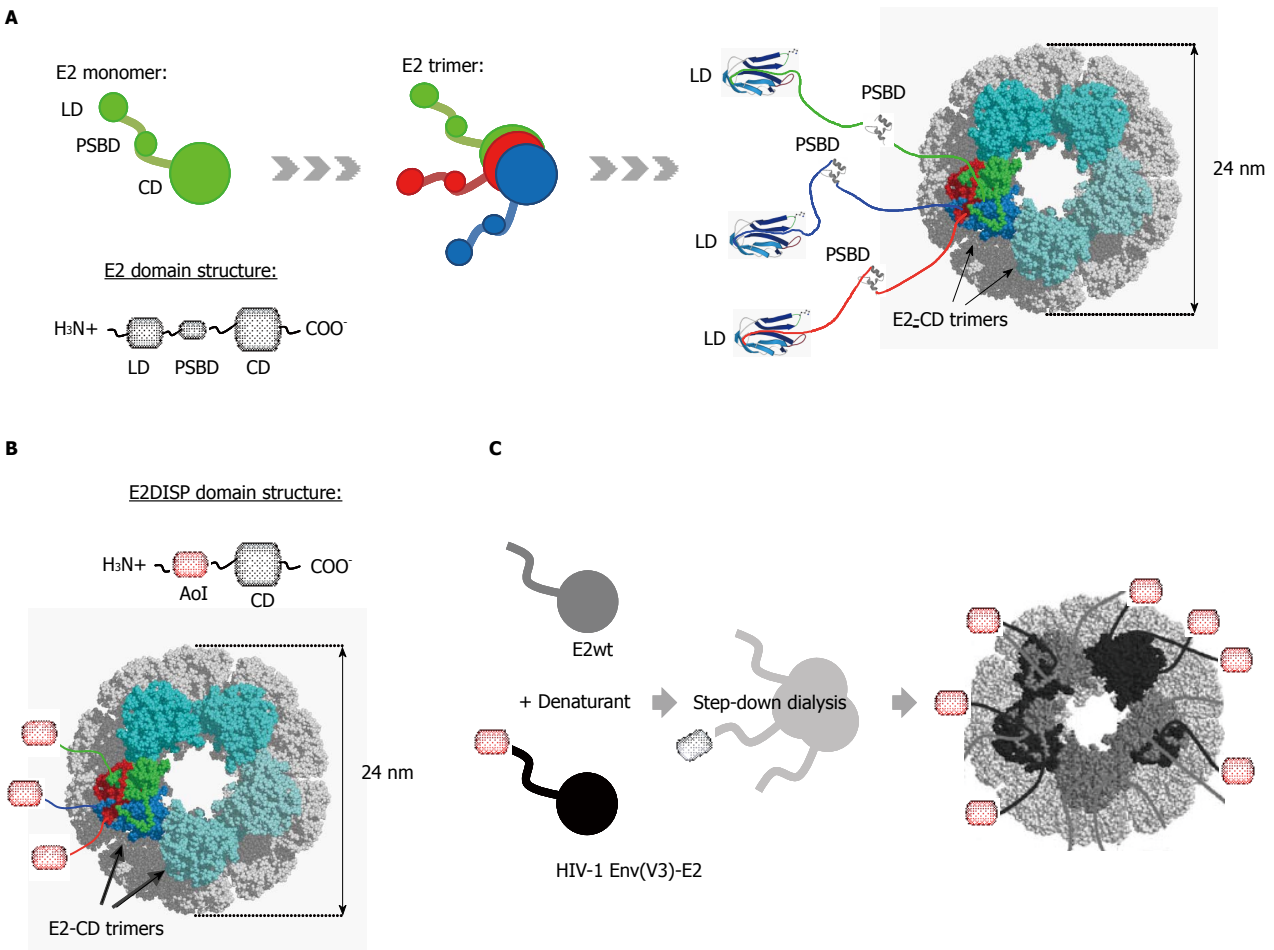


Figure 1 E2 acetyltransferase component from *Geobacillus stearothermophilus* pyruvate dehydrogenase complex. A: Schematic illustration of the native E2 chain with: lypoil domain (LD), peripheral subunit-binding domain (PSBD), and catalytic acetyltransferase core domain (CD). E2 CD forms trimers that assemble to generate a pentagonal dodecahedral scaffold(60-mer) with icosahedral symmetry. Trimers are in cyan with monomers of one trimer shown in green, red and blue; B: E2 core from E2DISP acetyltransferase system displaying an antigen of interest (AoI) N-terminally fused to CD; C: Schematic illustration of *in vitro* refolding of insoluble E2 displaying HIV-1 Envelope V3 in presence of E2 wild-type (E2wt).

toward constant region of Env when co-administered with a plasmid DNA vaccine encoding gp160 lacking immunodominant regions[66]. The E2 scaffold was also found to be suitable for the display of neurodegenerative disease-associated targets. Peptide 1-11 of beta-amyloid displayed as N-terminal fusion on the surface of E2 nanoparticle, the (1-11)E2 vaccine, induced fast-rising, robust and persistent antibody responses to beta-amyloid. E2 vaccination polarized the immune response toward the production of the Th2 cytokine Interleukin-4, without inducing a T cell response to β-amyloid[68]. Moreover, LPS-free (1-11)E2-based vaccines induced anti-amyloid-β antibodies even in the absence of adjuvant, or more interestingly, when formulated in adjuvants licensed for use in human vaccines[69].

In addition, Ren *et al*[75] developed an E2-based drug delivery systems for hydrophobic molecular transport of the antitumor compound doxorubicin in attempt to treat cancer diseases. Finally, we recently provided experimental evidence to the possible application of E2 scaffold as antigen delivery system for mucosal immunization and taking advantages of genome-wide approach we were able to dissect the type of T cell response induced by E2 particles (Trovato *et al*, manuscript in preparation).

Overall, E2 scaffold was shown to be a versatile and immunogenic delivery system, being able to display in a properly configuration antigenic/therapeutic peptides or proteins and to elicit humoral and cellular immune responses upon different ways of administrations.

These properties make the E2DISP system an attractive option for vaccine delivery. Theoretically, there is no limitation to the size of peptide displayed on the E2 surface, given the potential of the E2 core domain to naturally accommodate 187 amino acid residues in the form of the two folded protein domains (LIP and PSBD domains) and two flexible linkers (Figure 1A). Displaying full-length protein as antigen may be a convenient option compared to peptide to provide optimal epitope diversity for antibody production and T cell induction. In this context, the E2DISP delivery may be particularly favorably to other types of antigen display systems - such as the Hepatitis B surface antigen vector that has a limit of approximately 36 amino acids[76] or the chimeric human papilloma virus-simian/human immunodeficiency virus virus-like particle vaccine that can only accept approximately 60 amino acids of foreign

antigen[77]. Repetitive presentation of an epitope in highly organized structures - as with E2 nanoparticle - can increase the ability of particulate delivery systems to stimulate stronger immune responses by triggering and cross-linking specific B cell antigen receptors. Within this context, the E2 nanoparticle may be particularly useful as repetitive antigen delivery system due to its potential to display up to 60 copies of an antigen of interest per particle. Moreover, the E2DISP delivery may function as presentation scaffold for multiple displays of antigens, all on the same E2 particle, in their native form to properly activate both the humoral and cellular branches of the immune response. The ability of E2-based vaccines to generate both CD8+ T cell responses and antibodies may represent an advantage over protein subunit vaccines, which primarily evoke humoral responses, and recombinant viral vectors being more effective at generating cellular immune responses.

Bacterial expression is the most common expression system employed for the expression and purification of heterologous recombinant proteins - as for the production of the E2 nanoparticles. However, proteins expressed in a prokaryotic-based system are not correctly modified - in terms of protein phosphorylation and glycosylation - and might precipitate in the form of inclusion bodies, thus affecting the protein folding. Moreover, as result of expression in *E. coli* cells, recombinant proteins are generally contaminated with the lipopolysaccharide (LPS) component of the outer cell membrane. Such a toxic component triggers secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines, and it often requires extensive and expensive removal during protein purification, thus affecting the final yield. It was shown that solubility and stability of recombinant E2 scaffolds that precipitate into the insoluble fraction could increase when they are refolded *in vitro* from denaturing conditions in presence of the E2wt core protein. In addition, treatment by phase separation with Triton X-114 detergent leads to an endotoxin reduction of less than 0.05 EU/mL. However, alternative organisms and expression systems could be more useful for the expression and production of E2 nanoparticles in order to circumvent all the problems related to the *E. coli* expression machinery.

We previously explored the potential of the E2 antigen display system as an HIV-1 vaccine candidate. It was shown that E2-based multimeric vaccines displaying the V3 loop or the MPER region from the HIV-1 Envelope are able to focus and to direct antibody responses to conserved neutralization determinants. However, the V3 epitope displayed on the surface of E2 scaffold is not effective in generating broadly neutralizing antibodies (NAbs), and we can only generate low levels of neutralizing antibodies that are MPER-specific[19,66]. Clearly, this current E2-based immunogen requires further optimization for advancement. A major goal of HIV-1 vaccine development is to find strategies for inducing high levels of broad-spectrum neutralizing antibodies. We hypothesize that the E2-mediated immune responses can likely be further enhanced using molecular modeling to determine the appropriate regions of the E2 protein to serve as insertion sites for key neutralization determinants in order to improve presentation and thus immunogenicity of HIV-1 regions in this system.

Overall, the potential of this system is that it exhibits stability and no toxicity, it is able to induce sustained humoral and cellular antigen-specific immune responses without anti-vector immunity, and thus low-cost, non-replicating, non-integrating, non-pathogenic E2 vaccines could be designed and combined with other approaches to advance the field of vaccinology.

CONCLUSION

Vaccines play a pivotal role in host protection against infectious diseases and have significantly reduced mortality worldwide. However most of vaccine candidates have failed to completely protect individuals from emerging and re-emerging diseases/agents, with many diseases, such HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, and malaria, being not yet preventable by vaccination. Hence, the development of new vaccine formulations is of fundamental priority. Several strategies have been developed over the years in order to achieve this goal, and the recent advances in the field of vaccine technology may provide valuable insights for the rational design of next-generation vaccine delivery systems. Historically, vaccinology has relied on the use of live attenuated, killed/inactivated, toxoid and subunit vaccines with most of them currently available on the market. Many live attenuated vaccines are able to stimulate humoral as well as cell-mediated immune responses, by mimicking the natural infection. However, some concerns still remain to be addressed when using attenuated/inactivated vectors as vaccines, including safety, instability and weak immunogenicity. Alternative strategies have been developed to provide safer and more effective vaccines. Recombinant DNA technology could be a useful approach, mainly due to the ability of DNA vaccines to elicit different types of immune response, providing many advantages over traditional vaccines in terms of safety, stability, costs of production, and ease of manufacturing. However, until now DNA vaccines have not been successful in non-human primates and humans. Recombinant viral vectors represent an attractive tool to deliver antigen and to stimulate stronger immune responses than DNA vaccines, with the majority of current clinical trials for gene therapy using viral vectors; however, biosafety and pre-existing immunity concerns must be taken into account when using viral vectors as vaccine. Nanoparticle-based delivery systems have arisen as promising vaccine candidates over traditional vaccines, mainly due their ability to elicit robust immune responses without toxicity and anti-vector immunity, even though these formulations suffer of problems of stability and conservation. Given this scenario, we have been studying in the past decade a delivery system based on a protein scaffold formed by a 60-mer assembled over the domain of the E2 component of the PDH complex from *Geobacillus stearothermophilus*. The E2 scaffold represents a versatile vaccine delivery candidate, being able to trigger both arms

of the adaptive immune response, combining good safety and stability with strong immunogenicity.

In conclusion, in this review we have described the advancement obtained in the recent past on the topic of antigen delivery systems for new vaccine formulations. Studies aimed to compare in controlled assay conditions should be performed in a near future in order to identify the most promising vaccination strategies.

REFERENCES

1 **Tlaxca JL**, Ellis S, Remmele RL. Live attenuated and inactivated viral vaccine formulation and nasal delivery: Potential and challenges. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25312673 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2014.10.002]

2 **Plotkin S**. History of vaccination. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2014; **111**: 12283-12287 [PMID: 25136134 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1400472111]

3 **Rappuoli R**, Black S, Lambert PH. Vaccine discovery and translation of new vaccine technology. *Lancet* 2011; **378**: 360-368 [PMID: 21664687 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(11)60440-6]

4 **Amanna IJ**, Slifka MK. Contributions of humoral and cellular immunity to vaccine-induced protection in humans. *Virology* 2011; **411**: 206-215 [PMID: 21216425 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2010.12.016]

5 **Alexander LN**, Seward JF, Santibanez TA, Pallansch MA, Kew OM, Prevots DR, Strebel PM, Cono J, Wharton M, Orenstein WA, Sutter RW. Vaccine policy changes and epidemiology of poliomyelitis in the United States. *JAMA* 2004; **292**: 1696-1701 [PMID: 15479934]

6 **Baxter D**. Active and passive immunity, vaccine types, excipients and licensing. *Occup Med* (Lond) 2007; **57**: 552-556 [PMID: 18045976]

7 **Kumru OS**, Joshi SB, Smith DE, Middaugh CR, Prusik T, Volkin DB. Vaccine instability in the cold chain: mechanisms, analysis and formulation strategies. *Biologicals* 2014; **42**: 237-259 [PMID: 24996452 DOI: 10.1016/j.biologicals.2014.05.007]

8 **Delany I**, Rappuoli R, De Gregorio E. Vaccines for the 21st century. *EMBO Mol Med* 2014; **6**: 708-720 [PMID: 24803000 DOI: 10.1002/emmm.201403876]

9 **Kutzler MA**, Weiner DB. DNA vaccines: ready for prime time? *Nat Rev Genet* 2008; **9**: 776-788 [PMID: 18781156 DOI: 10.1038/nrg2432]

10 **Williams JA**. Improving DNA vaccine performance through vector design. *Curr Gene Ther* 2014; **14**: 170-189 [PMID: 25142448]

11 **Ismail R**, Allaudin ZN, Lila MA. Scaling-up recombinant plasmid DNA for clinical trial: current concern, solution and status. *Vaccine* 2012; **30**: 5914-5920 [PMID: 22406276 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2012.02.061]

12 **Suschak JJ**, Wang S, Fitzgerald KA, Lu S. Identification of Aim2 as a sensor for DNA vaccines. *J Immunol* 2015; **194**: 630-636 [PMID: 25488991 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1402530]

13 **Coban C**, Kobiyama K, Aoshi T, Takeshita F, Horii T, Akira S, Ishii KJ. Novel strategies to improve DNA vaccine immunogenicity. *Curr Gene Ther* 2011; **11**: 479-484 [PMID: 22023477]

14 **Pavlenko M**, Leder C, Moreno S, Levitsky V, Pisa P. Priming of CD8+ T-cell responses after DNA immunization is impaired in TLR9- and MyD88-deficient mice. *Vaccine* 2007; **25**: 6341-6347 [PMID: 17628235]

15 **Coban C**, Kobiyama K, Jounai N, Tozuka M, Ishii KJ. DNA vaccines: a simple DNA sensing matter? *Hum Vaccin Immunother* 2013; **9**: 2216-2221 [PMID: 23912600 DOI: 10.4161/hv.25893]

16 **Bahrami AA**, Ghaemi A, Tabarraei A, Sajadian A, Gorji A, Soleimanjahi H. DNA vaccine encoding HPV-16 E7 with mutation in L-Y-C-Y-E pRb-binding motif induces potent anti-tumor responses in mice. *J Virol Methods* 2014; **206**: 12-18 [PMID: 24880067 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2014.05.013]

17 **Kibuuka H**, Berkowitz NM, Millard M, Enama ME, Tindikahwa A, Sekiziyivu AB, Costner P, Sitar S, Glover D, Hu Z, Joshi G, Stanley D, Kunchai M, Eller LA, Bailer RT, Koup RA, Nabel GJ, Mascola JR, Sullivan NJ, Graham BS, Roederer M, Michael NL, Robb ML, Ledgerwood JE. Safety and immunogenicity of Ebola virus and Marburg virus glycoprotein DNA vaccines assessed separately and concomitantly in healthy Ugandan adults: a phase 1b, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial. *Lancet* 2015; **385**: 1545-1554 [PMID: 25540891 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)62385-0]

18 **Kathuria N**, Kraynyak KA, Carnathan D, Betts M, Weiner DB, Kutzler MA. Generation of antigen-specific immunity following systemic immunization with DNA vaccine encoding CCL25 chemokine immunoadjuvant. *Hum Vaccin Immunother* 2012; **8**: 1607-1619 [PMID: 23151454 DOI: 10.4161/hv.22574]

19 **Jaworski JP**, Krebs SJ, Trovato M, Kovarik DN, Brower Z, Sutton WF, Waagmeester G, Sartorius R, D'Apice L, Caivano A, Doria-Rose NA, Malherbe D, Montefiori DC, Barnett S, De Berardinis P, Haigwood NL. Co-immunization with multimeric scaffolds and DNA rapidly induces potent autologous HIV-1 neutralizing antibodies and CD8+ T cells. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e31464 [PMID: 22359593 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0031464]

20 **Bolhassani A**, Safaiyan S, Rafati S. Improvement of different vaccine delivery systems for cancer therapy. *Mol Cancer* 2011; **10**: 3 [PMID: 21211062 DOI: 10.1186/1476-4598-10-3]

21 **Khan KH**. DNA vaccines: roles against diseases. *Germs* 2013; **3**: 26-35 [PMID: 24432284 DOI: 10.11599/germs.2013.1034]

22 **Kay MA**, Glorioso JC, Naldini L. Viral vectors for gene therapy: the art of turning infectious agents into vehicles of therapeutics. *Nat Med* 2001; **7**: 33-40 [PMID: 11135613]

23 **Nayerossadat N**, Maedeh T, Ali PA. Viral and nonviral delivery systems for gene delivery. *Adv Biomed Res* 2012; **1**: 27 [PMID: 23210086 DOI: 10.4103/2277-9175.98152]

24 **Kamimura K**, Suda T, Zhang G, Liu D. Advances in Gene Delivery Systems. *Pharmaceut Med* 2011; **25**: 293-306 [PMID: 22200988]

25 **Souza AP**, Haut L, Reyes-Sandoval A, Pinto AR. Recombinant viruses as vaccines against viral diseases. *Braz J Med Biol Res* 2005; **38**: 509-522 [PMID: 15962176]

26 **Ginn SL**, Alexander IE, Edelstein ML, Abedi MR, Wixon J. Gene therapy clinical trials worldwide to 2012 - an update. *J Gene Med* 2013; **15**: 65-77 [PMID: 23355455 DOI: 10.1002/jgm.2698]

27 **Lundstrom K**. Alphavirus-based vaccines. *Viruses* 2014; **6**: 2392-2415 [PMID: 24937089 DOI: 10.3390/v6062392]

28 **Smerdou C**, Liljeström P. Two-helper RNA system for production of recombinant Semliki forest virus particles. *J Virol* 1999; **73**: 1092-1098 [PMID: 9882310]

29 **Unnikrishnan M**, Rappuoli R, Serruto D. Recombinant bacterial vaccines. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2012; **24**: 337-342 [PMID: 22541723 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2012.03.013]

30 **Bermúdez-Humarán LG**, Kharrat P, Chatel JM, Langella P. Lactococci and lactobacilli as mucosal delivery vectors for therapeutic proteins and DNA vaccines. *Microb Cell Fact* 2011; **10** Suppl 1: S4 [PMID: 21995317 DOI: 10.1186/1475-2859-10-S1-S4]

31 **Hafner A**, Lovrić J, Lakoš GP, Pepić I. Nanotherapeutics in the EU: an overview on current state and future directions. *Int J Nanomedicine* 2014; **9**: 1005-1023 [PMID: 24600222 DOI: 10.2147/IJN.S55359]

32 **Gregory AE**, Titball R, Williamson D. Vaccine delivery using nanoparticles. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol* 2013; **3**: 13 [PMID: 23532930 DOI: 10.3389/fcimb.2013.00013]

33 **Saroja Ch**, Lakshmi P, Bhaskaran S. Recent trends in vaccine delivery systems: A review. *Int J Pharm Investig* 2011; **1**: 64-74 [PMID: 23071924 DOI: 10.4103/2230-973X.82384]

34 **Conniot J**, Silva JM, Fernandes JG, Silva LC, Gaspar R, Brocchini S, Florindo HF, Barata TS. Cancer immunotherapy: nanodelivery approaches for immune cell targeting and tracking. *Front Chem* 2014; **2**: 105 [PMID: 25505783 DOI: 10.3389/fchem.2014.00105]

35 **Sahdev P**, Ochyl LJ, Moon JJ. Biomaterials for nanoparticle vaccine delivery systems. *Pharm Res* 2014; **31**: 2563-2582 [PMID: 24848341 DOI: 10.1007/s11095-014-1419-y]

36 **Sharma R**, Agrawal U, Mody N, Vyas SP. Polymer nanotechnology based approaches in mucosal vaccine delivery: challenges and

opportunities. *Biotechnol Adv* 2014; **33**: 64-79 [PMID: 25499178 DOI: 10.1016/j.biotechadv.2014.12.004]

37 **De Temmerman ML**, Rejman J, Demeester J, Irvine DJ, Gander B, De Smedt SC. Particulate vaccines: on the quest for optimal delivery and immune response. *Drug Discov Today* 2011; **16**: 569-582 [PMID: 21570475 DOI: 10.1016/j.drudis.2011.04.006]

38 **Muthu MS**, Leong DT, Mei L, Feng SS. Nanotheranostics - application and further development of nanomedicine strategies for advanced theranostics. *Theranostics* 2014; **4**: 660-677 [PMID: 24723986 DOI: 10.7150/thno.8698]

39 **Kumari A**, Yadav SK, Yadav SC. Biodegradable polymeric nanoparticles based drug delivery systems. *Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces* 2010; **75**: 1-18 [PMID: 19782542 DOI: 10.1016/j.colsurfb.2009.09.001]

40 **Pavot V**, Berthet M, Rességuier J, Legaz S, Handké N, Gilbert SC, Paul S, Verrier B. Poly(lactic acid) and poly(lactic-co-glycolic acid) particles as versatile carrier platforms for vaccine delivery. *Nanomedicine* (Lond) 2014; **9**: 2703-2718 [PMID: 25529572 DOI: 10.2217/nnm.14.156]

41 **Saluja SS**, Hanlon DJ, Sharp FA, Hong E, Khalil D, Robinson E, Tigelaar R, Fahmy TM, Edelson RL. Targeting human dendritic cells via DEC-205 using PLGA nanoparticles leads to enhanced cross-presentation of a melanoma-associated antigen. *Int J Nanomedicine* 2014; **9**: 5231-5246 [PMID: 25419128 DOI: 10.2147/IJN.S66639]

42 **Mitragotri S**, Burke PA, Langer R. Overcoming the challenges in administering biopharmaceuticals: formulation and delivery strategies. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2014; **13**: 655-672 [PMID: 25103255 DOI: 10.1038/nrd4363]

43 **Wagner A**, Vorauer-Uhl K. Liposome technology for industrial purposes. *J Drug Deliv* 2011; **2011**: 591325 [PMID: 21490754 DOI: 10.1155/2011/591325]

44 **Immordino ML**, Dosio F, Cattel L. Stealth liposomes: review of the basic science, rationale, and clinical applications, existing and potential. *Int J Nanomedicine* 2006; **1**: 297-315 [PMID: 17717971]

45 **Allen TM**, Cullis PR. Liposomal drug delivery systems: from concept to clinical applications. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2013; **65**: 36-48 [PMID: 23036225 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2012.09.037]

46 **Schwendener RA**. Liposomes as vaccine delivery systems: a review of the recent advances. *Ther Adv Vaccines* 2014; **2**: 159-182 [PMID: 25364509 DOI: 10.1177/2051013614541440]

47 **Almeida JD**, Edwards DC, Brand CM, Heath TD. Formation of virosomes from influenza subunits and liposomes. *Lancet* 1975; **2**: 899-901 [PMID: 53375]

48 **Daemen T**, de Mare A, Bungener L, de Jonge J, Huckriede A, Wilschut J. Virosomes for antigen and DNA delivery. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2005; **57**: 451-463 [PMID: 15560951]

49 **Bungener L**, Huckriede A, Wilschut J, Daemen T. Delivery of protein antigens to the immune system by fusion-active virosomes: a comparison with liposomes and ISCOMs. *Biosci Rep* 2002; **22**: 323-338 [PMID: 12428908]

50 **Huckriede A**, Bungener L, Stegmann T, Daemen T, Medema J, Palache AM, Wilschut J. The virosome concept for influenza vaccines. *Vaccine* 2005; **23** Suppl 1: S26-S38 [PMID: 16026906]

51 **Moser C**, Müller M, Kaeser MD, Weydemann U, Amacker M. Influenza virosomes as vaccine adjuvant and carrier system. *Expert Rev Vaccines* 2013; **12**: 779-791 [PMID: 23885823 DOI: 10.1586/14760584.2013.811195]

52 **de Jonge J**, Schoen P, ter Veer W, Stegmann T, Wilschut J, Huckriede A. Use of a dialyzable short-chain phospholipid for efficient solubilization and reconstitution of influenza virus envelopes. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2006; **1758**: 527-536 [PMID: 16630533]

53 **Kaneda Y**. Virosome: a novel vector to enable multi-modal strategies for cancer therapy. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2012; **64**: 730-738 [PMID: 21443915 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2011.03.007]

54 **Moser C**, Amacker M, Kammer AR, Rasi S, Westerfeld N, Zurbriggen R. Influenza virosomes as a combined vaccine carrier and adjuvant system for prophylactic and therapeutic immunizations. *Expert Rev Vaccines* 2007; **6**: 711-721 [PMID: 17931152]

55 **Kushnir N**, Streatfield SJ, Yusibov V. Virus-like particles as a highly efficient vaccine platform: diversity of targets and production systems and advances in clinical development. *Vaccine* 2012; **31**: 58-83 [PMID: 23142589 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2012.10.083]

56 **Roldão A**, Mellado MC, Castilho LR, Carrondo MJ, Alves PM. Virus-like particles in vaccine development. *Expert Rev Vaccines* 2010; **9**: 1149-1176 [PMID: 20923267 DOI: 10.1586/erv.10.115]

57 **Bárcena J**, Blanco E. Design of novel vaccines based on virus-like particles or chimeric virions. *Subcell Biochem* 2013; **68**: 631-665 [PMID: 23737067 DOI: 10.1007/978-94-007-6552-8_21]

58 **Buonaguro L**, Tornesello ML, Buonaguro FM. Virus-like particles as particulate vaccines. *Curr HIV Res* 2010; **8**: 299-309 [PMID: 20353398]

59 **Jain NK**, Sahni N, Kumru OS, Joshi SB, Volkin DB, Russell Middaugh C. Formulation and stabilization of recombinant protein based virus-like particle vaccines. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25451136 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2014.10.023]

60 **Harper DM**, Franco EL, Wheeler CM, Moscicki AB, Romanowski B, Roteli-Martins CM, Jenkins D, Schuind A, Costa Clemens SA, Dubin G. Sustained efficacy up to 4.5 years of a bivalent L1 virus-like particle vaccine against human papillomavirus types 16 and 18: follow-up from a randomised control trial. *Lancet* 2006; **367**: 1247-1255 [PMID: 16631880]

61 **Domingo GJ**, Orru' S, Perham RN. Multiple display of peptides and proteins on a macromolecular scaffold derived from a multienzyme complex. *J Mol Biol* 2001; **305**: 259-267 [PMID: 11124904]

62 **Trovato M**, Krebs SJ, Haigwood NL, De Berardinis P. Delivery strategies for novel vaccine formulations. *World J Virol* 2012; **1**: 4-10 [PMID: 24175206 DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v1.i1.4]

63 **Perham RN**. Swinging arms and swinging domains in multifunctional enzymes: catalytic machines for multistep reactions. *Annu Rev Biochem* 2000; **69**: 961-1004 [PMID: 10966480]

64 **Lessard IA**, Domingo GJ, Borges A, Perham RN. Expression of genes encoding the E2 and E3 components of the Bacillus stearothermophilus pyruvate dehydrogenase complex and the stoichiometry of subunit interaction in assembly in vitro. *Eur J Biochem* 1998; **258**: 491-501 [PMID: 9874216]

65 **Caivano A**, Doria-Rose NA, Buelow B, Sartorius R, Trovato M, D' Apice L, Domingo GJ, Sutton WF, Haigwood NL, De Berardinis P. HIV-1 Gag p17 presented as virus-like particles on the E2 scaffold from Geobacillus stearothermophilus induces sustained humoral and cellular immune responses in the absence of IFNγ production by CD4+ T cells. *Virology* 2010; **407**: 296-305 [PMID: 20850858 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2010.08.026]

66 **Krebs SJ**, McBurney SP, Kovarik DN, Waddell CD, Jaworski JP, Sutton WF, Gomes MM, Trovato M, Waagmeester G, Barnett SJ, DeBerardinis P, Haigwood NL. Multimeric scaffolds displaying the HIV-1 envelope MPER induce MPER-specific antibodies and cross-neutralizing antibodies when co-immunized with gp160 DNA. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e113463 [PMID: 25514675 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0113463]

67 **Schiavone M**, Fiume G, Caivano A, de Laurentiis A, Falcone C, Masci FF, Iaccino E, Mimmi S, Palmieri C, Pisano A, Pontoriero M, Rossi A, Scialdone A, Vecchio E, Andreozzi C, Trovato M, Rafay J, Ferko B, Montefiori D, Lombardi A, Morsica G, Poli G, Quinto I, Pavone V, de Berardinis P, Scala G. Design and characterization of a peptide mimotope of the HIV-1 gp120 bridging sheet. *Int J Mol Sci* 2012; **13**: 5674-5699 [PMID: 22754323 DOI: 10.3390/ijms13055674]

68 **Mantile F**, Basile C, Cicatiello V, De Falco D, Caivano A, De Berardinis P, Prisco A. A multimeric immunogen for the induction of immune memory to beta-amyloid. *Immunol Cell Biol* 2011; **89**: 604-609 [PMID: 21102534 DOI: 10.1038/icb.2010.134]

69 **Mantile F**, Trovato M, Santoni A, Barba P, Ottonello S, De Berardinis P, Prisco A. Alum and squalene-oil-in-water emulsion enhance the titer and avidity of anti-Aβ antibodies induced by multimeric protein antigen (1-11)E2, preserving the Igg1-skewed

isotype distribution. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e101474 [PMID: 24983378 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0101474]

70 **De Berardinis P**, Haigwood NL. New recombinant vaccines based on the use of prokaryotic antigen-display systems. *Expert Rev Vaccines* 2004; **3**: 673-679 [PMID: 15606352]

71 **Aida Y**, Pabst MJ. Removal of endotoxin from protein solutions by phase separation using Triton X-114. *J Immunol Methods* 1990; **132**: 191-195 [PMID: 2170533]

72 **Domingo GJ**, Caivano A, Sartorius R, Barba P, Bäckström M, Piatier-Tonneau D, Guardiola J, De Berardinis P, Perham RN. Induction of specific T-helper and cytolytic responses to epitopes displayed on a virus-like protein scaffold derived from the pyruvate dehydrogenase multienzyme complex. *Vaccine* 2003; **21**: 1502-1509 [PMID: 12615447]

73 **De Berardinis P**, Sartorius R, Caivano A, Mascolo D, Domingo GJ, Del Pozzo G, Gaubin M, Perham RN, Piatier-Tonneau D, Guardiola J. Use of fusion proteins and procaryotic display systems for delivery of HIV-1 antigens: development of novel vaccines for HIV-1 infection. *Curr HIV Res* 2003; **1**: 441-446 [PMID: 15049429]

74 **D'Apice L**, Sartorius R, Caivano A, Mascolo D, Del Pozzo G, Di Mase DS, Ricca E, Li Pira G, Manca F, Malanga D, De Palma R, De Berardinis P. Comparative analysis of new innovative vaccine formulations based on the use of procaryotic display systems. *Vaccine* 2007; **25**: 1993-2000 [PMID: 17239998]

75 **Ren D**, Dalmau M, Randall A, Shindel MM, Baldi P, Wang SW. Biomimetic Design of Protein Nanomaterials for Hydrophobic Molecular Transport. *Adv Funct Mater* 2012; **22**: 3170-3180 [PMID: 23526705]

76 **Woo WP**, Doan T, Herd KA, Netter HJ, Tindle RW. Hepatitis B surface antigen vector delivers protective cytotoxic T-lymphocyte responses to disease-relevant foreign epitopes. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 3975-3984 [PMID: 16571814]

77 **Dale CJ**, Liu XS, De Rose R, Purcell DF, Anderson J, Xu Y, Leggatt GR, Frazer IH, Kent SJ. Chimeric human papilloma virus-simian/human immunodeficiency virus virus-like-particle vaccines: immunogenicity and protective efficacy in macaques. *Virology* 2002; **301**: 176-187 [PMID: 12359458]

P- Reviewer: Giannecchini S, Kawasaki H, Robert J
S- Editor: Tian YL **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.169

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 169-177
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

EDITORIAL

Can antiretroviral therapy be tailored to each human immunodeficiency virus-infected individual? Role of pharmacogenomics

Victor Asensi, Julio Collazos, Eulalia Valle-Garay

Victor Asensi, Infectious Diseases-HIV Unit, Hospital Universitario Central de Asturias, Oviedo University School of Medicine, 33013 Oviedo, Spain

Julio Collazos, Infectious Diseases Unit, Hospital de Galdácano, 48960 Vizcaya, Spain

Eulalia Valle-Garay, Biochemistry and Molecular Biology Department, Oviedo University School of Medicine, 33006 Oviedo, Spain

Author contributions: All authors contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors do not have any conflict of interest related to this paper.

Correspondence to: Victor Asensi, MD, PhD, Infectious Diseases-HIV Unit, Hospital Universitario Central de Asturias, Oviedo University School of Medicine, Avenida de Roma s/n, 33013 Oviedo, Spain. vasensia@gmail.com
Telephone: +34-985-108000-36442

Received: January 15, 2015
Peer-review started: January 16, 2015
First decision: April 27, 2015
Revised: May 8, 2015
Accepted: June 9, 2015
Article in press: June 11, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

Pharmacogenetics refers to the effect of single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) within human genes on drug therapy outcome. Its study might help clinicians to increase the efficacy of antiretroviral drugs by improving their pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics and by decreasing their side effects. *HLAB*5701* genotyping to avoid the abacavir-associated hypersensitivity reaction (HSR) is a cost-effective diagnostic tool, with a 100% of negative predictive value, and, therefore, it has been included in the guidelines for treatment of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection. *HALDRB*0101* associates with nevirapine-induced HSR. *CYP2B6* SNPs modify efavirenz plasma levels and their genotyping help decreasing its central nervous system, hepatic and HSR toxicities. Cytokines SNPs might influence the development of drug-associated lipodystrophy. *APOA5*, *APOB*, *APOC3* and *APOE* SNPs modify lipids plasma levels and might influence the coronary artery disease risk of HIV-infected individuals receiving antiretroviral therapy. *UGT1A1*28* and *ABCB1 (MDR1) 3435C > T* SNPs modify atazanavir plasma levels and enhance hyperbilirubinemia. Much more effort needs to be still devoted to complete large prospective studies with multiple SNPs genotyping in order to reveal more clues about the role played by host genetics in antiretroviral drug efficacy and toxicity.

Key words: Pharmacogenomics; Pharmacokinetics; Antiretroviral drugs; Adverse effects; Human immunodeficiency virus infection; Single nucleotide polymorphisms

Core tip: Pharmacogenetics may play an important role in

the near future for the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus-infection, as exemplified by the *HLAB*5701* genotyping to prevent the abacavir-associated hypersensitivity reaction. Diverse other single nucleotide polymorphisms have been described as related to certain pharmacokinetic characteristics and adverse effects of antiretroviral drugs. In this Editorial we summarize the current knowledge on this rapidly evolving field.

Asensi V, Collazos J, Valle-Garay E. Can antiretroviral therapy be tailored to each human immunodeficiency virus-infected individual? Role of pharmacogenomics. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 169-177 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/169.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.169

INTRODUCTION

Antiretroviral therapy (ART) has become so effective that human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection is not any more the deadly plague of the past, but a chronic, easy to handle condition. Although ART is much less toxic nowadays than it was in the past, it is still not free of side effects. The choice of the most effective and safe ART regimen is the daily task of HIV clinicians throughout the world. An aim that has been made easier by the existence of ART guidelines that are updated yearly by different agencies and societies.

Another approach, much more cumbersome, is the use of pharmacogenetics to prescribe ART. The same antiretrovirals administered at the same doses produce different antiviral effects and toxicities in different individuals, suggesting that genetic factors of the host may also play a role. The term pharmacogenetics refers to the effect of polymorphisms within human genes on drug therapy outcome. Single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) are sequence variations in human DNA with single nucleotide changes occurring at an allele frequency greater than 1%. Nucleotide changes occurring with a lower frequency are referred to as mutations.

SNPs are candidates for a causal role for a given phenotype when they are associated with changes in protein function, which occurs more likely when the SNP is located in an exon, a DNA protein-coding region, and lead to changes in the encoded amino acid. However more than 95% of SNPs are located in non-coding gene regions, such as those of the promoter, untranslated, introns and intergenic regions. Such non-exonic SNPs can still alter protein function or expression by changes in gene transcription, mRNA splicing, mRNA stability or alterations in translation and conformation of the protein. Therefore, pharmacogenetics gives ground to individualized therapy.

This genetic tool might help clinicians to enhance ART efficacy by improving the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of antiretroviral drugs and by decreasing their side effects[1-10]. The use of *HLAB*5701* genotyping to avoid the abacavir-associated hypersensitivity reaction (HSR) is a cost-effective diagnostic tool, which have a negative predictive value of 100% for all ethnic groups and, consequently, it has been included in all ART guidelines[11,12]. Unluckily, pharmacogenetics cannot offer so bright solutions to other ART problems at present, although it might still be of some help to the clinician, however.

A major problem of the SNP-phenotype association studies in the field of ART is the lack of reproducibility. This might be related to the relatively small size of the populations genotyped, the lack of statistical power of the study or a selection bias. Other times the SNP association of the observed effect is found only within a specific ethnic group but not in others. Also, some of the reported positive associations might have been obtained after multiple statistical comparisons, giving place to potentially spurious associations due to chance. Likewise, only positive results are usually reported, which means that some published associations may not have been overtly refuted by other authors that found no such a relationship. On the other hand, a SNP-phenotype association might not be necessarily due to the functional effect of the gene variant, but to the presence of other variant on the same chromosome in linkage disequilibrium, combination that is referred to as a haplotype. Finally, most of the pharmacogenetic studies are retrospective or cross-sectional. A large prospective study on a multiethnic population, with simultaneous genotyping of multiple SNPs known to be relevant in the general population, would be much more informative.

In the following lines we will focus on the most frequent associations of genetic variants with the pharmacokinetic changes and toxicity of antiretroviral drugs, the most relevant of which are summarized in Table 1.

ABACAVIR-ASSOCIATED HSR

As mentioned above, the use of *HLAB*5701* genotyping to avoid the abacavir-associated HSR is the ideal example of a genotype-phenotype correlation in HIV medicine. The involvement of host genetic factors was first suggested by the observation of abacavir-associated HSR in members of the same family. Later, several groups demonstrated a strong association between abacavir and the haplotype comprising *HLAB*5701*, *HLA-DR7* and *HLA-DQ3* genotypes[11].

The clinical utility of *HLAB*5701* genotyping was confirmed in a large, randomized, double-blind, international, multiethnic prospective study. HIV-infected patients with a positive *HLAB*5701* genotype were excluded from abacavir prescription (prospective screening group) while other HIV-infected patients received abacavir without *HLAB*5701* genotyping (control group). Patients with clinically suspected HSR underwent a confirmatory skin-patch testing (immunologically confirmed HSR). Prospective *HLAB*5701* screening eliminated immunologically confirmed HSR with a negative predictive value of 100% and significantly reduced the rate of clinically suspected HSR from 7.8% to 3.4%[12].

Table 1 Summary of most relevant genetic determinants of antiretroviral drug pharmacokinetics and toxicity

Drug/drug class	Gene, allele(s)/SNPs	SNP	Reported associations	Additional observations	Ref.
Abacavir	*HLA-B*5701*	2395029	↑ risk of HSR	Cost effective test and included in all ART guidelines	[11-13]
Tenofovir	*ABCC2 (MRP2)1249G > A*	2273697	↑ risk of renal proximal tubulopathy in French populations	To be confirmed in other populations	[14,15]
Lamivudine, Zidovudine	*ABCC4 (MRP4) 3724G > A, 4131T > G*	2273697 3742106	↑ intracellular exposure of stavudine triphosphate	Uncertain clinical significance	[15,53]
NRTIs	*TNFα238G > A*	361525	Earlier onset of lipoatrophy	Negative findings reported by others	[16-20]
Stavudine, NRTIs	*IL1β + 3954C > T*	1143634	↓ risk of lipodystrophy in Spanish populations	To be confirmed in other populations	[20]
NRTIs	*MMP1-16071G > 2G*	1799750	↑ risk of lipodystrophy in Spanish populations	To be confirmed in other populations	[21]
Stavudine, Zidovudine	*TS* ↓ expression and *MTHFR 1298 A > C* ↑ activity genotypes	1801131	↑ risk of lipodystrophy and peripheral neuropathy in Spanish populations	To be confirmed in other populations	[24,25]
NRTIs	*LPS-binding protein (LBP) T > C*	2232582	↑ risk of lipodystrophy in Spanish population	To be confirmed in other populations	[22]
NRTIs	Mitochondrial DNA (haplogroup T): *MTND1*LHON4216C, MTND2*LHON4917G, 7028C > T, 10398G > A, 13368G > A*	28357980	↑ risk of peripheral neuropathy	Tissue specific mitochondrial DNA depletion may also play some role in NRTI toxicity	[7,26,27]
NRTIs	*HFE845G > A*		↓ risk of peripheral neuropathy	Negative findings reported by others	[28,29]
NRTIs	*CFTR 1717-1G > A, IVS8 5T, SPINK-1 112C > T*		↑ risk of pancreatitis	Reported also in the general population	[30]
Nevirapine	*HLA-DRB1*0101*		↑ risk of HSR and hepatotoxicity	CD4 cell % > 25% associated with ↑ risk	[31,32]
Nevirapine	*HLA-cw8*		↑ risk of HSR in Italian and Japanese populations		[33,34]
Nevirapine	*CYP2B6 983T > C*	28399499	↑ risk of HSR in Malawian and Ugandan populations	Stevens-Johnson syndrome or toxic epidermal necrolysis, but no other HSR	[37]
Nevirapine, Efavirenz	*ABCB1 (MDR1) 3435C > T*	1045642	↓ risk of hepatotoxicity		[35,36]
Efavirenz	*ABCB1(MDR1) 3435C > T*	1045642	↓ plasma exposure	Negative findings reported by some authors	[51-53]
Efavirenz	*CYP2B6 *1/*1 haplotype*		↓ plasma concentrations	In patients receiving antituberculosis treatment	[45]
Efavirenz	*ABCB1 (MDR1 3435C > T*	1045642	↑ HDL-cholesterol in Spanish populations	To be confirmed in other populations	[60]
Efavirenz	*CYP2B6 516G > T, 983T > C*	3745274 28399499	↑ plasma exposure and ↑ risk of CNS side effects	Reports of successful efavirenz dose individualization	[39,42,44, 46,48,49]
Efavirenz	*CYP2A6 48T > G, UGT2B7 735A > G*	28399433 28365062	↑ plasma concentrations in Black and White, but not in Hispanic individuals from the United States	To be confirmed in other populations	[47]
Efavirenz, Nevirapine	*CYP2B6 516G > T, 983T > C*	28399499	↑ plasma exposure in African populations	To be confirmed in other populations	[43]
NNRTIs	*ABCA1/Hepatic Lipase (LIPC)*/Cholesteryl Ester Transfer Protein (*CETP*)	4149313 173539 3764261	↑ LDL-cholesterol in Spanish populations	To be confirmed in other populations	[61]
PIs	*ABCA1 2962A > G*		↑ risk of hyperlipidemia		[60]
PIs	*CETP 279A > G*		↑ risk of hyperlipidemia		[60]
PIs	APOA5-1131T > C, 64G > C	662799	↑ risk of hyperlipidemia		[60,62]
Antiretrovirals	*APOE/LDL Receptor (LDLR)*	405509 2228671	↑ risk of trunk fat gain in Spanish populations	To be confirmed in other populations	[23]
PIs	*APOC3 482 C > T, 455 C > T, 3238 C > G*	2854117 2854116 5128	↑ risk of hyperlipidemia		[18,63]
PIs	*APOE ε2 and ε3* haplotypes		↑ risk of hyperlipidemia		[18]
Antiretrovirals	*Insulin Receptor Substrate 1 (IRS1)*	1801278	↑ risk of limbs lipoatrophy in Spanish populations	To be confirmed in other populations	[23]
Raltegravir	*UGT1A1*28/*28*		↑ modestly plasma levels	Clinically no significant	[57]
Atazanavir, Indinavir	*UGT1A1*28*		Unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia and jaundice		[54,55]

Atazanavir	*ABCB1 (MDR1) 3435C > T*	1045642	Unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia and jaundice	↑ plasma levels	[57]
Atazanavir	*ABCB1 (MDR1) 2677 G > T*	2032582	↑ intracellular/plasma concentration ratios	For GG homozygous as compared with GT and TT genotypes	[58]
Nelfinavir	*CYP2C19*2 (681G > A)*	4244285	↑ drug exposure in Italian and multiracial Americans	To be confirmed in other populations	[39]
Indinavir	*CYP3A5*3 (A6986G)*		↑ oral clearance	To be confirmed in other populations	[53]
Maraviroc	*CCR5WT/Δ32*		No effect on virologic response	Clinically not significant	[7]

SNP: Single-nucleotide polymorphisms; HSR: Hypersensitive reaction; ART: Antiretroviral therapy; CNS: Central nervous system; NRTIs: Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors; NNRTIs: Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors; PIs: Protease inhibitors.

A recent meta-analysis has quantified the utility of *HLAB*5701* testing[13]. The pooled odds ratio to detect abacavir-induced hypersensitivity on the basis of clinical criteria was 33.07 (95%CI: 22.33-48.97), while diagnostic odds ratio for detection of immunologically confirmed abacavir hypersensitivity was 1141 (95%CI: 409-3181). The meta-analysis also found that prospective *HLA-B*5701* testing significantly reduced the incidence of abacavir-induced hypersensitivity.

These results strongly support the clinical value of *HLAB*5701* screening to avoid this condition. Therefore, *HLAB*5701* genotyping has proved to be cost-effective and is already included as a routine tool in all ART guidelines.

TENOFOVIR-ASSOCIATED RENAL PROXIMAL TUBULOPATHY

Tenofovir, the most widely prescribed antiretroviral nowadays, has shown to produce renal proximal tubulopathy and bone toxicity in the long run. Tenofovir is introduced in the renal proximal tubular cell by the human organic anion transporters 1 and 3. Multidrug resistance-associated proteins (ABCC/MRP) 2 and 4 are located in the apical membranes of the proximal renal tubules and transport different drugs from the tubular cells to the urine. Variations in the genes that encode ABCC2 (MRP2) and ABCC4 (MRP4) proteins might block tenofovir excretion, enhancing intracellular tenofovir levels and increasing the risk of renal tubular toxicity.

In fact, *ABCC2 (MRP2)1249G > A* SNP has been linked to tenofovir-associated renal proximal tubulopathy in HIV-infected French patients[14], a genetic association that needs to be confirmed in other populations. However, this finding needs further explanation because tenofovir is not a substrate for ABCC2, although this genetic variant might be in linkage disequilibrium with other SNPs in genes coding for unidentified factors that might exacerbate tenofovir toxicity[15].

NUCLEOSIDE REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE INHIBITORS-ASSOCIATED LIPODYSTROPHY

British and Australian researchers have reported an association of the *TNFα238G > A* SNP with the earlier onset of lipoatrophy in Caucasian HIV-infected patients under nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTI)[16,17], findings that have not been reproduced by others and need further confirmation[18-20]. *IL1β + 3954C > T* SNP, which decreases TNF-α plasma levels, have been associated with protection against lipodystrophy in HIV-infected Spanish individuals on stavudine[20].

Metalloproteases (MMPs), involved in extracellular matrix remodeling, can modulate adipocyte differentiation[8]. *MMP1 - 16071G > 2G* SNP induces increased MMP-1 plasma levels and has also been associated with lipodystrophy[21]. Increased lipopolysaccharide (LPS) plasma levels have been found in HIV-infected subjects. Lipopolysaccharide-binding protein (LBP), which transports LPS, has been linked to obesity and metabolic perturbations. *LPS-binding protein (LBP)T > C* SNP has been associated with lipodystrophy in Spanish HIV-infected individuals[22].

Specific SNPs in *APOE* and *LDL receptor (LDLR)* genes (rs 405509 and rs 2228671) have been related to trunk fat gain in HIV-infected individuals on ART. *Insulin Receptor Substrate 1 (IRS1)* SNPs (rs 1801278) has been associated with increased risk of limbs lipoatrophy in the same Spanish Caucasian cohort[23]. Low-expression thymidylate synthase SNPs have also been associated with lipodystrophy in HIV-infected patients exposed to estavudine[24].

NRTI-ASSOCIATED PERIPHERAL NEUROPATHY AND PANCREATITIS

Low-expression thymidylate synthase SNPs have been related to increased stavudine triphosphate intracellular levels[24]. Methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase (*MTHFR) 1298 A > C* SNP has been associated with decreased activity of this enzyme and abnormalities of folate metabolism. The conjunction of a low-expression thymidylate synthase plus a MTHFR genotype in HIV-infected patients exposed to stavudine has been associated with the development of peripheral neuropathy and lipodystrophy in HIV-infected individuals[24,25]. Mitochondrial haplogroup T *MTND1*LHON4216C* and *MTND2-*LHON4917G* genotypes and mitochondrial haplogroup T and *7028C > T, 10398G > A,* and *13368G > A,* SNPs were independently linked to increased susceptibility to

NRTI-associated peripheral neuropathy[7,26,27].

Iron transport is dysregulated in HIV infection and disorders of iron metabolism are linked to mitochondrial dysfunction and other neurodegenerative disorders. Hemochromatosis (*HFE*) gene SNPs alter the structure of HFE protein dysregulating intestinal iron absorption and its cellular transport. The carriage of the hemochromatosis *(HFE) 845G>A* SNP decreased the risk of NRTI-associated peripheral neuropathy, although this finding could not be reproduced by others[28,29].

Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (*CFTR*) and serine protease inhibitor Kazal-1 (*SPINK-1*) mutations have been reported to increase the risk of pancreatitis in the general population. *CFTR 1717-1G > A*, *IVS8 5T*, and *SPINK-1 112C > T* SNPs are also frequent among HIV-positive patients suffering from acute pancreatitis, what suggests that these mutations might increase the susceptibility to pancreatitis if the patients are exposed to environmental risk factors such as thymidine NRTIs (stavudine, didanosine)[30].

NON-NUCLEOSIDE REVERSE TRANSCRIPTASE INHIBITORS-ASSOCIATED HSR AND HEPATITIS

Carriage of the class II allele *HLA-DRB1*0101* has been linked with nevirapine-associated hepatotoxicity and HSR (but not with isolated rash) in HIV-infected Western Australians, especially in those individuals with a CD4 cell count > 25%[31]. A similar association with cutaneous hypersensitivity has also been reported for nevirapine and efavirenz in French Caucasian patients regardless of the CD4 values[32].

Additional HLA alleles (*HLA-cw8/HLA-B14*) have been recently associated with nevirapine hepatotoxicity in Sardinian[33] and Japanese[34] HIV-infected patients. On the other hand, *ABCB1 (MDR1) 3435C > T* SNP has been found to decrease the risk of nevirapine-associated hepatotoxicity in multiethnic South African and American individuals[35,36].

Likewise, an association between the *CYP2B6 c.983T > C* SNP and the development of nevirapine-induced Stevens-Johnson syndrome or toxic epidermal necrolysis, but not other hypersensitivity reactions, has been described in Malawian and Ugandan HIV-infected individuals[37]. Considering that this SNP is found in a small part of African populations, but not in Caucasians, these findings would point out to an ethnic-specific predisposing factor.

EFAVIRENZ DISPOSITION AND CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM SIDE EFFECTS

The cytochrome P450 (CYP) enzyme CYP2B6, primarily expressed in the liver, is involved in the biotransformation of efavirenz. CYP2B6 is one of the most polymorphic CYP genes in humans and its variants have shown to affect transcriptional regulation, splicing, mRNA and protein expression and catalytic activity[38]. *CYP2B6 516G > T, 983T > C, 785A > G* and *21563C > T* SNPs have been associated with greater efavirenz plasma exposure and the development of more severe central nervous system (CNS) effects in different HIV-infected populations, including African and Thai patients[39-46].

Likewise, increased efavirenz concentrations were associated with *CYP2A6 -48T > G* and with *GG* homozygosity for *UGT2B7 735*, a SNP of the microsomal enzyme uridine 5′-diphospho-glucuronosyltransferase (UGT), in Black and White, but not in Hispanic individuals from the United States[47].

Also, *CYP2B6 *6/*6* and *6/*26* carriers have been found to be associated with extremely high plasma concentrations of efavirenz in Japanese patients receiving standard doses of the drug[48]. Efavirenz doses were substantially reduced down to 200 mg/d in these patients without loss of antiviral efficacy and improvement in CNS symptoms. In addition, *CYP2B6 516G > T* genotyping has been found to reduce treatment costs, even considering only the sparing related to efavirenz dose reduction[49]. These two reports constitute examples of practical applications of genotyping and how pharmacogenomics may be useful for the management of HIV-infected individuals receiving antiretroviral drugs.

On the other hand, there are conflicting results about the effect of *ABCB1(MDR1) 3435C > T* SNPs in decreasing efavirenz plasma exposure[50-52], and an independent association between low efavirenz plasma concentrations and the *CYP2B6 *1/*1* haplotype has also been found in patients receiving antituberculosis drugs[45].

SNPs in other CYP enzymes such as *CYP3A5* SNPs have also been associated with faster clearance of other antiretroviral drugs such as indinavir[53].

ATAZANAVIR AND INDINAVIR-ASSOCIATED HYPERBILIRRUBINEMIA

The most common side effect of atazanavir is hyperbilirubinemia (observed in 20%-50% of patients exposed to this drug), a mostly minor disturbance that in 6% of cases can reach the range of clinical jaundice. Bilirubin needs to be conjugated with glucuronic acid to be excreted in the bile. This step is mediated by the microsomal enzyme UGT, which can cause unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia when its activity is reduced. Fifteen UGT isoforms with different substrate specificities, including the bilirubin-specific isoform UGTA1, have been identified. *UGT1A1*28* SNP has been associated with hyperbilirubinemia in HIV-infected Swiss and Spanish Caucasian individuals starting atazanavir or indinavir[54,55], and this SNP might modify raltegravir plasma levels as well[56].

Likewise, the P-glycoprotein, an efflux pump coded by the *ABCB1 (MDR1)* gene, is one of the most important transporters, especially expelling protease inhibitors outside the cell. *ABCB1 (MDR1)* SNPs might therefore influence atazanavir plasma concentration and, in fact,

ABCB1 (MDR1) 3435C > T SNP has been associated with increased atazanavir plasma levels and hyperbilirubinemia in Spanish patients[57]. Also, the intracellular/plasma concentration ratio of atazanavir was higher in *GG* carriers compared with those with *GT* and *TT* genotypes of the *ABCB1 2677 G>T* SNP in an Italian study[58].

PROTEASE INHIBITOR AND EFAVIRENZ-ASSOCIATED LIPIDIC ABNORMALITIES AND CORONARY ARTERY DISEASE RISK

Hyperlipidemia is usually associated with ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitor therapy, but also with efavirenz use. *ABCA1* SNPs have been linked to hyperlipidemia in HIV-infected patients treated with protease inhibitors or efavirenz. Thus, *ABCA1 2962A > G* SNP has been associated with increased HDL-cholesterol plasma levels after efavirenz treatment in Spanish patients[59] and after ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitor therapy in the Swiss HIV cohort[60]. The contribution of other SNPs associated with plasma lipid levels in the general population has also been extensively studied in the same Swiss cohort and in other populations. *APOA5*, especially the *-1131T > C* and *64G > C* SNPs, *APOC3,* especially the *482 C > T*, *455 C > T* and *3238 C > G* SNPs, and *APOE*, especially the *APOE ε2 and ε3* haplotypes and *APOB* SNP have been shown to contribute to increased plasma triglyceride, HDL-cholesterol and/or LDL-cholesterol levels during ART[18,60-63].

ABCA1, Hepatic Lipase (LIPC) and Cholesteryl Ester Transfer Protein *(CETP)* gene variant*,* especially the *279A > G SNP*, were favorably associated with HDL-cholesterol when ART included non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTI). However an unfavorable effect on total-cholesterol and triglyceride levels was observed when ART included protease inhibitors[62].

Recently, a large meta-analysis has shown the role in HIV-infected patients on ART of 23 SNPs associated with coronary artery disease (CAD) in the general population. The authors report that the effect of unfavorable genetic background was similar to traditional CAD risk factors and certain adverse antiretroviral exposures. The authors concluded that genetic testing might provide prognostic information complementary to the family history of CAD[64].

DISCUSSION AND CONCLUSION

The field of pharmacogenetics is just beginning, but it will help the clinician to tailor and individualize ART for each HIV-infected patient. The gold standard to reach is currently the *HLAB*5701* genotyping, which has proven to be highly efficacious to prevent the abacavir-associated HSR and, consequently, it has been included as a routine tool for the care of HIV-infected patients in all ART guidelines.

In this short review we have focused more on the possible role of pharmacogenetics to prevent ART side effects than in pharmacokinetics. However, the reader must be aware of the value of pharmacogenetics to modulate the pharmacokinetic parameters of antiretroviral drugs. For instance, efavirenz dosage can be tailored for each individual knowing his/her *CYP2B6* SNPs carriage, as *CYP2B6* genetic variants seem to substantially modify efavirenz absorption and plasma levels. Moreover, genotyping has even shown to be a cost-effective measure, as the costs of the determination are compensated by savings related to efavirenz dose reduction and management of side-effects. Therefore, the clinician might adjust efavirenz doses to achieve maximal antiviral efficacy with minimal side effects.

The same train of thought can be applied to *UGT1A1*28* and *ABCB1* genotypings, to control the plasma and intracellular concentrations of atazanavir and to decrease the atazanavir-associated hyperbilirubinemia without modifying its antiviral effect.

The practical usefulness of other genetic testings is less clear at present, pending on the confirmation of the results observed in different studies and the discovery of new genetic variants associated with the pharmacokinetics and side-effects of antiretroviral drugs. Therefore, much more effort is needed to complete large size prospective studies with multiple SNPs genotyping, to reveal more clues about the role played by host genetics in ART response.

REFERENCES

1 **Pirmohamed M**, Back DJ. The pharmacogenomics of HIV therapy. *Pharmacogenomics J* 2001; **1**: 243-253 [PMID: 11908767]

2 **Fox J**, Boffito M, Winston A. The clinical implications of antiretroviral pharmacogenomics. *Pharmacogenomics* 2006; **7**: 587-596 [PMID: 16753006 DOI: 10.2217/14622416.7.4.587]

3 **Quirk E**, McLeod H, Powderly W. The pharmacogenetics of antiretroviral therapy: a review of studies to date. *Clin Infect Dis* 2004; **39**: 98-106 [PMID: 15206060 DOI: 10.1086/421557]

4 **Tarr PE**, Telenti A. Toxicogenetics of antiretroviral therapy: genetic factors that contribute to metabolic complications. *Antivir Ther* 2007; **12**: 999-1013 [PMID: 18018758]

5 **Phillips EJ**, Mallal SA. Pharmacogenetics and the potential for the individualization of antiretroviral therapy. *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 2008; **21**: 16-24 [PMID: 18192781 DOI: 10.1097/QCO.0b013e]

6 **Vidal F**, Gutiérrez F, Gutiérrez M, Olona M, Sánchez V, Mateo G, Peraire J, Viladés C, Veloso S, López-Dupla M, Domingo P. Pharmacogenetics of adverse effects due to antiretroviral drugs. *AIDS Rev* 2010; **12**: 15-30 [PMID: 20216907]

7 **Tozzi V**. Pharmacogenetics of antiretrovirals. *Antiviral Res* 2010; **85**: 190-200 [PMID: 19744523 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2009.09.001]

8 **Vidal F**, Domingo P, Viladés C, Peraire J, Arnedo M, Alcamí J, Leal M, Villarroya F, Gatell JM. Pharmacogenetics of the lipodystrophy syndrome associated with HIV infection and combination antiretroviral therapy. *Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol* 2011; **7**: 1365-1382 [PMID: 21999362 DOI: 10.1517/17425255.2011.621941]

9 **Pavlos R**, Phillips EJ. Individualization of antiretroviral therapy. *Pharmgenomics Pers Med* 2012; **5**: 1-17 [PMID: 23226059 DOI: 10.2147/PGPM.S15303]

10 **Arab-Alameddine M**, Décosterd LA, Buclin T, Telenti A, Csajka C. Antiretroviral drug toxicity in relation to pharmacokinetics, metabolic profile and pharmacogenetics. *Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol* 2011; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 21500966 DOI: 10.1517/17425255.2011.562891]

11 **Mallal S**, Nolan D, Witt C, Masel G, Martin AM, Moore C, Sayer D, Castley A, Mamotte C, Maxwell D, James I, Christiansen FT. Association between presence of HLA-B*5701, HLA-DR7, and HLA-DQ3 and hypersensitivity to HIV-1 reverse-transcriptase inhibitor abacavir. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 727-732 [PMID: 11888582 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)07873-X]

12 **Mallal S**, Phillips E, Carosi G, Molina JM, Workman C, Tomazic

J, Jägel-Guedes E, Rugina S, Kozyrev O, Cid JF, Hay P, Nolan D, Hughes S, Hughes A, Ryan S, Fitch N, Thorborn D, Benbow A. HLA-B*5701 screening for hypersensitivity to abacavir. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 568-579 [PMID: 18256392 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0706135]

13 **Cargnin S**, Jommi C, Canonico PL, Genazzani AA, Terrazzino S. Diagnostic accuracy of HLA-B*57: 01 screening for the prediction of abacavir hypersensitivity and clinical utility of the test: a meta-analytic review. *Pharmacogenomics* 2014; **15**: 963-976 [PMID: 24956250 DOI: 10.2217/pgs.14.52]

14 **Izzedine H**, Hulot JS, Villard E, Goyenvalle C, Dominguez S, Ghosn J, Valantin MA, Lechat P, Deray AG. Association between ABCC2 gene haplotypes and tenofovir-induced proximal tubulopathy. *J Infect Dis* 2006; **194**: 1481-1491 [PMID: 17083032 DOI: 10.1086/508546]

15 **Moss DM**, Neary M, Owen A. The role of drug transporters in the kidney: lessons from tenofovir. *Front Pharmacol* 2014; **5**: 248 [PMID: 25426075 DOI: 10.3389/fphar.2014.00248]

16 **Maher B**, Alfirevic A, Vilar FJ, Wilkins EG, Park BK, Pirmohamed M. TNF-alpha promoter region gene polymorphisms in HIV-positive patients with lipodystrophy. *AIDS* 2002; **16**: 2013-2018 [PMID: 12370499 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200210180-00005]

17 **Nolan D**, Moore C, Castley A, Sayer D, Mamotte C, John M, James I, Mallal S. Tumour necrosis factor-alpha gene -238G/A promoter polymorphism associated with a more rapid onset of lipodystrophy. *AIDS* 2003; **17**: 121-123 [PMID: 12478078]

18 **Tarr PE**, Taffé P, Bleiber G, Furrer H, Rotger M, Martinez R, Hirschel B, Battegay M, Weber R, Vernazza P, Bernasconi E, Darioli R, Rickenbach M, Ledergerber B, Telenti A. Modeling the influence of APOC3, APOE, and TNF polymorphisms on the risk of antiretroviral therapy-associated lipid disorders. *J Infect Dis* 2005; **191**: 1419-1426 [PMID: 15809899 DOI: 10.1086/429295]

19 **Veloso S**, Olona M, Peraire J, Viladés C, Pardo P, Domingo P, Asensi V, Broch M, Aguilar C, López-Dupla M, Aragonés G, Garcia-Pardo G, Sirvent JJ, Vendrell J, Richart C, Vidal F. No relationship between TNF-α genetic variants and combination antiretroviral therapy-related lipodystrophy syndrome in HIV type 1-infected patients: a case-control study and a meta-analysis. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 2011; **27**: 143-152 [PMID: 20854131 DOI: 10.1089/aid.2009.0312]

20 **Asensi V**, Rego C, Montes AH, Collazos J, Carton JA, Castro MG, Alvarez V, Fernández C, Maradona JA, Valle-Garay E. IL-1beta (+3954C/T) polymorphism could protect human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected patients on highly active antiretroviral treatment (HAART) against lipodystrophic syndrome. *Genet Med* 2008; **10**: 215-223 [PMID: 18344712 DOI: 10.1097/GIM.0b013e3181632713]

21 **Montes AH**, Valle-Garay E, Suarez-Zarracina T, Melon S, Martinez E, Carton JA, Collazos J, Asensi V. The MMP1 (-16071G/2G) single nucleotide polymorphism associates with the HAART-related lipodystrophic syndrome. *AIDS* 2010; **24**: 2499-2506 [PMID: 20852404 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32833e922c]

22 **Viladés C**, Escoté X, López-Dupla M, Martinez E, Domingo P, Asensi V, Leal M, Peraire J, Inza MI, Arnedo M, Gutiérrez M, Valle-Garay E, Ferrando-Martinez S, Olona M, Alba V, Sirvent JJ, Gatell JM, Vidal F. Involvement of the LPS-LPB-CD14-MD2-TLR4 inflammation pathway in HIV-1/HAART-associated lipodystrophy syndrome (HALS). *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2014; **69**: 1653-1659 [PMID: 24535275 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dku032]

23 **Egaña-Gorroño L**, Martínez E, Pérez I, Escribà T, Domingo P, Gatell JM, Arnedo M. Contribution of genetic background and antiretroviral therapy to body fat changes in antiretroviral-naive HIV-infected adults. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2014; **69**: 3076-3084 [PMID: 25185137 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dku266]

24 **Domingo P**, Mateo MG, Pruvost A, Torres F, Salazar J, Gutierrez MD, Cabeza MC, Domingo JC, Fernandez I, Villarroya F, Vidal F, Baiget M, de la Calle-Martín O. Polymorphisms of Pyrimidine Pathway Enzymes Encoding Genes and HLA-B*40:01 Carriage in Stavudine-Associated Lipodystrophy in HIV-Infected Patients. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e67035 [PMID: 23840581 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0067035]

25 **Domingo P**, Cabeza Mdel C, Torres F, Salazar J, Gutierrez Mdel M, Mateo MG, Martínez E, Domingo JC, Fernandez I, Villarroya F, Ribera E, Vidal F, Baiget M. Association of thymidylate synthase polymorphisms with acute pancreatitis and/or peripheral neuropathy in HIV-infected patients on stavudine-based therapy. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e57347 [PMID: 23468971 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0057347]

26 **Hulgan T**, Haas DW, Haines JL, Ritchie MD, Robbins GK, Shafer RW, Clifford DB, Kallianpur AR, Summar M, Canter JA. Mitochondrial haplogroups and peripheral neuropathy during antiretroviral therapy: an adult AIDS clinical trials group study. *AIDS* 2005; **19**: 1341-1349 [PMID: 16103764 DOI: 10.1038/sj.tpj.6500470]

27 **Canter JA**, Haas DW, Kallianpur AR, Ritchie MD, Robbins GK, Shafer RW, Clifford DB, Murdock DG, Hulgan T. The mitochondrial pharmacogenomics of haplogroup T: MTND2*LHON4917G and antiretroviral therapy-associated peripheral neuropathy. *Pharmacogenomics J* 2008; **8**: 71-77 [PMID: 17684475]

28 **Kallianpur AR**, Hulgan T, Canter JA, Ritchie MD, Haines JL, Robbins GK, Shafer RW, Clifford DB, Haas DW. Hemochromatosis (HFE) gene mutations and peripheral neuropathy during antiretroviral therapy. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 1503-1513 [PMID: 16847405 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000237366.56864.3c]

29 **Costarelli S**, Torti C, Gatta LB, Tinelli C, Lapadula G, Quiros-Roldan E, Izzo I, Castelnuovo F, Biasiotto G, Arosio P, Carosi G. No evidence of relation between peripheral neuropathy and presence of hemochromatosis gene mutations in HIV-1-positive patients. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2007; **46**: 255-256 [PMID: 17895769 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3180ed44d9]

30 **Felley C**, Morris MA, Wonkam A, Hirschel B, Flepp M, Wolf K, Furrer H, Battegay M, Bernasconi E, Telenti A, Frossard JL. The role of CFTR and SPINK-1 mutations in pancreatic disorders in HIV-positive patients: a case-control study. *AIDS* 2004; **18**: 1521-1527 [PMID: 15238770]

31 **Martin AM**, Nolan D, James I, Cameron P, Keller J, Moore C, Phillips E, Christiansen FT, Mallal S. Predisposition to nevirapine hypersensitivity associated with HLA-DRB1*0101 and abrogated by low CD4 T-cell counts. *AIDS* 2005; **19**: 97-99 [PMID: 15627041]

32 **Vitezica ZG**, Milpied B, Lonjou C, Borot N, Ledger TN, Lefebvre A, Hovnanian A. HLA-DRB1*01 associated with cutaneous hypersensitivity induced by nevirapine and efavirenz. *AIDS* 2008; **22**: 540-541 [PMID: 18301070 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3282f37812]

33 **Littera R**, Carcassi C, Masala A, Piano P, Serra P, Ortu F, Corso N, Casula B, La Nasa G, Contu L, Manconi PE. HLA-dependent hypersensitivity to nevirapine in Sardinian HIV patients. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 1621-1626 [PMID: 16868443 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000238408]

34 **Gatanaga H**, Yazaki H, Tanuma J, Honda M, Genka I, Teruya K, Tachikawa N, Kikuchi Y, Oka S. HLA-Cw8 primarily associated with hypersensitivity to nevirapine. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 264-265 [PMID: 17197830 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32801199d9]

35 **Haas DW**, Bartlett JA, Andersen JW, Sanne I, Wilkinson GR, Hinkle J, Rousseau F, Ingram CD, Shaw A, Lederman MM, Kim RB. Pharmacogenetics of nevirapine-associated hepatotoxicity: an Adult AIDS Clinical Trials Group collaboration. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **43**: 783-786 [PMID: 16912957 DOI: 10.1086/507097]

36 **Ritchie MD**, Haas DW, Motsinger AA, Donahue JP, Erdem H, Raffanti S, Rebeiro P, George AL, Kim RB, Haines JL, Sterling TR. Drug transporter and metabolizing enzyme gene variants and nonnucleoside reverse-transcriptase inhibitor hepatotoxicity. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **43**: 779-782 [PMID: 16912956 DOI: 10.1086/507101]

37 **Carr DF**, Chaponda M, Cornejo Castro EM, Jorgensen AL, Khoo S, Van Oosterhout JJ, Dandara C, Kampira E, Ssali F, Munderi P, Lalloo DG, Heyderman RS, Pirmohamed M. CYP2B6 c.983T> C polymorphism is associated with nevirapine hypersensitivity in Malawian and Ugandan HIV populations. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2014; **69**: 3329-3334 [PMID: 25147095 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dku315]

38 **Zanger UM**, Klein K. Pharmacogenetics of cytochrome P450

2B6 (CYP2B6): advances on polymorphisms, mechanisms, and clinical relevance. *Front Genet* 2013; **4**: 24 [PMID: 23467454 DOI: 10.3389/fgene.2013.00024]

39 **Haas DW**, Smeaton LM, Shafer RW, Robbins GK, Morse GD, Labbe L, Wilkinson GR, Clifford DB, D'Aquila RT, De Gruttola V, Pollard RB, Merigan TC, Hirsch MS, George AL, Donahue JP, Kim RB. Pharmacogenetics of long-term responses to antiretroviral regimens containing Efavirenz and/or Nelfinavir: an Adult Aids Clinical Trials Group Study. *J Infect Dis* 2005; **192**: 1931-1942 [PMID: 16267764 DOI: 10.1086/497610]

40 **Marzolini C**, Telenti A, Decosterd LA, Greub G, Biollaz J, Buclin T. Efavirenz plasma levels can predict treatment failure and central nervous system side effects in HIV-1-infected patients. *AIDS* 2001; **15**: 71-75 [PMID: 11192870 DOI: 10.1038/sj.clpt.6100072]

41 **Rotger M**, Tegude H, Colombo S, Cavassini M, Furrer H, Décosterd L, Blievernicht J, Saussele T, Günthard HF, Schwab M, Eichelbaum M, Telenti A, Zanger UM. Predictive value of known and novel alleles of CYP2B6 for efavirenz plasma concentrations in HIV-infected individuals. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **81**: 557-566 [PMID: 17235330]

42 **Wyen C**, Hendra H, Vogel M, Hoffmann C, Knechten H, Brockmeyer NH, Bogner JR, Rockstroh J, Esser S, Jaeger H, Harrer T, Mauss S, van Lunzen J, Skoetz N, Jetter A, Groneuer C, Fätkenheuer G, Khoo SH, Egan D, Back DJ, Owen A. Impact of CYP2B6 983T& gt; C polymorphism on non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor plasma concentrations in HIV-infected patients. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2008; **61**: 914-918 [PMID: 18281305 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkn029]

43 **Wang J**, Sönnerborg A, Rane A, Josephson F, Lundgren S, Ståhle L, Ingelman-Sundberg M. Identification of a novel specific CYP2B6 allele in Africans causing impaired metabolism of the HIV drug efavirenz. *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 2006; **16**: 191-198 [PMID: 16495778 DOI: 10.1097/01.fpc.0000189797.03845.90]

44 **Aurpibul L**, Chotirosniramit N, Sugandhavesa P, Kosashunhanan N, Thetket S, Supindham T, Piyamongkol W, Supparatpinyo K. Correlation of CYP2B6-516G & gt; T Polymorphism with Plasma Efavirenz Concentration and Depression in HIV-Infected Adults in Northern Thailand. *Curr HIV Res* 2012; **10**: 653-660 [PMID: 22950382 DOI: 10.2174/157016212803901338]

45 **Manosuthi W**, Sukasem C, Lueangniyomkul A, Mankatitham W, Thongyen S, Nilkamhang S, Manosuthi S, Sungkanuparph S. Impact of pharmacogenetic markers of CYP2B6, clinical factors, and drug-drug interaction on efavirenz concentrations in HIV/tuberculosis-coinfected patients. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2013; **57**: 1019-1024 [PMID: 23254426 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.02023-12]

46 **Sinxadi PZ**, Leger PD, McIlleron HM, Smith PJ, Dave JA, Levitt NS, Maartens G, Haas DW. Pharmacogenetics of plasma efavirenz exposure in HIV-infected adults and children in South Africa. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2015; **80**: 146-156 [PMID: 25611810 DOI: 10.1111/bcp.12590]

47 **Haas DW**, Kwara A, Richardson DM, Baker P, Papageorgiou I, Acosta EP, Morse GD, Court MH. Secondary metabolism pathway polymorphisms and plasma efavirenz concentrations in HIV-infected adults with CYP2B6 slow metabolizer genotypes. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2014; **69**: 2175-2182 [PMID: 24729586 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dku110]

48 **Gatanaga H**, Hayashida T, Tsuchiya K, Yoshino M, Kuwahara T, Tsukada H, Fujimoto K, Sato I, Ueda M, Horiba M, Hamaguchi M, Yamamoto M, Takata N, Kimura A, Koike T, Gejyo F, Matsushita S, Shirasaka T, Kimura S, Oka S. Successful efavirenz dose reduction in HIV type 1-infected individuals with cytochrome P450 2B6 *6 and *26. *Clin Infect Dis* 2007; **45**: 1230-1237 [PMID: 17918089 DOI: 10.1086/522175]

49 **Martín AS**, Gómez AI, García-Berrocal B, Figueroa SC, Sánchez MC, Calvo Hernández MV, Gonzalez-Buitrago JM, Valverde Merino MP, Tovar CB, Martín AF, Isidoro-García M. Dose reduction of efavirenz: an observational study describing cost-effectiveness, pharmacokinetics and pharmacogenetics. *Pharmacogenomics* 2014; **15**: 997-1006 [PMID: 24956253 DOI: 10.2217/pgs.14.48]

50 **Marzolini C**, Paus E, Buclin T, Kim RB. Polymorphisms in human MDR1 (P-glycoprotein): recent advances and clinical relevance. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **75**: 13-33 [PMID: 14749689 DOI: 10.1016/j.clpt.2003.09.012]

51 **Fellay J**, Marzolini C, Meaden ER, Back DJ, Buclin T, Chave JP, Decosterd LA, Furrer H, Opravil M, Pantaleo G, Retelska D, Ruiz L, Schinkel AH, Vernazza P, Eap CB, Telenti A. Response to antiretroviral treatment in HIV-1-infected individuals with allelic variants of the multidrug resistance transporter 1: a pharmacogenetics study. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 30-36 [PMID: 11809184 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)07276-8]

52 **Winzer R**, Langmann P, Zilly M, Tollmann F, Schubert J, Klinker H, Weissbrich B. No influence of the P-glycoprotein polymorphisms MDR1 G2677T/A and C3435T on the virological and immunological response in treatment naïve HIV-positive patients. *Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob* 2005; **4**: 3 [PMID: 15659247 DOI: 10.1186/1476-0711-4-3]

53 **Anderson PL**, Lamba J, Aquilante CL, Schuetz E, Fletcher CV. Pharmacogenetic characteristics of indinavir, zidovudine, and lamivudine therapy in HIV-infected adults: a pilot study. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2006; **42**: 441-449 [PMID: 16791115 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000225013.53568.69]

54 **Rotger M**, Taffe P, Bleiber G, Gunthard HF, Furrer H, Vernazza P, Drechsler H, Bernasconi E, Rickenbach M, Telenti A. Gilbert syndrome and the development of antiretroviral therapy-associated hyperbilirubinemia. *J Infect Dis* 2005; **192**: 1381-1386 [PMID: 16170755 DOI: 10.1086/466531]

55 **Rodríguez-Nóvoa S**, Martín-Carbonero L, Barreiro P, González-Pardo G, Jiménez-Nácher I, González-Lahoz J, Soriano V. Genetic factors influencing atazanavir plasma concentrations and the risk of severe hyperbilirubinemia. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 41-46 [PMID: 17148966 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328011d7c1]

56 **Wenning LA**, Petry AS, Kost JT, Jin B, Breidinger SA, DeLepeleire I, Carlini EJ, Young S, Rushmore T, Wagner F, Lunde NM, Bieberdorf F, Greenberg H, Stone JA, Wagner JA, Iwamoto M. Pharmacokinetics of raltegravir in individuals with UGT1A1 polymorphisms. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **85**: 623-627 [PMID: 19279563 DOI: 10.1038/clpt.2009.12]

57 **Rodríguez Nóvoa S**, Barreiro P, Rendón A, Barrios A, Corral A, Jiménez-Nacher I, González-Lahoz J, Soriano V. Plasma levels of atazanavir and the risk of hyperbilirubinemia are predicted by the 3435C--& gt; T polymorphism at the multidrug resistance gene 1. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **42**: 291-295 [PMID: 16355344 DOI: 10.1086/499056]

58 **D'Avolio A**, Carcieri C, Cusato J, Simiele M, Calcagno A, Allegra S, Sciandra M, Trentini L, Di Perri G, Bonora S. Intracellular accumulation of atazanavir/ritonavir according to plasma concentrations and OATP1B1, ABCB1 and PXR genetic polymorphisms. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2014; **69**: 3061-3066 [PMID: 24997317 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dku234]

59 **Alonso-Villaverde C**, Coll B, Gómez F, Parra S, Camps J, Joven J, Masana L. The efavirenz-induced increase in HDL-cholesterol is influenced by the multidrug resistance gene 1 C3435T polymorphis m. *AIDS* 2005; **19**: 341-342 [PMID: 15718846]

60 **Arnedo M**, Taffé P, Sahli R, Furrer H, Hirschel B, Elzi L, Weber R, Vernazza P, Bernasconi E, Darioli R, Bergmann S, Beckmann JS, Telenti A, Tarr PE. Contribution of 20 single nucleotide polymorphisms of 13 genes to dyslipidemia associated with antiretroviral therapy. *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 2007; **17**: 755-764 [PMID: 17700364 DOI: 10.1097/FPC.0b013e32814db8b7]

61 **Egaña-Gorroño L**, Martínez E, Cormand B, Escribà T, Gatell J, Arnedo M. Impact of genetic factors on dyslipidemia in HIV-infected patients starting antiretroviral therapy. *AIDS* 2013; **27**: 529-538 [PMID: 23262498 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32835d0da1]

62 **Guardiola M**, Ferré R, Salazar J, Alonso-Villaverde C, Coll B, Parra S, Masana L, Ribalta J. Protease inhibitor-associated dyslipidemia in HIV-infected patients is strongly influenced by the APOA5-1131T-& gt; C gene variation. *Clin Chem* 2006; **52**: 1914-1919 [PMID:

16887900 DOI: 10.1373/clinchem.2006.069583]

63 **Fauvel J**, Bonnet E, Ruidavets JB, Ferrières J, Toffoletti A, Massip P, Chap H, Perret B. An interaction between apo C-III variants and protease inhibitors contributes to high triglyceride/low HDL levels in treated HIV patients. *AIDS* 2001; **15**: 2397-2406 [PMID: 11740190]

64 **Rotger M**, Glass TR, Junier T, Lundgren J, Neaton JD, Poloni ES, van't Wout AB, Lubomirov R, Colombo S, Martinez R, Rauch A, Günthard HF, Neuhaus J, Wentworth D, van Manen D, Gras LA, Schuitemaker H, Albini L, Torti C, Jacobson LP, Li X, Kingsley LA, Carli F, Guaraldi G, Ford ES, Sereti I, Hadigan C, Martinez E, Arnedo M, Egaña-Gorroño L, Gatell JM, Law M, Bendall C, Petoumenos K, Rockstroh J, Wasmuth JC, Kabamba K, Delforge M, De Wit S, Berger F, Mauss S, de Paz Sierra M, Losso M, Belloso WH, Leyes M, Campins A, Mondi A, De Luca A, Bernardino I, Barriuso-Iglesias M, Torrecilla-Rodriguez A, Gonzalez-Garcia J, Arribas JR, Fanti I, Gel S, Puig J, Negredo E, Gutierrez M, Domingo P, Fischer J, Fätkenheuer G, Alonso-Villaverde C, Macken A, Woo J, McGinty T, Mallon P, Mangili A, Skinner S, Wanke CA, Reiss P, Weber R, Bucher HC, Fellay J, Telenti A, Tarr PE. Contribution of genetic background, traditional risk factors, and HIV-related factors to coronary artery disease events in HIV-positive persons. *Clin Infect Dis*2013; **57**: 112-121 [PMID: 23532479 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cit196]

P- Reviewer: Bare P, Bisen P, Cruciani M, Davis DA, Yu G
S- Editor: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.178

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 178-184
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

EDITORIAL

Is the use of IL28B genotype justified in the era of interferon-free treatments for hepatitis C?

Tatsuo Kanda, Shingo Nakamoto, Osamu Yokosuka

Tatsuo Kanda, Shingo Nakamoto, Osamu Yokosuka, Department of Gastroenterology and Nephrology, Chiba University, Graduate School of Medicine, Chiba 260-8677, Japan

Author contributions: Kanda T, Nakamoto S and Yokosuka O solely contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Tatsuo Kanda reports receiving lecture fees from Chugai Pharmaceutical, MSD, Tanabe-Mitsubishi, Ajinomoto, Bristol-Myers Squibb, Daiichi-Sankyo, Janssen Pharmaceutical and GlaxoSmithKline; Osamu Yokosuka reports receiving grant support from Chugai Pharmaceutical, Bayer, MSD, Daiichi-Sankyo, Tanabe-Mitsubishi, Bristol-Myers Squibb, Gilead Sciences and Taiho Pharmaceutical; the other authors have no conflict of interest statement.

Correspondence to: Tatsuo Kanda, MD, PhD, Associate Professor, Department of Gastroenterology and Nephrology, Chiba University, Graduate School of Medicine, 1-8-1 Inohana, Chuo-ku, Chiba 260-8670, Japan. kandat-cib@umin.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-43-2262086
Fax: +81-43-2262088

Received: April 25, 2015
Peer-review started: April 28, 2015
First decision: June 18, 2015
Revised: June 25, 2015
Accepted: July 21, 2015
Article in press: July 23, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

In 2009, several groups reported that interleukin-28B (IL28B) genotypes are associated with the response to peginterferon plus ribavirin therapy for chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection in a genome-wide association study, although the mechanism of this association is not yet well understood. However, in recent years, tremendous progress has been made in the treatment of HCV infection. In Japan, some patients infected with HCV have the IL28B major genotype, which may indicate a favorable response to interferon-including regimens; however, certain patients within this group are also interferon-intolerant or ineligible. In Japan, interferon-free 24-wk regimens of asunaprevir and daclatasvir are now available for HCV genotype 1b-infected patients who are interferon-intolerant or ineligible or previous treatment null-responders. The treatment response to interferon-free regimens appears better, regardless of IL28B genotype. Maybe other interferon-free regimens will widely be available soon. In conclusion, although some HCV-infected individuals have IL28B favorable alleles, importance of IL28B will be reduced with availability of oral interferon free regimen.

Key words: Hepatitis C virus; Interleukin-28B; Interferon; Japan; Sustained virologic response

Core tip: Genome-wide association studies have revealed that interleukin-28B (IL28B) genotypes are associated with the response to interferon therapy for chronic hepatitis C. The mechanism of this association is not yet clear. Although many hepatitis C virus (HCV)-infected individuals have IL28B favorable alleles, in the near future, HCV-infected patients in Japan may be treated with interferon-free regimens, which avoid the adverse events caused by interferon plus ribavirin therapy.

Kanda T, Nakamoto S, Yokosuka O. Is the use of IL28B genotype justified in the era of interferon-free treatments for hepatitis C? *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 178-184 Available from:

URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/178.htm
DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.178

INTRODUCTION

Chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is a major cause of end-stage liver diseases and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) in Japan and the United States[1-4]. Chronic hepatitis C is an important health problem worldwide[5]. The eradication of HCV by interferon-including treatment could lead to the following benefits[6]: (1) fibrotic regression[7-9]; (2) reduction of HCC occurrence and recurrence[10-12]; (3) reduction of other complications, including liver failure, liver-related death[13,14] and liver-unrelated death[15]; and (4) improved quality of life[15]. A sustained virologic response (SVR), which is defined as HCV RNA negativity 24 wk after completion of antiviral therapy, could have beneficial effects in HCV-infected patients. In the era of direct-acting antivirals (DAA) against HCV, regimens including interferon remain important treatments for HCV eradication[5,16-33], although interferon-free regimens should be available worldwide soon[34]. In this review, we focused the distribution of interleukin-28B (IL28B) status in Japanese patients currently infected with HCV, and their treatment.

INTERLEUKIN-28B GENOTYPES

In 2009, several groups reported that a genetic polymorphism near the *IL28B* gene, which encodes interferon-lambda-3 (IL28B genotypes), was associated with the response to peginterferon plus ribavirin therapy for chronic hepatitis C in a genome-wide association study[35-37]. The IL28B minor genotype plays a crucial role in interferon resistance[38]. The host genetic polymorphism may be useful for predicting drug response[37,39]. IL28B major or minor genotype, respectively, could predict better or poor response to interferon therapy in patients infected with HCV. An association between inosine triphosphatase (ITPA) genetic variants and treatment-induced anemia has been reported in HCV-infected patients treated with peginterferon plus ribavirin[40-42]. ITPA major genotype could predict profound anemia induced by peginterferon plus ribavirin treatment in HCV-infected patients. A genetic polymorphism of interferon-lambda-4 has also been associated with the treatment response to interferon-including regimens for chronic hepatitis C infection[43-45]. Similar to IL28B genotypes, interferon-lambda-4 major or minor genotype, respectively, could predict better or poor response to interferon therapy in HCV-infected patients.

Mechanism of the association between the IL28B genotype and treatment response

Recently, Aoki *et al*[46] reported that serum IL28B levels are increased in patients with chronic hepatitis C, regardless of the IL28B genotype. They also suggested that serum IL28B is a biomarker of the activity and fibrosis of liver disease; however serum IL28B is not correlated with the responsiveness to peginterferon plus ribavirin therapy[46]. The same group reported that IL28B genotype affects IL28B production but that the outcome of peginterferon plus ribavirin treatment depends on the amount of IL28B protein[47].

Hepatic interferon-stimulated genes (ISGs) have been significantly associated with the IL28B polymorphism, and expression level of hepatic ISG was significantly higher in patients with the minor genotype than those with the major genotype[48,49]. Lagging *et al*[50] found that the favorable IL28B variants were associated with lower baseline plasma interferon-gamma-inducible protein-10 (IP-10), although high baseline levels of IP-10 predicted a slower first phase decline in HCV RNA and poor outcome following interferon plus ribavirin therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis C[51-53]. We also reported that IL28B genotypes and hepatic STAT1-nuclear translocation are independent predictors of treatment response[54]. IL28B overexpression in HepG2 cells induces ISGs that have been associated with the progression of HCV-related pathogenesis and antiviral activities against HCV[55]. Sugiyama *et al*[56] reported that the A (TA) dinucleotide repeat rs72258881 is associated with the transcriptional activity of IL28B. A functional polymorphism (rs4803217) in the 3′ untranslated region (UTR) of IL28B has been shown to influence the AU-rich element (ARE)-mediated decay (AMD) of IL28B mRNA and binding of HCV-induced microRNAs during infection[57]. At the present, we do not know the precise mechanisms between IL28B variants and treatment response to interferon. Additional studies investigating these mechanisms are needed.

DISTRIBUTION OF IL28B GENOTYPES IN JAPANESE PATIENTS INFECTED WITH HCV

Kobayashi *et al*[58] analyzed IL28B genotypes in 1518 Japanese patients infected with HCV and reported that TT at rs8099917 and CC at rs12979860 as IL28B major genotypes were detected in 77.7% and 76.8% of patients, respectively, and that TG/GG at rs8099917 and CT/TT at rs12979860 as IL28B minor genotypes were detected in 22.3% and 23.2% of patients, respectively. Although there are some discrepancies between these two sets of genotypes, the linkage disequilibrium between two IL28B polymorphisms at rs8099917 and rs12979860 is strong in Japanese HCV patients[58]. In 2010, Akkarathamrongsin *et al*[59] found that genotyping by both rs8103142 and rs11881222 indicated that 77.9% and 22.1% of the patients had the major and minor genotypes, respectively. In 2011, we also reported that TT and TG/GG at rs8099917 as IL28B major and minor genotypes, respectively, were detected in 65.6% and 34.4% of HCV-infected patients, respectively[38]. Kurosaki *et al*[60] reported that TT and TG/

GG at rs8099917 as IL28B major and minor genotypes, respectively, were detected in 69.6% and 30.4% of HCV genotype 1-infected patients, respectively.

Thomas *et al*[61] reported that HCV clearance was observed much more frequently than expected (53%) in the CC IL28B genotypes at rs12979860, although the proportion of individuals with CT/TT IL28B genotypes at rs12979860 who cleared the virus (28%) was similar to a general population expectation, because HCV clearance occurs in approximately 30% of HCV-infected patients. Approximately 65%-70% of Japanese patients infected with HCV had the IL28B major genotype. In 2011, telaprevir, a first-generation HCV NS3/4A protease inhibitor with peginterferon plus ribavirin was introduced as treatment for HCV genotype 1 infection in Japan[22,45], and in 2013, simeprevir, a second-generation HCV NS3/4A protease inhibitor with peginterferon plus ribavirin was also made available in Japan[27,62]. We next examined the current status of IL28B genotypes in Japanese patients infected with HCV.

CURRENT DISTRIBUTION OF IL28B GENOTYPES IN JAPANESE PATIENTS INFECTED WITH HCV

The IL28B genotype is a strong predictor of treatment response in HCV-infected patients treated with interferon-including regimens. We examined the current status of the IL28B genotype rs8099917 distribution of the outpatients infected with HCV. Blood samples were obtained from 432 HCV-infected outpatients (mean age: 59.9 years, male/female: 224/208, HCV genotypes 1/2/3/unknown: 314/102/1/15) in our hospital. The IL28B genotype at rs8099917 was determined by TaqMan SNP genotyping assay using the Step One real-time PCR system (Applied Biosystems, Foster City, CA, United States). Clinical backgrounds, including the present status of HCV RNA positivity, were also examined. Written informed consent was obtained from all patients, and the study protocol was approved by the Ethics Committee of Chiba University, School of Medicine (number 508). Some patients had been included in previous studies[38,42,54,63-66].

Of the 432 patients, 301 and 131 had the IL28B major and minor genotypes, respectively (Figure 1A), and 87.7% were treated at least once with an interferon-including regimen, resulting in 184 SVR, 184 non-SVR, and 64 untreated/others, respectively. Of the 314 patients with HCV genotype 1, 218 and 96 had the IL28B major and minor genotypes, respectively (Figure 1B), and 122, 143, and 49 patients had SVR, non-SVR/untreated, or other, respectively. Of the 143 patients with HCV genotype 1 with non-SVR or untreated, 85 and 58 had the IL28B major and minor genotypes, respectively, and 22 (25.9%) of the 85 patients with HCV genotype 1 and the IL28B major type are now interferon-intolerant or ineligible. Of the 118 patients with HCV genotype non-1, 83 and 35 had the IL28B major and minor genotypes, respectively, and 62, 41, and 14 patients had SVR, non-SVR/untreated, or other, respectively. In the 41 patients with HCV genotype non-1 with non-SVR or untreated, 27 and 14 had the IL28B major and minor genotypes, respectively (Figure 1C), and 10 (37%) of the 27 patients with HCV genotype 1 and the IL28B major type are now interferon-intolerant or ineligible. The distribution of IL28B genotypes is not significantly different between HCV genotype 1 and non-1 (P = 0.947; Figure 1B and C).

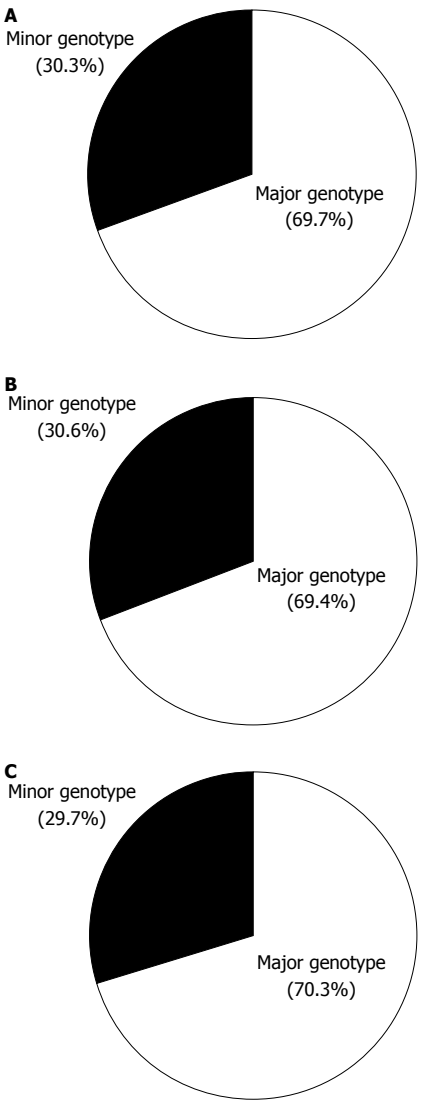


Figure 1 Distribution of interleukin-28B genotypes in Japanese patients infected with hepatitis C virus between February 2010 and April 2014. (A) Total patients (n = 432), (B) HCV genotype 1 patients (n = 314), and (C) HCV non-genotype 1 patients (n = 118). The white and black parts indicate the IL28B major and minor genotypes, respectively. IL28B: Interleukin-28B; HCV: Hepatitis C virus.

Thus, the patients infected with HCV genotypes 1 and non-1, who had IL28B minor genotypes in 40.6% (58/143) and 34.1% (14/41), respectively, should be treated. Further, some patients who had the IL28B major genotype are interferon-intolerant or ineligible. Regarding the current status of IL28B genotype rs8099917 distribution, we re-confirmed that the HCV-infected population in Japan should be treated with interferon-free regimens,

although interferon-including regimens may be effective in certain patients. The rs8099917 TT genotype may be significantly independently predictive of rapid virologic response, which is the single best predictor of SVR, in Asian HCV genotype patients[67].

CONCLUSION

In Japan, interferon-free 24-wk regimens of asunaprevir, a HCV NS3/4A inhibitor, and daclatasvir, a HCV NS5A inhibitor, can now be used for HCV genotype 1b-infected patients who are interferon-intolerant or ineligible, or previous-treatment null-responders[68-70]. In the near future, interferon-free 12-wk regimens of sofosbuvir plus ribavirin for HCV genotype 2-infected patients will be available[71]. Interferon-free 12-wk regimens of sofosbuvir, a HCV NS5B nucleotide polymerase inhibitor, and ledipasvir, a HCV NS5A inhibitor, for HCV genotype 1-infected patients will also be available[72]. The response to the treatment with interferon-free regimens appears to have no association with IL28B genotypes. In conclusion, although some HCV-infected individuals have IL28B favorable alleles, importance of IL28B will be reduced with availability of oral interferon free regimen.

REFERENCES

1 **Saito I**, Miyamura T, Ohbayashi A, Harada H, Katayama T, Kikuchi S, Watanabe Y, Koi S, Onji M, Ohta Y. Hepatitis C virus infection is associated with the development of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1990; **87**: 6547-6549 [PMID: 2168552]

2 **Akamatsu N**, Sugawara Y, Kokudo N, Eguchi S, Fujiwara T, Ohdan H, Nagano H, Taketomi A, Kitagawa Y, Shimada M, Ku Y, Yanaga K, Shirabe K, Ikegami T, Mizokami M, Takeuchi M, Maehara Y. Outcomes of living donor liver transplantation for hepatitis C virus-positive recipients in Japan: results of a nationwide survey. *Transpl Int* 2014; **27**: 767-774 [PMID: 24684710 DOI: 10.1111/tri.12329]

3 **Di Bisceglie AM**. Hepatitis C and hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 1997; **26**: 34S-38S [PMID: 9305661]

4 **Kim WR**, Terrault NA, Pedersen RA, Therneau TM, Edwards E, Hindman AA, Brosgart CL. Trends in waiting list registration for liver transplantation for viral hepatitis in the United States. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **137**: 1680-1686 [PMID: 19632234 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.07.047]

5 **Kanda T**, Imazeki F, Yokosuka O. New antiviral therapies for chronic hepatitis C. *Hepatol Int* 2010; **4**: 548-561 [PMID: 21063477 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-010-9193-3]

6 **Omata M**, Kanda T, Yu ML, Yokosuka O, Lim SG, Jafri W, Tateishi R, S Hamid S, Chuang WL, Chutaputti A, Wei L, Sollano J, Sarin SK, Kao JH, McCaughan GW. APASL consensus statements and management algorithms for hepatitis C virus infection. *Hepatol Int* 2012; **6**: 409-435 [DOI: 10.1007/s12072-012-9342-y]

7 **Shiratori Y**, Imazeki F, Moriyama M, Yano M, Arakawa Y, Yokosuka O, Kuroki T, Nishiguchi S, Sata M, Yamada G, Fujiyama S, Yoshida H, Omata M. Histologic improvement of fibrosis in patients with hepatitis C who have sustained response to interferon therapy. *Ann Intern Med* 2000; **132**: 517-524 [PMID: 10744587 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-132-7-200004040-00036]

8 **Huang JF**, Yu ML, Lee CM, Dai CY, Hou NJ, Hsieh MY, Wang JH, Lu SN, Sheen IS, Lin SM, Chuang WL, Liaw YF. Sustained virological response to interferon reduces cirrhosis in chronic hepatitis C: a 1,386-patient study from Taiwan. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **25**: 1029-1037 [PMID: 17439503 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2007.03297.x]

9 **Maruoka D**, Imazeki F, Arai M, Kanda T, Fujiwara K, Yokosuka O. Longitudinal changes of the laboratory data of chronic hepatitis C patients with sustained virological response on long-term follow-up. *J Viral Hepat* 2012; **19**: e97-104 [PMID: 22239532 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2011.01512.x]

10 **Yoshida H**, Shiratori Y, Moriyama M, Arakawa Y, Ide T, Sata M, Inoue O, Yano M, Tanaka M, Fujiyama S, Nishiguchi S, Kuroki T, Imazeki F, Yokosuka O, Kinoyama S, Yamada G, Omata M. Interferon therapy reduces the risk for hepatocellular carcinoma: national surveillance program of cirrhotic and noncirrhotic patients with chronic hepatitis C in Japan. IHIT Study Group. Inhibition of Hepatocarcinogenesis by Interferon Therapy. *Ann Intern Med* 1999; **131**: 174-181 [PMID: 10428733 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-131-3-199908030-00003]

11 **Shiratori Y**, Shiina S, Teratani T, Imamura M, Obi S, Sato S, Koike Y, Yoshida H, Omata M. Interferon therapy after tumor ablation improves prognosis in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma associated with hepatitis C virus. *Ann Intern Med* 2003; **138**: 299-306 [PMID: 12585827 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-138-4-200302180-00008]

12 **Yu ML**, Lin SM, Chuang WL, Dai CY, Wang JH, Lu SN, Sheen IS, Chang WY, Lee CM, Liaw YF. A sustained virological response to interferon or interferon/ribavirin reduces hepatocellular carcinoma and improves survival in chronic hepatitis C: a nationwide, multicentre study in Taiwan. *Antivir Ther* 2006; **11**: 985-994 [PMID: 17302368]

13 **Shiratori Y**, Ito Y, Yokosuka O, Imazeki F, Nakata R, Tanaka N, Arakawa Y, Hashimoto E, Hirota K, Yoshida H, Ohashi Y, Omata M. Antiviral therapy for cirrhotic hepatitis C: association with reduced hepatocellular carcinoma development and improved survival. *Ann Intern Med* 2005; **142**: 105-114 [PMID: 15657158 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-142-2-200501180-00009]

14 **Deuffic-Burban S**, Deltenre P, Louvet A, Canva V, Dharancy S, Hollebecque A, Boitard J, Henrion J, Yazdanpanah Y, Mathurin P. Impact of viral eradication on mortality related to hepatitis C: a modeling approach in France. *J Hepatol* 2008; **49**: 175-183 [PMID: 18538441 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2008.04.012]

15 **Yoshida H**, Arakawa Y, Sata M, Nishiguchi S, Yano M, Fujiyama S, Yamada G, Yokosuka O, Shiratori Y, Omata M. Interferon therapy prolonged life expectancy among chronic hepatitis C patients. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 483-491 [PMID: 12145802 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2002.34785]

16 **McHutchison JG**, Everson GT, Gordon SC, Jacobson IM, Sulkowski M, Kauffman R, McNair L, Alam J, Muir AJ. Telaprevir with peginterferon and ribavirin for chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 1827-1838 [PMID: 19403902 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0806104]

17 **Hézode C**, Forestier N, Dusheiko G, Ferenci P, Pol S, Goeser T, Bronowicki JP, Bourlière M, Gharakhanian S, Bengtsson L, McNair L, George S, Kieffer T, Kwong A, Kauffman RS, Alam J, Pawlotsky JM, Zeuzem S. Telaprevir and peginterferon with or without ribavirin for chronic HCV infection. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 1839-1850 [PMID: 19403903 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0807650]

18 **McHutchison JG**, Manns MP, Muir AJ, Terrault NA, Jacobson IM, Afdhal NH, Heathcote EJ, Zeuzem S, Reesink HW, Garg J, Bsharat M, George S, Kauffman RS, Adda N, Di Bisceglie AM. Telaprevir for previously treated chronic HCV infection. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 1292-1303 [PMID: 20375406 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0908014]

19 **Jacobson IM**, McHutchison JG, Dusheiko G, Di Bisceglie AM, Reddy KR, Bzowej NH, Marcellin P, Muir AJ, Ferenci P, Flisiak R, George J, Rizzetto M, Shouval D, Sola R, Terg RA, Yoshida EM, Adda N, Bengtsson L, Sankoh AJ, Kieffer TL, George S, Kauffman RS, Zeuzem S. Telaprevir for previously untreated chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 2405-2416 [PMID: 21696307 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1012912]

20 **Zeuzem S**, Andreone P, Pol S, Lawitz E, Diago M, Roberts S, Focaccia R, Younossi Z, Foster GR, Horban A, Ferenci P, Nevens F, Müllhaupt B, Pockros P, Terg R, Shouval D, van Hoek B, Weiland O, Van Heeswijk R, De Meyer S, Luo D, Boogaerts G, Polo R, Picchio G, Beumont M. Telaprevir for retreatment of HCV infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 2417-2428 [PMID: 21696308 DOI: 10.1056/

NEJMoa1013086]

21 **Sherman KE**, Flamm SL, Afdhal NH, Nelson DR, Sulkowski MS, Everson GT, Fried MW, Adler M, Reesink HW, Martin M, Sankoh AJ, Adda N, Kauffman RS, George S, Wright CI, Poordad F. Response-guided telaprevir combination treatment for hepatitis C virus infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 1014-1024 [PMID: 21916639 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1014463]

22 **Kumada H**, Toyota J, Okanoue T, Chayama K, Tsubouchi H, Hayashi N. Telaprevir with peginterferon and ribavirin for treatment-naive patients chronically infected with HCV of genotype 1 in Japan. *J Hepatol* 2012; **56**: 78-84 [PMID: 21827730 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2011.07.016]

23 **Poordad F**, McCone J, Bacon BR, Bruno S, Manns MP, Sulkowski MS, Jacobson IM, Reddy KR, Goodman ZD, Boparai N, DiNubile MJ, Sniukiene V, Brass CA, Albrecht JK, Bronowicki JP. Boceprevir for untreated chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 1195-1206 [PMID: 21449783 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1010494]

24 **Bacon BR**, Gordon SC, Lawitz E, Marcellin P, Vierling JM, Zeuzem S, Poordad F, Goodman ZD, Sings HL, Boparai N, Burroughs M, Brass CA, Albrecht JK, Esteban R. Boceprevir for previously treated chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 1207-1217 [PMID: 21449784 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1009482]

25 **Manns M**, Marcellin P, Poordad F, de Araujo ES, Buti M, Horsmans Y, Janczewska E, Villamil F, Scott J, Peeters M, Lenz O, Ouwerkerk-Mahadevan S, De La Rosa G, Kalmeijer R, Sinha R, Beumont-Mauviel M. Simeprevir with pegylated interferon alfa 2a or 2b plus ribavirin in treatment-naive patients with chronic hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection (QUEST-2): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 3 trial. *Lancet* 2014; **384**: 414-426 [PMID: 24907224 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)60538-9]

26 **Jacobson IM**, Dore GJ, Foster GR, Fried MW, Radu M, Rafalsky VV, Moroz L, Craxi A, Peeters M, Lenz O, Ouwerkerk-Mahadevan S, De La Rosa G, Kalmeijer R, Scott J, Sinha R, Beumont-Mauviel M. Simeprevir with pegylated interferon alfa 2a plus ribavirin in treatment-naive patients with chronic hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection (QUEST-1): a phase 3, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2014; **384**: 403-413 [PMID: 24907225 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)60494-3]

27 **Hayashi N**, Izumi N, Kumada H, Okanoue T, Tsubouchi H, Yatsuhashi H, Kato M, Ki R, Komada Y, Seto C, Goto S. Simeprevir with peginterferon/ribavirin for treatment-naïve hepatitis C genotype 1 patients in Japan: CONCERTO-1, a phase III trial. *J Hepatol* 2014; **61**: 219-227 [PMID: 24727123 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.04.004]

28 **Reddy KR**, Zeuzem S, Zoulim F, Weiland O, Horban A, Stanciu C, Villamil FG, Andreone P, George J, Dammers E, Fu M, Kurland D, Lenz O, Ouwerkerk-Mahadevan S, Verbinnen T, Scott J, Jessner W. Simeprevir versus telaprevir with peginterferon and ribavirin in previous null or partial responders with chronic hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection (ATTAIN): a randomised, double-blind, non-inferiority phase 3 trial. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2015; **15**: 27-35 [PMID: 25482330 DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(14)71002-3]

29 **McPhee F**, Hernandez D, Zhou N, Yu F, Ueland J, Monikowski A, Chayama K, Toyota J, Izumi N, Yokosuka O, Kawada N, Osaki Y, Hughes EA, Watanabe H, Ishikawa H, Kumada H. Virological escape in HCV genotype-1-infected patients receiving daclatasvir plus ribavirin and peginterferon alfa-2a or alfa-2b. *Antivir Ther* 2014; **19**: 479-490 [PMID: 24448487 DOI: 10.3851/IMP2729]

30 **Izumi N**, Yokosuka O, Kawada N, Osaki Y, Yamamoto K, Sata M, Ishikawa H, Ueki T, Hu W, McPhee F, Hughes EA, Kumada H. Daclatasvir combined with peginterferon alfa-2a and ribavirin in Japanese patients infected with hepatitis C genotype 1. *Antivir Ther* 2014; **19**: 501-510 [PMID: 24451151 DOI: 10.3851/IMP2731]

31 **Zeuzem S**, Soriano V, Asselah T, Bronowicki JP, Lohse AW, Müllhaupt B, Schuchmann M, Bourlière M, Buti M, Roberts SK, Gane EJ, Stern JO, Vinisko R, Kukolj G, Gallivan JP, Böcher WO, Mensa FJ. Faldaprevir and deleobuvir for HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **369**: 630-639 [PMID: 23944300 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1213557]

32 **Ferenci P**, Asselah T, Foster GR, Zeuzem S, Sarrazin C, Moreno C, Ouzan D, Maevskaya M, Calinas F, Morano LE, Crespo J, Dufour JF, Bourlière M, Agarwal K, Forton D, Schuchmann M, Zehnter E, Nishiguchi S, Omata M, Kukolj G, Datsenko Y, Garcia M, Scherer J, Quinson AM, Stern JO. STARTVerso1: A randomized trial of faldaprevir plus pegylated interferon/ribavirin for chronic HCV genotype-1 infection. *J Hepatol* 2015; **62**: 1246-1255 [PMID: 25559324 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.12.024]

33 **Rodriguez-Torres M**, Stoehr A, Gane EJ, Serfaty L, Lawitz E, Zhou A, Bourque M, Bhanja S, Strizki J, Barnard RJ, Hwang PM, DiNubile MJ, Mobashery N. Combination of vaniprevir with peginterferon and ribavirin significantly increases the rate of SVR in treatment-experienced patients with chronic HCV genotype 1 infection and cirrhosis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **12**: 1029-37.e5 [PMID: 24120953 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2013.09.067]

34 **Kanda T**, Yokosuka O, Omata M. Treatment of hepatitis C virus infection in the future. *Clin Transl Med* 2013; **2**: 9 [PMID: 23577631 DOI: 10.1186/2001-1326-2-9]

35 **Tanaka Y**, Nishida N, Sugiyama M, Kurosaki M, Matsuura K, Sakamoto N, Nakagawa M, Korenaga M, Hino K, Hige S, Ito Y, Mita E, Tanaka E, Mochida S, Murawaki Y, Honda M, Sakai A, Hiasa Y, Nishiguchi S, Koike A, Sakaida I, Imamura M, Ito K, Yano K, Masaki N, Sugauchi F, Izumi N, Tokunaga K, Mizokami M. Genome-wide association of IL28B with response to pegylated interferon-alpha and ribavirin therapy for chronic hepatitis C. *Nat Genet* 2009; **41**: 1105-1109 [PMID: 19749757 DOI: 10.1038/ng.449]

36 **Ge D**, Fellay J, Thompson AJ, Simon JS, Shianna KV, Urban TJ, Heinzen EL, Qiu P, Bertelsen AH, Muir AJ, Sulkowski M, McHutchison JG, Goldstein DB. Genetic variation in IL28B predicts hepatitis C treatment-induced viral clearance. *Nature* 2009; **461**: 399-401 [PMID: 19684573 DOI: 10.1038/nature08309]

37 **Suppiah V**, Moldovan M, Ahlenstiel G, Berg T, Weltman M, Abate ML, Bassendine M, Spengler U, Dore GJ, Powell E, Riordan S, Sheridan D, Smedile A, Fragomeli V, Müller T, Bahlo M, Stewart GJ, Booth DR, George J. IL28B is associated with response to chronic hepatitis C interferon-alpha and ribavirin therapy. *Nat Genet* 2009; **41**: 1100-1104 [PMID: 19749758 DOI: 10.1038/ng.447]

38 **Nakamoto S**, Kanda T, Imazeki F, Wu S, Arai M, Fujiwara K, Yokosuka O. Simple assay based on restriction fragment length polymorphism associated with IL28B in chronic hepatitis C patients. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2011; **46**: 955-961 [PMID: 21529139 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2011.574731]

39 **Evans WE**, Relling MV. Pharmacogenomics: translating functional genomics into rational therapeutics. *Science* 1999; **286**: 487-491 [PMID: 10521338]

40 **Fellay J**, Thompson AJ, Ge D, Gumbs CE, Urban TJ, Shianna KV, Little LD, Qiu P, Bertelsen AH, Watson M, Warner A, Muir AJ, Brass C, Albrecht J, Sulkowski M, McHutchison JG, Goldstein DB. ITPA gene variants protect against anaemia in patients treated for chronic hepatitis C. *Nature* 2010; **464**: 405-408 [PMID: 20173735 DOI: 10.1038/nature08825]

41 **Thompson AJ**, Fellay J, Patel K, Tillmann HL, Naggie S, Ge D, Urban TJ, Shianna KV, Muir AJ, Fried MW, Afdhal NH, Goldstein DB, McHutchison JG. Variants in the ITPA gene protect against ribavirin-induced hemolytic anemia and decrease the need for ribavirin dose reduction. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **139**: 1181-1189 [PMID: 20547162 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.06.016]

42 **Miyamura T**, Kanda T, Nakamoto S, Wu S, Jiang X, Arai M, Fujiwara K, Imazeki F, Yokosuka O. Roles of ITPA and IL28B genotypes in chronic hepatitis C patients treated with peginterferon plus ribavirin. *Viruses* 2012; **4**: 1264-1278 [PMID: 23012624 DOI: 10.3390/v4081264]

43 **Prokunina-Olsson L**, Muchmore B, Tang W, Pfeiffer RM, Park H, Dickensheets H, Hergott D, Porter-Gill P, Mumy A, Kohaar I, Chen S, Brand N, Tarway M, Liu L, Sheikh F, Astemborski J, Bonkovsky HL, Edlin BR, Howell CD, Morgan TR, Thomas DL, Rehermann B, Donnelly RP, O'Brien TR. A variant upstream of IFNL3 (IL28B) creating a new interferon gene IFNL4 is associated with impaired clearance of hepatitis C virus. *Nat Genet* 2013; **45**: 164-171 [PMID: 23291588 DOI: 10.1038/ng.2521]

44 **Bibert S**, Roger T, Calandra T, Bochud M, Cerny A, Semmo N, Duong FH, Gerlach T, Malinverni R, Moradpour D, Negro F, Müllhaupt B, Bochud PY. IL28B expression depends on a novel TT/-G polymorphism which improves HCV clearance prediction. *J Exp Med* 2013; **210**: 1109-1116 [PMID: 23712427 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20130012]

45 **Miyamura T**, Kanda T, Nakamoto S, Arai M, Nakamura M, Wu S, Jiang X, Sasaki R, Haga Y, Yasui S, Ooka Y, Chiba T, Imazeki F, Mikami S, Yokosuka O. IFNL4 ss469415590 Variant Is Associated with Treatment Response in Japanese HCV Genotype 1 Infected Individuals Treated with IFN-Including Regimens. *Int J Hepatol* 2014; **2014**: 723868 [PMID: 25548683 DOI: 10.1155/2014/723868]

46 **Aoki Y**, Sugiyama M, Murata K, Yoshio S, Kurosaki M, Hashimoto S, Yatsuhashi H, Nomura H, Kang JH, Takeda T, Naito S, Kimura T, Yamagiwa Y, Korenaga M, Imamura M, Masaki N, Izumi N, Kage M, Mizokami M, Kanto T. Association of serum IFN-λ3 with inflammatory and fibrosis markers in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *J Gastroenterol* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25501286]

47 **Murata K**, Sugiyama M, Kimura T, Yoshio S, Kanto T, Kirikae I, Saito H, Aoki Y, Hiramine S, Matsui T, Ito K, Korenaga M, Imamura M, Masaki N, Mizokami M. Ex vivo induction of IFN-λ3 by a TLR7 agonist determines response to Peg-IFN/ribavirin therapy in chronic hepatitis C patients. *J Gastroenterol* 2014; **49**: 126-137 [PMID: 23591768 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-013-0814-1]

48 **Honda M**, Sakai A, Yamashita T, Nakamoto Y, Mizukoshi E, Sakai Y, Yamashita T, Nakamura M, Shirasaki T, Horimoto K, Tanaka Y, Tokunaga K, Mizokami M, Kaneko S. Hepatic ISG expression is associated with genetic variation in interleukin 28B and the outcome of IFN therapy for chronic hepatitis C. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **139**: 499-509 [PMID: 20434452 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.04.049]

49 **Urban TJ**, Thompson AJ, Bradrick SS, Fellay J, Schuppan D, Cronin KD, Hong L, McKenzie A, Patel K, Shianna KV, McHutchison JG, Goldstein DB, Afdhal N. IL28B genotype is associated with differential expression of intrahepatic interferon-stimulated genes in patients with chronic hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2010; **52**: 1888-1896 [PMID: 20931559 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23912]

50 **Lagging M**, Askarieh G, Negro F, Bibert S, Söderholm J, Westin J, Lindh M, Romero A, Missale G, Ferrari C, Neumann AU, Pawlotsky JM, Haagmans BL, Zeuzem S, Bochud PY, Hellstrand K. Response prediction in chronic hepatitis C by assessment of IP-10 and IL28B-related single nucleotide polymorphisms. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e17232 [PMID: 21390311 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0017232]

51 **Romero AI**, Lagging M, Westin J, Dhillon AP, Dustin LB, Pawlotsky JM, Neumann AU, Ferrari C, Missale G, Haagmans BL, Schalm SW, Zeuzem S, Negro F, Verheij-Hart E, Hellstrand K. Interferon (IFN)-gamma-inducible protein-10: association with histological results, viral kinetics, and outcome during treatment with pegylated IFN-alpha 2a and ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *J Infect Dis* 2006; **194**: 895-903 [PMID: 16960776]

52 **Lagging M**, Romero AI, Westin J, Norkrans G, Dhillon AP, Pawlotsky JM, Zeuzem S, von Wagner M, Negro F, Schalm SW, Haagmans BL, Ferrari C, Missale G, Neumann AU, Verheij-Hart E, Hellstrand K. IP-10 predicts viral response and therapeutic outcome in difficult-to-treat patients with HCV genotype 1 infection. *Hepatology* 2006; **44**: 1617-1625 [PMID: 17133471]

53 **Askarieh G**, Alsiö A, Pugnale P, Negro F, Ferrari C, Neumann AU, Pawlotsky JM, Schalm SW, Zeuzem S, Norkrans G, Westin J, Söderholm J, Hellstrand K, Lagging M. Systemic and intrahepatic interferon-gamma-inducible protein 10 kDa predicts the first-phase decline in hepatitis C virus RNA and overall viral response to therapy in chronic hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2010; **51**: 1523-1530 [PMID: 20186843 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23509]

54 **Miyamura T**, Kanda T, Nakamoto S, Wu S, Fujiwara K, Imazeki F, Yokosuka O. Hepatic STAT1-nuclear translocation and interleukin 28B polymorphisms predict treatment outcomes in hepatitis C virus genotype 1-infected patients. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e28617 [PMID: 22174846 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0028617]

55 **Kanda T**, Jiang X, Nakamoto S, Nakamura M, Miyamura T, Wu S, Yokosuka O. Different effects of three interferons L on Toll-like receptor-related gene expression in HepG2 cells. *Cytokine* 2013; **64**: 577-583 [PMID: 24041672 DOI: 10.1016/j.cyto.2013.08.010]

56 **Sugiyama M**, Tanaka Y, Wakita T, Nakanishi M, Mizokami M. Genetic variation of the IL-28B promoter affecting gene expression. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e26620 [PMID: 22046316 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0026620]

57 **McFarland AP**, Horner SM, Jarret A, Joslyn RC, Bindewald E, Shapiro BA, Delker DA, Hagedorn CH, Carrington M, Gale M, Savan R. The favorable IFNL3 genotype escapes mRNA decay mediated by AU-rich elements and hepatitis C virus-induced microRNAs. *Nat Immunol* 2014; **15**: 72-79 [PMID: 24241692 DOI: 10.1038/ni.2758]

58 **Kobayashi M**, Suzuki F, Akuta N, Sezaki H, Suzuki Y, Hosaka T, Kawamura Y, Kobayashi M, Saitoh S, Arase Y, Ikeda K, Chayama K, Miyakawa Y, Kumada H. Association of two polymorphisms of the IL28B gene with viral factors and treatment response in 1,518 patients infected with hepatitis C virus. *J Gastroenterol* 2012; **47**: 596-605 [PMID: 22438096 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-012-0531-1]

59 **Akkarathamrongsin S**, Sugiyama M, Matsuura K, Kurbanov F, Poovorawan Y, Tanaka Y, Mizokami M. High sensitivity assay using serum sample for IL28B genotyping to predict treatment response in chronic hepatitis C patients. *Hepatol Res* 2010; **40**: 956-962 [PMID: 20887330 DOI: 10.1111/j.1872-034X.2010.00702.x]

60 **Kurosaki M**, Tanaka Y, Nishida N, Sakamoto N, Enomoto N, Honda M, Sugiyama M, Matsuura K, Sugauchi F, Asahina Y, Nakagawa M, Watanabe M, Sakamoto M, Maekawa S, Sakai A, Kaneko S, Ito K, Masaki N, Tokunaga K, Izumi N, Mizokami M. Pre-treatment prediction of response to pegylated-interferon plus ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C using genetic polymorphism in IL28B and viral factors. *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: 439-448 [PMID: 21129805 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.07.037]

61 **Thomas DL**, Thio CL, Martin MP, Qi Y, Ge D, O'Huigin C, Kidd J, Kidd K, Khakoo SI, Alexander G, Goedert JJ, Kirk GD, Donfield SM, Rosen HR, Tobler LH, Busch MP, McHutchison JG, Goldstein DB, Carrington M. Genetic variation in IL28B and spontaneous clearance of hepatitis C virus. *Nature* 2009; **461**: 798-801 [PMID: 19759533 DOI: 10.1038/nature08463]

62 **Kanda T**, Nakamoto S, Wu S, Yokosuka O. New treatments for genotype 1 chronic hepatitis C - focus on simeprevir. *Ther Clin Risk Manag* 2014; **10**: 387-394 [PMID: 24920913 DOI: 10.2147/TCRM.S50170]

63 **Nakamura M**, Kanda T, Miyamura T, Wu S, Nakamoto S, Yokosuka O. Alanine aminotransferase elevation during peginterferon alpha-2a or alpha-2b plus ribavirin treatment. *Int J Med Sci* 2013; **10**: 1015-1021 [PMID: 23801888 DOI: 10.7150/ijms.6402]

64 **Miyamura T**, Kanda T, Nakamura M, Jiang X, Wu S, Nakamoto S, Mikami S, Takada N, Imazeki F, Yokosuka O. IL-28B polymorphisms and treatment response in hepatitis C virus patients with persistently normal alanine aminotransferase. *World J Hepatol* 2013; **5**: 635-641 [PMID: 24303092 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v5.i11.635]

65 **Kanda T**, Nakamoto S, Nishino T, Takada N, Tsubota A, Kato K, Miyamura T, Maruoka D, Wu S, Tanaka T, Arai M, Mikami S, Fujiwara K, Imazeki F, Yokosuka O. Peginterferon Alfa-2a plus ribavirin in Japanese patients infected with hepatitis C virus genotype 2 who failed previous interferon therapy. *Int J Med Sci* 2013; **10**: 43-49 [PMID: 23289004 DOI: 10.7150/ijms.5358]

66 **Kanda T**, Nakamoto S, Wu S, Yokosuka O. Role of IL28B genotype in older hepatitis C virus-infected patients. *World J Immunol* 2013; **3**: 54-61 [DOI: 10.5411/wji.v3.i3.54]

67 **Yu ML**, Huang CF, Huang JF, Chang NC, Yang JF, Lin ZY, Chen SC, Hsieh MY, Wang LY, Chang WY, Li YN, Wu MS, Dai CY, Juo SH, Chuang WL. Role of interleukin-28B polymorphisms in the treatment of hepatitis C virus genotype 2 infection in Asian patients. *Hepatology* 2011; **53**: 7-13 [PMID: 21254157 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23976]

68 **Chayama K**, Takahashi S, Toyota J, Karino Y, Ikeda K, Ishikawa H, Watanabe H, McPhee F, Hughes E, Kumada H. Dual therapy with the nonstructural protein 5A inhibitor, daclatasvir, and the nonstructural protein 3 protease inhibitor, asunaprevir, in hepatitis

C virus genotype 1b-infected null responders. *Hepatology* 2012; **55**: 742-748 [PMID: 21987462 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24724]

69 **Lok AS**, Gardiner DF, Lawitz E, Martorell C, Everson GT, Ghalib R, Reindollar R, Rustgi V, McPhee F, Wind-Rotolo M, Persson A, Zhu K, Dimitrova DI, Eley T, Guo T, Grasela DM, Pasquinelli C. Preliminary study of two antiviral agents for hepatitis C genotype 1. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 216-224 [PMID: 22256805 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1104430]

70 **Kumada H**, Suzuki Y, Ikeda K, Toyota J, Karino Y, Chayama K, Kawakami Y, Ido A, Yamamoto K, Takaguchi K, Izumi N, Koike K, Takehara T, Kawada N, Sata M, Miyagoshi H, Eley T, McPhee F, Damokosh A, Ishikawa H, Hughes E. Daclatasvir plus asunaprevir for chronic HCV genotype 1b infection. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 2083-2091 [PMID: 24604476 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27113]

71 **Omata M**, Nishiguchi S, Ueno Y, Mochizuki H, Izumi N, Ikeda F, Toyoda H, Yokosuka O, Nirei K, Genda T, Umemura T, Takehara T, Sakamoto N, Nishigaki Y, Nakane K, Toda N, Ide T, Yanase M, Hino K, Gao B, Garrison KL, Dvory-Sobol H, Ishizaki A, Omote M, Brainard D, Knox S, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Yatsuhashi H, Mizokami M. Sofosbuvir plus ribavirin in Japanese patients with chronic genotype 2 HCV infection: an open-label, phase 3 trial. *J Viral Hepat* 2014; **21**: 762-768 [PMID: 25196837 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12312]

72 **Mizokami M**, Yokosuka O, Takehara T, Sakamoto N, Korenaga M, Mochizuki H, Nakane K, Enomoto H, Ikeda F, Yanase M, Toyoda H, Genda T, Umemura T, Yatsuhashi H, Ide T, Toda N, Nirei K, Ueno Y, Nishigaki Y, Betular J, Gao B, Ishizaki A, Omote M, Mo H, Garrison K, Pang PS, Knox SJ, Symonds WT, McHutchison JG, Izumi N, Omata M. Ledipasvir and sofosbuvir fixed-dose combination with and without ribavirin for 12 weeks in treatment-naive and previously treated Japanese patients with genotype 1 hepatitis C: an open-label, randomised, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2015; **15**: 645-653 [PMID: 25863559 DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(15)70099-X]

P- Reviewer: Frider B, Quarleri J, Tetsuya T **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.185

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 185-187
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

EDITORIAL

Middle-East respiratory syndrome coronavirus: Is it worth a world panic?

Ahmed S Abdel-Moneim

Ahmed S Abdel-Moneim, Microbiology Department, Virology Division, College of Medicine, Taif University, Al-Taif 21944, Makkah Province, Saudi Arabia

Ahmed S Abdel-Moneim, Virology Department, Faculty of Veterinary Medicine, Beni-Suef University, Beni-Suef 62511, Egypt

Author contributions: Abdel-Moneim AS solely contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The author does not have any conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: Ahmed S Abdel-Moneim, PhD, Professor, Microbiology Department, Virology Division, College of Medicine, Taif University, Airport Rd, Al Huwaya, Al-Taif 21944, Makkah Province, Saudi Arabia. asa@bsu.edu.eg
Telephone: +966-59-9107854
Fax: +966-12-7250528

Received: February 6, 2015
Peer-review started: February 8, 2015
First decision: April 10, 2015
Revised: April 18, 2015
Accepted: May 5, 2015
Article in press: May 6, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

In 2012 Middle-East respiratory syndrome coronavirus (MERS-CoV) was evolved in the Arabian Peninsula. Tremendous and successful efforts have been conducted to discover the genome structure, epidemiology, clinical signs, pathogenesis, diagnosis and antiviral therapy. *Taphozous perforatus* bats are the incriminated reservoir host and camels are the currently confirmed animal linker. The virus resulted in less than 1000 infected cases and 355 deaths. The case fatality rate of the MERS-CoV is high, however, many survivors of MERS-CoV infection showed inapparent infections and, in several cases, multiple co-infecting agents did exist. Although MERS-CoV appears to be a dangerous disease, it is argued here that a full assessment of current knowledge about the disease does not suggest that it is a truly scary killer.

Key words: Coronavirus; Camels; Disease threat to humans; Middle-East respiratory syndrome coronavirus; Mortality rate

Core tip: Middle-East respiratory syndrome coronavirus (MERS-CoV) emerged as a novel human coronavirus in 2012. Although it induces a high level of case fatality, fatal infections were recorded mainly in immune compromised patients and co-infections were frequently recorded. Camels are the currently known natural animal host and are susceptible to mild non-fatal infections. There is a growing evidence that the virus has been circulating in camels for decades in the Middle East, Africa and possibly other areas where camel herds are present. The fact that the virus has existed for decades, together with the absence of large-scale human mortalities from unknown respiratory infections, gives a first indication that MERS-CoV is not a particularly dangerous virus.

Abdel-Moneim AS. Middle-East respiratory syndrome coronavirus: Is it worth a world panic? *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 185-187 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/

i3/185.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.185

As of March 31, 2015, 1102 laboratory-confirmed cases of Middle-East respiratory syndrome coronavirus (MERS-CoV) infection have been reported by WHO with the case fatality rate reaching 37.7% (416/1102). Most cases (973/1102; 88%) were reported in Saudi Arabia and other countries of the Arabian Peninsula. Cases reported outside the Arabian Peninsula have been reported to have a direct or indirect link to the Arabian Peninsula, mostly through recent travel. MERS-CoV belongs to the C lineage of the genus Betacoronavirus. The *Taphozous perforatus* is a probable natural reservoir of MERS-CoV. Bat guano, saliva and/or urine are assumed to contaminate food and water resources of animals in areas with palm orchards and this may constitute an indirect source of transmission to camels, people and possibly to other animals. Dipeptidyl peptidase 4 (DPP4) (or so-called CD26) has been proved to be the functional receptor for MERS-CoV reviewed in[1].

Although all ages are affected, the most severe cases of MERS-CoV infection have generally been recorded in aged patients with underlying conditions. Mild and asymptomatic cases have also increased recently[2]. Co-infection with other pathogens including influenza A, parainfluenza, herpes simplex and pneumococcus was reported[3]. The clinical epidemiology of MERS-CoV cases has some similarities to human seasonal flu. Like seasonal flu, MERS-CoV infections resulted in respiratory illness in the majority of patients, with the disease affecting all ages, but being most severe in the elderly and immuno-compromised people. The fact that approximately half of the lethal cases of MERS-CoV involved mixed infections and/or immuno-compromised patients, and the fact that many subclinical and inapparent infections have been reported, suggest that the virus may not lead to catastrophic consequences.

Additionally, the annual mortalities associated with MERS-CoV are surprisingly lower than many other viruses that induce acute viral infections, *e.g.*, seasonal influenza, 250000 to 500000 deaths[4]; rotavirus, 453000 child deaths[5]; measles, 145700 deaths[4]; rabies, 55000 deaths[6]; yellow fever virus, 30000 deaths (mostly in Africa)[4]; dengue fever virus, 25000 deaths mostly among children[7]; respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), 66000 to 199000 deaths in children less than 5 years old[8]; Lassa fever, 5000 deaths (in West Africa)[9].

It is worth mentioning that MERS-CoV has been isolated from camels in Saudi Arabia, Qatar, Oman, UAE and Egypt and the presence of MERS-CoV antibodies have been reported in camels from Saudi Arabia, Qatar, Oman, UAE, Egypt, Kenya, Nigeria, Ethiopia and the Canary Islands-Spain. Sera from sheep, goats, cattle, buffaloes, pigs, chicken and wild birds have all been found to be negative for MERS-CoV. It is interesting to note that the virus is prone to replicate efficiently in primate, pig and goat cell cultures, a finding which necessitates the screening of large numbers of these types of animals[1]. Overall, however, people in direct contact with camels are at most risk of contracting MERS-CoV infection, other possible indirect contact includes the consumption of of unpasteurized camel milk, even though only a few primary cases of MERS-CoV can be linked to an established direct contact with camels. The detection of MERS-CoV in camel serum samples archived over a period of decades is reassuring. MERS-CoV positive sera has been found in samples from 1983 in Somalia and Sudan[10], from 1993 in Saudi Arabia[11], from 1997 in Egypt[10], from 1996 in Kenya[12] and from 2003 in the UAE[13]. These findings imply that the MERS-CoV has been circulating for at least 31 years in the Horn of Africa countries and for at least 21 years in Saudi Arabia, without causing large-scale fatalities in humans. This conclusion can be further supported since, even in the absence of knowledge about MERS-CoV there have not been hundreds or thousands of cases of patients dying from unknown respiratory infections during this period. There is some hope, therefore that MERS-CoV may not be as a dangerous virus as was first feared. The ancestral virus strain might has been experienced mutations during this long period, which have rendered it able to cross the species barrier. It is not clear, however, whether the currently circulating virus strains have acquired additional mutations which have render them able to be easily transmissible from human to human.

Most viral diseases that affect cloven-hooved animals appear to be less virulent to camels, which typically develop only inapparent or mild clinical signs. This may be due to the camels' robust immune system. It is also worth mentioning that coronavirus infection in camels leads to mild respiratory symptoms that may reflect restricted virus proliferation and consequently low virus shedding. The possibility that there is another animal linker needs to be investigated. Taking into consideration that palm dates are consumed extensively in the Arabian Peninsula, the role of an animal linker that may harbour the MERS-CoV and contaminate palm dates needs to be investigated.

A small cohort serosurvey that was conducted in Saudi Arabia did not report MERS-CoV antibodies in slaughterhouse workers who were in close contact with camels, sheep, goat and cattle[14]. Further large scale MERS-CoV serosurveys in a range of populations such as those who have no contact with animals, health-care workers, people with close contact with camels in countries where camels are bred and traded, especially in the Arabian Peninsula, Eastern Africa and Asia, are needed to explore the exact morbidity rate of MERS-CoV.

Coronaviruses are continuously evolving, but major genetic differences have not yet been recorded among human cases. Nonetheless, elucidation of the genetic diversity of MERS-CoV strains from camels in Africa, and other parts of the world where camels are found, should be undertaken as a matter of urgency. MERS-CoV is assumed currently to constitute only a mild to moderate

risk to human health, but it remains important not to underestimate the potential risk of the virus.

REFERENCES

1 **Abdel-Moneim AS**. Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus (MERS-CoV): evidence and speculations. *Arch Virol* 2014; **159**: 1575-1584 [PMID: 24515532 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-014-1995-5]

2 **Penttinen PM**, Kaasik-Aaslav K, Friaux A, Donachie A, Sudre B, Amato-Gauci AJ, Memish ZA, Coulombier D. Taking stock of the first 133 MERS coronavirus cases globally--Is the epidemic changing? *Euro Surveill* 2013; **18**: pii: 20596 [PMID: 24094061]

3 **WHO**. WHO guidelines for investigation of cases of human infection with Middle East Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus (MERS-CoV). July 2013 ed. World Health Organization, 2013: 1-22. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/csr/disease/coronavirus_infections/MERS_CoV_investigation_guideline_Jul13.pdf

4 **WHO**. Fact Sheets. World Health Organization: 2015. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/en/

5 **WHO**. Estimated rotavirus deaths for children under 5 years of age: 2008, 453 000. World Health Organization: 2012. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring_surveillance/burden/estimates/rotavirus/en/,

6 **CDC**. World Rabies Day. Center for Disease Control and Prevention: 2014. Available from: URL: http://www.cdc.gov/Features/Rabies/

7 **Gubler DJ**. Dengue and dengue hemorrhagic fever. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 1998; **11**: 480-496 [PMID: 9665979]

8 **Meng J**, Stobart CC, Hotard AL, Moore ML. An overview of respiratory syncytial virus. *PLoS Pathog* 2014; **10**: e1004016 [PMID: 24763387 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1004016]

9 **Fisher-Hoch SP**, Hutwagner L, Brown B, McCormick JB. Effective vaccine for lassa fever. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 6777-6783 [PMID: 10888616]

10 **Müller MA**, Corman VM, Jores J, Meyer B, Younan M, Liljander A, Bosch BJ, Lattwein E, Hilali M, Musa BE, Bornstein S, Drosten C. MERS coronavirus neutralizing antibodies in camels, Eastern Africa, 1983-1997. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2014; **20**: 2093-2095 [PMID: 25425139 DOI: 10.3201/eid2012.141026]

11 **Hemida MG**, Perera RA, Al Jassim RA, Kayali G, Siu LY, Wang P, Chu KW, Perlman S, Ali MA, Alnaeem A, Guan Y, Poon LL, Saif L, Peiris M. Seroepidemiology of Middle East respiratory syndrome (MERS) coronavirus in Saudi Arabia (1993) and Australia (2014) and characterisation of assay specificity. *Euro Surveill* 2014; **19**: [PMID: 24957744]

12 **Corman VM**, Jores J, Meyer B, Younan M, Liljander A, Said MY, Gluecks I, Lattwein E, Bosch BJ, Drexler JF, Bornstein S, Drosten C, Müller MA. Antibodies against MERS coronavirus in dromedary camels, Kenya, 1992-2013. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2014; **20**: 1319-1322 [PMID: 25075637 DOI: 10.3201/eid2008.140596]

13 **Meyer B**, Müller MA, Corman VM, Reusken CB, Ritz D, Godeke GJ, Lattwein E, Kallies S, Siemens A, van Beek J, Drexler JF, Muth D, Bosch BJ, Wernery U, Koopmans MP, Wernery R, Drosten C. Antibodies against MERS coronavirus in dromedary camels, United Arab Emirates, 2003 and 2013. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2014; **20**: 552-559 [PMID: 24655412 DOI: 10.3201/eid2004.131746]

14 **Aburizaiza AS**, Mattes FM, Azhar EI, Hassan AM, Memish ZA, Muth D, Meyer B, Lattwein E, Müller MA, Drosten C. Investigation of anti-middle East respiratory syndrome antibodies in blood donors and slaughterhouse workers in Jeddah and Makkah, Saudi Arabia, fall 2012. *J Infect Dis* 2014; **209**: 243-246 [PMID: 24218504 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jit589]

P- Reviewer: Ghiringhelli PD, Laassri M, Pandey KK, Tugizov SM
S- Editor: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.188

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 188-197
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Prion-induced neurotoxicity: Possible role for cell cycle activity and DNA damage response

Raymond Bujdoso, Matthias Landgraf, Walker S Jackson, Alana M Thackray

Raymond Bujdoso, Alana M Thackray, Department of Veterinary Medicine, University of Cambridge, CB3 0ES Cambridge, United Kingdom

Matthias Landgraf, Department of Zoology, University of Cambridge, CB2 3EJ Cambridge, United Kingdom

Walker S Jackson, German Center for Neurodegenerative Disease (DZNE), BMZ1, D-53127 Bonn, Germany

Author contributions: All authors contributed to this manuscript.

Supported by The NC3Rs, No. NC/K000462/1 (in part).

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that there are no conflicts of interest.

Correspondence to: Dr. Raymond Bujdoso, Department of Veterinary Medicine, University of Cambridge, Madingley Road, CB3 0ES Cambridge, United Kingdom. rb202@cam.ac.uk
Telephone: +44-1223-337655
Fax: +44-1223-337610

Received: December 24, 2014
Peer-review started: December 26, 2014
First decision: February 7, 2015
Revised: April 8, 2015
Accepted: April 28, 2015
Article in press: April 30, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

Protein misfolding neurodegenerative diseases arise through neurotoxicity induced by aggregation of host proteins. These conditions include Alzheimer's disease, Huntington's disease, Parkinson's disease, motor neuron disease, tauopathies and prion diseases. Collectively, these conditions are a challenge to society because of the increasing aged population and through the real threat to human food security by animal prion diseases. It is therefore important to understand the cellular and molecular mechanisms that underlie protein misfolding-induced neurotoxicity as this will form the basis for designing strategies to alleviate their burden. Prion diseases are an important paradigm for neurodegenerative conditions in general since several of these maladies have now been shown to display prion-like phenomena. Increasingly, cell cycle activity and the DNA damage response are recognised as cellular events that participate in the neurotoxic process of various neurodegenerative diseases, and their associated animal models, which suggests they are truly involved in the pathogenic process and are not merely epiphenomena. Here we review the role of cell cycle activity and the DNA damage response in neurodegeneration associated with protein misfolding diseases, and suggest that these events contribute towards prion-induced neurotoxicity. In doing so, we highlight PrP transgenic *Drosophila* as a tractable model for the genetic analysis of transmissible mammalian prion disease.

Key words: Neurodegenerative disease; Protein misfolding; Prion; Transmissible; Cell cycle; DNA repair; Chromatin; PrP transgenic *Drosophila*

Core tip: It is important to understand the cellular and molecular mechanisms of protein misfolding-induced neurotoxicity in order to combat conditions such as Alzheimer's, Huntington's, Parkinson's, and motor neuron disease, tauopathies and prion diseases. Here, we review the role of cell cycle activity and the DNA damage

response in neurodegeneration associated with protein misfolding diseases, including prion diseases. In doing so, we highlight PrP transgenic *Drosophila* as a tractable model of transmissible mammalian prion disease. Our review provides a new impetus to the study of prion diseases, which are increasingly seen as an important paradigm for neurodegenerative conditions in general.

Bujdoso R, Landgraf M, Jackson WS, Thackray AM. Prion-induced neurotoxicity: Possible role for cell cycle activity and DNA damage response. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 188-197 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/188.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.188

INTRODUCTION

While many diseases can cause degeneration of nervous system tissue, including human immunodeficiency virus infection and acquired immune deficiency syndrome, multiple sclerosis or rabies, the designation of protein misfolding neurodegenerative disease is typically assigned to those induced by aberrant folding and aggregation of disease-specific host proteins. These conditions, which include Alzheimer's disease, Huntington's disease, Parkinson's disease, motor neuron disease, tauopathies and prion diseases, are invariably fatal as there are no known treatments[1,2]. Each of these conditions is characterised by the misfolding of a disease-specific protein[3] and accumulation of misfolded protein in the brain is central to the pathological process that typically manifests as synaptic loss, neuronal dysfunction, with resultant clinical symptoms. Prion diseases include scrapie of sheep, bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE) of cattle, together with Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD) and fatal familial insomnia (FFI) in humans[4]. Prion diseases are an important paradigm for protein misfolding neurodegenerative conditions in general since Alzheimer's, Huntington's, Parkinson's and motor neuron disease, as well as tauopathies all possess features of prion-like transmission in experimental settings, evidenced by transcellular spread of misfolded disease-specific protein[5]. However, prion diseases are unique since they are transmissible between individuals of the same and different species, that sometimes occurs unintentionally. Protein misfolding neurodegenerative diseases typically cause clinical disease late in life and are therefore a major concern to society because of the increasing size of the ageing population. In addition, prion diseases are a significant concern to food security since they occur in animals destined for human consumption. Understanding the mechanism of neurotoxicity induced by protein misfolding will allow the design of strategies to alleviate the burden of these conditions.

Many aspects of prion-induced neurotoxicity remain incompletely understood. During prion diseases the normal host protein PrPC is converted into the abnormal form, PrPSc, the transmissible prion agent[4,6] (Figure 1). This conversion event appears to be an essential requirement

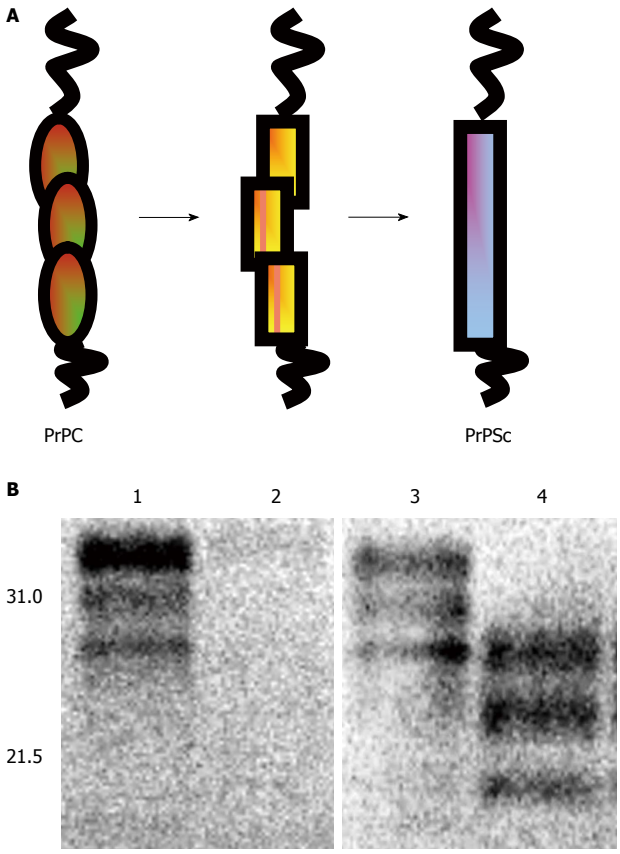


Figure 1 Conversion of PrPC into PrPSc. A: Schematic diagram of the conversion of PrPC into PrPSc. A major structural event occurs in the C-terminal domain of PrPC as it converts from a predominantly α-helical form into one enriched for β-sheet. This conformational change may involve the formation of intermediate structures of the protein; B: Western blot detection of ovine PrP. VRQ/VRQ sheep brain homogenate from animals that were scrapie-free (tracks 1 and 2) or scrapie-infected (tracks 3 and 4) were pre-treated with (tracks 2 and 4) or without (tracks 1 and 3) PK at 32 μg/mL at 37 ℃ for 30 min and the products analysed by SDS/PAGE, and Western blot probed with anti-PrP monoclonal antibody 683. Molecular weight markers (in kDa) are shown on the left (Reproduced by kind permission of CAB Reviews).

for prion disease neurotoxicity, evidenced by the failure of exogenous PrPSc to cause pathology in brain tissue devoid of PrPC[7,8] and the reversal of neurodegeneration when PrPC expression is ablated during prion infection[9-11]. The essential requirement for PrP expression in prion-induced neurotoxicity may suggest that an intermediate in the conversion of PrPC to PrPSc is the neurotoxic agent[12,13]. Alternatively, neurotoxicity may result from an interference with the normal biosynthesis and metabolism of PrPC mediated by the presence of PrPSc[14]. For example, PrP can accumulate in the cytosol in a misfolded form when proteasomal activity is compromised[15,16] and cytosolic PrP has been reported to be neurotoxic in some neurons[17-20]. A feature of prion-induced neurotoxicity is its effect on protein synthesis. For example, it has been shown that accumulation of PrPSc in cells[21] and mice[22] with an ongoing prion infection triggers over-activation of the PERK/eIF2a branch of the unfolded protein response. This in turn leads to persistently high levels of phosphorylated eIF2a and consequently a block of protein translation. Pharmacological inhibition of PERK can reverse the prion disease-induced

block in protein synthesis and alleviate this toxic phenotype despite the continued accumulation of PrPSc[23].

The value of these discoveries would be amplified by a more complete understanding of the sequence of cellular events that occur during the early stages of prion disease. This applies particularly to those acting prior to the onset of, and which may lead to, inhibition of protein synthesis. Knowledge in this area will be of fundamental importance to the understanding of prion biology *per se* and facilitate the search for early acting genetic modifiers of the neurotoxic process associated with these conditions. Interestingly, a number of reports have documented cell cycle activity and the DNA damage response (DDR) in post mitotic, terminally differentiated neurons during various neurodegenerative diseases[24-27], which represent potential candidates for such early acting pathways. This appears paradoxical since these are events traditionally associated with dividing cells. Here we discuss a potential role of cell cycle activity and DDR in prion-induced neurotoxicity. In support of this viewpoint, we present a novel *Drosophila* model of transmissible mammalian prion disease that provides a new animal system to study protein misfolding disease, one that combines the robust tools of experimental prion disease and fly genetics.

DDR

During the cell cycle, proliferating cells replicate their DNA and undergo division. This process is a highly organised series of cellular events that are tightly coordinated through the phase-specific expression of positive and negative regulatory proteins. Various quality control checkpoints operate to ensure faithful progression through the cell cycle. In addition to DNA replication errors, all cells whether proliferating or not, are constantly exposed to stimuli that can induce damage to DNA. These genotoxic stimuli may arise from exogenous events such as exposure to irradiation or carcinogens, or alternatively from endogenous events such as intracellular metabolism and associated reactive oxygen species (ROS)[28-30].

DNA damage in metazoan cells is deleterious: it may initiate mutagenesis or chromosomal re-arrangements that result in de-regulated cell cycle activity and neoplasia, or aberrant gene expression concomitant with cellular dysfunction and senescence or cell death[31-33]. In order to avoid these hazardous effects, cells have evolved a variety of molecular mechanisms for the repair of DNA damage[34]. For example, base excision repair (BER) is used to correct oxidative lesions[35] while nucleotide excision repair (NER) can excise UV light-induced thymidine dimers[36]. Single strand breaks (SSBs) in DNA, which may occur through ROS-mediated lesions or intermediates in BER, are repaired by polB and various ligases[37]. Double strand breaks (DSBs), that can arise through failures in DNA transcription or replication, are repaired by two different mechanisms: non-homologous end joining (NHEJ), which is error prone, or homologous recombination (HR), which is error-free but is restricted to the S/G_2 phase of the cell cycle in dividing cells[38]. DSBs in DNA arise relatively infrequently, though are particularly hazardous as they can induce a significant loss of genomic integrity[39].

The maintenance of genome integrity is critical to organismal function and survival. As a consequence, cells co-ordinate an elaborate set of mechanisms that function in the surveillance and repair of DNA lesions with cell cycle progression. These integrated pathways are collectively referred to as the DNA damage response (DDR). In proliferating cells, checkpoint control mechanisms mediate cell cycle arrest to allow DNA repair when damage is detected, although senescence or apoptosis may ensue in the case of extensive lesions[40-42]. In contrast, post mitotic terminally differentiated neurons appear to display a lower capacity for DNA repair than proliferating cells, and they are thought to accumulate and tolerate comparatively high levels of DNA damage, since they are unable to replace damaged cells by division[43,44]. However, increasing evidence suggests that cell cycle activity and DDR are features of post mitotic neurons in neurodegenerative conditions[25-27,45,46]. For example, post mitotic neurons, when exposed to genotoxic stimuli, can replicate DNA and initiate apoptosis associated with cell cycle activation[47]. In addition, evidence of cell cycle activity and DNA damage can be found in natural and experimental hosts undergoing protein misfolding diseases, such as Alzheimer's disease[48-51]; amyotrophic lateral sclerosis[52,53]; Huntington's disease[54,55] and Parkinson's disease[56-58].

THE CONTRIBUTION OF DNA DAMAGE AND DDR TO NEUROTOXICITY

Neurons like all other cell types are subject to a variety of stimuli that can potentially induce deleterious DNA damage. In dividing cells DNA damage activates cell cycle arrest concomitant with DDR so that the integrity of the cellular genome is maintained between successive generations. A major cell cycle checkpoint control operates at the G_2/M interface to allow for DNA damaged during replication to be repaired prior to mitosis. Since post mitotic neurons are unable to divide, the expression of cell cycle associated genes in these cells may promote the DDR and facilitate access to DNA for repair in order to maintain genome integrity and appropriate regulation of gene expression. An emerging view is that structural modulation of chromatin associated with these processes, together with genome integrity, have a major influence on the neurotoxic process in post mitotic neurons during neurodegenerative disease[27,59]. In this context, important unanswered questions include: Do the same processes and events also occur in protein misfolding neurodegenerative diseases? And if so, what precisely are the molecular mechanisms that confer neurotoxicity and that culminate in neuronal dysfunction and neurodegeneration?

Chromatin is a repeat structure of nuclear DNA and histone proteins with nucleosomes representing the fundamental core unit[60,61]. The structure of chromatin

is strongly influenced by post translational modifications of the histone proteins through the addition of various chemical groupings including phosphate, acetyl or methyl moieties[62]. In addition, sequence variants of core histone proteins (*e.g.*, H2A.X) exist that further enhance chromatin structural diversity[63]. Chemical modification of histones, or the inclusion of their sequence variants, influence nucleosome-DNA or inter-nucleosome interactions and thereby regulate the degree of chromatin compaction and consequentially DNA transcriptional activity. Heterochromatin is relatively compacted and transcriptionally silent, whereas euchromatin is a more relaxed and open structure that is permissive for gene activation[64-67]. Chromatin structure and its modulation are therefore fundamental features in the maintenance of DNA integrity and regulation of gene expression.

DNA contained in compacted chromatin is relatively well protected from genotoxic stimuli and is typically inaccessible to transcription and DDR machinery. During DDR, chromatin undergoes transient dis-aggregation at the sites of DNA lesion to facilitate access of repair and cell cycle checkpoint proteins[68-70]. In some cases of DNA repair, chromatin modulation may be quite extensive and extend over several kilobases[71]. Since open chromatin is evident in regions of actively transcribed DNA, heterochromatin relaxation in response to DDR can trigger aberrant gene expression of normally silenced regions of the genome. Indeed, it has been shown that wide spread loss of heterochromatin occurs in *Drosophila* and mouse tauopathy models (*tau* transgenics), and human Alzheimer's disease, and that this is associated with aberrant gene expression in CNS neurons[72]. Conversely, genetic rescue of *tau*-induced heterochromatin loss substantially reduced *tau*-induced neurodegeneration in *Drosophila*. It has been postulated that post mitotic neurons undergoing DDR and associated changes in chromatin organisation, may have the potential to revert to a de-differentiated state, and that this might be linked to activation of apoptotic pathways[73,74]. Mechanistically, oxidative stress and subsequent DNA damage were identified as causes of heterochromatin loss in *tau* neurotoxicity[72]. These studies suggest an etiological progression from neurotoxic stimuli to chromatin-mediated gene regulation and subsequent neurodegeneration.

General instability of the cellular genome, as a consequence of damage to mitochondrial or nuclear DNA, or to chromatin, is also a potential cause of neurotoxicity[75]. Since post mitotic terminally differentiated neurons are unable to divide, these cells are forced to endure genotoxic insults. However, if the level of DNA damage exceeds the capacity of the DDR, or if DDR function is compromised, mutations and incorrect repair may lead to inappropriate DNA metabolism and, de-regulated gene expression or harmful mutations[32]. This view is supported by the correlation between neurodegeneration and sensitivity to DNA damage and/or DDR deficiencies[76-81]. DNA damage that compromises mitochondrial function could lead to disturbances in the cellular energy balance and have a detrimental effect on neuronal function including synaptic defects, as occurs in various inherited neurological disorders[82]. Since the brain has a high metabolic activity neurons are thought to be particularly prone to oxidative stress, a recognised cause for DNA damage. Oxidative stress and mitochondrial dysfunction are increasingly implicated in protein misfolding-induced neurodegeneration although the molecular events of this association have not yet been defined[83]. Mitochondria are the principal source of cellular ROS and mitochondrial DNA is particularly sensitive to ROS-mediated damage[84]. The mutation rate of mitochondrial DNA, which lacks histone proteins, is > 15 fold higher than that of nuclear DNA[85]. Mutations in mitochondrial DNA can perturb the expression and function of oxidative phosphorylation complexes and thereby precipitate mitochondrial dysfunction, which in turn may lead to accelerated ROS generation[86,87].

Many studies have shown that ageing, a major risk factor for neurodegenerative disease, is associated with an accumulation of DNA lesions in the mature brain. DNA lesions may additionally arise from an age-dependent reduction in DNA repair capacity[88] and contribute to a reduction in genome integrity[43,89]. These DNA lesions, which are envisaged to occur in individual neurons, may result in the expression of mutant proteins that either fold or traffic incorrectly. This will result in an increasing demand on the cellular protein quality control machinery that functions to detect and triage these molecules, a situation already exacerbated in the case of protein misfolding diseases. In this situation, activation of the unfolded protein response may occur in order to attempt to maintain protein homeostasis[21,22]. The effects of aberrant misfolded protein accumulation that arise in protein misfolding diseases presumably enhance DNA damage and accelerate the loss of genome integrity and thereby promote the onset of neurodegenerative disease.

CELL CYCLE-ASSOCIATED PROTEINS WITH A ROLE AT THE SYNAPSE

Mature nerve cells are derived from neural progenitors that undergo proliferation, exit the cell cycle and mature into terminally differentiated neurons. Under normal circumstances, post mitotic neurons do not participate in any further cell cycle activity. Any attempt by post mitotic neurons to undergo cell cycle re-entry is considered to be detrimental to these cells. However, it has become evident that terminally differentiated neurons express a variety of proteins with important roles in cell cycle regulation that have a normal function in diverse post mitotic neuronal events under physiological conditions[90]. Significantly, some of these cell cycle-associated proteins localise to synapses in post mitotic neurons. For example, the Orc2-5 core subunits of the origin of recognition complex (Orc), which is key to initiating DNA replication, are highly expressed in differentiated

mammalian neurons. Orc3 and Orc5 are enriched in the postsynaptic dendritic compartment, and regulate the dendritic filopodia and spine formation[91]. The anaphase-promoting complex/cyclosome (APC/C), an E3 ubiquitin ligase, locates to both pre- and postsynaptic sites in post mitotic neurons, regulating synaptic terminal growth and differentiation as well as synapse formation and function (reviewed in[92]). Other cell cycle associated gene products implicated in regulating synaptic function include the PI3Kinase family member ataxia telangiectasia mutated (ATM), which in post mitotic neurons associates with synaptic vesicle proteins[93], and Cyclin E that acts as a repressor of the synaptic regulator Cdk5[94].

While it is accepted that these various proteins, initially discovered as central to cell division, can have additional roles in post mitotic cells, it remains unclear whether dysregulation of their expression or function is linked to neurotoxicity and cell death in protein misfolding neurodegenerative diseases[24]. One suggestion has been that synaptic loss early in neurodegenerative conditions, results in upregulation of cell cycle-associated gene expression in a bid to maintain synaptic function and plasticity, but that this might lead to inappropriate action of these proteins in the nucleus, promoting neuronal dedifferentiation and apoptosis[24]. For example, shuttling of Cdk5 from the nucleus to cytoplasm has been postulated as critical for the breakdown of the post mitotic state in neurons[95]. Alternatively, it is conceivable that dysregulation of cell cycle-associated proteins at the synapse and concomitant sub-optimal synaptic communication may lead to increased metabolism as neurons struggle to remain within their homeostatic activity range. This in turn could lead to increased production of ROS, with an ensuing cycle of genotoxicity and associated dysregulation of gene expression.

CELL CYCLE ACTIVITY AND DDR IN PRION-INDUCED NEUROTOXICITY?

It is not yet established whether cell cycle activity and DDR are features of prion-mediated neurotoxicity. Evidence this might be the case derives from observations of mammalian models of prion disease. For example, nuclear accumulation of proliferating cell nuclear antigen (PCNA) and phosphorylated histone H2A.X proteins, which in other cell types are indicative of DNA replication and/or repair, have been detected in CNS neurons of mice that model familial CJD and FFI prion diseases[96]. In addition, the brains of scrapie-affected hamsters show evidence of cell cycle activity with an increase in the proteins polo-like kinase (PLK) 1 and cyclin B1, and a decrease of PLK3 and Cdc25C[97]. PLKs, which function as key regulators of the cell cycle and its checkpoint response to genotoxic stress, are regulated by synaptic activity in post mitotic neurons[98]. Prion infectivity experiments *in vivo* have shown that mice deficient in BER activity displayed an accelerated clinical course of prion disease as compared to wild type animals[99]. These various animal models of prion disease are supportive of the view that DNA damage plays a pivotal role in prion-induced neurotoxicity. It will be important to verify this is the case, in order to determine the extent of commonality in the mechanism(s) of neurotoxicity between different neurodegenerative conditions and prion diseases. This is underlined by the fact that bona fide prion diseases are seen as important paradigms for other protein misfolding diseases, and common underlying mechanisms would suggest the possibility of common therapeutic strategies for these presently invariably fatal diseases. However, prion diseases are difficult to study in their natural hosts, such as ruminants and humans, because these diseases can take many years to develop, resulting in progress being slow and cumbersome[4]. In addition, the natural forms of prion diseases tend to occur in outbred populations that render genetic analysis of complex biochemical pathways difficult. Even in the more tractable experimental system of mouse models, the significant expenses of time and husbandry restrict the scope of genetic experimentation for dissection of prion disease mechanisms.

A *DROSOPHILA* MODEL OF TRANSMISSIBLE MAMMALIAN PRION DISEASE

In order to circumvent the difficulties associated with the genetic analysis of prion diseases in their natural hosts, we have established *Drosophila* as a new tractable animal model of transmissible mammalian prion disease. Importantly, because of the high evolutionary conservation of most cellular signaling pathways and processes, our *Drosophila* model system allows exploitation of the power of fly genetics to probe the mechanisms of prion-induced neurotoxicity.

We have used pUAST/PhiC31-mediated site-directed germ line transformation to generate *Drosophila* transgenic for topological and polymorphic variants of ovine PrP under expression control of the bipartite *UAS-GAL4* system[100-102]. The topological variants of ovine PrP were targeted to the plasma membrane, to the cytosol, or for secretion. Site-specific PCR using genomic DNA from ovine PrP transgenic flies as substrate, together with DNA sequence analysis, was used to confirm that a single copy of each PrP transgene had been inserted at a single site in the genome of each appropriate fly line. Expression control of ovine PrP in *Drosophila via* the *UAS-GAL4* system allowed the prion protein to be targeted to defined cell populations during a specific period of development and ageing. For example, *UAS*-ovine PrP flies crossed with the *elav-GAL4* driver fly line achieves efficient expression of cell-surface anchored ovine prion protein in all neurons of *Drosophila*[100,102].

Our *Drosophila* model allowed us to test the hypothesis that exogenous ovine prions can induce toxicity in flies transgenic for ovine PrP. Remarkably, adult *Drosophila*, which express ovine PrP pan neuronally and that are

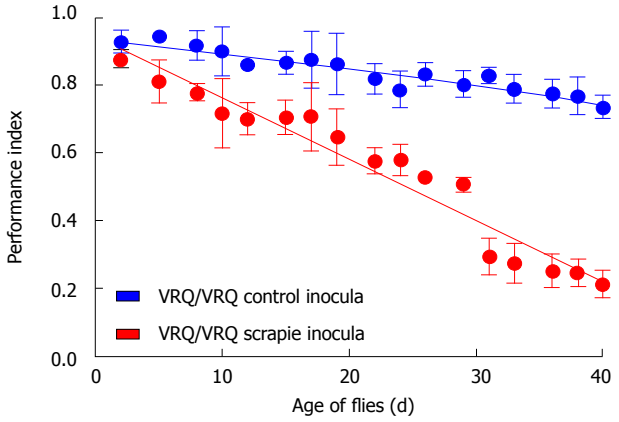


Figure 2 Prion-exposed ovine PrP transgenic *Drosophila* show enhanced locomotor defect. *Drosophila* with pan neuronal expression of ovine VRQ(cyt) were fed VRQ/VRQ scrapie-free (blue circles, blue line) or scrapie-infected (red circles, red line) sheep brain homogenate at the larval stage of development. The locomotor activity of adult flies was assessed by a negative geotaxis climbing assay. The performance index is shown for each genotype of fly per time point (Reproduced with permission, from Thackray *et al*[100] 2014. © the Biochemical Society).

exposed to ovine prions at the larval stage, show a neurotoxic phenotype as compared to control non-transgenic flies that have been similarly exposed to prion inocula. The prion-induced neurotoxicity in PrP transgenic *Drosophila* is evidenced by an accelerated decline in locomotor activity[100,101,103] (Figure 2). In addition, we have used protein misfolding cyclic amplification (PMCA) to show that this prion-induced phenotype is accompanied by accumulation of proteinase K (PK)-resistant PrPSc in fly brains[100]. The presence of PrPSc is a pathogonomic feature of prion diseases. However, the most sensitive hallmark of transmissible prion diseases, is the transmission of these conditions to new hosts, since in some prion-infected hosts, neuropathology can develop in the apparent absence of PrPSc and conversely, PrPSc can accumulate in the absence of neuropathology[4,104]. Importantly therefore, we have demonstrated that the prion-induced fly phenotype is transmissible to PrP transgenic *Drosophila*[100,101,103]. In mammalian hosts, prion-mediated toxicity has been shown to be inextricably linked to prion replication[4,12,105] and these two events only occur in PrP expressing hosts. In our experiments, scrapie-infected sheep brain material did not induce toxicity in control non-PrP transgenic flies, and head homogenate from these prion-exposed control flies did not transmit any toxicity to fresh PrP transgenic recipient flies. Collectively, these data are consistent with the formation of transmissible prions in *Drosophila* transgenic for PrP expression. Furthermore, while the conversion of PrPC to PrPSc has been reported to occur either at the cell surface or within the endocytic pathway[106-108], our novel studies in *Drosophila* show that PrP targeted to the plasma membrane, to the cytosol, or for secretion, can participate in the generation of prion-induced toxicity.

Our observations validate PrP transgenic *Drosophila* as a new animal model to study the mechanisms of prion-induced neurotoxicity. One of the key benefits of this model system is its rapid and highly reproducible progression to symptomatic stages. This opens the door to a detailed cellular and molecular analysis of the sequence of changes that occur from immediately after infection until symptoms of neurotoxicity become overt. To this end we have performed a functional genomic analysis of prion-infected *Drosophila* transgenic for ovine PrP, membrane bound by a glycosylphosphatidyl-inositol (GPI) anchor in order to search for biochemical pathways and genetic modifiers of prion-induced neurotoxicity[109]. Our preliminary RNA-Seq-based analysis has revealed that during the early phase of prion infection in PrP transgenic *Drosophila*, the expression of genes associated with cell cycle re-entry and DNA damage repair were up-regulated in the fly brain. This observation is indicative of cell cycle activity and DDR in the early phase of prion-induced neurotoxicity. Significantly, during the early phase of prion infection in our fly model, cell cycle activation genes (*e.g.*, PCNA) and double-stranded DNA repair genes (*e.g.*, H2Av) are up-regulated, as also seen in brains of prion-diseased mice[96]. Importantly, we found that this response precedes a dramatic down-regulation of genes associated with protein synthesis, including those involved with eIF2a and mTOR pathways. These are interesting observations in light of the reports of translational defects in prion-infected mice[22]. Our novel observations show that prion infection in *Drosophila* has the potential to re-capitulate prion-induced events in mammalian hosts. Our data further suggest that cell cycle re-entry and inhibition of protein synthesis are temporally linked events in prion-induced neurotoxicity. In this context our hypothesis (Figure 3) is that neurotoxicity in post-mitotic neurons, stressed by prion replication, arises through aberrant cell cycle re-entry that contributes to the effect of sustained inhibition of protein synthesis and eventual neuronal dysfunction.

CONCLUSION

Prion diseases are an important paradigm for protein misfolding neurodegenerative diseases. It is important to establish the sequence and causal links of cellular events that underlie prion-induced neurotoxicity. This will help determine how protein misfolding and aggregation causes neurotoxicity and how this devastating process may be alleviated. Emerging evidence suggests that cell cycle activity and the DNA damage response are cellular processes that may be involved in prion-induced neurodegeneration, as appears to be the case in other neurodegenerative diseases. With the power of *Drosophila* genetics now in play, many important questions can be systematically addressed. Important questions to be answered include what is the temporal order of the cellular events that are responsible for the progression of prion-induced neurotoxicity. In addition, what is the relationship between the accumulation of cell-cycle related proteins in prion-infected post mitotic neurons, the suppression of translation and resultant neurotoxicity? Future research

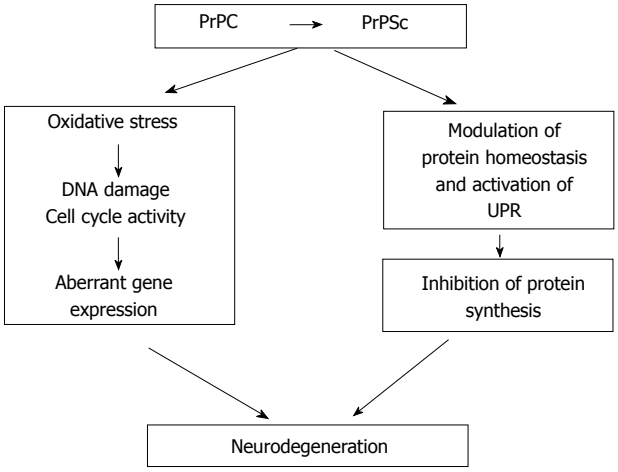


Figure 3 Hypothetical model for prion-induced neurodegeneration. The conversion of PrPC into PrPSc is an essential requirement for the neurotoxicity that occurs during prion disease. Neurodegeneration in post mitotic neurons, stressed by prion replication, may arise through various cellular events including aberrant cell cycle re-entry and sustained inhibition of protein synthesis. These two processes may operate in parallel or may potentially represent temporally linked events. In both cases, aberrant cell cycle re-entry may contribute to the effect of sustained inhibition of protein synthesis evident in prion-induced neurotoxicity.

in this area will be enhanced by the use of a *Drosophila* model of transmissible mammalian prion disease.

REFERENCES

1 **Forman MS**, Trojanowski JQ, Lee VM. Neurodegenerative diseases: a decade of discoveries paves the way for therapeutic breakthroughs. *Nat Med* 2004; **10**: 1055-1063 [PMID: 15459709 DOI: 10.1038/nm1113]

2 **Guo JL**, Lee VM. Cell-to-cell transmission of pathogenic proteins in neurodegenerative diseases. *Nat Med* 2014; **20**: 130-138 [PMID: 24504409 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3457]

3 **Knowles TP**, Vendruscolo M, Dobson CM. The amyloid state and its association with protein misfolding diseases. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2014; **15**: 384-396 [PMID: 24854788 DOI: 10.1038/nrm3810]

4 **Prusiner SB**. Prion biology and diseases. 2nd ed. New York: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 2004

5 **Aguzzi A**, Rajendran L. The transcellular spread of cytosolic amyloids, prions, and prionoids. *Neuron* 2009; **64**: 783-790 [PMID: 20064386 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuron.2009.12.016]

6 **Aguzzi A**, Baumann F, Bremer J. The prion's elusive reason for being. *Annu Rev Neurosci* 2008; **31**: 439-477 [PMID: 18558863]

7 **Brandner S**, Isenmann S, Raeber A, Fischer M, Sailer A, Kobayashi Y, Marino S, Weissmann C, Aguzzi A. Normal host prion protein necessary for scrapie-induced neurotoxicity. *Nature* 1996; **379**: 339-343 [PMID: 8552188 DOI: 10.1038/379339a0]

8 **Brandner S**, Raeber A, Sailer A, Blättler T, Fischer M, Weissmann C, Aguzzi A. Normal host prion protein (PrPC) is required for scrapie spread within the central nervous system. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1996; **93**: 13148-13151 [PMID: 8917559 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.93.23.13148]

9 **Mallucci G**, Dickinson A, Linehan J, Klöhn PC, Brandner S, Collinge J. Depleting neuronal PrP in prion infection prevents disease and reverses spongiosis. *Science* 2003; **302**: 871-874 [PMID: 14593181 DOI: 10.1126/science.1090187]

10 **Mallucci GR**, White MD, Farmer M, Dickinson A, Khatun H, Powell AD, Brandner S, Jefferys JG, Collinge J. Targeting cellular prion protein reverses early cognitive deficits and neurophysiological dysfunction in prion-infected mice. *Neuron* 2007; **53**: 325-335 [PMID: 17270731 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuron.2007.01.005]

11 **White MD**, Farmer M, Mirabile I, Brandner S, Collinge J, Mallucci GR. Single treatment with RNAi against prion protein rescues early neuronal dysfunction and prolongs survival in mice with prion disease. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 10238-10243 [PMID: 18632556 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0802759105]

12 **Sandberg MK**, Al-Doujaily H, Sharps B, Clarke AR, Collinge J. Prion propagation and toxicity in vivo occur in two distinct mechanistic phases. *Nature* 2011; **470**: 540-542 [PMID: 21350487 DOI: 10.1038/nature09768]

13 **Zhou M**, Ottenberg G, Sferrazza GF, Lasmézas CI. Highly neurotoxic monomeric α-helical prion protein. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2012; **109**: 3113-3118 [PMID: 22323583 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1118090109]

14 **Chakrabarti O**, Ashok A, Hegde RS. Prion protein biosynthesis and its emerging role in neurodegeneration. *Trends Biochem Sci* 2009; **34**: 287-295 [PMID: 19447626 DOI: 10.1016/j.tibs.2009.03.001]

15 **Ma J**, Lindquist S. Conversion of PrP to a self-perpetuating PrPSc-like conformation in the cytosol. *Science* 2002; **298**: 1785-1788 [PMID: 12386336 DOI: 10.1126/science.1073619]

16 **Ma J**, Lindquist S. Wild-type PrP and a mutant associated with prion disease are subject to retrograde transport and proteasome degradation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2001; **98**: 14955-14960 [PMID: 11742063 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.011578098]

17 **Ma J**, Wollmann R, Lindquist S. Neurotoxicity and neurodegeneration when PrP accumulates in the cytosol. *Science* 2002; **298**: 1781-1785 [PMID: 12386337 DOI: 10.1126/science.1073725]

18 **Wang X**, Bowers SL, Wang F, Pu XA, Nelson RJ, Ma J. Cytoplasmic prion protein induces forebrain neurotoxicity. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2009; **1792**: 555-563 [PMID: 19281844 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbadis.2009.02.014]

19 **Fioriti L**, Dossena S, Stewart LR, Stewart RS, Harris DA, Forloni G, Chiesa R. Cytosolic prion protein (PrP) is not toxic in N2a cells and primary neurons expressing pathogenic PrP mutations. *J Biol Chem* 2005; **280**: 11320-11328 [PMID: 15632159 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M412441200]

20 **Roucou X**, Guo Q, Zhang Y, Goodyer CG, LeBlanc AC. Cytosolic prion protein is not toxic and protects against Bax-mediated cell death in human primary neurons. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 40877-40881 [PMID: 12917444 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M306177200]

21 **Roffé M**, Beraldo FH, Bester R, Nunziante M, Bach C, Mancini G, Gilch S, Vorberg I, Castilho BA, Martins VR, Hajj GN. Prion protein interaction with stress-inducible protein 1 enhances neuronal protein synthesis via mTOR. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 13147-13152 [PMID: 20615969 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1000784107]

22 **Moreno JA**, Radford H, Peretti D, Steinert JR, Verity N, Martin MG, Halliday M, Morgan J, Dinsdale D, Ortori CA, Barrett DA, Tsaytler P, Bertolotti A, Willis AE, Bushell M, Mallucci GR. Sustained translational repression by eIF2α-P mediates prion neurodegeneration. *Nature* 2012; **485**: 507-511 [PMID: 22622579 DOI: 10.1038/nature11058]

23 **Moreno JA**, Halliday M, Molloy C, Radford H, Verity N, Axten JM, Ortori CA, Willis AE, Fischer PM, Barrett DA, Mallucci GR. Oral treatment targeting the unfolded protein response prevents neurodegeneration and clinical disease in prion-infected mice. *Sci Transl Med* 2013; **5**: 206ra138 [PMID: 24107777 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3006767]

24 **Arendt T**. Cell cycle activation and aneuploid neurons in Alzheimer's disease. *Mol Neurobiol* 2012; **46**: 125-135 [PMID: 22528601 DOI: 10.1007/s12035-012-8262-0]

25 **Madabhushi R**, Pan L, Tsai LH. DNA damage and its links to neurodegeneration. *Neuron* 2014; **83**: 266-282 [PMID: 25033177 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuron.2014.06.034]

26 **Herrup K**, Yang Y. Cell cycle regulation in the postmitotic neuron: oxymoron or new biology? *Nat Rev Neurosci* 2007; **8**: 368-378 [PMID: 17453017 DOI: 10.1038/nrn2124]

27 **Brochier C**, Langley B. Chromatin modifications associated with DNA double-strand breaks repair as potential targets for neurological diseases. *Neurotherapeutics* 2013; **10**: 817-830 [PMID: 24072514 DOI: 10.1007/s13311-013-0210-9]

28 **Iliakis G**, Wang Y, Guan J, Wang H. DNA damage checkpoint control in cells exposed to ionizing radiation. *Oncogene* 2003; **22**: 5834-5847 [PMID: 12947390 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1206682]

29 **Mazouzi A**, Velimezi G, Loizou JI. DNA replication stress: causes, resolution and disease. *Exp Cell Res* 2014; **329**: 85-93 [PMID: 25281304 DOI: 10.1016/j.yexcr.2014.09.030]

30 **Yan S**, Sorrell M, Berman Z. Functional interplay between ATM/ATR-mediated DNA damage response and DNA repair pathways in oxidative stress. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2014; **71**: 3951-3967 [PMID: 24947324 DOI: 10.1007/s00018-014-1666-4]

31 **Hoeijmakers JH**. DNA damage, aging, and cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **361**: 1475-1485 [PMID: 19812404 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra0804615]

32 **McKinnon PJ**. Maintaining genome stability in the nervous system. *Nat Neurosci* 2013; **16**: 1523-1529 [PMID: 24165679 DOI: 10.1038/nn.3537]

33 **Vermeij WP**, Hoeijmakers JH, Pothof J. Aging: not all DNA damage is equal. *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 2014; **26**: 124-130 [PMID: 25222498 DOI: 10.1016/j.gde.2014.06.006]

34 **Sancar A**, Lindsey-Boltz LA, Unsal-Kaçmaz K, Linn S. Molecular mechanisms of mammalian DNA repair and the DNA damage checkpoints. *Annu Rev Biochem* 2004; **73**: 39-85 [PMID: 15189136 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.biochem.73.011303.073723]

35 **McCullough AK**, Dodson ML, Lloyd RS. Initiation of base excision repair: glycosylase mechanisms and structures. *Annu Rev Biochem* 1999; **68**: 255-285 [PMID: 10872450 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.biochem.68.1.255]

36 **Sancar A**. DNA excision repair. *Annu Rev Biochem* 1996; **65**: 43-81 [PMID: 8811174 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.bi.65.070196.000355]

37 **Caldecott KW**. DNA damage responses and neurological disease. Preface. *DNA Repair* (Amst) 2008; **7**: 1009 [PMID: 18515191 DOI: 10.1016/j.dnarep.2008.04.011]

38 **Sonoda E**, Hochegger H, Saberi A, Taniguchi Y, Takeda S. Differential usage of non-homologous end-joining and homologous recombination in double strand break repair. *DNA Repair* (Amst) 2006; **5**: 1021-1029 [PMID: 16807135 DOI: 10.1016/j.dnarep.2006.05.022]

39 **Jackson SP**. Sensing and repairing DNA double-strand breaks. *Carcinogenesis* 2002; **23**: 687-696 [PMID: 12016139 DOI: 10.1093/carcin/23.5.687]

40 **d'Adda di Fagagna F**. Living on a break: cellular senescence as a DNA-damage response. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2008; **8**: 512-522 [PMID: 18574463 DOI: 10.1038/nrc2440]

41 **Harrison JC**, Haber JE. Surviving the breakup: the DNA damage checkpoint. *Annu Rev Genet* 2006; **40**: 209-235 [PMID: 16805667 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.genet.40.051206.105231]

42 **Zhou BB**, Elledge SJ. The DNA damage response: putting checkpoints in perspective. *Nature* 2000; **408**: 433-439 [PMID: 11100718 DOI: 10.1038/35044005]

43 **Lu T**, Pan Y, Kao SY, Li C, Kohane I, Chan J, Yankner BA. Gene regulation and DNA damage in the ageing human brain. *Nature* 2004; **429**: 883-891 [PMID: 15190254 DOI: 10.1038/nature02661]

44 **Rao KS**. DNA repair in aging rat neurons. *Neuroscience* 2007; **145**: 1330-1340 [PMID: 17156934 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuroscience.2006.09.032]

45 **Yang Y**, Herrup K. Cell division in the CNS: protective response or lethal event in post-mitotic neurons? *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2007; **1772**: 457-466 [PMID: 17158035 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbadis.2006.10.002]

46 **Herrup K**, Neve R, Ackerman SL, Copani A. Divide and die: cell cycle events as triggers of nerve cell death. *J Neurosci* 2004; **24**: 9232-9239 [PMID: 15496657 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.3347-04.2004]

47 **Kruman II**, Wersto RP, Cardozo-Pelaez F, Smilenov L, Chan SL, Chrest FJ, Emokpae R, Gorospe M, Mattson MP. Cell cycle activation linked to neuronal cell death initiated by DNA damage. *Neuron* 2004; **41**: 549-561 [PMID: 14980204 DOI: 10.1016/S0896-6273(04)00017-0]

48 **Vincent I**, Rosado M, Davies P. Mitotic mechanisms in Alzheimer's disease? *J Cell Biol* 1996; **132**: 413-425 [PMID: 8636218 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.132.3.413]

49 **Yang Y**, Geldmacher DS, Herrup K. DNA replication precedes neuronal cell death in Alzheimer's disease. *J Neurosci* 2001; **21**: 2661-2668 [PMID: 11306619]

50 **Mullaart E**, Boerrigter ME, Ravid R, Swaab DF, Vijg J. Increased levels of DNA breaks in cerebral cortex of Alzheimer's disease patients. *Neurobiol Aging* 1990; **11**: 169-173 [PMID: 2362649 DOI: 10.1016/0197-4580(90)90542-8]

51 **Lyras L**, Cairns NJ, Jenner A, Jenner P, Halliwell B. An assessment of oxidative damage to proteins, lipids, and DNA in brain from patients with Alzheimer's disease. *J Neurochem* 1997; **68**: 2061-2069 [PMID: 9109533 DOI: 10.1046/j.1471-4159.1997.68052061.x]

52 **Nguyen MD**, Boudreau M, Kriz J, Couillard-Després S, Kaplan DR, Julien JP. Cell cycle regulators in the neuronal death pathway of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis caused by mutant superoxide dismutase 1. *J Neurosci* 2003; **23**: 2131-2140 [PMID: 12657672]

53 **Martin LJ**, Liu Z, Chen K, Price AC, Pan Y, Swaby JA, Golden WC. Motor neuron degeneration in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis mutant superoxide dismutase-1 transgenic mice: mechanisms of mitochondriopathy and cell death. *J Comp Neurol* 2007; **500**: 20-46 [PMID: 17099894 DOI: 10.1002/cne.21160]

54 **Illuzzi J**, Yerkes S, Parekh-Olmedo H, Kmiec EB. DNA breakage and induction of DNA damage response proteins precede the appearance of visible mutant huntingtin aggregates. *J Neurosci Res* 2009; **87**: 733-747 [PMID: 18831068 DOI: 10.1002/jnr.21881]

55 **Pelegrí C**, Duran-Vilaregut J, del Valle J, Crespo-Biel N, Ferrer I, Pallàs M, Camins A, Vilaplana J. Cell cycle activation in striatal neurons from Huntington's disease patients and rats treated with 3-nitropropionic acid. *Int J Dev Neurosci* 2008; **26**: 665-671 [PMID: 18768156 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijdevneu.2008.07.016]

56 **Devine MJ**, Plun-Favreau H, Wood NW. Parkinson's disease and cancer: two wars, one front. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2011; **11**: 812-823 [PMID: 22020207 DOI: 10.1038/nrc3150]

57 **Höglinger GU**, Breunig JJ, Depboylu C, Rouaux C, Michel PP, Alvarez-Fischer D, Boutillier AL, Degregori J, Oertel WH, Rakic P, Hirsch EC, Hunot S. The pRb/E2F cell-cycle pathway mediates cell death in Parkinson's disease. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 3585-3590 [PMID: 17360686 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0611671104]

58 **Mandel SA**, Fishman T, Youdim MB. Gene and protein signatures in sporadic Parkinson's disease and a novel genetic model of PD. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2007; **13** Suppl 3: S242-S247 [PMID: 18267243 DOI: 10.1016/S1353-8020(08)70009-9]

59 **Kim D**, Tsai LH. Linking cell cycle reentry and DNA damage in neurodegeneration. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2009; **1170**: 674-679 [PMID: 19686210 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.2009.04105.x]

60 **Luger K**, Mäder AW, Richmond RK, Sargent DF, Richmond TJ. Crystal structure of the nucleosome core particle at 2.8 A resolution. *Nature* 1997; **389**: 251-260 [PMID: 9305837 DOI: 10.1038/38444]

61 **Kornberg RD**. Structure of chromatin. *Annu Rev Biochem* 1977; **46**: 931-954 [PMID: 332067 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.bi.46.070177.004435]

62 **Bannister AJ**, Kouzarides T. Regulation of chromatin by histone modifications. *Cell Res* 2011; **21**: 381-395 [PMID: 21321607 DOI: 10.1038/cr.2011.22]

63 **Talbert PB**, Henikoff S. Histone variants--ancient wrap artists of the epigenome. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2010; **11**: 264-275 [PMID: 20197778 DOI: 10.1038/nrm2861]

64 **Robinson PJ**, An W, Routh A, Martino F, Chapman L, Roeder RG, Rhodes D. 30 nm chromatin fibre decompaction requires both H4-K16 acetylation and linker histone eviction. *J Mol Biol* 2008; **381**: 816-825 [PMID: 18653199 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmb.2008.04.050]

65 **Shogren-Knaak M**, Ishii H, Sun JM, Pazin MJ, Davie JR, Peterson CL. Histone H4-K16 acetylation controls chromatin structure and protein interactions. *Science* 2006; **311**: 844-847 [PMID: 16469925 DOI: 10.1126/science.1124000]

66 **Hansen JC**, Wolffe AP. Influence of chromatin folding on transcription initiation and elongation by RNA polymerase III. *Biochemistry* 1992; **31**: 7977-7988 [PMID: 1510985]

67 **Akhtar A**, Becker PB. Activation of transcription through histone H4 acetylation by MOF, an acetyltransferase essential for dosage compensation in Drosophila. *Mol Cell* 2000; **5**: 367-375 [PMID: 10882077 DOI: 10.1016/S1097-2765(00)80431-1]

68 **Humpal SE**, Robinson DA, Krebs JE. Marks to stop the clock: histone modifications and checkpoint regulation in the DNA damage response. *Biochem Cell Biol* 2009; **87**: 243-253 [PMID: 19234538 DOI: 10.1139/O08-109]

69 **House NC**, Koch MR, Freudenreich CH. Chromatin modifications and DNA repair: beyond double-strand breaks. *Front Genet* 2014; **5**: 296

[PMID: 25250043 DOI: 10.3389/fgene.2014.00296]
70 **Polo SE**. Reshaping Chromatin after DNA Damage: The Choreography of Histone Proteins. *J Mol Biol* 2015; **427**: 626-636 [PMID: 24887097 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmb.2014.05.025]
71 **Mathis GA**, Althaus FR. Isolation of 8-methoxypsoralen accessible DNA domains from chromatin of intact cells. *Cell Biol Toxicol* 1990; **6**: 35-45 [PMID: 2334867 DOI: 10.1007/BF00135025]
72 **Frost B**, Hemberg M, Lewis J, Feany MB. Tau promotes neurodegeneration through global chromatin relaxation. *Nat Neurosci* 2014; **17**: 357-366 [PMID: 24464041 DOI: 10.1038/nn.3639]
73 **Arendt T**, Holzer M, Stöbe A, Gärtner U, Lüth HJ, Brückner MK, Ueberham U. Activated mitogenic signaling induces a process of dedifferentiation in Alzheimer's disease that eventually results in cell death. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2000; **920**: 249-255 [PMID: 11193159 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.2000.tb06931.x]
74 **Arendt T**. Alzheimer's disease as a disorder of mechanisms underlying structural brain self-organization. *Neuroscience* 2001; **102**: 723-765 [PMID: 11182240 DOI: 10.1016/S0306-4522(00)00516-9]
75 **Pan L**, Penney J, Tsai LH. Chromatin regulation of DNA damage repair and genome integrity in the central nervous system. *J Mol Biol* 2014; **426**: 3376-3388 [PMID: 25128619 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmb.2014.08.001]
76 **McKinnon PJ**. DNA repair deficiency and neurological disease. *Nat Rev Neurosci* 2009; **10**: 100-112 [PMID: 19145234 DOI: 10.1038/nrn2559]
77 **Coppedè F**, Migliore L. DNA damage and repair in Alzheimer's disease. *Curr Alzheimer Res* 2009; **6**: 36-47 [PMID: 19199873 DOI: 10.2174/156720509787313970]
78 **Dobbin MM**, Madabhushi R, Pan L, Chen Y, Kim D, Gao J, Ahanonu B, Pao PC, Qiu Y, Zhao Y, Tsai LH. SIRT1 collaborates with ATM and HDAC1 to maintain genomic stability in neurons. *Nat Neurosci* 2013; **16**: 1008-1015 [PMID: 23852118 DOI: 10.1038/nn.3460]
79 **Fishel ML**, Vasko MR, Kelley MR. DNA repair in neurons: so if they don't divide what's to repair? *Mutat Res* 2007; **614**: 24-36 [PMID: 16879837 DOI: 10.1016/j.mrfmmm.2006.06.007]
80 **Wang WY**, Pan L, Su SC, Quinn EJ, Sasaki M, Jimenez JC, Mackenzie IR, Huang EJ, Tsai LH. Interaction of FUS and HDAC1 regulates DNA damage response and repair in neurons. *Nat Neurosci* 2013; **16**: 1383-1391 [PMID: 24036913 DOI: 10.1038/nn.3514]
81 **Weissman L**, Jo DG, Sørensen MM, de Souza-Pinto NC, Markesbery WR, Mattson MP, Bohr VA. Defective DNA base excision repair in brain from individuals with Alzheimer's disease and amnestic mild cognitive impairment. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2007; **35**: 5545-5555 [PMID: 17704129 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkm605]
82 **Ly CV**, Verstreken P. Mitochondria at the synapse. *Neuroscientist* 2006; **12**: 291-299 [PMID: 16840705 DOI: 10.1177/1073858406287661]
83 **Martin LJ**. Biology of mitochondria in neurodegenerative diseases. *Prog Mol Biol Transl Sci* 2012; **107**: 355-415 [PMID: 22482456 DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-385883-2.00005-9]
84 **Wallace DC**. Mitochondrial DNA mutations in disease and aging. *Environ Mol Mutagen* 2010; **51**: 440-450 [PMID: 20544884 DOI: 10.1002/em.20586]
85 **Short KR**, Bigelow ML, Kahl J, Singh R, Coenen-Schimke J, Raghavakaimal S, Nair KS. Decline in skeletal muscle mitochondrial function with aging in humans. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 5618-5623 [PMID: 15800038 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0501559102]
86 **Chistiakov DA**, Sobenin IA, Revin VV, Orekhov AN, Bobryshev YV. Mitochondrial aging and age-related dysfunction of mitochondria. *Biomed Res Int* 2014; **2014**: 238463 [PMID: 24818134 DOI: 10.1155/2014/238463]
87 **Chaturvedi RK**, Flint Beal M. Mitochondrial diseases of the brain. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2013; **63**: 1-29 [PMID: 23567191 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2013.03.018]
88 **Borgesius NZ**, de Waard MC, van der Pluijm I, Omrani A, Zondag GC, van der Horst GT, Melton DW, Hoeijmakers JH, Jaarsma D, Elgersma Y. Accelerated age-related cognitive decline and neurodegeneration, caused by deficient DNA repair. *J Neurosci* 2011; **31**: 12543-12553 [PMID: 21880916 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.1589-11.2011]
89 **Vijg J**, Suh Y. Genome instability and aging. *Annu Rev Physiol* 2013; **75**: 645-668 [PMID: 23398157 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-physiol-030212-183715]
90 **Frank CL**, Tsai LH. Alternative functions of core cell cycle regulators in neuronal migration, neuronal maturation, and synaptic plasticity. *Neuron* 2009; **62**: 312-326 [PMID: 19447088 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuron.2009.03.029]
91 **Huang Z**, Zang K, Reichardt LF. The origin recognition core complex regulates dendrite and spine development in postmitotic neurons. *J Cell Biol* 2005; **170**: 527-535 [PMID: 16087709 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.200505075]
92 **Yang Y**, Kim AH, Bonni A. The dynamic ubiquitin ligase duo: Cdh1-APC and Cdc20-APC regulate neuronal morphogenesis and connectivity. *Curr Opin Neurobiol* 2010; **20**: 92-99 [PMID: 20060286 DOI: 10.1016/j.conb.2009.12.004]
93 **Li J**, Han YR, Plummer MR, Herrup K. Cytoplasmic ATM in neurons modulates synaptic function. *Curr Biol* 2009; **19**: 2091-2096 [PMID: 19962314 DOI: 10.1016/j.cub.2009.10.039]
94 **Odajima J**, Wills ZP, Ndassa YM, Terunuma M, Kretschmannova K, Deeb TZ, Geng Y, Gawrzak S, Quadros IM, Newman J, Das M, Jecrois ME, Yu Q, Li N, Bienvenu F, Moss SJ, Greenberg ME, Marto JA, Sicinski P. Cyclin E constrains Cdk5 activity to regulate synaptic plasticity and memory formation. *Dev Cell* 2011; **21**: 655-668 [PMID: 21944720 DOI: 10.1016/j.devcel.2011.08.009]
95 **Zhang J**, Cicero SA, Wang L, Romito-Digiacomo RR, Yang Y, Herrup K. Nuclear localization of Cdk5 is a key determinant in the postmitotic state of neurons. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 8772-8777 [PMID: 18550843 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0711355105]
96 **Jackson WS**, Borkowski AW, Watson NE, King OD, Faas H, Jasanoff A, Lindquist S. Profoundly different prion diseases in knock-in mice carrying single PrP codon substitutions associated with human diseases. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2013; **110**: 14759-14764 [PMID: 23959875 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1312006110]
97 **Wang H**, Tian C, Xu Y, Xie WL, Zhang J, Zhang BY, Ren K, Wang K, Chen C, Wang SB, Shi Q, Shao QX, Dong XP. Abortive cell cycle events in the brains of scrapie-infected hamsters with remarkable decreases of PLK3/Cdc25C and increases of PLK1/cyclin B1. *Mol Neurobiol* 2013; **48**: 655-668 [PMID: 23625313 DOI: 10.1007/s12035-013-8455-1]
98 **Seeburg DP**, Pak D, Sheng M. Polo-like kinases in the nervous system. *Oncogene* 2005; **24**: 292-298 [PMID: 15640845 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1208277]
99 **Jalland CM**, Benestad SL, Ersdal C, Scheffler K, Suganthan R, Nakabeppu Y, Eide L, Bjørås M, Tranulis MA. Accelerated clinical course of prion disease in mice compromised in repair of oxidative DNA damage. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2014; **68**: 1-7 [PMID: 24296244 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2013.11.013]
100 **Thackray AM**, Di Y, Zhang C, Wolf H, Pradl L, Vorberg I, Andréoletti O, Bujdoso R. Prion-induced and spontaneous formation of transmissible toxicity in PrP transgenic Drosophila. *Biochem J* 2014; **463**: 31-40 [PMID: 25000212 DOI: 10.1042/BJ20140129]
101 **Thackray AM**, Zhang C, Arndt T, Bujdoso R. Cytosolic PrP can participate in prion-mediated toxicity. *J Virol* 2014; **88**: 8129-8138 [PMID: 24807727 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00732-14]
102 **Thackray AM**, Muhammad F, Zhang C, Di Y, Jahn TR, Landgraf M, Crowther DC, Evers JF, Bujdoso R. Ovine PrP transgenic Drosophila show reduced locomotor activity and decreased survival. *Biochem J* 2012; **444**: 487-495 [PMID: 22435640 DOI: 10.1042/BJ20112141]
103 **Thackray AM**, Muhammad F, Zhang C, Denyer M, Spiropoulos J, Crowther DC, Bujdoso R. Prion-induced toxicity in PrP transgenic Drosophila. *Exp Mol Pathol* 2012; **92**: 194-201 [PMID: 22314254 DOI: 10.1016/j.yexmp.2012.01.005]
104 **Chiesa R**, Harris DA. Prion diseases: what is the neurotoxic molecule? *Neurobiol Dis* 2001; **8**: 743-763 [PMID: 11592845 DOI: 10.1006/nbdi.2001.0433]
105 **Aguzzi A**, Sigurdson C, Heikenwaelder M. Molecular mechanisms of prion pathogenesis. *Annu Rev Pathol* 2008; **3**: 11-40 [PMID: 18233951 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.pathmechdis.3.121806.154326]
106 **Borchelt DR**, Taraboulos A, Prusiner SB. Evidence for synthesis of scrapie prion proteins in the endocytic pathway. *J Biol Chem* 1992; **267**: 16188-16199 [PMID: 1353761]
107 **Taraboulos A**, Scott M, Semenov A, Avrahami D, Laszlo L, Prusiner

SB. Cholesterol depletion and modification of COOH-terminal targeting sequence of the prion protein inhibit formation of the scrapie isoform. *J Cell Biol* 1995; **129**: 121-132 [PMID: 7698979 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.129.1.121]

108 **Vey M**, Pilkuhn S, Wille H, Nixon R, DeArmond SJ, Smart EJ, Anderson RG, Taraboulos A, Prusiner SB. Subcellular colocalization of the cellular and scrapie prion proteins in caveolae-like membranous domains. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1996; **93**: 14945-14949 [PMID: 8962161 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.93.25.14945]

109 **Thackray AM**, Andréoletti O, Bujdoso R. Bioassay of plasma from prion-infected sheep in ovine PrP transgenic Drosophila. Meeting abstract, Prions: Epigenetics and Neurodegenerative Diseases. Trieste, Italy, 2014

P- Reviewer: Jeong BH, Musci G **S- Editor**: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.198

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 198-208
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Pharmacogenetics as a tool to tailor antiretroviral therapy: A review

Antonio Aceti, Laura Gianserra, Lara Lambiase, Alfredo Pennica, Elisabetta Teti

Antonio Aceti, Laura Gianserra, Lara Lambiase, Alfredo Pennica, Elisabetta Teti, Clinical Infectious Diseases, Sant'Andrea Hospital, Sapienza University of Rome, 00189 Rome, Italy

Author contributions: All authors contributed to this manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that there is no actual or potential conflict of interest in relation to this article.

Correspondence to: Antonio Aceti, Professor, Clinical Infectious Diseases, Sant'Andrea Hospital, Sapienza University of Rome, via Grottarossa 1035-1039, 00189 Rome, Italy. antonio.aceti@uniroma1.it
Telephone: +39-06-33775817
Fax: +39-06-33775073

Received: September 27, 2014
Peer-review started: September 28, 2014
First decision: December 17, 2014
Revised: July 8, 2015
Accepted: July 24, 2015
Article in press: July 27, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) has substantially changed human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection from an inexorably fatal condition into a chronic disease with a longer life expectancy. This means that HIV patients should receive antiretroviral drugs lifelong, and the problems concerning with a chronic treatment (tolerability, side effects, adherence to treatment) have now become dominant. In this context, strategies for the treatment personalization have taken a central role in optimizing the therapeutic response and prevention of adverse drug reactions. In this setting, the study of pharmacogenetics features could be a very useful tool in clinical practice; moreover, nowadays the study of genetic profiles allows optimizations in the therapeutic management of People Living With HIV (PLWH) through the use of test introduced into clinical practice and approved by international guidelines for the adverse effects prevention such as the genetic test HLA-B*5701 to detect hypersensitivity to Abacavir. For other tests further studies are needed: CYP2B6 516 G > T testing may be able to identify patients at higher risk of Central Nervous System side effects following standard dosing of Efavirenz, UGT1A1*28 testing before initiation of antiretroviral therapy containing Atazanavir may aid in identifying individuals at risk of hyperbilirubinaemia. Pharmacogenetics represents a research area with great growth potential which may be useful to guide the rational use of antiretrovirals.

Key words: Pharmacogenetics; Pharmacogenomics; Single nucleotide polymorphism; Pharmacokinetics; Highly active antiretroviral therapy; Polymorphism; Phenotype; Pharmacodynamic

Core tip: The wide availability of drugs and therapeutic regimens for the human immunodeficiency virus infection treatment and the presence of associated adverse effects related to interindividual variability leads the clinician to look for an individualized therapy as much as possible. Pharmacogenetics can provide useful tools for this purpose and can propose models of genetics tests that, however, need to be further studied. This paper aim is to provide a critical and understandable review of published literature and a guidance about future

prospects in this field.

Aceti A, Gianserra L, Lambiase L, Pennica A, Teti E. Pharmacogenetics as a tool to tailor antiretroviral therapy: A review. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 198-208 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/198.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.198

INTRODUCTION

The concept of personalized therapy is of increasing interest in the management of antiretroviral therapy and PLWH [people living with *human immunodeficiency virus* (HIV)], especially now, because we must confront with a chronic therapy that can count on a large number of possible combinations, but also on a number of individual issues of effectiveness, toxicity, tolerability and convenience. Pharmacogenomics, as well as the need for specific diagnostic tests for therapy customization, drug-drug interactions and TDM (Therapeutic Drug Monitoring) are emerging topics that, in a long-term management of HIV infection, will need to be explored during the doctor-patient interview.

Pharmacogenetics deals with the role of genes in response to drugs and it is well known that there is a variability between individuals in drugs response due to hereditary genetic factors.

The purpose of pharmacogenetics is to identify candidate genes, define the differences in the candidate genes among individuals, and to correlate the phenotype's changes - defined by a specific drug response - with the patient's genotype.

These studies, using technologies of high capacity for DNA analysis (such as DNA microarrays or DNA chips), have been extended, more recently, to the whole human genome analysis, taking into account the possibility that the drug response is influenced by a multitude of genes, not just those ones that code for proteins directly involved in the drug action, but also by the genes power to alter this response, exactly called "modifiers". The development of this research gave impetus to the development of pharmacogenomics.

"SNPs" (single nucleotide polymorphism) are the result of a single pair of bases substitution in DNA sequence. They are very common and present in every 1000 base pairs. The entire genome contains 3000000-10000000 SNPs and of these, one million and eight hundred thousand were characterized by SNP consortium. It is believed that each gene has between five and ten SNPs, although only less of 1% has got biological significance. This biological significance may come from substitution of an amino acid in a protein or by alterations in the expression of the protein due to SNPs in the promoter region. Polymorphisms affect the concentration and the half-life of the drug in the blood.

Drugs with concentrations and half-life in the blood higher than the average population indicate a decreased drug metabolism. However, a reduction of the drug concentration and half-life in the blood is indicative of a high metabolism of the drug. In the first case the adverse effects are increased, in the second case therapeutic effects are reduced. This example shows the importance of pharmacogenomics and the analysis of the whole genome to discover the complex mechanisms that determine the response to drugs.

The potential of pharmacogenomics is to identify patients with the same diagnosis but genetically different about the response to drugs in terms of efficacy anwd adverse reactions. Patients with an unfavourable pharmacogenetic profile must be treated with alternative drugs or different doses. Individuals with a pharmacogenetic profile compatible with a favorable response can be treated with medication and conventional doses. The results of genetic testing may be used by the physician to choose which drug can be used for the patient's treatment, to optimize the dose and to minimize the risk of side effects. The utility of the pharmacogenetic test, therefore, consists in the possibility of being able to evaluate the response of a patient to a certain drug on the basis of a genetic test routine, to customize the therapy.

Pharmacogenomics is thus an important key to achieve a predictive medicine aim to provide personalized therapy: the right drug at the right dose for the right patient.

Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) against HIV infection has considerably increased life expectancy and in this statement there is its great application in clinical daily. These drugs, however, have the disadvantage of relatively high incidence of side effects and a lack of response to therapy by some subjects. Pharmacogenomics could be particularly useful in the case of drugs, such as antiretrovirals, which have a narrow therapeutic index associated with pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic variables.

An example of pharmacogenomics, applied in the context of antiretroviral treatment and more generally in the pharmacological field, is evident in the use of the screening test for the HLAB5701 in clinical practice, able to detect hypersensitivity to Abacavir, recommended by international guidelines as a preparatory test to use this drug in an HIV patient's treatment regimen. This paper aim is to provide a critical and understandable review of published literature and a guidance about future prospects in this field.

PHARMACOGENETICS AND HAART TOXICITY

Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors

Abacavir is a nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor used in conjunction with other antiretroviral agents in the treatment of HIV infection and it is a popular choice for first-line treatment. Abacavir is generally well tolerated but can cause hypersensitivity in 5% to 8% of patients during the first 6 wk of treatment[1,2]; symptoms include fever, rash, constitutional symptoms, gastrointestinal tract symptoms, and respiratory symptoms (HRS -

Hypersensitivity Reaction Syndrome)[3]. Symptoms worsen with continued usage and can be potentially life threatening if the patient is rechallenged after discontinuation[4].

Hypersensitivity to Abacavir is immunologically mediated, driven by MHC-I antigen presentation and activation of HLA-B*5701. HLA-B*5701 activation restricted to CD8+ T-cells results in the secretion of inflammatory mediators (TNF-α and IFN-γ) and induces the delayed-type hypersensitivity reaction[5,6].

HLA-B*5701 allele occurs at approximately 5% frequency in European populations, 1% in Asian populations, and less than 1% in African populations. In immunologically confirmed hypersensitivity, HLA-B*5701 genotyping is associated with a negative predictive value of nearly 100% and a positive predictive value of approximately 50%: patients without the allele are highly unlikely to develop an immunological hypersensitivity to Abacavir, but only about half of those with the allele will develop HRS.

Thus, although the carriage rate of the HLA-B*5701 allele is low, stratification of patients for Abacavir treatment based on HLA-B*5701 genotyping could virtually eliminate immunologically confirmed hypersensitivity, and appears to be a cost effective healthcare practice[7].

Screening for HLA-B*5701 prior to initiation of Abacavir therapy is widely and strictly recommended for naïve HIV subjects that are going to start antiretroviral treatment; HLA-B*5701 - positive individuals should not be prescribed Abacavir. It should be also remarked that a negative HLA-B*5701 test does not preclude the development of a non-immunologic hypersensitivity reaction to Abacavir or of a clinical hypersensitivity reaction to another antiretroviral agent that may be given along with Abacavir, therefore genotyping should not substitute for clinical vigilance, but can greatly reduce the incidence of Abacavir hypersensitivity by identifying patients at high risk before they are treated[8-14].

Although other nucleoside/nucleotide analogues reverse transcriptase can induce renal damage (in particular, have been reported with Didanosine and Abacavir) there is no doubt that the drug of this class more involved in this effect is Tenofovir (TDF), a nucleotide analogue of adenosine 5 monophosphate administered orally at a dose of 300 mg once daily, in combination with other antiretroviral agents in naive patients' treatment. It is one of the most widely used drugs in patterns of antiretroviral therapy, being placed between the molecules to be preferred in all international guidelines. It can cause damage at the level of the proximal renal tubule[15].

TDF can cause renal toxicity (proximal tubular type), possible acute renal failure, Fanconi syndrome, creatinine dysfunction and hypophosphatemia. Tenofovir renal elimination includes a glomerular step and tubular phase of active secretion, that's why toxicity involves both a reduction in glomerular filtration and tubular function damage.

TDF penetrates, in fact, across the basolateral membrane of the tubular cells mainly through OAT1 and less through OAT3. The extracellular elimination is an active process dependent on MRP2 and MRP4 (members of a superfamily of ATP transporters, involved in the carriage of various molecules and drugs across cell membranes), proteins encoded by *ABCC4* and *ABCC2* genes. The nephrotoxicity mechanism of Tenofovir could be related to a compromised active efflux of TDF through the proximal renal tubule cells by the transporter called MRP2.

According to some studies, the renal proximal tubular epithelium is associated with genetic polymorphism (1249G > A) in the gene encoding the ABCC2-MRP2 transporter, but the positive value of screening in order to identify patients at risk of tubulopathy related to TDF is uncertain, considering this test low sensitivity[16].

Among the NRTIs (Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors), involved in pharmacogenetic studies, there are Lamivudine (3TC) and Zidovudine (AZT), usually in a fixed dose combination drug, for many years considered a very important however still widely used.

In particular, there are many studies that focus on the relationship between 3TC/AZT pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic profile and MDR1, MRP2 and MRP4 polymorphisms.

P-glycoprotein 1 (Permeability glycoprotein, P-gp) is a membrane glycoprotein pump function with the known activity to remove neutral or weakly basic amphipathic substances from the cytoplasm which were penetrated into the cell consuming ATP; it is encoded by *MDR1* gene (multidrug resistance protein 1), also known as ATP-binding cassette sub-family B member 1 (ABCB1). P-gp, MPR2 and MPR4 play a main role in determining the intracellular concentration of nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors. Concerning 3TC/FTC, it was observed in a 33 HIV patients population on antiretroviral regimen that included above formulation, that 3TC concentrations were elevated in 20% of subjects with MRP4 4131T > G variant carriers and that there was a trend of higher AZT concentrations in patients with MRP4 3724G > A variant carriers. However, this study and its subsequent observation are of uncertain clinical significance.

The onset of pancreatitis is related with the use of NRTIs and in particular with Didanosine.

It has been reported in 7% of patients treated with this drug; in a higher percentage of cases showed only increased amylase. In the field of genetic medicine, an increased risk of pancreatitis in the general population has been correlated with mutations in the CFTR (cystic fibrosis transmembrane regulator) responsible for several other clinical conditions such as cystic fibrosis and male infertility, and the mutations of serin protease inhibitor kazal-1 (SPINK-1) encoding a trypsin inhibitor in the cytoplasm of pancreatic acinar cells.

A case-control study conducted in the Swiss court aimed to asses the frequency of mutations in the CFTR and SPINK-1 polymorphisms in HIV-positive patients on antiretroviral regimen containing Didanosine with asymptomatic hyperamylasaemia or symptomatic pancreatitis;

this study suggests that CFTR mutations 1717-1G > A, IV585T and SPINK-1 polymorphism 112C > T are frequent in the studied population and may increase the susceptibility to pancreatitis in patients treated with NRTIs also exposed to additional risk factors, but further studies are needed to confirm these results[17].

Finally, some studies have been conducted to identify a possible correlation between specific mitochondrial polymorphisms and susceptibility to develop peripheral neuropathy (PN) in patients treated with NRTIs. Peripheral neuropathy complicates the clinical picture of HIV patients treated with NRTIs. This adverse event is definitely correlated to drugs belonging to this class because it has been reported also when these ones were taken as monotherapy. In particular, the neuropathy can occur with Didanosine, Zalcitabine and Stavudine. Clinical features of the drug-related PN are similar to the HIV-related neuropathy, but if there is a iatrogenic source PN has an onset and a more rapid progression and it is dose-related[18-20]. Prolonged exposure to NRTIs is associated with skeletal myopathy, lipoatrophy, fatty liver, metabolic acidosis and peripheral neuropathy that occurs with distal symmetrical anesthesia and/or paraesthesia painful structural abnormalities associated with mitochondrial DNA depletion. It has been investigated the association between polymorphisms MTND1 LHON4216C and MTND2 LHON4917G associated with LHON (Leber's Hereditary Optic Neuropathy) and PN in HIV-infected patients treated with NRTIs. The study found that 4917G polymorphism may increase susceptibility to the development of PN in patients treated with NRTIs. However, when subjects with 4917G were excluded from the analysis, the association with 4216C was no longer observed[21].

Considering the association between iron deficiency (essential for mitochondrial function) and some peripheral neuropathies in the general population, some studies have been conducted to examine a possible association between hemochromatosis gene mutations and susceptibility to peripheral neuropathy NRTI-induced, concluding that the iron burden mutations such as C282Y mutation might be associated with a reduced risk of PN in the course of NRTIs[22-25]. Nevertheless this association is particularly controversial.

Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors

NVP is a similar non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor (NNRTI) widely prescribed for HIV treatment. Although generally well tolerated and effective, some individuals exposed to NVP show hepatotoxicity and severe cutaneous adverse reactions, including SJS/TEN during the first weeks of therapy (on average 12 d after starting therapy)[26]. This hypersensitivity reaction looks like Abacavir HRS and it is frequent when naive young women with CD4 > 250 cells/μL and naive males with CD4 > 400 cells/μL are treated, these elements suggest that genetic factors may play an important predisposing role[27].

The results of some studies that evaluated the influence of genetic variability in response to NNRTIs treatment, suggest that the development of SJS/TEN is dependent on an immune mechanism. Some studies show a correlation between certain HLA alleles (HLA-B*58:01 and HLA-B*15:02) and the SJS/TEN induced by allopurinol or carbamazepine.

The HLA-DRB1*01 and CYP2B6 gene polymorphisms have been associated with the onset of rash from NVP[28]. Another study has identified the involvement of HLA-B*35:05 in the rash caused by NVP in a Thai population. In addition, an ABCB1 polymorphism (1 member of the ATP-binding cassette subfamily B), also known as MDR1 (encoding the multidrug resistance protein 1) was associated with a lower risk of developing hepatotoxicity. The ABCC10 (encoding the multidrug resistance-associated protein 7) polymorphism rs2125739 has recently been associated with plasma concentrations of NVP. Several studies have finally emphasized the role of NVP hepatotoxicity by CYP2B6 gene polymorphism (516G > T), with the 516TT genotype associated with higher plasma concentrations.

To date, no study, however, assessed the involvement of genetic factors in the SJS/TEN caused by NVP: the gene polymorphisms of cytochromes that metabolize the drug or transporters have been studied only in relation to hepatotoxicity and skin rash. For this reason, a retrospective study was conducted in a population of Mozambique treated with NVP, to test whether the genetic variability of the cytochromes genes metabolizing NVP (CYP2B6, CYP3A4, CYP3A5) and transporters (ABCB1 and ABCC10) could be involved in susceptibility to SJS/TEN. This study describes the relationship between genetic variants of CYP2B6 and the onset of SJS/TEN. In particular, it was found that the 983C allele confers a higher risk of these adverse reactions. It is clear that, since the SJS/TEN is a complex disease, CYP2B6 is just one of many factors involved.

It has been suggested that variants of the MDR1 gene coding for P-gp (the pump transporter efflux of many drugs) can influence Nevirapine toxicity, in particular polymorphism C > T position 3435 of MDR1 was associated with reduced risk of hepatotoxicity[29-33].

Efavirenz is a widely prescribed drug for the HIV infection treatment and in combination with two NRTIs is recommended as a first-line regimen in patients starting antiretroviral therapy. From a pharmacological point of view, Ffavirenz is a non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs) whose metabolism is mediated by Cytochrome P450 2B6 (CYP2B6), which is a genetically polymorphic enzyme. This drug is generally characterized by a good toxicity profile and high efficacy: however, some episodes of viral failure and conditions affecting the central nervous system (CNS) such as nightmares, dizziness, drowsiness, insomnia, inability to concentrate have been reported in some patients with a frequency that can involve approximately half of the patients especially within the first few weeks of treatment[34].

In ACTG 5095 and 5097s it was demonstrated that the presence of a single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) at position 516 of the CYP2B6 gene correlates with either

the presence of elevated Efavirenz plasma levels and the appearance of CNS adverse events. Subsequent papers also confirmed these findings. In other studies, moreover, similar associations even with the presence of a second polymorphism at position 983 of the CYP2B6 gene have been demonstrated. These two SNPs have a higher frequency in the African population; this phenomenon could therefore explain the particularly higher Efavirenz plasma levels observed in Africans subjects than in individuals of other ethnicities[35-37].

Finally, there is preliminary evidence that the presence of polymorphisms of other genes, such as ABCB1 coding for P-glycoprotein or *CYP3A5* gene, may significantly influence the viral response and/or the daily exposure to the drug in patients treated with Efavirenz. It has been amply demonstrated that the polymorphism increases the predictive value of 516/983 SNPs on the Efavirenz pharmacokinetics; instead, other genetic variants in genes *CYP2B6*, *CYP3A5* and *ABCB1* don't improve the predictive value of the model based on the 516/983 genotype[38].

Finally, this work suggests that the slow metabolizer genotype, according to the polymorphism 516 (G > T) and 983 (T > C), can lead to viral beneficial and that the reduction of the drug dose may increase the risk of viral failure.

The best models to predict the Efavirenz pharmacokinetics are based on the polymorphisms 516 and 983 genotypes: slow metabolizers of white ethnicity are at risk for CNS adverse events, while there is a reduction of the probability of viral failure in black patients.

The presence of a G > T single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) at position 516 of *CYP2B6* gene results in a Gln-His (Glutamine- Histidine) amino acid change associated with higher plasma EFV concentrations leading to increased drug- related side effects.

The *C3435T* change at a wobble position in exon 26 on chromosome 7 of the human genome has pharmacological consequences, and has been reported in a number of African populations and other ethnic groups in different populations. The frequency of the *C3435T* mutation is significantly influenced by ethnicity with marked differences in genotypes seen between different populations. Several studies have reported a high prevalence of the CC genotype in different African populations, and this prevalence implies overexpression of P-gp. In individuals with CC genotype, access of HIV protease inhibitors to major cellular targets known to express P-gp is restricted and this could have serious implications in the use of protease inhibitors. Patients with the T homozygous genotype have been shown to have low expression of P-gp. The C3435T SNP is also correlated with P-gp expression and function on lymphocytes but not on placenta. Several studies have reported significantly greater CD4 cell count in patients with the MDR1 3435TT genotype and these patients tend towards less pronounced viral infection than those patients with the CT or CC genotype[39,40].

Characterization of MDR1 and CYP2B6 enzymes and utilization of pharmacogenomic testing for identification of different alleles in patients may provide a useful tool for therapy optimization with drugs that are substrates of P-gp and those that are metabolised through the CYP2B6 pathway. CYP2B6 genotyping seems to be a useful tool to predict Efavirenz toxicity and resistance allowing patients to know that as poor metabolizers are at greater risk of increased plasma exposure of the drug and therefore of its adverse effects and probably resistance in case of drug discontinuation[41-47].

Protease inhibitors

Protease inhibitors (PIs) are mainly metabolized by CYP3A4 (the predominant form of Cytochrome P450) of which they also are inhibitors; especially ritonavir is an inhibitor of CYP3A4 and it is used as a booster to increase the plasma exposure of other PI. In view of the PI dual function as substrates and inhibitors, the impact of their polymorphisms is difficult to assess. Finally, PIs are also substrate of Pg-P.

Atazanavir is a widely used PI because of its long-term tolerability, its reduced pill burden and its power. The *UGT1A1* gene codes for the UDP glucuronosyltransferase enzyme (UGT1A1), which mediates bilirubin conjugation with glucuronic acid in the liver, then excreted in the bile. Atazanavir inhibits *UGT1A1*, leading to hyperbilirubinaemia and jaundice in certain subjects. The UGT1A1*28 allele is associated with increased risk of hyperbilirubinaemia during Atazanavir based treatment, and genotyping for UGT1A1*28 before starting antiretroviral treatment containing the aforementioned drug may aid to identify patients at higher risk of hyperbilirubinaemia. Subjects whit two copies of the gene variant (UGT1A1*28 homozygotes) have been reported to have the highest risk and UGT1A1*28 heterozygotes show an intermediate risk of developing hyperbilirubinaemia[48,49].

Atazanavir metabolism is partially due to P-gp efflux pump encoded by the *MDR1* gene, which seems to increase plasma concentrations of Atazanavir in presence of 3435 variable genetic homozygosis C/C, exposing the patient to a risk of hyperbilirubinemia and severe jaundice.

In summary, genotyping for *UGT1A1* and *MDR13435* before starting Atazanavir may help the clinician to identify those subjects at increased risk of exposure to high plasma levels of the drug and the consequent development of side effects[50,51].

In the post-HAART era the occurrence of treatment-related metabolic disorders was observed, among which the most frequent are dyslipidemia, insulin resistance, diabetes mellitus, lipodystrophy, all considered risk factors for cardiovascular events[52]. The genesis of these disorders is multifactorial so the genetic susceptibility of the single patient represents a new field of investigation.

Lipodystrophy is a long-term complication that deeply affects the quality of life of PLWH leading to the need to identify genetic predisposing factors that could optimize the therapeutic management. TNF expression in the adipose tissue plays an important pathogenic role in the abnormal visceral fat distribution; therefore

Table 1 Pharmacogenetics and highly active antiretroviral therapy toxicity

ARVs	Polymorphisms	Effects
NRTIs		
Abacavir (ABC)	HLA-B*5701	Hypersensitivity Reaction Syndrome
Tenofovir (TDF)	ABCC2-MRP2 (1249G > A)	Increased risk of tubulopathy
Lamivudine (3TC)	MRP4 4131T > G	Increased plasma concentrations
Zidovudine (AZT)	MRP4 3724 G > A	Increased plasma concentrations
Didanosine (ddI)	CFTR 1717-1G > A, IV585T,	Higher risk of pancreatitis
Didanosine (ddI), Zalcitabine (ddC), Stavudine (d4T)	SPINK-1 112C > T MTND1 LHON4216C, MTND2 LHON4917G	Leber's Hereditary Optic Neuropathy, Peripheral Neuropathy
NNRTIs		
Nevirapine (NVP)	HLA-B*58:01, *15:02, *35:05	Cutaneous rash, SJS/TEN
	ABCC10rs2125739, CYP2B6 516G > T	Increased plasma concentration, hepatotoxicity Reduced risk of hepatotoxicity
Efavirenz (EFV)	MDR1 3435C > T CYP2B6 G516T, T983C	Higher plasma concentrations, SNC side effects
PIs		
Atazanavir (ATV)	UGT1A1*28, MDR1 3435C/C	Hyperbilirubinemia and jaundice
All PIs	TNF gene 238G > A	Early onset of lypodistrophy
	APOA5 (1131T > C, 64G > C), APOC3 (482C > T, 455C > T, 3238C > G) ABCA1 2962A > G APOE (ε2, ε3 haplotypes)	High risk of dyslipidemia
Others		
Maraviroc (MVC)	SLC01B1 521T > C (rs4149056)	Increased plasma concentrations
Raltegravir (RAL)	UGT1A1*28	Increased plasma concentrations

several studies have been conducted in order to identify the genetic variants involved. It has been shown that the 238 variant was significantly more represented in HIV-infected patients with lipodystrophy than in those without. In particular polymorphism 238G > A appears to be related in some studies but not in others, to an early onset of lypodistrophyc process[53-59].

Regarding dyslipidemia, it is known that there is a correlation in the general population with genetic polymorphisms in apolipoproteins genes; some studies have attempted to reproduce this model even in the HIV population. Several studies showed promising results such as the demonstration of an association between *APOA5* gene polymorphisms (1131T > C and 64G > C) and an increased risk of hyperlipidemia.

Furthermore multiple studies identified some polymorphisms of APOC3 (482C > T, 455C > T, 3238C > G), ABCA1 (2962A > G) and APOE (ε2 and ε3 haplotypes) that are associated with a high risk of dyslipidemia[60-67].

Other antiretrovirals

Maraviroc (MVC), the only coreceptor CCR5 antagonist approved for clinical use, is a therapeutic chance for the treatment of the multiexperienced HIV patients (*i.e.*, with resistance to traditional drugs)[68-70]. A close correlation between MVC plasma levels and therapeutic effectiveness has been described, with the identification of a MEC (Minimum Effective Concentration) of 50 ng/mL. MVC plasma concentrations are the result of absorption, distribution, metabolic and elimination processes mediated by several proteins in different tissues. The hepatic uptake of MVC, and therefore its metabolism, is influenced by the action of a carrier protein, OATP1B1, encoded by *SLCO1B1* gene. It has been shown that the presence, in the heterozygous or homozygous status, C variant allele in the polymorphism 521T > C (rs4149056) SLC01B1 gene is correlated with an increase MVC plasma concentration. Genetic screening before prescribing this drug could be a help for the clinician for a customized therapy.

Raltegravir (RAL) is the first drug of a new antiretroviral class, the Integrase Inhibitors (INI). It is metabolized by UGT1A1 and its variant allele *28 in the homozygous status is associated to a reduction of the enzyme activity resulting in mild higher RAL plasma concentrations, but not statistically significant[71] (Table 1).

PHARMACOGENETICS AND HAART RESPONSE

It is well known that combination antiretroviral therapy has dramatically improved the survival rate and the quality of life of PLWH due to the powerful effect on the viral suppression and immune recovery, that's why the most important surrogate parameters used for the evaluation of the HAART response are represented by the viral load (HIV-RNA) and the CD4+ count.

Several pharmacogenetic studies have been conducted in order to establish a relationship between patients' genetic predisposition and susceptibility to the antiretroviral therapy efficacy, but the obtained data are inconsistent and often conflicting, this is probably due to a partial genetic analysis, different categorization of poor immune recovery or due to small numbers of patients

Table 2 Pharmacogenetics and highly active antiretroviral therapy response

Polymorphisms	Drug response
CYP3A5*1	Increased PIs clearance
CYP2B6 rs3475274, rs28399499	Increased EFV and NVP plasma concentrations
ABCB1 3435C > T	Better viral responses to EFV exposure
ABCB1 rs1045642 (3435T > C)	CT/CC genotype associated with higher CD4 count in EFV, 3TC, NVP containing regimen

PIs: Protease inhibitors; NVP: Nevirapine; EFV: Efavirenz.

evaluated[72].

Drug metabolism through CYP450 system has emerged as an important determinant of several drugs interactions and several efforts are conducted to demonstrate its utility to target an optimal therapeutic regimen in term of drug response.

Among this family of enzymes, the majority of drugs actually used in clinical practice are metabolized by CYP3A4 and CYP3A5 which currently show the most individual variations of gene expression, mainly caused by Single Nucleotide Polymorphisms (SNPs).

As mentioned before there are currently six different classes of antiretrovirals which interferes with the HIV life cycle at a different stage.

CYPs that are primarily involved in the metabolism of NNRTIs and NRTI are CYP2B6 and to a lesser extent CYP3A4. By contrast to the NNRTIs, the large part of PIs are metabolized by the CYP3A enzyme system. CYP enzymes in human liver, in particular CYP3A4, play a pivotal role in PI biotransformation, converting these agents to inactive metabolites[73].

Associations between human CYP3A4 and CYP3A5 genetic variants and predisposition to therapy failure has often been hypothesized and described, mainly in HIV-infected patients treated with Protease Inhibitors whose metabolism is affected by induction or inhibition of CYP3A

Indeed, several recent studies have suggested that the disposition of certain PIs might predicted by CYP3A5*1 genotype. A report published by Mouly *et al*[74] show an association between increased Saquinavir clearance and this genetic variant of the enzyme. The CYP3A5*1 genotype has also been related to 44% faster Indinavir oral clearance in 11 HIV patients[20].

One of the most of robust examples of a pharmacokinetic association is observed with genetic variation in the *CYP2B6* gene and the NNRTI efavirenz and nevirapine. CYP2B6 loss of function alleles (rs3475274 and rs28399499) are associated with pharmacokinetic characteristics of NNRTIs. The metabolizer phenotype predicts Efavirenz and Nevirapine plasma concentrations and clinical response to these drugs[75-77].

Regarding clinical response an association between the metabolizer phenotype and virological failure in African-American has been suggested[78].

The minor allele T at rs3745274 causes a decreased expression and activity of CYP2B6 in the liver. In some studies it has been demonstrated that carriers of the TT genotype compared to GG/GT genotypes experienced an over 3-fold increase in Efavirenz concentrations[79].

Patients with CYP2B6 intermediate and slow metabolizer phenotypes achieve undetectable viral loads after treatment with NNRTIs: the association of the phenotype and response to drugs has important potential for clinical decision-making.

Polymorphisms in ABCB1, which encodes P-glicoprotein, may predict altered pharmacokinetics of some drugs. Two studies suggested that ABCB13435C → T predicted more favourable viral responses to Efavirenz containing regimens[80].

Many studies have assessed the potential association of ABCB1 polymorphisms with changes in drug response, some of these have specifically examined a potential association of genotype with outcome in HIV infected patients; it has been studied the relationship between rs1045642 (3435T > C) genotype with viral load and CD4 count in HIV patients treated with Efavirenz and Nevirapine containing regimens; after 6 mo of these therapies, people having TT genotype showed a significantly higher CD4 count than those having a CT/CC genotype; on the contrary no correlation statistically significant was found with viral load.

Similar results emerged from studies about 3TC and Nevirapine[81] (Table 2).

CONCLUSION

The wide availability of drugs and therapeutic regimens for the HIV infection treatment and the presence of associated adverse effects related to interindividual variability leads the clinician to look for an individualized therapy as much as possible. Pharmacogenetics can provide useful tools for this purpose and can propose models of genetic tests that, however, need to be further studied.

The correlation between genetic variables and the HRS to Abacavir is now recognized as such and therefore its administration is related to the presence of favorable genotypes (negative HLAB5701). The genetic variability related to the adverse effects of Efavirenz and Atazanavir are similarly promising, but not yet present in clinical practice. It is desiderable, considering the need for tailored regimes, pursuing further studies to identify a statically significant correlation between specific genetic profiles and adverse effects related to other antiretroviral drugs (Nevirapine hepatotoxicity, proximal tubulopathy due to Tenofovir, peripheral neuropathy, lipodystrophy, metabolic alterations).

Pharmacogenomics seems to be potentially useful not only in its ability to identify individual susceptibility to drug toxicity, but also in terms of pre-treatment assessment of the patient's individual response to a particular drugs combination. Despite several studies recognize this potential, actually there are no strong

enough data. The analysis of the literature reveals a need for further studies that provide greater sample size, but also a valid model for genetic analysis.

In conclusion, pharmacogenetics represent a way to go toward the goal of personalized medicine in the field of HIV infection, to obtain a therapeutic response optimization of the single patient, a reduction of toxicity HAART related, a lower risk of drug-drug interactions, a right therapeutic dose.

REFERENCES

1 **Hetherington S**, Hughes AR, Mosteller M, Shortino D, Baker KL, Spreen W, Lai E, Davies K, Handley A, Dow DJ, Fling ME, Stocum M, Bowman C, Thurmond LM, Roses AD. Genetic variations in HLA-B region and hypersensitivity reactions to abacavir. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 1121-1122 [PMID: 11943262 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)08158-8]

2 **Hetherington S**, McGuirk S, Powell G, Cutrell A, Naderer O, Spreen B, Lafon S, Pearce G, Steel H. Hypersensitivity reactions during therapy with the nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor abacavir. *Clin Ther* 2001; **23**: 1603-1614 [PMID: 11726000 DOI: 10.1016/S0149-2918(01)80132-6]

3 **Clay PG**. The abacavir hypersensitivity reaction: a review. *Clin Ther* 2002; **24**: 1502-1514 [PMID: 12462283 DOI: 10.1016/S0149-2918(02)80057-1]

4 **Escaut L**, Liotier JY, Albengres E, Cheminot N, Vittecoq D. Abacavir rechallenge has to be avoided in case of hypersensitivity reaction. *AIDS* 1999; **13**: 1419-1420 [PMID: 10449301 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-199907300-00026]

5 **Chung WH**, Hung SI, Chen YT. Human leukocyte antigens and drug hypersensitivity. *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol* 2007; **7**: 317-323 [PMID: 17620823 DOI: 10.1097/ACI.0b013e3282370c5f]

6 **Martin AM**, Nolan D, Gaudieri S, Almeida CA, Nolan R, James I, Carvalho F, Phillips E, Christiansen FT, Purcell AW, McCluskey J, Mallal S. Predisposition to abacavir hypersensitivity conferred by HLA-B*5701 and a haplotypic Hsp70-Hom variant. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2004; **101**: 4180-4185 [PMID: 15024131 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0307067101]

7 **Hughes DA**, Vilar FJ, Ward CC, Alfirevic A, Park BK, Pirmohamed M. Cost-effectiveness analysis of HLA B*5701 genotyping in preventing abacavir hypersensitivity. *Pharmacogenetics* 2004; **14**: 335-342 [PMID: 15247625 DOI: 10.1097/00008571-200406000-00002]

8 **Mallal S**, Nolan D, Witt C, Masel G, Martin AM, Moore C, Sayer D, Castley A, Mamotte C, Maxwell D, James I, Christiansen FT. Association between presence of HLA-B*5701, HLA-DR7, and HLA-DQ3 and hypersensitivity to HIV-1 reverse-transcriptase inhibitor abacavir. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 727-732 [PMID: 11888582 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)07873-X]

9 **Mallal S**, Phillips E, Carosi G, Molina JM, Workman C, Tomazic J, Jägel-Guedes E, Rugina S, Kozyrev O, Cid JF, Hay P, Nolan D, Hughes S, Hughes A, Ryan S, Fitch N, Thorborn D, Benbow A. HLA-B*5701 screening for hypersensitivity to abacavir. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 568-579 [PMID: 18256392 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0706135]

10 **Hoehe MR**, Timmermann B, Lehrach H. Human inter-individual DNA sequence variation in candidate genes, drug targets, the importance of haplotypes and pharmacogenomics. *Curr Pharm Biotechnol* 2003; **4**: 351-378 [PMID: 14683431 DOI: 10.2174/1389201033377300]

11 **Hughes AR**, Mosteller M, Bansal AT, Davies K, Haneline SA, Lai EH, Nangle K, Scott T, Spreen WR, Warren LL, Roses AD. Association of genetic variations in HLA-B region with hypersensitivity to abacavir in some, but not all, populations. *Pharmacogenomics* 2004; **5**: 203-211 [PMID: 15016610 DOI: 10.1517/phgs.5.2.203.27481]

12 **Easterbrook PJ**, Waters A, Murad S, Ives N, Taylor C, King D, Vyakarnam A, Thorburn D. Epidemiological risk factors for hypersensitivity reactions to abacavir. *HIV Med* 2003; **4**: 321-324 [PMID: 14525543 DOI: 10.1046/j.1468-1293.2003.00166.x]

13 **Peyrieère H**, Nicolas J, Siffert M, Demoly P, Hillaire-Buys D, Reynes J. Hypersensitivity related to abacavir in two members of a family. *Ann Pharmacother* 2001; **35**: 1291-1292 [PMID: 11675863 DOI: 10.1345/aph.1A022]

14 **Rauch A**, Nolan D, Martin A, McKinnon E, Almeida C, Mallal S. Prospective genetic screening decreases the incidence of abacavir hypersensitivity reactions in the Western Australian HIV cohort study. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **43**: 99-102 [PMID: 16758424 DOI: 10.1086/504874]

15 **Madeddu G**, Bonfanti P, De Socio GV, Carradori S, Grosso C, Marconi P, Penco G, Rosella E, Miccolis S, Melzi S, Mura MS, Landonio S, Ricci E, Quirino T. Tenofovir renal safety in HIV-infected patients: results from the SCOLTA Project. *Biomed Pharmacother* 2008; **62**: 6-11 [PMID: 17574807 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopha.2007.04.008]

16 **Imaoka T**, Kusuhara H, Adachi M, Schuetz JD, Takeuchi K, Sugiyama Y. Functional involvement of multidrug resistance-associated protein 4 (MRP4/ABCC4) in the renal elimination of the antiviral drugs adefovir and tenofovir. *Mol Pharmacol* 2007; **71**: 619-627 [PMID: 17110501 DOI: 10.1124/mol.106.028233]

17 **Felley C**, Morris MA, Wonkam A, Hirschel B, Flepp M, Wolf K, Furrer H, Battegay M, Bernasconi E, Telenti A, Frossard JL. The role of CFTR and SPINK-1 mutations in pancreatic disorders in HIV-positive patients: a case-control study. *AIDS* 2004; **18**: 1521-1527 [PMID: 15238770 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000131356.52457.7a]

18 **Keswani SC**, Pardo CA, Cherry CL, Hoke A, McArthur JC. HIV-associated sensory neuropathies. *AIDS* 2002; **16**: 2105-2117 [PMID: 12409731 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200211080-00002]

19 **Anderson PL**, Kakuda TN, Lichtenstein KA. The cellular pharmacology of nucleoside- and nucleotide-analogue reverse-transcriptase inhibitors and its relationship to clinical toxicities. *Clin Infect Dis* 2004; **38**: 743-753 [PMID: 14986261 DOI: 10.1086/381678]

20 **Anderson PL**, Lamba J, Aquilante CL, Schuetz E, Fletcher CV. Pharmacogenetic characteristics of indinavir, zidovudine, and lamivudine therapy in HIV-infected adults: a pilot study. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2006; **42**: 441-449 [PMID: 16791115 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000225013.53568.69]

21 **Canter JA**, Haas DW, Kallianpur AR, Ritchie MD, Robbins GK, Shafer RW, Clifford DB, Murdock DG, Hulgan T. The mitochondrial pharmacogenomics of haplogroup T: MTND2*LHON4917G and antiretroviral therapy-associated peripheral neuropathy. *Pharmacogenomics J* 2008; **8**: 71-77 [PMID: 17684475 DOI: 10.1038/sj.tpj.6500470]

22 **Costarelli S**, Torti C, Gatta LB, Tinelli C, Lapadula G, Quiros-Roldan E, Izzo I, Castelnuovo F, Biasiotto G, Arosio P, Carosi G. No evidence of relation between peripheral neuropathy and presence of hemochromatosis gene mutations in HIV-1-positive patients. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2007; **46**: 255-256 [PMID: 17895769 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3180ed44d9]

23 **Wallace DC**, Brown MD, Lott MT. Mitochondrial DNA variation in human evolution and disease. *Gene* 1999; **238**: 211-230 [PMID: 10570998 DOI: 10.1016/S0378-1119(99)00295-4]

24 **Wallace DC**. Mitochondrial DNA sequence variation in human evolution and disease. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1994; **91**: 8739-8746 [PMID: 8090716 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.91.19.8739]

25 **Kallianpur AR**, Hulgan T, Canter JA, Ritchie MD, Haines JL, Robbins GK, Shafer RW, Clifford DB, Haas DW. Hemochromatosis (HFE) gene mutations and peripheral neuropathy during antiretroviral therapy. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 1503-1513 [PMID: 16847405 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000237366.56864.3c]

26 **Baylor MS**, Johann-Liang R. Hepatotoxicity associated with nevirapine use. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2004; **35**: 538-539 [PMID: 15021321 DOI: 10.1097/00126334-200404150-00014]

27 **Dieterich DT**, Robinson PA, Love J, Stern JO. Drug-induced liver injury associated with the use of nonnucleoside reverse-transcriptase inhibitors. *Clin Infect Dis* 2004; **38** Suppl 2: S80-S89 [PMID: 14986279 DOI: 10.1086/381450]

28 **Martin AM**, Nolan D, James I, Cameron P, Keller J, Moore C, Phillips E, Christiansen FT, Mallal S. Predisposition to nevirapine hypersensitivity associated with HLA-DRB1*0101 and abrogated by low CD4 T-cell counts. *AIDS* 2005; **19**: 97-99 [PMID: 15627041 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200501030-00014]

29 **Wang D**, Johnson AD, Papp AC, Kroetz DL, Sadée W. Multidrug resistance polypeptide 1 (MDR1, ABCB1) variant 3435C& gt; T affects mRNA stability. *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 2005; **15**: 693-704 [PMID: 16141795 DOI: 10.1097/01.fpc.0000178311.02878.83]

30 **Ritchie MD**, Haas DW, Motsinger AA, Donahue JP, Erdem H, Raffanti S, Rebeiro P, George AL, Kim RB, Haines JL, Sterling TR. Drug transporter and metabolizing enzyme gene variants and nonnucleoside reverse-transcriptase inhibitor hepatotoxicity. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **43**: 779-782 [PMID: 16912956 DOI: 10.1086/507101]

31 **Haas DW**, Bartlett JA, Andersen JW, Sanne I, Wilkinson GR, Hinkle J, Rousseau F, Ingram CD, Shaw A, Lederman MM, Kim RB. Pharmacogenetics of nevirapine-associated hepatotoxicity: an Adult AIDS Clinical Trials Group collaboration. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **43**: 783-786 [PMID: 16912957 DOI: 10.1086/507097]

32 **Gatanaga H**, Yazaki H, Tanuma J, Honda M, Genka I, Teruya K, Tachikawa N, Kikuchi Y, Oka S. HLA-Cw8 primarily associated with hypersensitivity to nevirapine. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 264-265 [PMID: 17197830 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32801199d9]

33 **Vitezica ZG**, Milpied B, Lonjou C, Borot N, Ledger TN, Lefebvre A, Hovnanian A. HLA-DRB1*01 associated with cutaneous hypersensitivity induced by nevirapine and efavirenz. *AIDS* 2008; **22**: 540-541 [PMID: 18301070 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3282f37812]

34 **Haas DW**, Ribaudo HJ, Kim RB, Tierney C, Wilkinson GR, Gulick RM, Clifford DB, Hulgan T, Marzolini C, Acosta EP. Pharmacogenetics of efavirenz and central nervous system side effects: an Adult AIDS Clinical Trials Group study. *AIDS* 2004; **18**: 2391-2400 [PMID: 15622315]

35 **Rotger M**, Tegude H, Colombo S, Cavassini M, Furrer H, Décosterd L, Blievernicht J, Saussele T, Günthard HF, Schwab M, Eichelbaum M, Telenti A, Zanger UM. Predictive value of known and novel alleles of CYP2B6 for efavirenz plasma concentrations in HIV-infected individuals. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **81**: 557-566 [PMID: 17235330 DOI: 10.1038/sj.clpt.6100072]

36 **Rotger M**, Colombo S, Furrer H, Bleiber G, Buclin T, Lee BL, Keiser O, Biollaz J, Décosterd L, Telenti A. Influence of CYP2B6 polymorphism on plasma and intracellular concentrations and toxicity of efavirenz and nevirapine in HIV-infected patients. *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 2005; **15**: 1-5 [PMID: 15864119 DOI: 10.1097/01213011-200501000-00001]

37 **Saitoh A**, Fletcher CV, Brundage R, Alvero C, Fenton T, Hsia K, Spector SA. Efavirenz pharmacokinetics in HIV-1-infected children are associated with CYP2B6-G516T polymorphism. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2007; **45**: 280-285 [PMID: 17356468 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e318040b29e]

38 **Marzolini C**, Telenti A, Decosterd LA, Greub G, Biollaz J, Buclin T. Efavirenz plasma levels can predict treatment failure and central nervous system side effects in HIV-1-infected patients. *AIDS* 2001; **15**: 71-75 [PMID: 11192870 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200106150-00023]

39 **Winzer R**, Langmann P, Zilly M, Tollmann F, Schubert J, Klinker H, Weissbrich B. No influence of the P-glycoprotein genotype (MDR1 C3435T) on plasma levels of lopinavir and efavirenz during antiretroviral treatment. *Eur J Med Res* 2003; **8**: 531-534 [PMID: 14711599]

40 **Fellay J**, Marzolini C, Meaden ER, Back DJ, Buclin T, Chave JP, Decosterd LA, Furrer H, Opravil M, Pantaleo G, Retelska D, Ruiz L, Schinkel AH, Vernazza P, Eap CB, Telenti A. Response to antiretroviral treatment in HIV-1-infected individuals with allelic variants of the multidrug resistance transporter 1: a pharmacogenetics study. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 30-36 [PMID: 11809184 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)07276-8]

41 **Gatanaga H**, Hayashida T, Tsuchiya K, Yoshino M, Kuwahara T, Tsukada H, Fujimoto K, Sato I, Ueda M, Horiba M, Hamaguchi M, Yamamoto M, Takata N, Kimura A, Koike T, Gejyo F, Matsushita S, Shirasaka T, Kimura S, Oka S. Successful efavirenz dose reduction in HIV type 1-infected individuals with cytochrome P450 2B6 *6 and *26. *Clin Infect Dis* 2007; **45**: 1230-1237 [PMID: 17918089 DOI: 10.1086/522175]

42 **Motsinger AA**, Ritchie MD, Shafer RW, Robbins GK, Morse GD, Labbe L, Wilkinson GR, Clifford DB, D'Aquila RT, Johnson VA, Pollard RB, Merigan TC, Hirsch MS, Donahue JP, Kim RB, Haas DW. Multilocus genetic interactions and response to efavirenz-containing regimens: an adult AIDS clinical trials group study. *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 2006; **16**: 837-845 [PMID: 17047492 DOI: 10.1097/01.fpc.0000230413.97596.fa]

43 **Ribaudo HJ**, Haas DW, Tierney C, Kim RB, Wilkinson GR, Gulick RM, Clifford DB, Marzolini C, Fletcher CV, Tashima KT, Kuritzkes DR, Acosta EP. Pharmacogenetics of plasma efavirenz exposure after treatment discontinuation: an Adult AIDS Clinical Trials Group Study. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **42**: 401-407 [PMID: 16392089 DOI: 10.1086/499364]

44 **Torno MS**, Witt MD, Saitoh A, Fletcher CV. Successful use of reduced-dose efavirenz in a patient with human immunodeficiency virus infection: case report and review of the literature. *Pharmacotherapy* 2008; **28**: 782-787 [PMID: 18503405 DOI: 10.1592/phco.28.6.782]

45 **Tsuchiya K**, Gatanaga H, Tachikawa N, Teruya K, Kikuchi Y, Yoshino M, Kuwahara T, Shirasaka T, Kimura S, Oka S. Homozygous CYP2B6 *6 (Q172H and K262R) correlates with high plasma efavirenz concentrations in HIV-1 patients treated with standard efavirenz-containing regimens. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2004; **319**: 1322-1326 [PMID: 15194512 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2004.05.116]

46 **Wang J**, Sönnerborg A, Rane A, Josephson F, Lundgren S, Ståhle L, Ingelman-Sundberg M. Identification of a novel specific CYP2B6 allele in Africans causing impaired metabolism of the HIV drug efavirenz. *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 2006; **16**: 191-198 [PMID: 16495778]

47 **Wyen C**, Hendra H, Vogel M, Hoffmann C, Knechten H, Brockmeyer NH, Bogner JR, Rockstroh J, Esser S, Jaeger H, Harrer T, Mauss S, van Lunzen J, Skoetz N, Jetter A, Groneuer C, Fätkenheuer G, Khoo SH, Egan D, Back DJ, Owen A. Impact of CYP2B6 983T& gt; C polymorphism on non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor plasma concentrations in HIV-infected patients. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2008; **61**: 914-918 [PMID: 18281305 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkn029]

48 **Busti AJ**, Hall RG, Margolis DM. Atazanavir for the treatment of human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Pharmacotherapy* 2004; **24**: 1732-1747 [PMID: 15585441 DOI: 10.1592/phco.24.17.1732.52347]

49 **Monaghan G**, Ryan M, Seddon R, Hume R, Burchell B. Genetic variation in bilirubin UPD-glucuronosyltransferase gene promoter and Gilbert's syndrome. *Lancet* 1996; **347**: 578-581 [PMID: 8596320 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(96)91273-8]

50 **Rodríguez Nóvoa S**, Barreiro P, Rendón A, Barrios A, Corral A, Jiménez-Nacher I, González-Lahoz J, Soriano V. Plasma levels of atazanavir and the risk of hyperbilirubinemia are predicted by the 3435C--& gt; T polymorphism at the multidrug resistance gene 1. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **42**: 291-295 [PMID: 16355344]

51 **Rodríguez-Nóvoa S**, Martín-Carbonero L, Barreiro P, González-Pardo G, Jiménez-Nácher I, González-Lahoz J, Soriano V. Genetic factors influencing atazanavir plasma concentrations and the risk of severe hyperbilirubinemia. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 41-46 [PMID: 17148966 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328011d7c1]

52 **Wohl DA**, McComsey G, Tebas P, Brown TT, Glesby MJ, Reeds D, Shikuma C, Mulligan K, Dube M, Wininger D, Huang J, Revuelta M, Currier J, Swindells S, Fichtenbaum C, Basar M, Tungsiripat M, Meyer W, Weihe J, Wanke C. Current concepts in the diagnosis and management of metabolic complications of HIV infection and its therapy. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **43**: 645-653 [PMID: 16886161 DOI: 10.1086/507333]

53 **Hajeer AH**, Hutchinson IV. Influence of TNFalpha gene polymorphisms on TNFalpha production and disease. *Hum*

Immunol 2001; **62**: 1191-1199 [PMID: 11704281 DOI: 10.1016/S0198-8859(01)00322-6]

54 **Maher B**, Alfirevic A, Vilar FJ, Wilkins EG, Park BK, Pirmohamed M. TNF-alpha promoter region gene polymorphisms in HIV-positive patients with lipodystrophy. *AIDS* 2002; **16**: 2013-2018 [PMID: 12370499 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200210180-00005]

55 **Wand H**, Calmy A, Carey DL, Samaras K, Carr A, Law MG, Cooper DA, Emery S. Metabolic syndrome, cardiovascular disease and type 2 diabetes mellitus after initiation of antiretroviral therapy in HIV infection. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 2445-2453 [PMID: 18025881 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3282efad32]

56 **Yasuda K**, Matsunaga T, Adachi T, Aoki N, Tsujimoto G, Tsuda K. Adrenergic receptor polymorphisms and autonomic nervous system function in human obesity. *Trends Endocrinol Metab* 2006; **17**: 269-275 [PMID: 16860568 DOI: 10.1016/j.tem.2006.07.001]

57 **Arnedo M**, Taffé P, Sahli R, Furrer H, Hirschel B, Elzi L, Weber R, Vernazza P, Bernasconi E, Darioli R, Bergmann S, Beckmann JS, Telenti A, Tarr PE. Contribution of 20 single nucleotide polymorphisms of 13 genes to dyslipidemia associated with antiretroviral therapy. *Pharmacogenet Genomics* 2007; **17**: 755-764 [PMID: 17700364 DOI: 10.1097/FPC.0b013e32814db8b7]

58 **Asensi V**, Rego C, Montes AH, Collazos J, Carton JA, Castro MG, Alvarez V, Fernández C, Maradona JA, Valle-Garay E. IL-1beta (+3954C/T) polymorphism could protect human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected patients on highly active antiretroviral treatment (HAART) against lipodystrophic syndrome. *Genet Med* 2008; **10**: 215-223 [PMID: 18344712 DOI: 10.1097/GIM.0b013e3181632713]

59 **Carr A**, Samaras K, Thorisdottir A, Kaufmann GR, Chisholm DJ, Cooper DA. Diagnosis, prediction, and natural course of HIV-1 protease-inhibitor-associated lipodystrophy, hyperlipidaemia, and diabetes mellitus: a cohort study. *Lancet* 1999; **353**: 2093-2099 [PMID: 10382692]

60 **Fauvel J**, Bonnet E, Ruidavets JB, Ferrières J, Toffoletti A, Massip P, Chap H, Perret B. An interaction between apo C-III variants and protease inhibitors contributes to high triglyceride/low HDL levels in treated HIV patients. *AIDS* 2001; **15**: 2397-2406 [PMID: 11740190 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200112070-00007]

61 **Foulkes AS**, Wohl DA, Frank I, Puleo E, Restine S, Wolfe ML, Dube MP, Tebas P, Reilly MP. Associations among race/ethnicity, ApoC-III genotypes, and lipids in HIV-1-infected individuals on antiretroviral therapy. *PLoS Med* 2006; **3**: e52 [PMID: 16417409 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.0030052]

62 **Guardiola M**, Ferré R, Salazar J, Alonso-Villaverde C, Coll B, Parra S, Masana L, Ribalta J. Protease inhibitor-associated dyslipidemia in HIV-infected patients is strongly influenced by the APOA5-1131T-> C gene variation. *Clin Chem* 2006; **52**: 1914-1919 [PMID: 16887900 DOI: 10.1373/clinchem.2006.069583]

63 **Lichtenstein KA**, Delaney KM, Armon C, Ward DJ, Moorman AC, Wood KC, Holmberg SD. Incidence of and risk factors for lipoatrophy (abnormal fat loss) in ambulatory HIV-1-infected patients. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2003; **32**: 48-56 [PMID: 12514413 DOI: 10.1097/00126334-200301010-00007]

64 **Safrin S**, Grunfeld C. Fat distribution and metabolic changes in patients with HIV infection. *AIDS* 1999; **13**: 2493-2505 [PMID: 10630518 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-199912240-00002]

65 **Santos CP**, Felipe YX, Braga PE, Ramos D, Lima RO, Segurado AC. Self-perception of body changes in persons living with HIV/AIDS: prevalence and associated factors. *AIDS* 2005; **19** Suppl 4: S14-S21 [PMID: 16249648 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000191485.92285.c7]

66 **Tarr PE**, Taffé P, Bleiber G, Furrer H, Rotger M, Martinez R, Hirschel B, Battegay M, Weber R, Vernazza P, Bernasconi E, Darioli R, Rickenbach M, Ledergerber B, Telenti A. Modeling the influence of APOC3, APOE, and TNF polymorphisms on the risk of antiretroviral therapy-associated lipid disorders. *J Infect Dis* 2005; **191**: 1419-1426 [PMID: 15809899]

67 **Zanone Poma B**, Riva A, Nasi M, Cicconi P, Broggini V, Lepri AC, Mologni D, Mazzotta F, Monforte AD, Mussini C, Cossarizza A, Galli M. Genetic polymorphisms differently influencing the emergence of atrophy and fat accumulation in HIV-related lipodystrophy. *AIDS* 2008; **22**: 1769-1778 [PMID: 18753860 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32830b3a96]

68 **Westby M**, van der Ryst E. CCR5 antagonists: host-targeted antiviral agents for the treatment of HIV infection, 4 years on. *Antivir Chem Chemother* 2010; **20**: 179-192 [PMID: 20413825 DOI: 10.3851/IMP1507]

69 **Eugen-Olsen J**, Iversen AK, Garred P, Koppelhus U, Pedersen C, Benfield TL, Sorensen AM, Katzenstein T, Dickmeiss E, Gerstoft J, Skinhøj P, Svejgaard A, Nielsen JO, Hofmann B. Heterozygosity for a deletion in the CKR-5 gene leads to prolonged AIDS-free survival and slower CD4 T-cell decline in a cohort of HIV-seropositive individuals. *AIDS* 1997; **11**: 305-310 [PMID: 9147421 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-199703110-00007]

70 **Liu R**, Paxton WA, Choe S, Ceradini D, Martin SR, Horuk R, MacDonald ME, Stuhlmann H, Koup RA, Landau NR. Homozygous defect in HIV-1 coreceptor accounts for resistance of some multiply-exposed individuals to HIV-1 infection. *Cell* 1996; **86**: 367-377 [PMID: 8756719 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(00)80110-5]

71 **Wenning LA**, Petry AS, Kost JT, Jin B, Breidinger SA, DeLepeleire I, Carlini EJ, Young S, Rushmore T, Wagner F, Lunde NM, Bieberdorf F, Greenberg H, Stone JA, Wagner JA, Iwamoto M. Pharmacokinetics of raltegravir in individuals with UGT1A1 polymorphisms. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **85**: 623-627 [PMID: 19279563 DOI: 10.1038/clpt.2009.12]

72 **Peraire J**, Viladés C, Pacheco YM, López-Dupla M, Domingo P, Gutiérrez M, Rosado I, Leal M, Richart C, Vidal F. Evaluation of the pharmacogenetics of immune recovery in treated HIV-infected patients. *Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol* 2014; **10**: 81-101 [PMID: 24256435 DOI: 10.1517/17425255.2014.854330]

73 **Cotreau MM**, von Moltke LL, Greenblatt DJ. The influence of age and sex on the clearance of cytochrome P450 3A substrates. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 2005; **44**: 33-60 [PMID: 15634031 DOI: 10.2165/00003088-200544010-00002]

74 **Mouly SJ**, Matheny C, Paine MF, Smith G, Lamba J, Lamba V, Pusek SN, Schuetz EG, Stewart PW, Watkins PB. Variation in oral clearance of saquinavir is predicted by CYP3A5*1 genotype but not by enterocyte content of cytochrome P450 3A5. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **78**: 605-618 [PMID: 16338276 DOI: 10.1016/j.clpt.2005.08.014]

75 **Zanger UM**, Turpeinen M, Klein K, Schwab M. Functional pharmacogenetics/genomics of human cytochromes P450 involved in drug biotransformation. *Anal Bioanal Chem* 2008; **392**: 1093-1108 [PMID: 18695978 DOI: 10.1007/s00216-008-2291-6]

76 **Ingelman-Sundberg M**, Sim SC, Gomez A, Rodriguez-Antona C. Influence of cytochrome P450 polymorphisms on drug therapies: pharmacogenetic, pharmacoepigenetic and clinical aspects. *Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **116**: 496-526 [PMID: 18001838 DOI: 10.1016/j.pharmthera.2007.09.004]

77 **Wang H**, Tompkins LM. CYP2B6: new insights into a historically overlooked cytochrome P450 isozyme. *Curr Drug Metab* 2008; **9**: 598-610 [PMID: 18781911 DOI: 10.2174/138920008785821710]

78 **Ribaudo HJ**, Liu H, Schwab M, Schaeffeler E, Eichelbaum M, Motsinger-Reif AA, Ritchie MD, Zanger UM, Acosta EP, Morse GD, Gulick RM, Robbins GK, Clifford D, Haas DW. Effect of CYP2B6, ABCB1, and CYP3A5 polymorphisms on efavirenz pharmacokinetics and treatment response: an AIDS Clinical Trials Group study. *J Infect Dis* 2010; **202**: 717-722 [PMID: 20662624 DOI: 10.1086/655470]

79 **Price AL**, Zaitlen NA, Reich D, Patterson N. New approaches to population stratification in genome-wide association studies. *Nat Rev Genet* 2010; **11**: 459-463 [PMID: 20548291 DOI: 10.1038/nrg2813]

80 **Frasco MA**, Mack WJ, Van Den Berg D, Aouizerat BE, Anastos K, Cohen M, De Hovitz J, Golub ET, Greenblatt RM, Liu C, Conti DV, Pearce CL. Underlying genetic structure impacts the association between CYP2B6 polymorphisms and response to efavirenz and

nevirapine. *AIDS* 2012; **26**: 2097-2106 [PMID: 22951632 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3283593602]
81 **Zhu P**, Zhu Q, Zhang Y, Ma X, Li Z, Li J, Chen J, Luo L, Ring HZ, Ring BZ, Su L. ABCB1 variation and treatment response in AIDS patients: initial results of the Henan cohort. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e55197 [PMID: 23372834 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0055197]

P- Reviewer: Yin JY **S- Editor**: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.209

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 209-218
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Non-AIDS definings malignancies among human immunodeficiency virus-positive subjects: Epidemiology and outcome after two decades of HAART era

Pierluigi Brugnaro, Erika Morelli, Francesca Cattelan, Andrea Petrucci, Sandro Panese, Franklyn Eseme, Francesca Cavinato, Andrea Barelli, Enzo Raise

Pierluigi Brugnaro, Erika Morelli, Francesca Cattelan, Andrea Petrucci, Sandro Panese, Franklyn Eseme, Francesca Cavinato, Andrea Barelli, Enzo Raise, Infectious Diseases Department, Civil Hospital "SS.Giovanni e Paolo", 6776-30122 Venice, Italy

Author contributions: Brugnaro P and Raise E designed the format of the manuscript; Brugnaro P, Morelli E, Cattelan F, Petrucci A, Panese S, Eseme F, Cavinato F and Barelli A contributed equally to write the paper; and Brugnaro p revised the manuscript before submission.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors state that there is not conflict of interest to declare.

Correspondence to: Dr. Pierluigi Brugnaro, Infectious Diseases Department, Civil Hospital "SS.Giovanni e Paolo", Castello, 6776-30122 Venice, Italy. brugnarop@yahoo.com
Telephone: +39-41-5294886
Fax: +39-41-5294884

Received: November 27, 2014
Peer-review started: November 28, 2014
First decision: January 20, 2015
Revised: March 2, 2015
Accepted: May 27, 2015
Article in press: May 28, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection has been widely available in industrialized countries since 1996; its widespread use determined a dramatic decline in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)-related mortality, and consequently, a significant decrease of AIDS-defining cancers. However the increased mean age of HIV-infected patients, prolonged exposure to environmental and lifestyle cancer risk factors, and coinfection with oncogenic viruses contributed to the emergence of other malignancies that are considered non-AIDS-defining cancers (NADCs) as a relevant fraction of morbidity and mortality among HIV-infected people twenty years after HAART introduction. The role of immunosuppression in the pathogenesis of NADCs is not well defined, and future researches should investigate the etiology of NADCs. In the last years there is a growing evidence that intensive chemotherapy regimens and radiotherapy could be safely administrated to HIV-positive patients while continuing HAART. This requires a multidisciplinary approach and a close co-operation of oncologists and HIV-physicians in order to best manage compliance of patients to treatment and to face drug-related side effects. Here we review the main epidemiological features, risk factors and clinical behavior of the more common NADCs, such as lung cancer, hepatocellular carcinoma, colorectal cancer and anal cancer, Hodgkin's lymphoma and some cutaneous malignancies, focusing also on the current therapeutic approaches and preventive screening strategies.

Key words: Human immunodeficiency virus infection; Malignancy; Highly active antiretroviral therapy; Non-acquired immunodeficiency syndrome-defining cancers

Core tip: Since the introduction of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) the incidence of acquired

immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)-defining diseases has declined. This has resulted in a significant improvement in survival of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected patients. However the incidence of non-AIDS defining cancers (NADCs) did not decrease, and this determines now a relevant burden of mortality among HIV-positive patients. The availability of an even more effective HAART along with chemotherapy and radiotherapy regimens suitable also for HIV-patients could improve the outcome of these patients in the setting of NADCs. Screening interventions to detect precancerous lesions are also of paramount importance in order to decrease mortality of NADCs.

Brugnaro P, Morelli E, Cattelan F, Petrucci A, Panese S, Eseme F, Cavinato F, Barelli A, Raise E. Non-AIDS definings malignancies among human immunodeficiency virus-positive subjects: Epidemiology and outcome after two decades of HAART era. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 209-218 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/209.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.209

INTRODUCTION

The early studies among patients receiving transplantation forty years ago showed that Kaposi sarcoma and lymphomas were diagnosed with an high incidence in this immunocompromised population. This findings were confirmed twenty years later when Kaposi sarcoma and some types of lymphoma presented a strong association with an advanced stage of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-related acquired immunodeficiency syndrome[1,2]. These malignancies have been classified as acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)-defining cancers (ADCs) by Center for Diseases Control and Prevention since 1993[3].

With the introduction of combination antiretroviral therapy there has been a dramatic decrease of the incidence of AIDS-related morbidity and mortality in HIV-positive patients[4-7]. The HAART has also improved the short and medium-term survival in HIV-infected patients with ADCs[8]. As a consequence of the restored immune function, the incidence of AIDS-defining cancers has significantly declined, and the prognosis markedly improved. The HAART showed to modify positively the clinical outcome of Kaposi sarcoma, a typical AIDS-defining cancer, and it represents now a cornerstone for the treatment of all stages of this neoplasm[9]. *In vitro* and *in vivo* studies performed on mice deprived of thymus showed that HAART, and in particular protease inhibitors class, has a direct antitumoral activity. Even the risk of developing non-Hodgking lymphoma was reduced markedly after HAART introduction: Besson *et al*[10] showed in a large French population of HIV-infected patients that the incidence fell sharply between 1993-1994 and 1997-1998 from 86 per 10000 in the 1993-1994 to 42.9 per 10000 person-years. Similarly, another American study among 537 with AIDS-related NHL documented that the annual average incidence of NHL decreased from 29.6 per 1000 person-years in the pre-HAART period (1988-1995) to 6.5 per 1000 person-years in the post-HAART era (1996-2000). The more pronounced changes were observed among the group of diffuse large B-cells lymphomas, with a dramatic decrease of incidence of primary cerebral and of high grade hymmunoblastic lymphomas[11], that are linked to Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) latent co-infection[12].

In contrast with the positive impact of HAART on the incidence of AIDS-defining infectious and malignant diseases, HIV-positive patients remain at increased risk of non-AIDS-related mortality and morbidity, including cardiovascular disease, neuro-behavioral disease and cancers. NADCs have gradually emerged as a major fraction of the overall cancer burden[13,14]. Trends in all-cause mortality emerged from the Data collection on Adverse events of anti-HIV Drugs (D:A:D) study showed a significant decrease from 17.5 per 1000 person-years in 1999-2000 to 9.1 in 2009-11. A similar decrease in the same period was seen for the mortality rate of AIDS-defining conditions (5.9 to 2.0), liver (2.7 to 0.9) and cardiovascular diseases (1.8 to 0.9), whereas NADCs increased from 1.6 per 1000 persons-years in 1999-2000 to 2.1 in 2009-2011[15]. Some large cohort studies, and data derived from linkages among the AIDS and cancer registries, revealed that the risk of developing solid tumors and non-AIDS defining lymphomas was two to three-fold higher than in the general population[16,17]. In the meantime the overall mortality associated with NADCs increased from < 1% in pre-HAART era to 13% after HAART introduction[18]. This changing scenario could be explained by the influence of some demographic features of HIV-positive population such as the advancing age, the role of behavioral risk factors like smoking and alcohol consumption, and chronic coinfection with other viral pathogens (EBV, HCV, HBV and Human Papilloma virus)[19]. There was not demonstrated a clear relationship between immunosuppression and development of NADCs. While some studies showed that a low nadir of CD4 cell count is predictive of a increased risk of developing NADCs[20-22], Engels *et al*[23] did not find a correlation between advanced immunosuppression and the risk of developing NADCs.

Here we focus on the epidemiological and clinical features of the most common NADCs among HIV-positive individuals. We also briefly review their therapeutic approach and the outcome after twenty years of HAART.

LUNG CANCER

Lung cancer was showed to be the most frequent NADCs occurring in HIV-positive people and, it stands as the leading cause of cancer-related deaths among HIV-positive people in a large United States population-based registry[24]. Two meta-analysis estimated that the risk of lung cancer in HIV-infected people was more than two-fold higher than in the general population[25,26], and the risk is relevant for all main lung cancer subtypes (squamous

cell carcinoma, adenocarcinoma and small cell carcinoma). Male sex is more affected, and the mean age when diagnosis of lung cancer occurs is about 15 years lower than in HIV-negative people[27].

Cigarette smoking is the most important risk factor for developing lung cancer and the prevalence of tobacco use among HIV-positive people is higher than in the general population, ranging from 40% to 70% compared to 20% observed among HIV-negative people[28-30]. When considering the role of tobacco in lung carcinogenesis smoking cessation recommendations and interventions represent a critical part in the routine clinical encounter in this high-risk population.

Immunosuppression caused by HIV infection results in chronic activation, disfunction of immune system, and chronic inflammation, all likely promoting carcinogenesis in HIV-infected individuals. Nonetheless the relationship between a low T CD4 cells count, the duration of immunosuppression and the risk of developing lung cancer is not well understood[31]. A large American cohort study of 37294 HIV-infected people showed that HIV infection appears a risk factor for lung cancer even after controlling for other confounding variables, but it did not find an association of lung cancer with low T CD4 cells count[32]. It has been reported that HIV-infected people present more frequently an advanced stage of lung cancer and the outcome is poorer if compared with the general population[33]. However these observations have recently been challenged. One epidemiological study evaluating 322 HIV-positive patients with non-small cell lung cancer showed no difference in stage at cancer diagnosis if compared with 71976 HIV-negative controls, and the median survival was similar between two groups with early stage of disease. In addition the survival of HIV-positive patients with an early stage disease, who underwent surgical resection was similar to that of control group (50 mo *vs* 58 mo; $P = 0.88$)[34].

Non-small cell lung malignancies covers more than 80% of lung cancers among HIV-positive subjects, and the adenocarcinoma is the more frequent histological type, mirroring the current epidemiological trend in the general population[35-37].

Due to the lack of randomized trials and guidelines the choice of appropriate therapy for HIV-infected patients with lung cancer tends to vary based upon patient's clinical conditions and the degree of immunosuppression. Toxicity, poor tolerability and potential of interaction between chemotherapy and HAART are concerns limiting systemic cancer therapy in HIV-positive patients[38,39]. In a retrospective multicenter Italian study of 68 consecutive cases of lung cancer diagnosed in HIV-positive patients, clinical presentation and treatment outcome in the pre-HAART and post-HAART era were compared. The overall median age was 43.5 years and all but one patients (67 out of 68 patients) were heavy smokers. Overall in 58 patients (85.3%) a non-small cell lung cancer was diagnosed, and among these adenocarcinoma was the predominant histological type. Chemotherapy was much more frequent among post-HAART patients, of whom 27 were treated (79.4%) *vs* 16 (48%) in the pre-HAART group ($P = 0.04$). The authors also showed that the overall survival rate was significantly better for the post-HAART group (3.8 mo in the pre-HAART period *vs* 7 mo in the post-HAART period, $P = 0.01$)[40]. Recently The Intergroupe Francophone de Cancerologie Thoracique has initiated a phase II trial of carboplatin plus pemetrexed in HIV-infected patients with advanced NSCLC (NCT01296113). In the United States, an AIDS Malignancy Consortium trial is evaluating the carboplatin/paclitaxel regimen in HIV-infected patients with advanced solid tumors, including lung cancers (AMC-078, NCT01296113). These studies could provide a better knowledge on treatment options and clinical outcome of HIV-positive patients with lung cancer.

COLORECTAL CANCER

Among the NADCs, colorectal cancer (CRC) has been identified as one of the tumors with an increasing in incidence in the HIV population[21]. In a prospective cohort study of 2882 patients with HIV infection the annual incidence of CRC was reported to increase from 0.65 per 1000 patients-years in the pre-HAART era to 2.34 per 1000 patient-years between 1997 and 2002[41]. As a consequence of increased life expectancy of HIV-positive people due to the efficacy of HAART, many people are living long enough to develop CRC. Clinical presentation, treatment and survival of HIV-positive patients affected by CRC were described by the Italian Cooperative Group AIDS and Tumours, where 27 cases of HIV-positive CRC patients were matched with 54 HIV-negative controls retrieved from a national database. HIV-positive patients developed CRC at an earlier age and the disease was more advanced than in the general population. The authors showed also that at the time of diagnosis most of patients had ad advance disease stage and an overall poor outcome, with a probability of survival at 4 years of 15% and 49% for HIV-positive and HIV-negative patients respectively. However it was also noted that chemotherapy was well tolerated in all patients, and in the HAART era there were neither opportunistic infections nor chemotherapy-related deaths[42]. Berretta *et al*[43] also showed that liver metastases due to CRC could be treated with surgical resection, along with chemotherapy, without discontinuing HAART. CRC is a condition that could easily identified at an early stage by screening colonoscopy since many lesions are preceded by premalignant adenomas and could be removed by endoscopy procedures. These observations are supported by the results of a screening colonoscopy study that evaluated the prevalence of neoplastic lesions. Future researches should address the role of screening in the HIV-positive population for CRC in order to improve early diagnosis and survival[44].

HEPATOCELLULAR CARCINOMA

HIV-infected subjects are at greater risk of developing

and dying of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). In the HAART era, the incidence of this malignancy was 10 to 36 new cases per 100000 HIV-infected people per year, corresponding to 3-fold to 6-fold excess risk if compared with the general population[13,45].

The high incidence of HCC among HIV-infected patients was also recently documented in a multicenter Italian cohort including 13388 HIV-positive patients enrolled since 1998, where liver cancer ranked as the most frequent NADC[46].

The main risk factors for development of HCC are viral hepatitis and alcohol abuse. The chronic evolution of HBV infection in the liver and the progression to cirrhosis of HCV-related chronic hepatitis are more frequent in HIV-positive individuals than in the HIV-negative people. Moreover HIV-induced immunosuppression may accelerate liver fibrosis and increase the risk to develop HCC[47]. Moreover hepatocytes apoptosis seems to be promoted by upregulation of tumor necrosis factor (TNF) by the HIV surface protein gp120[48].

Another factor that could worsen the liver damage is the antiretroviral therapy which is known to have some direct hepatotoxic effects[49]. These factors could explain the increased incidence of HCC observed in HIV-positive patients, four to seven folds higher than in the general population[50].

An Italian multicenter cohort study comparing 104 HIV-positive patients and 484 uninfected controls with HCC, showed that HIV-infected patients were significantly younger at HCC diagnosis, and they present more commonly HBV or HCV co-infection. The survival was poorer in the HIV-positive patients even though in these patients HCC was more frequently diagnosed at an early stage. However the subgroup of HIV-positive patients receiving HAART and with an undetectable HIV viral load had a better outcome than patients with an higher plasmatic HIV RNA[51]. In this study, even thought the treatment rates were similar between HIV-positive and HIV-negative patients, the overall survival rate was worse in the HIV-positive group, maybe due the fact that in these patients retreatment of an HCC recurrence was considered in a lower number of cases.

Localized therapies such as surgical resection, ethanol injection and radiofrequency ablation should be considered for patients with solitary or small number of HCC lesions[52]. Encouraging data on feasibility of liver transplantation (LT) were showed by Vibert *et al*[53]. Overall survival and relapse rate were not significantly different among HIV-positive patients with HCC compared to HIV-negative control group. This data were recently confirmed by Di Benedetto *et al*[54], who recently compared the outcome of 30 HIV-positive patients who underwent LT with 125 HIV-negative patients: at 1 year and 3 years post LT overall survival (77% at 1 years and 65% at 3 years among HIV-infected *vs* 86.4% and 70% among HIV-negative patients) was similar between the two groups. Therefore HIV-infected patients should be offered the same LT options for HCC treatment that are provided for HIV-uninfected subjects. Prevention of HCC should be addressed to reduce the burden of some risk factors; counselling for alcohol avoidance and promotion of HBV vaccination are important elements of primary prevention. Hepatic ultrasonography and alpha fetoprotein measurement every 6 mo are also essential diagnostic tools for early diagnosis of HCC. Among patients with high risk of developing HCC, such as advanced liver cirrhosis, computed tomography and magnetic resonance imaging are useful to detect hepatic lesions < 3 cm[55]. Recently, with the advent of the new direct-acting antiviral agents, HCV treatment has rapidly changed with a dramatic improvement of cure rates; therefore, eradication of HCV is a more feasible target even in the difficult-to-treat HIV-positive population[56].

HODGKIN'S LYMPHOMA

In immunosuppressed patients, Hodgkin's lymphoma (HD) occurs more frequently than in the general population of the same age, and some epidemiological studies showed that HIV-infected people have a 10-fold higher risk of developing HL than HIV-negative subjects[16,57,58]. HIV-associated HD displays several peculiarities when compared with HD in the general population, such as an unusual aggressive behavior and an overall poor prognosis. More specifically HIV-HL is characterized by the high incidence of more aggressive histological subtypes, mixed cellularity (MC) and lymphocyte depletion (LD), that appears specifically related to advanced immune compromise in HIV-infected patients. A high frequency of EBV association has been shown in HL (80%-100%) tissues from HIV-HL, which indicates that EBV does represent an important factor involved in the pathogenesis of HIV-HL. There are evidences that the EBV-encoded latent membrane protein 1 (LMP1), which is expressed in the majority of HIV-HL, may play a role in the pathogenesis of this lymphoma[59,60]. At the time of HL diagnosis many HIV-positive patients present an advanced stage of disease and systemic "B" symptoms such as fever, night sweats, and/or weight loss > 10% of the normal body weight. Among 290 patients with HIV-HL, an advanced stage of this malignancy was observed in 79% of patients; extranodal involvement was reported in 59% of patients, with bone marrow, spleen and liver involved in 38, 30 and 17 patients respectively. The authors of this study found that the following parameters were associated with a better survival: MC subtype, the absence of extranodal involvement, the absence of "B" symptoms, and prior use of HAART[61]. In a similar study performed in Spain among 104 patients with HIV-HL the complete remission rate was significantly higher in HAART group (91% *vs* 70%, $P = 0.023$)[62]. After the first prospective multi-institutional study performed by AIDS Clinical Trial Group (ACTG), which used the ABVD chemotherapy (doxorubicin, bleomycin, vinblastine, dacarbazine), more intensive chemotherapy regimens including BEACOPP (bleomycine, etoposide, doxorubicin, cyclophosphamide, vincristine, procarbazine, prednisone),

Stanford V (mechlorethamine, doxorubicin, vinblastine, vincristine, bleomycin, etoposide, prednisone), and VEBEP (epirubicine, bleomycin, vinorelbine, cyclophosphamide and prednisone) with radiotherapy have been proposed, and a complete remission (CR) rate > 60% has been obtained[63-66]. Combined administration of HAART and chemotherapy showed to reduce the risk of opportunistic infections, relapses and to improve the CR rate. Moreover the use of high dose chemotherapy and autologous stem cell transplantation (ASCT) seems to be the gold standard as salvage treatment for relapsing or progressing HL in HIV-positive patients[67,68].

ANAL CANCER

Anal carcinoma is an uncommon malignancy in the general population, but it stands as one of the leading NADCs among HIV-positive patients since the HAART introduction[69-71]. In the Swiss HIV Cohort Study a 30-fold higher rate of anal cancer was showed in comparison to the HIV-uninfected subjects[45].

Anal cancer affects primarily men who have sex with men (MSM), with a mean age of 45-50[72]. Squamous cell carcinoma is the most common histological type and it arises from precursor high-grade anal intraepithelial lesions (AIN) within the anal canal[73]. Some high risk types of Human papillomavirus (hr-HPV), especially HPV-16, play a pivotal role in the pathogenesis of anal squamous cell carcinoma (ASCC), and in HIV-positive patients the prevalence of hr-HPV infection was estimated to be three to five fold higher than in the general population[74]. Sexual transmission of HPV through anal intercourse explains the high rate of ASCC diagnosed in HIV-positive MSM subjects[75].

A lower T CD4 cell count has been associated with a reduced clearance of anal HPV infection, and the development of precancerous lesions, such as low grade AIN. The improved survival of at risk HIV-positive patients could also allow the progression of early precancerous lesions to invasive anal cancer. Concurrent chemotherapy and radiotherapy is the first line treatment of anal cancer, and this approach could be safely used for HIV patients. Intensity-modulated radiation therapy has recently proposed to achieve high doses of radiations and reduce dermatological and gastrointestinal toxicity[76,77]. Screening interventions targeted to high risk group, like HIV-infected MSM, are based primarily on anal Pap smear and high-resolution anoscopy. The latter one proved to be cost-effective in the early detection of precancerous anal lesions, which would allow to treat them with minimally invasive localized therapies[78]. Vaccination against hr-HPV has proved to be effective for preventing anal cancer precancerous lesions in women[79]. Further studies are warranted to evaluate if this approach could have similar positive results among high risk HIV-infected patients, such as MSM.

CUTANEOUS MALIGNANCIES

Multiple studies demonstrated that immunosuppressed patients have an increased risk of cutaneous malignancies, and it seems to be most pronounced in solid-organ transplants recipients, who have a 65 to 250 times increased risk as compared to general population[80,81].

Since the early phase of HIV epidemic, Kaposi sarcoma was the most common malignancy with cutaneous involvement[2], whereas the incidence and risk factors associated with cutaneous non-ADCs (NADCs) among HIV-infected persons are less defined. In a large American cohort of 4490 HIV-positive patients retrieved from 1986 to 2006, there were 254 (5.7%) patients who developed skin cancers, and basal cell carcinoma (BCC) was the most frequent non-ADCs, with a ratio of BCC to squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) of 6:1, that differs from transplant recipients who develop SCC in the majority of cases[82]. Similarly in the period between 1985 and 2002 analyzed by an afore-mentioned Swiss study, BCC were more frequent than SCC, and the overall incidence of nonmelanomatous skin cancer was three-fold higher than in the general population (Standardized Incidence Ratio, SIRs = 3.2, 95%CI: 2.2-4.5) in this large national cohort study[83]. More recently the same authors showed that the SIRs of non-melanomatous skin cancers increased between the pre- and early-HAART period, but not between the early- and late-HAART period[45]. In a recent meta-analysis that analyzed 13 studies in the post-HAART and 8 in the pre-HAART era, also the risk of melanoma was showed to be increased among HIV/AIDS population[84]. Even if KS was the most frequent cutaneous cancer, its incidence significantly decreased after 1995, while the age-adjusted incidence rates of cutaneous NADCs remained stable[82]. The factors associated with the development of cutaneous NADCs in this study were aging and the withe/non-Hispanic race, similarly to what has been showed in other HIV-positive cohort and in the general population[85,86]. The development of cutaneous NADCs was also showed to be not related to the CD4+ T lymphocites count and receipt of HAART, but HIV-infected subjects are characterized by an high likelihood of developing subsequent cutaneous malignancies at novel sites. In the afore-mentioned study of Crum-Cianflone *et al*[82], 24% of the participants, who initially presented with a BCC, developed a subsequent BCC, and 8% developed a second type of cutaneous cancer.

These findings were confirmed by another large prospective cohort study which enrolled patients diagnosed with non-melanoma skin cancers, with a median follow-up of 7.3 years. This study showed that the overall 5-years recurrence rates after treatment in HIV-positive patients was 13.8%, and 2.9% in HIV-uninfected patients respectively (HR = 3.1; P = 0.005)[87]. The high rate of recurrences suggests that HIV-infected individuals with an initial cutaneous NADC should be carefully followed up for both recurrent disease and the development of novel cutaneous malignancies. In the last decade some cases of Merkel cell carcinoma (MCC) in HIV-infected people were observed[88], and the risk of acquiring MCC was reported, if compared with the general population, to be 13-fold higher in this population by Engels *et al*[89].

Merkel cell carcinoma (MCC) is an uncommon, highly malignant, primary neuroendocrine tumour of the skin, that usually has its origin in the head, neck or extremities of elderly patients.

In 2008 a polyomavirus (Merkel cell polyomavirus, MCPyV) was reported to be a likely causative agent for the majority of MCCs[90,91]; this has been subsequently well established by multiple international groups[92].

Its clinical behavior is very aggressive and tendency to local recurrence, regional lymph nodes involvement and distant metastases are very high. Thus this tumor has to be regarded not as a localized skin cancer but as a systemic disease. We previously reported on an HIV-infected patient who developed a MCC with the only involvement of inguinal lymph node without evidence of primary skin localization[93]. We decided to administer to the patient, after surgical resection, postoperative radiotherapy and adjuvant combination chemotherapy with carboplatin and etoposide, according to paradigms established for small-cell lung cancer[94]. We did not document significant chemotherapy-related toxicities and the patient did not withdraw concomitant HAART. Even thought immunosuppressed patients with MCC were showed to have a poorer survival as compared to immune competent people[95], our patient did not experience a disease recurrence six years after the time of MCC diagnosis. A good performance status and a stable control of HIV infection with an effective HAART regimen should encourage clinicians to consider, for patients with MCC, systemic chemotherapy and adjuvant radiation in order to avoid regional and distant relapses of this cancer.

OTHERS

Only some retrospective studies and small case series are available to depict the distinct epidemiological and clinical features of other malignancies. In the early HAART period Sutton *et al*[96], showed that the estimated risk of acute myeloid leukaemia was twice if compared with the general population. The authors also showed that intensive chemotherapy proved to be effective to achieve completed remission of acute myeloid leukemia in 11 out of 15 HIV-positive patients. A low T CD4 lymphocytes count, regardless of karyotype, emerged as a predictor of a poor prognosis and short overall survival[97,98].

The incidence of cancers of the mouth and the pharynx, documented among HIV-positive people enrolled in the Swiss cohort from 1985 to 2002, was four-fold higher than in the general population (standardized incidence ratio, SIR = 4.1; 95%CI: 2.1-7.4), and this could be related to the smoking behavior since this was reported in 72% of the overall cohort of HIV-positive patients[83]. On the other hand the prostate cancer incidence rate was showed to be lower in HIV-positive people compared with HIV-uninfected men, even after adjusting for cancer risk factors[99,100].

In a study-linkage performed during 2003-2005 in 12 regions of United States with a population-based cancer ascertainment, Goedert *et al*[101] described the cancer profile of women diagnosed with AIDS. The incidence of breast (SIR = 0.69; 95%CI: 0.62-0.77) and uterine corpus cancers (SIR = 0.57; 95%CI: 0.39-0.81), but not of ovary cancer (SIR = 1.05; 95%CI: 0.75-1.42) was significantly lower than in the general population. The low risk of breast cancer among HIV-infected people could reflect the impairment of endogenous sexual hormone levels, and the ability of HIV to infect, replicate in, and to impair proliferation of breast cells. Breast cancer screening should be performed according to current relevant guidelines for the general population[52].

There is now a general agreement that HIV-positive patients who ensure a good adherence to an effective HAART regimen, and who are not affected by opportunistic infections, should be considered for the same anti-neoplastic treatment protocols for NADCs as in the general population, with a close monitoring of drug toxicity and interactions.

CONCLUSION

There is now a growing evidence that malignancies, whether they are strictly related to advanced stages of HIV infection, or not related to HIV-induced immunosuppression, are one of the main causes of death in the HIV-positive subjects. The effectiveness and tolerability of modern HAART regimens contributed to increase expectancy of life of these patients. Their progressive aging, the role of behavioral risks, such as smoking and alcohol intake, and other viral co-infections could negatively affect NADCs epidemic. In the other hand the availability of HAART and the better mean performance status of HIV-positive patients in the last decade, when compared with these in the pre-HAART era, gave clinicians the opportunity to treat NADCs with more effective chemotherapy regimens and to improve the long term survival. Further studies are needed to evaluate the best therapeutic approaches to NADCs and the impact of targeted cancer screening interventions among HIV-positive individuals.

REFERENCES

1 **Goedert JJ**. The epidemiology of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome malignancies. *Semin Oncol* 2000; **27**: 390-401 [PMID: 10950365]

2 **Goedert JJ**, Coté TR, Virgo P, Scoppa SM, Kingma DW, Gail MH, Jaffe ES, Biggar RJ. Spectrum of AIDS-associated malignant disorders. *Lancet* 1998; **351**: 1833-1839 [PMID: 9652666]

3 1993 revised classification system for HIV infection and expanded surveillance case definition for AIDS among adolescents and adults. *MMWR Recomm Rep* 1992; **41**: 1-19 [PMID: 1361652]

4 **Palella FJ**, Baker RK, Moorman AC, Chmiel JS, Wood KC, Brooks JT, Holmberg SD. Mortality in the highly active antiretroviral therapy era: changing causes of death and disease in the HIV outpatient study. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2006; **43**: 27-34 [PMID: 16878047 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000233310.90484.16]

5 **Mocroft A**, Ledergerber B, Katlama C, Kirk O, Reiss P, d'Arminio Monforte A, Knysz B, Dietrich M, Phillips AN, Lundgren JD. Decline in the AIDS and death rates in the EuroSIDA study: an observational study. *Lancet* 2003; **362**: 22-29 [PMID: 12853195

DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(03)13802-0]
6 **Spano JP**, Costagliola D, Katlama C, Mounier N, Oksenhendler E, Khayat D. AIDS-related malignancies: state of the art and therapeutic challenges. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 4834-4842 [PMID: 18591544 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.16.8252]
7 **Grabar S**, Abraham B, Mahamat A, Del Giudice P, Rosenthal E, Costagliola D. Differential impact of combination antiretroviral therapy in preventing Kaposi's sarcoma with and without visceral involvement. *J Clin Oncol* 2006; **24**: 3408-3414 [PMID: 16849755 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2005.05.4072]
8 **Hoffmann C**, Wolf E, Fätkenheuer G, Buhk T, Stoehr A, Plettenberg A, Stellbrink HJ, Jaeger H, Siebert U, Horst HA. Response to highly active antiretroviral therapy strongly predicts outcome in patients with AIDS-related lymphoma. *AIDS* 2003; **17**: 1521-1529 [PMID: 12824790 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200307040-00013]
9 **Bourboulia D**, Aldam D, Lagos D, Allen E, Williams I, Cornforth D, Copas A, Boshoff C. Short- and long-term effects of highly active antiretroviral therapy on Kaposi sarcoma-associated herpesvirus immune responses and viraemia. *AIDS* 2004; **18**: 485-493 [PMID: 15090801]
10 **Besson C**, Goubar A, Gabarre J, Rozenbaum W, Pialoux G, Châtelet FP, Katlama C, Charlotte F, Dupont B, Brousse N, Huerre M, Mikol J, Camparo P, Mokhtari K, Tulliez M, Salmon-Céron D, Boué F, Costagliola D, Raphaël M. Changes in AIDS-related lymphoma since the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. *Blood* 2001; **98**: 2339-2344 [PMID: 11588028 DOI: 10.1182/blood.V98.8.2339]
11 **Diamond C**, Taylor TH, Aboumrad T, Anton-Culver H. Changes in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome-related non-Hodgkin lymphoma in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy: incidence, presentation, treatment, and survival. *Cancer* 2006; **106**: 128-135 [PMID: 16329140 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.21562]
12 **Grogg KL**, Miller RF, Dogan A. HIV infection and lymphoma. *J Clin Pathol* 2007; **60**: 1365-1372 [PMID: 18042692 DOI: 10.1136/jcp.2007.051953]
13 **Engels EA**, Pfeiffer RM, Goedert JJ, Virgo P, McNeel TS, Scoppa SM, Biggar RJ. Trends in cancer risk among people with AIDS in the United States 1980-2002. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 1645-1654 [PMID: 16868446 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000238411.75324.59]
14 **Cobucci RN**, Lima PH, de Souza PC, Costa VV, Cornetta Mda C, Fernandes JV, Gonçalves AK. Assessing the impact of HAART on the incidence of defining and non-defining AIDS cancers among patients with HIV/AIDS: a systematic review. *J Infect Public Health* 2015; **8**: 1-10 [PMID: 25294086 DOI: 10.1016/j.jiph.2014.08.003]
15 **Smith CJ**, Ryom L, Weber R, Morlat P, Pradier C, Reiss P, Kowalska JD, de Wit S, Law M, el Sadr W, Kirk O, Friis-Moller N, Monforte Ad, Phillips AN, Sabin CA, Lundgren JD. Trends in underlying causes of death in people with HIV from 1999 to 2011 (D: A: D): a multicohort collaboration. *Lancet* 2014; **384**: 241-248 [PMID: 25042234 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)60604-8]
16 **Grulich AE**, Li Y, McDonald A, Correll PK, Law MG, Kaldor JM. Rates of non-AIDS-defining cancers in people with HIV infection before and after AIDS diagnosis. *AIDS* 2002; **16**: 1155-1161 [PMID: 12004274 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200205240-00009]
17 **Newnham A**, Harris J, Evans HS, Evans BG, Møller H. The risk of cancer in HIV-infected people in southeast England: a cohort study. *Br J Cancer* 2005; **92**: 194-200 [PMID: 15583689 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6602273]
18 **Bonnet F**, Lewden C, May T, Heripret L, Jougla E, Bevilacqua S, Costagliola D, Salmon D, Chêne G, Morlat P. Malignancy-related causes of death in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. *Cancer* 2004; **101**: 317-324 [PMID: 15241829 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.2035]
19 **Silverberg MJ**, Chao C, Leyden WA, Xu L, Tang B, Horberg MA, Klein D, Quesenberry CP, Towner WJ, Abrams DI. HIV infection and the risk of cancers with and without a known infectious cause. *AIDS* 2009; **23**: 2337-2345 [PMID: 19741479 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3283319184]
20 **Dauby N**, De Wit S, Delforge M, Necsoi VC, Clumeck N. Characteristics of non-AIDS-defining malignancies in the HAART era: a clinico-epidemiological study. *J Int AIDS Soc* 2011; **14**: 16 [PMID: 21443771 DOI: 10.1186/1758-2652-14-16]
21 **Patel P**, Hanson DL, Sullivan PS, Novak RM, Moorman AC, Tong TC, Holmberg SD, Brooks JT. Incidence of types of cancer among HIV-infected persons compared with the general population in the United States, 1992-2003. *Ann Intern Med* 2008; **148**: 728-736 [PMID: 18490686 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-148-10-200805200-00005]
22 **Calabresi A**, Ferraresi A, Festa A, Scarcella C, Donato F, Vassallo F, Limina R, Castelli F, Quiros-Roldan E. Incidence of AIDS-defining cancers and virus-related and non-virus-related non-AIDS-defining cancers among HIV-infected patients compared with the general population in a large health district of Northern Italy, 1999-2009. *HIV Med* 2013; **14**: 481-490 [PMID: 23560682 DOI: 10.1111/hiv.12034]
23 **Engels EA**, Brock MV, Chen J, Hooker CM, Gillison M, Moore RD. Elevated incidence of lung cancer among HIV-infected individuals. *J Clin Oncol* 2006; **24**: 1383-1388 [PMID: 16549832 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2005.03.4413]
24 **Simard EP**, Engels EA. Cancer as a cause of death among people with AIDS in the United States. *Clin Infect Dis* 2010; **51**: 957-962 [PMID: 20825305 DOI: 10.1086/656416]
25 **Grulich AE**, van Leeuwen MT, Falster MO, Vajdic CM. Incidence of cancers in people with HIV/AIDS compared with immunosuppressed transplant recipients: a meta-analysis. *Lancet* 2007; **370**: 59-67 [PMID: 17617273 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(07)61050-2]
26 **Shiels MS**, Cole SR, Kirk GD, Poole C. A meta-analysis of the incidence of non-AIDS cancers in HIV-infected individuals. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2009; **52**: 611-622 [PMID: 19770804 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181b327ca]
27 **Mani D**, Haigentz M, Aboulafia DM. Lung cancer in HIV Infection. *Clin Lung Cancer* 2012; **13**: 6-13 [PMID: 21802373 DOI: 10.1016/j.cllc.2011.05.005]
28 **Burkhalter JE**, Springer CM, Chhabra R, Ostroff JS, Rapkin BD. Tobacco use and readiness to quit smoking in low-income HIV-infected persons. *Nicotine Tob Res* 2005; **7**: 511-522 [PMID: 16085522 DOI: 10.1080/14622200500186064]
29 **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)**. Vital signs: current cigarette smoking among adults aged & gt; or=18 years --- United States, 2009. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2010; **59**: 1135-1140 [PMID: 20829747]
30 **Flanders WD**, Lally CA, Zhu BP, Henley SJ, Thun MJ. Lung cancer mortality in relation to age, duration of smoking, and daily cigarette consumption: results from Cancer Prevention Study II. *Cancer Res* 2003; **63**: 6556-6562 [PMID: 14559851]
31 **Shcherba M**, Shuter J, Haigentz M. Current questions in HIV-associated lung cancer. *Curr Opin Oncol* 2013; **25**: 511-517 [PMID: 23942294 DOI: 10.1097/CCO.0b013e328363dfdb]
32 **Sigel K**, Wisnivesky J, Gordon K, Dubrow R, Justice A, Brown ST, Goulet J, Butt AA, Crystal S, Rimland D, Rodriguez-Barradas M, Gibert C, Park LS, Crothers K. HIV as an independent risk factor for incident lung cancer. *AIDS* 2012; **26**: 1017-1025 [PMID: 22382152 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328352d1ad]
33 **Chaturvedi AK**, Pfeiffer RM, Chang L, Goedert JJ, Biggar RJ, Engels EA. Elevated risk of lung cancer among people with AIDS. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 207-213 [PMID: 17197812 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3280118fca]
34 **Rengan R**, Mitra N, Liao K, Armstrong K, Vachani A. Effect of HIV on survival in patients with non-small-cell lung cancer in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy: a population-based study. *Lancet Oncol* 2012; **13**: 1203-1209 [PMID: 23164952 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(12)70466-7]
35 **D'Jaen GA**, Pantanowitz L, Bower M, Buskin S, Neil N, Greco EM, Cooley TP, Henry D, Stem J, Dezube BJ, Stebbing J, Aboulafia DM. Human immunodeficiency virus-associated primary lung cancer in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy: a multi-institutional collaboration. *Clin Lung Cancer* 2010; **11**: 396-404 [PMID: 21062730 DOI: 10.3816/CLC.2010.n.051]
36 **Hakimian R**, Fang H, Thomas L, Edelman MJ. Lung cancer in

HIV-infected patients in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. *J Thorac Oncol* 2007; **2**: 268-272 [PMID: 17409796 DOI: 10.1097/01.JTO.0000263707.31202.d7]

37 **Powles T**, Nelson M, Bower M. HIV-related lung cancer -- a growing concern? *Int J STD AIDS* 2003; **14**: 647-651 [PMID: 14596765 DOI: 10.1258/095646203322387875]

38 **Makinson A**, Tenon JC, Eymard-Duvernay S, Pujol JL, Allavena C, Cuzin L, Poizot-Martin I, de la Tribonnière X, Cabié A, Pugliese P, Reynes J, Le Moing V. Human immunodeficiency virus infection and non-small cell lung cancer: survival and toxicity of antineoplastic chemotherapy in a cohort study. *J Thorac Oncol* 2011; **6**: 1022-1029 [PMID: 21512403 DOI: 10.1097/JTO.0b013e318217b6e0]

39 **Persad GC**, Little RF, Grady C. Including persons with HIV infection in cancer clinical trials. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 1027-1032 [PMID: 18309938 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.14.5532]

40 **Bearz A**, Vaccher E, Martellotta F, Spina M, Talamini R, Lleshi A, Cacopardo B, Nunnari G, Berretta M, Tirelli U. Lung cancer in HIV positive patients: the GICAT experience. *Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci* 2014; **18**: 500-508 [PMID: 24610616]

41 **Bedimo R**, Chen RY, Accortt NA, Raper JL, Linn C, Allison JJ, Dubay J, Saag MS, Hoesley CJ. Trends in AIDS-defining and non-AIDS-defining malignancies among HIV-infected patients: 1989-2002. *Clin Infect Dis* 2004; **39**: 1380-1384 [PMID: 15494916 DOI: 10.1086/424883]

42 **Berretta M**, Cappellani A, Di Benedetto F, Lleshi A, Talamini R, Canzonieri V, Zanet E, Bearz A, Nasti G, Lacchin T, Berretta S, Fisichella R, Balestreri L, Torresin A, Izzi I, Ortolani P, Tirelli U. Clinical presentation and outcome of colorectal cancer in HIV-positive patients: a clinical case-control study. *Onkologie* 2009; **32**: 319-324 [PMID: 19521118 DOI: 10.1159/000215719]

43 **Berretta M**, Zanet E, Basile F, Ridolfo AL, Di Benedetto F, Bearz A, Berretta S, Nasti G, Tirelli U. HIV-positive patients with liver metastases from colorectal cancer deserve the same therapeutic approach as the general population. *Onkologie* 2010; **33**: 203-204 [PMID: 20389148 DOI: 10.1159/000292126]

44 **Bini EJ**, Green B, Poles MA. Screening colonoscopy for the detection of neoplastic lesions in asymptomatic HIV-infected subjects. *Gut* 2009; **58**: 1129-1134 [PMID: 19293177 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2008.165985]

45 **Franceschi S**, Lise M, Clifford GM, Rickenbach M, Levi F, Maspoli M, Bouchardy C, Dehler S, Jundt G, Ess S, Bordoni A, Konzelmann I, Frick H, Dal Maso L, Elzi L, Furrer H, Calmy A, Cavassini M, Ledergerber B, Keiser O. Changing patterns of cancer incidence in the early- and late-HAART periods: the Swiss HIV Cohort Study. *Br J Cancer* 2010; **103**: 416-422 [PMID: 20588274 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6605756]

46 **Gotti D**, Raffetti E, Albini L, Sighinolfi L, Maggiolo F, Di Filippo E, Ladisa N, Angarano G, Lapadula G, Pan A, Esposti AD, Fabbiani M, Focà E, Scalzini A, Donato F, Quiros-Roldan E. Survival in HIV-infected patients after a cancer diagnosis in the cART Era: results of an italian multicenter study. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e94768 [PMID: 24760049 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0094768]

47 **Guiguet M**, Boué F, Cadranel J, Lang JM, Rosenthal E, Costagliola D. Effect of immunodeficiency, HIV viral load, and antiretroviral therapy on the risk of individual malignancies (FHDH-ANRS CO4): a prospective cohort study. *Lancet Oncol* 2009; **10**: 1152-1159 [PMID: 19818686 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(09)70282-7]

48 **Babu CK**, Suwansrinon K, Bren GD, Badley AD, Rizza SA. HIV induces TRAIL sensitivity in hepatocytes. *PLoS One* 2009; **4**: e4623 [PMID: 19247452 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0004623]

49 **Sulkowski MS**, Thomas DL, Chaisson RE, Moore RD. Hepatotoxicity associated with antiretroviral therapy in adults infected with human immunodeficiency virus and the role of hepatitis C or B virus infection. *JAMA* 2000; **283**: 74-80 [PMID: 10632283 DOI: 10.1001/jama.283.1.74]

50 **Clifford GM**, Rickenbach M, Polesel J, Dal Maso L, Steffen I, Ledergerber B, Rauch A, Probst-Hensch NM, Bouchardy C, Levi F, Franceschi S. Influence of HIV-related immunodeficiency on the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma. *AIDS* 2008; **22**: 2135-2141 [PMID: 18832877 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32831103ad]

51 **Berretta M**, Garlassi E, Cacopardo B, Cappellani A, Guaraldi G, Cocchi S, De Paoli P, Lleshi A, Izzi I, Torresin A, Di Gangi P, Pietrangelo A, Ferrari M, Bearz A, Berretta S, Nasti G, Di Benedetto F, Balestreri L, Tirelli U, Ventura P. Hepatocellular carcinoma in HIV-infected patients: check early, treat hard. *Oncologist* 2011; **16**: 1258-1269 [PMID: 21868692 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2010-0400]

52 **Bower M**, Palfreeman A, Alfa-Wali M, Bunker C, Burns F, Churchill D, Collins S, Cwynarski K, Edwards S, Fields P, Fife K, Gallop-Evans E, Kassam S, Kulasegaram R, Lacey C, Marcus R, Montoto S, Nelson M, Newsom-Davis T, Orkin C, Shaw K, Tenant-Flowers M, Webb A, Westwell S, Williams M. British HIV Association guidelines for HIV-associated malignancies 2014. *HIV Med* 2014; **15** Suppl 2: 1-92 [PMID: 24528810 DOI: 10.1111/hiv.12136]

53 **Vibert E**, Duclos-Vallée JC, Ghigna MR, Hoti E, Salloum C, Guettier C, Castaing D, Samuel D, Adam R. Liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma: the impact of human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Hepatology* 2011; **53**: 475-482 [PMID: 21274869 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24062]

54 **Di Benedetto F**, Tarantino G, Ercolani G, Baccarani U, Montalti R, De Ruvo N, Berretta M, Adani GL, Zanello M, Tavio M, Cautero N, Tirelli U, Pinna AD, Gerunda GE, Guaraldi G. Multicenter italian experience in liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma in HIV-infected patients. *Oncologist* 2013; **18**: 592-599 [PMID: 23666950 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2012-0255]

55 **Rockstroh JK**, Bhagani S, Benhamou Y, Bruno R, Mauss S, Peters L, Puoti M, Soriano V, Tural C. European AIDS Clinical Society (EACS) guidelines for the clinical management and treatment of chronic hepatitis B and C coinfection in HIV-infected adults. *HIV Med* 2008; **9**: 82-88 [PMID: 18257771 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1293.2007.00535.x]

56 **Clausen LN**, Lundbo LF, Benfield T. Hepatitis C virus infection in the human immunodeficiency virus infected patient. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 12132-12143 [PMID: 25232248 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i34.12132]

57 **Biggar RJ**, Jaffe ES, Goedert JJ, Chaturvedi A, Pfeiffer R, Engels EA. Hodgkin lymphoma and immunodeficiency in persons with HIV/AIDS. *Blood* 2006; **108**: 3786-3791 [PMID: 16917006 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2006-05-024109]

58 **Engels EA**, Biggar RJ, Hall HI, Cross H, Crutchfield A, Finch JL, Grigg R, Hylton T, Pawlish KS, McNeel TS, Goedert JJ. Cancer risk in people infected with human immunodeficiency virus in the United States. *Int J Cancer* 2008; **123**: 187-194 [PMID: 18435450 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.23487]

59 **Said JW**. Immunodeficiency-related Hodgkin lymphoma and its mimics. *Adv Anat Pathol* 2007; **14**: 189-194 [PMID: 17452815 DOI: 10.1097/PAP.0b013e31805048fc]

60 **Rezk SA**, Weiss LM. Epstein-Barr virus-associated lymphoproliferative disorders. *Hum Pathol* 2007; **38**: 1293-1304 [PMID: 17707260 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2007.05.020]

61 **Spina M**, Carbone A, Gloghini A, Serraino D, Berretta M, Tirelli U. Hodgkin's Disease in Patients with HIV Infection. *Adv Hematol* 2011; **2011**: pii: 402682 [PMID: 20936156 DOI: 10.1155/2011/402682]

62 **Berenguer J**, Miralles P, Ribera JM, Rubio R, Valencia E, Mahillo B, Pintado V, Palacios R, Montes ML, Téllez MJ, La Cruz J, Torre-Cisneros J, Rodríguez-Arrondo F, Sepúlveda MA, Gutiérrez F, Peralta G, Boix V. Characteristics and outcome of AIDS-related Hodgkin lymphoma before and after the introduction of highly active antiretroviral therapy. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2008; **47**: 422-428 [PMID: 18434957 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e31815e722b]

63 **Levine AM**, Li P, Cheung T, Tulpule A, Von Roenn J, Nathwani BN, Ratner L. Chemotherapy consisting of doxorubicin, bleomycin, vinblastine, and dacarbazine with granulocyte-colony-stimulating factor in HIV-infected patients with newly diagnosed Hodgkin's disease: a prospective, multi-institutional AIDS clinical trials group study (ACTG 149). *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2000; **24**: 444-450 [PMID: 11035615 DOI: 10.1097/00126334-200008150-00009]

64 **Hartmann P**, Rehwald U, Salzberger B, Franzen C, Sieber M, Wöhrmann A, Diehl V. BEACOPP therapeutic regimen for patients

with Hodgkin's disease and HIV infection. *Ann Oncol* 2003; **14**: 1562-1569 [PMID: 14504059 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdg408]

65 **Spina M**, Gabarre J, Rossi G, Fasan M, Schiantarelli C, Nigra E, Mena M, Antinori A, Ammassari A, Talamini R, Vaccher E, di Gennaro G, Tirelli U. Stanford V regimen and concomitant HAART in 59 patients with Hodgkin disease and HIV infection. *Blood* 2002; **100**: 1984-1988 [PMID: 12200356 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2002-03-0989]

66 **Spina M**, Rossi G, Antinori A. VEBEP regimen and highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) in patients (pts) with HD and HIV infection (HD-HIV)-ASCO. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: 8083

67 **Krishnan A**, Molina A, Zaia J, Smith D, Vasquez D, Kogut N, Falk PM, Rosenthal J, Alvarnas J, Forman SJ. Durable remissions with autologous stem cell transplantation for high-risk HIV-associated lymphomas. *Blood* 2005; **105**: 874-878 [PMID: 15388574 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2004-04-1532]

68 **Re A**, Michieli M, Casari S, Allione B, Cattaneo C, Rupolo M, Spina M, Manuele R, Vaccher E, Mazzucato M, Abbruzzese L, Ferremi P, Carosi G, Tirelli U, Rossi G. High-dose therapy and autologous peripheral blood stem cell transplantation as salvage treatment for AIDS-related lymphoma: long-term results of the Italian Cooperative Group on AIDS and Tumors (GICAT) study with analysis of prognostic factors. *Blood* 2009; **114**: 1306-1313 [PMID: 19451551 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2009-02-202762]

69 **Zanet E**, Berretta M, Martellotta F, Cacopardo B, Fisichella R, Tavio M, Berretta S, Tirelli U. Anal cancer: Focus on HIV-positive patients in the HAART-era. *Curr HIV Res* 2011; **9**: 70-81 [PMID: 21410431 DOI: 10.2174/157016211795569087]

70 **D'Souza G**, Wiley DJ, Li X, Chmiel JS, Margolick JB, Cranston RD, Jacobson LP. Incidence and epidemiology of anal cancer in the multicenter AIDS cohort study. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2008; **48**: 491-499 [PMID: 18614927 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e31817aebfe]

71 **Piketty C**, Selinger-Leneman H, Bouvier AM, Belot A, Mary-Krause M, Duvivier C, Bonmarchand M, Abramowitz L, Costagliola D, Grabar S. Incidence of HIV-related anal cancer remains increased despite long-term combined antiretroviral treatment: results from the french hospital database on HIV. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 4360-4366 [PMID: 23091098 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2012.44.5486]

72 **Kreuter A**, Potthoff A, Brockmeyer NH, Gambichler T, Swoboda J, Stücker M, Schmitt M, Pfister H, Wieland U. Anal carcinoma in human immunodeficiency virus-positive men: results of a prospective study from Germany. *Br J Dermatol* 2010; **162**: 1269-1277 [PMID: 20184584 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2133.2010.09712.x]

73 **Watson AJ**, Smith BB, Whitehead MR, Sykes PH, Frizelle FA. Malignant progression of anal intra-epithelial neoplasia. *ANZ J Surg* 2006; **76**: 715-717 [PMID: 16916390 DOI: 10.1111/j.1445-2197.2006.03837.x]

74 **Frisch M**, Biggar RJ, Goedert JJ. Human papillomavirus-associated cancers in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2000; **92**: 1500-1510 [PMID: 10995805 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/92.18.1500]

75 **Machalek DA**, Poynten M, Jin F, Fairley CK, Farnsworth A, Garland SM, Hillman RJ, Petoumenos K, Roberts J, Tabrizi SN, Templeton DJ, Grulich AE. Anal human papillomavirus infection and associated neoplastic lesions in men who have sex with men: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet Oncol* 2012; **13**: 487-500 [PMID: 22445259 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(12)70080-3]

76 **Cleator S**, Fife K, Nelson M, Gazzard B, Phillips R, Bower M. Treatment of HIV-associated invasive anal cancer with combined chemoradiation. *Eur J Cancer* 2000; **36**: 754-758 [PMID: 10762748]

77 **Dandapani SV**, Eaton M, Thomas CR, Pagnini PG. HIV- positive anal cancer: an update for the clinician. *J Gastrointest Oncol* 2010; **1**: 34-44 [PMID: 22811803 DOI: 10.3978/j.issn.2078-6891.2010.005]

78 **Lam JM**, Hoch JS, Tinmouth J, Sano M, Raboud J, Salit IE. Cost-effectiveness of screening for anal precancers in HIV-positive men. *AIDS* 2011; **25**: 635-642 [PMID: 21139488 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3283434594]

79 **Kreimer AR**, González P, Katki HA, Porras C, Schiffman M, Rodriguez AC, Solomon D, Jiménez S, Schiller JT, Lowy DR, van Doorn LJ, Struijk L, Quint W, Chen S, Wacholder S, Hildesheim A, Herrero R. Efficacy of a bivalent HPV 16/18 vaccine against anal HPV 16/18 infection among young women: a nested analysis within the Costa Rica Vaccine Trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2011; **12**: 862-870 [PMID: 21865087 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(11)70213-3]

80 **Mehrany K**, Weenig RH, Lee KK, Pittelkow MR, Otley CC. Increased metastasis and mortality from cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma in patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2005; **53**: 1067-1071 [PMID: 16310071 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2005.08.055]

81 **Euvrard S**, Kanitakis J, Claudy A. Skin cancers after organ transplantation. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 1681-1691 [PMID: 12711744 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra022137]

82 **Crum-Cianflone N**, Hullsiek KH, Satter E, Marconi V, Weintrob A, Ganesan A, Barthel RV, Fraser S, Agan BK. Cutaneous malignancies among HIV-infected persons. *Arch Intern Med* 2009; **169**: 1130-1138 [PMID: 19546414 DOI: 10.1001/archinternmed.2009.104]

83 **Clifford GM**, Polesel J, Rickenbach M, Dal Maso L, Keiser O, Kofler A, Rapiti E, Levi F, Jundt G, Fisch T, Bordoni A, De Weck D, Franceschi S. Cancer risk in the Swiss HIV Cohort Study: associations with immunodeficiency, smoking, and highly active antiretroviral therapy. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2005; **97**: 425-432 [PMID: 15770006 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/dji072]

84 **Olsen CM**, Knight LL, Green AC. Risk of melanoma in people with HIV/AIDS in the pre- and post-HAART eras: a systematic review and meta-analysis of cohort studies. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e95096 [PMID: 24740329 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0095096]

85 **Maurer TA**, Christian KV, Kerschmann RL, Berzin B, Palefsky JM, Payne D, Tyring SK, Berger TG. Cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients. A study of epidemiologic risk factors, human papillomavirus, and p53 expression. *Arch Dermatol* 1997; **133**: 577-583 [PMID: 9158410 DOI: 10.1001/archderm.1997.03890410031004]

86 **Lobo DV**, Chu P, Grekin RC, Berger TG. Nonmelanoma skin cancers and infection with the human immunodeficiency virus. *Arch Dermatol* 1992; **128**: 623-627 [PMID: 1575523 DOI: 10.1001/archderm.1992.01680150053003]

87 **Hausauer AK**, Maurer T, Leslie KS, Parvataneni R, Stuart SE, Chren MM. Recurrence after treatment of cutaneous basal cell and squamous cell carcinomas in patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus. *JAMA Dermatol* 2013; **149**: 239-241 [PMID: 23426494 DOI: 10.1001/2013.jamadermatol.245]

88 **Izikson L**, Nornhold E, Iyer JG, Nghiem P, Zeitouni NC. Merkel cell carcinoma associated with HIV: review of 14 patients. *AIDS* 2011; **25**: 119-121 [PMID: 21119325 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328340a19c]

89 **Engels EA**, Frisch M, Goedert JJ, Biggar RJ, Miller RW. Merkel cell carcinoma and HIV infection. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 497-498 [PMID: 11853800 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)07668-7]

90 **Feng H**, Shuda M, Chang Y, Moore PS. Clonal integration of a polyomavirus in human Merkel cell carcinoma. *Science* 2008; **319**: 1096-1100 [PMID: 18202256 DOI: 10.1126/science.1152586]

91 **Foulongne V**, Kluger N, Dereure O, Brieu N, Guillot B, Segondy M. Merkel cell polyomavirus and Merkel cell carcinoma, France. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2008; **14**: 1491-1493 [PMID: 18760031 DOI: 10.3201/eid1409.080651]

92 **Becker JC**, Houben R, Ugurel S, Trefzer U, Pföhler C, Schrama D. MC polyomavirus is frequently present in Merkel cell carcinoma of European patients. *J Invest Dermatol* 2009; **129**: 248-250 [PMID: 18633441 DOI: 10.1038/jid.2008.198]

93 **Brugnaro P**, Morelli E, Fiscon M, Ebo F, Rosini G, Belussi F, Eseme F, Mione CA, Donisi PM, Raise E. Sustained remission of a primary nodal Merkel cell carcinoma in an HIV-positive patient. *Onkologie* 2011; **34**: 190-192 [PMID: 21447977 DOI: 10.1159/000327000]

94 **Busse PM**, Clark JR, Muse VV, Liu V. Case records of the Massachusetts General Hospital. Case 19-2008. A 63-year-old

HIV-positive man with cutaneous Merkel-cell carcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 2717-2723 [PMID: 18565865 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMcpc0803063]

95 **Paulson KG**, Iyer JG, Blom A, Warton EM, Sokil M, Yelistratova L, Schuman L, Nagase K, Bhatia S, Asgari MM, Nghiem P. Systemic immune suppression predicts diminished Merkel cell carcinoma-specific survival independent of stage. *J Invest Dermatol* 2013; **133**: 642-646 [PMID: 23190897 DOI: 10.1038/jid.2012.388]

96 **Sutton L**, Guénel P, Tanguy ML, Rio B, Dhedin N, Casassus P, Lortholary O. Acute myeloid leukaemia in human immunodeficiency virus-infected adults: epidemiology, treatment feasibility and outcome. *Br J Haematol* 2001; **112**: 900-908 [PMID: 11298584]

97 **Aboulafia DM**, Meneses M, Ginsberg S, Siegel MS, Howard WW, Dezube BJ. Acute myeloid leukemia in patients infected with HIV-1. *AIDS* 2002; **16**: 865-876 [PMID: 11919488]

98 **Evans MW**, Sung AD, Gojo I, Tidwell M, Greer J, Levis M, Karp J, Baer MR. Risk assessment in human immunodeficiency virus-associated acute myeloid leukemia. *Leuk Lymphoma* 2012; **53**: 660-664 [PMID: 21942284 DOI: 10.3109/10428194.2011.624228]

99 **Marcus JL**, Chao CR, Leyden WA, Xu L, Klein DB, Horberg MA, Towner WJ, Quesenberry CP, Abrams DI, Van Den Eeden SK, Silverberg MJ. Prostate cancer incidence and prostate-specific antigen testing among HIV-positive and HIV-negative men. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2014; **66**: 495-502 [PMID: 24820107 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0000000000000202]

100 **Silverberg MJ**, Chao C, Leyden WA, Xu L, Horberg MA, Klein D, Towner WJ, Dubrow R, Quesenberry CP, Neugebauer RS, Abrams DI. HIV infection, immunodeficiency, viral replication, and the risk of cancer. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2011; **20**: 2551-2559 [PMID: 22109347 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-11-0777]

101 **Goedert JJ**, Schairer C, McNeel TS, Hessol NA, Rabkin CS, Engels EA. Risk of breast, ovary, and uterine corpus cancers among 85,268 women with AIDS. *Br J Cancer* 2006; **95**: 642-648 [PMID: 16868538 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6603282]

P- Reviewer: Brown JC, Shih WL **S- Editor**: Ma YJ **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.219

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 219-244
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Post-transcriptional gene silencing, transcriptional gene silencing and human immunodeficiency virus

Catalina Méndez, Chantelle L Ahlenstiel, Anthony D Kelleher

Catalina Méndez, Chantelle L Ahlenstiel, Anthony D Kelleher, the Kirby Institute for Infection and Immunity, Wallace Wurth Building-Level 5, Faculty of Medicine, University of New South Wales, Kensington NSW 2052, Australia

Anthony D Kelleher, 2nd St Vincent's Centre for Applied Medical Research, Darlinghurst NSW 2010, Australia

Author contributions: Méndez C, Ahlenstiel CL and Kelleher AD solely contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors are named inventors on a provisional patent of a short RNA molecule that suppresses HIV-1 infection. Authors declare there are no conflicts of interest among them.

Correspondence to: Anthony D Kelleher, MBBS, PhD, Professor, the Kirby Institute for Infection and Immunity, Wallace Wurth Building- Level 5, Faculty of Medicine, University of New South Wales, Kensington NSW 2052, Australia. akelleher@kirby.unsw.edu.au
Telephone: + 61-2-93850182
Fax: +61-2-93850468

Received: December 6, 2014
Peer-review started: December 6, 2014
First decision: December 26, 2014
Revised: January 24, 2015
Accepted: April 27, 2015
Article in press: April 29, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

While human immunodeficiency virus 1 (HIV-1) infection is controlled through continuous, life-long use of a combination of drugs targeting different steps of the virus cycle, HIV-1 is never completely eradicated from the body. Despite decades of research there is still no effective vaccine to prevent HIV-1 infection. Therefore, the possibility of an RNA interference (RNAi)-based cure has become an increasingly explored approach. Endogenous gene expression is controlled at both, transcriptional and post-transcriptional levels by non-coding RNAs, which act through diverse molecular mechanisms including RNAi. RNAi has the potential to control the turning on/off of specific genes through transcriptional gene silencing (TGS), as well as fine-tuning their expression through post-transcriptional gene silencing (PTGS). In this review we will describe in detail the canonical RNAi pathways for PTGS and TGS, the relationship of TGS with other silencing mechanisms and will discuss a variety of approaches developed to suppress HIV-1 *via* manipulation of RNAi. We will briefly compare RNAi strategies against other approaches developed to target the virus, highlighting their potential to overcome the major obstacle to finding a cure, which is the specific targeting of the HIV-1 reservoir within latently infected cells.

Key words: Human immunodeficiency virus 1; RNA interference; Reservoirs; Epigenetics; Latency; Transcriptional gene silencing; Post-transcriptional gene silencing

Core tip: The lack of progress in developing an effective human immunodeficiency virus 1 (HIV-1) vaccine has motivated the pressing need for alternate therapies to cure HIV. RNAi therapeutics represent an alternate approach to a functional cure by offering specific targeting of the HIV-1 latent reservoir with the significant advantage of allowing cessation of combination antiretroviral therapy.

Méndez C, Ahlenstiel CL, Kelleher AD. Post-transcriptional

gene silencing, transcriptional gene silencing and human immunodeficiency virus. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 219-244 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/219.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.219

INTRODUCTION

Human immunodeficiency virus 1 (HIV-1) infection can be successfully controlled by combination antiretroviral therapy (cART). However, the development of an effective vaccine or an alternative therapy remains the ideal solution since cART has several disadvantages. Adverse effects[1], high costs of therapy, emergence of resistant viruses[2,3] and in particular, the fact that life-long continuous treatment is required[4-6] are just a few examples. Years of research pursuing an HIV-1 vaccine have shown how challenging this task continues to be, with even the most promising trials showing only marginal efficacy[7,8].

Two main obstacles must be overcome to obtain either a vaccine or a cure. First, the high mutation rate of the virus allows extensive accumulation of genetic changes. These genetic changes generate variation with minimal compromise of the virus identity[9-11]; Second, the virus is never eradicated from the body, even after prolonged therapy[6]. While cART has been largely able to deal with the variability of the virus by simultaneously targeting multiple key steps of its replication cycle, it has no direct effect upon latently infected cells[11,12]. The latter, commonly known as latent reservoirs, includes very long-lived resting memory CD4+ T cells[13], macrophages and other cell types[14,15], all of which carry latent proviruses. Provirus refers to the viral form that has been integrated into the cell's genome and is inherited through each cell division. Latent means it is transcriptionally inactive, but is able to re-activate after stimulation[16-19] and is capable of causing substantial viremia when therapy ceases[20,21].

The viral reservoir, a term used to refer to the latently infected cells as a whole, is maintained throughout the life span of an infected individual. During episodes of low-level viremia and/or homeostatic proliferation of T cells the reservoir seems to be replenished, but contribution of each of these processes is still disputed[21-24].

Latently infected cells are considered the major obstacle to a cure for HIV. They remain immunologically and biochemically silent, becoming invisible to the immune system with no expression of viral antigens on their surface. The only known difference between latently infected cells and un-infected cells is a newly integrated "gene": the genome of the HIV provirus.

Considerable effort has been put into understanding the molecular mechanisms of latency in order to develop strategies that specifically target either the latently infected cells or directly target the provirus within them. The establishment of latency results from a variety of molecular mechanisms, mainly transcriptional interference and epigenetic mechanisms. It is believed that there is a repressive epigenetic component in most of the inducible proviruses. This component is facultative heterochromatin, a compact yet dynamic state of chromatin that impedes proviral transcription[25-27]. Opposing approaches, which aim to modify the repressive epigenetic profile established at the HIV promoter, have been developed. These either activate proviral transcription by inducing chromatin relaxation or obstruct transcription through stabilization of heterochromatin.

The first strategy has already been tested in cells from HIV infected (+) patients and is currently being tested in a number of clinical trials (http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/clinical-trials/search/b/0/reservoirs and http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/clinical-trials/search/b/0/vorinostat), using pharmacological drugs or cytokines that directly and/or indirectly induce activation of HIV provirus through a variety of cellular pathways[28-30]. However, while viral transcripts from apparently latently infected cells have been detected, no significant change or reduction in the size of the latent reservoir-proviral integrated DNA-has been observed[30,31]. There is currently a debate as to whether these cell associated viral RNA transcripts represent transcripts driven by the endogenous HIV promoter, the 5'LTR or whether these are so called "read through transcripts" which arise from altered expression from the promoter of the parent gene into which HIV has integrated[32]. The results of further trials of these agents are awaited.

The second strategy is based on RNAi and has the advantage of being specifically directed to viral mRNAs or the provirus regardless of the cell type infected. Aiming to target persistent infection in the first place, most RNAi approaches are designed to directly cleave HIV mRNAs and were first designed in the early 2000s. Significant advances have transpired in the field, beginning from those manipulating PTGS to target viral mRNAs and cellular cofactors that support HIV replication, to those using TGS to induce heterochromatin at the HIV promoter. In this review we will discuss both PTGS and TGS RNAi based approaches for HIV, and provide a brief commentary on other gene therapy alternatives currently under development.

RNAi

RNAi is an evolutionarily conserved mechanism that is present from lower eukaryotes through to mammals. Because it is beyond the scope of this review to discuss each of these, we will mainly focus on the mammalian RNAi pathways. However, we will also include some other species-specific examples to illustrate pertinent points.

The first evidence of RNAi was reported in transgenic tobacco plants expressing antisense or sense RNAs from the coat-protein gene of the tobacco etch virus (TEV)[33,34]. The plants did not show evidence of infection after challenged with TEV, suggesting the presence of a protective nucleic acid-dependent mechanism that was later proved to spread throughout the plant in a systemic way (reviewed in[35]). The precise mechanism was described in the worm *Caenorhabditis elegans (C.*

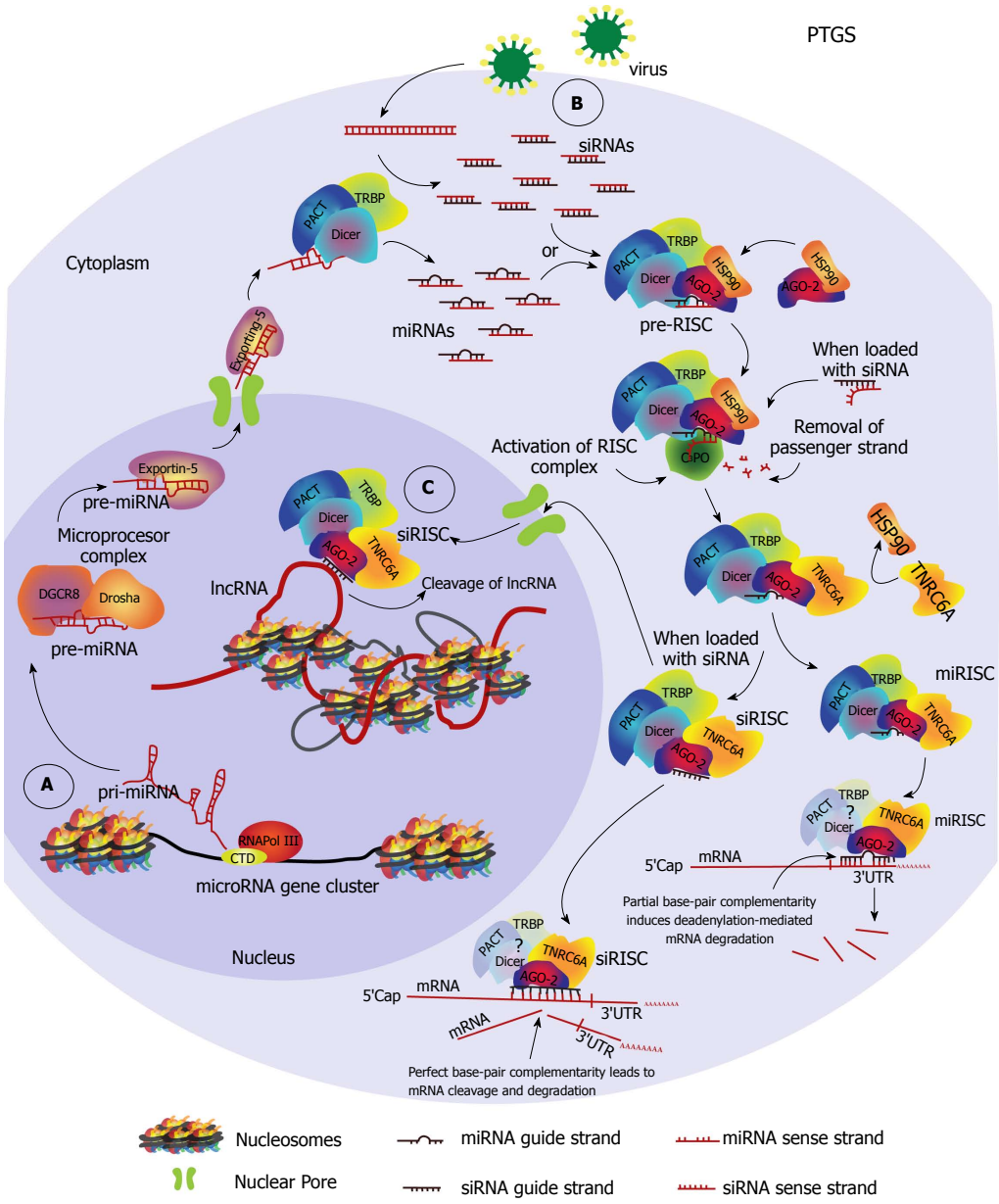


Figure 1 Cytoplasmic and nuclear post-transcriptional gene silencing pathways. A: A primary-microRNA (pri-miRNA) is transcribed by the RNA Polymerase III (RNA Pol III) from a miRNA gene cluster. The pri-miRNA is then processed by the microprocessor complex into the precursor-miRNA (pre-miRNA) which is exported to the cytoplasm by exportin-5. In the cytoplasm, dicer in complex with Tar-RNA-binding protein (TRBP) and protein kinase R activator of transcription (PACT), process the pre-miRNA into miRNA duplexes. MiRNA duplexes are ioaded into argonaute (AGO) proteins 1-4 with help from heat shock protein 90 (HSP90), forming the miRNA pre-RNA-induced silencing complex (pre-miRISC). The pathway is shown for AGO-2. The pre-RISC complex is activated after removal of the passenger strand from the duplex by C3PO, becoming the miRISC. TNRC6A becomes part of the complex. MiRISC finds a target region within the 3'UTR of an mRNA and induces deadenylation-dependent mRNA degradation; B: During viral infections double-strand RNA (dsRNA) intermediates of viral replication are processed by DICER/TRBP/PACT and are loaded into AGO-2 to form the siRISC complex after removal of the passenger strand. Complete complementarity between the guide strand siRNA and the target region induces cleavage of the targeted mRNA. MiRNAs can also induce mRNA cleavage if this condition is satisfied; C: A nuclear post-transcriptional gene silencing pathway can occur when an activated siRISC is imported into the nucleus and identifies a target within a nuclear RNA such as a Long-non-coding-RNA (lncRNA) resulting in cleavage of the RNA molecule.

elegans), in which interference of endogenous gene expression through inoculation of homologous dsRNA molecules was demonstrated and the involvement of a catalytic and an amplification event was suggested[36-38]. It was further demonstrated that RNA interference, as it began to be known, resulted in genetic silencing and co-suppression of the targeted gene[37,38]. Following this discovery, vast exploitation of RNAi for discovery of gene function in reverse genetics of mammalian cells began and soon after was developed as a therapeutic tool, with several clinical trials currently underway for a variety of human diseases (http://www.clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/results?term=RNAi&Search=Search)[39]. This RNAi pathway is known as PTGS (Figure 1). It functions in the cytoplasm and impedes translation of an mRNA into protein, by direct cleavage or by initiating degradation of the targeted mRNA sequence.

It was not until 2004 that the nuclear RNAi pathway

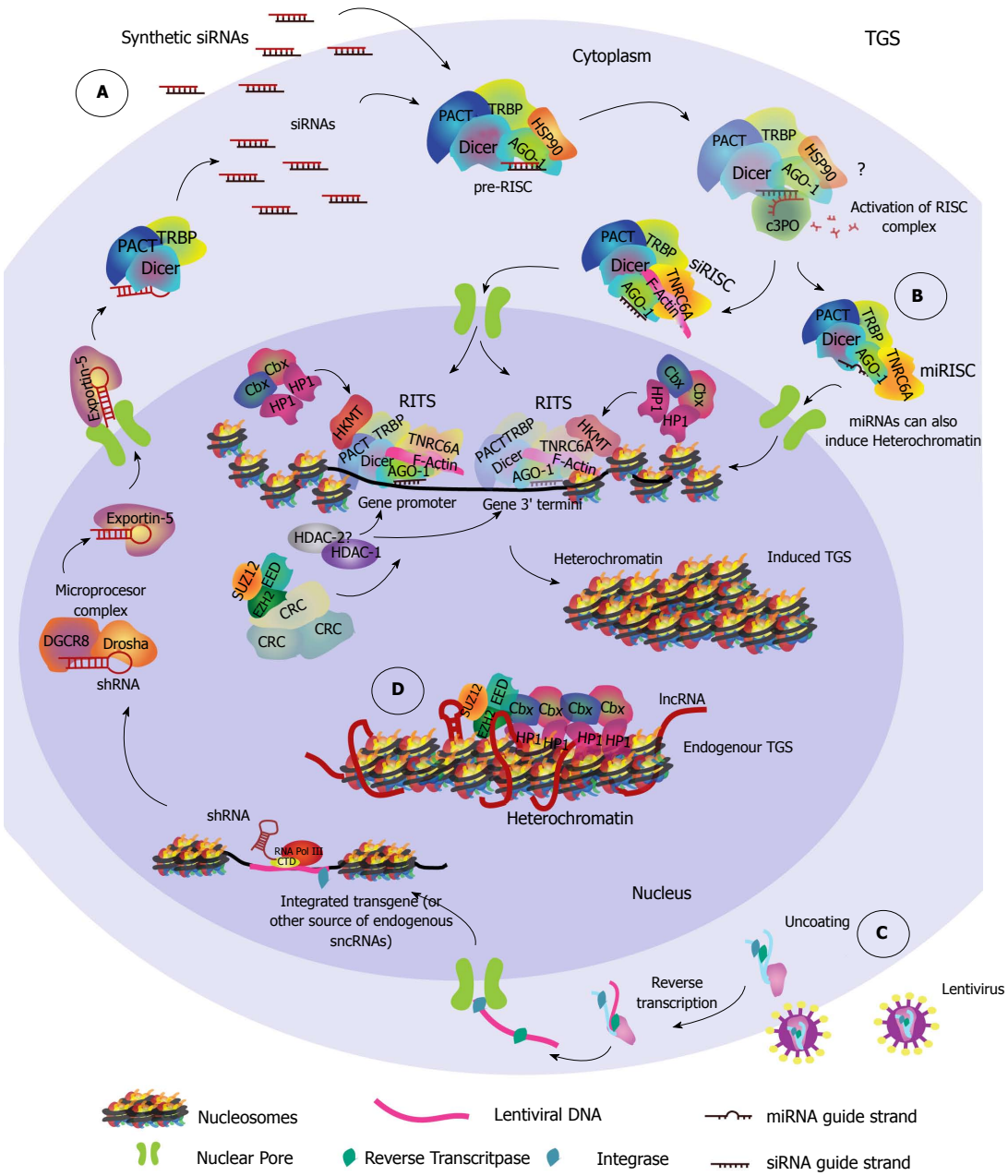


Figure 2 Endogenous and induced transcriptional gene silencing pathways. A: Synthetic siRNAs that have been designed to target the promoter region or the 3' end termini of a gene are loaded into AGO-1, forming the pre-RISC complex. It is currently unknown if removal of passenger strand is required, nonetheless if it occurs it probably takes place in the cytoplasm following the same steps as used in PTGS. F-actin participates in the nuclear import of the RISC complex which, once in the nucleus becomes the RITS complex as histone-lysine-methyltransferases (HKMTs) and other epigenetic related proteins such as Histone-deacetylases (HDAC), DNA methyltransferases (DNMTs), Histone Protein 1 (HP1) and others assemble with it. It is unknown whether RISC related proteins remain in the RITS complex. The RITS complex may vary in its composition depending on the chromatin microenvironment and the small non-coding RNA (sncRNA) target region, therefore only some proteins are shown as an example. Establishment of repressive epigenetic marks (not highlighted for simplicity) and further recruitment of chromatin remodeling complexes (CRCs) results in heterochromatin formation and induces transcriptional gene silencing (TGS). Two independent target regions are pictured together to show the different regions of a gene that can be targeted to induce TGS; B: miRISC complexes whose guide strand targets a promoter region may be exported into the nucleus, form a RITS complex and induce TGS in the same way as was described for siRISC complexes; C: Lentiviruses can be used to drive transgene integration of a DNA cassette designed to express a shRNA that induces TGS. ShRNAs are transcribed by RNA Pol III and are processed through the microRNA pathway. In the cytoplasm they are converted to siRNA duplexes that are loaded into RISC complexes and follow the same import pathway to induce TGS as explained in A; D: Endogenous transcriptional gene silencing is induced by a long-non-coding RNA (lncRNA) whose secondary structure is recognized by members of the Polycomb Group repressive complex 1 (PRC1), such as enhancer of zeste 2 (EZH2), embryonic ectoderm development (EED) and suppressor of zeste 12 (SUZ12). The interaction recruits HP1 and other proteins of PRC1 complexes like the (Chromobox) Cbx family that contain a chromodomain able to induce heterochromatin formation.

TGS, involving chromatin compaction, was identified[40] (Figure 2). Presently, both PTGS and TGS have been found to be functional in the nucleus of mammalian cells, but only TGS seems to repress gene transcription directly through chromatin remodeling.

During RNAi small non-coding RNAs (sncRNAs) are used as guides through sequence homology to target either mRNA transcripts or gene promoters[41-43]. These

sncRNAs are loaded into Argonaute proteins forming the main effector complex; however, other cellular cofactors are required for the process to occur. There are three major kinds of sncRNAs involved in RNAi: small interfering RNAs (endogenous- and exogenous-siRNAs), microRNAs (miRNAs) and piwi-associated RNAs (piRNAs)[44], which we will describe briefly in the next section. The Argonaute proteins are further subdivided into the Argonaute subfamily (AGO-1, AGO-2, AGO-3 and AGO-4, in humans), and the Piwi subfamily (HILI or PIWIL2, $HIWI_1$ or PIWIL1, $HIWI_2$ or PIWIL4 and $HIWI_3$, in humans)[44,45]. There are also species-specific AGO proteins that we will not discuss (recently reviewed in[46]), with the exception of specific examples.

Recently, many novel non-canonical sncRNAs involved in RNAi have been discovered[47-49]. However we will only focus on the three major classes previously mentioned. SncRNAs are generally classified depending on their biogenesis (Dicer/Drosha dependent or independent), their size (about 21-30 nt) and the Argonaute protein they bind (AGO 1-4). They can be endogenous or exogenous depending on their origin. The endogenous sncRNAs are produced from transcription units (Figure 1A), protein coding genes (exons and introns), convergent promoters, long non-coding RNAs (lncRNAs), gene clusters, repetitive elements or retro-elements, such as transposons, while the exogenous sncRNAs are either synthetic or of viral origin (Figure 1B).

SncRNAs

SiRNAs: Exo-siRNAs and endo-siRNAs: SiRNAs are about 21-nt long duplexes generated in the cytoplasm by cleavage of endogenous or exogenous long dsRNA precursors (*e.g.,* lncRNA) by the endonuclease Dicer (Figure 1B). These siRNAs are then loaded onto a specific AGO protein. When exogenous, synthetic siRNAs may be delivered to the cells by transfection/nucleofection protocols or may originate from expression of artificial integrated constructs (lentivirus transduction), such as short-hairpin RNAs (shRNAs). Naturally occurring exo-siRNAs in mammalian cells were not discovered until very recently, and were found to originate from dsRNA intermediates of viral replication in mouse embryonic stem cells[50]. On the other hand, mammalian endo-siRNAs were identified in somatic tissue and found to be processed through a non-canonical Drosha-independent mechanism, from Dicer cleavage of a long nuclear hairpin RNA expressed from short interspersed nuclear elements (SINEs)[51].

Generally, siRNAs direct the cleavage of their cognate mRNA through PTGS when they mutually base pair with perfect complementarity[52-54]. Mutations in the siRNA or in the target region within the mRNA sequence usually reduce or abolish silencing, which is why RNAi is considered a very specific mechanism[55,56]. In addition, siRNAs can also induce TGS, a nuclear RNAi pathway, whenever they target a complementary sequence within the promoter or the 3′ end of a gene[57,58]. Additionally, siRNA-directed transcriptional gene activation (TGA) has also been reported for several genes[57,59].

miRNAs: In their canonical pathway miRNAs are first transcribed as primary-miRNAs (pri-RNA) by RNA Pol II, and are then processed by the nuclear RNAse III protein Drosha - an RNAse type III enzyme (Figure 1A). Drosha and co-factor DiGeorge syndrome critical region gene 8 (DGCR8) form the Microprocessor complex. This complex generates precursor-miRNAs (pre-miRNA) that are further processed, exported to the cytoplasm by Exportin 5, and cleaved by Dicer. Dicer generates 22-nt miRNA duplexes that are analogous to siRNA duplexes. Non-canonical pathways exist which are Drosha, Dicer or DGCR8 independent. Importantly, unlike siRNA-duplexes, miRNA-duplexes frequently contain mismatches and about the first 2-7 nts at the 5′ end of the guide strand, known as the seed region, may target the 3′ untranslated (3′ UTR) region of multiple mRNAs. Based on this multiple targeting ability, other biochemical characteristics and evolutionary conservation, microRNAs are clustered into families (http://www.mirbase.org/index.shtml). In miRNAs, complete base pair complementarity with target mRNA is found within this seed region, which allows for mismatches towards the 3′ end. MiRNAs predominantly direct deadenylation-dependent mRNA-decay that results in translational repression, but they are also able to induce sequestration. While common in plants, in mammals on rare occasions when miRNAs show complete complementarity to the target region they can induce cleavage of the mRNA[60-62]. Deadenylation and other ways of translational repression and sequestration result from partial complementarity between miRNA and the target mRNA[44,47,63,64]. In a similar way to siRNAs, when mature miRNAs show complete homology to a promoter region, they are able to induce TGS[65-67] (Figure 1C). However, this miRNA pathway is not well described due to the few cases that have been reported.

piRNAs: PiRNAs are longer (about 25-31 nt) than siRNAs or mature miRNAs and have fundamental roles in maintenance of stemness, transgenerational inheritance and genome instability through targeting of repetitive sequences (*e.g.,* endogenous retroviruses and transposon elements), among other functions (reviewed in[68]). In mammals, piRNAs are expressed in germ cells and somatic germ cells (SGC), but their role in somatic stem cells, such as hematopoietic stem cells, remains controversial[69,70]. Even though there is expression of piwi-pathway-specific AGO proteins in human CD34+ stem cells[71], further evidence is still required to confirm a functional piRNA pathway in somatic stem cells different to SGCs.

Interestingly, piRNAs direct specific genome rearrangements in ciliates and this precise genome editing results in either somatic elimination[72] or retention[73], indicating the versatility of this particular RNAi pathway. PiRNAs can target mRNAs through a PTGS-like mechanism, however they may also induce TGS by directing heterochromatin formation at the target regions[74,75]. Intriguingly, members of the piRNA pathway are highly expressed in certain human cancer cells (reviewed in[76]), though it is still

unknown whether they are the cause or the effect. To our knowledge there are no reports regarding the use of synthetic piRNAs and since they have not been manipulated for human therapy we will not explore these further. However, the ability of piRNAs to establish a permanent, stable and inheritable silencing through directed epigenetic chromatin modifications and other mechanisms makes them of great interest for future study, especially since silencing mediated through their activities is inherited to every single cell of a multicellular organism.

RNAi pathways: PTGS and TGS

PTGS: In humans, RNAi induced mRNA cleavage is directed only by AGO-2[54,77]. Loading of the sncRNA duplex onto the AGO proteins is well described for AGO-2 and involves the heat-shock protein 90 (HSP90) (Figure 1). HSP90 aids in the recruitment[78] and stabilization[79] of unloaded AGO within processing bodies (P-bodies). Inhibition of HSP90 results in unpaired siRNA- and/or miRNA-dependent silencing, respectively. These P-bodies are cytoplasmic structures that contain mRNA decay factors, untranslated mRNA, translational repressors and RNAi related factors[80]. The active silencing complex is named RISC or miRISC, depending on the type of sncRNA (siRNAs or miRNAs, respectively) that is loaded onto the AGO protein. We will refer to both as RISC, unless specified.

The sncRNA-duplex/AGO-2 complex is called pre-RISC (pre-RNA-induced silencing complex) and requires the removal of one of the strands of the RNA, the passenger strand, in order to become an active RISC complex[81,82] (Figure 1). The strand that remains in RISC is known as the guide strand. Passenger/guide strand selection depends on the individual thermodynamic properties of each sncRNA molecule within the duplex; these properties generally create energetic asymmetry between the duplex ends, allowing differentiation and selection of the guide strand[83]. Asymmetry means that the duplex is energetically less stable at one 5′ end and causes unwinding to begin at this site. As a result, the strand whose 5′ end lies in the less stable end of the duplex will be loaded onto the AGO protein, becoming the guide strand. Whenever the energetic difference between the duplex ends is small or negligible, both strands may be randomly loaded[83,84].

Dicer seems to play a role in sensing and positioning the guide strand, facilitating removal of the passenger strand. This ability appears to be activated through its interaction with Transactivation Response (TAR) RNA-Binding Protein (TRBP) and Protein Kinase RNA (PKR) Activator (PACT), both double-stranded RNA binding proteins (dsRBP)[85] (Figure 1). However, there is contradictory evidence regarding this role for Dicer[85,86], and further research may be needed to clarify these observations. Nonetheless, it is important to mention that proper selection of the guide ensures specificity towards silencing the intended target.

Pre-RISC activation requires the slicer activity of AGO-2, specifically the nicking of the passenger strand[87-89]. After nicking, the endonuclease component 3 promoter of RISC complex (C3PO), composed of Trax and Translin proteins in humans, is able to cleave and remove the passenger strand[87,90,91]. This results in activation of pre-RISC into the RISC complex. Within RISC, the guide strand is used to scan mRNAs for a region with full or partial base pair complementarity. Once the region is found the mRNA is either cleaved, deadenylated or stored during translational repression[63,92,93] (Figure 1). Storage and repression of translation may have a role in gene regulation of processes that require a quick response, as translation can be initiated from stored transcripts rather than relying on *de novo* transcription[94].

While AGO-2 can direct either cleavage or translational repression of mRNAs, non-catalytic AGO proteins like AGO-1 seem mostly involved in translational repression, since they are unable to cleave mRNA transcripts[46]. Furthermore, it is currently unknown how RISC activation occurs for non-catalytic AGO proteins (AGO-1, 3 and 4). However, owing to their inability to cleave mRNAs, activation of the silencing complex must either be different or rely on help from additional cofactors.

For silencing to occur, human AGO-2 requires direct binding with TNRC6A, also known as GW182, a mRNA binding protein rich in glycine/tryptophan repeats[95,96]. Interaction between GW182 and AGO-2 proteins is crucial for miRNA-mediated silencing and appears to take place directly after the passenger strand is removed by C3PO[96,97]. Both AGO-2 and GW182/TNRC6A have been shown to co-localize with siRNA and miRNAs within GW bodies (GWB)[98], another term for P-bodies. Based on these observations, it has been proposed that silencing by miRNAs requires an effector complex formed of at least one AGO and one GW182/TNRC6A protein[99] (Figure 1).

Interestingly, human GW182/TNRC6A was found to transport AGO-2 proteins to the nucleus during miRNA-induced silencing of a nuclear non-coding RNA[100]. The latter constitutes evidence of a nuclear PTGS pathway (Figure 1C). Indeed, increasing evidence supports a functional nuclear PTGS pathway, with a recent study demonstrating not only the presence of PTGS related proteins in the nucleus of mammalian cells, but an active AGO-2-RISC complex able to efficiently cleave two nuclear lncRNAs, Malat1 and Neat1[101]. These studies add to previous evidence indicating the existence of a nuclear RNAi pathway and suggest that PTGS and TGS may be closely related.

We have aimed to provide a detailed overview of the molecular mechanism of PTGS in order to understand the unknowns of TGS and further compare the manipulation of PTGS or TGS for HIV gene therapy. PTGS pathways have been exploited for HIV therapeutics, and several clinical trials are currently testing PTGS-based gene therapy approaches directed to cellular and viral transcripts. A major disadvantage of using PTGS to treat HIV is that PTGS requires viral transcription because it acts on mRNAs. First, this gives the virus the chance

to evolve resistance mutations and escape silencing; Second, latent proviruses will not be targeted since they are not undergoing active transcription. Improvements in siRNA/miRNA design and expression have been developed aimed at overcoming these caveats and will be discussed in the HIV-1 section.

TGS: TGS is a conserved mechanism of gene regulation across species and has been extensively studied in the plant model *Arabidopsis thaliana (A. thaliana)*, the worm model *Caenorhabditis elegans (C. elegans),* and the fission yeast *Schizosaccharomyceae pombe* (*S.pombe*). The first evidence for TGS was observed in plants, and it was found to require siRNA-induced DNA methylation for heterochromatin formation (recently reviewed in[102]). However, the mechanism in *S.pombe* shed insight on the identification of TGS in mammals. In this microorganism, siRNAs generated from centromeric repeats are first processed by Dicer, then loaded onto AGO-1, and together with the proteins Chp1 and Tas3 form the silencing complex, namely the RNA-induced initiator of transcriptional gene silencing (RITS) complex. This RITS complex is analogous to the RISC complex from PTGS. RITS is then directed through siRNA base pair complementarity to a specific locus at which it induces recruitment of Clr4 (histone methyltransferase) and Swi6 (chromo domain binding protein) in order to establish and spread heterochromatin domains[103-105].

Human sncRNA-directed TGS is mainly, but not exclusively directed by AGO-1 rather than AGO-2, and is generally triggered by promoter-targeted sncRNAs (Figure 2). Recent evidence suggests that it may be also triggered by sncRNAs that target the 3' termini of genes[58,106]. While increasing evidence suggests a role for AGO-2 in nuclear gene silencing[100], it seems to be predominantly through a nuclear PTGS that involves RNA cleavage[101], with only few described exceptions[107]. There is also evidence of RNA-induced nuclear silencing without heterochromatin formation, involving both AGO1 and AGO2[108], and there seems to be various RNA-directed nuclear-pathways that control transcription at different stages[109]. However, it is generally accepted that heterochromatin and its associated markers (*i.e.,* histone methylation and deacetylation) is a characteristic feature of TGS. Therefore, for this review we will focus on the different endogenous TGS mechanisms that involve heterochromatin formation induced by sncRNAs loaded into an AGO protein.

Heterochromatin is considered a hallmark of repressive silent chromatin, ubiquitous in eukaryotic organisms. In mammals, its establishment at a particular locus is a result of protein interactions and cross talk with multiple silencing mechanisms such as DNA methylation, genomic imprinting and Polycomb group of proteins (PcG)[65,103,110]. The epigenetic profiles across mammalian genomes are very heterogeneous and show a wide range of silencing dynamics. Silencing extends from permanent and inheritable to inducible, dynamic silencing. The former is mainly but not restricted to, constitutive heterochromatin and is found in centromeres and telomeres[111]; while the latter, predominantly within facultative heterochromatin, controls specific gene expression during differentiation and development[112].

SncRNA-directed TGS in mammalian cells has been a controversial topic since its discovery, nearly a decade ago, with some still doubting its existence. These doubts have relied on the inability to explain in detail the molecular mechanisms driving TGS. In particular, the much awaited identification and characterization of a functional nuclear mammalian RITS complex, because there are apparently no RNAi proteins with homology to Tas3 and Chp1 present in the nucleus and AGO-1 is non-catalytic. At present, most of the evidence of mammalian sncRNA-AGO-1 directed TGS relies on synthetic siRNAs or shRNAs driving TGS to control infectious agents, such as HIV-1[113], or cellular genes that support viral replication[114]. Nonetheless, the relatively slow accumulation of evidence has supported the existence of this functional pathway, with evidence for miRNA-induced TGS in senescence[107] and in differentiation[65]. We will explain the basis for the doubts and show the recent evidence supporting mammalian sncRNA-directed TGS.

The breakthrough proving the existence of a TGS mechanism in mammalian cells came with the identification of the human ortholog for Clr4, known as Suppressor of variegation (Su(var)3-9) in *D. melanogaster* and Su(var)39H in humans; and then with the ortholog for Swi6, known as Histone Protein 1 - alpha (HP1-α) (in both *D. melanogaster* and humans)[115-117]. However, no human orthologs for Chp1 and Tas3 proteins from fission yeast RITS complex have been yet identified. At present, there are more questions than answers about the series of events in humans that result in siRNA-AGO-1 mediated heterochromatin formation and activation of the RITS complex. It is possible that both PTGS and TGS share a core multi-protein complex, which may differ in accessory subcellular or pathway-specific co-factors, because the initial steps of TGS may potentially resemble those of PTGS.

There is also controversy regarding the activation of the RITS complex during TGS. It is assumed that removal of the passenger strand occurs during TGS to allow the RITS complex to scan for the target sequence that is complementary to the guide strand. However, since AGO-1 lacks the catalytic amino acid tetrad DEDH responsible for the slicing function, it is not clear how this process occurs[118]. AGO-1 needs to nick the passenger strand from the siRNA duplex, so C3PO or a similar complex would be able to remove the passenger strand.

On one side, it was shown *in vitro* from bacterially expressed human AGO proteins, that AGO-1 is able to cleave the passenger strand, but requires assistance for removal of the cleaved fragments[119]. This has been interpreted as non-catalytic AGO proteins being very inefficient catalysts and having an extremely low nickase activity.

This is in agreement with findings in mouse embryonic stem cells, in which the absence of the four mammalian AGO proteins resulted in apoptosis, but the expression of any one of the other AGO proteins in isolation, was

enough to rescue the cells and restore a functional RNAi pathway, showing evidence for functional redundancy[120]. In addition, another study showed that non-catalytic AGO proteins are loaded within the duplex but removal of passenger strand takes place approximately 2 to 3 d[121]. The process of passenger strand removal is currently unknown.

In contrast, the crystallographic structures of human AGO-1 in association with endogenous RNA (1.75 Å) and in association with Let-7 miRNA (2.5 Å) were used to show that while highly similar to hAGO-2-RNA structures, there was an absolute requirement for the introduction of the catalytic tetrad by introduction of a single point mutation as well as the reconstitution of a loop called PL3, in order to restore the slicer functionality of AGO-1[122]. These observations argue against a catalytic role for AGO-1.

It seems more likely that other proteins aid non-catalytic AGOs during this step. These cofactors would be present in the AGO knockout mice study and in the cells used to show removal of passenger strand after a few days, but not in the bacterial system, in which cleaved fragments remained loaded to the AGO proteins. Comprehensive studies are required to address this question definitively.

An increasing number of studies have found PTGS-related proteins in the nucleus of mammalian cells, such as GW182/TRNC6A and the endonucleases hC3PO and Dicer[100,123-125]. These proteins appear to have functions related to both to the mechanisms underpinning PTGS in the nucleus and to the regulation of chromatin and transcription.

For example, human Dicer has been shown to interact with NU153, a non-canonical nuclear transport nucleoporin, as demonstrated by co-localization within the nucleus[125]. In addition, human Dicer has been shown to associate with the chromatin structures of ribosomal DNA[124]. It also has a role in termination of transcription[126], in regulation of intergenic transcription in the human β-globin gene cluster[127] and in regulation of nuclear receptor (NR) signaling, as evidenced by direct binding of Dicer to NR promoter regions[128]. Further, Dicer has been reported to be required in heterochromatin formation in fission yeast[129] and in vertebrates[130], suggesting its presence in the nucleus of human cells could be due to an as yet unidentified role in mammalian TGS (Figure 2B).

We previously mentioned that GW182/TNRC6A shuffles AGO-2 proteins between the nucleus and cytoplasm through a non-canonical nuclear localization signal[100]. Additionally, GW182/TNRC6 associates with all four RNA loaded-AGO proteins during PTGS. Therefore, it is a possibility that Dicer is contained within a loaded AGO-1-TRNC6A complex during the nuclear shuffling that occurs during TGS[131] (Figure 2). Furthermore, the interaction between GW182/TNRC6 and AGO-1 occurs through binding of the GW repeats of GW182/TNRC6 to the Piwi domain of AGO-1[77]. This is intriguing because the fission yeast RITS member protein, Tas3, has a GW-repeat-containing motif and interacts with AGO-1 to promote TGS[132]. It is therefore possible that, the Tas3/AGO-1 interaction in fission yeast could be analogous, not homologous, to the AGO-1 and GW182/TNRC6 interaction in humans. Consistent with this hypothesis, the plant specific PTGS-related GW protein NERD was found to be involved in TGS in *A. thaliana*[133]**.** Thus, there is evolutionary evidence supporting the likelihood of a link between the two mammalian pathways in the nucleus.

Protein complexes containing AGO-2, TNRC6A, Dicer and TRBP have been immunoprecipitated from human isolated cell nuclei. These protein complexes were able to induce PTGS, with the specific cleavage of four different nuclear lncRNAs mediated by corresponding siRNAs[101]. Similar complexes were immunoprecipitated with nuclear AGO-1 and found to harbor the same PTGS proteins, supporting the notion of a core complex for both pathways. However, this study did not identify proteins that have been implicated in the loading of sncRNA onto AGO proteins, such as C3PO and HSP90 within mammalian cell nuclei. In previous studies the identification of these proteins could have been the result of contamination from cytoplasmic remnants. This study highlighted the importance of ensuring that isolated nuclei are free from endoplasmic reticulum (ER) to avoid contamination with cytoplasmic AGO-containing complexes. Recently, a comprehensive protocol was developed to ensure that purified nuclei are free from ER contamination[134].

It is important to note that the majority of studies aimed at understanding the mechanisms of loading and activation of silencing complexes incorporating non-catalytic AGO proteins have done it in the context of PTGS, either in the cytoplasm or in the nucleus. These studies have not specifically targeted genes embedded in chromatin. Therefore, a possibility remains that siRNAs or miRNAs that are only homologous to specific regions such as promoter regions, can be identified and differentially processed. In this way, complexes could share a common core, but would vary in accessory proteins that modify their function to induce either TGS or PTGS.

Consistent with this model, a recent study unveiled a sorting mechanism in humans, which directs differential loading of AGO-1 proteins for unique sncRNAs in the setting of a viral infection[135]. However the determinants of this selection remain unknown. Nonetheless, most sncRNAs were loaded in equivalent ratios to AGO-1 and AGO-2 proteins and thus these unsorted sncRNAs may be used to scan targets in both cellular compartments. Therefore we hypothesize that when there are targets in both compartments, both pathways are likely to occur, depending how efficient each of these sncRNAs is for the pathway.

While the understanding of the molecular mechanisms of PTGS is reasonably complete, and there is some evidence of commonalities with TGS, there are far many more uncertainties in the TGS mechanism. Several important early steps in the TGS mechanism remain to be fully deciphered, including the precise mechanism that determines RITS recognition of target, the characteristics or type of target and the determinants of induction of different epigenetic heterochromatin profiles. In addition,

while human TGS can be thought of at a single cell level, its implication needs to be considered within the context of a multicellular organism. Many changes or epigenetic check points occur early during embryogenesis and development or during cell differentiation. While some changes are dynamic allowing differentiation of cells down different pathways, once certain check points are reached epigenetic profiles are more stable and are inherited to daughter cells through multiple cell divisions.

At present, there is evidence supporting two main models describing target recognition. The first is a siRNA/DNA-binding model[65,136], during which the RITS complex binds directly to chromatin. This binding seems to be dependent on the interaction between the siRNA and its DNA-target sequence. Once the interaction has taken place it triggers the *in situ* recruitment of chromatin remodeling factors that induce heterochromatin and establish silencing (Figure 3A). We previously introduced the unresolved question of how the passenger strand is removed. In the TGS model however, each strand of the duplex will find a target on DNA, in the same location but on different DNA strands. Therefore, for the sake of identifying the target region, both strands are potentially useful. In HIV-1, a siRNA guide-strand targeting a promoter region will find two target sites. One on the 5′ LTR of the sense strand, and the other in the antisense strand in the region that is complementary to the 3′LTR of the sense strand (Figure 3B).

In the second model the RITS complex binds to an RNA intermediate, finding its target in either an antisense transcript or in a sense nascent transcript (recently reviewed in[59] and in[137]). In this model, only one strand of the duplex acts as the guide strand (Figure 3C). Presently, there is more experimental evidence supporting the RNA model given that, owing to its similarity with lncRNAs silencing mechanisms, more studies have tested this hypothesis. Though, there are still critical gaps in the data and more evidence is required to further evaluate the DNA model. It is possible that each of the models occur under particular conditions and potentially a variety of mechanisms control the diverse and precise regulation of gene expression in humans.

Establishment of heterochromatin is a progressive process. Once the RITS complex has found its target region a series of events follow, which generally initiate with removal and or replacement of specific histone-tail post-translational modifications to alter the biochemistry and structure of the associated chromatin (Table 1). Numerous histone modifications important for histone structure and gene regulation have been described[138], however we will only be discussing canonical acetylation and methylation marks that have been related to TGS and HIV-1. The different histone tail modifications are generated and recognized by histone deacetylases (HDACs), histone and DNA methyltransferases (HMTs and DNMTs, respectively), and chromatin modifying complexes. Ultimately, the combination of histone tail modifications and the recruitment of protein complexes make up a pattern that relates to the specific transcription state of a gene (a recent review can be found in[139]).

HDACs are required early in heterochromatin formation and remove acetylation (Ac) marks that are frequently found in actively transcribing chromatin. HDACs appear to be continuously recruited to epigenetically repressed loci[140], however, in very robust silencing, HDACs may not be continuously recruited. HDACs are recruited to chromatin by different mechanisms that are in some cases dependent on DNA methylation in CpG islands (discussed below). This differential recruitment is attributed to HDACs being able to form higher order complexes that may or may not include methyl-CpG-binding domain (MBD)-containing proteins[141].

The removal of Ac marks is necessary for the establishment of methylation repressive marks and chromatin compaction[142]. Several lysine residues from histone tails can be methylated by specific histone lysine methyltransferases (HKMTs) in order to repress chromatin (Table 1). Methylated residues are recognized by HP1 and HKMTs, both of which bind to chromatin and dimerize to induce chromatin compaction[143]. Nucleosome compaction exposes hidden lysine residues that become accessible to further methylation by HKMTs. Progressive methylation recruits more HP1-α and chromatin remodeling complexes. Chromatin remodeling complexes promote the establishment and spread of heterochromatin through a positive feedback loop with HP1[144] (Figure 3A).

Heterochromatin is also the final outcome of DNA methylation, genomic imprinting[145] and Polycomb (PcG) mediated silencing[65,146]. Therefore, RNAi-induced TGS has the potential to induce a variety of epigenetic profiles.

CpG islands (CGIs) are genomic regions that are unusually high in their CG or CpG content when compared to the genomic average of these nucleotides. CGIs are predominantly found in promoter regions and are demethylated during active gene transcription[40]. Conversely, methylation of promoter CGIs is associated with epigenetic gene repression. Thus, DNA methylation accounts for another layer of control of gene expression. It is well known that DNA-nucleotide-methyl-transferases (DNMT) methylate CpG residues[147] and seem to catalyse the reverse reaction[148]. However, the Ten-Eleven-Translocation enzymes (TET) are considered the main CpG DNA demethylases[149] while proteins containing DNA-methyl-CpG-binding domain (MBD) recognize the methylated status[150] in order to induce heterochromatin. However, it is not known how methylation is selectively established at precise promoters.

Genomic DNA methylation of CpG islands is fundamental for the programmed repression of genes during embryogenesis in mammalian cells. The methylation pattern is erased in the early embryo in order to establish the totipotent state, but is re-established during implantation with pluripotency genes being methylated and thus repressed[151,152]. Methylation of CGIs is then recognized by HKMTs that contain a methyl-binding domain (MBD) domain, in this case G9a. G9a establishes H3K9me3 and recruits HDACs, inducing HP1-α binding and local heterochromatinization. Heterochromatinization of HP1 promotes *de novo* DNA methylation by DNMT3 and

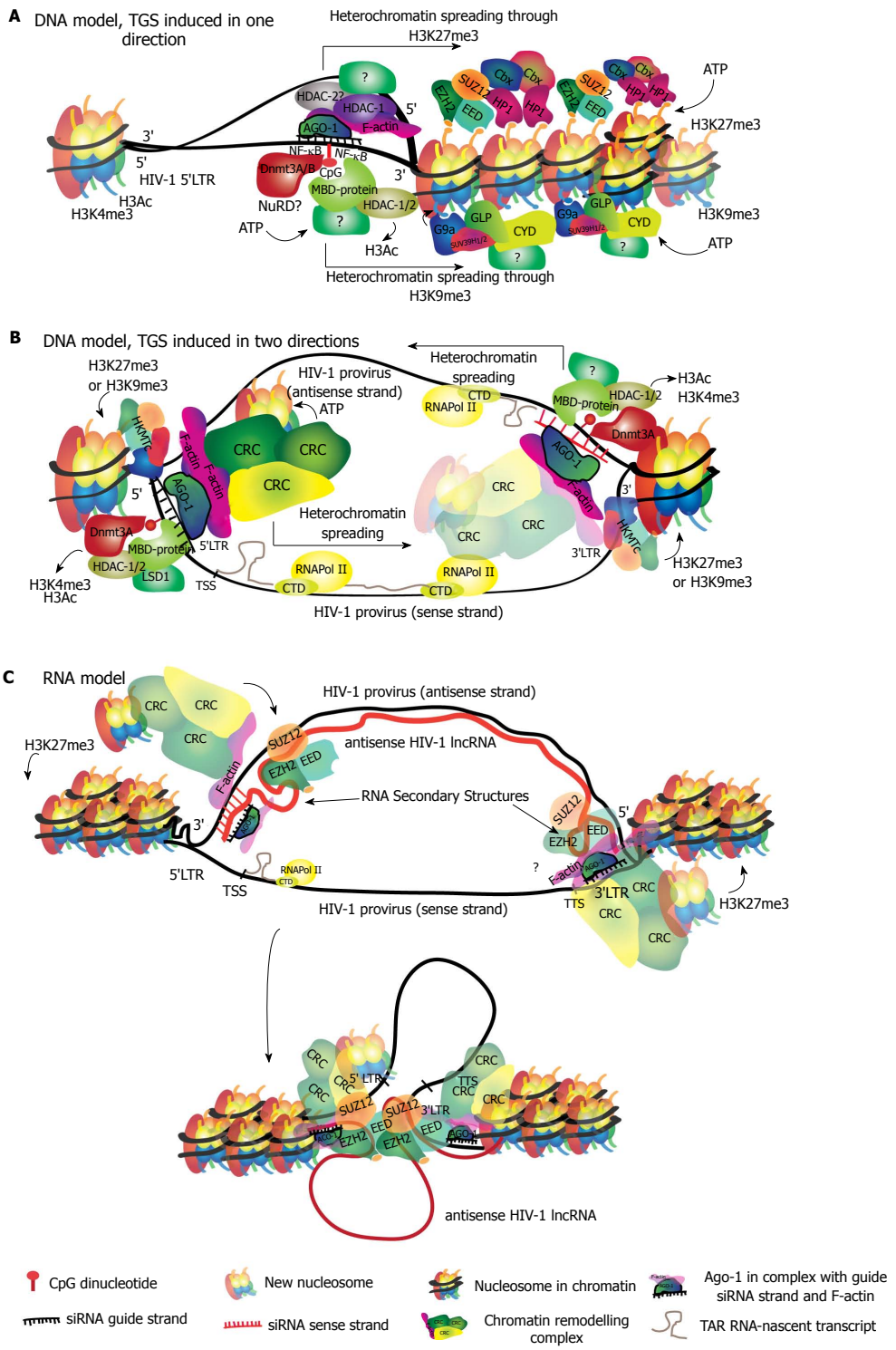


Figure 3 Models describing possible molecular mechanisms of siRNA-induced transcriptional gene silencing in human immunodeficiency virus 1. A: DNA model in which the siRNA guide-strand finds its target in the 5'LTR promoter of the HIV-1 genome binding directly to the DNA. This binding triggers the recruitment of HDACs and HKMTs, which further recruit CRCs to induce chromatin compaction. Two mutually exclusive pathways are shown simultaneously, for simplicity. While both pathways may be initiated with the DNA methylation of CpG dinucleotides, they differ in the proteins that are recruited to the locus. The pathway characterized by H3K27me3 is shown above and involves initial recruitment of PCR2 (EZH2-SUZ12-EED) followed by the specific CRCs readers of H3K27me3. The H3K9me3 recruits G9a or SUV39H1/2 followed by specific CRCs as well. In this model heterochromatin is likely to spread in only one direction; B: In this DNA model, both strands of the siRNA duplex find a target on opposite DNA strands given that both, the 5'LTR and 3'LTR from the HIV-1 genome, have the same sequence. Regardless of the epigenetic pathway that is induced, heterochromatin will spread in the 5' to 3' direction from each end of the HIV-1 genome; C: In the RNA binding model, antisense transcription generates a HIV-1 specific lncRNA that covers all the HIV-1 genome. The siRNA guide-strand will bind the 3'UTR of this transcript, which corresponds to the 5'LTR sequence. The binding recruits PCR2, which establishes H3K27me3 and may also interact with the secondary structures of the lncRNA. Higher order interactions may bring together the 3'end of the HIV-1 genome, recruiting CRCs and inducing heterochromatin. A binding site for the same siRNA strand remains in the DNA sense strand at the 3'LTR, which could potentially contribute to heterochromatin formation. HIV-1: Human immunodeficiency virus 1; DNMT3 A/B: DNA methyl-transferase A/B; HDAC: Histone deacetylase; MBD-protein: Methy-CpG-binding protein; Cbx: Chromobox family; HKMT: Histone lysine (K) methyl-transferase; CRC: Chromatin remodelling complex.

Table 1 Canonical histone modifications implicated in TGS and TGA

Histone residue	Modification	Function	Writers	Erasers	Readers	Reviewed in
H3K4	Ac	Transcription activation				[228]
	me1 (enhancer sequences)	Transcription activation	SET1 (tri)[229], SET7 (mono)[230], MLL[231], SMYD2[232]	LSD1 (mono and di)[233], JARID1A/ KDM5A JARID1B/ KDM5B (di and tri)[234]	CHD1[235], RAG2[236], TAF3[237], BPTF[238], BHC80[239], ING FAMILY[240], PYGO2[241]	[166,242]
	me2/me3 (regulatory elements at the 5' end of active genes, and in poised genes)	Transcription activation, resolution of bivalency from poised genes				
H3T6	Phosphorylation	Transcription activation	PKC B		LSD1	[243]
H3K9	Ac	Transcription activation, histone deposition	GCN5/PCAF[244]	SIRT6[245]	BRD4[246]	[247]
	me1/me2 me3 (non-genic regions, centromeric heterochromatin, satellite sequences, long terminal repeats)	Transcritional silencing, heterochromatin	SUV39H1/2[143], G9a[248], SETDB1[249]	JMJD1A/KDM3A[250], JMJD1B/KDM3B[251], JMJD1C/TRIP8, JMJD2A/KDM4A (B/C/D)[252]	HP1[253], EED 17406994), TDRD7[254], MPP8[255], UHRF1/2[256], GLP[248], CDY FAMILY[257]	
H3K27	me1/me2/me3, heterochromatin and facultative heterochromatin	Transcritional silencing, heterochromatin, poised genes	EZH2, EZH1[258]	JMJD1A/KDM3A, JMJD1B/KDM3B, KDM6A/UTX, JMJD3/KDM68, JMJD3/KDM6B[259]	Cbx proteins[165], EED[260]	[166,261]
H3K36	Ac	Transcription activation	GCN5, PCAF[244]			[262]
	me1/me2 (in the body and 3' end of genes)	Transcription elongation	NSD1, NSD2[263], SET2[264], SMYD2[232], MMSET[265]	ASH1[266], JHDM1[267], JHDM1A/KDM2A, JHDM1B/KDM2B[268]	ISW1B[269]	
	me2/me3 (gene bodies)					
H4K20	me1	Transcritional silencing, heterochromatin, repression of proinflammatory genes	PR-SET7/SET8[270]	PHF8[271]	L3MBTL1[272]	[273]
	me2		SUV420H1, SUV420H2[274]	PHF2[275]	PHF20[276], L3MBTL1[277]	
	me3 (non-genic regions, centromeric heterochromatin, satellite sequences, long terminal repeats		SUV420H2[274], SMYD5[275]	PHF2[275]	NcoR[275]	

H: Histone; K: Lysine residue; T: Threonine residue; me1: Monomethlyation; me2: Di-methylation; m3: Tri-methylation; SET1: Su(var)3-9, Enhacer of Zeste, Trithorax protein 1; SMYD2: SET and MYND domain containing protein 2; MLL: Mixed lienage leukemia protein; PKC-β: Protein kinase C beta; GCN5: general control nonderepressible-5; PCAF: P300/CBP associated factor; SUV39H1/2: Suppressor of variegation 3-9 homolog 1 or 2; SETDB1: SET domain bifurcated 1; NSD1: Nuclear receptor binding SET domain protein 1; MMSET: Multiple myeloma SET domain; PR-SET7/SET8: SET domain containing lysine methyltransferase 8; LSD1: Lysine (K) specific demethylase 1; JARID1A/KMT5: Jumonji/ARID 1 domain containing protein 1A; SIRT6: Sirtuin 6; JMJD1A: Jumonji domain containing protein 1A; ASH1: Absent small or homeotic like 1; JHMD1: Jmjc domain containing histone demethylase 1; PHF8: PHD finger protein 8; CHD1: Chromodomain-helicase-DNA binding protein 1; RAG2: Recombination activating gene 2; TAF3: TATA box binding protein (TBP)-associated factor; BPTF: Bromodomain and PHD finger containing transcription factor; ING Family: Inhibitor of growth; PYGO2: Pygopus family PHD finger 2; BRD4: Bromodomain-containing protein 4; TDRD7: Tudor domain-containing protein 7; MPP8: Methyl-H3K9-binding protein 8; UHRF1/2: Ubiquitin-like containing PHD and RING finger domains 1 or 2; CDY Family: Chromodomain Y chromosome family; GLP: G9a-like protein; ISWI1B: Imitation switch protein 1B; L3MBTL1: Lethal (3) malignant brain tumor-like protein 1; NcoR: Nuclear receptor coRepresor.

further spreads silencing by repeating the loop[151] (Figure 3A). In humans, DNMT3 establishes *de novo* methylation and is responsible for tissue-specific DNA methylation patterns[153,154].

In the case of TGS, recent studies have shown that DNA methylation of CGIs is not required for siRNA-guided heterochromatin formation in fission yeast, as was initially described[155]. Similarly, the signatures of TGS in mammals appear to be somewhat diverse and may require DNA methylation in some cases. Interestingly, there is an RNAi-directed DNA methylation process that triggers TGS in plants[156], which is reminiscence of a mechanism in mammalian cells: piRNAs are known to direct DNA methylation in the male germ line in order to repress expression of transposable elements, but a similar mechanism has not been described on somatic cells[157]. However, there is some indirect evidence of a similar mechanism in mammalian somatic cells when transduced with lentiviral vectors. In fact, reduced expression of the introduced transgene was observed during differentiation in a murine model and silencing was found to be the result of DNA methylation of the promoter of the lentivirus driven

gene[158]. Furthermore, it is well known that a considerable amount of integrated vectors become silent[159], and this effect seems to be dependent on the promoter chosen to drive the ectopic expression of the gene[160,161]. These observations could be related to ubiquitous RNA guided-DNA methylation pathway mechanism in mammalian cells aimed at controlling endogenous retroviruses. It is clear though, that *de novo DNA* methylation can provide stability for the inheritance of gene repression patterns through generations[151]. In this instance, TGS involving DNA methylation is likely to characterize robust silencing of a gene.

The PcG defines a group of genes that play a fundamental role in development and whose deletion results in early embryonic lethality in mice[162]. The PcG perform an antagonistic role to the trithorax group (TrxG) of proteins by inducing epigenetic gene repression. Both, PcG and TrxG, ensure the maintenance of proper expression patterns throughout the life span of a multicellular organism. There are two main repressive multi-subunit complexes formed by PcG: Polycomb-repressive complexes 1 and 2 (PCR1 and PCR2)[163,164].

PCR1 efficiently compacts chromatin through a variety of subunits that either identify and bind to H3K27me3, or mono-ubiquitilate Lys119 of histone 2 variant 2 (H2A), both of which promote nucleosome compaction. PCR1 is actually a group of functionally related but diverse protein complexes made up of different subunits that vary its function[165]. In addition to its role in development, roles in senescence, self-renewal, cancer and even gene activation have been recently identified for PCR1[165]. Interestingly, both complexes appear related, with PCR1 eventually acting downstream of PCR2 on certain loci.

PCR2 establishes the repressive epigenetic signature, H3K27me2/3 through its enhancer of zeste 1 and 2 subunits (EZH1, EZH2)[164] and induces chromatin compaction. In addition to H3K27me3, the activation mark H3K4me3 is also established by PCR2. Characteristically, genes co-expressing both, K3K37me3 and H3K4me3 epigenetic marks, are poised for transcription in undifferentiated cells. This state of epigenetic bivalency is resolved by the exclusive expression of H3K4me3 in transcriptionally active loci or H3K27me3 in transcriptionally repressed loci[166].

A direct link between PCR2 and TGS during regulation of granulopoyesis was elegantly demonstrated. Further this process was shown to be fundamental in driving progenitor lineage decisions at checkpoints of differentiation, in particular at the *NF1-A* gene. In this study, miRNA-223 directly bound to the NFI-A promoter region through its seed region and induced TGS of this gene through recruitment of the PcG proteins, YY1 and SUZ12, along with AGO-1 and Dicer[65]. This evidence supports previous findings of a siRNA-directed TGS, involving AGO-1, recruitment of EZH2, induction of H3K9me2 and the PTGS protein TRBP2[114]. Furthermore, the primary miRNA-208b has recently been shown to interact with EZH2, a Polycomb-group protein associated with gene silencing through chromatin remodeling[146]. Together, these studies clearly show that not only siRNAs, but also endogenous promoter-targeted miRNAs are able to trigger TGS in mammalian cells through recruitment of PcG proteins.

Interestingly, genes that are repressed by PcG express short-RNAs (about 50-200 nts) that interact with PCR2 to promote silencing[167]. However, no AGO proteins are involved in this case and the mechanism resembles that of X-chromosome inactivation (*Xi)* (explained in the next section), with SUZ12 subunit of PCR2 binding to a short RNA-stem loop from the BSN gene that mimics Xist A-Repeat (RepA) stem-loop. The important concept to highlight is that short RNAs can be transcribed from repressed loci and are used to guide repressor complexes to maintain these loci in a silent state.

Genomic imprinting is the mechanism by which parental-origin specific expression of imprinted genes is controlled in somatic cells (reviewed in[168]). It requires the DNA methylation of a region within the imprinting control region (ICR) that lies in the cluster of imprinted genes. This ICR is only demethylated in the germ cells but is then specifically re-methylated during fertilization depending on whether the maternal or the paternal allele is to be expressed in the somatic cells[169]. It is considered to be a very strong and stable silencing.

A well-studied case, that would be an example for the second TGS model, is *Xi*. During *Xi,* expression of the lncRNA *Xist* represses transcription from the paternal chromosome[110]. However, *Xist* is further regulated by the antisense lncRNA *Tsix*. After transcription, lncRNA *Tsix* induces silencing of *Xist* by recruiting PCR2, establishing H3K27me3 marks and enhancing *de novo* hyper methylation by DNMT3A[170]. The crucial link between RNAi and genomic imprinting in *Xist* regulation seems to be in the cleavage of the *Xist-Tsix* duplex by Dicer, which generates siRNAs targeting *Xist* leading to heterochromatin formation. These siRNAs in turn silence *Xist* and in this system deletion of Dicer appears to abolish silencing[145]. Currently, there is a dispute regarding the role of Dicer in this process and thus of RNAi in *Xi*, because Dicer knockout embryonic stem cells have shown contrasting results with either a defect in *Xi* (arguing in favor) or no defect at all (arguing against). A very detailed discussion about these contrasting results can be read in[171]. It is worth noting that other nuclear endonucleases could potentially induce cleavage in the absence of Dicer. However, recent findings showed that depletion of Dicer in human female cells has no effect in the epigenetic silencing of *Xi*, but results in up-regulation of X-linked genes, indicating that Dicer may be important for dosage compensation of those genes in differentiated cells[172].

Xi is just one of several examples of genomic imprinting during which specific DNA methylation and a lncRNA drive long-range epigenetic heterochromatic silencing through recruitment of PcG (Figure 2D). Because genomic imprinting involves recruitment of PcG proteins to an RNA intermediate, establishment of epigenetic repressive marks and short RNAs derived from the targeted genes, it supports the model of an RNA intermediate in sncRNA-directed TGS.

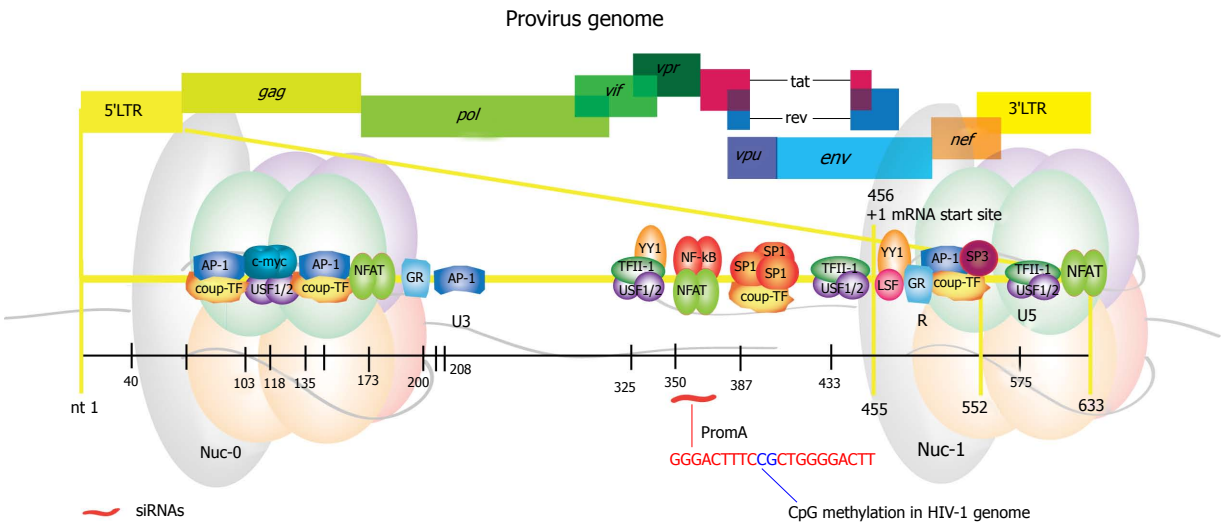


Figure 4 Map of the human immunodeficiency virus 1 genome showing in magnification the 5'LTR region with the location of transcription factor binding sites. The specific coordinates within the HIV-1 genome for each of the shown DNA regulatory elements is listed on Table 1. 5'LTR: 5' long terminal repeat; gag: Group specific antigen; pol: Polymerase; vif: Viral infectivity factor; vpr: Viral protein R; vpu: Viral protein unique; tat: Trans-activator of transcription; rev: RNA export element; env: Envelope; nef: Negative factor; 3'LTR: 3' long terminal repeat; Ap-1: Activator protein 1; COUP-TF: Chicken ovalbumin upstream transcription factor; c-myc: V-myc avian myelocytomatosis viral oncogene homolog; USF 1/2: Upstream stimulatory factor 1 or 2; NFAT: Nuclear factor activated T cells; GR: Glucocorticoid receptor responsive element; YY1: Ying-yang 1; TFII-I: Transcription factor II-I; NF-κB: Nuclear factor κ beta; SP: Specificity protein; LSF: Late SV40 factor; U3: Untranslated region 3; R: R region; U5: Untranslated region 5; Nuc-0: Nucleosome 0; Nuc-1: Nucleosome 1.

All these endogenous silencing mechanisms are an example of the different possibilities that may result when inducing TGS through sncRNAs (Figures 2 and 3). TGS is part of an enormous gene regulation network that involves a wide variety of mechanisms and protein interactions, whose combination yield diverse specific gene silencing outcomes. While we do not know yet how to induce each of these different epigenetic profiles, this mechanism has the power to silence the HIV-1 promoter in an inheritable, stable and permanent fashion, which we have reported through siRNA-induced TGS.

VIRUS: HIV

HIV establishes a long-term infection in dividing and non-dividing cells. The integrated proviral form is flanked by two long terminal repeats (LTRs) that originate from reverse transcription and are fundamental for viral replication[173]. HIV provirus behaves like a cellular gene; it has its own promoter located in the 5′ LTR and is rich in responsive elements for binding of several cellular transcription factors (Figure 4). It also has a 3′ LTR, which ensures the viral mRNAs are polyadenylated and capped mimicking cellular transcripts[174]. Of note, both LTRs have the same sequence and the 3′LTR is transcribed into the 3′ UTR of the viral transcripts.

Upon integration, the provirus goes through an initial phase of abortive transcription. This phase is characterized by the presence of a non-processive RNA Pol II at the promoter region that is overcome upon expression of the viral trans-activating protein (Tat). Tat is imported back to the nucleus and binds the trans-activator response element (TAR), an RNA hairpin structure coded by the HIV promoter, greatly enhancing transcription[175]. Although most integrated proviruses are able to overcome abortive transcription, some become latent[27].

HIV latency

HIV latency is an interesting model to study because it is likely to be the result of various endogenous TGS mechanisms. Studies have described a variety of epigenetic profiles at the HIV promoter some of which are associated with extremely robust silencing such that reactivation of HIV is resistant in the face of substantial cell activation.

Generally, H3K9me3 is considered to be mutually exclusive with H3K27me3, and are found in different loci. More specifically, H3K9me3 is associated with silencing of endogenous retroviruses and retro-transposons, and is also enriched in constitutive heterochromatin regions and pericentromeric heterochromatin[176]. On the other hand, H3K27me3 is associated with a more dynamic silencing of varying strengths, which may depend on the presence of the H3K4me3 activation mark, as well as other undefined factors.

In HIV-1 infection, H3K27me3 has been found enriched in the 5′LTR promoter in cell line models of latent infection in which the virus reactivates upon stimulation[177]. This is consistent with H3K27me3 being generally a more flexible epigenetic repressive mark and with the likelihood that most of the inducible latent provirus is silenced through pathways involving H3K27me3, rather than H3K9me3. H3K9me3 has only been found in a few HIV-1 latency studies and re-activation of latent provirus carrying this mark has either not been observed after strong stimulation (with Phorbol-Myristate-Acetate treatment) or has required

Table 2 Coordinates of transcription factor binding sites in the HIV-1 5'LTR

Name	Position[1]	Function	Cell type	Notes	Ref.
Nuc-0	About 40-200	Structural	Consistent across different cell types	Stable. Stability seems independent of transcription	[278]
AP-1/COUP-TF	About 103	Activation/Repression			[279]
c-myc/RBF-2 (USF1/2)	118-124	Repression/Activation	HeLa-CAT-CD4 and J-Lat J89 (Jurkat)	Binds the sequence CACTGAC in HIV promoter, but the canonical sequence is CACGTGAC Recruited by Sp1, can bind directly to the promoter to recruit HDAC1 RBF-2 can potentially bind to the CTGAC of this motif.	[280,281]
AP-1/COUP-TF	About 135	Repression/Activation	Cell type variation	COUP-TF binds to the nuclear responsive element	[180,279]
NFAT	173	Activation	Consistent across different cell lines	NFAT consensus sequence TGGAAA maps on antisense strand	[282]
GRE-I	192-197	Repression/Activation	Cell type variation	GRE-like element AGAACA	[283-285]
AP-1	About 208			AP-1 recently found to be crucial for latency	[286]
YY1/RBF-2	About 336	Repression/Activation	Jurkat, HeLa	Putative E-box element RBEIII. Sequence overlaps YY1, RBF-2/TFII-I and AP-1 binding sites	[281,287,288]
NFAT/NF-kB	350	Activation/Repression	Consistent across different cell types	Two shared in-tandem binding sites for each transcription factor. NF-kB in the sense strand, NFAT in the antisense	[289-291]
COUP-TF/Sp1/CTIP-2	About 388	Activation/Repression	Microglial, Oligodendrocytes, T lymphocytes	COUP-TF synergises and interacts with SP1 to activate, while CTIP2 directly binds to SP1 and represses transcription	[279,292,293]
Nuc-1	450-610	Structural	Consistent across different cell types	This nucleosome is remodelled to induce HIV latency or transcriptional gene silencing	[278]
RBF-2/AP-4	435-440	Activation/Repression	HEK293T, Jurkat	Both bind the E-box element CAGCTG, which has been named RBEI	[288,294-296]
GRE-II	450-455	Activation/Repression	Cell type variation	GRE-like element TGTACT	[283-285]
LSF/YY1	about 440-483	Repression	HeLa	LSF recruits YY1. This interaction recruits HDCA1 to initiate repression	[281,297,298]
GRE-III	471-476	Repression/Activation	Cell type variation	GRE-like element AGACCA	[283-285]
COUP-TF/AP-1/SP3	About 485	Repression/Activation	Microglial	Synergises and interacts with SP3	[180,279]
RBF-2	About 576	Activation/Repression	Jurkat	Binds an atypical RBEIII element: ACTGCTGA	[288,294]
NFAT	618	Activation	Consistent across different cell lines	NFAT consensus sequence TGGAAA maps on sense strand	[291]

[1]Genomic coordinates are based on the HBX2 numbering system. Nuc-0: Nucleosome 0; AP-1: Activator protein 1; COUP-TF: Chicken ovalbumin upstream transcription factor; c-myc: V-myc avian myelocytomatosis viral oncogene homolog; RBF-2: Ras-responsive binding factor 2; USF1/2: Upstream stimulatory factor 1 or 2; NFAT: Nuclear factor of activated T cells; GRE-I: Glucocorticoid responsive element I; YY1: Ying-yang 1; NF-κB: Nuclear factor kappa beta; Sp1: Specificity protein 1; CTIP-2: COUP-TF interacting protein 2; Nuc-1: Nucleosome 1; AP-4: Activator protein 4; GRE-II: Glucocorticoid responsive element II; Sp3: Specificity protein 3.

silencing of HP1-γ or other factors through RNAi[178,179]. This supports H3K9me3 as a more robust repressive epigenetic mark.

Similarly, Suv39H1, another HKMT responsible for H3K9me3, has been found to be recruited to latent HIV promoter in microglial cells[180], while in a different T-cell latency model, G9a, another HKMT responsible for H3K9 methylation), was found to be a determinant of proviral latency[181]. Moreover, the HKMT LSD1 is also recruited to the HIV promoter by the cofactor CTIP2 and establishes H3K9me3 to promote latency, rather than activation[178]. Additionally, EZH2, one of the PCR2 subunits that establish H3K27me3, has been found to be present at the LTR of latent provirus. Knockdown of EZH2 resulted in higher transcriptional activation of the HIV promoter than when knocking down Suv39H1[177], indicating that the former is associated with a more responsive epigenetic silencing.

Recently, a nuclear lncRNA expressed as an antisense transcript initiated from the viral 3'LTR, was found to modulate HIV-1 replication[182]. This lncRNA was further shown to exert epigenetic modulation of the 5'LTR HIV promoter by recruiting both DNMT3 and EZH2, resembling a genomic imprinting mechanism[183]. These observations are consistent with HIV CpG islands being methylated in a latency model[184]. It has been described that transcriptional silencing by *Xist* requires RepA, which is a short RNA transcript containing the A-repeat that forms an RNA secondary structure to which EZH2 and other PcG members bind, and whose deletion prevents silencing[185]. Given the similarity of the HIV antisense lncRNA mechanism to that of *Xist,* the TAR RNA-loop secondary structure fundamental for HIV transcription could potentially be involved in an interaction with EZH2. While the latter statement is hypothetical, the evidence thus far points towards a robust silencing of HIV by this lncRNA. The scope of this discovery may be extrapolated to the barriers to achieving reactivation of latent provirus as a therapeutic approach. Reactivation strategies to purge the latent reservoir, such as the use of histone deacetylase inhibitors (HDACis) have not been successful, despite using a variety of agents like Vorinostat and Panabinostat, with

different potencies and specificities in inducing HIV specific chromatin relaxation[32]. The mechanism by which this HIV antisense lncRNA maintains latency might explain in part this difficulty, because a very robust and deep silencing may be established in a great deal of latent proviruses that make up the reservoir. Moreover, it could be potentially harmful to aim at disrupting this HIV lncRNA silencing because strategies directed to it could have an impact on other genomic regions strongly repressed by similar mechanisms.

Pan-HDACis have been developed that target more than one class of HDACs and the development of HDACis with isozyme specificity are on the scope[186]. However, HDACis will not specifically target only HIV, instead these drugs induce general chromatin relaxation on cellular genes and so have effects that are no HIV-specific. In addition, given the evident epigenetic complexity of HIV latency, more than one type of enzyme involved in epigenetic silencing will be needed to fully disrupt the latent provirus.

Collectively, the characteristic heterogeneity observed in the studies describing either HIV latency or on those aimed at re-activation of the latent provirus may be explained by the considerable density of binding sites for cellular transcription factors within the 5′LTR (Figure 4 and Table 2), in conjunction with the modulation executed by the HIV antisense lncRNA. Thus, it is possible that inducing TGS through siRNAs/shRNAs that target different regions within these DNA binding elements could result in the establishment of varied epigenetic profiles.

RNAI FOR HIV

PTGS for HIV

Initial applications of RNAi to HIV were designed to target viral mRNA transcripts through the PTGS pathway[187]. These first attempts used transfection of one siRNA directed against important viral transcripts such as *gag*[187], *env*[188] and *rev*[189], and also cellular genes important for HIV-1 replication cycle, such as CD4[190] and CCR5 or CXCR4 chemokine receptors[191]. Suppression was not sustained whenever only viral mRNAs were targeted due to the emergence of resistant variants[192-194]. It became clear that a combinatorial RNAi against HIV would provide better protection and this correlated with delayed viral escape[195]. Further analysis of resistant viruses was useful to guide the design of more effective shRNAs[194]. Indeed, escape-proof shRNAs were identified that exerted potent and prolonged HIV suppression[196]. However, this approach was not completely robust as escape was observed from combinatorial shRNAs despite these being specifically designed to target previously characterized resistant viral variants[197]. Since then, multiple design approaches have been developed using a variety of strategies in search of the best combination of siRNA/shRNAs molecules that might prevent viral escape[198,199].

Following these findings, shRNAs targeting both conserved viral genes and host cellular genes required for viral replication became the preferred way to overcome this problem. Indeed, targeting only cellular genes such as CD4[190] and CXCR4 and particularly the CCR5 chemokine receptor dramatically reduced the emergence of resistant viruses[200]. Currently, PTGS is not envisaged as a stand-alone strategy for treating HIV. Rather its putative use is in combination with other types of gene therapy technologies, which we will discuss in the section for alternative gene therapy approaches.

TGS for HIV

The field of sncRNA-induced TGS for HIV therapeutics is less developed and has been hampered by the doubts regarding the existence of the pathway in mammalian nuclei. Nonetheless, siRNA and shRNA approaches have been efficiently developed that achieve long-term *in vitro* suppression of HIV replication, accompanied by epigenetic profiles which resemble those described in studies of the latent form of HIV-1.

We designed a siRNA, designated PromA, directed to the tandem repeat of NF-κB binding sites found in the HIV promoter (Figure 4). It can induce prolonged suppression of active HIV-1 infection *in vitro* and induces methylation of the CpG dinucleotide that maps to the sequence linking NF-κB tandem sites[201]. This HIV suppression was associated with recruitment of AGO-1 and HDAC1, and increased presence of H3K9me2 at the HIV promoter and involved nucleosome remodeling[202]. Later, long-term suppression (about 90 d) in conjunction with enrichment of H3K27me3 was observed when using stable expression of a shRNA targeting the same region[203]. H3K9me2 and H3K9me3 were also enriched but at much lower levels (H3K27me3 >>> H3K9me2 > H3K9me3). Suppression was then proved to be specific, as mutations in the shRNA sequence impaired virus suppression[204]. Interestingly, we identified F-actin as a key player in nuclear transportation of promoter-targeted siRNAs in mammalian cells, using the same siRNA constructs[205]. Results from this study are consistent with selective transport of promoter-targeted sncRNAs, which has also been shown for AGO-1 by other groups[135], as mentioned earlier.

Using a TGS-based gene therapy for treating HIV infection has several advantages over other therapies. First, TGS acts directly at the HIV promoter giving the virus virtually no opportunity to develop resistance; Second, it is likely able to act on latent provirus, whereby it potentially locks the virus in the latent state impeding future re-activation; Third, small doses of the effector molecules are sufficient to induce silencing since integrated provirus in a clinical setting is limited to less than 2 to 3 copies per cell[206]; And fourth, the silencing could potentially be inherited, though this remains to be definitely demonstrated.

Furthermore, an interesting point to note is that since the 5′LTR promoter contains the same sequence as the 3′LTR, a siRNA/shRNA designed to target the promoter region will also have a second target in the proviral 3′LTR. This could be potentially beneficial, as

heterochromatin could be induced from both ends of the provirus (Figure 3B). Other potential targets are the 3'UTRs of viral mRNAs, whose targeting mainly depends on the efficiency of a siRNA to induce PTGS, or both PTGS and TGS simultaneously. In the latter case, PTGS would function until TGS is established, impeding transcription of viral mRNAs. However, an efficient siRNA/shRNA targeting both PTGS and TGS pathways has not yet been identified. Indeed, our siRNA PromA targeting the NF-κB did not show a significant PTGS effect on viral mRNAs[202] when we measured the effect in a setting mimicking an active HIV transcription owing to its clinical relevance, rather than using a weak promoter. In addition, the 1-LTR and 2-LTR circle intermediates of abortive HIV integration, which reside within the nucleus, may be targeted as well. While transcription and translation of viral genes from these unintegrated DNA forms has been observed, the contribution of these to actual infection is not clear[207]. And lastly, the linear DNA intermediate, that is synthesized in the cytoplasm by the RT enzyme and will become integrated as provirus, also contains the two viral LTRs, and several host proteins are known to interact with it[207]. While PTGS acts only post-HIV integration on viral mRNAs, rather than on incoming viral RNA genomes[208], the effect of promoter-targeted siRNAs in the incoming reverse-transcribed HIV genome and other unintegrated DNA forms has not been investigated.

Essentially, if sequence complementarity and/or sequence features of the promoter-targeted siRNA are the main determinant for target binding, then an activated RITS complex could potentially bind to any type of molecule containing the target sequence.

OTHER GENE THERAPY STRATEGIES FOR HIV

Hope for an HIV cure re-emerged after the successful bone marrow transplantation of Timothy Ray Brown-the leukemia patient known as the Berlin patient - with stem cells homozygous for the Δ32 deletion in the CCR5 gene (CCR5Δ32)[209]. This gene encodes an important co-receptor used by the virus to enter the host cells and individuals carrying the homozygous mutation have proven resistant to HIV infection by CCR5-tropic viruses[210]. Timothy was cured from both leukemia and HIV. Years after the transplant, he remains virus-free even when no longer under cART[211]. Since then, researchers have been developing various strategies to transform hematopoietic stem cells (CD34+) into HIV resistant cells, with the aim of reproducing this outcome.

Consequently, CCR5 has become the favorite cellular factor to target, especially since HIV CCR5-tropic strains are predominantly present during early stages of the disease and often persist into later stages[212,213]. Moreover, individuals with this mutation appear to be otherwise healthy apart from an as yet unconfirmed increase in susceptibility to West Nile infection[214] and hepatitis B virus infection[215]. These statements have raised the concern of whether CCR5 is implicated in immune system-related diseases[216]. An interesting discussion in this topic can be read in[217]. Thus, the effect of knocking down CCR5 could results in unpredicted effects.

Presently, different genetic therapy technologies are being tested for their *in vivo* ability to generate HIV resistant cells. From combined PTGS approaches, to genome editing with Zinc finger nucleases (ZFN), transcription activator-like effector nucleases (TALENs) or clustered regularly interspaced short palindromic repeats elements (CRISPR) associated caspase 9 (Cas9).

The most recent strategies involving PTGS use triple combination vectors. For example, a viral vector expressing shRNA against CCR5, an shRNA against TRIM5α isoform and a TAR-decoy against HIV[218] was successfully tested in a humanized NOD-RAG$^{-/-}$IL2r$\gamma^{-/-}$ knockout mouse model. Similarly, a strategy using a viral vector expressing an shRNA against HIV *tat/rev*, a TAR-decoy element and ribozyme against CCR5[219] was initially tested using modified autologous CD4+ T cells in HIV positive patients who had failed therapy (NTC01153646), and is now been tested as an adjunct therapy using modified CD34+ T cells in patients with acquired-immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)-related non-Hodgkin Lymphoma (NHL) (NCT01961063) and in patients with AIDS-related NHL requiring stem cell transplantation (NCT00569985). Importantly, long-term expression of the effector molecules from this construct has been detected in multiple cell lineages from treated patients, in which a combination of transduced and untransduced CD34+ cells were used[220].

ZFN strategies predominantly target CCR5. Recently, a phase I clinical trial (NTC00842634) testing the transfusion of CCR5 ZFN-modified autologous CD4+ T cells into HIV positive patients[221] showed that the procedure was feasible and safe. During an anti viral therapy treatment interruption the modified cells had a higher survival over non-modified cells. Also, patients showed decreased HIV DNA levels in blood. Currently, the effect of repeated doses of the ZFN-modified CD4+ T cells is being tested (NCT02225665). Although, these clinical trials use modified CD4+ T cells rather than CD34+ cells, recent studies in a humanized mice model showed low engraftment, but proper multi-lineage differentiation of the CCR5-ZFN CD34+ cells[222].

TALENs and CRISPR have not yet been trialed in humans. However, the results from *in vitro* studies are very promising[223], with CRISPR editing able to excise the provirus from infected cells, and thus able to target latent proviruses[224]. ZFNs have also been used to target the provirus, using lentivirus to achieve stable expression of the nucleases[225]. However, the above-mentioned ZFN-related clinical trials used adenovirus vectors. Generally, genome-editing approaches use non-integrative adenoviral vectors. Adenoviral vectors are diluted after each cell division and direct transient expression of the editing nuclease. Transient expression has been the choice for genome-editing approaches on

the grounds that a continuous expression of a selected editing nuclease could be potentially risky as it may result in off-target genome editing. To date, it remains to be addressed if ZFN/TALEN/CRISPR genetically modified CD34+ are safe to use in humans and whether they are feasible approaches towards a functional cure.

CONCLUSION

Presently, a variety of strategies are being tested in order to breakthrough this highly challenging treatment barrier. There are still several large hurdles to be surmounted. Currently there is a lack of adequate delivery systems for targeting cells with HIV infection and the latent reservoir. Further TGS/PTGS approaches require stable expression from vectors, such as lentiviral vectors but this must be combined with high transduction and engraftment rates, for therapy to be effective. In the same way, genome-editing approaches rely on vectors that drive transient expression of the editing enzyme, but get diluted after each cell division. Thus, achieving high genome editing efficiency is one of the limitations.

Importantly, TGS and CRISPR genome editing have the potential to target proviruses directly, and therefore could be effective in targeting latent provirus. Yet this strength may also be an inherent weakness and thus a careful selection of the targeted sequences of HIV-1 is fundamental. Unfortunately, 5'LTR sequences from proven replication competent proviruses are the least represented in curated databases in comparison to other HIV genomic regions. Nonetheless, combinatorial strategies are also an option within these therapies, and may be designed to target an additional host factor as well.

Gene therapy technologies that target only CCR5 may be unable to target latent provirus that is already present. In addition, they may select HIV-1 viruses with tropism for the CXCR4 co-receptor, allowing escape and potentially more rapid disease progression. This evolution is more likely if latent provirus remains in untargeted compartments.

The combinatorial strategies from PTGS, which target the virus and a host factor such as CCR5, provide an additional mechanism that directly restricts the virus and could possibly delay or imped viral evolution. In this regard, it could potentially provide some protection from CXCR4-tropic emerging viruses or re-activating from latent proviruses.

Basically, with present technologies none of the effector molecules for these therapies can be directly administered to an infected patient. Rather, autologous cells are obtained, genetically modified, and then transferred back to the patient. Generally, these therapies aim at modifying CD34+ cells in order to develop multi-lineage HIV resistance and thus long-term protection to the infection. Indeed, the limitation of most of these therapies relies on the efficiency of several steps throughout the complete intervention process. For instance, the efficiency or success to which the autologous cells are first, modified *ex vivo*; Second, re-mobilized or transplanted; third, engrafted within the bone marrow; and fourth, either achieve a sustained and prolonged multi-lineage expression of the modified trait/gene or achieve a certain percentage of modified cells from all the lineages enough to provide protection. Furthermore, the engrafted modified cells will share a niche with the wild-type cells, unless ablation of the immune system is performed before. Therefore, understanding the interactions and signaling between these two populations sharing a niche could give us a better prediction of the long-term success of these therapies. Factors such as symmetric and asymmetric cell division[226], unidentified endogenous mechanisms of genomic mosaicism detection in stem cells[227] and other cellular and molecular pathways may play an important role. For instance, if it is confirmed that Piwi proteins are expressed in hematopoietic stem cells, this could potentially have an impact in those therapies that rely on integrative gene therapy vectors.

Finally, other concerns remain such as the worldwide implementation of these gene-therapy strategies and their cost, particularly in developing countries. Consequently, the development of delivery methods that facilitate the clinical application of these therapies is an important quest.

The various RNAi strategies to target HIV reviewed here provide a potential alternate approach to combating HIV infection and the latent reservoir, with the results of current and future RNAi therapeutic trials poised to reveal whether this approach represents a possible pathway towards a functional HIV cure.

REFERENCES

1 **Reust CE**. Common adverse effects of antiretroviral therapy for HIV disease. *Am Fam Physician* 2011; **83**: 1443-1451 [PMID: 21671545]

2 **Cortez KJ**, Maldarelli F. Clinical management of HIV drug resistance. *Viruses* 2011; **3**: 347-378 [PMID: 21994737 DOI: 10.3390/v3040347]

3 **Sarmento-Castro R**, Vasconcelos C, Aguas MJ, Marques R, Oliveira J. Virologic suppression in treatment-experienced patients after virologic rebound or failure of therapy. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS* 2011; **6** Suppl 1: S12-S20 [PMID: 22156775 DOI: 10.1097/01.COH.0000410240.65647.23]

4 **Hamlyn E**, Ewings FM, Porter K, Cooper DA, Tambussi G, Schechter M, Pedersen C, Okulicz JF, McClure M, Babiker A, Weber J, Fidler S. Plasma HIV viral rebound following protocol-indicated cessation of ART commenced in primary and chronic HIV infection. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e43754 [PMID: 22952756 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0043754]

5 **Steingrover R**, Pogány K, Fernandez Garcia E, Jurriaans S, Brinkman K, Schuitemaker H, Miedema F, Lange JM, Prins JM. HIV-1 viral rebound dynamics after a single treatment interruption depends on time of initiation of highly active antiretroviral therapy. *AIDS* 2008; **22**: 1583-1588 [PMID: 18670217 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328305bd77]

6 **Chun TW**, Justement JS, Murray D, Hallahan CW, Maenza J, Collier AC, Sheth PM, Kaul R, Ostrowski M, Moir S, Kovacs C, Fauci AS. Rebound of plasma viremia following cessation of antiretroviral therapy despite profoundly low levels of HIV reservoir: implications for eradication. *AIDS* 2010; **24**: 2803-2808 [PMID: 20962613 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328340a239]

7 **O'Connell RJ**, Kim JH, Corey L, Michael NL. Human immunodeficiency virus vaccine trials. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med* 2012; **2**: a007351 [PMID: 23209178 DOI: 10.1101/cshperspect.

a007351]
8 **Robb ML**, Rerks-Ngarm S, Nitayaphan S, Pitisuttithum P, Kaewkungwal J, Kunasol P, Khamboonruang C, Thongcharoen P, Morgan P, Benenson M, Paris RM, Chiu J, Adams E, Francis D, Gurunathan S, Tartaglia J, Gilbert P, Stablein D, Michael NL, Kim JH. Risk behaviour and time as covariates for efficacy of the HIV vaccine regimen ALVAC-HIV (vCP1521) and AIDSVAX B/E: a post-hoc analysis of the Thai phase 3 efficacy trial RV 144. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2012; **12**: 531-537 [PMID: 22652344 DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(12)70088-9]
9 **Ndung'u T**, Weiss RA. On HIV diversity. *AIDS* 2012; **26**: 1255-1260 [PMID: 22706010 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32835461b5]
10 **Araújo LA**, Almeida SE. HIV-1 diversity in the envelope glycoproteins: implications for viral entry inhibition. *Viruses* 2013; **5**: 595-604 [PMID: 23389465 DOI: 10.3390/v5020595]
11 **Folks TM**. Mechanisms and strategies of viral antigenic variation. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1994; **730**: 37-41 [PMID: 8080212 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.1994.tb44237.x]
12 **Sharkey M**. Tracking episomal HIV DNA: implications for viral persistence and eradication of HIV. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS* 2013; **8**: 93-99 [PMID: 23380651 DOI: 10.1097/COH.0b013e32835d08c2]
13 **Chun TW**, Fauci AS. HIV reservoirs: pathogenesis and obstacles to viral eradication and cure. *AIDS* 2012; **26**: 1261-1268 [PMID: 22472858 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328353f3f1]
14 **Coleman CM**, Wu L. HIV interactions with monocytes and dendritic cells: viral latency and reservoirs. *Retrovirology* 2009; **6**: 51 [PMID: 19486514 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4690-6-51]
15 **Wu L**. The role of monocyte-lineage cells in human immunodeficiency virus persistence: mechanisms and progress. *Wei Sheng Wu Yu Gan Ran* 2011; **6**: 129-132 [PMID: 22091217]
16 **Mehla R**, Bivalkar-Mehla S, Zhang R, Handy I, Albrecht H, Giri S, Nagarkatti P, Nagarkatti M, Chauhan A. Bryostatin modulates latent HIV-1 infection via PKC and AMPK signaling but inhibits acute infection in a receptor independent manner. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e11160 [PMID: 20585398 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0011160]
17 **Shirakawa K**, Chavez L, Hakre S, Calvanese V, Verdin E. Reactivation of latent HIV by histone deacetylase inhibitors. *Trends Microbiol* 2013; **21**: 277-285 [PMID: 23517573 DOI: 10.1016/j.tim.2013.02.005]
18 **Fernandez G**, Zeichner SL. Cell line-dependent variability in HIV activation employing DNMT inhibitors. *Virol J* 2010; **7**: 266 [PMID: 20942961 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-7-266]
19 **Victoriano AF**, Okamoto T. Transcriptional control of HIV replication by multiple modulators and their implication for a novel antiviral therapy. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 2012; **28**: 125-138 [PMID: 22077140 DOI: 10.1089/AID.2011.0263]
20 **Sharkey M**, Babic DZ, Greenough T, Gulick R, Kuritzkes DR, Stevenson M. Episomal viral cDNAs identify a reservoir that fuels viral rebound after treatment interruption and that contributes to treatment failure. *PLoS Pathog* 2011; **7**: e1001303 [PMID: 21383975 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1001303]
21 **Castro P**, Plana M, González R, López A, Vilella A, Nicolas JM, Gallart T, Pumarola T, Bayas JM, Gatell JM, García F. Influence of episodes of intermittent viremia ("blips") on immune responses and viral load rebound in successfully treated HIV-infected patients. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 2013; **29**: 68-76 [PMID: 23121249 DOI: 10.1089/AID.2012.0145]
22 **Pasternak AO**, de Bruin M, Jurriaans S, Bakker M, Berkhout B, Prins JM, Lukashov VV. Modest nonadherence to antiretroviral therapy promotes residual HIV-1 replication in the absence of virological rebound in plasma. *J Infect Dis* 2012; **206**: 1443-1452 [PMID: 22927449 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jis502]
23 **Chomont N**, El-Far M, Ancuta P, Trautmann L, Procopio FA, Yassine-Diab B, Boucher G, Boulassel MR, Ghattas G, Brenchley JM, Schacker TW, Hill BJ, Douek DC, Routy JP, Haddad EK, Sékaly RP. HIV reservoir size and persistence are driven by T cell survival and homeostatic proliferation. *Nat Med* 2009; **15**: 893-900 [PMID: 19543283 DOI: 10.1038/nm.1972]
24 **Bosque A**, Famiglietti M, Weyrich AS, Goulston C, Planelles V. Homeostatic proliferation fails to efficiently reactivate HIV-1 latently infected central memory CD4+ T cells. *PLoS Pathog* 2011; **7**: e1002288 [PMID: 21998586 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002288]
25 **Shan L**, Yang HC, Rabi SA, Bravo HC, Shroff NS, Irizarry RA, Zhang H, Margolick JB, Siliciano JD, Siliciano RF. Influence of host gene transcription level and orientation on HIV-1 latency in a primary-cell model. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 5384-5393 [PMID: 21430059 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02536-10]
26 **Coiras M**, López-Huertas MR, Pérez-Olmeda M, Alcamí J. Understanding HIV-1 latency provides clues for the eradication of long-term reservoirs. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2009; **7**: 798-812 [PMID: 19834480 DOI: 10.1038/nrmicro2223]
27 **Mbonye U**, Karn J. Control of HIV latency by epigenetic and non-epigenetic mechanisms. *Curr HIV Res* 2011; **9**: 554-567 [PMID: 22211660 DOI: BSP/CHIVR/E-Pub/00180]
28 **van Praag RM**, Prins JM, Roos MT, Schellekens PT, Ten Berge IJ, Yong SL, Schuitemaker H, Eerenberg AJ, Jurriaans S, de Wolf F, Fox CH, Goudsmit J, Miedema F, Lange JM. OKT3 and IL-2 treatment for purging of the latent HIV-1 reservoir in vivo results in selective long-lasting CD4+ T cell depletion. *J Clin Immunol* 2001; **21**: 218-226 [PMID: 11403229 DOI: 10.1023/A:1011091300321]
29 **Wang FX**, Xu Y, Sullivan J, Souder E, Argyris EG, Acheampong EA, Fisher J, Sierra M, Thomson MM, Najera R, Frank I, Kulkosky J, Pomerantz RJ, Nunnari G. IL-7 is a potent and proviral strain-specific inducer of latent HIV-1 cellular reservoirs of infected individuals on virally suppressive HAART. *J Clin Invest* 2005; **115**: 128-137 [PMID: 15630452 DOI: 10.1172/JCI22574]
30 **Sagot-Lerolle N**, Lamine A, Chaix ML, Boufassa F, Aboulker JP, Costagliola D, Goujard C, Pallier C, Delfraissy JF, Lambotte O. Prolonged valproic acid treatment does not reduce the size of latent HIV reservoir. *AIDS* 2008; **22**: 1125-1129 [PMID: 18525257 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3282fd6ddc]
31 **Archin NM**, Liberty AL, Kashuba AD, Choudhary SK, Kuruc JD, Crooks AM, Parker DC, Anderson EM, Kearney MF, Strain MC, Richman DD, Hudgens MG, Bosch RJ, Coffin JM, Eron JJ, Hazuda DJ, Margolis DM. Administration of vorinostat disrupts HIV-1 latency in patients on antiretroviral therapy. *Nature* 2012; **487**: 482-485 [PMID: 22837004 DOI: 10.1038/nature11286]
32 **Bullen CK**, Laird GM, Durand CM, Siliciano JD, Siliciano RF. New ex vivo approaches distinguish effective and ineffective single agents for reversing HIV-1 latency in vivo. *Nat Med* 2014; **20**: 425-429 [PMID: 24658076 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3489]
33 **Lindbo JA**, Dougherty WG. Untranslatable transcripts of the tobacco etch virus coat protein gene sequence can interfere with tobacco etch virus replication in transgenic plants and protoplasts. *Virology* 1992; **189**: 725-733 [PMID: 1641986 DOI: 10.1016/0042-6822(92)90595-g]
34 **Lindbo JA**, Dougherty WG. Pathogen-derived resistance to a potyvirus: immune and resistant phenotypes in transgenic tobacco expressing altered forms of a potyvirus coat protein nucleotide sequence. *Mol Plant Microbe Interact* 1992; **5**: 144-153 [PMID: 1617197 DOI: 10.1094/mpmi-5-144]
35 **Melnyk CW**, Molnar A, Baulcombe DC. Intercellular and systemic movement of RNA silencing signals. *EMBO J* 2011; **30**: 3553-3563 [PMID: 21878996 DOI: 10.1038/emboj.2011.274]
36 **Fire A**, Xu S, Montgomery MK, Kostas SA, Driver SE, Mello CC. Potent and specific genetic interference by double-stranded RNA in Caenorhabditis elegans. *Nature* 1998; **391**: 806-811 [PMID: 9486653 DOI: 10.1038/35888]
37 **Montgomery MK**, Fire A. Double-stranded RNA as a mediator in sequence-specific genetic silencing and co-suppression. *Trends Genet* 1998; **14**: 255-258 [PMID: 9676523 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-9525(98)01510-8]
38 **Montgomery MK**, Xu S, Fire A. RNA as a target of double-stranded RNA-mediated genetic interference in Caenorhabditis elegans. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1998; **95**: 15502-15507 [PMID: 9860998 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.95.26.15502]
39 **Mantha N**, Das SK, Das NG. RNAi-based therapies for Huntington's disease: delivery challenges and opportunities. *Ther Deliv* 2012; **3**: 1061-1076 [PMID: 23035592 DOI: 10.4155/tde.12.80]
40 **Morris KV**, Chan SW, Jacobsen SE, Looney DJ. Small

interfering RNA-induced transcriptional gene silencing in human cells. *Science* 2004; **305**: 1289-1292 [PMID: 15297624 DOI: 10.1126/science.1101372]
41 **Hutvágner G**, Zamore PD. RNAi: nature abhors a double-strand. *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 2002; **12**: 225-232 [PMID: 11893497 DOI: 10.1016/s0959-437x(02)00290-3]
42 **Sigova A**, Rhind N, Zamore PD. A single Argonaute protein mediates both transcriptional and posttranscriptional silencing in Schizosaccharomyces pombe. *Genes Dev* 2004; **18**: 2359-2367 [PMID: 15371329 DOI: 10.1101/gad.1218004]
43 **Han J**, Kim D, Morris KV. Promoter-associated RNA is required for RNA-directed transcriptional gene silencing in human cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 12422-12427 [PMID: 17640892 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0701635104]
44 **Kim VN**, Han J, Siomi MC. Biogenesis of small RNAs in animals. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2009; **10**: 126-139 [PMID: 19165215 DOI: 10.1038/nrm2632]
45 **Höck J**, Meister G. The Argonaute protein family. *Genome Biol* 2008; **9**: 210 [PMID: 18304383 DOI: 10.1186/gb-2008-9-2-210]
46 **Meister G**. Argonaute proteins: functional insights and emerging roles. *Nat Rev Genet* 2013; **14**: 447-459 [PMID: 23732335 DOI: 10.1038/nrg3462]
47 **Li L**, Liu Y. Diverse small non-coding RNAs in RNA interference pathways. *Methods Mol Biol* 2011; **764**: 169-182 [PMID: 21748640 DOI: 10.1007/978-1-61779-188-8_11]
48 **Castel SE**, Martienssen RA. RNA interference in the nucleus: roles for small RNAs in transcription, epigenetics and beyond. *Nat Rev Genet* 2013; **14**: 100-112 [PMID: 23329111 DOI: 10.1038/nrg3355]
49 **Polikepahad S**, Corry DB. Profiling of T helper cell-derived small RNAs reveals unique antisense transcripts and differential association of miRNAs with argonaute proteins 1 and 2. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2013; **41**: 1164-1177 [PMID: 23185045 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gks1098]
50 **Maillard PV**, Ciaudo C, Marchais A, Li Y, Jay F, Ding SW, Voinnet O. Antiviral RNA interference in mammalian cells. *Science* 2013; **342**: 235-238 [PMID: 24115438 DOI: 10.1126/science.1241930]
51 **Castellano L**, Stebbing J. Deep sequencing of small RNAs identifies canonical and non-canonical miRNA and endogenous siRNAs in mammalian somatic tissues. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2013; **41**: 3339-3351 [PMID: 23325850 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gks1474]
52 **Ameres SL**, Horwich MD, Hung JH, Xu J, Ghildiyal M, Weng Z, Zamore PD. Target RNA-directed trimming and tailing of small silencing RNAs. *Science* 2010; **328**: 1534-1539 [PMID: 20558712 DOI: 10.1126/science.1187058]
53 **Wee LM**, Flores-Jasso CF, Salomon WE, Zamore PD. Argonaute divides its RNA guide into domains with distinct functions and RNA-binding properties. *Cell* 2012; **151**: 1055-1067 [PMID: 23178124 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2012.10.036]
54 **Elbashir SM**, Harborth J, Lendeckel W, Yalcin A, Weber K, Tuschl T. Duplexes of 21-nucleotide RNAs mediate RNA interference in cultured mammalian cells. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 494-498 [PMID: 11373684 DOI: 10.1038/35078107]
55 **Holen T**, Amarzguioui M, Wiiger MT, Babaie E, Prydz H. Positional effects of short interfering RNAs targeting the human coagulation trigger Tissue Factor. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2002; **30**: 1757-1766 [PMID: 11937629 DOI: 10.1093/nar/30.8.1757]
56 **Nowotny M**, Yang W. Structural and functional modules in RNA interference. *Curr Opin Struct Biol* 2009; **19**: 286-293 [PMID: 19477631 DOI: 10.1016/j.sbi.2009.04.006]
57 **Chu Y**, Yue X, Younger ST, Janowski BA, Corey DR. Involvement of argonaute proteins in gene silencing and activation by RNAs complementary to a non-coding transcript at the progesterone receptor promoter. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2010; **38**: 7736-7748 [PMID: 20675357 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkq648]
58 **Younger ST**, Corey DR. Transcriptional regulation by miRNA mimics that target sequences downstream of gene termini. *Mol Biosyst* 2011; **7**: 2383-2388 [PMID: 21589992 DOI: 10.1039/c1mb05090g]
59 **Gagnon KT**, Corey DR. Argonaute and the nuclear RNAs: new pathways for RNA-mediated control of gene expression. *Nucleic Acid Ther* 2012; **22**: 3-16 [PMID: 22283730 DOI: 10.1089/nat.2011.0330]
60 **Yekta S**, Shih IH, Bartel DP. MicroRNA-directed cleavage of HOXB8 mRNA. *Science* 2004; **304**: 594-596 [PMID: 15105502 DOI: 10.1126/science.1097434]
61 **Ameres SL**, Zamore PD. Diversifying microRNA sequence and function. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2013; **14**: 475-488 [PMID: 23800994 DOI: 10.1038/nrm3611]
62 **Bracken CP**, Szubert JM, Mercer TR, Dinger ME, Thomson DW, Mattick JS, Michael MZ, Goodall GJ. Global analysis of the mammalian RNA degradome reveals widespread miRNA-dependent and miRNA-independent endonucleolytic cleavage. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2011; **39**: 5658-5668 [PMID: 21427086 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkr110]
63 Shukla GC, Singh J, Barik S. MicroRNAs: Processing, Maturation, Target Recognition and Regulatory Functions. *Mol Cell Pharmacol* 2011; **3**: 83-92 [PMID: 22468167 DOI: 10.4255/mcpharmacol.11.13]
64 **Czech B**, Hannon GJ. Small RNA sorting: matchmaking for Argonautes. *Nat Rev Genet* 2011; **12**: 19-31 [PMID: 21116305 DOI: 10.1038/nrg2916]
65 **Zardo G**, Ciolfi A, Vian L, Starnes LM, Billi M, Racanicchi S, Maresca C, Fazi F, Travaglini L, Noguera N, Mancini M, Nanni M, Cimino G, Lo-Coco F, Grignani F, Nervi C. Polycombs and microRNA-223 regulate human granulopoiesis by transcriptional control of target gene expression. *Blood* 2012; **119**: 4034-4046 [PMID: 22327224 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2011-08-371344]
66 **Kim DH**, Saetrom P, Snøve O, Rossi JJ. MicroRNA-directed transcriptional gene silencing in mammalian cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 16230-16235 [PMID: 18852463 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0808830105]
67 **Huang V**, Li LC. miRNA goes nuclear. *RNA Biol* 2012; **9**: 269-273 [PMID: 22336708 DOI: 10.4161/rna.19354]
68 **Ross RJ**, Weiner MM, Lin H. PIWI proteins and PIWI-interacting RNAs in the soma. *Nature* 2014; **505**: 353-359 [PMID: 24429634 DOI: 10.1038/nature12987]
69 **Nolde MJ**, Cheng EC, Guo S, Lin H. Piwi genes are dispensable for normal hematopoiesis in mice. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e71950 [PMID: 24058407 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0071950]
70 **Jacobs JE**, Wagner M, Dhahbi J, Boffelli D, Martin DI. Deficiency of MIWI2 (Piwil4) induces mouse erythroleukemia cell differentiation, but has no effect on hematopoiesis in vivo. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e82573 [PMID: 24376547 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0082573]
71 **Sharma AK**, Nelson MC, Brandt JE, Wessman M, Mahmud N, Weller KP, Hoffman R. Human CD34(+) stem cells express the hiwi gene, a human homologue of the Drosophila gene piwi. *Blood* 2001; **97**: 426-434 [PMID: 11154219 DOI: 10.1182/blood.v97.2.426]
72 **Aronica L**, Bednenko J, Noto T, DeSouza LV, Siu KW, Loidl J, Pearlman RE, Gorovsky MA, Mochizuki K. Study of an RNA helicase implicates small RNA-noncoding RNA interactions in programmed DNA elimination in Tetrahymena. *Genes Dev* 2008; **22**: 2228-2241 [PMID: 18708581 DOI: 10.1101/gad.481908]
73 **Fang W**, Wang X, Bracht JR, Nowacki M, Landweber LF. Piwi-interacting RNAs protect DNA against loss during Oxytricha genome rearrangement. *Cell* 2012; **151**: 1243-1255 [PMID: 23217708 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2012.10.045]
74 **Pal-Bhadra M**, Bhadra U, Birchler JA. RNAi related mechanisms affect both transcriptional and posttranscriptional transgene silencing in Drosophila. *Mol Cell* 2002; **9**: 315-327 [PMID: 11864605 DOI: 10.1016/s1097-2765(02)00440-9]
75 **Huang XA**, Yin H, Sweeney S, Raha D, Snyder M, Lin H. A major epigenetic programming mechanism guided by piRNAs. *Dev Cell* 2013; **24**: 502-516 [PMID: 23434410 DOI: 10.1016/j.devcel.2013.01.023]
76 **Mei Y**, Clark D, Mao L. Novel dimensions of piRNAs in cancer. *Cancer Lett* 2013; **336**: 46-52 [PMID: 23603435 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2013.04.008]
77 **Behm-Ansmant I**, Rehwinkel J, Doerks T, Stark A, Bork P, Izaurralde E. mRNA degradation by miRNAs and GW182 requires both CCR4: NOT deadenylase and DCP1: DCP2 decapping complexes. *Genes Dev* 2006; **20**: 1885-1898 [PMID: 16815998 DOI:

10.1101/gad.1424106]
78 **Pare JM**, Tahbaz N, López-Orozco J, LaPointe P, Lasko P, Hobman TC. Hsp90 regulates the function of argonaute 2 and its recruitment to stress granules and P-bodies. *Mol Biol Cell* 2009; **20**: 3273-3284 [PMID: 19458189 DOI: 10.1091/mbc.E09-01-0082]
79 **Johnston M**, Geoffroy MC, Sobala A, Hay R, Hutvagner G. HSP90 protein stabilizes unloaded argonaute complexes and microscopic P-bodies in human cells. *Mol Biol Cell* 2010; **21**: 1462-1469 [PMID: 20237157 DOI: 10.1091/mbc.E09-10-0885]
80 **Eulalio A**, Behm-Ansmant I, Schweizer D, Izaurralde E. P-body formation is a consequence, not the cause, of RNA-mediated gene silencing. *Mol Cell Biol* 2007; **27**: 3970-3981 [PMID: 17403906 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.00128-07]
81 **Kim K**, Lee YS, Carthew RW. Conversion of pre-RISC to holo-RISC by Ago2 during assembly of RNAi complexes. *RNA* 2007; **13**: 22-29 [PMID: 17123955 DOI: 10.1261/rna.283207]
82 **Sakurai K**, Amarzguioui M, Kim DH, Alluin J, Heale B, Song MS, Gatignol A, Behlke MA, Rossi JJ. A role for human Dicer in pre-RISC loading of siRNAs. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2011; **39**: 1510-1525 [PMID: 20972213 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkq846]
83 **Schwarz DS**, Hutvágner G, Du T, Xu Z, Aronin N, Zamore PD. Asymmetry in the assembly of the RNAi enzyme complex. *Cell* 2003; **115**: 199-208 [PMID: 14567917 DOI: 10.1016/s0092-8674(03)00759-1]
84 **Khvorova A**, Reynolds A, Jayasena SD. Functional siRNAs and miRNAs exhibit strand bias. *Cell* 2003; **115**: 209-216 [PMID: 14567918 DOI: 10.1016/s0092-8674(03)00801-8]
85 **Noland CL**, Ma E, Doudna JA. siRNA repositioning for guide strand selection by human Dicer complexes. *Mol Cell* 2011; **43**: 110-121 [PMID: 21726814 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2011.05.028]
86 **Betancur JG**, Tomari Y. Dicer is dispensable for asymmetric RISC loading in mammals. *RNA* 2012; **18**: 24-30 [PMID: 22106413 DOI: 10.1261/rna.029785.111]
87 **Ye X**, Huang N, Liu Y, Paroo Z, Huerta C, Li P, Chen S, Liu Q, Zhang H. Structure of C3PO and mechanism of human RISC activation. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2011; **18**: 650-657 [PMID: 21552258 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb.2032]
88 **Matranga C**, Tomari Y, Shin C, Bartel DP, Zamore PD. Passenger-strand cleavage facilitates assembly of siRNA into Ago2-containing RNAi enzyme complexes. *Cell* 2005; **123**: 607-620 [PMID: 16271386 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2005.08.044]
89 **Rand TA**, Petersen S, Du F, Wang X. Argonaute2 cleaves the anti-guide strand of siRNA during RISC activation. *Cell* 2005; **123**: 621-629 [PMID: 16271385 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2005.10.020]
90 **Liu Y**, Ye X, Jiang F, Liang C, Chen D, Peng J, Kinch LN, Grishin NV, Liu Q. C3PO, an endoribonuclease that promotes RNAi by facilitating RISC activation. *Science* 2009; **325**: 750-753 [PMID: 19661431 DOI: 10.1126/science.1176325]
91 **Parizotto EA**, Lowe ED, Parker JS. Structural basis for duplex RNA recognition and cleavage by Archaeoglobus fulgidus C3PO. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2013; **20**: 380-386 [PMID: 23353787 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb.2487]
92 **Eulalio A**, Huntzinger E, Nishihara T, Rehwinkel J, Fauser M, Izaurralde E. Deadenylation is a widespread effect of miRNA regulation. *RNA* 2009; **15**: 21-32 [PMID: 19029310 DOI: 10.1261/rna.1399509]
93 **Elbashir SM**, Martinez J, Patkaniowska A, Lendeckel W, Tuschl T. Functional anatomy of siRNAs for mediating efficient RNAi in Drosophila melanogaster embryo lysate. *EMBO J* 2001; **20**: 6877-6888 [PMID: 11726523 DOI: 10.1093/emboj/20.23.6877]
94 **Crist CG**, Montarras D, Buckingham M. Muscle satellite cells are primed for myogenesis but maintain quiescence with sequestration of Myf5 mRNA targeted by microRNA-31 in mRNP granules. *Cell Stem Cell* 2012; **11**: 118-126 [PMID: 22770245 DOI: 10.1016/j.stem.2012.03.011]
95 **Lian SL**, Li S, Abadal GX, Pauley BA, Fritzler MJ, Chan EK. The C-terminal half of human Ago2 binds to multiple GW-rich regions of GW182 and requires GW182 to mediate silencing. *RNA* 2009; **15**: 804-813 [PMID: 19324964 DOI: 10.1261/rna.1229409]
96 **Takimoto K**, Wakiyama M, Yokoyama S. Mammalian GW182 contains multiple Argonaute-binding sites and functions in microRNA-mediated translational repression. *RNA* 2009; **15**: 1078-1089 [PMID: 19398495 DOI: 10.1261/rna.1363109]
97 **Ding L**, Han M. GW182 family proteins are crucial for microRNA-mediated gene silencing. *Trends Cell Biol* 2007; **17**: 411-416 [PMID: 17766119 DOI: 10.1016/j.tcb.2007.06.003]
98 **Ikeda K**, Satoh M, Pauley KM, Fritzler MJ, Reeves WH, Chan EK. Detection of the argonaute protein Ago2 and microRNAs in the RNA induced silencing complex (RISC) using a monoclonal antibody. *J Immunol Methods* 2006; **317**: 38-44 [PMID: 17054975 DOI: 10.1016/j.jim.2006.09.010]
99 **Eulalio A**, Huntzinger E, Izaurralde E. GW182 interaction with Argonaute is essential for miRNA-mediated translational repression and mRNA decay. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2008; **15**: 346-353 [PMID: 18345015 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb.1405]
100 **Nishi K**, Nishi A, Nagasawa T, Ui-Tei K. Human TNRC6A is an Argonaute-navigator protein for microRNA-mediated gene silencing in the nucleus. *RNA* 2013; **19**: 17-35 [PMID: 23150874 DOI: 10.1261/rna.034769.112]
101 **Gagnon KT**, Li L, Chu Y, Janowski BA, Corey DR. RNAi factors are present and active in human cell nuclei. *Cell Rep* 2014; **6**: 211-221 [PMID: 24388755 DOI: 10.1016/j.celrep.2013.12.013]
102 **Zhang H**, Zhu JK. RNA-directed DNA methylation. *Curr Opin Plant Biol* 2011; **14**: 142-147 [PMID: 21420348 DOI: 10.1016/j.pbi.2011.02.003]
103 **Djupedal I**, Ekwall K. Epigenetics: heterochromatin meets RNAi. *Cell Res* 2009; **19**: 282-295 [PMID: 19188930 DOI: 10.1038/cr.2009.13]
104 **Creamer KM**, Partridge JF. RITS-connecting transcription, RNA interference, and heterochromatin assembly in fission yeast. *Wiley Interdiscip Rev RNA* 2011; **2**: 632-646 [PMID: 21823226 DOI: 10.1002/wrna.80]
105 **Grewal SI**, Elgin SC. Transcription and RNA interference in the formation of heterochromatin. *Nature* 2007; **447**: 399-406 [PMID: 17522672 DOI: 10.1038/nature05914]
106 **Yue X**, Schwartz JC, Chu Y, Younger ST, Gagnon KT, Elbashir S, Janowski BA, Corey DR. Transcriptional regulation by small RNAs at sequences downstream from 3' gene termini. *Nat Chem Biol* 2010; **6**: 621-629 [PMID: 20581822 DOI: 10.1038/nchembio.400]
107 **Benhamed M**, Herbig U, Ye T, Dejean A, Bischof O. Senescence is an endogenous trigger for microRNA-directed transcriptional gene silencing in human cells. *Nat Cell Biol* 2012; **14**: 266-275 [PMID: 22366686 DOI: 10.1038/ncb2443]
108 **Jiang G**, Zheng L, Pu J, Mei H, Zhao J, Huang K, Zeng F, Tong Q. Small RNAs targeting transcription start site induce heparanase silencing through interference with transcription initiation in human cancer cells. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e31379 [PMID: 22363633 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0031379]
109 **Ameyar-Zazoua M**, Rachez C, Souidi M, Robin P, Fritsch L, Young R, Morozova N, Fenouil R, Descostes N, Andrau JC, Mathieu J, Hamiche A, Ait-Si-Ali S, Muchardt C, Batsché E, Harel-Bellan A. Argonaute proteins couple chromatin silencing to alternative splicing. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2012; **19**: 998-1004 [PMID: 22961379 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb.2373]
110 **Kanduri C**, Whitehead J, Mohammad F. The long and the short of it: RNA-directed chromatin asymmetry in mammalian X-chromosome inactivation. *FEBS Lett* 2009; **583**: 857-864 [PMID: 19302783 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2009.02.004]
111 **Almouzni G**, Probst AV. Heterochromatin maintenance and establishment: lessons from the mouse pericentromere. *Nucleus* 2011; **2**: 332-338 [PMID: 21941119 DOI: 10.4161/nucl.2.5.17707]
112 **Trojer P**, Reinberg D. Facultative heterochromatin: is there a distinctive molecular signature? *Mol Cell* 2007; **28**: 1-13 [PMID: 17936700 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2007.09.011]
113 **Suzuki K**, Hattori S, Marks K, Ahlenstiel C, Maeda Y, Ishida T, Millington M, Boyd M, Symonds G, Cooper DA, Okada S, Kelleher AD. Promoter Targeting shRNA Suppresses HIV-1 Infection In vivo Through Transcriptional Gene Silencing. *Mol Ther Nucleic Acids* 2013; **2**: e137 [PMID: 24301868 DOI: 10.1038/mtna.2013.64]
114 **Kim DH**, Villeneuve LM, Morris KV, Rossi JJ. Argonaute-1 directs siRNA-mediated transcriptional gene silencing in human cells. *Nat*

Struct Mol Biol 2006; **13**: 793-797 [PMID: 16936726 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb1142]

115 **Lorentz A**, Ostermann K, Fleck O, Schmidt H. Switching gene swi6, involved in repression of silent mating-type loci in fission yeast, encodes a homologue of chromatin-associated proteins from Drosophila and mammals. *Gene* 1994; **143**: 139-143 [PMID: 8200530 DOI: 10.1016/0378-1119(94)90619-x]

116 **Melcher M**, Schmid M, Aagaard L, Selenko P, Laible G, Jenuwein T. Structure-function analysis of SUV39H1 reveals a dominant role in heterochromatin organization, chromosome segregation, and mitotic progression. *Mol Cell Biol* 2000; **20**: 3728-3741 [PMID: 10779362 DOI: 10.1128/mcb.20.10.3728-3741.2000]

117 **Aagaard L**, Laible G, Selenko P, Schmid M, Dorn R, Schotta G, Kuhfittig S, Wolf A, Lebersorger A, Singh PB, Reuter G, Jenuwein T. Functional mammalian homologues of the Drosophila PEV-modifier Su(var)3-9 encode centromere-associated proteins which complex with the heterochromatin component M31. *EMBO J* 1999; **18**: 1923-1938 [PMID: 10202156 DOI: 10.1093/emboj/18.7.1923]

118 **Nakanishi K**, Ascano M, Gogakos T, Ishibe-Murakami S, Serganov AA, Briskin D, Morozov P, Tuschl T, Patel DJ. Eukaryote-specific insertion elements control human ARGONAUTE slicer activity. *Cell Rep* 2013; **3**: 1893-1900 [PMID: 23809764 DOI: 10.1016/j.celrep.2013.06.010]

119 **Wang B**, Li S, Qi HH, Chowdhury D, Shi Y, Novina CD. Distinct passenger strand and mRNA cleavage activities of human Argonaute proteins. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2009; **16**: 1259-1266 [PMID: 19946268 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb.1712]

120 **Su H**, Trombly MI, Chen J, Wang X. Essential and overlapping functions for mammalian Argonautes in microRNA silencing. *Genes Dev* 2009; **23**: 304-317 [PMID: 19174539 DOI: 10.1101/gad.1749809]

121 **Petri S**, Dueck A, Lehmann G, Putz N, Rüdel S, Kremmer E, Meister G. Increased siRNA duplex stability correlates with reduced off-target and elevated on-target effects. *RNA* 2011; **17**: 737-749 [PMID: 21367974 DOI: 10.1261/rna.2348111]

122 **Faehnle CR**, Elkayam E, Haase AD, Hannon GJ, Joshua-Tor L. The making of a slicer: activation of human Argonaute-1. *Cell Rep* 2013; **3**: 1901-1909 [PMID: 23746446 DOI: 10.1016/j.celrep.2013.05.033]

123 **Cho YS**, Chennathukuzhi VM, Handel MA, Eppig J, Hecht NB. The relative levels of translin-associated factor X (TRAX) and testis brain RNA-binding protein determine their nucleocytoplasmic distribution in male germ cells. *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 31514-31523 [PMID: 15138261 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M401442200]

124 **Sinkkonen L**, Hugenschmidt T, Filipowicz W, Svoboda P. Dicer is associated with ribosomal DNA chromatin in mammalian cells. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e12175 [PMID: 20730047 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0012175]

125 **Ando Y**, Tomaru Y, Morinaga A, Burroughs AM, Kawaji H, Kubosaki A, Kimura R, Tagata M, Ino Y, Hirano H, Chiba J, Suzuki H, Carninci P, Hayashizaki Y. Nuclear pore complex protein mediated nuclear localization of dicer protein in human cells. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e23385 [PMID: 21858095 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0023385]

126 **Castel SE**, Ren J, Bhattacharjee S, Chang AY, Sánchez M, Valbuena A, Antequera F, Martienssen RA. Dicer promotes transcription termination at sites of replication stress to maintain genome stability. *Cell* 2014; **159**: 572-583 [PMID: 25417108 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2014.09.031]

127 **Haussecker D**, Proudfoot NJ. Dicer-dependent turnover of intergenic transcripts from the human beta-globin gene cluster. *Mol Cell Biol* 2005; **25**: 9724-9733 [PMID: 16227618 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.25.21.9724-9733.2005]

128 **Redfern AD**, Colley SM, Beveridge DJ, Ikeda N, Epis MR, Li X, Foulds CE, Stuart LM, Barker A, Russell VJ, Ramsay K, Kobelke SJ, Li X, Hatchell EC, Payne C, Giles KM, Messineo A, Gatignol A, Lanz RB, O'Malley BW, Leedman PJ. RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC) Proteins PACT, TRBP, and Dicer are SRA binding nuclear receptor coregulators. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2013; **110**: 6536-6541 [PMID: 23550157 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1301620110]

129 **Emmerth S**, Schober H, Gaidatzis D, Roloff T, Jacobeit K, Bühler M. Nuclear retention of fission yeast dicer is a prerequisite for RNAi-mediated heterochromatin assembly. *Dev Cell* 2010; **18**: 102-113 [PMID: 20152181 DOI: 10.1016/j.devcel.2009.11.011]

130 **Giles KE**, Ghirlando R, Felsenfeld G. Maintenance of a constitutive heterochromatin domain in vertebrates by a Dicer-dependent mechanism. *Nat Cell Biol* 2010; **12**: 94-99; sup pp 1-6 [PMID: 20010811 DOI: 10.1038/ncb2010]

131 **Baillat D**, Shiekhattar R. Functional dissection of the human TNRC6 (GW182-related) family of proteins. *Mol Cell Biol* 2009; **29**: 4144-4155 [PMID: 19470757 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.00380-09]

132 **Partridge JF**, DeBeauchamp JL, Kosinski AM, Ulrich DL, Hadler MJ, Noffsinger VJ. Functional separation of the requirements for establishment and maintenance of centromeric heterochromatin. *Mol Cell* 2007; **26**: 593-602 [PMID: 17531816 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2007.05.004]

133 **Pontier D**, Picart C, Roudier F, Garcia D, Lahmy S, Azevedo J, Alart E, Laudié M, Karlowski WM, Cooke R, Colot V, Voinnet O, Lagrange T. NERD, a plant-specific GW protein, defines an additional RNAi-dependent chromatin-based pathway in Arabidopsis. *Mol Cell* 2012; **48**: 121-132 [PMID: 22940247 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2012.07.027]

134 **Gagnon KT**, Li L, Janowski BA, Corey DR. Analysis of nuclear RNA interference in human cells by subcellular fractionation and Argonaute loading. *Nat Protoc* 2014; **9**: 2045-2060 [PMID: 25079428 DOI: 10.1038/nprot.2014.135]

135 **Yamakawa N**, Okuyama K, Ogata J, Kanai A, Helwak A, Takamatsu M, Imadome K, Takakura K, Chanda B, Kurosaki N, Yamamoto H, Ando K, Matsui H, Inaba T, Kotani A. Novel functional small RNAs are selectively loaded onto mammalian Ago1. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2014; **42**: 5289-5301 [PMID: 24627180 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gku137]

136 **Nakama M**, Kawakami K, Kajitani T, Urano T, Murakami Y. DNA-RNA hybrid formation mediates RNAi-directed heterochromatin formation. *Genes Cells* 2012; **17**: 218-233 [PMID: 22280061 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2443.2012.01583.x]

137 **Morris KV**. siRNA-mediated transcriptional gene silencing: the potential mechanism and a possible role in the histone code. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2005; **62**: 3057-3066 [PMID: 16314933 DOI: 10.1007/s00018-005-5182-4]

138 **Kimura H**. Histone modifications for human epigenome analysis. *J Hum Genet* 2013; **58**: 439-445 [PMID: 23739122 DOI: 10.1038/jhg.2013.66]

139 **Rothbart SB**, Strahl BD. Interpreting the language of histone and DNA modifications. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2014; **1839**: 627-643 [PMID: 24631868 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbagrm.2014.03.001]

140 **Gurard-Levin ZA**, Almouzni G. Histone modifications and a choice of variant: a language that helps the genome express itself. *F1000Prime Rep* 2014; **6**: 76 [PMID: 25343033 DOI: 10.12703/P6-76]

141 **Verdin E**. Histone Deacetylases. New Jersey: Humana Press, 2006 [DOI: 10.1385/1597450243]

142 **Zentner GE**, Henikoff S. Regulation of nucleosome dynamics by histone modifications. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2013; **20**: 259-266 [PMID: 23463310 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb.2470]

143 **Krouwels IM**, Wiesmeijer K, Abraham TE, Molenaar C, Verwoerd NP, Tanke HJ, Dirks RW. A glue for heterochromatin maintenance: stable SUV39H1 binding to heterochromatin is reinforced by the SET domain. *J Cell Biol* 2005; **170**: 537-549 [PMID: 16103223 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.200502154]

144 **Maison C**, Almouzni G. HP1 and the dynamics of heterochromatin maintenance. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2004; **5**: 296-304 [PMID: 15071554 DOI: 10.1038/nrm1355]

145 **Ogawa Y**, Sun BK, Lee JT. Intersection of the RNA interference and X-inactivation pathways. *Science* 2008; **320**: 1336-1341 [PMID: 18535243 DOI: 10.1126/science.1157676]

146 **Mathiyalagan P**, Okabe J, Chang L, Su Y, Du XJ, El-Osta A. The primary microRNA-208b interacts with Polycomb-group protein, Ezh2, to regulate gene expression in the heart. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2014; **42**: 790-803 [PMID: 24137001 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkt896]

147 **Jurkowska RZ**, Jurkowski TP, Jeltsch A. Structure and function of mammalian DNA methyltransferases. *Chembiochem* 2011; **12**: 206-222 [PMID: 21243710 DOI: 10.1002/cbic.201000195]

148 **Chen CC**, Wang KY, Shen CK. DNA 5-methylcytosine demethylation activities of the mammalian DNA methyltransferases. *J Biol Chem* 2013; **288**: 9084-9091 [PMID: 23393137 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M112.445585]

149 **Delatte B**, Fuks F. TET proteins: on the frenetic hunt for new cytosine modifications. *Brief Funct Genomics* 2013; **12**: 191-204 [PMID: 23625996 DOI: 10.1093/bfgp/elt010]

150 **Zou X**, Ma W, Solov'yov IA, Chipot C, Schulten K. Recognition of methylated DNA through methyl-CpG binding domain proteins. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2012; **40**: 2747-2758 [PMID: 22110028 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkr1057]

151 **Feldman N**, Gerson A, Fang J, Li E, Zhang Y, Shinkai Y, Cedar H, Bergman Y. G9a-mediated irreversible epigenetic inactivation of Oct-3/4 during early embryogenesis. *Nat Cell Biol* 2006; **8**: 188-194 [PMID: 16415856 DOI: 10.1038/ncb1353]

152 **Gidekel S**, Bergman Y. A unique developmental pattern of Oct-3/4 DNA methylation is controlled by a cis-demodification element. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 34521-34530 [PMID: 12110668 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M203338200]

153 **Yu DH**, Ware C, Waterland RA, Zhang J, Chen MH, Gadkari M, Kunde-Ramamoorthy G, Nosavanh LM, Shen L. Developmentally programmed 3' CpG island methylation confers tissue- and cell-type-specific transcriptional activation. *Mol Cell Biol* 2013; **33**: 1845-1858 [PMID: 23459939 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.01124-12]

154 **Okano M**, Bell DW, Haber DA, Li E. DNA methyltransferases Dnmt3a and Dnmt3b are essential for de novo methylation and mammalian development. *Cell* 1999; **99**: 247-257 [PMID: 10555141 DOI: 10.1016/s0092-8674(00)81656-6]

155 **Capuano F**, Mülleder M, Kok R, Blom HJ, Ralser M. Cytosine DNA methylation is found in Drosophila melanogaster but absent in Saccharomyces cerevisiae, Schizosaccharomyces pombe, and other yeast species. *Anal Chem* 2014; **86**: 3697-3702 [PMID: 24640988 DOI: 10.1021/ac500447w]

156 **Matzke MA**, Mosher RA. RNA-directed DNA methylation: an epigenetic pathway of increasing complexity. *Nat Rev Genet* 2014; **15**: 394-408 [PMID: 24805120 DOI: 10.1038/nrg3683]

157 **Mann JR**, Mattiske DM. RNA interference in mammalian DNA methylation. *Biochem Cell Biol* 2012; **90**: 70-77 [PMID: 22003849 DOI: 10.1139/o11-050]

158 **Herbst F**, Ball CR, Tuorto F, Nowrouzi A, Wang W, Zavidij O, Dieter SM, Fessler S, van der Hoeven F, Kloz U, Lyko F, Schmidt M, von Kalle C, Glimm H. Extensive methylation of promoter sequences silences lentiviral transgene expression during stem cell differentiation in vivo. *Mol Ther* 2012; **20**: 1014-1021 [PMID: 22434137 DOI: 10.1038/mt.2012.46]

159 **Mok HP**, Javed S, Lever A. Stable gene expression occurs from a minority of integrated HIV-1-based vectors: transcriptional silencing is present in the majority. *Gene Ther* 2007; **14**: 741-751 [PMID: 17330088 DOI: 10.1038/sj.gt.3302923]

160 **Xia X**, Zhang Y, Zieth CR, Zhang SC. Transgenes delivered by lentiviral vector are suppressed in human embryonic stem cells in a promoter-dependent manner. *Stem Cells Dev* 2007; **16**: 167-176 [PMID: 17348812 DOI: 10.1089/scd.2006.0057]

161 **Qin JY**, Zhang L, Clift KL, Hulur I, Xiang AP, Ren BZ, Lahn BT. Systematic comparison of constitutive promoters and the doxycycline-inducible promoter. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e10611 [PMID: 20485554 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0010611]

162 **Pasini D**, Bracken AP, Hansen JB, Capillo M, Helin K. The polycomb group protein Suz12 is required for embryonic stem cell differentiation. *Mol Cell Biol* 2007; **27**: 3769-3779 [PMID: 17339329 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.01432-06]

163 **Simon JA**, Kingston RE. Mechanisms of polycomb gene silencing: knowns and unknowns. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2009; **10**: 697-708 [PMID: 19738629 DOI: 10.1038/nrm2763]

164 **Margueron R**, Reinberg D. The Polycomb complex PRC2 and its mark in life. *Nature* 2011; **469**: 343-349 [PMID: 21248841 DOI: 10.1038/nature09784]

165 **Gil J**, O'Loghlen A. PRC1 complex diversity: where is it taking us? *Trends Cell Biol* 2014; **24**: 632-641 [PMID: 25065329 DOI: 10.1016/j.tcb.2014.06.005]

166 **Voigt P**, Tee WW, Reinberg D. A double take on bivalent promoters. *Genes Dev* 2013; **27**: 1318-1338 [PMID: 23788621 DOI: 10.1101/gad.219626.113]

167 **Kanhere A**, Viiri K, Araújo CC, Rasaiyaah J, Bouwman RD, Whyte WA, Pereira CF, Brookes E, Walker K, Bell GW, Pombo A, Fisher AG, Young RA, Jenner RG. Short RNAs are transcribed from repressed polycomb target genes and interact with polycomb repressive complex-2. *Mol Cell* 2010; **38**: 675-688 [PMID: 20542000 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2010.03.019]

168 **Li X**. Genomic imprinting is a parental effect established in mammalian germ cells. *Curr Top Dev Biol* 2013; **102**: 35-59 [PMID: 23287029 DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-416024-8.00002-7]

169 **Barlow DP**. Genomic imprinting: a mammalian epigenetic discovery model. *Annu Rev Genet* 2011; **45**: 379-403 [PMID: 21942369 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-genet-110410-132459]

170 **Nesterova TB**, Popova BC, Cobb BS, Norton S, Senner CE, Tang YA, Spruce T, Rodriguez TA, Sado T, Merkenschlager M, Brockdorff N. Dicer regulates Xist promoter methylation in ES cells indirectly through transcriptional control of Dnmt3a. *Epigenetics Chromatin* 2008; **1**: 2 [PMID: 19014663 DOI: 10.1186/1756-8935-1-2]

171 **Kota SK**. RNAi in X inactivation: contrasting findings on the role of interference. *Bioessays* 2009; **31**: 1280-1283 [PMID: 19921656 DOI: 10.1002/bies.200900125]

172 **Kota SK**, Roy Chowdhury D, Rao LK, Padmalatha V, Singh L, Bhadra U. Uncoupling of X-linked gene silencing from XIST binding by DICER1 and chromatin modulation on human inactive X chromosome. *Chromosoma* 2015; **124**: 249-262 [PMID: 25428210 DOI: 10.1007/s00412-014-0495-4]

173 **Hu WS**, Hughes SH. HIV-1 reverse transcription. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med* 2012; **2**: [PMID: 23028129 DOI: 10.1101/cshperspect.a006882]

174 **Wilusz J**. Putting an 'End' to HIV mRNAs: capping and polyadenylation as potential therapeutic targets. *AIDS Res Ther* 2013; **10**: 31 [PMID: 24330569 DOI: 10.1186/1742-6405-10-31]

175 **Dingwall C**, Ernberg I, Gait MJ, Green SM, Heaphy S, Karn J, Lowe AD, Singh M, Skinner MA. HIV-1 tat protein stimulates transcription by binding to a U-rich bulge in the stem of the TAR RNA structure. *EMBO J* 1990; **9**: 4145-4153 [PMID: 2249668]

176 **Kim J**, Kim H. Recruitment and biological consequences of histone modification of H3K27me3 and H3K9me3. *ILAR J* 2012; **53**: 232-239 [PMID: 23744963 DOI: 10.1093/ilar.53.3-4.232]

177 **Friedman J**, Cho WK, Chu CK, Keedy KS, Archin NM, Margolis DM, Karn J. Epigenetic silencing of HIV-1 by the histone H3 lysine 27 methyltransferase enhancer of Zeste 2. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 9078-9089 [PMID: 21715480 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00836-11]

178 **Le Douce V**, Colin L, Redel L, Cherrier T, Herbein G, Aunis D, Rohr O, Van Lint C, Schwartz C. LSD1 cooperates with CTIP2 to promote HIV-1 transcriptional silencing. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2012; **40**: 1904-1915 [PMID: 22067449 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkr857]

179 **du Chéné I**, Basyuk E, Lin YL, Triboulet R, Knezevich A, Chable-Bessia C, Mettling C, Baillat V, Reynes J, Corbeau P, Bertrand E, Marcello A, Emiliani S, Kiernan R, Benkirane M. Suv39H1 and HP1gamma are responsible for chromatin-mediated HIV-1 transcriptional silencing and post-integration latency. *EMBO J* 2007; **26**: 424-435 [PMID: 17245432 DOI: 10.1038/sj.emboj.7601517]

180 **Marban C**, Suzanne S, Dequiedt F, de Walque S, Redel L, Van Lint C, Aunis D, Rohr O. Recruitment of chromatin-modifying enzymes by CTIP2 promotes HIV-1 transcriptional silencing. *EMBO J* 2007; **26**: 412-423 [PMID: 17245431 DOI: 10.1038/sj.emboj.7601516]

181 **Imai K**, Togami H, Okamoto T. Involvement of histone H3 lysine 9 (H3K9) methyltransferase G9a in the maintenance of HIV-1 latency and its reactivation by BIX01294. *J Biol Chem* 2010; **285**: 16538-16545 [PMID: 20335163 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M110.103531]

182 **Kobayashi-Ishihara M**, Yamagishi M, Hara T, Matsuda Y, Takahashi R, Miyake A, Nakano K, Yamochi T, Ishida T, Watanabe T. HIV-1-encoded antisense RNA suppresses viral replication for a prolonged period. *Retrovirology* 2012; **9**: 38 [PMID: 22569184 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4690-9-38]

183 **Saayman S**, Ackley A, Turner AM, Famiglietti M, Bosque A,

Clemson M, Planelles V, Morris KV. An HIV-encoded antisense long noncoding RNA epigenetically regulates viral transcription. *Mol Ther* 2014; **22**: 1164-1175 [PMID: 24576854 DOI: 10.1038/mt.2014.29]

184 **Chávez L**, Kauder S, Verdin E. In vivo, in vitro, and in silico analysis of methylation of the HIV-1 provirus. *Methods* 2011; **53**: 47-53 [PMID: 20670606 DOI: 10.1016/j.ymeth.2010.05.009]

185 **Brockdorff N**. Noncoding RNA and Polycomb recruitment. *RNA* 2013; **19**: 429-442 [PMID: 23431328 DOI: 10.1261/rna.037598.112]

186 **Thaler F**, Mercurio C. Towards selective inhibition of histone deacetylase isoforms: what has been achieved, where we are and what will be next. *ChemMedChem* 2014; **9**: 523-526 [PMID: 24730063 DOI: 10.1002/cmdc.201300413]

187 **Lee NS**, Rossi JJ. Control of HIV-1 replication by RNA interference. *Virus Res* 2004; **102**: 53-58 [PMID: 15068880 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2004.01.015]

188 **Park WS**, Hayafune M, Miyano-Kurosaki N, Takaku H. Specific HIV-1 env gene silencing by small interfering RNAs in human peripheral blood mononuclear cells. *Gene Ther* 2003; **10**: 2046-2050 [PMID: 14566364 DOI: 10.1038/sj.gt.3302099]

189 **Lee NS**, Dohjima T, Bauer G, Li H, Li MJ, Ehsani A, Salvaterra P, Rossi J. Expression of small interfering RNAs targeted against HIV-1 rev transcripts in human cells. *Nat Biotechnol* 2002; **20**: 500-505 [PMID: 11981565 DOI: 10.1038/nbt0502-500]

190 **Novina CD**, Murray MF, Dykxhoorn DM, Beresford PJ, Riess J, Lee SK, Collman RG, Lieberman J, Shankar P, Sharp PA. siRNA-directed inhibition of HIV-1 infection. *Nat Med* 2002; **8**: 681-686 [PMID: 12042777 DOI: 10.1038/nm725]

191 **Martínez MA**, Gutiérrez A, Armand-Ugón M, Blanco J, Parera M, Gómez J, Clotet B, Esté JA. Suppression of chemokine receptor expression by RNA interference allows for inhibition of HIV-1 replication. *AIDS* 2002; **16**: 2385-2390 [PMID: 12461411 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200212060-00002]

192 **Das AT**, Brummelkamp TR, Westerhout EM, Vink M, Madiredjo M, Bernards R, Berkhout B. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 escapes from RNA interference-mediated inhibition. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 2601-2605 [PMID: 14963165 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.78.5.2601-2605.2004]

193 **Westerhout EM**, Ooms M, Vink M, Das AT, Berkhout B. HIV-1 can escape from RNA interference by evolving an alternative structure in its RNA genome. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2005; **33**: 796-804 [PMID: 15687388 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gki220]

194 **von Eije KJ**, ter Brake O, Berkhout B. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 escape is restricted when conserved genome sequences are targeted by RNA interference. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 2895-2903 [PMID: 18077712 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02035-07]

195 **ter Brake O**, Konstantinova P, Ceylan M, Berkhout B. Silencing of HIV-1 with RNA interference: a multiple shRNA approach. *Mol Ther* 2006; **14**: 883-892 [PMID: 16959541 DOI: 10.1016/j.ymthe.2006.07.007]

196 **von Eije KJ**, ter Brake O, Berkhout B. Stringent testing identifies highly potent and escape-proof anti-HIV short hairpin RNAs. *J Gene Med* 2009; **11**: 459-467 [PMID: 19384894 DOI: 10.1002/jgm.1329]

197 **Schopman NC**, ter Brake O, Berkhout B. Anticipating and blocking HIV-1 escape by second generation antiviral shRNAs. *Retrovirology* 2010; **7**: 52 [PMID: 20529316 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4690-7-52]

198 **Méndez-Ortega MC**, Restrepo S, Rodríguez-R LM, Pérez I, Mendoza JC, Martínez AP, Sierra R, Rey-Benito GJ. An RNAi in silico approach to find an optimal shRNA cocktail against HIV-1. *Virol J* 2010; **7**: 369 [PMID: 21172023 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-7-369]

199 **McIntyre GJ**, Arndt AJ, Gillespie KM, Mak WM, Fanning GC. A comparison of multiple shRNA expression methods for combinatorial RNAi. *Genet Vaccines Ther* 2011; **9**: 9 [PMID: 21496330 DOI: 10.1186/1479-0556-9-9]

200 **Eekels JJ**, Geerts D, Jeeninga RE, Berkhout B. Long-term inhibition of HIV-1 replication with RNA interference against cellular co-factors. *Antiviral Res* 2011; **89**: 43-53 [PMID: 21093490 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2010.11.005]

201 **Suzuki K**, Shijuuku T, Fukamachi T, Zaunders J, Guillemin G, Cooper D, Kelleher A. Prolonged transcriptional silencing and CpG methylation induced by siRNAs targeted to the HIV-1 promoter region. *J RNAi Gene Silencing* 2005; **1**: 66-78 [PMID: 19771207]

202 **Suzuki K**, Juelich T, Lim H, Ishida T, Watanebe T, Cooper DA, Rao S, Kelleher AD. Closed chromatin architecture is induced by an RNA duplex targeting the HIV-1 promoter region. *J Biol Chem* 2008; **283**: 23353-23363 [PMID: 18519571 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M709651200]

203 **Yamagishi M**, Ishida T, Miyake A, Cooper DA, Kelleher AD, Suzuki K, Watanabe T. Retroviral delivery of promoter-targeted shRNA induces long-term silencing of HIV-1 transcription. *Microbes Infect* 2009; **11**: 500-508 [PMID: 19233310 DOI: 10.1016/j.micinf.2009.02.003]

204 **Suzuki K**, Ishida T, Yamagishi M, Ahlenstiel C, Swaminathan S, Marks K, Murray D, McCartney EM, Beard MR, Alexander M, Purcell DF, Cooper DA, Watanabe T, Kelleher AD. Transcriptional gene silencing of HIV-1 through promoter targeted RNA is highly specific. *RNA Biol* 2011; **8**: 1035-1046 [PMID: 21955498 DOI: 10.4161/rna.8.6.16264]

205 **Ahlenstiel CL**, Lim HG, Cooper DA, Ishida T, Kelleher AD, Suzuki K. Direct evidence of nuclear Argonaute distribution during transcriptional silencing links the actin cytoskeleton to nuclear RNAi machinery in human cells. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2012; **40**: 1579-1595 [PMID: 22064859 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkr891]

206 **Mack KD**, Jin X, Yu S, Wei R, Kapp L, Green C, Herndier B, Abbey NW, Elbaggari A, Liu Y, McGrath MS. HIV insertions within and proximal to host cell genes are a common finding in tissues containing high levels of HIV DNA and macrophage-associated p24 antigen expression. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2003; **33**: 308-320 [PMID: 12843741 DOI: 10.1097/00126334-200307010-00004]

207 **Sloan RD**, Wainberg MA. The role of unintegrated DNA in HIV infection. *Retrovirology* 2011; **8**: 52 [PMID: 21722380 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4690-8-52]

208 **Westerhout EM**, ter Brake O, Berkhout B. The virion-associated incoming HIV-1 RNA genome is not targeted by RNA interference. *Retrovirology* 2006; **3**: 57 [PMID: 16948865 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4690-3-57]

209 **Hütter G**, Nowak D, Mossner M, Ganepola S, Müssig A, Allers K, Schneider T, Hofmann J, Kücherer C, Blau O, Blau IW, Hofmann WK, Thiel E. Long-term control of HIV by CCR5 Delta32/Delta32 stem-cell transplantation. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 692-698 [PMID: 19213682 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0802905]

210 **Carrington M**, Dean M, Martin MP, O'Brien SJ. Genetics of HIV-1 infection: chemokine receptor CCR5 polymorphism and its consequences. *Hum Mol Genet* 1999; **8**: 1939-1945 [PMID: 10469847 DOI: 10.1093/hmg/8.10.1939]

211 **Allers K**, Hütter G, Hofmann J, Loddenkemper C, Rieger K, Thiel E, Schneider T. Evidence for the cure of HIV infection by CCR5Δ32/Δ32 stem cell transplantation. *Blood* 2011; **117**: 2791-2799 [PMID: 21148083 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2010-09-309591]

212 **Naif HM**. Pathogenesis of HIV Infection. *Infect Dis Rep* 2013; **5**: e6 [PMID: 24470970 DOI: 10.4081/idr.2013.s1.e6]

213 **Ferrer P**, Tello M, Montecinos L, Tordecilla R, Rodríguez C, Beltrán C, Guzmán MA, Ferrés M, Pérez CM, Afani A. Prevalence of R5 and X4 HIV variants in antiretroviral treatment experienced patients with virologic failure. *J Clin Virol* 2014; **60**: 290-294 [PMID: 24793966 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2014.04.004]

214 **Lim JK**, Murphy PM. Chemokine control of West Nile virus infection. *Exp Cell Res* 2011; **317**: 569-574 [PMID: 21376172 DOI: 10.1016/j.yexcr.2011.01.009]

215 **Sanchooli J**, Sanadgol N, Kazemi Arababadi M, Kennedy D. CCR5 plays important roles in hepatitis B infection. *Viral Immunol* 2014; **27**: 2-6 [PMID: 24405101 DOI: 10.1089/vim.2013.0067]

216 **Ghorban K**, Dadmanesh M, Hassanshahi G, Momeni M, Zare-Bidaki M, Arababadi MK, Kennedy D. Is the CCR5 Δ 32 mutation associated with immune system-related diseases? *Inflammation* 2013; **36**: 633-642 [PMID: 23250822 DOI: 10.1007/s10753-012-9585-8]

217 **Burke BP**, Boyd MP, Impey H, Breton LR, Bartlett JS, Symonds GP, Hütter G. CCR5 as a natural and modulated target for inhibition of HIV. *Viruses* 2014; **6**: 54-68 [PMID: 24381033 DOI: 10.3390/v6010054]

218 **Walker JE**, Chen RX, McGee J, Nacey C, Pollard RB, Abedi M,

Bauer G, Nolta JA, Anderson JS. Generation of an HIV-1-resistant immune system with CD34(+) hematopoietic stem cells transduced with a triple-combination anti-HIV lentiviral vector. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 5719-5729 [PMID: 22398281 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.06300-11]

219 **Li MJ**, Kim J, Li S, Zaia J, Yee JK, Anderson J, Akkina R, Rossi JJ. Long-term inhibition of HIV-1 infection in primary hematopoietic cells by lentiviral vector delivery of a triple combination of anti-HIV shRNA, anti-CCR5 ribozyme, and a nucleolar-localizing TAR decoy. *Mol Ther* 2005; **12**: 900-909 [PMID: 16115802 DOI: 10.1016/j.ymthe.2005.07.524]

220 **DiGiusto DL**, Krishnan A, Li L, Li H, Li S, Rao A, Mi S, Yam P, Stinson S, Kalos M, Alvarnas J, Lacey SF, Yee JK, Li M, Couture L, Hsu D, Forman SJ, Rossi JJ, Zaia JA. RNA-based gene therapy for HIV with lentiviral vector-modified CD34(+) cells in patients undergoing transplantation for AIDS-related lymphoma. *Sci Transl Med* 2010; **2**: 36ra43 [PMID: 20555022 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3000931]

221 **Tebas P**, Stein D, Tang WW, Frank I, Wang SQ, Lee G, Spratt SK, Surosky RT, Giedlin MA, Nichol G, Holmes MC, Gregory PD, Ando DG, Kalos M, Collman RG, Binder-Scholl G, Plesa G, Hwang WT, Levine BL, June CH. Gene editing of CCR5 in autologous CD4 T cells of persons infected with HIV. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 901-910 [PMID: 24597865 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1300662]

222 **Li L**, Krymskaya L, Wang J, Henley J, Rao A, Cao LF, Tran CA, Torres-Coronado M, Gardner A, Gonzalez N, Kim K, Liu PQ, Hofer U, Lopez E, Gregory PD, Liu Q, Holmes MC, Cannon PM, Zaia JA, DiGiusto DL. Genomic editing of the HIV-1 coreceptor CCR5 in adult hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells using zinc finger nucleases. *Mol Ther* 2013; **21**: 1259-1269 [PMID: 23587921 DOI: 10.1038/mt.2013.65]

223 **Ye L**, Wang J, Beyer AI, Teque F, Cradick TJ, Qi Z, Chang JC, Bao G, Muench MO, Yu J, Levy JA, Kan YW. Seamless modification of wild-type induced pluripotent stem cells to the natural CCR5Δ32 mutation confers resistance to HIV infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2014; **111**: 9591-9596 [PMID: 24927590 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1407473111]

224 **Hu W**, Kaminski R, Yang F, Zhang Y, Cosentino L, Li F, Luo B, Alvarez-Carbonell D, Garcia-Mesa Y, Karn J, Mo X, Khalili K. RNA-directed gene editing specifically eradicates latent and prevents new HIV-1 infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2014; **111**: 11461-11466 [PMID: 25049410 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1405186111]

225 **Wayengera M**. Proviral HIV-genome-wide and pol-gene specific zinc finger nucleases: usability for targeted HIV gene therapy. *Theor Biol Med Model* 2011; **8**: 26 [PMID: 21781315 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4682-8-26]

226 **Morrison SJ**, Kimble J. Asymmetric and symmetric stem-cell divisions in development and cancer. *Nature* 2006; **441**: 1068-1074 [PMID: 16810241 DOI: 10.1038/nature04956]

227 **Bazrgar M**, Gourabi H, Valojerdi MR, Yazdi PE, Baharvand H. Self-correction of chromosomal abnormalities in human preimplantation embryos and embryonic stem cells. *Stem Cells Dev* 2013; **22**: 2449-2456 [PMID: 23557100 DOI: 10.1089/scd.2013.0053]

228 **Guillemette B**, Drogaris P, Lin HH, Armstrong H, Hiragami-Hamada K, Imhof A, Bonneil E, Thibault P, Verreault A, Festenstein RJ. H3 lysine 4 is acetylated at active gene promoters and is regulated by H3 lysine 4 methylation. *PLoS Genet* 2011; **7**: e1001354 [PMID: 21483810 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pgen.1001354]

229 **Tang Z**, Chen WY, Shimada M, Nguyen UT, Kim J, Sun XJ, Sengoku T, McGinty RK, Fernandez JP, Muir TW, Roeder RG. SET1 and p300 act synergistically, through coupled histone modifications, in transcriptional activation by p53. *Cell* 2013; **154**: 297-310 [PMID: 23870121 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2013.06.027]

230 **Keating ST**, El-Osta A. Transcriptional regulation by the Set7 lysine methyltransferase. *Epigenetics* 2013; **8**: 361-372 [PMID: 23478572 DOI: 10.4161/epi.24234]

231 **Ali M**, Hom RA, Blakeslee W, Ikenouye L, Kutateladze TG. Diverse functions of PHD fingers of the MLL/KMT2 subfamily. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2014; **1843**: 366-371 [PMID: 24291127 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbamcr.2013.11.016]

232 **Abu-Farha M**, Lambert JP, Al-Madhoun AS, Elisma F, Skerjanc IS, Figeys D. The tale of two domains: proteomics and genomics analysis of SMYD2, a new histone methyltransferase. *Mol Cell Proteomics* 2008; **7**: 560-572 [PMID: 18065756 DOI: 10.1074/mcp.M700271-MCP200]

233 **Shi Y**, Lan F, Matson C, Mulligan P, Whetstine JR, Cole PA, Casero RA, Shi Y. Histone demethylation mediated by the nuclear amine oxidase homolog LSD1. *Cell* 2004; **119**: 941-953 [PMID: 15620353 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2004.12.012]

234 **Rasmussen PB**, Staller P. The KDM5 family of histone demethylases as targets in oncology drug discovery. *Epigenomics* 2014; **6**: 277-286 [PMID: 25111482 DOI: 10.2217/epi.14.14]

235 **Persson J**, Ekwall K. Chd1 remodelers maintain open chromatin and regulate the epigenetics of differentiation. *Exp Cell Res* 2010; **316**: 1316-1323 [PMID: 20211173 DOI: 10.1016/j.yexcr.2010.02.029]

236 **Jones JM**, Simkus C. The roles of the RAG1 and RAG2 "non-core" regions in V(D)J recombination and lymphocyte development. *Arch Immunol Ther Exp* (Warsz) 2009; **57**: 105-116 [PMID: 19333736 DOI: 10.1007/s00005-009-0011-3]

237 **Lauberth SM**, Nakayama T, Wu X, Ferris AL, Tang Z, Hughes SH, Roeder RG. H3K4me3 interactions with TAF3 regulate preinitiation complex assembly and selective gene activation. *Cell* 2013; **152**: 1021-1036 [PMID: 23452851 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2013.01.052]

238 **Li H**, Ilin S, Wang W, Duncan EM, Wysocka J, Allis CD, Patel DJ. Molecular basis for site-specific read-out of histone H3K4me3 by the BPTF PHD finger of NURF. *Nature* 2006; **442**: 91-95 [PMID: 16728978 DOI: 10.1038/nature04802]

239 **Lan F**, Collins RE, De Cegli R, Alpatov R, Horton JR, Shi X, Gozani O, Cheng X, Shi Y. Recognition of unmethylated histone H3 lysine 4 links BHC80 to LSD1-mediated gene repression. *Nature* 2007; **448**: 718-722 [PMID: 17687328 DOI: 10.1038/nature06034]

240 **Tallen G**, Riabowol K. Keep-ING balance: tumor suppression by epigenetic regulation. *FEBS Lett* 2014; **588**: 2728-2742 [PMID: 24632289 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2014.03.011]

241 **Gu B**, Sun P, Yuan Y, Moraes RC, Li A, Teng A, Agrawal A, Rhéaume C, Bilanchone V, Veltmaat JM, Takemaru K, Millar S, Lee EY, Lewis MT, Li B, Dai X. Pygo2 expands mammary progenitor cells by facilitating histone H3 K4 methylation. *J Cell Biol* 2009; **185**: 811-826 [PMID: 19487454 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.200810133]

242 **Gu B**, Lee MG. Histone H3 lysine 4 methyltransferases and demethylases in self-renewal and differentiation of stem cells. *Cell Biosci* 2013; **3**: 39 [PMID: 24172249 DOI: 10.1186/2045-3701-3-39]

243 **Metzger E**, Imhof A, Patel D, Kahl P, Hoffmeyer K, Friedrichs N, Müller JM, Greschik H, Kirfel J, Ji S, Kunowska N, Beisenherz-Huss C, Günther T, Buettner R, Schüle R. Phosphorylation of histone H3T6 by PKCbeta(I) controls demethylation at histone H3K4. *Nature* 2010; **464**: 792-796 [PMID: 20228790 DOI: 10.1038/nature08839]

244 **Jin Q**, Yu LR, Wang L, Zhang Z, Kasper LH, Lee JE, Wang C, Brindle PK, Dent SY, Ge K. Distinct roles of GCN5/PCAF-mediated H3K9ac and CBP/p300-mediated H3K18/27ac in nuclear receptor transactivation. *EMBO J* 2011; **30**: 249-262 [PMID: 21131905 DOI: 10.1038/emboj.2010.318]

245 **Michishita E**, McCord RA, Berber E, Kioi M, Padilla-Nash H, Damian M, Cheung P, Kusumoto R, Kawahara TL, Barrett JC, Chang HY, Bohr VA, Ried T, Gozani O, Chua KF. SIRT6 is a histone H3 lysine 9 deacetylase that modulates telomeric chromatin. *Nature* 2008; **452**: 492-496 [PMID: 18337721 DOI: 10.1038/nature06736]

246 **Kanno T**, Kanno Y, LeRoy G, Campos E, Sun HW, Brooks SR, Vahedi G, Heightman TD, Garcia BA, Reinberg D, Siebenlist U, O'Shea JJ, Ozato K. BRD4 assists elongation of both coding and enhancer RNAs by interacting with acetylated histones. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2014; **21**: 1047-1057 [PMID: 25383670 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb.2912]

247 **Krishnan S**, Horowitz S, Trievel RC. Structure and function of histone H3 lysine 9 methyltransferases and demethylases. *Chembiochem* 2011; **12**: 254-263 [PMID: 21243713 DOI: 10.1002/cbic.201000545]

248 **Mozzetta C**, Pontis J, Fritsch L, Robin P, Portoso M, Proux C, Margueron R, Ait-Si-Ali S. The histone H3 lysine 9 methyltrans-

ferases G9a and GLP regulate polycomb repressive complex 2-mediated gene silencing. *Mol Cell* 2014; **53**: 277-289 [PMID: 24389103 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2013.12.005]

249 **Matsui T**, Leung D, Miyashita H, Maksakova IA, Miyachi H, Kimura H, Tachibana M, Lorincz MC, Shinkai Y. Proviral silencing in embryonic stem cells requires the histone methyltransferase ESET. *Nature* 2010; **464**: 927-931 [PMID: 20164836 DOI: 10.1038/nature08858]

250 **Loh YH**, Zhang W, Chen X, George J, Ng HH. Jmjd1a and Jmjd2c histone H3 Lys 9 demethylases regulate self-renewal in embryonic stem cells. *Genes Dev* 2007; **21**: 2545-2557 [PMID: 17938240 DOI: 10.1101/gad.1588207]

251 **Brauchle M**, Yao Z, Arora R, Thigale S, Clay I, Inverardi B, Fletcher J, Taslimi P, Acker MG, Gerrits B, Voshol J, Bauer A, Schübeler D, Bouwmeester T, Ruffner H. Protein complex interactor analysis and differential activity of KDM3 subfamily members towards H3K9 methylation. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e60549 [PMID: 23593242 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0060549]

252 **Whetstine JR**, Nottke A, Lan F, Huarte M, Smolikov S, Chen Z, Spooner E, Li E, Zhang G, Colaiacovo M, Shi Y. Reversal of histone lysine trimethylation by the JMJD2 family of histone demethyla ses. *Cell* 2006; **125**: 467-481 [PMID: 16603238 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2006.03.028]

253 **Nishibuchi G**, Machida S, Osakabe A, Murakoshi H, Hiragami-Hamada K, Nakagawa R, Fischle W, Nishimura Y, Kurumizaka H, Tagami H, Nakayama J. N-terminal phosphorylation of HP1α increases its nucleosome-binding specificity. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2014; **42**: 12498-12511 [PMID: 25332400 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gku995]

254 **Bua DJ**, Kuo AJ, Cheung P, Liu CL, Migliori V, Espejo A, Casadio F, Bassi C, Amati B, Bedford MT, Guccione E, Gozani O. Epigenome microarray platform for proteome-wide dissection of chromatin-signaling networks. *PLoS One* 2009; **4**: e6789 [PMID: 19956676 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0006789]

255 **Kokura K**, Sun L, Bedford MT, Fang J. Methyl-H3K9-binding protein MPP8 mediates E-cadherin gene silencing and promotes tumour cell motility and invasion. *EMBO J* 2010; **29**: 3673-3687 [PMID: 20871592 DOI: 10.1038/emboj.2010.239]

256 **Zhang J**, Gao Q, Li P, Liu X, Jia Y, Wu W, Li J, Dong S, Koseki H, Wong J. S phase-dependent interaction with DNMT1 dictates the role of UHRF1 but not UHRF2 in DNA methylation maintenance. *Cell Res* 2011; **21**: 1723-1739 [PMID: 22064703 DOI: 10.1038/cr.2011.176]

257 **Fischle W**, Franz H, Jacobs SA, Allis CD, Khorasanizadeh S. Specificity of the chromodomain Y chromosome family of chromodomains for lysine-methylated ARK(S/T) motifs. *J Biol Chem* 2008; **283**: 19626-19635 [PMID: 18450745 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M802655200]

258 **Margueron R**, Li G, Sarma K, Blais A, Zavadil J, Woodcock CL, Dynlacht BD, Reinberg D. Ezh1 and Ezh2 maintain repressive chromatin through different mechanisms. *Mol Cell* 2008; **32**: 503-518 [PMID: 19026781 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2008.11.004]

259 **Hong S**, Cho YW, Yu LR, Yu H, Veenstra TD, Ge K. Identification of JmjC domain-containing UTX and JMJD3 as histone H3 lysine 27 demethylases. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 18439-18444 [PMID: 18003914 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0707292104]

260 **Margueron R**, Justin N, Ohno K, Sharpe ML, Son J, Drury WJ, Voigt P, Martin SR, Taylor WR, De Marco V, Pirrotta V, Reinberg D, Gamblin SJ. Role of the polycomb protein EED in the propagation of repressive histone marks. *Nature* 2009; **461**: 762-767 [PMID: 19767730 DOI: 10.1038/nature08398]

261 **Son J**, Shen SS, Margueron R, Reinberg D. Nucleosome-binding activities within JARID2 and EZH1 regulate the function of PRC2 on chromatin. *Genes Dev* 2013; **27**: 2663-2677 [PMID: 24352422 DOI: 10.1101/gad.225888.113]

262 **Wagner EJ**, Carpenter PB. Understanding the language of Lys36 methylation at histone H3. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2012; **13**: 115-126 [PMID: 22266761 DOI: 10.1038/nrm3274]

263 **Yuan G**, Ma B, Yuan W, Zhang Z, Chen P, Ding X, Feng L, Shen X, Chen S, Li G, Zhu B. Histone H2A ubiquitination inhibits the enzymatic activity of H3 lysine 36 methyltransferases. *J Biol Chem* 2013; **288**: 30832-30842 [PMID: 24019522 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M113.475996]

264 **Zhu X**, He F, Zeng H, Ling S, Chen A, Wang Y, Yan X, Wei W, Pang Y, Cheng H, Hua C, Zhang Y, Yang X, Lu X, Cao L, Hao L, Dong L, Zou W, Wu J, Li X, Zheng S, Yan J, Zhou J, Zhang L, Mi S, Wang X, Zhang L, Zou Y, Chen Y, Geng Z, Wang J, Zhou J, Liu X, Wang J, Yuan W, Huang G, Cheng T, Wang QF. Identification of functional cooperative mutations of SETD2 in human acute leukemia. *Nat Genet* 2014; **46**: 287-293 [PMID: 24509477 DOI: 10.1038/ng.2894]

265 **Martinez-Garcia E**, Popovic R, Min DJ, Sweet SM, Thomas PM, Zamdborg L, Heffner A, Will C, Lamy L, Staudt LM, Levens DL, Kelleher NL, Licht JD. The MMSET histone methyl transferase switches global histone methylation and alters gene expression in t(4; 14) multiple myeloma cells. *Blood* 2011; **117**: 211-220 [PMID: 20974671 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2010-07-298349]

266 **Yuan W**, Xu M, Huang C, Liu N, Chen S, Zhu B. H3K36 methylation antagonizes PRC2-mediated H3K27 methylation. *J Biol Chem* 2011; **286**: 7983-7989 [PMID: 21239496 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M110.194027]

267 **Tsukada Y**, Fang J, Erdjument-Bromage H, Warren ME, Borchers CH, Tempst P, Zhang Y. Histone demethylation by a family of JmjC domain-containing proteins. *Nature* 2006; **439**: 811-816 [PMID: 16362057 DOI: 10.1038/nature04433]

268 **He J**, Kallin EM, Tsukada Y, Zhang Y. The H3K36 demethylase Jhdm1b/Kdm2b regulates cell proliferation and senescence through p15(Ink4b). *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2008; **15**: 1169-1175 [PMID: 18836456 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb.1499]

269 **Maltby VE**, Martin BJ, Schulze JM, Johnson I, Hentrich T, Sharma A, Kobor MS, Howe L. Histone H3 lysine 36 methylation targets the Isw1b remodeling complex to chromatin. *Mol Cell Biol* 2012; **32**: 3479-3485 [PMID: 22751925 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.00389-12]

270 **Beck DB**, Oda H, Shen SS, Reinberg D. PR-Set7 and H4K20me1: at the crossroads of genome integrity, cell cycle, chromosome condensation, and transcription. *Genes Dev* 2012; **26**: 325-337 [PMID: 22345514 DOI: 10.1101/gad.177444.111]

271 **Liu W**, Tanasa B, Tyurina OV, Zhou TY, Gassmann R, Liu WT, Ohgi KA, Benner C, Garcia-Bassets I, Aggarwal AK, Desai A, Dorrestein PC, Glass CK, Rosenfeld MG. PHF8 mediates histone H4 lysine 20 demethylation events involved in cell cycle progression. *Nature* 2010; **466**: 508-512 [PMID: 20622854 DOI: 10.1038/nature09272]

272 **Kalakonda N**, Fischle W, Boccuni P, Gurvich N, Hoya-Arias R, Zhao X, Miyata Y, Macgrogan D, Zhang J, Sims JK, Rice JC, Nimer SD. Histone H4 lysine 20 monomethylation promotes transcriptional repression by L3MBTL1. *Oncogene* 2008; **27**: 4293-4304 [PMID: 18408754 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2008.67]

273 **Jørgensen S**, Schotta G, Sørensen CS. Histone H4 lysine 20 methylation: key player in epigenetic regulation of genomic integrity. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2013; **41**: 2797-2806 [PMID: 23345616 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkt012]

274 **Tsang LW**, Hu N, Underhill DA. Comparative analyses of SUV420H1 isoforms and SUV420H2 reveal differences in their cellular localization and effects on myogenic differentiation. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e14447 [PMID: 21206904 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0014447]

275 **Stender JD**, Pascual G, Liu W, Kaikkonen MU, Do K, Spann NJ, Boutros M, Perrimon N, Rosenfeld MG, Glass CK. Control of proinflammatory gene programs by regulated trimethylation and demethylation of histone H4K20. *Mol Cell* 2012; **48**: 28-38 [PMID: 22921934 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2012.07.020]

276 **Adams-Cioaba MA**, Li Z, Tempel W, Guo Y, Bian C, Li Y, Lam R, Min J. Crystal structures of the Tudor domains of human PHF20 reveal novel structural variations on the Royal Family of proteins. *FEBS Lett* 2012; **586**: 859-865 [PMID: 22449972 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2012.02.012]

277 **Min J**, Allali-Hassani A, Nady N, Qi C, Ouyang H, Liu Y, MacKenzie F, Vedadi M, Arrowsmith CH. L3MBTL1 recognition of mono- and dimethylated histones. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2007; **14**: 1229-1230 [PMID: 18026117 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb1340]

278 **Verdin E**, Paras P, Van Lint C. Chromatin disruption in the promoter of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 during transcriptional

activation. *EMBO J* 1993; **12**: 3249-3259 [PMID: 8344262]
279 **Rohr O**, Aunis D, Schaeffer E. COUP-TF and Sp1 interact and cooperate in the transcriptional activation of the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 long terminal repeat in human microglial cells. *J Biol Chem* 1997; **272**: 31149-31155 [PMID: 9388268 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.272.49.31149]
280 **Jiang G**, Espeseth A, Hazuda DJ, Margolis DM. c-Myc and Sp1 contribute to proviral latency by recruiting histone deacetylase 1 to the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 promoter. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 10914-10923 [PMID: 17670825 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01208-07]
281 **Bernhard W**, Barreto K, Raithatha S, Sadowski I. An upstream YY1 binding site on the HIV-1 LTR contributes to latent infection. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e77052 [PMID: 24116200 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0077052]
282 **Li C**, Lai CF, Sigman DS, Gaynor RB. Cloning of a cellular factor, interleukin binding factor, that binds to NFAT-like motifs in the human immunodeficiency virus long terminal repeat. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1991; **88**: 7739-7743 [PMID: 1909027 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.88.17.7739]
283 **Mitra D**, Sikder SK, Laurence J. Role of glucocorticoid receptor binding sites in the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 long terminal repeat in steroid-mediated suppression of HIV gene expression. *Virology* 1995; **214**: 512-521 [PMID: 8553553 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1995.0062]
284 **Kino T**, Kopp JB, Chrousos GP. Glucocorticoids suppress human immunodeficiency virus type-1 long terminal repeat activity in a cell type-specific, glucocorticoid receptor-mediated fashion: direct protective effects at variance with clinical phenomenology. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol* 2000; **75**: 283-290 [PMID: 11282284 DOI: 10.1016/s0960-0760(00)00187-4]
285 **Hanley TM**, Viglianti GA. Nuclear receptor signaling inhibits HIV-1 replication in macrophages through multiple trans-repression mechanisms. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 10834-10850 [PMID: 21849441 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00789-11]
286 **Duverger A**, Wolschendorf F, Zhang M, Wagner F, Hatcher B, Jones J, Cron RQ, van der Sluis RM, Jeeninga RE, Berkhout B, Kutsch O. An AP-1 binding site in the enhancer/core element of the HIV-1 promoter controls the ability of HIV-1 to establish latent infection. *J Virol* 2013; **87**: 2264-2277 [PMID: 23236059 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01594-12]
287 **Malcolm T**, Chen J, Chang C, Sadowski I. Induction of chromosomally integrated HIV-1 LTR requires RBF-2 (USF/TFII-I) and Ras/MAPK signaling. *Virus Genes* 2007; **35**: 215-223 [PMID: 17546494 DOI: 10.1007/s11262-007-0109-9]
288 **Dahabieh MS**, Ooms M, Malcolm T, Simon V, Sadowski I. Identification and functional analysis of a second RBF-2 binding site within the HIV-1 promoter. *Virology* 2011; **418**: 57-66 [PMID: 21813151 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2011.07.002]
289 **Williams SA**, Chen LF, Kwon H, Ruiz-Jarabo CM, Verdin E, Greene WC. NF-kappaB p50 promotes HIV latency through HDAC recruitment and repression of transcriptional initiation. *EMBO J* 2006; **25**: 139-149 [PMID: 16319923 DOI: 10.1038/sj.emboj.7600900]
290 **Williams SA**, Kwon H, Chen LF, Greene WC. Sustained induction of NF-kappa B is required for efficient expression of latent human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 6043-6056 [PMID: 17376917 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02074-06]
291 **Romanchikova N**, Ivanova V, Scheller C, Jankevics E, Jassoy C, Serfling E. NFAT transcription factors control HIV-1 expression through a binding site downstream of TAR region. *Immunobiology* 2003; **208**: 361-365 [PMID: 14748509 DOI: 10.1078/0171-2985-00283]
292 **Marban C**, Redel L, Suzanne S, Van Lint C, Lecestre D, Chasserot-Golaz S, Leid M, Aunis D, Schaeffer E, Rohr O. COUP-TF interacting protein 2 represses the initial phase of HIV-1 gene transcription in human microglial cells. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2005; **33**: 2318-2331 [PMID: 15849318 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gki529]
293 **Rohr O**, Lecestre D, Chasserot-Golaz S, Marban C, Avram D, Aunis D, Leid M, Schaeffer E. Recruitment of Tat to heterochromatin protein HP1 via interaction with CTIP2 inhibits human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication in microglial cells. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 5415-5427 [PMID: 12692243 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.77.9.5415-5427.2003]
294 **Malcolm T**, Kam J, Pour PS, Sadowski I. Specific interaction of TFII-I with an upstream element on the HIV-1 LTR regulates induction of latent provirus. *FEBS Lett* 2008; **582**: 3903-3908 [PMID: 18976654 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2008.10.032]
295 **Imai K**, Okamoto T. Transcriptional repression of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 by AP-4. *J Biol Chem* 2006; **281**: 12495-12505 [PMID: 16540471 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M511773200]
296 **Ou SH**, Garcia-Martínez LF, Paulssen EJ, Gaynor RB. Role of flanking E box motifs in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 TATA element function. *J Virol* 1994; **68**: 7188-7199 [PMID: 7933101]
297 **He G**, Margolis DM. Counterregulation of chromatin deacetylation and histone deacetylase occupancy at the integrated promoter of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) by the HIV-1 repressor YY1 and HIV-1 activator Tat. *Mol Cell Biol* 2002; **22**: 2965-2973 [PMID: 11940654 DOI: 10.1128/mcb.22.9.2965-2973.2002]
298 **Coull JJ**, Romerio F, Sun JM, Volker JL, Galvin KM, Davie JR, Shi Y, Hansen U, Margolis DM. The human factors YY1 and LSF repress the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 long terminal repeat via recruitment of histone deacetylase 1. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 6790-6799 [PMID: 10888618 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.74.15.6790-6799.2000]

P- Reviewer: Arriagada GL, Zou C **S- Editor**: Tian YL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.245

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 245-254
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Women's willingness to be tested for human immunodeficiency virus during pregnancy: A review

Merav Ben-Natan, Yelena Hazanov

Merav Ben-Natan, Yelena Hazanov, Pat Matthews School of Nursing, Hillel Yaffe Medical Center, Hadera 38100, Israel

Merav Ben-Natan, Department of Nursing, School of Health Professions, Tel Aviv University Hillel Yaffe Medical Center, Hadera 38100, Israel

Author contributions: Ben-Natan M and Hazanov Y contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No conflicts of interest.

Correspondence to: Merav Ben-Natan, PhD, Pat Matthews School of Nursing, Hillel Yaffe Medical Center, Hadera, P.O.B. 169, Hadera 38100, Israel. meraav@hy.health.gov.il
Telephone: +972-4-6304367
Fax: +972-4-6304730

Received: December 30, 2014
Peer-review started: January 2, 2015
First decision: March 6, 2015
Revised: May 28, 2015
Accepted: July 21, 2015
Article in press: July 23, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

Mother-to-child-transmission of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is a primary cause of pediatric infections with HIV. Many of these infections involve women who were not tested early enough in pregnancy, or who did not receive prevention services. HIV testing of pregnant women is considered to be one of the key strategies for preventing mother-to-child-transmission of HIV, but HIV testing rates among pregnant women in various countries remain suboptimal. Understanding the factors relating to women's willingness to be tested for HIV during pregnancy is critical for developing strategies to increase HIV testing rates among pregnant women. Extensive research points to various factors relating to women's willingness to be tested for HIV during pregnancy, and various recommendations aimed at improving testing rates among pregnant women have been suggested based on the research. In light of the goals set by the United Nations to reduce the rate of infants infected with HIV, it is necessary to summarize what is currently known regarding factors related to women's willingness to be tested for HIV during pregnancy. The purpose of this review is therefore to examine factors related to women's willingness to be tested for HIV during pregnancy, and to summarize recommendations for practice and further research.

Key words: Female; Human immunodeficiency virus infection; Pregnancy; Testing/screening; Patient acceptance of health care; Research

Core tip: The willingness of women to be tested for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) during pregnancy is a complex phenomenon. There is frequent inconsistence in research results; however, studies have shown that certain major factors are steadily identified over time as associated with the phenomenon. Numerous factors related to pregnant women's willingness to be tested suggest multiple possible interventions to maximize HIV testing efficiency and increase testing rates. There is a need in further research of the phenomenon, as the majority of the research literature focuses on sub-Saharan Africa.

Ben-Natan M, Hazanov Y. Women's willingness to be tested for human immunodeficiency virus during pregnancy: A review. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 245-254 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/245.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.245

INTRODUCTION

In 2012, there were more than 210000 new cases of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) in children. This figure is in addition to the existing 3.4 million children already living with the virus worldwide[1]. More than 90% of these infections were the result of Mother-To-Child Transmission (MTCT). Many new MTCT cases of HIV occurred in women who did not receive testing for HIV early in their pregnancy, or who did not have access to preventative prenatal care [2].

Over 90% of MTCT of HIV occurs in sub-Saharan Africa, where women in their reproductive years represent 50% of the HIV-infected population[3]. MTCT of HIV is not limited to low-income countries: according to one source, each year in the United States there are between 100 to 200 new cases[2].

HIV testing of pregnant women has been advocated by UNAIDS as one of the key strategies for preventing MTCT[4]. In 2004, the World Health Organization (WHO) and UNAIDS issued recommendations for routine HIV testing of pregnant women in resource-limited countries[5]. At present, routine prenatal HIV testing is considered to be standard care in the United States and other developed nations. Nearly half of African countries have also adopted routine prenatal HIV testing policies, with 42.7% of them adopting these policies in 2006[6]. Despite these positive developments, HIV testing rates of pregnant women in many countries remain suboptimal[7].

Testing for HIV is voluntary and dependent on the willingness of women to receive testing. Understanding factors related to women's willingness to receive HIV testing during pregnancy is critical to developing strategies to increase HIV testing rates for pregnant women. Extensive research elucidates various factors as being related to women's willingness to be tested for HIV during pregnancy. Considering the goals set by the United Nations to reduce the rate of infants infected with HIV[8,9], the purpose of this review is to summarize the current research on factors related to the willingness of women to receive testing during pregnancy, and to formulate recommendations for practice and further research. Moreover, this review summarizes the advantages of testing for HIV during pregnancy, and provides recent statistics of testing rates for HIV during pregnancy in various countries.

ADVANTAGES OF TESTING FOR HIV DURING PREGNANCY

Testing for HIV detects HIV infections that would otherwise be missed. Timely HIV detection provides opportunity for interventions to alter the course of disease and prolong life[10]. Testing for HIV during pregnancy has additional advantages. First, results of a systematic review and meta-analysis showed a high incidence of HIV infection in pregnant and postpartum women in African countries as compared to non-African countries (cumulative HIV incidence being 3.6% and 0.3%, respectively), thus making testing during pregnancy especially important[11]; Second, most women in countries with low- to mid-level incomes will visit prenatal health clinics at least once during the course of their pregnancies[12], making the prenatal visit a valuable opportunity to test women for HIV[13].

Without appropriate health care management of HIV positive pregnant women, there is a high risk of MTCT. The risk of HIV MTCT in low- and mid-income countries is 15% to 40%. Of these, 5%-10% of MTCT will occur during the pregnancy itself, another 10%-20% of MCTC will occur during labor and delivery, and breastfeeding will account for 5%-20% of MTCT cases. Proper therapy for HIV in pregnancy is crucial to prevent MTCT[14]. The most important advantage of testing women for HIV during pregnancy is that timely identification of a pregnant woman infected with HIV allows planning and initiation of care, which may significantly lower the risks of MTCT of HIV, and, consequently, lead to healthier populations[15].

In high-income countries, MTCT rates have decreased dramatically following the introduction of recommendations for routine HIV testing for all pregnant women[16-18]. Programs promoting Prevention of Mother-To-Child Transmission (PMTCT) of HIV, including routine testing for HIV, have also led to a substantial decrease in MTCT rates in Sub-Saharan Africa, by around 50% since 2009[9].

Identification of the HIV-status of a pregnant woman allows establishment of three interventions for PMTCT of HIV: (1) administration of antiretroviral prophylaxis to mothers during pregnancy and delivery, and to newborn infants following delivery; (2) delivery of infants by scheduled cesarean section; and (3) avoidance of breastfeeding in favor of appropriate replacement feeding[15]. These interventions have been shown to be both effective and cost-effective in lowering MTCT of HIV[19-21]. Maternal treatment with antiretroviral therapy reduces cases of MTCT of HIV to < 2% of deliveries by women with HIV. The appropriate (scheduled cesarean) mode of delivery[22] and avoidance of breastfeeding[23,24] have also been shown to support reduction of MTCT of HIV. At present, delivery by scheduled cesarean section is recommended for women with a viral load of over 1000 copies/mL. PMTCT programs can lower MTCT rates to about 5% even in low-income countries with limited availability of combination antiretroviral regimens, and those without the ability to provide delivery by cesarean section and replacement feeding. However, this is dependent on women being tested for HIV during pregnancy as well as their enrolling in and completing a PMTCT program[25].

Early identification of HIV infected pregnant women enables health care providers to test infants for HIV infection following delivery, as well as for the early administration of prophylaxis to protect HIV-infected infants and those whose HIV status remains unknown from opportunistic infections. It also allows an opportunity for counseling women on the risks of infant infection *via* breastfeeding and proper initiation of appropriate replacement feeding[15,26].

Testing early in the pregnancy has several advantages over testing in late stages of pregnancy. Testing and identification of HIV status during pregnancy allows health care providers to use the three known effective interventions for prevention of MTCT of HIV (maternal antiretroviral treatment during pregnancy and delivery and postpartum infant prophylaxis; delivery by scheduled cesarean section; and avoidance of breastfeeding)[15].

When HIV infection is not detected during pregnancy, it is not possible to administer antiretroviral treatment during the course of the pregnancy itself. In such cases, the only remaining strategy for health care providers is to administer antiretroviral therapy during delivery and to the infant immediately following birth, and to instruct the mother to avoid breastfeeding and to begin replacement feeding. However, it is known that antiretroviral prophylaxis is more effective in preventing MCTC when begun during pregnancy[15]. In a study by Wade *et al*[27], maternal prophylaxis treatment during delivery with intravenous zidovudine, together with a six-week course of zidovudine administered to the newborn following delivery reduced the rate of MCTC by 60%.

HIV TESTING RATES AMONG PREGNANT WOMEN

Worldwide efforts to increase testing rates for HIV among pregnant women, such as implementation of routine HIV testing of all pregnant women, have led to a general increase in testing rates in various countries[7]. However, reported testing rates remain suboptimal. It is not always clear whether suboptimal testing rates are due to pregnant women's refusal to be tested or due to the fact that they have not been offered or have not had access to testing services.

The CDC reported that the percentage of pregnant women tested for HIV in the Unites States remained stable overall during the time period from 2000 to 2010, at around 50%-60%. The percentage of pregnant women tested remained stable among non-Hispanic whites, non-Hispanic blacks, and all age groups, although the rate did increase significantly among Hispanics[28]. Remis *et al*[29] reported a dramatic increase in the percentage of women in Ontario undergoing prenatal HIV testing, from 33% in 1999 to 96% in 2010. It has been suggested that measures undertaken to increase HIV testing, such as sending reminders to health care providers who did not order prenatal HIV testing, at least partially contributed to such success.

According to a report by UNICEF, in 2012 an estimated 40% of pregnant women in low- and middle-income countries received HIV testing, which represented an increase from 30% in 2010 and 8% in 2005[30]. Interestingly, other recently available sources usually point to higher testing rates in several low- and middle-income countries. For example, the Indian Health Service has reported a 22% increase in HIV testing rates over a 4-year period[2]. Another source cited that the national health services in South Africa in 2007/2008 tested 80% of pregnant women for HIV[31]. It has been reported that in Uganda in 2010, 63% of pregnant women were tested for HIV[32].

Several other relatively recent studies of prenatal testing for HIV in low- and middle-income countries also point to higher testing rates. In a study by Kizito *et al*[33], of a total of 20738 women who received prenatal services at Entebbe Hospital in Uganda from May 2002 to January 2006, 62.8% accepted testing for HIV. In contrast, in a study by Chandisarewa *et al*[34], following the initiation of routine HIV testing in urban Zimbabwe, 99.9% were tested for HIV. These results may not have been representative of the total population of pregnant women in these countries[33,34].

Despite the high reported testing rates, as long as HIV testing coverage of pregnant women is not 100%, every pregnant woman with unknown HIV-status potentially endangers the health of her future child and the health of future generations. This is particularly true in countries with high HIV infection rates[33].

FACTORS RELATED TO WOMEN'S WILLINGNESS TO BE TESTED FOR HIV DURING PREGNANCY

The term "HIV testing" is often used to describe both testing and counseling. Several voluntary testing approaches have been applied. In "opt-in testing", health care providers ask patients if they would like to receive HIV testing, while in "opt-out testing" patients are notified that, unless they decline, HIV testing is included in routine prenatal care. The WHO recently proposed a formulation that distinguishes between two types of HIV testing: client-initiated testing and provider-initiated testing. Client-initiated testing corresponds to what is usually referred to as voluntary counseling and testing (VCT) or "opt-in testing", while provider-initiated testing corresponds to "opt-out testing"[35].

Various terminology has been used to describe services of HIV testing ("opt-in testing", "opt-out testing", "client-initiated testing", "VCT", "provider-initiated testing"). The literature also uses varying terminology to describe the target variable: willingness, readiness, HIV test acceptance, HIV test uptake, *etc*. To simplify matters, the original terms from the studies mentioned in this literature review were used.

Studies report varying willingness of women to be tested for HIV during pregnancy. For example, around

50% of respondents expressed willingness to be tested in a Chinese study by Li *et al*[36] and in an Ethiopian study by Moges and Amberbir[37]; in contrast, other studies reported higher willingness to be tested (more than 75% of respondents expressed willingness to be tested)[38-40]. Some African studies demonstrated significant gaps between the willingness of pregnant women to receive HIV testing and their actual testing rates, as in studies from Sudan[41] and Tanzania[42]. Similarly, a South African study showed that pregnant women had a good level of knowledge and understanding about HIV testing in pregnancy, and their perceptions of HIV testing were positive, but they were not consistent with their behavior. That is, the women's positive attitudes towards HIV testing were not reflected in their actual behavior[43]. The difference between women's willingness to receive HIV testing and actual testing rates implies that willingness to be tested for HIV during pregnancy is a complex phenomenon influenced by an interplay of factors[42,44].

Based on the classification used by Deblonde *et al*[45] in their literature review on impediments to HIV testing in Europe, in the present review factors related to the willingness of women to be tested for HIV during pregnancy have been classified as policy-related factors, woman-related factors, and health care provider-related factors.

POLICY RELATED FACTORS

HIV testing rates among pregnant women depend on the prenatal HIV-testing approaches used at a particular location. The CDC reviewed HIV testing rates among pregnant women and found that opt-out testing resulted in higher rates of testing (71%-98%) than the opt-in approach (25%-83%). The opt-out approach has been shown to be more successful in terms of testing rates than the opt-in approach in sub-Saharan Africa[6,34,46-48]. It has been suggested that the opt-out approach destigmatizes the test, which might explain higher testing rates when the opt-out approach is applied[34]. It is also possible that the opt-out approach merely requires less effort on the part of the woman to be tested.

It should be noted that there is no uniformity in testing approaches, as various countries use different testing approaches[44]. Testing approaches may frequently vary within a single country. For example, at present both the opt-in and the opt-out approaches are used in the United States[49]. In addition, there are countries where prenatal HIV testing is still performed only in women who are in risk groups for HIV infection, such as Israel[50], although the Israeli Ministry of Health has recently recommended universal testing for all pregnant women[51].

WOMAN RELATED FACTORS

Based on this literature review, major woman related factors may be summarized as referring to social factors, fear of the HIV test results, knowledge (of HIV/AIDS and MTCT of HIV), perceived susceptibility to HIV, perceived benefits of the test, prior HIV testing, and sociodemographic characteristics (age, marital status, education, and economic factors).

Social factors

A considerable amount of literature on the willingness of women to be tested for HIV during pregnancy has focused on social factors. Women infected with HIV/AIDS often describe stigma as a major factor influencing their health behaviors[52]. Women's fear of receiving stigma and discrimination at the hands of their community, spouses, family, and health care providers have been shown to be major impediments to HIV testing during pregnancy in various countries[36,37,53-58]. Even in settings where prenatal HIV testing is normative, women's expectation that they will experience stigma as a result of HIV testing can impede their willingness to be tested[59]. Conversely, intensive family support[60] and support from significant others[61,62] have been recognized to be facilitating factors.

An important role in the willingness of women to be tested for HIV during pregnancy has been attributed to the male partner, who can be either a barrier or a source of support[31,37,40,42,55,63-65]. Women feel that their spouses' support and approval for HIV testing is a necessary condition for them to agree to receive an HIV test during pregnancy[37,63,66-68]. Bajunirwe and Muzoora[63] found that rural Ugandan women had a higher tendency than did urban women to believe that they need their spouses' approval to receive testing.

Fears of negative reactions from the male partner as a factor influencing the willingness of women to receive HIV testing have been discussed in several studies[59]. In light of societal expectations of women's sexual monogamy to their spouse[69], a male partner may blame an HIV-infected woman for unfaithfulness. As a consequence, women may face negative repercussions due to their identification as being infected with HIV, such as domestic violence[59].

In their study of pregnant women in rural Kenya, Turan *et al*[59] found that fear of their spouses' reaction and possible repercussions were a more powerful influence on the willingness of women to be tested for HIV during pregnancy than were their concerns regarding any other significant others. Turan *et al*[59] suggested that because community members are not easily able to identify if a woman is infected with HIV, women have less fear of receiving negative consequences from the whole community.

It should be noted that male partner factors also play a role in whether women return for results, as demonstrated by Msuya *et al*[70]. In their study, when women's spouses did not undergo testing, the women themselves were less likely to return to the clinic to receive their own test results.

Fear of the test results

Fear of the test results has been shown to be a major barrier to being tested for HIV during pregnancy, both in earlier and in more recent studies[31,37,55,56,58]. Dube and Nkosi[43] found that half of the women in their study felt

that getting tested for HIV was emotionally stressful. Similarly, Moges and Amberbir[37] found that pregnant women resist HIV testing because they are afraid to receive a positive result. A similar finding was also seen in Tanzania[42]. In contrast, an Ethiopian study by Maedot *et al*[71] found that pregnant women who felt that they were capable of coping with a positive HIV test result were identified as being more likely to accept VCT.

Knowledge, perceived susceptibility to HIV, and perceived benefits of the test

Most reviewed studies demonstrate that women's willingness to be tested for HIV during pregnancy was influenced by their knowledge about HIV/AIDS and MTCT[36,37,39,41,58,60,72-74]. Other studies found that knowledge was not related to willingness to be tested. It has been suggested that results need to be interpreted within the context of a particular society[75].

Turan *et al*[59] found that knowing someone who was HIV-positive was associated with willingness to receive HIV testing during pregnancy. They suggested that knowledge of MTCT and knowing someone who was HIV-positive might increase women's awareness of the possibility of MTCT and the advantages of receiving HIV testing. Indeed, many studies found that high perceived susceptibility to HIV was associated with willingness to receive HIV testing during pregnancy[36,37,42,65,76-78]. Research from multiple countries has shown that many pregnant women did not believe that they were at risk for contracting HIV because they are in monogamous relationships and trust their male partner[37,40,42,79].

Many studies also identified an association between women's perception of the benefits of the test, either for their infants' or for their own health, and the willingness of women to be tested[37,38,42,62,63]. However, in a study by Baiden *et al*[80], willingness to be tested for HIV was not associated with women's view on the usefulness of the test.

Several studies have found that HIV testing participation was related to the number of prenatal care visits a pregnant woman had already received[58,60,68]. Women who have less access to prenatal health care are less likely to know about PMTCT and other preventative care[58]. It has been shown that improving women's access to prenatal care improves PMTCT uptake[81].

Several studies have identified certain obstetric factors, such as bad obstetric history, or being multi gravida *vs* primigravida, as associated with uptake of VCT[41,63,65,67,82]. It is possible that multigravida women had more contact with prenatal care services and therefore had prior experience of HIV testing, or that they were more aware of the MTCT of HIV.

Prior HIV testing

Several studies found that prior HIV testing was related to experience with HIV counseling and testing (HCT)[66,83]. In contrast, in a study in Ghana by Holmes *et al*[84] it was found that 95% of women who had been previously tested for HIV declined to receive additional testing. Similarly, Peltzer *et al*[31] found that women declined to receive HCT because they already had been tested for HIV previously.

It is possible that the inconsistency in results may reflect women's varying underlying beliefs. For example, Matovu *et al*[83] suggested that women may seek repeat testing in order to be certain that they have not been infected. In contrast, it has also been suggested that women who have received a negative test result in the past, and who do not feel that they are at any new risk, will not consider repeat testing to be useful to them[84]. Similarly, focus group discussions in a study by Matovu *et al*[83] suggested that women who have received repeat negative HIV testing results feel that they may not be susceptible to HIV, or that they have been lucky. Such beliefs raise concerns, as a previous negative result does not absolutely guarantee a negative result during a subsequent pregnancy.

Sociodemographic characteristics

Age: In a Sudanese study, women older than 26 years had higher acceptance of VCT[41]. Similarly, in a study conducted in Burkina Faso, the uptake rate of VCT increased linearly with age, being particularly low among adolescents (15-19 years)[67]. Enosolease and Offor[85] have shown that older Nigerian women had higher rates of acceptance of HIV testing. It has been suggested that older women may be more aware of a higher cumulative risk of infection and are more likely to take autonomous decisions[67]. Other studies have found that older age was actually associated with test refusal[58,66]. There were also studies which found no correlation at all, as in a UK study[77]. These findings suggest that age is a confounding factor.

Marital status: Fabiani *et al*[86] found that being married was associated with lower VCT uptake. Conversely, in a study by Matovu *et al*[83], VCT acceptance was actually higher among married women. Perez *et al*[58] also found that women living with a partner were more likely to accept HIV testing. It is possible that inconsistence in results reflects variation in women's perception of susceptibility to HIV. Some married women may perceive themselves as less susceptible to HIV because they trust their husbands[37], while other married women may actually feel that they are more at risk[58]. Perez *et al*[58] also suggested that married women are more accepting of HIV testing because they feel that they can depend on their spouse to support them in the event of a positive test result.

Education: Previously conducted studies in different countries have demonstrated that higher educational status was associated with higher willingness to accept VCT[37,54,58,63,74,79,84,86]. Perez *et al*[58] suggested that women with less education also have less knowledge about and access to prenatal healthcare.

Conversely, it has also been found that lower education sometimes leads to higher rates of test acceptance[87,88].

Barragán *et al*[87] suggested that when HIV testing is encouraged by healthcare workers, women's low level of knowledge may not be an impediment to their acceptance of testing.

Economic factors: Moges and Amberbir[37] found that the occupational status of women in Northwestern Ethiopia was an important factor in their readiness to utilize VCT. Employed pregnant women accepted VCT at higher rates than unemployed married women. Similar results were obtained in a Vietnamese study[54] and in a Sudanese study[41]. The researchers suggested that when women leave the home and are employed, they have greater access to information about VCT compared to unemployed married women who spent most of their time at home[37]. Perez *et al*[58] also found that rural Zimbabwean women with unemployed partners and lower incomes were less likely to be tested because these women are less economically independent and less able to make decisions for themselves.

HEALTH CARE PROVIDER RELATED FACTORS

Based on the literature review, health care provider-related factors may be classified as relating to access to antiretroviral therapy, site characteristics, woman-provider dynamics, and belief in the HIV test's reliability. Perceived ability to get continuous medical care following a positive HIV test result [71], knowledge about the availability of the antiretroviral therapy[89], and lack of access to antiretroviral therapy[66] are often listed among factors associated with the willingness of women to be tested during pregnancy.

In a study from Kenya, Anand *et al*[90] found that site factors were the most significant element in PMTCT program acceptance. In a government hospital in Uganda, administrative problems, lack of resources and lack of staff were cited as significant causes for failure to counsel women about routine HIV testing during pregnancy[91]. Dahl *et al*[66] found that the longer that testing sites were in operation, the higher their rates of HIV test acceptance. Larsson *et al*[25] examined the willingness of women in rural Uganda to receive HIV testing. They found that for women of all income levels, those who lived further than three kilometers from an HIV testing site were less likely to be tested. Long waiting times were identified as another major reason for refusing the test[31].

Several studies have demonstrated the positive effects of combining PMTCT programs with prenatal care[92-94]. There are several possible explanations for this: it may be that combining these services helps women by reducing the cost, time, and travel required to receive care. Additionally, women seeking care at a site that offers combined services are less likely to be identified as seeking HIV testing, and therefore may be less fearful that they will be stigmatized or discriminated against by their communities[92]. In addition, it has been previously documented that perceived unreliability of test results and distrust of HIV testing technologies can discourage uptake of HIV testing[66,95,96]. Combining services may improve and increase technology available at testing sites, which in turn can improve women's confidence in both the technology and their health care providers.

Site characteristics seem to play an important role in acceptance of testing for HIV and also in women's intention to come back for results, which is crucial in prevention of MTCT. In a study by Sarker *et al*[68], operational factors were the most significant reason why women failed to return to a testing site to get their results. These operational factors included poor scheduling of the post-test counseling sessions and a lack of doctors. Msuya *et al*[70] also found that the site of recruitment was associated with women's motivation to return to receive their HIV test results.

Varga *et al*[97] examined impediments to willingness to be tested for HIV of 15 to 19-year-old mothers in rural and urban Limpopo Province, South Africa. The study found that the relationship and communication between the pregnant women and the HCT counselor was a significant factor influencing the rate of acceptance of HIV testing, as were the counselors' profiles, which impacted the interaction between pregnant women and clinic staff. Peltzer *et al*[31] found that the more trust pregnant women had in their HCT counselor, the higher their rate of acceptance of pre- and post- test counseling. A study in Alberta, Canada, found that counselors' gender and education were the most significant influence on women's willingness to participate in routine opt-out prenatal HIV testing[98].

Studies have also found that lack of confidentiality was associated with less participation in HCT[31,42,56,97]. Negative experiences with medical personnel[55,82], as well as low quality of pre-test counseling, were also associated with less participation in HCT[66,95,96]. In addition, women's failure to understand the HIV testing procedure as explained during group counseling, as well as dislike for group counseling, were listed among the major reasons for refusing the test[31]. Perez *et al*[58] showed that group counseling had a negative effect on acceptance of HIV testing. The researchers suggested that this demonstrates a need for revision of counseling methods.

RECOMMENDATIONS

The extensive literature on this topic provides recommendations aimed at increasing HIV testing rates among pregnant women in different countries. Numerous factors related to pregnant women's willingness to be tested suggest multiple possible interventions to maximize HIV testing efficiency and increase testing rates. In general, major recommendations suggested in various studies aimed at increasing HIV testing rates among pregnant women can be conceptually mapped as falling into one of three primary domains: male partner involvement, education, and improvement of site-level factors.

Male partner involvement

Male partner involvement in the process of prenatal HIV testing is necessary. This involvement includes HIV counseling for couples and testing with facilitated disclosure. There is a need to advance strategies to address women's fear of negative repercussions from their spouses in response to a positive HIV test result. One potential strategy is teaching prenatal healthcare providers to facilitate discussions between women and their spouses about HIV testing in order to improve their acceptance of testing. However, women should be also equipped with tools to help them safely and effectively communicate with their spouses about HIV testing. Prenatal healthcare workers should be aware of signs of domestic violence and include domestic violence reduction programs in their prenatal care.

Education

Women's education in general should be promoted, including knowledge of HIV testing, MTCT of HIV, and PMTCT programs. Emphasis should be put on HIV susceptibility and benefits of the HIV test, while various misperceptions should be corrected through proper counseling. Moreover, education should include support and empowerment of women to reduce fear of the test and provide tools to cope with the results.

Improvement of site-level factors

Improving women's willingness to participate in HIV testing and PMTCT programs should include addressing deficiencies at the site level as well as focusing on participant factors. Positive site-level factors to encourage HIV testing in pregnant women include improving staff availability and knowledge, improving scheduling and patient management, developing better counseling methods, and increasing health care providers' access to test kits and on-site laboratory capabilities. Mistrust towards HCT providers should be reduced. These factors should be periodically evaluated, including comparison of sites with high and low rates of HIV testing and PMTCT acceptance.

CONCLUSION

There are several factors that are usually identified as associated with the willingness of women to be tested for HIV during pregnancy. Studies have shown that certain major factors remain stable over time. However, frequent inconsistent results concerning certain factors suggest that there is no magic formula for understanding and predicting women's willingness to be tested. The inconsistencies in results may reflect the complexity of the phenomenon of women's willingness to be tested. Factors may be interrelated and influenced by cultural and social characteristics of a society, requiring further research and meta-analyses of the phenomenon.

It should be noted that the majority of the research literature focuses on sub-Saharan Africa. There is dearth of research on factors related to the willingness of women in countries with middle and high income levels to be tested for HIV during pregnancy. Research on the willingness of women to be tested in certain countries is completely lacking.

REFERENCES

1 **Kellerman SE**, Sugandhi N. Pediatric AIDS in the elimination agenda. *PLoS Med* 2013; **10**: e1001503 [PMID: 24015112 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1001503]

2 **Health Resources and Services Administration**. HIV screening for pregnant women, 2012. Available from: URL: http://www.hrsa.gov/quality/toolbox/508pdfs/hivscreeningpregnantwomen.pdf

3 **UNAIDS**. Global report: UNAIDS report on the global AIDS epidemic 2010. Geneva: UNAIDS, 2010. Available from: URL: http://www.unaids.org/globalreport/Global_report.htm

4 **UNAIDS**. A focus on women: a key strategy to preventing HIV among children, 2014. Available from: URL: http://www.unaids.org/sites/default/files/media_asset/JC2538_preventingHIVamongchildren_en_0.pdf

5 **UNAIDS**; WHO. UNAIDS/WHO policy statement on HIV testing, 2004. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/rpc/research_ethics/hivtestingpolicy_en_pdf.pdf

6 **Baggaley R**, Hensen B, Ajose O, Grabbe KL, Wong VJ, Schilsky A, Lo YR, Lule F, Granich R, Hargreaves J. From caution to urgency: the evolution of HIV testing and counselling in Africa. *Bull World Health Organ* 2012; **90**: 652-658B [PMID: 22984309 DOI: 10.2471/BLT.11.100818]

7 **WHO**; UNAIDS; UNICEF. Towards universal access: scaling up priority HIV/AIDS interventions in the health sector. Geneva: WHO, 2010. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/hiv/pub/2010progressreport/en/

8 **UNAIDS**. Countdown to zero: global plan towards the elimination of new HIV infections among children by 2015 and keeping their mothers alive. Geneva: UNAIDS, 2011. Available from: URL: http://reliefweb.int/report/world/countdown-zero-global-plan-towards-elimination-new-hiv-infections-among-children-2015

9 **UNAIDS**. 2013 Progress report on the global plan: towards the elimination of new HIV infections among children by 2015 and keeping their mothers alive. Geneva: UNAIDS, 2013. Available from: URL: http://reliefweb.int/report/world/2013-progress-report-global-plan-towards-elimination-new-hiv-infections-among-children

10 **Paltiel AD**, Walensky RP, Schackman BR, Seage GR, Mercincavage LM, Weinstein MC, Freedberg KA. Expanded HIV screening in the United States: effect on clinical outcomes, HIV transmission, and costs. *Ann Intern Med* 2006; **145**: 797-806 [PMID: 17146064 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-145-11-200612050-00004]

11 **Drake AL**, Wagner A, Richardson B, John-Stewart G. Incident HIV during pregnancy and postpartum and risk of mother-to-child HIV transmission: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS Med* 2014; **11**: e1001608 [PMID: 24586123 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1001608]

12 **WHO**. World health statistics 2010. Geneva: WHO Press, 2010. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/whosis/whostat/2010/en/

13 **Yartey J**, Kumoji K. Technical consultation on the integration of HIV interventions into maternal, newborn and child health services. Geneva: WHO, 2006. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/maternal_child_adolescent/documents/hiv_interventions/en/

14 **Shrim A**, Garcia-Bournissen F, Murphy K, Koren G, Farine D. When pregnant women are not screened for HIV. *Can Fam Physician* 2007; **53**: 1663-1665 [PMID: 17934027]

15 **American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Pediatric AIDS**. HIV testing and prophylaxis to prevent mother-to-child transmission in the United States. *Pediatrics* 2008; **122**: 1127-1134 [PMID: 18977995 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2008-2175]

16 **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)**. HIV/AIDS surveillance report, 2004. Atlanta: US Department of Health and Human Services, CDC, 2005

17 **McKenna MT**, Hu X. Recent trends in the incidence and morbidity that are associated with perinatal human immunodeficiency virus infection in the United States. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2007; **197**: S10-S16 [PMID: 17825639 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2007.02.032]

18 **Townsend CL**, Cortina-Borja M, Peckham CS, de Ruiter A, Lyall H, Tookey PA. Low rates of mother-to-child transmission of HIV following effective pregnancy interventions in the United Kingdom and Ireland, 2000-2006. *AIDS* 2008; **22**: 973-981 [PMID: 18453857 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3282f9b67a]

19 **Chou R**, Cantor AG, Zakher B, Bougatsos C. Screening for HIV in pregnant women: systematic review to update the 2005 U.S. Preventive Services Task Force recommendation. *Ann Intern Med* 2012; **157**: 719-728 [PMID: 23165663 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-157-10-201211200-00009]

20 **Paintsil E**, Andiman WA. Update on successes and challenges regarding mother-to-child transmission of HIV. *Curr Opin Pediatr* 2009; **21**: 94-101 [PMID: 19242245 DOI: 10.1097/MOP.0b013e32831ec353]

21 **Sweat MD**, O'Reilly KR, Schmid GP, Denison J, de Zoysa I. Cost-effectiveness of nevirapine to prevent mother-to-child HIV transmission in eight African countries. *AIDS* 2004; **18**: 1661-1671 [PMID: 15280777]

22 **Read JS**, Newell MK. Efficacy and safety of cesarean delivery for prevention of mother-to-child transmission of HIV-1. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2005; **(4)**: CD005479 [PMID: 16235405 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD005479]

23 **Coutsoudis A**, Dabis F, Fawzi W, Gaillard P, Haverkamp G, Harris DR, Jackson JB, Leroy V, Meda N, Msellati P, Newell ML, Nsuati R, Read JS, Wiktor S. Late postnatal transmission of HIV-1 in breast-fed children: an individual patient data meta-analysis. *J Infect Dis* 2004; **189**: 2154-2166 [PMID: 15181561 DOI: 10.1086/420834]

24 **Committee on Pediatric AIDS**. Infant feeding and transmission of human immunodeficiency virus in the United States. *Pediatrics* 2013; **131**: 391-396 [PMID: 23359577 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2012-3543]

25 **Larsson EC**, Thorson AE, Pariyo G, Waiswa P, Kadobera D, Marrone G, Ekström AM. Missed Opportunities: barriers to HIV testing during pregnancy from a population based cohort study in rural Uganda. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e37590 [PMID: 22916089 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0037590]

26 **Havens PL**, Mofenson LM. Evaluation and management of the infant exposed to HIV-1 in the United States. *Pediatrics* 2009; **123**: 175-187 [PMID: 19117880 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2008-3076]

27 **Wade NA**, Zielinski MA, Butsashvili M, McNutt LA, Warren BL, Glaros R, Cheku B, Pulver W, Pass K, Fox K, Novello AC, Birkhead GS. Decline in perinatal HIV transmission in New York State (1997-2000). *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2004; **36**: 1075-1082 [PMID: 15247561]

28 **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)**. HIV testing trends in the United States, 2000-2011, 2013. Available from: URL: http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/testing_trends.pdf

29 **Remis RS**, Merid MF, Palmer RW, Whittingham E, King SM, Danson NS, Vernich L, Swantee C, Major C. High uptake of HIV testing in pregnant women in Ontario, Canada. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e48077 [PMID: 23152762 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0048077]

30 **UNICEF**. Wide political support for eliminating 90 per cent of new HIV infections in children is yielding impressive results, 2014. Available from: URL: http://www.data.unicef.org/hiv-aids/emtct

31 **Peltzer K**, Mlambo G, Phaweni K. Factors determining prenatal HIV testing for prevention of mother to child transmission of HIV in Mpumalanga, South Africa. *AIDS Behav* 2010; **14**: 1115-1123 [PMID: 20049520 DOI: 10.1007/s10461-009-9662-7]

32 **WHO**; UNAIDS; UNICEF. Global HIV/AIDS response. Epidemic update and health sector progress towards universal access. Progress report 2011. Geneva: WHO, 2011. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/hiv/pub/progress_report2011/en/

33 **Kizito D**, Woodburn PW, Kesande B, Ameke C, Nabulime J, Muwanga M, Grosskurth H, Elliott AM. Uptake of HIV and syphilis testing of pregnant women and their male partners in a programme for prevention of mother-to-child HIV transmission in Uganda. *Trop Med Int Health* 2008; **13**: 680-682 [PMID: 18331533 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-3156.2008.02052.x]

34 **Chandisarewa W**, Stranix-Chibanda L, Chirapa E, Miller A, Simoyi M, Mahomva A, Maldonado Y, Shetty AK. Routine offer of antenatal HIV testing ("opt-out" approach) to prevent mother-to-child transmission of HIV in urban Zimbabwe. *Bull World Health Organ* 2007; **85**: 843-850 [PMID: 18038074 DOI: 10.2471/BLT.06.035188]

35 **Obermeyer CM**, Osborn M. The utilization of testing and counseling for HIV: a review of the social and behavioral evidence. *Am J Public Health* 2007; **97**: 1762-1774 [PMID: 17761565 DOI: 10.2105/AJPH.2006.096263]

36 **Li C**, Yang L, Kong J. Cognitive factors associated with the willingness for HIV testing among pregnant women in China. *Chin Med J* (Engl) 2014; **127**: 3423-3427 [PMID: 25269906]

37 **Moges Z**, Amberbir A. Factors Associated with Readiness to VCT Service Utilization among Pregnant Women Attending Antenatal Clinics in Northwestern Ethiopia: A Health Belief Model Approach. *Ethiop J Health Sci* 2011; **21**: 107-115 [PMID: 22435013]

38 **Okonkwo KC**, Reich K, Alabi AI, Umeike N, Nachman SA. An evaluation of awareness: attitudes and beliefs of pregnant Nigerian women toward voluntary counseling and testing for HIV. *AIDS Patient Care STDS* 2007; **21**: 252-260 [PMID: 17461720 DOI: 10.1089/apc.2006.0065]

39 **Raba G**, Skret-Magierlo J, Skret A. Knowledge about HIV infection and acceptability of HIV testing among women delivered in Podkarpackie Province, Poland. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 2010; **108**: 108-110 [PMID: 19892331 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijgo.2009.08.024]

40 **Rogers A**, Meundi A, Amma A, Rao A, Shetty P, Antony J, Sebastian D, Shetty P, Shetty AK. HIV-related knowledge, attitudes, perceived benefits, and risks of HIV testing among pregnant women in rural Southern India. *AIDS Patient Care STDS* 2006; **20**: 803-811 [PMID: 17134354 DOI: 10.1089/apc.2006.20.803]

41 **Mahmoud MM**, Nasr AM, Gassmelseed DE, Abdalelhafiz MA, Elsheikh MA, Adam I. Knowledge and attitude toward HIV voluntary counseling and testing services among pregnant women attending an antenatal clinic in Sudan. *J Med Virol* 2007; **79**: 469-473 [PMID: 17385672 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.20850]

42 **de Paoli MM**, Manongi R, Klepp KI. Factors influencing acceptability of voluntary counselling and HIV-testing among pregnant women in Northern Tanzania. *AIDS Care* 2004; **16**: 411-425 [PMID: 15203410 DOI: 10.1080/09540120410001683358]

43 **Dube FN**, Nkosi ZZ. The acceptability, knowledge and perceptions of pregnant women toward HIV testing in pregnancy at Ilembe District. *Curationis* 2008; **31**: 12-20 [PMID: 19177966 DOI: 10.4102/curationis.v31i3.1011]

44 **Njau B**, Ostermann J, Brown D, Mühlbacher A, Reddy E, Thielman N. HIV testing preferences in Tanzania: a qualitative exploration of the importance of confidentiality, accessibility, and quality of service. *BMC Public Health* 2014; **14**: 838 [PMID: 25124140 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-14-838]

45 **Deblonde J**, De Koker P, Hamers FF, Fontaine J, Luchters S, Temmerman M. Barriers to HIV testing in Europe: a systematic review. *Eur J Public Health* 2010; **20**: 422-432 [PMID: 20123683 DOI: 10.1093/eurpub/ckp231]

46 **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).** Introduction of routine HIV testing in prenatal care--Botswana, 2004. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2004; **53**: 1083-1086 [PMID: 15565017]

47 **Creek TL**, Ntumy R, Seipone K, Smith M, Mogodi M, Smit M, Legwaila K, Molokwane I, Tebele G, Mazhani L, Shaffer N, Kilmarx PH. Successful introduction of routine opt-out HIV testing in antenatal care in Botswana. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2007; **45**: 102-107 [PMID: 17460473]

48 **Hensen B**, Baggaley R, Wong VJ, Grabbe KL, Shaffer N, Lo YR, Hargreaves J. Universal voluntary HIV testing in antenatal care settings: a review of the contribution of provider-initiated testing & amp; counselling. *Trop Med Int Health* 2012; **17**: 59-70 [PMID: 22032300 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-3156.2011.02893.x]

49 **Hallmark CJ**, Skillicorn J, Giordano TP, Davila JA, McNeese M, Rocha N, Smith A, Cooper S, Castel AD. HIV testing

implementation in two urban cities: practice, policy, and perceived barriers. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e110010 [PMID: 25310462 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0110010]

50 **Riskin-Mashiach S**. Is there justification to operate a program of screening tests for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) among pregnant women in Israel? *Harefuah* 2014; **153**: 27-30

51 **Gal I**. Soon: HIV test for every pregnant woman, 2014. Available from: URL: http://www.ynet.co.il/articles/0,7340,L-4485461,00.html

52 **Thorsen VC**, Sundby J, Martinson F. Potential initiators of HIV-related stigmatization: ethical and programmatic challenges for PMTCT programs. *Dev World Bioeth* 2008; **8**: 43-50 [PMID: 18302543 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-8847.2008.00227.x]

53 **Brickley DB**, Le Dung Hanh D, Nguyet LT, Mandel JS, Giang le T, Sohn AH. Community, family, and partner-related stigma experienced by pregnant and postpartum women with HIV in Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam. *AIDS Behav* 2009; **13**: 1197-1204 [PMID: 19085100 DOI: 10.1007/s10461-008-9501-2]

54 **Dinh TH**, Detels R, Nguyen MA. Factors associated with declining HIV testing and failure to return for results among pregnant women in Vietnam. *AIDS* 2005; **19**: 1234-1236 [PMID: 15990581]

55 **Kebaabetswe PM**. Barriers to participation in the prevention of mother-to-child HIV transmission program in Gaborone, Botswana a qualitative approach. *AIDS Care* 2007; **19**: 355-360 [PMID: 17453569 DOI: 10.1080/09540120600942407]

56 **Minnie K**, Klopper H, van der Walt C. Factors contributing to the decision by pregnant women to be tested for HIV. *Health SA Gesondheid* 2008; **13**: 50-65 [DOI: 10.4102/hsag.v13i4.404]

57 **Peltzer K**, Mosala T, Shisana O, Nqueko A, Mngqundaniso N. Barriers to prevention of HIV transmission from mother to child (PMTCT) in a resource poor setting in the Eastern Cape, South Africa. *Afr J Reprod Health* 2007; **11**: 57-66 [PMID: 17982948 DOI: 10.2307/30032488]

58 **Perez F**, Zvandaziva C, Engelsmann B, Dabis F. Acceptability of routine HIV testing ("opt-out") in antenatal services in two rural districts of Zimbabwe. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2006; **41**: 514-520 [PMID: 16652062 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000191285.70331.a0]

59 **Turan JM**, Bukusi EA, Onono M, Holzemer WL, Miller S, Cohen CR. HIV/AIDS stigma and refusal of HIV testing among pregnant women in rural Kenya: results from the MAMAS Study. *AIDS Behav* 2011; **15**: 1111-1120 [PMID: 20827573 DOI: 10.1007/s10461-010-9798-5]

60 **Kominami M**, Kawata K, Ali M, Meena H, Ushijima H. Factors determining prenatal HIV testing for prevention of mother to child transmission in Dar Es Salaam, Tanzania. *Pediatr Int* 2007; **49**: 286-292 [PMID: 17445058 DOI: 10.1111/j.1442-200X.2007.02355.x]

61 **Ben Natan M**, Kutygaro R. Predictors of women's intention to be screened for HIV during pregnancy. *JANAC* 2014; In press

62 **Mirkuzie AH**, Sisay MM, Moland KM, Astrøm AN. Applying the theory of planned behaviour to explain HIV testing in antenatal settings in Addis Ababa - a cohort study. *BMC Health Serv Res* 2011; **11**: 196 [PMID: 21851613 DOI: 10.1186/1472-6963-11-196]

63 **Bajunirwe F**, Muzoora M. Barriers to the implementation of programs for the prevention of mother-to-child transmission of HIV: a cross-sectional survey in rural and urban Uganda. *AIDS Res Ther* 2005; **2**: 10 [PMID: 16255776 DOI: 10.1186/1742-6405-2-10]

64 **Ekabua JE**, Oyo-Ita AE, Ogaji DS, Omuemu VO. KAP of HIV prevention and screening among pregnant women attending specialist antenatal clinics in Calabar, Nigeria. *Niger J Med* 2006; **15**: 409-412 [PMID: 17111727 DOI: 10.4314/njm.v15i4.37256]

65 **Martin-Herz SP**, Shetty AK, Bassett MT, Ley C, Mhazo M, Moyo S, Herz AM, Katzenstein D. Perceived risks and benefits of HIV testing, and predictors of acceptance of HIV counselling and testing among pregnant women in Zimbabwe. *Int J STD AIDS* 2006; **17**: 835-841 [PMID: 17212862 DOI: 10.1258/095646206779307630]

66 **Dahl V**, Mellhammar L, Bajunirwe F, Björkman P. Acceptance of HIV testing among women attending antenatal care in south-western Uganda: risk factors and reasons for test refusal. *AIDS Care* 2008; **20**: 746-752 [PMID: 18576178 DOI: 10.1080/09540120701693990]

67 **Pignatelli S**, Simpore J, Pietra V, Ouedraogo L, Conombo G, Saleri N, Pizzocolo C, De Iaco G, Tall F, Ouiminga A, Carosi G, Castelli F. Factors predicting uptake of voluntary counselling and testing in a real-life setting in a mother-and-child center in Ouagadougou, Burkina Faso. *Trop Med Int Health* 2006; **11**: 350-357 [PMID: 16553915 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-3156.2006.01564.x]

68 **Sarker M**, Sanou A, Snow R, Ganame J, Gondos A. Determinants of HIV counselling and testing participation in a prevention of mother-to-child transmission programme in rural Burkina Faso. *Trop Med Int Health* 2007; **12**: 1475-1483 [PMID: 18076555 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-3156.2007.01956.x]

69 **Blanc AK**. The effect of power in sexual relationships on sexual and reproductive health: an examination of the evidence. *Stud Fam Plann* 2001; **32**: 189-213 [PMID: 11677692 DOI: 10.1111/j.1728-4465.2001.00189.x]

70 **Msuya SE**, Mbizvo E, Uriyo J, Stray-Pedersen B, Sam NE, Hussain A. Predictors of failure to return for HIV test results among pregnant women in Moshi, Tanzania. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2006; **43**: 85-90 [PMID: 16878044 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000225016.50890.7e]

71 **Maedot P**, Haile A, Lulseged S, Belachew A. Determinants of vct uptake among pregnant women attending two ANC clinics in Addis Ababa City: unmatched case control study. *Ethiop Med J* 2007; **45**: 335-342 [PMID: 18326343]

72 **Iliyasu Z**, Kabir M, Galadanci HS, Abubakar IS, Aliyu MH. Awareness and attitude of antenatal clients towards HIV voluntary counselling and testing in Aminu Kano Teaching Hospital, Kano, Nigeria. *Niger J Med* 2005; **14**: 27-32 [PMID: 15832639]

73 **Lee K**, Cheung WT, Kwong VS, Wan WY, Lee SS. Access to appropriate information on HIV is important in maximizing the acceptance of the antenatal HIV antibody test. *AIDS Care* 2005; **17**: 141-152 [PMID: 15763710 DOI: 10.1080/09540120512331325644]

74 **Worku G**, Enquselassie F. Factors determining acceptance of voluntary HIV counseling and testing among pregnant women attending antenatal clinic at army hospitals in Addis Ababa. *Ethiop Med J* 2007; **45**: 1-8 [PMID: 17642152]

75 **Hesketh T**, Duo L, Li H, Tomkins AM. Attitudes to HIV and HIV testing in high prevalence areas of China: informing the introduction of voluntary counselling and testing programmes. *Sex Transm Infect* 2005; **81**: 108-112 [PMID: 15800085 DOI: 10.1136/sti.2004.009704]

76 **Mpairwe H**, Muhangi L, Namujju PB, Kisitu A, Tumusiime A, Muwanga M, Whitworth JA, Onyango S, Biryahwaho B, Elliott AM. HIV risk perception and prevalence in a program for prevention of mother-to-child HIV transmission: comparison of women who accept voluntary counseling and testing and those tested anonymously. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2005; **39**: 354-358 [PMID: 15980698]

77 **Stokes SH**, McMaster P, Ismail KM. Acceptability of perinatal rapid point-of-care HIV testing in an area of low HIV prevalence in the UK. *Arch Dis Child* 2007; **92**: 505-508 [PMID: 17293365 DOI: 10.1136/adc.2006.106070]

78 **Thierman S**, Chi BH, Levy JW, Sinkala M, Goldenberg RL, Stringer JS. Individual-level predictors for HIV testing among antenatal attendees in Lusaka, Zambia. *Am J Med Sci* 2006; **332**: 13-17 [PMID: 16845236]

79 **Ekanem EE**, Gbadegesin A. Voluntary counselling and testing (VCT) for Human Immunodeficiency Virus: a study on acceptability by Nigerian women attending antenatal clinics. *Afr J Reprod Health* 2004; **8**: 91-100 [PMID: 15623124]

80 **Baiden F**, Remes P, Baiden R, Williams J, Hodgson A, Boelaert M, Buve A. Voluntary counseling and HIV testing for pregnant women in the Kassena-Nankana district of northern Ghana: is couple counseling the way forward? *AIDS Care* 2005; **17**: 648-657 [PMID: 16036251 DOI: 10.1080/09540120412331319688]

81 **Teeraratkul A**, Simonds RJ, Asavapiriyanont S, Chalermchokcharoenkit A, Vanprapa N, Chotpitayasunondh T, Mock PA, Skunodum N, Neeyapun K, Jetsawang B, Culnane M, Tappero

J. Evaluating programs to prevent mother-to-child HIV transmission in two large Bangkok hospitals, 1999-2001. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2005; **38**: 208-212 [PMID: 15671807]

82 **Painter TM**, Diaby KL, Matia DM, Lin LS, Sibailly TS, Kouassims MK, Ekpini ER, Roels TH, Wiktor SZ. Sociodemographic factors associated with participation by HIV-1-positive pregnant women in an intervention to prevent mother-to-child transmission of HIV in Cote d'Ivoire. *Int J STD AIDS* 2005; **16**: 237-242 [PMID: 15829025 DOI: 10.1258/0956462053420158]

83 **Matovu JK**, Gray RH, Makumbi F, Wawer MJ, Serwadda D, Kigozi G, Sewankambo NK, Nalugoda F. Voluntary HIV counseling and testing acceptance, sexual risk behavior and HIV incidence in Rakai, Uganda. *AIDS* 2005; **19**: 503-511 [PMID: 15764856]

84 **Holmes C**, Preko P, Bolds R, Baidoo J, Jolly P. Acceptance of Voluntary Counselling, Testing and Treatment for HIV Among Pregnant Women in Kumasi, Ghana. *Ghana Med J* 2008; **42**: 8-15 [PMID: 18560557]

85 **Enosolease ME**, Offor E. Acceptance rate of HIV testing among women seeking induced abortion in Benin City, Nigeria. *Afr J Reprod Health* 2004; **8**: 86-90 [PMID: 15623123]

86 **Fabiani M**, Cawthorne A, Nattabi B, Ayella EO, Ogwang M, Declich S. Investigating factors associated with uptake of HIV voluntary counselling and testing among pregnant women living in North Uganda. *AIDS Care* 2007; **19**: 733-739 [PMID: 17573592 DOI: 10.1080/09540120601087731]

87 **Barragán M**, Hicks G, Williams MV, Franco-Paredes C, Duffus W, del Rio C. Low health literacy is associated with HIV test acceptance. *J Gen Intern Med* 2005; **20**: 422-425 [PMID: 15963165 DOI: 10.1111/j.1525-1497.2005.40128.x]

88 **Fernández MI**, Collazo JB, Bowen GS, Varga LM, Hernandez N, Perrino T. Predictors of HIV testing and intention to test among Hispanic farmworkers in South Florida. *J Rural Health* 2005; **21**: 56-64 [PMID: 15667010 DOI: 10.1111/j.1748-0361.2005.tb00062.x]

89 **Mfundisi C**, Chiranjan N, Rodrigues C, Kirchner L, Bock P, Myer L. Availability of antiretroviral therapy is associated with increased uptake of HIV testing services. *S Afr Med J* 2005; **95**: 483-485 [PMID: 16156445]

90 **Anand A**, Shiraishi RW, Sheikh AA, Marum LH, Bolu O, Mutsotso W, Sabin K, Ayisi R, Diaz T. Site factors may be more important than participant factors in explaining HIV test acceptance in the prevention of mother-to-child HIV transmission programme in Kenya, 2005. *Trop Med Int Health* 2009; **14**: 1215-1219 [PMID: 19708898 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-3156.2009.02367.x]

91 **Homsy J**, Kalamya JN, Obonyo J, Ojwang J, Mugumya R, Opio C, Mermin J. Routine intrapartum HIV counseling and testing for prevention of mother-to-child transmission of HIV in a rural Ugandan hospital. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2006; **42**: 149-154 [PMID: 16760796 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000225032.52766.c2]

92 **Kasenga F**, Byass P, Emmelin M, Hurtig AK. The implications of policy changes on the uptake of a PMTCT programme in rural Malawi: first three years of experience. *Glob Health Action* 2009; **2**: [PMID: 20027274 DOI: 10.3402/gha.v2i0.1883]

93 **Lindegren ML**, Kennedy CE, Bain-Brickley D, Azman H, Creanga AA, Butler LM, Spaulding AB, Horvath T, Kennedy GE. Integration of HIV/AIDS services with maternal, neonatal and child health, nutrition, and family planning services. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; **9**: CD010119 [PMID: 22972150 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD010119]

94 **van't Hoog AH**, Mbori-Ngacha DA, Marum LH, Otieno JA, Misore AO, Nganga LW, Decock KM. Preventing mother-to-child transmission of HIV in Western Kenya: operational issues. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2005; **40**: 344-349 [PMID: 16249710]

95 **Chopra M**, Doherty T, Jackson D, Ashworth A. Preventing HIV transmission to children: quality of counselling of mothers in South Africa. *Acta Paediatr* 2005; **94**: 357-363 [PMID: 16028656 DOI: 10.1111/j.1651-2227.2005.tb03080.x]

96 **Delva W**, Mutunga L, Quaghebeur A, Temmerman M. Quality and quantity of antenatal HIV counselling in a PMTCT programme in Mombasa, Kenya. *AIDS Care* 2006; **18**: 189-193 [PMID: 16546777 DOI: 10.1080/09540120500456425]

97 **Varga C**, Brookes H. Factors influencing teen mothers' enrollment and participation in prevention of mother-to-child HIV transmission services in Limpopo Province, South Africa. *Qual Health Res* 2008; **18**: 786-802 [PMID: 18503020 DOI: 10.1177/1049732308318449]

98 **Wang FL**, Larke B, Gabos S, Hanrahan A, Schopflocher D. Potential factors that may affect acceptance of routine prenatal HIV testing. *Can J Public Health* 2005; **96**: 60-64 [PMID: 15682699]

P- Reviewer: McQuillan GM, McBride J **S- Editor**: Gong XM
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.255

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 255-264
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Insights into human immunodeficiency virus-hepatitis B virus co-infection in India

Runu Chakravarty, Ananya Pal

Runu Chakravarty, Ananya Pal, ICMR Virus Unit, Kolkata, ID and BG Hospital Campus, GB 4, Kolkata 700010, West Bengal, India

Author contributions: Chakravarty R and Pal A reviewed the available literature; Pal A wrote the manuscript; Chakravarty R critically revised the draft with significant intellectual inputs.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No.

Correspondence to: Runu Chakravarty, PhD, ICMR Virus Unit, Kolkata, ID and BG Hospital Campus, GB 4, 1st Floor, 57 Dr. Suresh Chandra Banerjee Road, Kolkata 700010, West Bengal, India. runugc@gmail.com
Telephone: +91-33-23537425
Fax: +91-33-23537424

Received: October 28, 2014
Peer-review started: October 31, 2014
First decision: December 12, 2014
Revised: April 21, 2015
Accepted: May 7, 2015
Article in press: May 8, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

Shared routes of transmission lead to frequent human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-hepatitis B virus (HBV) co-infection in a host which results in about 10% of HIV positive individuals to have chronic hepatitis B infection worldwide. In post-antiretroviral therapy era, liver diseases have emerged as the leading cause of morbidity and mortality in HIV-infected individuals and HBV co-infection have become the major health issue among this population particularly from the regions with endemic HBV infection. In setting of HIV-HBV co-infection, HIV significantly impacts the natural history of HBV infection, its disease profile and the treatment outcome in negative manner. Moreover, the epidemiological pattern of HBV infection and the diversity in HBV genome (genotypic and phenotypic) are also varied in HIV co-infected subjects as compared to HBV mono-infected individuals. Several reports on the abovementioned issues are available from developed parts of the world as well as from sub-Saharan African countries. In contrast, most of these research areas remained unexplored in India despite having considerable burden of HIV and HBV infections. This review discusses present knowledge from the studies on HIV-HBV co-infection in India and relevant reports from different parts of the world. Issues needed for the future research relevant to HIV-HBV co-infection in India are also highlighted here, including a call for further investigations on this field of study.

Key words: Human immunodeficiency virus-hepatitis B virus co-infection; India; Genetic diversity; Liver diseases

Core tip: Various parameters of hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection including molecular epidemiology, disease profile and treatment outcome remains unexplored in human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-positive individuals from India, a major reservoir for HBV and HIV infection of the globe. Only few reports particularly from eastern Indian HIV-HBV co-infected cohort represented some interesting findings in context to the global reports on this co-infection. Comparing with the available worldwide studies, issues that should be addressed for research in India are identified and a call for further investigations on HIV-HBV co-infection in India is highlighted through

this article. This is needed for proper management of HIV-HBV co-infected Indian population.

Chakravarty R, Pal A. Insights into human immunodeficiency virus-hepatitis B virus co-infection in India. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 255-264 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/255.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.255

INTRODUCTION

Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and hepatitis B virus (HBV), the two important blood-borne human pathogens, are major public health concerns in the current era. Since the introduction of combination antiretroviral therapy (cART) in 1996, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) related deaths among HIV-infected individuals have been reduced significantly worldwide[1]. In this situation of improved life expectancy due to ART, liver disease associated mortality has emerged as the leading cause of deaths in HIV-infected global population. Of all the possible causes of liver-related deaths, HBV co-infection has become one of the important burdens among HIV-positive individuals in post-ART era. Moreover, HBV shares its routes of transmission (sexual contact, percutaneous route and perinatal route) with HIV[2] and thus the incidence of HIV-HBV co-infection becomes a frequent phenomenon in a host[3]. As a consequence, in an estimated 40 million people living with HIV worldwide, approximately 10% (2-4 million) have chronic HBV co-infection [defined by the presence of serum hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) for more than 6 mo][2]. In addition, the biological signs of prior HBV infection [defined by the presence of serum anti-hepatitis B core antibody (HBcAb)] could be observed in 90% of HIV-positive individuals in the regions with high endemic HBV infection such as south-east Asia and sub-Saharan Africa.

During the setting of co-infection, HIV and HBV simultaneously interact in a host complicating pathogenesis and disease progression of these two infections, immune-responses to both the virus and treatment outcome against them. Till date, several studies have been conducted worldwide which have shown significant negative impact of HIV on the natural history of HBV infection[4-8] whereas such confirmed evidences are missing that state the effect of HBV on HIV infection[9]. Co-infection with HIV modifies the natural history of HBV infection by increasing the rate of HBV chronic infection, lowering the rate of HBsAg, hepatitis B e antigen (HBeAg) seroconversion and increasing HBV replication[5,6]. The deleterious effect of HIV leads to more rapid progression towards end-stage liver diseases (liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma) and higher risk for liver-disease related mortality in HIV-HBV co-infected individuals as compared to those infected with HBV only[10,11]. Simultaneously in presence of HIV, management of HBV becomes complicated greatly[12].

Most of the developed parts of the world (for, *e.g.*, western Europe, Australia and United States) where HBV is less endemic (HBsAg prevalence < 2%) and some of the developing countries (mostly sub-Saharan African countries) with endemic HBV infection (HBsAg prevalence ⩾ 8%) have largely contributed to the studies regarding HIV-HBV co-infection in these parts of the globe. Harbouring the third largest population of HIV infection and the second largest pool of chronic HBV infection (HBsAg prevalence 2%-7%) of the world, reports on HIV-HBV co-infection in India are scarce. Interestingly, few reports available from India indicate that studies on HIV-HBV co-infection are required from national as well as global perspectives. Therefore here we have highlighted HIV-HBV co-infection in India in comparison to the reports from different parts of the world to understand the present scenario of this co-infection in this subcontinent.

EPIDEMIOLOGICAL SCENARIO OF HIV-HBV CO-INFECTION

HIV-HBV co-infection showed global heterogeneity in epidemiological pattern. Two major determinants of this variation are geographical origin and risk groups of infected patients[2]. In regions of low endemicity of HBV infection (prevalence of HBsAg < 2%) such as United States, Western Europe and Australia, prevalence of chronic hepatitis B was reported to be 5%-14% among HIV-positive individuals[7,13-17]. In the countries of developed parts of the world, acute HBV infection occurs in adolescents and young adults through primarily sexual transmission (both heterosexual and homosexual), followed by percutaneous transmission. HIV-infected men who have sex with men (MSM) showed the highest frequency of chronic HBV infection (9%-17%)[3]. In contrast, perinatal transmission (south and south-east Asia) and horizontal transmission (Africa) are the major threats in the intermediate (HBsAg prevalence 2%-7%) and high endemicity (HBsAg prevalence ⩾ 8%) zones of HBV infection where persons obtain HBV infection in childhood[18]. Adults could acquire HIV-HBV co-infection through sexual contact and unsafe blood transfusion process in the resource limited settings of low-income countries[18,19]. Most studies reported 10%-20% prevalence of HIV-HBV co-infection in these countries[2]. Moreover reports from different parts of sub-Saharan Africa suggests that HBsAg prevalence could vary considerably (from Kenya; 6% to Nigeria; 16.7%)[20,21]. Evidences of variations in the prevalence of HBsAg among different risk groups were also found across the countries of this continent[22]. Regarding the epidemiological scenario several studies have been performed worldwide on multi-centre cohort of HIV-HBV co-infection which revealed the overview of prevalence, clinical and virological profile of these patients from a country[7,8,10,15-17,23-25]. Recently, a study including a multi-national cohort from 11 countries showed the concordant prevalence of HIV-HBV co-

infection in Africa, America and Asia similar to the previous reports[25].

In contrast, sporadic reports from India[26-37] has addressed the issue of prevalence of HBsAg among HIV-infected patients majority being from the northern part of the country[32-37]. Taking together these reports, HBsAg prevalence among HIV-infected Indian population could be estimated as 2%-14%. These reports mostly included HIV-positive patients either from one ART centre[31,37] or from single risk group for, *e.g.*, injecting drug users[27], female sex workers[30]. However in another two studies quite high frequency of HBsAg were found - approximately 22% (6/27)[32] and approximately 30% (34/110)[26]. These variations in results were observed possibly due to small sample size data, lack of multi-centre studies and unavailability of multi-risk group data. Thus, overall epidemiological trend of HIV-HBV co-infection in India still remains obscure (Figure 1). Nevertheless, two findings from these sporadic studies are concordant with the worldwide reports[21,22,25], *i.e.*, (1) the male gender is predominant over the females; and (2) sexual contact is the chief transmission route of HIV-HBV co-infection in India[26-31].

INFLUENCE OF HIV ON NATURAL HISTORY OF HBV INFECTION

To date, significant adverse effects of HIV co-infection on the natural history of HBV infection have been demonstrated in several studies from the perspectives of increased chronicity, accelerated rate of advance liver disease development and heightened mortality rates[4-6,10,11]. In a retrospective study, Bodsworth *et al*[4] showed increased rate of HBV chronicity development in HIV seropositive homosexual men than those without HIV (23% *vs* 4%)[4]. In several studies, HIV-HBV co-infected individuals showed decreased rate of HBeAg seroclearance along with increased HBe antigenemia[5,6,8]. Incidence rate of HBeAg seroclearance was decreased five times in HIV-positive patients compared to HIV-negative ones during a mean follow up for 5 years in a study from France[8]. Moreover in accordance to high HBeAg positivity, high serum HBV DNA load is associated with HIV-HBV co-infected patients[5,6]. HBeAg positive HIV-infected patients mostly had higher HBV viraemia as compared to HBeAg negative individuals. Thio *et al*[25] showed that 66% of HBeAg negative subjects had HBV DNA < 2000 IU/mL in a multi-national treatment-naïve cohort suggesting HBeAg as a predictive factor for HBV treatment in absence of HBV DNA quantification data[25]. Remarkably, studies describing the impact of HIV on HBV related mortality showed that HIV-HBV co-infected individuals had increased rate of liver associated deaths as compared to those with HBV mono-infection[7,10]. HIV-HBV co-infected men had 17 times higher incidence of liver-disease related deaths than HBV mono-infected ones[10].

Besides the worldwide reports, studies regarding the abovementioned parameters are lacking in India. However in one study from eastern India showed high HBV DNA load among HBeAg negative HIV infected individuals where 61% had HBV DNA ⩾ 2000 IU/mL and required HBV treatment[31]. According to the study by Thio *et al*[25], detection of HBeAg may be useful to assess the need for treatment in a setting where HBV DNA quantification facility is unavailable. Saha *et al*[31] demonstrated that HBeAg could be helpful to indicate the need for treatment among HBeAg positive HIV-HBV co-infected patients from eastern India however DNA quantification is necessary to consider HBeAg negative patients for treatment or not. Thus eastern Indian HIV-HBV co-infected individuals need serious attention for their clinical management and the conformation of this finding from the different parts of the country is an urgent necessity.

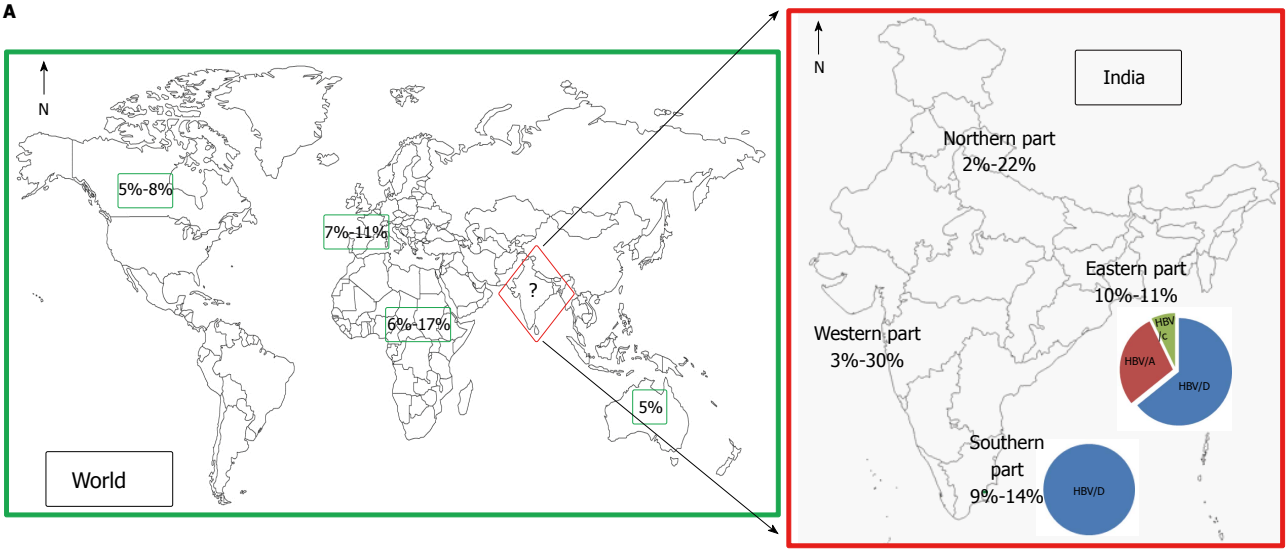
The aforementioned negative impacts on natural history of HBV might be the consequences of influence of HIV on the diversity of HBV genome, modification of host immune response and ART related complications. Some reports could be found to address the genetic diversity of HBV among HIV co-infected individuals[23,38-43]. HBV genome diversity can be described from two aspects - genotypic and phenotypic.

INFLUENCE OF HIV ON GENOTYPIC DIVERSITY OF HBV

Genotypic diversity is related to the natural history and the genotypes of HBV infection occurring during the gradual evolution of HBV in a host without selective pressures. Having a high mutation rate (10^{-5}/replication cycle), HBV results in the generation of different genotypes and each genotype can further be divided into several sub-genotypes. So far ten HBV genotypes (A-J) have been described depending upon their > 8% nucleotide divergence in complete genome sequences, whereas subgenotypes have that divergence of > 4% - < 8%[44]. HBV genotypes and subgenotypes showed varied distribution according to the geographical regions. Moreover, HBV genotypes/sub-genotypes differ considerably in the mutational patterns, ethnicity and their clinical as well as treatment outcomes[44].

In HIV-HBV co-infection, distribution of HBV genotypes was found to vary with geographical origin which is similar to HBV mono-infection[45]. In a recent collaborative study from 19 French university hospitals, 223 HIV-HBV co-infected patients were evaluated[24], where primarily prevalence of HBV/A were found in European and HBV/D in African patients. While, HBV/E was found mainly in patients with sub-saharan African origin, as this genotype is reported to be confined mostly to that region. Interestingly, a report from Mexico observed differential predominance of genotype between HBV mono-infected (HBV/H) and HIV-HBV co-infected patients (HBV/G)[46]. Moreover in a recent report on a multi-national HIV infected cohort (n = 113), Thio

A



B

Research areas in HIV-HBV co-infection	Worldwide reports excluding India (References)	Nationwide reports from India (References)
Multi-centre study on prevalence and characterization	√ [5-8,16,17,23-25]	–
Effect of HIV on natural history of HBV infection	√ [4-6]	–
Genetic diversity (Genotypic and phenotypic) of HBV among HIV co-infected individuals	√ [23-25,38-41,46,48-50]	√ [31,42,43,47]
Altered immune response in HIV-HBV co-infection and effect of HIV on genetic diversity of HBV	√ [25,58,59,90,91]	√ [42]
Increased liver injuries and end stage liver disease development	√ [11,38,92,93]	–
Increased liver mortality	√ [7,10,11]	–
Detection of Lamivudine resistance	√ [23,52-59]	√ [31,42,60]
Reports on other anti-HBV drugs	√ [62-64]	-

C

	pol ORF (amino acid)	pre-S2/pre-S1/S ORF (amino acid)	BCP + pre-C/C ORF (nucleotide)	X ORF
Mutations reported in HBV among HIV-co-infected individuals in India	3TC-resistant double (L180M + M204V) and triple mutation (V173L+ L180M + M204V)[31,42,60]	Pre-S2 deletion, immune-escape mutations(M133I/T, Y134N/H, Q129R), vaccine-escape mutation (G145R), premature stop codon (C69Stop)[42,43,47]	A1762T/G1764A, G1896A, frameshift mutation (-1G)[43]	-

Figure 1 Human immunodeficiency virus-hepatitis B virus co-infection: World *vs* Indian scenario. A: Prevalence of this co-infection is elucidated from most of the developed parts of the world as well as from sub-Saharan African countries as multi-centre and multi-cohort study. The few regional reports available from various regions of India are also represented, highlighting the need for multicentric study; B: Most of the research areas remain unexplored in India as compared to the worldwide reports; C: Mutations in hepatitis B virus (HBV) genome (four open-reading frames) reported among human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-HBV co-infected Indian patients. BCP: Basal core promoter.

et al[25] reported the predominance of HBV/A (72%) and HBV/D (16%) in HIV-HBV co-infection worldwide and the divergence of HBV genotype with geographical regions[25]. Till date only one study could be found to report an association of HBV genotype (HBV/G) with liver severity, *i.e.*, the degree of liver fiborsis in HIV-HBV co-infected patients[38].

In comparison to worldwide data, only four studies could be found from India that analyzed the genetic diversity of HBV among HIV co-infected patients; three from eastern India[31,42,43] and one from north-eastern India[47]. Reports from other parts of the country are still lacking. Interestingly, a recent multi-national study[25] that included patients from India (n = 13), showed

100% prevalence of HBV/D. In contrast, three studies from eastern India, that included a larger number of patients (n = 73[42], 119[31] and 85[43]), reported predominance of HBV/D, followed by HBV/A and found a few HBV/C infected patients. Pal *et al*[42], showed that the HBV genotypes/subgenotypes found among co-infected patients from eastern India are consistent with the previous data on HBV mono-infection, but the proportion differs between the HIV-HBV co-infected and the HBV mono-infected patients. Significantly higher prevalence of HBV genotype D (HBV/D - 67%) and HBV sub-genotype D2 (HBV/D2 - 68%) was observed among HBsAg positive HIV co-infected patients from this region[42]. Moreover, the predominance of HBV/C among the HBsAg negative HIV co-infected IDUs from Manipur, a state of northeastern India, has also been reported[47]. The presence of HBV/C has been thought to be correlated with drug-trafficking routes and epidemic use of injection drug in that geographical region. Additionally in this study, HBV recombinant strains (HBVA/D, HBVA/C) were found from two IDUs. Few studies could be found worldwide to report recombination in HBV DNA among HIV co-infected patients[48-50]. However, clinical consequences of these recombinants are unknown.

EFFECT OF HIV ON PHENOTYPIC DIVERSITY OF HBV

Phenotypic diversity results from the attempts to escape from host immune pressure or selective pressure of drugs. In HIV-infected individuals known HBV phenotypic diversity as well as novel viral variants have been reported which arise from several mutations in the four open-reading frames (ORFs) of HBV genome (pol, pre-S1/pre-S2/S, pre-C/C and X).

The basal core promoter (BCP) mutations reported to be associated with fulminant hepatitis in HBV-mono-infection namely T1753C, A1762T, G1764A occur in X ORF leading to down-regulation of HBeAg by decreasing its mRNA synthesis. The BCP double mutations (A1762T/G1764A) and triple mutation (T1753C/A1762T/G1764A) could also be found in HIV infected patients from United States, Australia and Thailand[23,41]. But the frequency of A1762T and G1764A was lower in HIV-HBV co-infected individuals as compared to those with HBV mono-infection (39.8% *vs* 59.3% and 39.8% *vs* 61% respectively)[41]. Moreover, presence of HBV precore stop codon mutation was reported in the co-infected cohort from different parts of the world though prevalence of G1896A (W28Stop) varied among these studies[23,38,39]. Among HIV-HBV co-infected patients, a novel -1G deletion mutation in precore/core region of HBV was reported[40]. This mutation was found to be associated with genotype A and high HBV load. This mutation was suggested to be associated with altered pathogenesis in this population by two mechanisms - firstly, development of a premature stop codon and truncated pre-core/core protein might be responsible for increased viral load and secondly, stop codon in the MHC-class II restricted epitope might lead to immune escape. In the same study, in addition to -1G mutation, substitutions in *x* gene, polymerase gene, precore/core gene and regulatory regions were also found[40]. Study by Audsley *et al*[41] supported the earlier result showing -1G frameshift mutation to be unique for HIV-HBV co-infected patients (10.8%). The only report[43] demonstrating the molecular epidemiology of HIV-HBV co-infected individuals from eastern India also found these BCP, precore/core mutations however prevalence of these mutations varies from the worldwide reports. In this Indian cohort lower frequency of A1762T/G1764A (13.6%) and-1G mutation (1.75%) were found, but the prevalence of G1896A is high (22%) as compared to the reports available from different parts of the globe[43]. This discrepancy could be explained by the high prevalence of HBV/D than HBV/A and HBV/C in India.

In a recent study analyzing complete HBV genome from HIV co-infected patients, pre-S2 deletion was more frequently found in pre-S1/pre-S2/S ORF among HIV-HBV co-infected individuals as compared to those infected with HBV only (14.6% *vs* 3.3%)[41].The majority of Pre-S2 deletions were located close to the N-terminus of the Pre-S2 protein. In contrast this deletion mutation is uncommon in eastern Indian cohort with HIV-HBV co-infection (5.41%)[43]. Some immune escape mutations (P120T/S and G145R/K/A) could also be found in context to HIV-HBV co-infection[38]. In the study from eastern India, low frequency of some immune escape mutations (Q129R, M133I/T, Y134N/H and G145RS) has been reported from the surface gene region of HBV genome[42,43]. Interestingly, in the upstream of "a" determinant region, a stop codon at C69 was found mainly in HBV/D2 isolates from these HBsAg positive HIV co-infected patients. This mutation was previously reported in Iranian HBV mono-infected patients with cirrhosis[51]. Though, the effect of this nonsense mutation remains unknown among HIV-HBV co-infected patients.

Besides spontaneous genetic variability, several diversities could be found in HBV genome, mainly in polymerase gene, under the selective pressure of nucles(t)ide analogues having anti-HBV activity. As a first line ART, lamivudine has been extensively used among HIV co-infected individuals. Benhamou *et al*[52] first estimated that after 4 years of lamivudine (3TC) therapy, 90% of a HIV-HBV co-infected cohort developed drug-resistant HBV which was higher compared to HBV mono-infected patients (67%). Furthermore, a later study showed increased frequency of double mutation (rt L180M + rt M204V) and triple mutation (rtV173L + rt L180M + rt M204V) during longer duration of 3TC therapy and they found 3TC resistance in 94% of the HIV-HBV co-infected patients experiencing 3TC for > 4 years[23]. The high frequency of lamivudine-resistance associated with HIV-HBV co-infected patients could also be supported in several studies from different parts of

the world so far[23,39,53-59]. Another adverse consequence of the 3TC-resistant triple mutation is that it generates vaccine escape mutation (E164D + I195M) in the overlapping surface gene region. Therefore, possibility to infect the unvaccinated as well as the HBV vaccinated persons makes this a serious health issue. In the earlier study of Pal *et al*[42], the presence of 3TC-resistant triple mutation was observed among the HIV-HBV co-infected patients from eastern India. In a recent study from same part of the India demonstrated the high incidence of 3TC-resistant double and triple mutation among HIV-HBV co-infected patients who had exposure of 3TC as a sole HBV-active agent during prolonged ART[60]. Studies on 3TC-resistance among HIV-HBV co-infected patients from different parts of the world found higher frequency of 3TC-resistant double mutation compared to triple mutation[23,39,53-57]. It is noteworthy to mention in this context that HIV-HBV co-infected patients from eastern India receiving long-term ART showed predominance of 3TC-resistant triple mutation over double mutation and the former prevailed in significantly higher frequency among HBV viraemic patients experiencing 3TC for ⩾ 4 years [frequency of 3TC-resistant triple mutation (vaccine escape mutation): 60% *vs* double mutation: 10%][60]. Moreover these 3TC-resistance associated vaccine-escape HBV mutants showed the presence of liver damages in these HIV-HBV co-infected patients. This finding by Pal *et al*[60] underscored the urgent need to study the overall burden of 3TC-resistant mutations in HIV-HBV co-infected Indian pool for proper management of 3TC-resistant mutants of HBV from clinical and public health perspectives in this country. Considering the adverse effects of 3TC-monotherapy, use of combination therapy using tenofovir has been introduced by World health organisation worldwide and National AIDS Control Organization in India for the management of HBV among HIV co-infected individuals[61]. Among other drugs used for treatment of HBV, development of drug resistance have been reported for adefovir and entacavir among HIV-HBV co-infected patients[62,63], however tenofovir resistance could not be detected among this population. So far, Tenofovir has been reported to suppress HBV DNA even in presence of lamivudine resistance and thus is recommended for the treatment of HBV infection in setting of HIV co-infection[64]. Use of tenofovir has been started in India among HIV-HBV co-infected patients from 2012[61], however the evaluation on treatment response for HBV during tenofovir treatment is still missing.

HIV ASSOCIATED IMMUNOLOGIC STATUS AND GENETIC DIVERSITY, SEROLOGICAL OUTCOME OF HBV INFECTION

Besides the genotypic and phenotypic diversity, modulation in HIV-associated immune status could not be overlooked. HIV-HBV co-infected subjects were mostly associated with lower CD4+ T-cell count as compared to HIV mono-infected ones[25]. This observation indicates towards the potential effect of HIV related immune dysfunction on HBV diversity as well as in the clinical outcome of HBV infection among HIV-positive patients. Few available reports showed interesting findings. The study by Pal *et al*[42] highlighted the influence of HIV induced immune modulation on the genetic heterogeneity of HBV among HIV-HBV co-infected patients from eastern India. Here a trend of negative association between the frequency of the HBV/D2, the predominant HBV subgenotype, isolates and CD4+ T cell counts was found. The HBV/D2 isolates showed decreased genetic diversity in low CD4+ T cell count group which in turn was attributed to increased HBV viremia and favourable selection of HBV/D2 isolates in HIV induced low immune pressure. Moreover, increased non-synonymous substitutions with increase in CD4+ T cell count in this study underscored the possibility that ART induced immune reconstitution might lead to the development of vaccine/immune escape and lamivudine resistant mutations among HBV/D2 infected patients. In contrast to HBV/D2, interestingly in HBV/A1 genetic variability was modified differently in presence of HIV. This contrasting substitution pattern with varying immune suppression between HBV/A1 and HBV/D2 was proposed to be related to the differences in host immune response against these two subgenotypes. An earlier study from Argentina showed that as a consequence of lower CD4+ T cell count, HBV subjects from HIV co-infected patients had low quasispecies diversity as well as evolutionary rate when compared to that from HBV mono-infected patients[65].

Another study reported the association of HBV serological outcome with CD4+ T-cell count. Landrum *et al*[66] showed increased proportion of chronic HBV infection in patients with CD4+ T-cell count < 200 cells/mm^3 (19%) compared to those with ⩾ 500 cells/mm^3 (11%) and 200-499 cells/mm^3 (16%). Individuals with HBV infection occurring after HIV diagnosis had high risk of chronic HBV infection and also this risk reduced after initiation of highly active antiretroviral therapy. However, conformation of these findings is missing due to limited studies in the respective fields.

HIV-HBV CO-INFECTION IN INDIA- A CONCERN

In India, HIV and HBV mono-infection have been studied thoroughly from different parts of the country[67-89]. These reports represent the subcontinent as a region epidemic of HIV infection and intermediately endemic to HBV infection. But, "HIV-HBV co-infection in India" remains unexplored even after knowing the epidemiological trends of these virus and adverse effects of HIV on outcome of HBV infection in setting of co-infection. In comparison to the global scenario of researches on HIV-HBV co-infection, information from India is scanty and thus need investigations in this field (Figure 1). Few

studies from eastern India have shown some interesting findings highlighting the need for the studies from the different parts of this country to get the national scenario on the whole. The foremost requirement is to elucidate the overall burden of HIV-HBV co-infection in India, not only the prevalence of chronic HBV infection but the rate of prior infection should be studied to know its threat level among HIV infected population of India. To fulfill this aim, multi-centre study with different risk groups across the country should be included. Besides epidemiological studies, characterization of virological parameters (HBV genotype/subgenotype distribution, their association with degrees of immunosuppression, HBeAg status) and clinical aspects (ALT, fibrosis stage) also needs attention. Moreover, full genome sequencing of HBV from HIV co-infected Indian population is required to get results whether genetic diversity from this cohort shows concordance with worldwide reports and to screen for the possible presence of any unusual mutations. Data obtained from HIV-HBV co-infected patients from eastern India, *i.e.*, effect of HIV on genetic heterogeneity of HBV also needs conformation from the other parts of this country. Another important aspect for future research includes the study on response of anti-HBV treatment among HIV-HBV co-infected patients of India in this ART era. This requires the evaluation on the incidence of drug resistant mutations, follow-up studies to elucidate its clinical and treatment outcome on combination therapy. Taken together, research on HIV-HBV co-infection in India could lead to better understanding of this global health problem which would explore the scenario to the rest of the world. Finally this will help to develop the strategy for proper management of HIV-HBV co-infection in Indian population.

REFERENCES

1 **Price JC**, Thio CL. Liver disease in the HIV-infected individual. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **8**: 1002-1012 [PMID: 20851211 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2010.08.024]

2 **Alter MJ**. Epidemiology of viral hepatitis and HIV co-infection. *J Hepatol* 2006; **44**: S6-S9 [PMID: 16352363]

3 **Thio CL**. Hepatitis B and human immunodeficiency virus coinfection. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: S138-S145 [PMID: 19399813 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22883]

4 **Bodsworth NJ**, Cooper DA, Donovan B. The influence of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection on the development of the hepatitis B virus carrier state. *J Infect Dis* 1991; **163**: 1138-1140 [PMID: 2019762]

5 **Gilson RJ**, Hawkins AE, Beecham MR, Ross E, Waite J, Briggs M, McNally T, Kelly GE, Tedder RS, Weller IV. Interactions between HIV and hepatitis B virus in homosexual men: effects on the natural history of infection. *AIDS* 1997; **11**: 597-606 [PMID: 9108941]

6 **Colin JF**, Cazals-Hatem D, Loriot MA, Martinot-Peignoux M, Pham BN, Auperin A, Degott C, Benhamou JP, Erlinger S, Valla D, Marcellin P. Influence of human immunodeficiency virus infection on chronic hepatitis B in homosexual men. *Hepatology* 1999; **29**: 1306-1310 [PMID: 10094979]

7 **Konopnicki D**, Mocroft A, de Wit S, Antunes F, Ledergerber B, Katlama C, Zilmer K, Vella S, Kirk O, Lundgren JD. Hepatitis B and HIV: prevalence, AIDS progression, response to highly active antiretroviral therapy and increased mortality in the EuroSIDA cohort. *AIDS* 2005; **19**: 593-601 [PMID: 15802978]

8 **Piroth L**, Sène D, Pol S, Goderel I, Lacombe K, Martha B, Rey D, Loustau-Ratti V, Bergmann JF, Pialoux G, Gervais A, Lascoux-Combe C, Carrat F, Cacoub P. Epidemiology, diagnosis and treatment of chronic hepatitis B in HIV-infected patients (EPIB 2005 STUDY). *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 1323-1331 [PMID: 17545709]

9 **Chun HM**, Roediger MP, Hullsiek KH, Thio CL, Agan BK, Bradley WP, Peel SA, Jagodzinski LL, Weintrob AC, Ganesan A, Wortmann G, Crum-Cianflone NF, Maguire JD, Landrum ML. Hepatitis B virus coinfection negatively impacts HIV outcomes in HIV seroconverters. *J Infect Dis* 2012; **205**: 185-193 [PMID: 22147794 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jir720]

10 **Thio CL**, Seaberg EC, Skolasky R, Phair J, Visscher B, Muñoz A, Thomas DL. HIV-1, hepatitis B virus, and risk of liver-related mortality in the Multicenter Cohort Study (MACS). *Lancet* 2002; **360**: 1921-1926 [PMID: 12493258]

11 **Sellier P**, Schnepf N, Jarrin I, Mazeron MC, Simoneau G, Parrinello M, Evans J, Lafuente-Lafuente C. Description of liver disease in a cohort of HIV/HBV coinfected patients. *J Clin Virol* 2010; **47**: 13-17 [PMID: 19897410]

12 **Núñez M**, Soriano V. Management of patients co-infected with hepatitis B virus and HIV. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2005; **5**: 374-382 [PMID: 15919623]

13 **Kellerman SE**, Hanson DL, McNaghten AD, Fleming PL. Prevalence of chronic hepatitis B and incidence of acute hepatitis B infection in human immunodeficiency virus-infected subjects. *J Infect Dis* 2003; **188**: 571-577 [PMID: 12898445]

14 **Cooley L**, Sasadeusz J. Clinical and virological aspects of hepatitis B co-infection in individuals infected with human immunodeficiency virus type-1. *J Clin Virol* 2003; **26**: 185-193 [PMID: 12600650]

15 **Chun HM**, Fieberg AM, Hullsiek KH, Lifson AR, Crum-Cianflone NF, Weintrob AC, Ganesan A, Barthel RV, Bradley WP, Agan BK, Landrum ML. Epidemiology of Hepatitis B virus infection in a US cohort of HIV-infected individuals during the past 20 years. *Clin Infect Dis* 2010; **50**: 426-436 [PMID: 20047484 DOI: 10.1086/649885]

16 **Soriano V**, Mocroft A, Peters L, Rockstroh J, Antunes F, Kirkby N, de Wit S, Monforte Ad, Flisiak R, Lundgren J. Predictors of hepatitis B virus genotype and viraemia in HIV-infected patients with chronic hepatitis B in Europe. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2010; **65**: 548-555 [PMID: 20051475 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkp479]

17 **Pérez Cachafeiro S**, Caro-Murillo AM, Berenguer J, Segura F, Gutierrez F, Vidal F, Martinez-Perez MA, Sola J, Muga R, Moreno S. Association of Patients' Geographic Origins with Viral Hepatitis Co-infection Patterns, Spain. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2011; **17**: 1116-1119 [PMID: 21749785 DOI: 10.3201/eid/1706.091810]

18 **Hoffmann CJ**, Thio CL. Clinical implications of HIV and hepatitis B co-infection in Asia and Africa. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2007; **7**: 402-409 [PMID: 17521593]

19 **Modi AA**, Feld JJ. Viral hepatitis and HIV in Africa. *AIDS Rev* 2007; **9**: 25-39 [PMID: 17474311]

20 **Harania RS**, Karuru J, Nelson M, Stebbing J. HIV, hepatitis B and hepatitis C coinfection in Kenya. *AIDS* 2008; **22**: 1221-1222 [PMID: 18525268 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32830162a8]

21 **Idoko J**, Meloni S, Muazu M, Nimzing L, Badung B, Hawkins C, Sankalé JL, Ekong E, Murphy R, Kanki P, Thio CL. Impact of hepatitis B virus infection on human immunodeficiency virus response to antiretroviral therapy in Nigeria. *Clin Infect Dis* 2009; **49**: 1268-1273 [PMID: 19772386 DOI: 10.1086/605675]

22 **Burnett RJ**, François G, Kew MC, Leroux-Roels G, Meheus A, Hoosen AA, Mphahlele MJ. Hepatitis B virus and human immunodeficiency virus co-infection in sub-Saharan Africa: a call for further investigation. *Liver Int* 2005; **25**: 201-213 [PMID: 15780040]

23 **Matthews GV**, Bartholomeusz A, Locarnini S, Ayres A, Sasaduesz J, Seaberg E, Cooper DA, Lewin S, Dore GJ, Thio CL. Characteristics of drug resistant HBV in an international collaborative study of HIV-HBV-infected individuals on extended lamivudine therapy. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 863-870 [PMID: 16549970]

24 **Thibault V**, Gaudy-Graffin C, Colson P, Gozlan J, Schnepf N, Trimoulet P, Pallier C, Saune K, Branger M, Coste M, Thoraval FR. Epidemiological, virological and clinical characteristics of HBV infection in 223 HIV co-infected patients: a French multi-centre

collaborative study. *Virol J* 2013; **10**: 87 [PMID: 23497042 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-10-87]

25 **Thio CL**, Smeaton L, Saulynas M, Hwang H, Saravanan S, Kulkarni S, Hakim J, Nyirenda M, Iqbal HS, Lalloo UG, Mehta AS, Hollabaugh K, Campbell TB, Lockman S, Currier JS. Characterization of HIV-HBV coinfection in a multinational HIV-infected cohort. *AIDS* 2013; **27**: 191-201 [PMID: 23032418 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32835a9984]

26 **Tankhiwale SS**, Khadase RK, Jalgoankar SV. Seroprevalence of anti-HCV and hepatitis B surface antigen in HIV infected patients. *Indian J Med Microbiol* 2003; **21**: 268-270 [PMID: 17643041]

27 **Solomon SS**, Srikrishnan AK, Mehta SH, Vasudevan CK, Murugavel KG, Thamburaj E, Anand S, Kumar MS, Latkin C, Solomon S, Celentano DD. High prevalence of HIV, HIV/hepatitis C virus coinfection, and risk behaviors among injection drug users in Chennai, India: a cause for concern. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2008; **49**: 327-332 [PMID: 18845962 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181831e85]

28 **Sekar R**, Amudhan M, Sivashankar M, Mythreyee M. Higher prevalence of sexually transmissible co-infections among the human immunodeficiency virus-infected population of South India. *J Med Microbiol* 2011; **60**: 394-395 [PMID: 21127159 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.024000-0]

29 **Saravanan S**, Velu V, Kumarasamy N, Nandakumar S, Murugavel KG, Balakrishnan P, Suniti S, Thyagarajan SP. Coinfection of hepatitis B and hepatitis C virus in HIV-infected patients in south India. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 5015-5020 [PMID: 17854146]

30 **Praseeda S D**, Anuradha D, Jayanthi S S. A Study on the HBV and the HCV Infections in Female Sex Workers and their Co-Infection with HIV. *J Clin Diagn Res* 2013; **7**: 234-237 [PMID: 23543505 DOI: 10.7860/JCDR/2013/4322.2735]

31 **Saha D**, Pal A, Biswas A, Panigrahi R, Sarkar N, Sarkar J, Pal M, Guha SK, Saha B, Chakrabarti S, Chakravarty R. Characterization of treatment-naive HIV/HBV co-infected patients attending ART clinic of a tertiary healthcare centre in eastern India. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e73613 [PMID: 24023688 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0073613]

32 **Sud A**, Singh J, Dhiman RK, Wanchu A, Singh S, Chawla Y. Hepatitis B virus co-infection in HIV infected patients. *Trop Gastroenterol* 2001; **22**: 90-92 [PMID: 11552493]

33 **Gupta S**, Singh S. Hepatitis B and C virus co-infections in human immunodeficiency virus positive North Indian patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 6879-6883 [PMID: 17106941]

34 **Hussain T**, Kulshreshtha KK, Sinha S, Yadav VS, Katoch VM. HIV, HBV, HCV, and syphilis co-infections among patients attending the STD clinics of district hospitals in Northern India. *Int J Infect Dis* 2006; **10**: 358-363 [PMID: 16678462]

35 **Tripathi AK**, Khanna M, Gupta N, Chandra M. Low prevalence of hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus co-infection in patients with human immunodeficiency virus in Northern India. *J Assoc Physicians India* 2007; **55**: 429-431 [PMID: 17879496]

36 **Jindal N**, Arora U, Singh K. Prevalence of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hepatitis B virus, and hepatitis C virus in three groups of populations at high risk of HIV infection in Amritsar (Punjab), Northern India. *Jpn J Infect Dis* 2008; **61**: 79-81 [PMID: 18219142]

37 **Jain M**, Chakravarti A, Verma V, Bhalla P. Seroprevalence of hepatitis viruses in patients infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. *Indian J Pathol Microbiol* 2009; **52**: 17-19 [PMID: 19136772]

38 **Lacombe K**, Massari V, Girard PM, Serfaty L, Gozlan J, Pialoux G, Mialhes P, Molina JM, Lascoux-Combe C, Wendum D, Carrat F, Zoulim F. Major role of hepatitis B genotypes in liver fibrosis during coinfection with HIV. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 419-427 [PMID: 16439876]

39 **Ramos B**, Núñez M, Martín-Carbonero L, Sheldon J, Rios P, Labarga P, Romero M, Barreiro P, García-Samaniego J, Soriano V. Hepatitis B virus genotypes and lamivudine resistance mutations in HIV/hepatitis B virus-coinfected patients. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2007; **44**: 557-561 [PMID: 17224847]

40 **Revill PA**, Littlejohn M, Ayres A, Yuen L, Colledge D, Bartholomeusz A, Sasaduesz J, Lewin SR, Dore GJ, Matthews GV, Thio CL, Locarnini SA. Identification of a novel hepatitis B virus precore/core deletion mutant in HIV/hepatitis B virus co-infected individuals. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 1701-1710 [PMID: 17690567]

41 **Audsley J**, Littlejohn M, Yuen L, Sasadeusz J, Ayres A, Desmond C, Spelman T, Lau G, Matthews GV, Avihingsanon A, Seaberg E, Philp F, Saulynas M, Ruxrungtham K, Dore GJ, Locarnini SA, Thio CL, Lewin SR, Revill PA. HBV mutations in untreated HIV-HBV co-infection using genomic length sequencing. *Virology* 2010; **405**: 539-547 [PMID: 20655563 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2010.06.038]

42 **Pal A**, Panigrahi R, Biswas A, Datta S, Sarkar N, Guha SK, Saha B, Banerjee A, Chakrabarti S, Chakravarty R. Influence of HIV-associated degree of immune suppression on molecular heterogeneity of hepatitis B virus among HIV co-infected patients. *Virology* 2013; **436**: 134-142 [PMID: 23228859 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2012.11.003]

43 **Saha D**, Pal A, Biswas A, Panigrahi R, Sarkar N, Das D, Sarkar J, Guha SK, Saha B, Chakrabarti S, Chakravarty R. Molecular characterization of HBV strains circulating among the treatment-naive HIV/HBV co-infected patients of eastern India. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e90432 [PMID: 24587360 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0090432]

44 **Lin CL**, Kao JH. The clinical implications of hepatitis B virus genotype: Recent advances. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **26** Suppl 1: 123-130 [PMID: 21199523 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2010.06541.x]

45 **Lacombe K**, Bottero J, Lemoine M, Boyd A, Girard PM. HIV/hepatitis B virus co-infection: current challenges and new strategies. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2010; **65**: 10-17 [PMID: 19900950 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkp414]

46 **Mata Marín JA**, Arroyo Anduiza CI, Calderón GM, Cazares Rodríguez S, Fuentes Allen JL, Arias Flores R, Gaytán Martínez J. Prevalence and resistance pattern of genotype G and H in chronic hepatitis B and HIV co-infected patients in Mexico. *Ann Hepatol* 2012; **11**: 47-51 [PMID: 22166560]

47 **Datta S**, Banerjee A, Chandra PK, Mahapatra PK, Chakrabarti S, Chakravarty R. Drug trafficking routes and hepatitis B in injection drug users, Manipur, India. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2006; **12**: 1954-1957 [PMID: 17326951]

48 **Martin CM**, Welge JA, Blackard JT. Hepatitis B virus (HBV) X gene diversity and evidence of recombination in HBV/HIV co-infected persons. *J Med Virol* 2011; **83**: 1142-1150 [PMID: 21520141 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.22090]

49 **Fallot G**, Halgand B, Garnier E, Branger M, Gervais A, Roque-Afonso AM, Thiers V, Billaud E, Matheron S, Samuel D, Féray C. Recombination of hepatitis B virus DNA in patients with HIV. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 1197-1208 [PMID: 22068164 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2011-300907]

50 **Araujo NM**, Araujo OC, Silva EM, Villela-Nogueira CA, Nabuco LC, Parana R, Bessone F, Gomes SA, Trepo C, Kay A. Identification of novel recombinants of hepatitis B virus genotypes F and G in human immunodeficiency virus-positive patients from Argentina and Brazil. *J Gen Virol* 2013; **94**: 150-158 [PMID: 23079380 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.047324-0]

51 **Veazjalali M**, Norder H, Magnius L, Jazayeri SM, Alavian SM, Mokhtari-Azad T. A new core promoter mutation and premature stop codon in the S gene in HBV strains from Iranian patients with cirrhosis. *J Viral Hepat* 2009; **16**: 259-264 [PMID: 19222745 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2009.01069.x]

52 **Benhamou Y**, Bochet M, Thibault V, Di Martino V, Caumes E, Bricaire F, Opolon P, Katlama C, Poynard T. Long-term incidence of hepatitis B virus resistance to lamivudine in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients. *Hepatology* 1999; **30**: 1302-1306 [PMID: 10534354]

53 **Aghasadeghi MR**, Bahramali G, Sadat SM, Farahani A, Mohraz M, Davar Siadat S, Mostafavi E, Memarnejadian A, Ardestani MS, Vahabpour R, Saraji AA, Delbaz SA. Detection of hepatitis B virus variants in HBV monoinfected and HBV/HIV coinfected Iranian patients under lamivudine treatment. *Curr HIV Res* 2011; **9**: 263-269 [PMID: 21671883 DOI: 10.2174/157016211796320315]

54 **Kouanfack C**, Aghokeng AF, Mondain AM, Bourgeois A, Kenfack A, Mpoudi-Ngolé E, Ducos J, Delaporte E, Laurent C. Lamivudine-resistant HBV infection in HIV-positive patients receiving antiretroviral therapy in a public routine clinic in Cameroon. *Antivir Ther* 2012; **17**: 321-326 [PMID: 22290198 DOI: 10.3851/IMP1911]

55 **Bottecchia M**, Souto FJ, O KM, Amendola M, Brandão CE, Niel C, Gomes SA. Hepatitis B virus genotypes and resistance mutations in patients under long term lamivudine therapy: characterization of genotype G in Brazil. *BMC Microbiol* 2008; **8**: 11 [PMID: 18211717 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2180-8-11]

56 **Mendes-Correa MC**, Pinho JR, Locarnini S, Yuen L, Sitnik R, Santana RA, Gomes-Gouvêa MS, Leite OM, Martins LG, Silva MH, Gianini RJ, Uip DE. High frequency of lamivudine resistance mutations in Brazilian patients co-infected with HIV and hepatitis B. *J Med Virol* 2010; **82**: 1481-1488 [PMID: 20648600 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.21845]

57 **Sheldon J**, Ramos B, Garcia-Samaniego J, Rios P, Bartholomeusz A, Romero M, Locarnini S, Zoulim F, Soriano V. Selection of hepatitis B virus (HBV) vaccine escape mutants in HBV-infected and HBV/HIV-coinfected patients failing antiretroviral drugs with anti-HBV activity. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2007; **46**: 279-282 [PMID: 18167643]

58 **Iacomi F**, Vincenti D, Vairo F, Solmone M, Mariano A, Piselli P, Puro V, Capobianchi MR, Antonucci G. Effect of HIV co-infection on mutation patterns of HBV in patients with lamivudine-resistant chronic hepatitis B. *J Med Virol* 2009; **81**: 1151-1156 [PMID: 19475624 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.21505]

59 **Taramasso L**, Caligiuri P, Di Biagio A, Bruzzone B, Rosso R, Icardi G, Viscoli C. Lamivudine resistance mutations in European patients with hepatitis B and patients co-infected with HIV and hepatitis B. *J Med Virol* 2011; **83**: 1905-1908 [PMID: 21915864 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.22192]

60 **Pal A**, Sarkar N, Saha D, Guha SK, Saha B, Chakrabarti S, Chakravarty R. High incidence of lamivudine-resistance associated vaccine-escape HBV mutant among HIV-coinfected patients on prolonged antiretroviral therapy. *Antivir Ther* 2015; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25654813 DOI: 10.3851/IMP2942]

61 Antiretroviral Therapy Guidelines for HIV-infected Adults and Adolescents May 2013. Department of AIDS Control National AIDS Control Organisation Ministry of Helath & Family Welfare Government of India. [accessed 2014 Oct 17]. Available from: URL: http://www.naco.gov.in/upload/Policies & Guidelines/Antiretroviral Therapy Guidelines for HIV-Infected Adults and Adolescents.pdf

62 **Benhamou Y**, Thibault V, Vig P, Calvez V, Marcelin AG, Fievet MH, Currie G, Chang CG, Biao L, Xiong S, Brosgart C, Poynard T. Safety and efficacy of adefovir dipivoxil in patients infected with lamivudine-resistant hepatitis B and HIV-1. *J Hepatol* 2006; **44**: 62-67 [PMID: 16274835]

63 **Pessôa MG**, Gazzard B, Huang AK, Brandão-Mello CE, Cassetti I, Mendes-Corrêa MC, Soriano V, Phiri P, Hall A, Brett-Smith H. Efficacy and safety of entecavir for chronic HBV in HIV/HBV coinfected patients receiving lamivudine as part of antiretroviral therapy. *AIDS* 2008; **22**: 1779-1787 [PMID: 18753861 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32830b3ab5]

64 **Price H**, Dunn D, Pillay D, Bani-Sadr F, de Vries-Sluijs T, Jain MK, Kuzushita N, Mauss S, Núñez M, Nüesch R, Peters M, Reiberger T, Stephan C, Tan L, Gilson R. Suppression of HBV by tenofovir in HBV/HIV coinfected patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e68152 [PMID: 23874527 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0068152]

65 **Cassino L**, Torres C, Mbayed V, Laufer N, Campos RH, Quarleri J. Comparative analysis of hepatitis B virus genotype a molecular evolution in patients infected with HBV and in patients co-infected with HBV and HIV. *J Med Virol* 2012; **84**: 562-569 [PMID: 22337294 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.23233]

66 **Landrum ML**, Fieberg AM, Chun HM, Crum-Cianflone NF, Marconi VC, Weintrob AC, Ganesan A, Barthel RV, Wortmann G, Agan BK. The effect of human immunodeficiency virus on hepatitis B virus serologic status in co-infected adults. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e8687 [PMID: 20084275 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0008687]

67 **Banerjee A**, Banerjee S, Chowdhury A, Santra A, Chowdhury S, Roychowdhury S, Panda CK, Bhattacharya SK, Chakravarty R. Nucleic acid sequence analysis of basal core promoter/precore/core region of hepatitis B virus isolated from chronic carriers of the virus from Kolkata, eastern India: low frequency of mutation in the precore region. *Intervirology* 2005; **48**: 389-399 [PMID: 16024943]

68 **Banerjee A**, Datta S, Chandra PK, Roychowdhury S, Panda CK, Chakravarty R. Distribution of hepatitis B virus genotypes: phylogenetic analysis and virological characteristics of genotype C circulating among HBV carriers in Kolkata, Eastern India. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 5964-5971 [PMID: 17009394]

69 **Banerjee A**, Kurbanov F, Datta S, Chandra PK, Tanaka Y, Mizokami M, Chakravarty R. Phylogenetic relatedness and genetic diversity of hepatitis B virus isolates in Eastern India. *J Med Virol* 2006; **78**: 1164-1174 [PMID: 16847957]

70 **Gandhe SS**, Chadha MS, Arankalle VA. Hepatitis B virus genotypes and serotypes in western India: lack of clinical significance. *J Med Virol* 2003; **69**: 324-330 [PMID: 12526041]

71 **Kumar A**, Kumar SI, Pandey R, Naik S, Aggarwal R. Hepatitis B virus genotype A is more often associated with severe liver disease in northern India than is genotype D. *Indian J Gastroenterol* 2005; **24**: 19-22 [PMID: 15778521]

72 **Thakur V**, Guptan RC, Kazim SN, Malhotra V, Sarin SK. Profile, spectrum and significance of HBV genotypes in chronic liver disease patients in the Indian subcontinent. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **17**: 165-170 [PMID: 11966946]

73 **Vivekanandan P**, Abraham P, Sridharan G, Chandy G, Shaji RV, Daniel D, Raghuraman S, Daniel HD, Subramaniam T. High frequency of the 1896 precore mutation in patients and blood donors with hepatitis B virus infection from the Indian subcontinent. *Mol Diagn* 2004; **8**: 51-56 [PMID: 15230642]

74 **Vivekanandan P**, Abraham P, Sridharan G, Chandy G, Daniel D, Raghuraman S, Daniel HD, Subramaniam T. Distribution of hepatitis B virus genotypes in blood donors and chronically infected patients in a tertiary care hospital in southern India. *Clin Infect Dis* 2004; **38**: e81-e86 [PMID: 15127358]

75 **Chandra PK**, Biswas A, Datta S, Banerjee A, Panigrahi R, Chakrabarti S, De BK, Chakravarty R. Subgenotypes of hepatitis B virus genotype D (D1, D2, D3 and D5) in India: differential pattern of mutations, liver injury and occult HBV infection. *J Viral Hepat* 2009; **16**: 749-756 [PMID: 19457142 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2009.01129.x]

76 **Chauhan R**, Kazim SN, Bhattacharjee J, Sakhuja P, Sarin SK. Basal core promoter, precore region mutations of HBV and their association with e antigen, genotype, and severity of liver disease in patients with chronic hepatitis B in India. *J Med Virol* 2006; **78**: 1047-1054 [PMID: 16789012]

77 **Jameel S**, Zafrullah M, Ahmad M, Kapoor GS, Sehgal S. A genetic analysis of HIV-1 from Punjab, India reveals the presence of multiple variants. *AIDS* 1995; **9**: 685-690 [PMID: 7546411]

78 **Lole KS**, Bollinger RC, Paranjape RS, Gadkari D, Kulkarni SS, Novak NG, Ingersoll R, Sheppard HW, Ray SC. Full-length human immunodeficiency virus type 1 genomes from subtype C-infected seroconverters in India, with evidence of intersubtype recombination. *J Virol* 1999; **73**: 152-160 [PMID: 9847317]

79 **Maitra A**, Singh B, Banu S, Deshpande A, Robbins K, Kalish ML, Broor S, Seth P. Subtypes of HIV type 1 circulating in India: partial envelope sequences. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 1999; **15**: 941-944 [PMID: 10408731]

80 **Siddappa NB**, Dash PK, Mahadevan A, Jayasuryan N, Hu F, Dice B, Keefe R, Satish KS, Satish B, Sreekanthan K, Chatterjee R, Venu K, Satishchandra P, Ravi V, Shankar SK, Shankarappa R, Ranga U. Identification of subtype C human immunodeficiency virus type 1 by subtype-specific PCR and its use in the characterization of viruses circulating in the southern parts of India. *J Clin Microbiol* 2004; **42**: 2742-2751 [PMID: 15184461]

81 **Deshpande A**, Recordon-Pinson P, Deshmukh R, Faure M, Jauvin V, Garrigue I, Lafon ME, Fleury HJ. Molecular characterization of HIV type 1 isolates from untreated patients of Mumbai (Bombay), India, and detection of rare resistance mutations. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 2004; **20**: 1032-1035 [PMID: 15585093]

82 **Mandal D**, Jana S, Bhattacharya SK, Chakrabarti S. HIV type 1 subtypes circulating in eastern and northeastern regions of India. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 2002; **18**: 1219-1227 [PMID: 12494921]

83 **Bhanja P**, Sengupta S, Banerjee D, Sarkar K, Jana S, Chakrabarti S. Detection of intersubtype recombinants with respect to env and nef genes of HIV-1 among female sex workers in Calcutta, India. *Virus Res* 2007; **130**: 310-314 [PMID: 17686540]

84 **Sarkar R**, Pal R, Bal B, Mullick R, Sengupta S, Sarkar K, Chakrabarti S. Genetic Characterization of HIV-1 Strains Among the Injecting Drug Users in Nagaland, India. *Open Virol J* 2011; **5**: 96-102 [PMID: 21792382 DOI: 10.2174/1874357901105010096]

85 **Sarkar R**, Sarkar K, Singh NB, Singh YM, Chakrabarti S. Near full-length genomic characterization of a HIV type 1 BC recombinant strain from Manipur, India. *Virus Genes* 2012; **45**: 201-206 [PMID: 22710995]

86 **Sarkar R**, Sarkar K, Brajachand Singh N, Manihar Singh Y, Mitra D, Chakrabarti S. Emergence of a unique recombinant form of HIV-1 from Manipur (India). *J Clin Virol* 2012; **55**: 274-277 [PMID: 22898353 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2012.07.012]

87 **Sarkar R**, Sengupta S, Mullick R, Singh NB, Sarkar K, Chakrabarti S. Implementation of a multiregion hybridization assay to characterize HIV-1 strains detected among injecting drug users in Manipur, India. *Intervirology* 2009; **52**: 175-178 [PMID: 19521106 DOI: 10.1159/000224645]

88 **Biswas A**, Panigrahi R, Banerjee A, Pal M, De BK, Chakrabarti S, Chakravarty R. Differential pattern of pre-S mutations/deletions and its association with hepatitis B virus genotypes in Eastern India. *Infect Genet Evol* 2012; **12**: 384-391 [PMID: 22266243 DOI: 10.1016/j.meegid.2012.01.007]

89 **Panigrahi R**, Biswas A, De BK, Chakrabarti S, Chakravarty R. Characterization of antiviral resistance mutations among the Eastern Indian Hepatitis B virus infected population. *Virol J* 2013; **10**: 56 [PMID: 23409946 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-10-56]

90 **Chang JJ**, Wightman F, Bartholomeusz A, Ayres A, Kent SJ, Sasadeusz J, Lewin SR. Reduced hepatitis B virus (HBV)-specific CD4+ T-cell responses in human immunodeficiency virus type 1-HBV-coinfected individuals receiving HBV-active antiretroviral therapy. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 3038-3051 [PMID: 15709024]

91 **Chang JJ**, Sirivichayakul S, Avihingsanon A, Thompson AJ, Revill P, Iser D, Slavin J, Buranapraditkun S, Marks P, Matthews G, Cooper DA, Kent SJ, Cameron PU, Sasadeusz J, Desmond P, Locarnini S, Dore GJ, Ruxrungtham K, Lewin SR. Impaired quality of the hepatitis B virus (HBV)-specific T-cell response in human immunodeficiency virus type 1-HBV coinfection. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 7649-7658 [PMID: 19458009 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00183-09]

92 **Salmon-Ceron D**, Rosenthal E, Lewden C, Bouteloup V, May T, Burty C, Bonnet F, Costagliola D, Jougla E, Semaille C, Morlat P, Cacoub P, Chêne G. Emerging role of hepatocellular carcinoma among liver-related causes of deaths in HIV-infected patients: The French national Mortalité 2005 study. *J Hepatol* 2009; **50**: 736-745 [PMID: 19231018 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2008.11.018]

93 **Iser DM**, Avihingsanon A, Wisedopas N, Thompson AJ, Boyd A, Matthews GV, Locarnini SA, Slavin J, Desmond PV, Lewin SR. Increased intrahepatic apoptosis but reduced immune activation in HIV-HBV co-infected patients with advanced immunosuppres sion. *AIDS* 2011; **25**: 197-205 [PMID: 21076271 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3283410ccb]

P- Reviewer: Datta S, Tetsuya T **S- Editor**: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.265

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 265-276
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Next-generation sequencing in clinical virology: Discovery of new viruses

Sibnarayan Datta, Raghvendra Budhauliya, Bidisha Das, Soumya Chatterjee, Vanlalhmuaka, Vijay Veer

Sibnarayan Datta, Raghvendra Budhauliya, Bidisha Das, Soumya Chatterjee, Vanlalhmuaka, Vijay Veer, Molecular Virology Laboratory, Defence Research Laboratory (DRDO), Tezpur, Assam, PIN-784001, India

Author contributions: Datta S conceptualized and designed the review; Datta S, Budhauliya R and Das B drafted the manuscript; Chatterjee S, Vanlalhmuaka and Veer V edited and critically revised the manuscript.

Supported by The author's laboratory is supported by the Defence Research and Development Organization (DRDO), Ministry of Defence, Government of India.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflict of interest related to the submitted manuscript.

Correspondence to: Sibnarayan Datta, PhD, Molecular Virology Laboratory, Defence Research Laboratory (DRDO), Post bag No. 2, Tezpur, Assam, PIN-784001, India. sndatta1978@gmail.com
Telephone: +91-3712-258508
Fax: +91-3712-258534

Received: January 24, 2015
Peer-review started: January 27, 2015
First decision: March 6, 2015
Revised: March 23, 2015
Accepted: May 7, 2015
Article in press: May 8, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

Viruses are a cause of significant health problem worldwide, especially in the developing nations. Due to different anthropological activities, human populations are exposed to different viral pathogens, many of which emerge as outbreaks. In such situations, discovery of novel viruses is utmost important for deciding prevention and treatment strategies. Since last century, a number of different virus discovery methods, based on cell culture inoculation, sequence-independent PCR have been used for identification of a variety of viruses. However, the recent emergence and commercial availability of next-generation sequencers (NGS) has entirely changed the field of virus discovery. These massively parallel sequencing platforms can sequence a mixture of genetic materials from a very heterogeneous mix, with high sensitivity. Moreover, these platforms work in a sequence-independent manner, making them ideal tools for virus discovery. However, for their application in clinics, sample preparation or enrichment is necessary to detect low abundance virus populations. A number of techniques have also been developed for enrichment or viral nucleic acids. In this manuscript, we review the evolution of sequencing; NGS technologies available today as well as widely used virus enrichment technologies. We also discuss the challenges associated with their applications in the clinical virus discovery.

Key words: PCR; Next-generation sequencers; Virus discovery; Sequence-independent single-primer amplification; Virus discovery based on cDNA-AFLP; Rolling circle amplification; Metagenomics

Core tip: Rapid development and commercial availability of next-generation sequencers (NGS) systems have dramatically changed almost every field of biological research, especially microbiology and metagenomics. Different NGS systems have been adapted and used for numerous applications in virology too. These systems are capable of rapidly sequencing and analyzing a complex mixture of nucleic acid templates, in a massively parallel

fashion, making them ideal tools for viral metagenomics and discovery. This manuscript reviews the prevailing NGS technologies, their application in virus discovery to serve as a guide for the readers, working in the field of virology, public health and in biothreat mitigation programs.

Datta S, Budhauliya R, Das B, Chatterjee S, Vanlalhmuaka, Veer V. Next-generation sequencing in clinical virology: Discovery of new viruses. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 265-276 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/265.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.265

INTRODUCTION

Viral infections are a cause of significant health burden globally, particularly in the less developed countries. During the 20th century, methods for virus detection, characterization and taxonomical classification were established, that helped in the discovery of a number of important viruses, in prevention of viral infections and treatment. By the late-1950s, it was generally believed that most of the human pathogenic viruses had been discovered, but the emergence of a number of previously unknown viruses [Hepatitis viruses, Hantavirus, human immunodeficiency virus, Marburg virus, severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), Coronavirus Ebola virus] during the later part of the century strongly challenged this belief[1].

It has now become obvious that due to different anthropological activities, such as extensive globalization of travel and business, rapid unplanned urbanization, deforestation, *etc.*, epidemiology of viral diseases have changed significantly[1]. This change has led to the increased exposure of different human populations to newer pathogens, including viruses, mostly zoonotic in nature[2,3]. The emergence of Ebola virus, Nipah virus, Sin Nombre Hantavirus, SARS, Influenza viruses (H1N1, H7N9), and MERS viruses in the recent past[4], clearly signify the onset of many others in the near future. According to a recent statistical estimate, there are at least 320,000 mammalian viruses that are waiting to be discovered[5]. The World Health Organization (WHO) has correctly cautioned that, "It would be extremely naïve and complacent to assume that there will be no other disease like AIDS, Ebola, or SARS, sooner or later"[6].

Apart from natural outbreaks, the risk of pathogens, especially deadly viruses, to be used as biological weapons and agents of bioterrorism have also increased in the recent years[7]. Being exceptionally diverse, in term of etiology, morphology, nucleic acid type and sequence information, clinical manifestations, *etc.*, rapid detection and identification of viruses pose great challenge to clinical investigators. Nevertheless, during natural or deliberate outbreaks, identification and characterization of viruses in clinical samples is extremely essential to facilitate prevention and quarantine strategies, implement specific diagnostic tools, and also to determine explicit treatment strategy.

This article will review the gradual evolution and recent advances in the field of virus discovery, with special reference to the next-generation sequencing (NGS) technologies and related molecular biology methodologies.

EVOLUTION OF VIRUS DISCOVERY TECHNIQUES

Classical approaches to virus discovery

Classically, virus discovery from clinical samples was based on filtration (to remove host cells and other microbes), inoculation of the cell free filtrate in suitable cell cultures followed by purification of the viruses from cultures and their characterization[8-10]. Morphological changes in the cultured cells, collectively known as cytopathic effect, such as formation of syncytia, cell rounding, lysis, detachment, or inclusion bodies, *etc.*, indicate the presence and successful infection of the virus(es) in the cells[11]. Virus isolate(s) are purified from the cultured cells or culture supernatant using density gradient and other high speed centrifugal techniques. This is followed by structural characterization of viral particles, antigens, nucleic acids, through different biophysical and biochemical methods[4]. Although classical methods are sometimes considered as time-consuming, tedious and need significant experimental basis, but the cell inoculation method still remains an exceptional source of enriched viral particles required for serological, molecular characterization and other purposes. Nonetheless, in many cases, viruses are not readily infective to cell cultures, which severely hamper their characterization. Additionally, repeated passaging of the virus to obtain high titer could change the population of virus being sought[12].

Nucleic acid sequence-dependent amplification approaches to virus discovery

Subsequently, with the development of nucleic acid sequence-dependent techniques, such as PCR-sequencing and microarrays, the requirement of cell culture based traditional methods became obsolete to a large extent[13-16]. These techniques were comparatively much faster as compared to classical techniques and led to the discovery of several new genotypes of known viruses. Among PCR and microarray based methods, the former gained enormous popularity due to its ability to rapidly amplify very small amounts of viral sequences from clinical samples. Even though, the prior requirement of sequence information (to design primers and hybridization probe), made this technique suitable for discovery of new genotypes of known viruses, but not appropriate for absolutely novel viruses. This limitation was later addressed by the development of consensus or degenerate PCR[17,18]. Although, this PCR method was tolerant to considerable sequence variation, but it lacked its original sensitivity and was still critically dependent on prior sequence information of the virus genera/family being investigated.

Moreover, this method could only amplify small fractions of viral genome, which were sometimes not enough for further analysis.

Nucleic acid sequence-independent amplification approaches to virus discovery

The limitations of sequence dependent techniques prompted the investigators to resort to "metagenomics", a technique that does not presume any knowledge about the organisms being investigated[19]. Metagenomics is the study of total genetic material present in a given sample, without culturing the organisms present in it. Conventional metagenomics analyses involved direct amplification of the nucleic acids through PCR, cloning and sequencing, *etc.*[15,20]. At the outset, this technique was intensely used for assessing the bacterial diversity within highly diverse samples ranging from soil, oceans, and lakes to human gut and stool, which demonstrated the power of this technique to discover genetic materials of unknown origin[21]. Subsequently, early virus discovery investigators developed a number of random amplification techniques for viral metagenomics, such as sequence-independent single-primer amplification (SISPA), virus discovery based on cDNA-AFLP (VIDISCA), rolling circle amplification (RCA), *etc.*, to amplify viral genetic materials for cloning and sequencing[15,20,22]. Extensive use of these viral metagenomic techniques, led to the discovery of different viruses, including human T-cell lymphotropic virus type-1, Torque Teno virus, different Parvoviruses, Coronaviruses, Polyomaviruses, Hepatitis C virus, Sin Nombre virus, Human Herpesviruses 6 and 8, and West Nile virus *etc.* in clinical samples[23-26].

NGS-based metagenomic approaches to virus discovery

In all the above nucleic acid sequence based virus discovery approaches, the Sanger sequencing method played a very significant role. However, with the commercial availability of high throughput sequencing technologies in 2005, a gradual shift in generation of sequencing technologies became evident. These massively parallel sequencing technologies evolved rapidly and entirely transformed almost every field of biological research including clinical research laboratories[27]. NGS is presently the most attractive approach towards metagenomics, including viral metagenomics, due to its independence from the requirement of prior sequence information. Furthermore, being highly sensitive, NGS can rapidly recuperate nearly full genome sequences of viruses, with relatively less amount of starting material as compared to conventional cloning based approaches[28,29]. Moreover, the large dynamic detection range of the NGS has established it as the most powerful technology available till date, which has catalyzed the rate of virus discovery[30-33]. In combination with conventional methods such as SISPA, VIDISCA, RCA, *etc.*, NGS can dramatically augment turnaround time and sensitivity of virus discovery[23]. Additionally, NGS has enormous, exciting applications in virology, including analysis of viral evolution and quasispecies analysis, antiviral resistance, vaccine, *etc.*[23,33-35].

A comparison of different virus discovery approaches, their advantages and limitations, applicability in different scenarios, *etc.*, is presented in Table 1.

EVOLUTION OF SEQUENCING TECHNOLOGIES

First-generation sequencers

Originally, two different DNA sequencing methods were described almost simultaneously, the Sanger's method, and the Maxam-Gilbert's method[36,37], both considered as the first-generation of sequencing methods. Sanger's method was based on DNA sequencing with chain-terminating inhibitors, while Maxam-Gilbert's method was based on base-specific chemical modification and cleavage of the DNA backbone[38]. Due to its ease and possibility of automation, Sanger's method became instantly popular and was successfully commercialized into DNA sequencing machines. As a result, for almost last 3 decades, the Sanger's method dominated as the gold standard for DNA sequencing[39]. This sequencing method was primarily accomplished by amplification of templates with fluorescently labeled chain-terminating nucleotides, followed by capillary electrophoresis of the amplicons and reading the fluorescence signals, which can provide consistent sequence information of templates up to 1000 bp. Despite its wide use for sequencing pure templates, this sequence method was constrained by its low throughput, higher cost, time and labor involved in sequencing larger genomes. Furthermore, complete dependence on specific primers, inability to sequence the genetic material from a mix of diverse organisms severely restricted its use for direct metagenomic applications.

Second-generation sequencers

To overcome the technological constraints of the Sanger sequencers, second-generation or the NGS technologies were developed, based on a large number of innovations in the amplification technology, sequencing chemistry, microfluidics, imaging technologies, and Bioinformatics, *etc.*[40]. These novel sequencing technologies, initially commercialized by two companies, namely Roche and Illumina, and later by Life Technologies have spectacularly high throughput and high sensitivity, making them more appropriate for direct application in metagenomic studies. As compared to Sanger sequencers, currently available 2nd-generation NGS platforms are capable of generating only short sequence reads, but the true magnificence of NGS lies in their capability to sequence and analyze complex mixes of DNA in a massively parallel manner, generating millions to billions of sequence reads in a single run. Consequently, these technologies are often referred to as "short read" technologies and are distinguished by "third generation" sequencing technologies (or "long read") that provide significantly longer reads (kilobases). However, at present, these long read technologies have, on the whole, lower throughput and accuracy[41-43].

Table 1 A comparative evaluation of the different virus discovery approaches showing advantages and disadvantages associated with them

	Classical approaches (Cell culture and infection based)	Nucleic acid sequence-dependent amplification approaches	Nucleic acid sequence-independent amplification approaches	Next-generation sequencers-based metagenomic approaches
Requirement of cell culture systems	Yes, required for virus particle enrichment	Not required	Not required	Not required
Information about the cytopathic effects of the virus	Yes, could be achieved through cell changes	No information could be achieved	No information could be achieved	No information could be achieved
Requirement of special equipments for purification	Yes, Ultracentrifuge/high speed centrifuges, density gradient is required for preparing pure virus	Not necessary, semi pure preparations obtained through low speed centrifuges are suitable	Not necessary, semi pure preparations obtained through low speed centrifuges are suitable	Not necessary, semi pure preparations obtained through low speed centrifuges are suitable
Information about detailed morphological/structural features of the virus	Yes, could be achieved through Electron/Atomic Force microscopy	No information on virus morphology/structure could be achieved directly	No information on virus morphology/structure could be achieved directly	No information on virus morphology/structure could be achieved directly
Time required for virus identification	Long time is required for identification, ranging from days to weeks	Comparatively faster, days required if cloning and sequencing is involved. Faster with microarray based approaches	Comparatively faster, virus could be identified within few days	Fastest available approach, identification could be done within days and even some times within hours
Requirement of prior knowledge about the virus	Not required	Some information is required regarding genus/family to design primers/probes	Being sequence independent technique, no information is required	Being sequence independent technique, no information is required
Dynamic detection range	Very narrow	Narrow	Wide	Extremely wide
Tolerance to non-viral materials	Vulnerable to other pathogens capable of infecting cell	Being sequence dependent, less vulnerable to other sequences from host and other pathogens	Being sequence in-dependent, more vulnerable to other sequences from host and other pathogens. Virus enrichment techniques required before analysis	Being sequence in-dependent, more vulnerable to other sequences from host and other pathogens. Virus enrichment techniques required before analysis
Suitability for discovery of new viruses	Yes	Less suitable, good at discovery of genotypes/ variants of known viruses	Yes	Yes
Suitability during outbreaks	Not suitable due to requirement of long time	Not suitable due to requirement of prior sequence information	Yes, but still considerable time is required during outbreaks	Being fast, very much suitable in detecting pathogens in an outbreak scenario

Even though, widely distinct in their sequencing chemistry and detection technology, NGS platforms are common in terms of massively parallel sequencing of clonally amplified or single DNA molecules. On these platforms, sequencing is executed by repetitive cycles of polymerase-mediated nucleotide extension (Roche-454, Illumina GA) or oligonucleotide ligation (SOLiD). Using a "wash-and-scan" technique, sequence data is acquired as large sets of fluorescence or luminescence images of the flow-cell surface, subsequent to each repetitive sequencing cycle step[44]. This data is later compiled by using a computer-intensive pipeline for image integration, quality assessment, storage, processing and analysis. A typical NGS run generates several hundred megabases (Mb) to gigabases (Gb) of nucleotide sequence data, depending on the platform.

Although NGS platforms commercially available today, provide massive parallel sequencing, but due to their technological features and data output capabilities, every platform is suitable for certain specific applications. Hence, as per explicit requirements, NGS platform needs to be carefully selected. In cases of virus discovery, which is the scope of this review, NGS platforms capable of generating longer sequence reads are preferable over the others. Long reads are extremely useful for *de novo* read assembly and generation of longer contigs, which endow with improved statistical power of finding related sequences in nucleotide database searches[45]. Conversely, for characterization and analysis of virus variants and quasispecies, platforms providing high quality reads, *i.e.*, less error and increased depth became the choice, over longer read lengths. In this review, we will discuss briefly the most popular NGS technologies (Illumina and Roche 454), widely used in virology. The details of the technologies, sequencing chemistries and other applications have been reviewed elsewhere in details[10,31,34].

The most widely used NGS is the Illumina sequencing technology, where clonal amplification of the template is attained to form DNA clusters, using primers attached to solid surface and sequencing is achieved *via* reversible dye-terminator technology. Although Illumina sequencing has higher sequence yield at a relatively low cost per base, this platform has a characteristic systematic base calling bias, exhibit differences in sequence quality, a higher sequencing error rate and increased single-base errors associated with GGC motifs[46-49].

On the other hand, 454 sequencing platforms are based on parallel pyrosequencing, utilizing sequencing-by-synthesis chemistry and chemiluminescence is detected to achieve nucleotide sequence. This method amplifies DNA through an emulsion PCR, generating

clones of DNA using a single template. The main benefit of this technology is its ability to produce long reads, while restricted by its high error rate in homopolymers containing regions, and a high rate of artificial amplification[50-52]. The error rates of NGS are higher relative to the Sanger sequencers, and also require advanced computational tools and statistical calculations before further data processing and assembly[53]. Due to the NGS platform specific errors, presently, use of barcoding strategies, simultaneous sequencing of the samples by two different NGS platforms or high coverage sequencing have been recommended to counteract the effects of errors[54-56]. Nevertheless, these issues are being continually addressed and resolved in the newer versions of these platforms to make them more robust, both in terms of quality and quantity.

With the advancement in instrumentations, NGS platforms are now available as benchtop sequencing instruments in the form of the 454 GS Junior (Roche) and MiSeq (Illumina) which, despite having a small footprint, offer exciting NGS capabilities for clinical settings, at modest running costs[45]. MiSeq includes the Nextera, TruSeq, and reversible terminator-based sequencing by synthesis chemistry and has highest data integrity with broader range of application, including amplicon sequencing, clone checking, small genome sequencing etc. The MiSeq provides maximum throughput per run with lowest error rates, while the 454 GS Junior generates longer reads (approximately 600 bases) with better assemblies, but is limited by lower throughput and homopolymer-associated errors.

Apart from the two most widely used NGS technologies, another technology known as the SOLiD technology (by Life Technologies) is commercially available, but its representation in the scientific literature is limited compared to Roche 454 and Illumina, which might be attributable to its recent availability or complexity of data processing and assembly[57]. Nevertheless, SOLiD is slowly but gradually being accepted as a very reliable platform and has recently been used for *de novo* sequencing of a large mammalian genome[58].

Technical details of the NGS technologies have been extensively reviewed earlier[23,45,59]. A comparison of the currently available NSG systems is also available at the Genohub website (https://genohub.com/ngs-instrument-guide/).

Third-generation sequencers

The third generation of the sequencers has evolved lately, that include the Ion Torrent (Life Technologies), Single-Molecule Real-Time technology SMRT (Pacific Biosciences), and the Nanopore sequencing technology (Oxford Nanopore Technologies). Third-generation sequencers are distinct from their predecessors in two primary features: (1) template amplification is not needed prior to sequencing, which cuts down template preparation time; and cost (2) the signal is registered in real time, directly, during the enzymatic reaction. Apart from the Ion Torrent, rest of the third-generation sequencing technologies is quite recent, and still in the evaluation stages. Moreover, data on their application in the field of virus discovery is extremely scanty. Hence, all these will be discussed only briefly in this review.

The Ion Torrent Personal Genome Machine is based on a semiconductor based sequencing technology and does not require a fluorescence or chemiluminescence based image scanning, resulting in high speed, low cost sequencing system within small size equipment. Cyclically, the semiconductor microfluidic chip is flooded with each nucleotide, and a voltage is generated if it is incorporated, and no voltage is generated when not incorporated. This is based on the fact that every time a nucleotide is incorporated into the DNA molecules, a proton is released, causing a change in voltage, which is subsequently detected and registered by the chip[45,60].

Using the SMRT, single large DNA molecules can be sequenced with high processivity of up to 7 kb, with average read lengths of 3-4 kb[23,61]. On a SMRT cell, numerous Zero-Mode Waveguides are embedded with single set of enzymes and DNA template. During the reaction, enzyme incorporates a nucleotide into the complementary strand, cleaving off fluorescent dye linked with the nucleotide, and this fluorescent signal is captured[61].

Nanopore sequencing is another recently developed method of the third-generation sequencing[62,63]. Nanopore is a tiny biopore with diameter in nanoscale, and involves a heptameric transmembrane channel α-haemolysin (αHL) from *Staphylococcus aureus.* This protein has the ability to tolerate extraordinary voltage and current conditions (up to 100 mV, 100 pA). Under a standard condition of ionic flow, when a DNA molecule is passed through the channel of, *etc*., HL, current is modulated according to the size difference between every deoxyribonucleoside monophosphate (dNMP). This current modulation is detected by standard electrophysiological techniques and the dNMP is identified[62]. Nanopore sequencers are extremely small (size of a USB drive), can sequence long read faster (> 5 kb at a rate of 1 bp/ns), free of fluorescence/chemiluminescence and other enzymes, less sensitive to temperature and other conditions. These benefits make it fit as an extremely rapid sequencing device for field conditions, but the requirement of highly purified DNA needs to be addressed for their wide application in virus discovery.

Among the different NGS platforms available today, choosing the right one for correct application is extremely essential before embarking on a metagenomic project. In case of absence of a reference genome, or where highly divergent sequences are expected, such as in case of virus discovery, *de novo* sequencing and assembly is necessary. Such an assembly requires extensive computational power and datasets containing longer reads with higher coverage are preferable[64-66]. When reference genomes for assembly are available, technologies that generate short reads could also be used to have a high coverage of the metagenomes[53].

When compared in terms of publications, Illumina technology is the most widely used platform, irrespective of application. Earlier the use of this platform was not suited for virus discovery or *de novo* sequencing projects due to its short reads. However, regular augmentation in read length for Illumina platforms has made it suitable for *de novo* assembly of genomes, at a sensitivity, comparable to specific PCR[53,67,68]. However, according to the number of publications, specifically for metagenomic studies, pyrosequencing technology (Roche 454) is preferred over the other NGS approaches producing shorter reads. Of late, Roche has announced the discontinuation of its 454 technology by the mid-2016, which leaves the new investigators with alternative NGS platforms available today.

SAMPLE PREPARATION FOR VIRAL METAGENOMICS AND DISCOVERY

NGS has emerged as the most promising tool for the detection and discovery of novel infectious agents in clinical specimens[23]. However, being unbiased method of sequencing, NGS is greatly affected by very low virus-to-host genome ratios in clinical samples[69-71]. Hence, enrichment of pathogen genetic material or depletion of host genetic materials is essential to maximize sensitivity for discovery of novel pathogens, including viruses in clinical samples[23,72,73]. A schematic representation of the different steps involved in NGS based virus metagenomics and discovery is depicted in Figure 1.

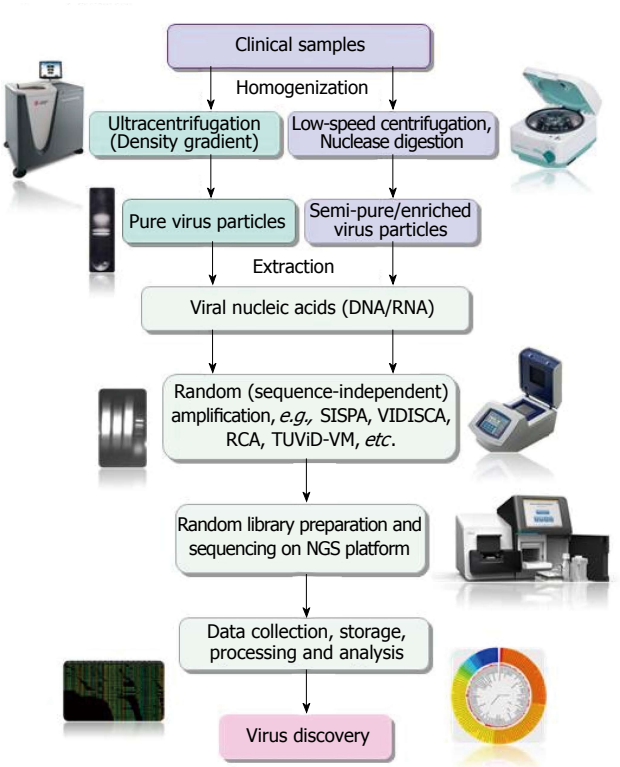


Figure 1 Diagrammatic representation of main steps of clinical virus discovery by next-generation sequencer based technologies.

Physical enrichment of virus particles

A number of virus enrichment protocols involving physical and enzymatic techniques have been successfully applied for clinical samples. These include virus capsid purification through freeze/thaw cycles of cell disruption, filtration through appropriate pore membranes (0.45 μm and 0.22 μm), centrifugation, prior nuclease digestion of host genome, *etc.*, followed by extraction of capsid-protected viral nucleic acids, their conversion to cDNA (in case of RNA virus) and non-specific PCR amplification[15]. The efficiency of enrichment in NGS-mediated virus discovery, especially the prior nuclease digestion has been clearly demonstrated by different studies[12,72,74]. Recently Hall *et al*[74] reviewed literatures available on methods for enrichment of viral nucleic acids from clinical samples for NGS-based studies. They found that both ultracentrifugation-mediated enrichment and low-speed centrifugation together with filtration and a nuclease digestion step is widely used for enrichment of viral nucleic acids.

Alternatively, approaches to deplete host genetic materials include use of methylation-specific DNase activity, host ribosomal RNA removal, duplex-specific nuclease normalization methods[75-77]. Such techniques on one hand increase the detection sensitivity of the NGS platform, circumventing the cost and time involved in generating and analyzing huge amounts of background data on the other hand. Ideally, in a clinical setting virus enrichment methods are required to be rapid, standardized and undemanding in terms of cost, manpower or instrumentation facility.

Enrichment of viral nucleic acids through non-specific amplification techniques

A number of virus enrichment methods have been applied successfully for NGS studies of different clinical samples. Of them, the sequence-independent single primer amplification (SISPA), developed by Reyes and Kim[78], was modified for successful amplification of viral sequences from serum by Allander *et al*[79] and later by others for identification of novel viruses through Sanger sequencing[80-83]. Recently, SISPA was used in combination with NGS and shown to be successful in detection of Hepatitis B and C viruses (HBV, HCV) in solid tissue samples[72]. In a recent study, SISPA-NGS strategy was found to be helpful in detection of Schmallenberg virus (SBV) in veterinary samples[84], suggesting the utility of this technique in screening of field animals that are intermediate hosts to many human viruses. In some of the recent studies no specific physical enrichment of virus particles was applied, but NGS was done on SISPA generated random PCR products, that also resulted in rapid detection of hemorrhagic fever-associated Yellow Fever Virus (YFV), Lujo virus (LUJV), and a new Arenavirus (related to lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus, LCMV) in diverse clinical samples[85-87].

Likewise, another well-established sequence-independent amplification technique is the virus discovery

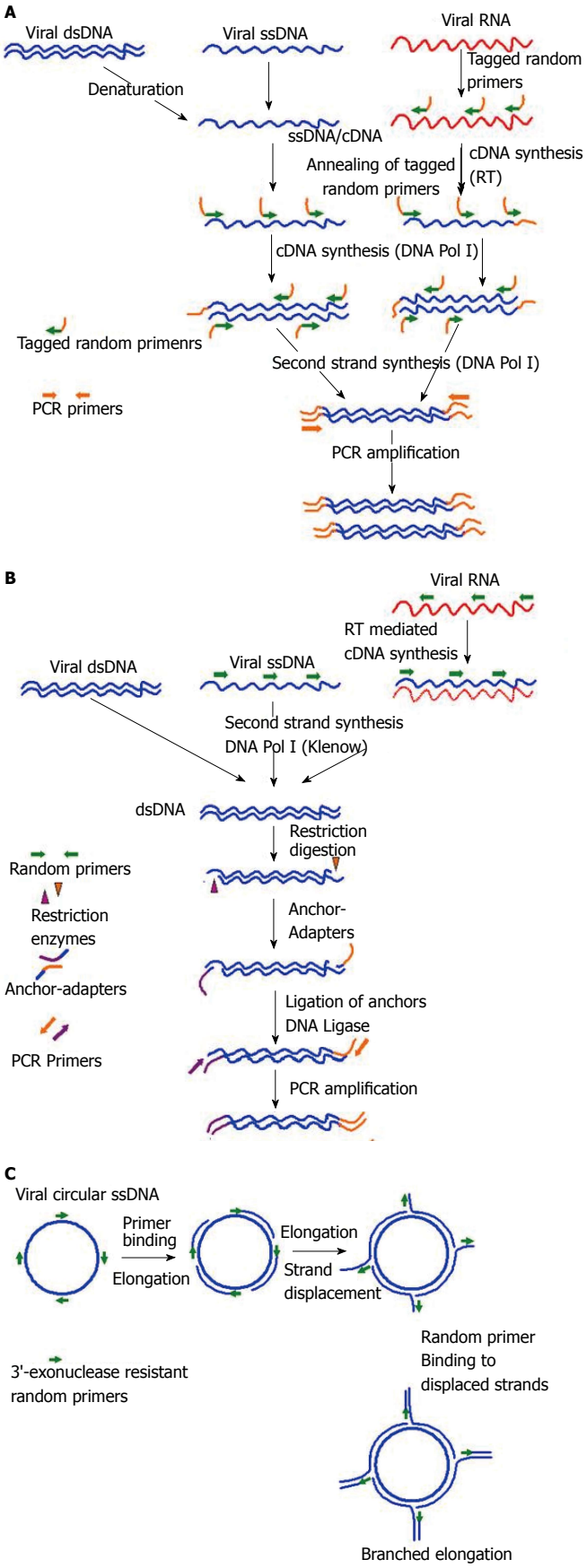


Figure 2 Different virus nucleic acid enrichment techniques. A: Sequence-independent single-primer amplification. Initially viral RNA and ssDNA is transcribed into complementary DNA (cDNA) using reverse transcriptase (RT) and DNA Pol I respectively, with the help of tagged-primers having defined sequence at the 5' end while random nucleotides at the 3' end. Subsequently, second strand synthesis is performed using DNA Pol I (Klenow) to make the cDNA double stranded (dsDNA). Now all the nuceic acids present in the reaction are dsDNA fragments have tagged sequence at their ends. Finally, anchored dsDNA is amplified with primers annealing to the adapter specific sequences, PCR product are checked and ready for analysis through cloning-sequencing or direct sequencing through next-generation sequencers (NGS); B: Virus discovery based on cDNA-AFLP. Initially viral RNA is reverse transcribed into complementary DNA (cDNA) using RT and random primers. Subsequently, second strand synthesis is performed using DNA Pol I (Klenow) to make the cDNA double stranded (dsDNA). In this step, other viral single stranded DNA (ssDNA) viral is also converted to dsDNA. Now all the nuceic acids present in the reaction are dsDNA. In the next step dsDNA are digested with a set of frequent cutter restriction endonucleases, which produce asymmetric cuts. Now specially designed matching anchor-adapters are ligated ends of the restriction fragments using DNA Ligase. Finally, anchored dsDNA is amplified with primers annealing to the adapter specific sequences, PCR product are checked and ready for analysis through cloning-sequencing or direct sequencing through NGS; C: Rolling circle amplification. Amplification of multiply primed single stranded circular viral genomes. 3'-exonuclease resistant primers randomly bind the genome and are elongated by the Phi29 polymerase. The growing strand subsequently displaces the preceding strand of the DNA, making the strand available for binding of random primers and further elongation. This cyclic displacement and elongation leads to a highly branched structure of growing DNA, which is linear in topology. Rolling circle amplification has the capability to specifically enrich the circular ssDNA genomes in an environment of other genetic materials, and could then be characterized by NGS.

cDNA-amplified fragment length polymorphism (VIDISCA), used for discovery of a novel human SARS-associated coronavirus, HCoV-NL63[88,89]. Later this technique was successfully used in combination with Sanger sequencing to discover other novel viruses in clinical samples[90,91]. To late, the utility of this technique in combination with NGS for virus discovery has been demonstrated in veterinary samples, as well as in clinical samples[92,93]. Additionally, Shaukat *et al*[92] modified the VIDISCA method at the reverse transcription step by using specially designed mix of random hexamers that do not anneal to ribosomal RNA, further increasing the specificity of the assay. Apart from SISPA and VIDISCA, multiply-primed RCA has also been demonstrated to enrich circular viral genomes, suitable for sequencing through NSG platforms[94-96]. A diagrammatic representation of SISPA, VIDISCA and RCA is depicted in Figure 2 respectively. Recently, Kohl *et al*[97] reported an ultra-centrifugation and DNA digestion based enrichment protocol followed by SISPA for detection of known and new viruses in human tissue samples. This technique, termed as tissue-based universal virus detection for viral metagenomics was demonstrated to complete within 28 h, making it suitable for discovery of zoonotic and biothreat agents of viral origin during outbreaks[97].

Alternatively, in another study, the authors used a barcoding strategy to carry out unbiased deep sequencing in multiple clinical samples and removed human and other low-quality sequences through bioinformatic filtering pipeline and identified viruses belonging to the Herpesviridae, Flaviviridae, Circoviridae, Anelloviridae, Asfarviridae, and Parvoviridae families in serum samples from tropical febrile illness[2].

Apart from virus discovery and detection in clinical samples, analysis of quasispecies, drug-resistant viral

Table 2 Important bioinformatics challenges associated with application of next-generation sequencers in viral diagnostics action taken or proposed to overcome challenges

Bioinformatics challenges associated with application of NGS in viral diagnostics	Action taken or proposed to overcome challenges
Generation of huge volumes of data by NGS platforms-"data deluge"	Advancement in storage and computation facilities, availability of computer with greater storage and highly powerful processors, cluster/grid computing and cloud computing. Computation facilities needs to be updated with emergence of newer platforms delivering larger datasets
Challenges in uploading data for submission to databases and supercomputing servers for analysis	Requirement of uninterrupted and extremely fast networks
Challenges in storage, public archival and ease of access	Creation of specialized data archive such as the Sequence Read Archive by NIH and ENA (European nucleotide Archive) by EBI. Sharing of data within the three major databases (NIH, EBI and DDBJ) for public accessibility
Challenges in analysis and visualization of large volumes of data, beyond the scope of computation facilities available in molecular biology laboratories	Creation of metagenomic or NGS data analysis pipelines and integrated tool kits, such as those available at NIH-NCBI, EMBL-EBI, MGRAST, CASAVA, MetaVir, Megan, UCSC Genome Browser, BioLinux, *etc*., availability of cloud computing based servers such as Galaxy
Challenges in alignment, *de novo* assembly, gene prediction and phylogenetic analyses NGS datasets, especially short read datasets	Availability of alignment algorithms/programs such as ABySS, ELAND, SOAP, Bowtie, Cloudburst, Zoom, BWA, SHRiMP, MOM, SeqMap, Metagene, Velvet, QSRA, ALLPATHS, EDENA, VCAKE, FragGeneScan, BLAST, GLIMMER, EULER-SR, Avadis, Eagle View, *etc.*
Interpretation of huge amount of data generated in metagenomic analyses by NGS platforms	Proper interpretation of analyzed data is of utmost importance to identify newer pathogens as well as their clinical significance

NGS: Next-generation sequencers.

variants and monitoring of genetic consistency of live viral vaccines there are numerous applications of NGS, which are directly associated with human viral diseases. NGS-based virus detection technique has also been shown to be useful in surveillance of vector-borne and zoonotic viruses[23]. This possibility of detecting arthropod-borne viruses was demonstrated using Dengue virus-infected mosquito pools (Aedes aegypti), where, use of NGS resulted in highly sensitive detection of mosquito pools containing infected vectors[98]. Similarly, in a surveillance study focused on the discovery of bat-transmitted pathogens, using coronavirus consensus PCR and unbiased NGS, a new coronavirus related to SARS-CoV was documented[99].

BIOINFORMATICS CHALLENGES ASSOCIATED WITH NGS

Regardless of the field of applications and platforms used, ever-increasing capacities of NGS platforms and their wide usage have resulted in extremely unprecedented volumes of data. This is commonly referred to as "data deluge", and is represented by huge NGS datasets deposited in specialized data archive such as the SRA, a primary archive of NIH, dedicated for submission and storage of raw data and alignment information, generated by all major NGS platforms. Being part of the International Nucleotide Sequence Database Collaboration at the National Center for Biotechnology Information, data submitted to either of the databases SRA, ENA (European nucleotide Archive of European Bioinformatics Institute, EBI) and the DDBJ (DNA Database of Japan) are shared amongst them. SRA serves as an initial point for downstream analysis of NGS data and also provide access to data from human clinical samples to authorized users. According to a recent comparison of GenBank statistics (Release 197, 8/2013 *vs* Release 203, 8/2014), total nucleotide entries to the GenBank represent an annual growth of more than 43%, and annual growth exclusively for virus sequence entries is 21%[100]. This data deluge has posed significant hardware, software and bioinformatics challenges towards storing, transfer, analysis and interpretation of the data[101].

All NGS platforms are advancing towards the capability to sequence longer DNA fragments, and to generate even larger volume of data sets[53]. To analyze such gigantic volumes of data, exceptionally massive computational facilities are also required, which has entirely revolutionized the field of Bioinformatics[60,102]. Once NGS sequence has been generated, the biggest of the challenges comes, *i.e.*, computational requirements for storage and analysis of the massive data sets. Although a detailed description of bioinformatic processes involved in metagenomics data analysis is beyond the scale of this review, the key processes involved in the NGS data analysis are quality assessment, sequence assembly and annotation of the dataset against a database of nucleotide or protein sequences[34]. Quality assessment and data cleaning involves filtering out of low-quality sequences from the dataset, followed by alignment and error correction to separate true variance from the experimental noise[23]. After sequencing and quality assessment, there are two approaches for assembly of the reads. The sequence reads are then mapped to the available reference genome, or individual sequencing reads are assembled *de novo,* using different assembly servers[34,103]. The *de novo* approach is generally followed for discovery of viruses, considering the fact that reference genomes or related sequences may not be available in the databases. To determine the affinity of the assembled reads or the contigs, Basic Local Alignment Search Tool (BLAST) is used, that computes regions of similarity and statistical significance of possible

matches between a query sequence and GenBank submissions[104]. Despite the availability of the BLAST, analyzing a viral metagenome may still be a challenging task in case of highly divergent or novel viral families, which are not represented in the database.

In the Table 2, we have summarized the challenges associated with handling and analysis of NGS generated data, their solutions presently available or suggested.

CONCLUSION

During the last decade, numerous innovations in virus enrichment techniques, sequencing chemistry and signal detection technologies, availability of high end dedicated bioinformatic servers for analysis of the NGS data has greatly accelerated the discovery of viral pathogens in clinical samples. Apart from its increasing applications in virus discovery, NGS has been successfully used in monitoring of antiviral drug resistance, investigation of viral evolution, diversity and quasispecies, and evaluation of the human virome. The supreme advantage of the NGS platforms is their ability to characterize hundreds of different pathogens simultaneously that are not otherwise cultivable using conventional approaches. Nevertheless, there are a number of challenges that need to be overcome for these technologies to become routine in clinical settings. The initial cost of set-up, turnaround time, requirement of powerful computational facilities along with the requirement of a highly skilled group of people are the major barriers to their wide application in resource-limited countries, where the cases of emerging viruses are the highest.

Despite the broad utility of NGS in virus discovery, extremely high sensitivity of this technique also makes it prone to unintentional contamination. The use of random primers for enrichment and the deep sequencing may result in significant potential for carryover contamination from laboratory reagents. Simultaneous analyses of blinded controls may be one approach towards excluding such possibilities, but it will also double the cost of sequencing. Another outcome of the NGS data is the rapid rate of discovery of viruses. However, the absence of appropriate cell culture systems or animal models limit the possibility of experimental studies on these new viruses, thereby the clinical significance of these new viruses remains to be properly understood.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thankfully acknowledge the Defence Research and Development Organization (DRDO), Ministry of Defence, Government of India for funding and support. We also thank the editor and three anonymous reviewers for their constructive comments, which helped us immensely to improve this manuscript.

REFERENCES

1 **Bichaud L**, de Lamballerie X, Alkan C, Izri A, Gould EA, Charrel RN. Arthropods as a source of new RNA viruses. *Microb Pathog* 2014; **77**: 136-141 [PMID: 25239874 DOI: 10.1016/j.micpath.2014.09.002]

2 **Yozwiak NL**, Skewes-Cox P, Stenglein MD, Balmaseda A, Harris E, DeRisi JL. Virus identification in unknown tropical febrile illness cases using deep sequencing. *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 2012; **6**: e1485 [PMID: 22347512 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pntd.0001485]

3 **Jones KE**, Patel NG, Levy MA, Storeygard A, Balk D, Gittleman JL, Daszak P. Global trends in emerging infectious diseases. *Nature* 2008; **451**: 990-993 [PMID: 18288193 DOI: 10.1038/nature06536]

4 **Dong J**, Olano JP, McBride JW, Walker DH. Emerging pathogens: challenges and successes of molecular diagnostics. *J Mol Diagn* 2008; **10**: 185-197 [PMID: 18403608 DOI: 10.2353/jmoldx.2008.070063]

5 **Anthony SJ**, Epstein JH, Murray KA, Navarrete-Macias I, Zambrana-Torrelio CM, Solovyov A, Ojeda-Flores R, Arrigo NC, Islam A, Ali Khan S, Hosseini P, Bogich TL, Olival KJ, Sanchez-Leon MD, Karesh WB, Goldstein T, Luby SP, Morse SS, Mazet JA, Daszak P, Lipkin WI. A strategy to estimate unknown viral diversity in mammals. *MBio* 2013; **4**: e00598-e00513 [PMID: 24003179 DOI: 10.1128/mBio.00598-13]

6 World Health Annual Report 2007. [accessed 2015 Jan 1]. Available from: http://www.who.int/whr/2007/overview/en/index2.html

7 **Bronze MS**, Huycke MM, Machado LJ, Voskuhl GW, Greenfield RA. Viral agents as biological weapons and agents of bioterrorism. *Am J Med Sci* 2002; **323**: 316-325 [PMID: 12074486]

8 **Todaro GJ**, Zeve V, Aaronson SA. Cell culture techniques in the search for cancer viruses of man. *In Vitro* 1971; **6**: 355-361 [PMID: 4360734]

9 **Herrmann EC**. New concepts and developments in applied diagnostic virology. *Prog Med Virol* 1974; **17**: 221-289 [PMID: 4138170]

10 **Lipkin WI**, Firth C. Viral surveillance and discovery. *Curr Opin Virol* 2013; **3**: 199-204 [PMID: 23602435 DOI: 10.1016/j.coviro.2013.03.010]

11 **Friedman RM**, Ramseur JM. Mechanisms of persistent infections by cytopathic viruses in tissue culture. Brief review. *Arch Virol* 1979; **60**: 83-103 [PMID: 226039]

12 **Neill JD**, Bayles DO, Ridpath JF. Simultaneous rapid sequencing of multiple RNA virus genomes. *J Virol Methods* 2014; **201**: 68-72 [PMID: 24589514 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2014.02.016]

13 **Haagmans BL**, Andeweg AC, Osterhaus AD. The application of genomics to emerging zoonotic viral diseases. *PLoS Pathog* 2009; **5**: e1000557 [PMID: 19855817 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000557]

14 **Ansorge WJ**. Next-generation DNA sequencing techniques. *N Biotechnol* 2009; **25**: 195-203 [PMID: 19429539 DOI: 10.1016/j.nbt.2008.12.009]

15 **Delwart EL**. Viral metagenomics. *Rev Med Virol* 2007; **17**: 115-131 [PMID: 17295196 DOI: 10.1002/rmv.532]

16 **Wang D**, Coscoy L, Zylberberg M, Avila PC, Boushey HA, Ganem D, DeRisi JL. Microarray-based detection and genotyping of viral pathogens. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2002; **99**: 15687-15692 [PMID: 12429852 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.242579699]

17 **Rose TM**. CODEHOP-mediated PCR - a powerful technique for the identification and characterization of viral genomes. *Virol J* 2005; **2**: 20 [PMID: 15769292 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-2-20]

18 **Kricka LJ**. Nucleic acid detection technologies -- labels, strategies, and formats. *Clin Chem* 1999; **45**: 453-458 [PMID: 10102903]

19 **Handelsman J**. Metagenomics: application of genomics to uncultured microorganisms. *Microbiol Mol Biol Rev* 2004; **68**: 669-685 [PMID: 15590779 DOI: 10.1128/MMBR.68.4.669-685.2004]

20 **Bexfield N**, Kellam P. Metagenomics and the molecular identification of novel viruses. *Vet J* 2011; **190**: 191-198 [PMID: 21111643 DOI: 10.1016/j.tvjl.2010.10.014]

21 **Schloss PD**, Handelsman J. Metagenomics for studying unculturable microorganisms: cutting the Gordian knot. *Genome Biol* 2005; **6**: 229 [PMID: 16086859 DOI: 10.1186/gb-2005-6-8-229]

22 **Thurber RV**, Haynes M, Breitbart M, Wegley L, Rohwer F. Laboratory procedures to generate viral metagenomes. *Nat Protoc* 2009; **4**: 470-483 [PMID: 19300441 DOI: 10.1038/nprot.2009.10]

23 **Barzon L**, Lavezzo E, Militello V, Toppo S, Palù G. Applications of next-generation sequencing technologies to diagnostic virology. *Int J Mol Sci* 2011; **12**: 7861-7884 [PMID: 22174638 DOI: 10.3390/ijms12117861]

24 **Chiu CY**. Viral pathogen discovery. *Curr Opin Microbiol* 2013; **16**: 468-478 [PMID: 23725672 DOI: 10.1016/j.mib.2013.05.001]

25 **Schelhorn SE**. Going viral- An integrated view on virological data analysis from basic research to clinical applications. PhD Dissertation. 2013, Saarland University, Germany. Available from: http://d-nb.info/1053980728/34

26 **Boheemen SV**. Virus Discovery and Characterization using Next-Generation Sequencing. PhD Dissertation. 2014, Erasmus Medical Center, Rotterdam. Available from: http://repub.eur.nl/pub/76063/

27 **Lecuit M**, Eloit M. The human virome: new tools and concepts. *Trends Microbiol* 2013; **21**: 510-515 [PMID: 23906500 DOI: 10.1016/j.tim.2013.07.001]

28 **Marston DA**, McElhinney LM, Ellis RJ, Horton DL, Wise EL, Leech SL, David D, de Lamballerie X, Fooks AR. Next generation sequencing of viral RNA genomes. *BMC Genomics* 2013; **14**: 444 [PMID: 23822119 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2164-14-444]

29 **Boonham N**, Kreuze J, Winter S, van der Vlugt R, Bergervoet J, Tomlinson J, Mumford R. Methods in virus diagnostics: from ELISA to next generation sequencing. *Virus Res* 2014; **186**: 20-31 [PMID: 24361981 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2013.12.007]

30 **Wang D**. Fruits of virus discovery: new pathogens and new experimental models. *J Virol* 2015; **89**: 1486-1488 [PMID: 25410872 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01194-14]

31 **Capobianchi MR**, Giombini E, Rozera G. Next-generation sequencing technology in clinical virology. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2013; **19**: 15-22 [PMID: 23279287 DOI: 10.1111/1469-0691.12056]

32 **Moore RA**, Warren RL, Freeman JD, Gustavsen JA, Chénard C, Friedman JM, Suttle CA, Zhao Y, Holt RA. The sensitivity of massively parallel sequencing for detecting candidate infectious agents associated with human tissue. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e19838 [PMID: 21603639 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0019838]

33 **Svraka S**, Rosario K, Duizer E, van der Avoort H, Breitbart M, Koopmans M. Metagenomic sequencing for virus identification in a public-health setting. *J Gen Virol* 2010; **91**: 2846-2856 [PMID: 20660148 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.024612-0]

34 **Radford AD**, Chapman D, Dixon L, Chantrey J, Darby AC, Hall N. Application of next-generation sequencing technologies in virology. *J Gen Virol* 2012; **93**: 1853-1868 [PMID: 22647373 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.043182-0]

35 **Lipkin WI**. Microbe hunting. *Microbiol Mol Biol Rev* 2010; **74**: 363-377 [PMID: 20805403 DOI: 10.1128/MMBR.00007-10]

36 **Sanger F**, Nicklen S, Coulson AR. DNA sequencing with chain-terminating inhibitors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1977; **74**: 5463-5467 [PMID: 271968]

37 **Maxam AM**, Gilbert W. A new method for sequencing DNA. 1977. *Biotechnology* 1992; **24**: 99-103 [PMID: 1422074]

38 **Friedmann T**. Rapid nucleotide sequencing of DNA. *Am J Hum Genet* 1979; **31**: 19-28 [PMID: 373426]

39 **Grada A**, Weinbrecht K. Next-generation sequencing: methodology and application. *J Invest Dermatol* 2013; **133**: e11 [PMID: 23856935 DOI: 10.1038/jid.2013.248]

40 **Buermans HP**, den Dunnen JT. Next generation sequencing technology: Advances and applications. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2014; **1842**: 1932-1941 [PMID: 24995601 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbadis.2014.06.015]

41 **Flaherty P**, Natsoulis G, Muralidharan O, Winters M, Buenrostro J, Bell J, Brown S, Holodniy M, Zhang N, Ji HP. Ultrasensitive detection of rare mutations using next-generation targeted resequencing. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2012; **40**: e2 [PMID: 22013163 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkr861]

42 **Xu X**, Hou Y, Yin X, Bao L, Tang A, Song L, Li F, Tsang S, Wu K, Wu H, He W, Zeng L, Xing M, Wu R, Jiang H, Liu X, Cao D, Guo G, Hu X, Gui Y, Li Z, Xie W, Sun X, Shi M, Cai Z, Wang B, Zhong M, Li J, Lu Z, Gu N, Zhang X, Goodman L, Bolund L, Wang J, Yang H, Kristiansen K, Dean M, Li Y, Wang J. Single-cell exome sequencing reveals single-nucleotide mutation characteristics of a kidney tumor. *Cell* 2012; **148**: 886-895 [PMID: 22385958 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2012.02.025]

43 **Navin N**, Kendall J, Troge J, Andrews P, Rodgers L, McIndoo J, Cook K, Stepansky A, Levy D, Esposito D, Muthuswamy L, Krasnitz A, McCombie WR, Hicks J, Wigler M. Tumour evolution inferred by single-cell sequencing. *Nature* 2011; **472**: 90-94 [PMID: 21399628 DOI: 10.1038/nature09807]

44 **Schadt EE**, Turner S, Kasarskis A. A window into third-generation sequencing. *Hum Mol Genet* 2010; **19**: R227-R240 [PMID: 20858600 DOI: 10.1093/hmg/ddq416]

45 **Loman NJ**, Misra RV, Dallman TJ, Constantinidou C, Gharbia SE, Wain J, Pallen MJ. Performance comparison of benchtop high-throughput sequencing platforms. *Nat Biotechnol* 2012; **30**: 434-439 [PMID: 22522955 DOI: 10.1038/nbt.2198]

46 **Nakamura K**, Oshima T, Morimoto T, Ikeda S, Yoshikawa H, Shiwa Y, Ishikawa S, Linak MC, Hirai A, Takahashi H, Altaf-Ul-Amin M, Ogasawara N, Kanaya S. Sequence-specific error profile of Illumina sequencers. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2011; **39**: e90 [PMID: 21576222 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkr344]

47 **Schröder J**, Bailey J, Conway T, Zobel J. Reference-free validation of short read data. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e12681 [PMID: 20877643 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0012681]

48 **Erlich Y**, Mitra PP, delaBastide M, McCombie WR, Hannon GJ. Alta-Cyclic: a self-optimizing base caller for next-generation sequencing. *Nat Methods* 2008; **5**: 679-682 [PMID: 18604217 DOI: 10.1038/nmeth.1230]

49 **Dolan PC**, Denver DR. TileQC: a system for tile-based quality control of Solexa data. *BMC Bioinformatics* 2008; **9**: 250 [PMID: 18507856 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2105-9-250]

50 **Quince C**, Lanzén A, Curtis TP, Davenport RJ, Hall N, Head IM, Read LF, Sloan WT. Accurate determination of microbial diversity from 454 pyrosequencing data. *Nat Methods* 2009; **6**: 639-641 [PMID: 19668203 DOI: 10.1038/nmeth.1361]

51 **Gomez-Alvarez V**, Teal TK, Schmidt TM. Systematic artifacts in metagenomes from complex microbial communities. *ISME J* 2009; **3**: 1314-1317 [PMID: 19587772 DOI: 10.1038/ismej.2009.72]

52 **Margulies M**, Egholm M, Altman WE, Attiya S, Bader JS, Bemben LA, Berka J, Braverman MS, Chen YJ, Chen Z, Dewell SB, Du L, Fierro JM, Gomes XV, Godwin BC, He W, Helgesen S, Ho CH, Irzyk GP, Jando SC, Alenquer ML, Jarvie TP, Jirage KB, Kim JB, Knight JR, Lanza JR, Leamon JH, Lefkowitz SM, Lei M, Li J, Lohman KL, Lu H, Makhijani VB, McDade KE, McKenna MP, Myers EW, Nickerson E, Nobile JR, Plant R, Puc BP, Ronan MT, Roth GT, Sarkis GJ, Simons JF, Simpson JW, Srinivasan M, Tartaro KR, Tomasz A, Vogt KA, Volkmer GA, Wang SH, Wang Y, Weiner MP, Yu P, Begley RF, Rothberg JM. Genome sequencing in microfabricated high-density picolitre reactors. *Nature* 2005; **437**: 376-380 [PMID: 16056220 DOI: 10.1038/nature03959]

53 **Escalante AE**, Lev Jardón Barbolla, Santiago Ramírez-Barahona, Luis E. Eguiarte. The study of biodiversity in the era of massive sequencing. *Rev Mex de Biodivers* 2014; **85**: 1249-1264 [DOI: 10.7550/rmb.43498]

54 **Fox EJ**, Bayliss KSR, Emond MJ, Loeb LA. Accuracy of Next Generation Sequencing Platforms. *Next Generat Sequenc Applic* 2014; **1**: 1 [DOI: 10.4172/jngsa.1000106]

55 **Dalloul RA**, Long JA, Zimin AV, Aslam L, Beal K, Blomberg Le Ann, Bouffard P, Burt DW, Crasta O, Crooijmans RP, Cooper K, Coulombe RA, De S, Delany ME, Dodgson JB, Dong JJ, Evans C, Frederickson KM, Flicek P, Florea L, Folkerts O, Groenen MA, Harkins TT, Herrero J, Hoffmann S, Megens HJ, Jiang A, de Jong P, Kaiser P, Kim H, Kim KW, Kim S, Langenberger D, Lee MK, Lee T, Mane S, Marcais G, Marz M, McElroy AP, Modise T, Nefedov M, Notredame C, Paton IR, Payne WS, Pertea G, Prickett D, Puiu D, Qioa D, Raineri E, Ruffier M, Salzberg SL, Schatz MC, Scheuring C, Schmidt CJ, Schroeder S, Searle SM, Smith EJ, Smith J, Sonstegard TS, Stadler PF, Tafer H, Tu ZJ, Van Tassell CP, Vilella AJ, Williams KP, Yorke JA, Zhang L, Zhang HB, Zhang X, Zhang Y, Reed KM. Multi-platform next-generation sequencing of the domestic turkey (Meleagris gallopavo): genome assembly and analysis. *PLoS Biol* 2010; **8**: pii: e1000475 [PMID: 20838655 DOI: 10.1371/journal.

pbio.1000475]
56 **Aury JM**, Cruaud C, Barbe V, Rogier O, Mangenot S, Samson G, Poulain J, Anthouard V, Scarpelli C, Artiguenave F, Wincker P. High quality draft sequences for prokaryotic genomes using a mix of new sequencing technologies. *BMC Genomics* 2008; **9**: 603 [PMID: 19087275 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2164-9-603]
57 **Flicek P**, Birney E. Sense from sequence reads: methods for alignment and assembly. *Nat Methods* 2009; **6**: S6-S12 [PMID: 19844229 DOI: 10.1038/nmeth.1376]
58 **Rubin CJ**, Megens HJ, Martinez Barrio A, Maqbool K, Sayyab S, Schwochow D, Wang C, Carlborg Ö, Jern P, Jørgensen CB, Archibald AL, Fredholm M, Groenen MA, Andersson L. Strong signatures of selection in the domestic pig genome. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2012; **109**: 19529-19536 [PMID: 23151514 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1217149109]
59 **Metzker ML**. Sequencing technologies - the next generation. *Nat Rev Genet* 2010; **11**: 31-46 [PMID: 19997069 DOI: 10.1038/nrg2626]
60 **Mardis ER**. Next-generation DNA sequencing methods. *Annu Rev Genomics Hum Genet* 2008; **9**: 387-402 [PMID: 18576944 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.genom.9.081307.164359]
61 **Quail MA**, Smith M, Coupland P, Otto TD, Harris SR, Connor TR, Bertoni A, Swerdlow HP, Gu Y. A tale of three next generation sequencing platforms: comparison of Ion Torrent, Pacific Biosciences and Illumina MiSeq sequencers. *BMC Genomics* 2012; **13**: 341 [PMID: 22827831 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2164-13-341]
62 **Branton D**, Deamer DW, Marziali A, Bayley H, Benner SA, Butler T, Di Ventra M, Garaj S, Hibbs A, Huang X, Jovanovich SB, Krstic PS, Lindsay S, Ling XS, Mastrangelo CH, Meller A, Oliver JS, Pershin YV, Ramsey JM, Riehn R, Soni GV, Tabard-Cossa V, Wanunu M, Wiggin M, Schloss JA. The potential and challenges of nanopore sequencing. *Nat Biotechnol* 2008; **26**: 1146-1153 [PMID: 18846088 DOI: 10.1038/nbt.1495]
63 **Laszlo AH**, Derrington IM, Ross BC, Brinkerhoff H, Adey A, Nova IC, Craig JM, Langford KW, Samson JM, Daza R, Doering K, Shendure J, Gundlach JH. Decoding long nanopore sequencing reads of natural DNA. *Nat Biotechnol* 2014; **32**: 829-833 [PMID: 24964173 DOI: 10.1038/nbt.2950]
64 **Cahais V**, Gayral P, Tsagkogeorga G, Melo-Ferreira J, Ballenghien M, Weinert L, Chiari Y, Belkhir K, Ranwez V, Galtier N. Reference-free transcriptome assembly in non-model animals from next-generation sequencing data. *Mol Ecol Resour* 2012; **12**: 834-845 [PMID: 22540679 DOI: 10.1111/j.1755-0998.2012.03148]
65 **Glenn TC**. Field guide to next-generation DNA sequencers. *Mol Ecol Resour* 2011; **11**: 759-769 [PMID: 21592312 DOI: 10.1111/j.1755-0998.2011.03024.x]
66 **Martin JA**, Wang Z. Next-generation transcriptome assembly. *Nat Rev Genet* 2011; **12**: 671-682 [PMID: 21897427 DOI: 10.1038/nrg3068]
67 **Shokralla S**, Spall JL, Gibson JF, Hajibabaei M. Next-generation sequencing technologies for environmental DNA research. *Mol Ecol* 2012; **21**: 1794-1805 [PMID: 22486820 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-294X.2012.05538.x]
68 **Cheval J**, Sauvage V, Frangeul L, Dacheux L, Guigon G, Dumey N, Pariente K, Rousseaux C, Dorange F, Berthet N, Brisse S, Moszer I, Bourhy H, Manuguerra CJ, Lecuit M, Burguiere A, Caro V, Eloit M. Evaluation of high-throughput sequencing for identifying known and unknown viruses in biological samples. *J Clin Microbiol* 2011; **49**: 3268-3275 [PMID: 21715589 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.00850-11]
69 **He B**, Li Z, Yang F, Zheng J, Feng Y, Guo H, Li Y, Wang Y, Su N, Zhang F, Fan Q, Tu C. Virome profiling of bats from Myanmar by metagenomic analysis of tissue samples reveals more novel Mammalian viruses. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e61950 [PMID: 23630620 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0061950]
70 **Baker KS**, Leggett RM, Bexfield NH, Alston M, Daly G, Todd S, Tachedjian M, Holmes CE, Crameri S, Wang LF, Heeney JL, Suu-Ire R, Kellam P, Cunningham AA, Wood JL, Caccamo M, Murcia PR. Metagenomic study of the viruses of African straw-coloured fruit bats: detection of a chiropteran poxvirus and isolation of a novel adenovirus. *Virology* 2013; **441**: 95-106 [PMID: 23562481 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2013.03.014]
71 **Nakamura S**, Yang CS, Sakon N, Ueda M, Tougan T, Yamashita A, Goto N, Takahashi K, Yasunaga T, Ikuta K, Mizutani T, Okamoto Y, Tagami M, Morita R, Maeda N, Kawai J, Hayashizaki Y, Nagai Y, Horii T, Iida T, Nakaya T. Direct metagenomic detection of viral pathogens in nasal and fecal specimens using an unbiased high-throughput sequencing approach. *PLoS One* 2009; **4**: e4219 [PMID: 19156205 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0004219]
72 **Daly GM**, Bexfield N, Heaney J, Stubbs S, Mayer AP, Palser A, Kellam P, Drou N, Caccamo M, Tiley L, Alexander GJ, Bernal W, Heeney JL. A viral discovery methodology for clinical biopsy samples utilising massively parallel next generation sequencing. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e28879 [PMID: 22216131 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0028879]
73 **Whon TW**, Kim MS, Roh SW, Shin NR, Lee HW, Bae JW. Metagenomic characterization of airborne viral DNA diversity in the near-surface atmosphere. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 8221-8231 [PMID: 22623790 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00293-12]
74 **Hall RJ**, Wang J, Todd AK, Bissielo AB, Yen S, Strydom H, Moore NE, Ren X, Huang QS, Carter PE, Peacey M. Evaluation of rapid and simple techniques for the enrichment of viruses prior to metagenomic virus discovery. *J Virol Methods* 2014; **195**: 194-204 [PMID: 24036074 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2013.08.035]
75 **Oyola SO**, Gu Y, Manske M, Otto TD, O'Brien J, Alcock D, Macinnis B, Berriman M, Newbold CI, Kwiatkowski DP, Swerdlow HP, Quail MA. Efficient depletion of host DNA contamination in malaria clinical sequencing. *J Clin Microbiol* 2013; **51**: 745-751 [PMID: 23224084 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02507-12]
76 **He S**, Wurtzel O, Singh K, Froula JL, Yilmaz S, Tringe SG, Wang Z, Chen F, Lindquist EA, Sorek R, Hugenholtz P. Validation of two ribosomal RNA removal methods for microbial metatranscriptomics. *Nat Methods* 2010; **7**: 807-812 [PMID: 20852648 DOI: 10.1038/nmeth.1507]
77 **Shagina I**, Bogdanova E, Mamedov IZ, Lebedev Y, Lukyanov S, Shagin D. Normalization of genomic DNA using duplex-specific nuclease. *Biotechniques* 2010; **48**: 455-459 [PMID: 20569220 DOI: 10.2144/000113422]
78 **Reyes GR**, Kim JP. Sequence-independent, single-primer amplification (SISPA) of complex DNA populations. *Mol Cell Probes* 1991; **5**: 473-481 [PMID: 1664049 DOI: 10.1016/S0890-8508(05)80020-9]
79 **Allander T**, Emerson SU, Engle RE, Purcell RH, Bukh J. A virus discovery method incorporating DNase treatment and its application to the identification of two bovine parvovirus species. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2001; **98**: 11609-11614 [PMID: 11562506 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.211424698]
80 **Cheng WX**, Li JS, Huang CP, Yao DP, Liu N, Cui SX, Jin Y, Duan ZJ. Identification and nearly full-length genome characterization of novel porcine bocaviruses. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e13583 [PMID: 21049037 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0013583]
81 **Abed Y**, Boivin G. Molecular characterization of viruses from clinical respiratory samples producing unidentified cytopathic effects in cell culture. *Viruses* 2009; **1**: 84-90 [PMID: 21994539 DOI: 10.3390/v1020084]
82 **Victoria JG**, Kapoor A, Li L, Blinkova O, Slikas B, Wang C, Naeem A, Zaidi S, Delwart E. Metagenomic analyses of viruses in stool samples from children with acute flaccid paralysis. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 4642-4651 [PMID: 19211756 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02301-08]
83 **Kirkland PD**, Frost MJ, Finlaison DS, King KR, Ridpath JF, Gu X. Identification of a novel virus in pigs--Bungowannah virus: a possible new species of pestivirus. *Virus Res* 2007; **129**: 26-34 [PMID: 17561301 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2007.05.002]
84 **Rosseel T**, Scheuch M, Höper D, De Regge N, Caij AB, Vandenbussche F, Van Borm S. DNase SISPA-next generation sequencing confirms Schmallenberg virus in Belgian field samples and identifies genetic variation in Europe. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e41967 [PMID: 22848676 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0041967]
85 **McMullan LK**, Frace M, Sammons SA, Shoemaker T, Balinandi S, Wamala JF, Lutwama JJ, Downing RG, Stroeher U, MacNeil A, Nichol ST. Using next generation sequencing to identify yellow fever virus in Uganda. *Virology* 2012; **422**: 1-5 [PMID: 21962764 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2011.08.024]

86 **Briese T**, Paweska JT, McMullan LK, Hutchison SK, Street C, Palacios G, Khristova ML, Weyer J, Swanepoel R, Egholm M, Nichol ST, Lipkin WI. Genetic detection and characterization of Lujo virus, a new hemorrhagic fever-associated arenavirus from southern Africa. *PLoS Pathog* 2009; **5**: e1000455 [PMID: 19478873 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000455]

87 **Palacios G**, Druce J, Du L, Tran T, Birch C, Briese T, Conlan S, Quan PL, Hui J, Marshall J, Simons JF, Egholm M, Paddock CD, Shieh WJ, Goldsmith CS, Zaki SR, Catton M, Lipkin WI. A new arenavirus in a cluster of fatal transplant-associated diseases. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 991-998 [PMID: 18256387 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa073785]

88 **Pyrc K**, Jebbink MF, Berkhout B, van der Hoek L. Detection of new viruses by VIDISCA. Virus discovery based on cDNA-amplified fragment length polymorphism. *Methods Mol Biol* 2008; **454**: 73-89 [PMID: 19057862 DOI: 10.1007/978-1-59745-181-9_7]

89 **van der Hoek L**, Pyrc K, Jebbink MF, Vermeulen-Oost W, Berkhout RJ, Wolthers KC, Wertheim-van Dillen PM, Kaandorp J, Spaargaren J, Berkhout B. Identification of a new human coronavirus. *Nat Med* 2004; **10**: 368-373 [PMID: 15034574 DOI: 10.1038/nm1024]

90 **de Souza Luna LK**, Baumgarte S, Grywna K, Panning M, Drexler JF, Drosten C. Identification of a contemporary human parechovirus type 1 by VIDISCA and characterisation of its full genome. *Virol J* 2008; **5**: 26 [PMID: 18269761 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-5-26]

91 **de Vries M**, Pyrc K, Berkhout R, Vermeulen-Oost W, Dijkman R, Jebbink MF, Bruisten S, Berkhout B, van der Hoek L. Human parechovirus type 1, 3, 4, 5, and 6 detection in picornavirus cultures. *J Clin Microbiol* 2008; **46**: 759-762 [PMID: 18077635 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02009-07]

92 **Shaukat S**, Angez M, Alam MM, Jebbink MF, Deijs M, Canuti M, Sharif S, de Vries M, Khurshid A, Mahmood T, van der Hoek L, Zaidi SS. Identification and characterization of unrecognized viruses in stool samples of non-polio acute flaccid paralysis children by simplified VIDISCA. *Virol J* 2014; **11**: 146 [PMID: 25112200 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-11-146]

93 **van der Heijden M**, de Vries M, van Steenbeek FG, Favier RP, Deijs M, Brinkhof B, Rothuizen J, van der Hoek L, Penning LC. Sequence-independent VIDISCA-454 technique to discover new viruses in canine livers. *J Virol Methods* 2012; **185**: 152-155 [PMID: 22664180 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2012.05.019]

94 **de Vries M**, Deijs M, Canuti M, van Schaik BD, Faria NR, van de Garde MD, Jachimowski LC, Jebbink MF, Jakobs M, Luyf AC, Coenjaerts FE, Claas EC, Molenkamp R, Koekkoek SM, Lammens C, Leus F, Goossens H, Ieven M, Baas F, van der Hoek L. A sensitive assay for virus discovery in respiratory clinical samples. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e16118 [PMID: 21283679 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0016118]

95 **Meiring TL**, Salimo AT, Coetzee B, Maree HJ, Moodley J, Hitzeroth II, Freeborough MJ, Rybicki EP, Williamson AL. Next-generation sequencing of cervical DNA detects human papillomavirus types not detected by commercial kits. *Virol J* 2012; **9**: 164 [PMID: 22897914 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-9-164]

96 **Sijmons S**, Thys K, Corthout M, Van Damme E, Van Loock M, Bollen S, Baguet S, Aerssens J, Van Ranst M, Maes P. A method enabling high-throughput sequencing of human cytomegalovirus complete genomes from clinical isolates. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e95501 [PMID: 24755734 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0095501]

97 **Kohl C**, Brinkmann A, Dabrowski PW, Radonić A, Nitsche A, Kurth A. Protocol for metagenomic virus detection in clinical specimens. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2015; **21**: 48-57 [PMID: 25532973 DOI: 10.3201/eid2101.140766]

98 **Bishop-Lilly KA**, Turell MJ, Willner KM, Butani A, Nolan NM, Lentz SM, Akmal A, Mateczun A, Brahmbhatt TN, Sozhamannan S, Whitehouse CA, Read TD. Arbovirus detection in insect vectors by rapid, high-throughput pyrosequencing. *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 2010; **4**: e878 [PMID: 21085471 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pntd.0000878]

99 **Quan PL**, Firth C, Street C, Henriquez JA, Petrosov A, Tashmukhamedova A, Hutchison SK, Egholm M, Osinubi MO, Niezgoda M, Ogunkoya AB, Briese T, Rupprecht CE, Lipkin WI. Identification of a severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-like virus in a leaf-nosed bat in Nigeria. *MBio* 2010; **1**: pii: e00208-10 [PMID: 21063474 DOI: 10.1128/mBio.00208-10]

100 **Benson DA**, Cavanaugh M, Clark K, Karsch-Mizrachi I, Lipman DJ, Ostell J, Sayers EW. GenBank. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2013; **41**: D36-D42 [PMID: 23193287 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gks1195]

101 **Pop M**, Salzberg SL. Bioinformatics challenges of new sequencing technology. *Trends Genet* 2008; **24**: 142-149 [PMID: 18262676 DOI: 10.1016/j.tig.2007.12.006]

102 **Henson J**, Tischler G, Ning Z. Next-generation sequencing and large genome assemblies. *Pharmacogenomics* 2012; **13**: 901-915 [PMID: 22676195 DOI: 10.2217/pgs.12.72]

103 **Sharma D**, Priyadarshini P, Vrati S. Unraveling the web of viroinformatics: computational tools and databases in virus research. *J Virol* 2015; **89**: 1489-1501 [PMID: 25428870 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02027-14]

104 **Altschul SF**, Gish W, Miller W, Myers EW, Lipman DJ. Basic local alignment search tool. *J Mol Biol* 1990; **215**: 403-410 [PMID: 2231712 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-2836(05)80360-2]

P- Reviewer: Chen YD, Demonacos C, Qiu HJ **S- Editor**: Song XX
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.277

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 277-284
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Perinatally infected adolescents living with human immunodeficiency virus (perinatally human immunodeficiency virus)

Maria Leticia S Cruz, Claudete A Cardoso

Maria Leticia S Cruz, Department of Infectious Diseases, Hospital Federal dos Servidores do Estado, Rio de Janeiro, RJ 20221-903, Brazil

Claudete A Cardoso, Department of Pediatrics, Universidade Federal Fluminense, Niterói, RJ 24033-900, Brazil

Author contributions: Both authors have searched in data bases, read initially the abstracts, selected abstracts, read the complete papers that were selected, written the text and approved the final version.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: Maria Leticia S Cruz, Medical Assistant, Staff Physician, Department of Infectious Diseases, Hospital Federal dos Servidores do Estado, Rua Sacadura Cabral 178, Saúde, Serviço de Doenças Infecciosas, anexo IV, Rio de Janeiro, RJ 20221-903, Brazil. mleticia@diphse.com.br
Telephone: +55-21-22330018
Fax: +55-21-22637135

Received: January 7, 2015
Peer-review started: January 8, 2015
First decision: March 6, 2015
Revised: July 2, 2015
Accepted: July 21, 2015
Article in press: July 23, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

The availability of highly potent antiretroviral treatment during the last decades has transformed human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection into a chronic disease. Children that were diagnosed during the first months or years of life and received treatment, are living longer and better and are presently reaching adolescence and adulthood. Perinatally HIV-infected adolescents (PHIV) and young adults may present specific clinical, behavior and social characteristics and demands. We have performed a literature review about different aspects that have to be considered in the care and follow-up of PHIV. The search included papers in the MEDLINE database *via* PubMed, located using the keywords "perinatally HIV-infected" AND "adolescents". Only articles published in English or Portuguese from 2003 to 2014 were selected. The types of articles included original research, systematic reviews, and quantitative or qualitative studies; case reports and case series were excluded. Results are presented in the following topics: "Puberal development and sexual maturation", "Growth in weight and height", "Bone metabolism during adolescence", "Metabolic complications", "Brain development, cognition and mental health", "Reproductive health", "Viral drug resistance" and "Transition to adult outpatient care". We hope that this review will support the work of pediatricians, clinicians and infectious diseases specialists that are receiving these subjects to continue treatment.

Key words: Adolescents; Human immunodeficiency virus-infection; Antiretroviral therapy; Puberty; Growth; Complications

Core tip: We have performed a literature review about different aspects that have to be considered in the care and follow-up of perinatally human immunodeficiency virus-infected adolescents and young adults. Articles reporting original research, systematic reviews, quantitative

or qualitative studies and published from 2003 to 2014 were selected. Results are presented in the following topics: "Puberal development and sexual maturation", "Growth in weight and height", "Bone metabolism during adolescence", "Metabolic complications", "Brain development, cognition and mental health", "Reproductive health", "Viral drug resistance" and "Transition to adult outpatient care".

Cruz MLS, Cardoso CA. Perinatally infected adolescents living with human immunodeficiency virus (perinatally human immunodeficiency virus). *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 277-284 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/277.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.277

INTRODUCTION

The World Health Organization defines adolescence as the period in life from ages 10 to 19, *i.e.*, the second decade of life[1]. Puberty is the main biological component of adolescence and results in physical and mental changes due to the reactivation of the neurohormonal mechanisms of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal/gonadal axis, as well as those determined by the historical context and sociocultural conditions of each individual.

The body image of adolescents is affected by the changes in their body attributes (hair, breasts) and functioning (ability to have sexual intercourse, menarche, voice change); similarity to the adult body; significance of recognizing the other; and interaction with others with bodies that can now awaken desire, which now become desirable and desiring[2]. This process also includes parallel losses that must be properly assimilated: loss of the childhood body, childhood parents, and childhood identity[3].

Normal adolescence syndrome is the name given to the set of characteristics proper to this developmental period, which include the following: search for oneself and one's identity, group tendency, the need to intellectualize and fantasize, religious crisis, temporal displacement, development of sexuality, assertive social attitude, successive contradictions, progressive detachment from parents, and continuous mood swings[4].

As a result of the aforementioned features, adolescents are liable to increased exposure to alcohol and drug use, vulnerability to traffic accidents, fights, misdemeanors, and difficulty in maintaining appropriate self-care activities, such as the use of condoms, adoption of harm reduction measures, and proper use of medications. These characteristics, together with issues related to the social vulnerability of youth, contribute to the significant number of infections by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) that occur during this stage of life[5].

There is no stereotype universally representative of adolescents perinatally infected by HIV (PHIV). Some HIV-infected children reach adolescence fully aware of their condition, while others do not. In some cases, they are the only family member with an HIV infection, or they belong to families with good adherence to treatment and, thus, go through childhood having benefited from the full effects of combination antiretroviral therapy (cART): viral suppression, adequate growth, and good quality of life. In other cases, treatment is irregularly performed, and the affected youths exhibit advanced forms of the disease in adolescence, eventually requiring new drugs to ensure their survival. Other youths mature in institutions, where antiretroviral therapy (ART) may or may not be properly performed. In short, the living conditions and treatment history should be thoroughly investigated in the case of PHIV adolescents, as non-adherence to treatment is associated with the emergence of viral drug resistance, with the consequent need to change the antiretroviral regimen, and it is also associated with situations and characteristics typical of adolescence[6].

We should bear in mind that, independently of their personal history, we are interacting with individuals who tend to have a defiant attitude and who exhibit some degree of emotional instability. This situation is the context within which we must investigate adolescents' awareness of their condition and treatment. In many cases, concepts such as HIV, CD4, or viral load are too abstract to be easily understood, and adolescents tend to be more concerned with their transforming bodies, their losses and gains[7].

Thus, the professionals who provide care to PHIV youths should feel an affinity with adolescents. Although pediatricians are trained to handle adolescents, the ideal situation is that of a multidisciplinary staff that is available to meet the peculiar demands posed by adolescent care in an integrated manner[8].

Adolescents' caregivers should participate in all aspects of treatment, including the moment when diagnosis is communicated, therapeutic decision-making, and adherence to treatment. Healthcare professionals should be receptive to the caregivers' insecurities, doubts, fears, and anguish, which might appear at different times during follow-up.

The staff should assume that the adolescents' families have the skills and conditions to help them cope with their problems and, thus, should help the relatives to become aware of their resources and possibilities and emphasize their positive aspects, helping them to feel increasingly more self-assured and competent. To establish a partnership with the patients' relatives is the best strategy in the terms of health or education actions or prevention; it is an efficient, positive, productive, and inclusive approach that increases the opportunities to promote changes.

STRATEGY FOR ARTICLE SEARCH

This study consisted of a literature review of articles included in the MEDLINE database *via* PubMed, located using the keywords "perinatally HIV-infected" AND "adolescents". Only articles published in English or Portuguese from 2003 to 2014 were selected. The types of articles included original research, systematic reviews,

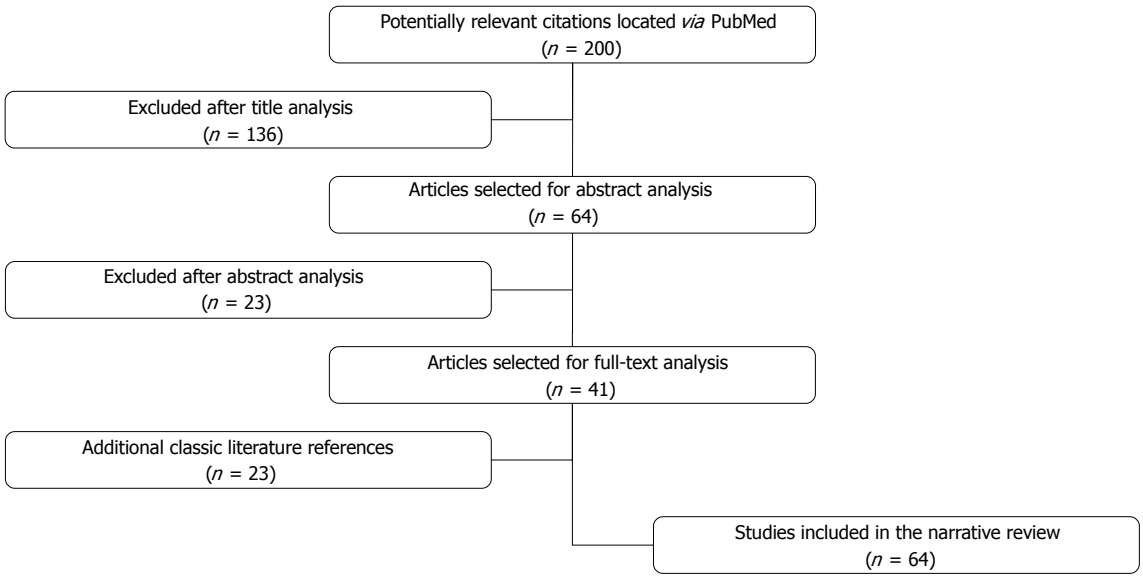


Figure 1 Flow chart representing the process of article selection.

and quantitative or qualitative studies; case reports and case series were excluded.

The application of the aforementioned criteria located 200 articles based on their titles. The abstracts of 64 of such articles were analyzed, which resulted in 41 articles selected for full-text analysis and data extraction. In addition, classic literature references considered relevant for the subject of interest were included. As a result, a total of 64 articles were included in this review. Figure 1 shows the flow chart of article selection.

PUBERTAL DEVELOPMENT AND SEXUAL MATURATION

The body changes that are characteristic of puberty include remarkable physical growth and sexual maturation. According to Marshall and Tanner, puberty is characterized by acceleration followed by cessation of growth, changes in the amount and distribution of fat, and development of the gonads and secondary sex characteristics[9,10].

The sequence of body changes that constitute sexual maturation comprises the development of the gonads, reproductive organs, and sex characteristics. Thelarche is the beginning of breast development in girls; gynecomastia is the enlargement of the breast tissue in boys; pubarche refers to the first appearance of pubic hair, menarche to the first menstrual cycle, semenarche to the first ejaculation, and sexarche to the first sexual intercourse.

Just as in other chronic diseases, HIV infection acquired in the perinatal period also affects sexual maturation. This interference might result from direct virus action, secondary infections, nutritional disorders, and the action of cytokines. The delay in sexual maturation seems to be greater in the later pubertal stages[11,12].

One observational study conducted in the United States found a significant delay of pubertal onset in a group of 2086 adolescents with vertically transmitted HIV infection compared to uninfected youths born from HIV-infected mothers[13].

GROWTH IN WEIGHT AND HEIGHT

Slow weight gain and growth deficits are common among children with vertically transmitted HIV infection. These children exhibit early and progressive reductions of linear growth and body mass index, in addition to sustained deficit in anthropometric indexes compared to non-infected individuals[14,15]. These disorders, starting in childhood, might continue into adolescence. Weight loss is common among HIV-infected individuals, independent of the use of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), and it seems to have a multifactorial etiology.

Weight loss occurs early in the course of infection, preceding the manifestation of significant compromise of the immune system[16]. Growth failure is a well-known indicator of disease progression among HIV-infected children and adolescents and usually precedes the decrease of CD4+ cells. Improvement of growth parameters might be used as a measure of HAART efficacy; control of viral replication exerts a positive effect on the weight and height[17].

Deficits in growth precede and may contribute to the onset of immunodeficiency and opportunistic infections in HIV-infected individuals[18].

The differences in growth patterns are probably due to differences in the manifestations of the disease in HIV-infected children and adolescents; growth delay is greater in patients with viral loads above 100000 copies/mL[19].

The final height of individuals with vertically transmitted HIV infection is usually shorter than the target height. This fact suggests that the height loss accumulated

throughout childhood and adolescence might influence the final height in that population[20].

BONE METABOLISM DURING ADOLESCENCE

Puberty is a significant period vis-à-vis the acquisition of adequate bone mass. Some of the factors that influence normal bone mineralization are as follows: calcium intake, vitamin D levels, physical activity, hormones, genetic factors, and nutritional status[21]. The adolescent growth spurt is characterized by large bone mass accumulation; the incidence of fractures due to relative bone fragility is high as a result of the dissociation between bone expansion and mineralization[22]. The peak of bone mineralization corresponds to the accumulation of calcium in this tissue. The bone mineral density (BMD) decreases before the adolescent growth spurt, and it increases over the subsequent four years. The peak calcium accretion rate was found to occur at a median age of 12.5 years old in girls and 14 years old in boys[23].

In the current scenario of HIV-infection in growing and developing children, characterized by increased survival and prolonged ART use, the long-term impact on the children's bone metabolism is not well known[24]. The BMD is lower in HIV-infected children and adolescents compared to the non-infected population[25]. Children using HAART exhibit complications resulting from low BMD[26,27]. These complications are potentially more severe in adolescents than adults due to the adolescent growth spurt and puberty[27].

The etiology of low BMD is multifactorial and might be directly related to the virus, ART, comorbidities, or factors unrelated to HIV infection. Periodic BMD testing is indicated during adolescence, and youths found to have low BMD should be instructed to perform high-impact exercises and use calcium and vitamin D supplements[28].

METABOLIC COMPLICATIONS

The long-term benefits of HAART are widely known. Increasing numbers of children with vertically transmitted HIV infection are reaching adulthood and, thus, becoming chronically ill adults[27]. In addition to its impact on the survival of this population, prolonged HAART also seems to have cardioprotective effects in HIV-infected children and adolescents[29]. However, as part of this scenario of improved survival, many youths develop severe metabolic complications, including lipodystrophy, dyslipidemia, insulin resistance, lactic acidosis, and bone mass loss. Dyslipidemia, which is mainly associated with the use of protease inhibitors, may increase the risk of cardiovascular disease in adulthood[27].

Chokephaibulkit *et al*[30] found that the levels of parathyroid hormone were significantly higher among adolescents with vitamin D deficiency. Insulin resistance has also been reported in children and adolescents with vertically transmitted HIV infection in association with higher body mass index values[31,32].

HIV-associated lipodystrophy is a particular cause of concern in adolescence, as the disordered distribution of the body fat - loss of fat in the face and lower limbs and enlarged dorsocervical fat pad and chest fat - might have significant repercussions in this stage of life, when the individual develops the adult body that serves to present oneself to the world. Multidisciplinary healthcare staff should be aware of the possibility that lipodystrophy may act as a hindrance to ART adherence[8].

In addition to the aforementioned body changes, ART is also associated with increased cholesterol and triglyceride levels[33], which make dietary and exercise advice indispensable in the clinical management of these patients[8]. Adolescents at high risk for atherosclerotic disease might benefit from early changes in their lifestyle, as well as from clinical interventions that aim to improve their long-term prognosis[34].

Routine and systematic cardiac evaluation has paramount importance in the follow-up of HIV-infected children and adolescents, as cardiovascular disease has become a part of care for long-term survivors. Accelerated atherosclerosis has also been found in young adults without traditional coronary risk factors[35].

BRAIN DEVELOPMENT, COGNITION, AND MENTAL HEALTH

Neuroimaging data collected from healthy children and adolescents show that the brain volume attains its peak by 10.5 years of age among girls and 14.5 years among boys; the grey matter decreases and the white matter increases during adolescence[36]. This developmental stage is known as "synaptic pruning". The increase in white matter reflects greater axon myelination, with increased neural transmission speed and better quality of brain connectivity.

Some evidence indicates that structural and functional changes in different brain areas are associated with greater rational and emotional planning skills (prefrontal cortex), higher memory capacity (temporal lobe), language skills (frontal lobe), higher intelligence quotient (frontal and occipital lobes), and better reading skills (temporal and parietal lobes). The central executive function processes in this developmental stage include working memory, processing speed, and cognitive flexibility.

One study assessed 16 PHIV adolescents undergoing ART using neuroimaging methods and found increased grey matter and decreased white matter relative to healthy controls[37]. Those findings agree with well-documented alterations in subcortical structures among HIV-infected adults, such as neural loss across the entire prefrontal cortex, cerebral atrophy, and white matter demyelination affecting periventricular areas, the corpus callosum, internal capsule, anterior commissure, and optical tract in particular. The cognitive domains most affected among HIV-infected adults are motor skills,

expressive language, episodic memory (encoding and retrieval), and executive function (processing speed, attention, and working memory), the latter of which seems to contribute substantially to learning, particularly during childhood[38-40]. Prospective memory, which is related to "remembering to remember", is also impaired; this impairment has a close relationship with the action of taking medicine at the right time and, thus, with adherence to treatment. Therefore, the brain and cognitive development of adolescents living with HIV may be impaired in different ways, resulting in lower intelligence and poorer academic performance, executive deficits (abstraction, problem-solving, cognitive flexibility, and cognitive deficits in social skills and planning), limited memory skills, language deficits (in cases with encephalopathy), reduced information processing speed, attention deficit, and impaired motor coordination[41,42].

The results of a literature review on the neurodevelopment of PHIV children and adolescents suggest that such youths do not perform as well as controls in evaluations of cognition, processing speed and visual-spatial tasks and are at higher risk of mental health problems[43]. One study used a neuropsychological battery to assess the cognitive domains of attention/processing speed, psychomotor ability, and problem-solving skills in 16 PHIV adolescents. The results showed that the performance of the PHIV youths was poorer compared to the control group, which consisted of age-matched HIV-uninfected volunteers[44].

In regard to mental health, the incidence of psychiatric disorders is higher among PHIV adolescents and uninfected youths belonging to HIV-infected families compared to the general population[45-47]. Several studies found that up to 70% of such adolescents meet psychiatric diagnostic criteria. Some authors found correlations between diagnosis in adolescents and psychiatric disorders among their caretakers[45-47].

REPRODUCTIVE HEALTH

PHIV adolescents start their sexual life at approximately the same age as the HIV-uninfected population[48,49]. Studies on pregnancy showed that its progression and outcomes are similar among PHIV women and women with sexually transmitted HIV, except for the proportion of women with undetectable viral load close to labor and delivery, which is lower among PHIV women[50-52]. The difficulty of attaining viral suppression in that population of pregnant women is probably due to their long previous exposure to various ART regimens, with the consequent emergence of resistance-related mutations in HIV; that fact also accounts for the high rate of cesarean deliveries in that group.

VIRAL DRUG RESISTANCE

Currently, few ART-naive PHIV adolescents are admitted for treatment. The ongoing strategy of diagnosing women living with HIV during pregnancy allows the early diagnosis of perinatal infection among the exposed infants, while global guidelines emphasize the relevance of starting treatment within the first months of life[53,54]. However, difficulties in adherence to treatment throughout childhood account for the emergence of resistance-associated mutations in the virus, as well as successive drug changes.

When the hindrances to adequate adherence to treatment during childhood are not removed, PHIV adolescents might not achieve appropriate viral suppression and often exhibit multidrug resistance-associated mutations[55]. Several studies have shown that the proportion of PHIV adolescents with viral suppression is approximately 50%[56-59].

The possible transmission of virus strains with resistance-associated mutations by this population to their sexual partners is a significant cause of concern. A longitudinal study that followed up 330 PHIV adolescents who responded to audio computer-assisted self-interviews (ACASI) in the United States found that 62% of the sexually active youths reported engaging in unprotected sexual intercourse. The viral load was over 5000 copies/mL in 42% of the sexually active PHIV adolescents, and in almost all, the virus exhibited resistance-associated mutations[49].

TRANSITION TO ADULT OUTPATIENT CARE

The advances made in AIDS treatment have significantly improved the survival of children and adolescents with vertically transmitted HIV infections[60]. The demand for transfer to adult outpatient care increased concordantly with the extent to which such youths now reach adulthood. More than 25000 HIV-infected individuals aged 13-24 years old are currently undergoing the transition to adult outpatient care in the United States[61].

For this transition to be successful, the focus must fall on comprehensive care, including the patients' mental and reproductive health, gender identity, sexuality, stigmas, social issues, cognitive development, adherence to ART, detachment from pediatric outpatient care, and communication with the staff in charge of patient care[61-63]. Integral care poses a major challenge; however, it is crucial for the management of this population of patients to reduce the impact of the transition and improve their long-term follow-up. Integral care is necessary to ensure that the therapeutic success achieved in childhood will continue during adulthood[60,62,64].

CONCLUSION

The aim of this review is to provide information to the pediatricians and infectious disease specialists in charge of continuing the treatment given to PHIV adolescents since childhood. The clinical and laboratory monitoring of these youths should be able to detect problems such as delayed growth and physical and neuropsychological development, metabolic and bone disorders, and issues related to their reproductive health. Possible therapeutic

failures should be addressed, considering the individual and family history relative to ART. The follow up of adults perinatally infected with HIV will pose new challenges vis-à-vis the benefits and complications of ART.

ACKOWLEDGEMENTS

Authors thank Dr. Mariza Curto Saavedra Gaspar and Ivete Martins Gomes for text review and suggestions.

REFERENCES

1 **World Health Organization**. Maternal, newborn, child and adolescent health. Adolescent development. [cited 2014 Nov]. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/maternal_child_adolescent/topics/adolescence/dev/en/

2 **Rassial JJ**. O adolescente e o psicanalista. Jorge Nazar editor. Rio de Janeiro - Companhia de Freud, 1999

3 **Aberastury A**. Adolescência Normal. Porto Alegre: Artes Médicas, 1991

4 **Assumpção Jr FB**. Adolescência normal e patológica. São Paulo: Lemos Editorial, 1998

5 **Joint United Nations Programme on HIV/AIDS (UNAIDS)**. Global report: UNAIDS report on the global AIDS epidemic 2013. [cited 2014 Nov]. Available from: URL: www.unaids.org/Global report 2013

6 **Agwu AL**, Fairlie L. Antiretroviral treatment, management challenges and outcomes in perinatally HIV-infected adolescents. *J Int AIDS Soc* 2013; **16**: 18579 [PMID: 23782477 DOI: 10.7448/IAS.16.1.18579]

7 **Manual de Boas Práticas de Adesão**. HIV/AIDS, Sociedade Brasileira de Infectologia

8 **Brasil**, Ministério da Saúde, Secretaria de Vigilância em Saúde. Departamento de DST, Aids e Hepatites Virais. Recomendações para a Atenção Integral a Adolescentes e Jovens Vivendo com HIV/Aids/Ministério da Saúde, Secretaria de Vigilância em Saúde, Departamento de DST, Aids e Hepatites Virais. Brasília: Ministério da Saúde, 2013: 116

9 **Marshall WA**, Tanner JM. Variations in pattern of pubertal changes in girls. *Arch Dis Child* 1969; **44**: 291-303 [PMID: 5785179 DOI: 10.1136/adc.44.235.291]

10 **Marshall WA**, Tanner JM. Variations in the pattern of pubertal changes in boys. *Arch Dis Child* 1970; **45**: 13-23 [PMID: 5440182 DOI: 10.1136/adc.45.239.13]

11 **Mahoney EM**, Donfield SM, Howard C, Kaufman F, Gertner JM. HIV-associated immune dysfunction and delayed pubertal development in a cohort of young hemophiliacs. Hemophilia Growth and Development Study. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 1999; **21**: 333-337 [PMID: 10428113 DOI: 10.1097/00126334-199908010-00012]

12 **de Martino M**, Tovo PA, Galli L, Gabiano C, Chiarelli F, Zappa M, Gattinara GC, Bassetti D, Giacomet V, Chiappini E, Duse M, Garetto S, Caselli D. Puberty in perinatal HIV-1 infection: a multicentre longitudinal study of 212 children. *AIDS* 2001; **15**: 1527-1534 [PMID: 11504985 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-200108170-00010]

13 **Williams PL**, Abzug MJ, Jacobson DL, Wang J, Van Dyke RB, Hazra R, Patel K, Dimeglio LA, McFarland EJ, Silio M, Borkowsky W, Seage GR, Oleske JM, Geffner ME. Pubertal onset in children with perinatal HIV infection in the era of combination antiretroviral treatment. *AIDS* 2013; **27**: 1959-1970 [PMID: 24145244 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e328361195b]

14 **Arpadi SM**. Growth failure in children with HIV infection. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2000; **25** Suppl 1: S37-S42 [PMID: 11126424 DOI: 10.1097/00126334-200010001-00006]

15 **Chantry CJ**, Byrd RS, Englund JA, Baker CJ, McKinney RE. Growth, survival and viral load in symptomatic childhood human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 2003; **22**: 1033-1039 [PMID: 14688560 DOI: 10.1097/01.inf.0000100575.64298.bc]

16 **Mangili A**, Murman DH, Zampini AM, Wanke CA. Nutrition and HIV infection: review of weight loss and wasting in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy from the nutrition for healthy living cohort. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **42**: 836-842 [PMID: 16477562 DOI: 10.1086/500398]

17 **Verweel G**, van Rossum AM, Hartwig NG, Wolfs TF, Scherpbier HJ, de Groot R. Treatment with highly active antiretroviral therapy in human immunodeficiency virus type 1-infected children is associated with a sustained effect on growth. *Pediatrics* 2002; **109**: E25 [PMID: 11826235 DOI: 10.1542/peds.109.2.e25]

18 **Brettler DB**, Forsberg A, Bolivar E, Brewster F, Sullivan J. Growth failure as a prognostic indicator for progression to acquired immunodeficiency syndrome in children with hemophilia. *J Pediatr* 1990; **117**: 584-588 [PMID: 2213383 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-3476(05)80694-8]

19 **Miller TL**, Easley KA, Zhang W, Orav EJ, Bier DM, Luder E, Ting A, Shearer WT, Vargas JH, Lipshultz SE. Maternal and infant factors associated with failure to thrive in children with vertically transmitted human immunodeficiency virus-1 infection: the prospective, P2C2 human immunodeficiency virus multicenter study. *Pediatrics* 2001; **108**: 1287-1296 [PMID: 11731650 DOI: 10.1542/peds.108.6.1287]

20 **Stagi S**, Galli L, Cecchi C, Chiappini E, Losi S, Gattinara CG, Gabiano C, Tovo PA, Bernardi S, Chiarelli F, de Martino M. Final height in patients perinatally infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. *Horm Res Paediatr* 2010; **74**: 165-171 [PMID: 20516649 DOI: 10.1159/000281018]

21 **Loud KJ**, Gordon CM. Adolescent bone health. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 2006; **160**: 1026-1032 [PMID: 17018461 DOI: 10.1001/archpedi.160.10.1026]

22 **Faulkner RA**, Davison KS, Bailey DA, Mirwald RL, Baxter-Jones AD. Size-corrected BMD decreases during peak linear growth: implications for fracture incidence during adolescence. *J Bone Miner Res* 2006; **21**: 1864-1870 [PMID: 17002589 DOI: 10.1359/jbmr.060907]

23 **Bailey DA**, Martin AD, McKay HA, Whiting S, Mirwald R. Calcium accretion in girls and boys during puberty: a longitudinal analysis. *J Bone Miner Res* 2000; **15**: 2245-2250 [PMID: 11092406 DOI: 10.1359/jbmr.2000.15.11.2245]

24 **Puthanakit T**, Siberry GK. Bone health in children and adolescents with perinatal HIV infection. *J Int AIDS Soc* 2013; **16**: 18575 [PMID: 23782476 DOI: 10.7448/IAS.16.1.18575]

25 **DiMeglio LA**, Wang J, Siberry GK, Miller TL, Geffner ME, Hazra R, Borkowsky W, Chen JS, Dooley L, Patel K, van Dyke RB, Fielding RA, Gurmu Y, Jacobson DL. Bone mineral density in children and adolescents with perinatal HIV infecti on. *AIDS* 2013; **27**: 211-220 [PMID: 23032412 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32835a9b80]

26 **Puthanakit T**, Saksawad R, Bunupuradah T, Wittawatmongkol O, Chuanjaroen T, Ubolyam S, Chaiwatanarat T, Nakavachara P, Maleesatharn A, Chokephaibulkit K. Prevalence and risk factors of low bone mineral density among perinatally HIV-infected Thai adolescents receiving antiretroviral therapy. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2012; **61**: 477-483 [PMID: 22918157 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e31826ea89b]

27 **Barlow-Mosha L**, Eckard AR, McComsey GA, Musoke PM. Metabolic complications and treatment of perinatally HIV-infected children and adolescents. *J Int AIDS Soc* 2013; **16**: 18600 [PMID: 23782481 DOI: 10.7448/IAS.16.1.18600]

28 **da Saúde M**. Secretaria de Vigilância em Saúde. Programa Nacional de DST e AIDS. Recomendações para terapia antirretroviral em crianças e adolescentes infectados pelo HIV. Suplemento I. Brasília: Ministério da Saúde; 2011: 77. [cited 2014 Nov]. Available from: URL: www.aids.gov.br

29 **Lipshultz SE**, Williams PL, Wilkinson JD, Leister EC, Van Dyke RB, Shearer WT, Rich KC, Hazra R, Kaltman JR, Jacobson DL, Dooley LB, Scott GB, Rabideau N, Colan SD. Cardiac status of children infected with human immunodeficiency virus who are receiving long-term combination antiretroviral therapy: results from the Adolescent Master Protocol of the Multicenter Pediatric HIV/

AIDS Cohort Study. *JAMA Pediatr* 2013; **167**: 520-527 [PMID: 23608879]

30 **Chokephaibulkit K**, Saksawad R, Bunupuradah T, Rungmaitree S, Phongsamart W, Lapphra K, Maleesatharn A, Puthanakit T. Prevalence of vitamin D deficiency among perinatally HIV-infected Thai adolescents receiving antiretroviral therapy. *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 2013; **32**: 1237-1239 [PMID: 24145954 DOI: 10.1097/INF.0b013e31829e7a5c]

31 **Geffner ME**, Patel K, Miller TL, Hazra R, Silio M, Van Dyke RB, Borkowsky W, Worrell C, DiMeglio LA, Jacobson DL. Factors associated with insulin resistance among children and adolescents perinatally infected with HIV-1 in the pediatric HIV/AIDS cohort study. *Horm Res Paediatr* 2011; **76**: 386-391 [PMID: 22042056 DOI: 10.1159/000332957]

32 **Dimock D**, Thomas V, Cushing A, Purdy JB, Worrell C, Kopp JB, Hazra R, Hadigan C. Longitudinal assessment of metabolic abnormalities in adolescents and young adults with HIV-infection acquired perinatally or in early childhood. *Metabolism* 2011; **60**: 874-880 [PMID: 20947103 DOI: 10.1016/j.metabol.2010.08.007]

33 **Farley J**, Gona P, Crain M, Cervia J, Oleske J, Seage G, Lindsey J. Prevalence of elevated cholesterol and associated risk factors among perinatally HIV-infected children (4-19 years old) in Pediatric AIDS Clinical Trials Group 219C. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2005; **38**: 480-487 [PMID: 15764965 DOI: 10.1097/01.qai.0000139397.30612.96]

34 **Patel K**, Wang J, Jacobson DL, Lipshultz SE, Landy DC, Geffner ME, Dimeglio LA, Seage GR, Williams PL, Van Dyke RB, Siberry GK, Shearer WT, Young L, Scott GB, Wilkinson JD, Fisher SD, Starc TJ, Miller TL. Aggregate risk of cardiovascular disease among adolescents perinatally infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. *Circulation* 2014; **129**: 1204-1212 [PMID: 24366631 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.113.001978]

35 **Lipshultz SE**, Miller TL, Wilkinson JD, Scott GB, Somarriba G, Cochran TR, Fisher SD. Cardiac effects in perinatally HIV-infected and HIV-exposed but uninfected children and adolescents: a view from the United States of America. *J Int AIDS Soc* 2013; **16**: 18597 [PMID: 23782480 DOI: 10.7448/IAS.16.1.18597]

36 **Giedd JN**. The teen brain: insights from neuroimaging. *J Adolesc Health* 2008; **42**: 335-343 [PMID: 18346658 DOI: 10.1016/j.jadohealth.2008.01.007]

37 **Sarma MK**, Nagarajan R, Keller MA, Kumar R, Nielsen-Saines K, Michalik DE, Deville J, Church JA, Thomas MA. Regional brain gray and white matter changes in perinatally HIV-infected adolescents. *Neuroimage Clin* 2014; **4**: 29-34 [PMID: 24380059 DOI: 10.1016/j.nicl.2013.10.012]

38 **Abreu N e Mattos P**. Avaliação Neuropsicolçãgica. *Artmed* 2010; **7**: 76-85

39 **Blanchette N**, Smith ML, King S, Fernandes-Penney A, Read S. Cognitive development in school-age children with vertically transmitted HIV infection. *Dev Neuropsychol* 2002; **21**: 223-241 [PMID: 12233936 DOI: 10.1207/S15326942DN2103_1]

40 **Nicolau CN**. Tese de dissertação Avaliação Neuropsicológica em Crianças e Adolescentes com infecção por HIV e AIDS. Belo Horizonte, 2009

41 **Burgess PW**, Quayle A, Frith CD. Brain regions involved in prospective memory as determined by positron emission tomography. *Neuropsychologia* 2001; **39**: 545-555 [PMID: 11257280 DOI: 10.1016/S0028-3932(00)00149-4]

42 **Okuda J**, Fujii T, Yamadori A, Kawashima R, Tsukiura T, Fukatsu R, Suzuki K, Ito M, Fukuda H. Participation of the prefrontal cortices in prospective memory: evidence from a PET study in humans. *Neurosci Lett* 1998; **253**: 127-130 [PMID: 9774166 DOI: 10.1016/S0304-3940(98)00628-4]

43 **Laughton B**, Cornell M, Boivin M, Van Rie A. Neurodevelopment in perinatally HIV-infected children: a concern for adolescence. *J Int AIDS Soc* 2013; **16**: 18603 [PMID: 23782482 DOI: 10.7448/IAS.16.1.18603]

44 **Nagarajan R**, Sarma MK, Thomas MA, Chang L, Natha U, Wright M, Hayes J, Nielsen-Saines K, Michalik DE, Deville J, Church JA, Mason K, Critton-Mastandrea T, Nazarian S, Jing J, Keller MA. Neuropsychological function and cerebral metabolites in HIV-infected youth. *J Neuroimmune Pharmacol* 2012; **7**: 981-990 [PMID: 23065459 DOI: 10.1007/s11481-012-9407-7]

45 **Malee KM**, Tassiopoulos K, Huo Y, Siberry G, Williams PL, Hazra R, Smith RA, Allison SM, Garvie PA, Kammerer B, Kapetanovic S, Nichols S, Van Dyke R, Seage GR, Mellins CA. Mental health functioning among children and adolescents with perinatal HIV infection and perinatal HIV exposure. *AIDS Care* 2011; **23**: 1533-1544 [PMID: 21702707 DOI: 10.1080/09540121.2011.575120]

46 **Mellins CA**, Elkington KS, Leu CS, Santamaria EK, Dolezal C, Wiznia A, Bamji M, Mckay MM, Abrams EJ. Prevalence and change in psychiatric disorders among perinatally HIV-infected and HIV-exposed youth. *AIDS Care* 2012; **24**: 953-962 [PMID: 22519762 DOI: 10.1080/09540121.2012.668174]

47 **Gadow KD**, Angelidou K, Chernoff M, Williams PL, Heston J, Hodge J, Nachman S. Longitudinal study of emerging mental health concerns in youth perinatally infected with HIV and peer comparisons. *J Dev Behav Pediatr* 2012; **33**: 456-468 [PMID: 22772819 DOI: 10.1097/DBP.0b013e31825b8482]

48 **Cruz ML**, Cardoso CA, João EC, Gomes IM, Abreu TF, Oliveira RH, Machado ES, Dias IR, Rubini NM, Succi RM. Pregnancy in HIV vertically infected adolescents and young women: a new generation of HIV-exposed infants. *AIDS* 2010; **24**: 2727-2731 [PMID: 20827164 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32833e50d4]

49 **Tassiopoulos K**, Moscicki AB, Mellins C, Kacanek D, Malee K, Allison S, Hazra R, Siberry GK, Smith R, Paul M, Van Dyke RB, Seage GR. Sexual risk behavior among youth with perinatal HIV infection in the United States: predictors and implications for intervention development. *Clin Infect Dis* 2013; **56**: 283-290 [PMID: 23139252 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cis816]

50 **Thorne C**, Townsend CL, Peckham CS, Newell ML, Tookey PA. Pregnancies in young women with vertically acquired HIV infection in Europe. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 2552-2556 [PMID: 18025899 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3282f08b5f]

51 **Badell ML**, Kachikis A, Haddad LB, Nguyen ML, Lindsay M. Comparison of pregnancies between perinatally and sexually HIV-infected women: an observational study at an urban hospital. *Infect Dis Obstet Gynecol* 2013; **2013**: 301763 [PMID: 24106419 DOI: 10.1155/2013/301763]

52 **Calitri C**, Gabiano C, Galli L, Chiappini E, Giaquinto C, Buffolano W, Genovese O, Esposito S, Bernardi S, De Martino M, Tovo PA. The second generation of HIV-1 vertically exposed infants: a case series from the Italian Register for paediatric HIV infection. *BMC Infect Dis* 2014; **14**: 277 [PMID: 24885649 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-14-277]

53 **Brasil**, Ministério da Saúde, Secretaria de Vigilância em Saúde. Programa Nacional de DST e AIDS. Protocolo clínico e diretrizes terapêuticas para manejo da infecção pelo HIV em crianças e adolescentes. Brasília: Ministério da Saúde; 2014: 240. [cited 2014 Nov]. Available from: URL: www.aids.gov.br

54 **AIDSinfo**. A Panel on Antiretroviral Therapy and Medical Management of HIV-Infected Children. Guidelines for the Use of Antiretroviral Agents in Pediatric HIV Infection. 316p. [cited 2014 Nov]. Available from: URL: http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/pediatricguidelines.pdf

55 **Foster C**, Judd A, Tookey P, Tudor-Williams G, Dunn D, Shingadia D, Butler K, Sharland M, Gibb D, Lyall H. Young people in the United Kingdom and Ireland with perinatally acquired HIV: the pediatric legacy for adult services. *AIDS Patient Care STDS* 2009; **23**: 159-166 [PMID: 19866533 DOI: 10.1089/apc.2008.0153]

56 **Nachega JB**, Hislop M, Nguyen H, Dowdy DW, Chaisson RE, Regensberg L, Cotton M, Maartens G. Antiretroviral therapy adherence, virologic and immunologic outcomes in adolescents compared with adults in southern Africa. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2009; **51**: 65-71 [PMID: 19282780 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e318199072e]

57 **Dollfus C**, Le Chenadec J, Faye A, Blanche S, Briand N, Rouzioux C, Warszawski J. Long-term outcomes in adolescents perinatally infected with HIV-1 and followed up since birth in the French perinatal cohort (EPF/ANRS CO10). *Clin Infect Dis* 2010; **51**:

214-224 [PMID: 20536367]
58 **Santos Cruz ML**, Freimanis Hance L, Korelitz J, Aguilar A, Byrne J, Serchuck LK, Hazra R, Worrell C. Characteristics of HIV infected adolescents in Latin America: results from the NISDI pediatric study. *J Trop Pediatr* 2011; **57**: 165-172 [PMID: 20685800 DOI: 10.1093/tropej/fmq068]
59 **Cruz ML**, Cardoso CA, Darmont MQ, Souza E, Andrade SD, D' Al Fabbro MM, Fonseca R, Bellido JG, Monteiro SS, Bastos FI. Viral suppression and adherence among HIV-infected children and adolescents on antiretroviral therapy: results of a multicenter study. *J Pediatr* (Rio J) 2009; **90**: 563-571 [PMID: 24953723 DOI: 10.1016/j.jped.2014.04.007]
60 **Fair CD**, Sullivan K, Dizney R, Stackpole A. "It's like losing a part of my family": transition expectations of adolescents living with perinatally acquired HIV and their guardians. *AIDS Patient Care STDS* 2012; **26**: 423-429 [PMID: 22686235 DOI: 10.1089/apc.2012.0041]
61 **Cervia JS**. Easing the transition of HIV-infected adolescents to adult care. *AIDS Patient Care STDS* 2013; **27**: 692-696 [PMID: 24073595 DOI: 10.1089/apc.2013.0253]
62 **Ross AC**, Camacho-Gonzalez A, Henderson S, Abanyie F, Chakraborty R. The HIV-Infected Adolescent. *Curr Infect Dis Rep* 2010; **12**: 63-70 [PMID: 21308499 DOI: 10.1007/s11908-009-0077-4]
63 **Hazra R**, Siberry GK, Mofenson LM. Growing up with HIV: children, adolescents, and young adults with perinatally acquired HIV infection. *Annu Rev Med* 2010; **61**: 169-185 [PMID: 19622036 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.med.050108.151127]
64 **Mofenson LM**, Cotton MF. The challenges of success: adolescents with perinatal HIV infection. *J Int AIDS Soc* 2013; **16**: 18650 [PMID: 23782484 DOI: 10.7448/IAS.16.1.18650]

P- Reviewer: Berardinis PD, Kamal SA, Margulies BJ
S- Editor: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.285

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 285-294
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Purinergic signaling and human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immune deficiency syndrome: From viral entry to therapy

Daniela F Passos, Maria Rosa C Schetinger, Daniela BR Leal

Daniela F Passos, Daniela BR Leal, Departamento de Microbiologia e Parasitologia, Centro de Ciências da Saúde, Universidade Federal de Santa Maria, Santa Maria, RS 97105-900, Brazil

Maria Rosa C Schetinger, Departamento de Bioquímica e Biologia Molecular, Centro de Ciências Naturais e Exatas, Universidade Federal de Santa Maria, Santa Maria, RS 97105-900, Brazil

Author contributions: Passos DF, Schetinger MRC and Leal DBR solely contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest statement: We declare that we have no conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: Daniela BR Leal, PhD, Departamento de Microbiologia e Parasitologia, Centro de Ciências da Saúde, Universidade Federal de Santa Maria, Av. Roraima, Santa Maria, RS 97105-900, Brazil. daniela.leal@ufsm.br
Telephone: + 55-55-32209581
Fax: + 55-55-32208242

Received: October 29, 2014
Peer-review started: October 29, 2014
First decision: December 12, 2014
Revised: July 21, 2015
Accepted: August 4, 2015
Article in press: August 7, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection is a serious condition associated to severe immune dysfunction and immunodeficiency. Mechanisms involved in HIV-associated immune activation, inflammation and loss of CD4+ T cells have been extensively studied, including those concerning purinergic signaling pathways. Purinergic signaling components are involved in viral entry and replication and disease progression. Research involving the participation of purinergic signaling in HIV infection has been not only important to elucidate disease mechanisms but also to introduce new approaches to therapy. The involvement of purinergic signaling in the pathogenesis of HIV infection and its implications in the control of the HIV infection are reviewed in this paper.

Key words: Human immunodeficiency virus; Purinergic signaling; Immune activation; Inflammation

Core tip: This paper reviews the latest findings regarding the involvement of the purinergic signaling system and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection. On the last 10 years, several studies have been published on the participation of purinergic signaling in HIV infection. The findings helped to elucidate disease mechanisms and proposed new targets and approaches to therapy. We have found that basic and clinical research on this field are very promising and must be further pursued.

Passos DF, Schetinger MRC, Leal DBR. Purinergic signaling and human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immune deficiency syndrome: From viral entry to therapy. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3):

285-294 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/285.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.285

INTRODUCTION

Acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) is a pandemic disorder caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). HIV infection is characterized by persistent immune activation, inflammation and loss of CD4+ T cells, which altogether lead to immunodeficiency[1-3]. The pathological mechanisms involving these dysfunctions along with disease progression markers and prospective ways of halting disease progression are targets of extensive research. Although a great number of pathological mechanisms have been proposed, a lot remain unclear.

The connection between purinergic signaling and HIV infection is not consistently in favour of the host or the pathogen. Purinergic receptors may favour viral entry[4,5] whilst its enzymes may help to halt disease progression[6] and boost immune response against the virus[7]. However, the increasing knowledge of purinergic signaling components and their connection to HIV infection has been remarkably valuable in the understanding of the disease mechanisms. Furthermore, this knowledge raises the possibility of using purinergic receptors antagonists, purinergic signaling mediators and their analogs in HIV therapy[8-10].

The aim of this paper is to review purinergic signaling and its involvement, through its components (enzymes, receptors) and mediators [adenosine triphosphate (ATP) and adenosine), in HIV virus entry and replication, disease progression, and potential therapeutic strategies.

BACKGROUND ON PURINERGIC SIGNALING

Following the identification of ATP, along with purinergic co-transmission and the P1 and P2 receptors in the 70's, the purinergic signaling system has been intensely studied[11,12]. The receptors were characterized and the ATP mechanisms of release and breakdown have been described. Consequently, the involvement of the purinergic system in the pathophysiology of several human disorders has been uncovered and the possibility of using these pathways as targets for therapy has been raised[12].

ATP, adenosine diphosphate (ADP), Adenosine monophosphate (AMP) and adenosine are extracellular purines that mediate a series of physiological and pathological processes[12]. Receptors to purines are specific cell surface molecules called purinergic receptors. Two distinct purinergic receptor families have been indentified: P1 and P2 receptors. P1 are specific to adenosine and comprise 4 subfamilies, while P2 receptors are selective to ATP and AMP and contain two subfamilies, P2X and P2Y, based on their chemical properties. Additionally, P2X is subdivided into 7 subtypes and P2Y into 8[13,14]. Purinergic receptors families, subfamilies and subtypes are shown on Table 1.

Extracellular nucleotide concentrations are regulated by ectoenzymes that hydrolyse these nucleotides; the NTPDase1 (CD39) cleaves ATP to AMP, NTPDase2 (CD39L1) cleaves ATP to ADP, 5'-ectonucleotidase (CD73) produces adenosine from AMP, ectonucleotide pyrophosphatase/phosphodiesterase (E-NPP) breaks down ATP into AMP, and alkaline phosphatases (AP) which dephosphorylates nucleotides[15]. Adenosine, which has its physiological effects mediated by P1 receptors, can be either transported into the cell or inactivated by adenosine deaminase (ADA) and purine nucleoside phosphorylase (PNP)[15]. Figure 1 shows a schematic representation of the purinergic pathway. Although each purinergic signalling component has its own function they do not operate independently. In physiological conditions they act in cooperation interfering with the function of other elements. When considering pathogenic conditions these cross-talks and networks must be taken into consideration[16].

In viral infection, purinergic extracellular nucleotides and receptors not only participate in the innate and adaptive responses but also modulate the immune responses[17]. The release of ATP by damaged cells generates a danger signal acting as a DAMP, it also stimulates the NOD-like receptor mediated inflammasome and the activation of the capase-1 pathway[18]. Extracellular ATP also acts as a costimulatory signal to T cells and drives the differentiation of gut T helper 17 (Th17) cells[19].

The purinergic signaling system is involved in a series of processes including, neurotransmission, neuro and immune modulation, secretion, cell proliferation, differentiation, apoptosis, cell death, phagocytosis, chemotaxis and embryonic development[11,17,20,21]. Purinergic signaling has been linked to a series of acute and chronic inflammatory diseases[22] including inflammatory bowel disease[23], cancer[13], ischemia[24] and acute lung injury[25]. Therapeutic approaches using the components of the purinergic system are being developed for a number of diseases[12] such as cancer[20,26,27], diabetes[28], osteoporosis[29], and neurodegenerative diseases[30] as well as HIV[8-10]. Consequently, the involvement of the purinergic system in the pathophysiology of several human disorders has been uncovered and the possibility of using these pathways as targets for therapy has been raised[12].

The first study linking the purinergic signaling system and HIV infection was published in 2005, Leal *et al*[6] identified an increased NTPDase activity in CD39-positive lymphocytes of HIV-infected patients. Further studies associating CD39 and HIV disease progression were published in 2011 and 2013[31-33]. In 2007, a study highlighted the protective effect of adenosine receptors against neuronal damage in primary murine cultured brain cells[34], followed by later studies correlating dementia and other HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders to ATP release and P2X in primary neuron-glia co-cultures from mouse striatum[35] and adenosine receptors in HIV-infected macrophages[36]. Studies on pannexin hemichannels and purinergic receptors and HIV infection have been

Table 1 Purinergic receptors families, subfamilies and subtypes, subdivisions

Family	Subfamily	Subtype	Ligand	Cell type expression
P1	A1	NA	Adenosine	Neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, and DCs
	A2A	NA	Adenosine	Neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, DCs, T, B and NK cells
	A2B	NA	Adenosine	Neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, DCs, T and NK cells
	A3	NA	Adenosine	Neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, DCs, T and NK cells
P2	P2Y	P2Y1	ADP	Neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, DCs, T, B and NK cells
		P2Y2	ATP, UTP	Neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, DCs, T, B and NK cells
		P2Y4	UTP (ATP, UDP)	Monocytes, macrophages, DCs, T and B cells
		P2Y6	UDP, UTP	Neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, DCs, T and B cells
		P2Y11P2Y8	ATP	Monocytes, macrophages, DCs, T and B cells
		P2Y12	ADP	Neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, T and B cells
		P2Y13	ADP, ATP	Neutrophils, monocytes, DCs, T and B cells
		P2Y14	UDP, glucose	Neutrophils, DCs, T, B and NK cells
	P2X	P2X1	ATP	Neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, DCs, T, B and NK cells
		P2X2	ATP	B cells
		P2X3	ATP	B and NK cells
		P2X4	ATP	Neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, DCs, T, B and NK cells
		P2X5	ATP	Neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, DCs, T and B cells
		P2X6	ATP	B and NK cells
		P2X7	ATP	Neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, DCs, T, B and NK cells

NA: Not applicable; DC: Dendritic cells; NK: Natural killer cells. Adapted from Junger WC, 2011[56].

published in the last few years[4,5]. ADA also has been the subject of study in the context of HIV infection, proving to be a immune response booster[7] and a biomarker for disease progression[37] and accelerated aging associated with HIV infection[38].

HIV INFECTION AND THE IMMUNE SYSTEM

Host defence against HIV depends on a combination of adaptive and innate responses[39]. Despite the ability of these responses to briefly control disease progression, they are not capable of eliminating the virus. The complex interaction between the host response and HIV virus has been extensively studied and the HIV has been shown to take advantage of host metabolic pathways and proteins, known as host permissive factors, allowing the virus to thrive and persist in the host organism[40-42].

As with other viruses, the first line of defence against HIV is the innate response. Germ line-encoded Pattern-Recognition Receptors (PRRs) are essential players in the innate response. PRRs include toll-like receptors (TLRs), membrane-bound C-type lectin receptors (CLRs), NOD-like receptors (NLRs) and RIG-I-like receptors (RLRs), and unidentified proteins capable of recognizing DNA or RNA[43]. These PPRS recognize pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) and danger-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs). Although the knowledge of HIV-specific PPRs and PAMPs remains scarce, RIG-I was recently described as being involved in recognizing cytosolic HIV genomic RNA[44]. The recognition of PAMPS and DAMPS by the PRRs triggers a cascade of signaling pathways on the surface of antigen-presenting cells (APCs) and dendritic cells (DCs), which initiate host inflammatory and immune responses. When the APCs and the DCs are stimulated, the CD4+ T cells and the natural killer (NK) cells are activated in the lymph nodes and the adaptive response is initiated[45,46].

DCs are not only important APCs along with macrophages and monocytes in both innate and adaptive responses[3], but they also modulate the adaptive response together with NK cells[46]. Once the DCs are activated, they produce cytokines and induce T helper 1 (Th 1) responses and consequently cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) responses[46]. However, HIV specifically targets CD4+ T cells along with macrophages and DCs which are essential for the antiviral response[2].

PURINERGIC SIGNALING AND THE IMMUNE SYSTEM

In physiological conditions, the cells are able to maintain a balance in the levels of ATP[47]. In pathological conditions, on the other hand, injured, necrotic and activated cells release ATP into the extracellular environment, where it interacts with P2 receptors or is degraded by ectoenzymes. Purinergic signaling seems to be an important regulator of the activation of NOD-like receptor family, pyrin domain containing 3 (NLRP3) inflammasome. P2 receptors control the potassium efflux contributing to the activation of the inflammasomes[48,49]. The release of ATP from necrotic cells activates the NLRP3 inflammasome *via* the P2X7 receptor[18,50]. HIV-1 acts as primary signal to activate the NLRP3 inflammasome[51], since local release of ATP is stimulated by the binding of HIV gp120 to its receptor which results in activation of purinergic receptors[5,52]. The activation of the inflammasome is important in the antiviral response since it may lead to the elimination of the infected cells by pyroptosis[53-55]. Figure 2 illustrates the activation of NLRP3 inflammasomes in a HIV infected CD4 T cell. In the specific case of HIV infection pyroptosis might not be a protective method since it does not

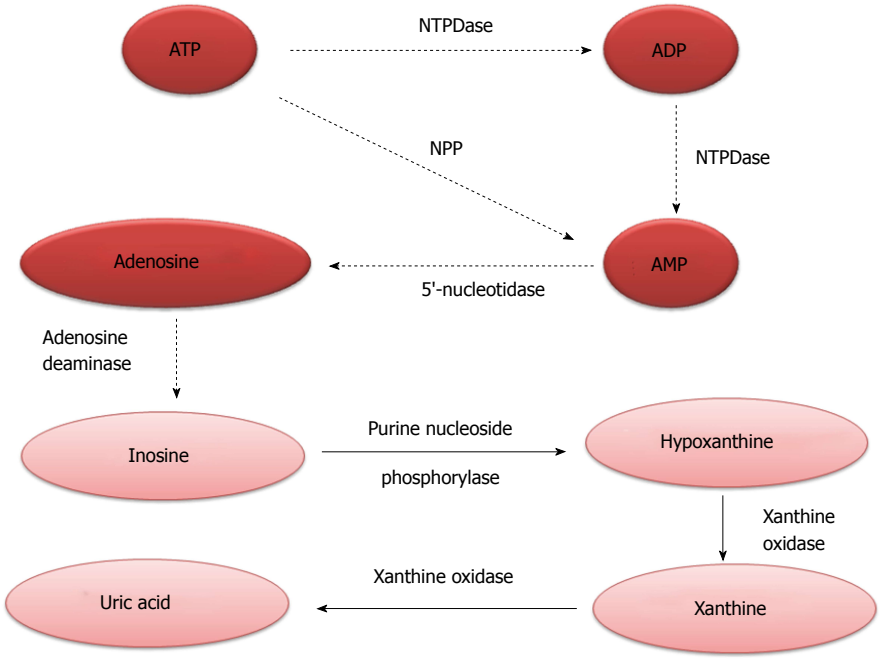


Figure 1 Schematic representation of the purinergic pathway. ATP is broken down to ADP and AMP by NTPDase or directly to AMP by pyrophosphatase/phosphodiesterase (NPP). AMP is converted to adenosine by 5′-ectonucleotidase (CD73). Adenosine deaminase (ADA) transforms adenosine into inosine which is converted in hypoxanthine by purine nucleoside phosphorylase (PNP). Xantine oxidase catalyzes the oxidation of hypoxanthine to xanthine and xanthine to uric acid.

eliminate the infection, instead it creates a pathogenic cycle in which the death of CD4+ T cells results in the release of inflammatory signals that attract more CD4+ T cells which subsequently die creating a state of chronic inflammation[54].

Recruitment of inflammatory cells to the sites of infection as part of an antiviral response involves the release of nucleotides and an autocrine purinergic signaling pathway[42,56]. The release of nucleotides triggers the polarization of purinergic proteins and receptors contributing to migration of phagocytes to the sites of inflammation and infection[42]. P2 purinergic receptors are also involved in chemotaxis[42]. Purinergic receptors are not only involved in chemotaxis but also in the modulation of immune responses[56].

The multiple and complex processes leading to inflammation and immune activation are not fully understood. Appay and Sauce[2] (2008) proposed a simplified model for immune activation and inflammation in HIV infection in which three well-known major events, depletion of CD4+ T cells, immune activation and exhaustion of regenerative capacity, all contribute to inefficient immune response and loss of T cell homeostatic regulation[2]. During acute infection, the depletion of gut mucosal CD4+ T cells triggers the loss of protective mechanisms such as the epithelial barrier and immune cells that otherwise would block translocation of microbial products from the gut into the circulation[57-59]. These microbial products such as bacterial DNA and lipopolysaccharides activate the innate response receptors and a signaling cascade, consequently boosting the production of inflammatory cytokines[60]. These events prompt a systemic immune activation that characterizes the chronic phase of HIV infection and consequent loss of peripheral CD4+ T cells[60]. Chronic immune activation and inflammation increases cell turnover and causes the accelerated aging of the immune system driving HIV-specific CD8+ T cells to exhaustion[2].

DCs represent an important link between the innate and adaptive responses. ATP enhances the antiviral response by activating DCs which then migrate to the lymph nodes. Extracellular ATP was found to interfere with the transfer of HIV-1 from immature DCs to CD4+ T cells thereby controlling the spread of the virus by halting viral replication[61].

ATP RELEASE AND PURINERGIC RECEPTORS IN HIV-ASSOCIATED NEUROCOGNITIVE DISORDERS

ATP release and purinergic receptors are involved in pathologies of the central nervous system (CNS) in neurodegenerative, neuropsychiatric and neurocognitive diseases[62]. Regarding the toxic effects of extracellular purines in HIV infection, a connection between HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders (HAND) and the pathological release of purines by HIV-infected macrophages was found. High concentrations of ATP, ADP, AMP and small amounts of adenosine were found in HIV-infected macrophages along with glutamate, suggesting that ATP release from these cells might be involved in neuronal damage in HIV-infected patients[53]. These purinergic molecules are thought to mediate calcium influxes through activation of calcium receptors, causing damage

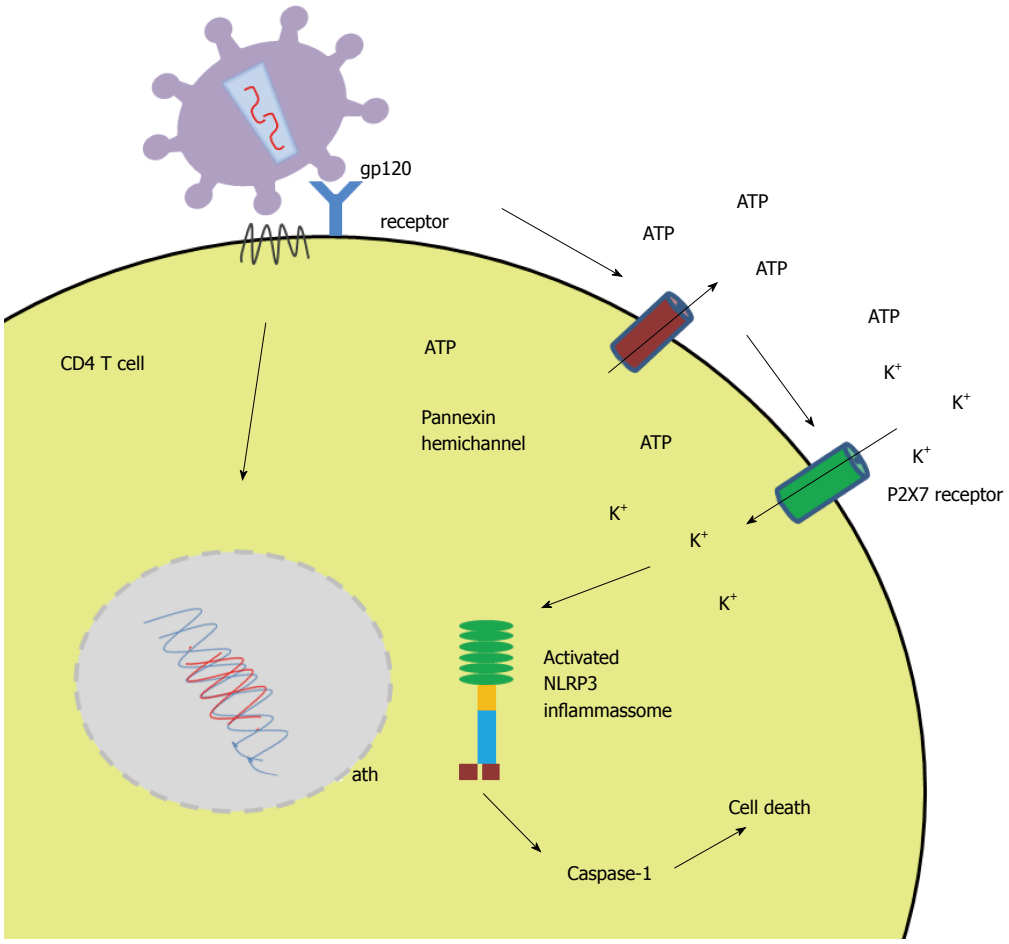


Figure 2 Schematic illustration of ATP release and activation of NOD-like receptor family, pyrin domain containing 3 inflamassome in a human immunodeficiency virus infected CD4 T cell. Once human immunodeficiency virus gp120 binds to its receptor ATP release is stimulated through pannexin hemichannels with consequent activation of P2X7 receptor. The influx of potassium causes the activation of NOD-like receptor family, pyrin domain containing 3 (NLRP3) inflammassome leading to cell death *via* Caspase-1.

or death of neurons[35].

Several mechanisms are involved in the neurocognitive impairment that affects HIV infected patients. The HIV transactivator of transcription Tat induces the release of cytokines and chemokines from microglia, microglia, macrophages, neurons, and astrocytes in the CNS and causes disruption of the blood-brain barrier with resulting neurotoxicity[63]. Recently it was suggested the P2X receptors are involved in HIV and opioid neuropathogenesis[36]. The use of TNP-ATP, a non-selective P2X antagonist, prevented the neurotoxic damage caused by exposure to morphine and/or HIV Tat or ATP in striatal neurons[36]. P2X4 receptors are expressed by subpopulations of striatal neurons and glia and are activated by excess levels of extracellular ATP caused by morphine and/or HIV-1 Tat[36]. The involvement of P2X4 in HIV and opioid neuropathogenesis was confirmed by the fact that selective blockade of P2X1, P2X3, or P2X7 receptors, not P2X4, were not able to prevent Tat or morphine induced neurotoxicity, suggesting this particular receptor might be a potential new target for prevention of HAND[36].

HIV-associated dementia is linked to inflammation and consequent production of proinflammatory cytokines. The adenosine receptor A1AR was shown to inhibit Tat-mediated proapoptosis by attenuating intracellular Ca^{2+} and production of nitric oxide[34]. More recently, it was demonstrated that the activation of the A2A adenosine receptor inhibits Tat-induced TNF-α production in monocytes thereby suggesting that adenosine is an important regulator of cytokine production and its pathway a possible therapeutic target for CNS inflammatory disorders[64].

PANNEXIN HEMICHANNELS AND PURINERGIC RECEPTORS ARE INVOLVED IN THE PROCESS OF HIV VIRAL ENTRY AND IMMUNE ACTIVATION

ATP is transported mainly through a combination of vesicular release, connexin and pannexin hemichannels[12], but also includes P2X7 receptors and maxi-ion channels[65]. The role of pannexin hemichannels have been studied in a number of pathophysiological events including calcium signaling, cellular differentiation, cellular migration, inflammation, cell death, innate and

adaptive immune responses and HIV viral entry[66,67]. To ensure an efficient entry into the cell, the HIV-1 gp120 protein binds to CD4+ T cell receptor and chemokine coreceptors CXCR4 or CCR5. It has been demonstrated that this binding increases the intracellular free calcium, induces the opening of Panx-1 hemichannels in response to ATP release and activation of purinergic receptors[68]. Once opened, Panx-1 hemichannels facilitate virus entry by changing ionic gradients with further release of further signals such as ATP that activate extracellular purines and receptors[68]. Orellana *et al*[68] (2013) suggested that Panx-1 hemichannels are part of the apparatus of host proteins of which the virus takes advantage to enter the cells and replicate, and that the opening of these hemichannels might be involved in other events such as viral fusion.

In addition to Panx-1 hemichannels, other purinergic signaling pathways components may favor virus entry and subsequent events in viral infection. Purinergic receptors are also implicated in virus entry. A recent study demonstrated that the HIV-encoded Env complex triggers the release of ATP and subsequently activates the purinergic receptors initiating a cascade of events[4]. The extracellular ATP released through the Panx-1 hemichannels act on purinergic receptors, including P2Y2 which along with pannexin-1, ATP and Pyk2 were shown to be essential for HIV-1 replication[4], since purinergic receptor inhibitors and antagonists blocked HIV-1 replication[4]. P2Y2 activates the proline-rich tyrosine kinase, an important step in the cascade, which is also a critical effector of HIV-1 infection[4]. Overexpression of P2Y2 in peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) increased the depolarization of the plasma membrane, an event required for Env-dependent HIV-1 fusion[4].

P2X1 is also involved in viral entry, while P2X7 and P2Y1 might be involved in later events of viral infection; antagonists for all these receptors blocked viral replication but only antagonists for P2X1 blocked viral entry[5]. The binding of gp120 to host CD4 and co-receptors induces ATP release and subsequent activation of P2X1 receptors required for viral entry. P2X7 and P2Y1 may require greater amounts of accumulated ATP to be activated for involvement in later steps of the viral cycle[5]. Hazleton *et al*[5] (2012) also suggests that other products of ATP are also involved in the process of entry and replication of HIV. Further studies are necessary to elucidate the mechanisms and explore the therapeutic potential of purinergic receptors antagonists.

As mentioned previously, P2X7 is involved in HIV-1 replication and much higher concentrations of ATP are needed to activate this receptor. ATP release though Panx-1 hemichannels are thought to achieve a sufficiently high local concentration of ATP to induce P2X7 activation, which in turn activates the opening of Panx-1 hemichannels, creating a cycle that leads to persistent immune activation[69]. This positive feedback loop might be one of the multiple mechanisms involved in persistent activation during HIV infection[52]. The role of purinergic receptors in HIV entry, fusion and replication is summarized in Figure 3.

ECTOENZYMES AND HIV DISEASE PROGRESSION

Whilst ATP may promote inflammation, adenosine is considered a mostly anti-inflammatory molecule and a crucial regulator in innate and adaptive immune responses[70]. Ectoenzymes CD39 (NTPDase-1) and CD73 (5′-ecto-nucleotidase) are known to dephosphorylate extracellular ATP to adenosine, playing an important role in immune modulation[33,71,72]. The role of the ectoenzymes in physiological processes and diseases has been extensively studied, specially the NTPDase and 5′-ecto-nucleotidase activities[73]. Co-expression of CD39 and CD73 plays an important part in keeping the balance between activation and regulation of the immune response against HIV and, subsequently, in the halting of disease progression[51,74].

CD39 cleaves ATP into AMP while CD73 converts AMP into adenosine, increasing the expression of A2AR agonist and cyclic AMP (cAMP). CD39 is a marker of lymphoid activation which requires ATP as an energy source. This enzyme hydrolyses ATP into AMP to maintain the ATP levels, preserve cellular integrity and modulate the immune response[6]. Our group has found that the NTPDase-1 activity is increased in lymphocytes of HIV-positive patients suggesting that it might be due to apoptosis and the need to reduce the toxic effects of ATP release[6]. In the last few years a series of studies have investigated the role of T regulatory (Treg) cells expressing CD39 in HIV infection[31-33]. Nikolova *et al*[33] (2011) have established that the expansion of Treg CD39+ cells in HIV-infected individuals might contribute to disease progression, since they inhibit T cell proliferation. Another study also describes the increased expression of CD39 in Treg cells and its association with disease progression and immune activation[32]. In addition, CD39 was found to be involved in the inefficiency of the CD8+ T cell response during chronic HIV infection by inhibition of important cytokine production[33]. In support of this finding, Jenabian *et al*[31] (2013) show that the expansion of Treg CD39+ cells inhibits IL-2 production thereby suppressing the function of CD4+ T cells; this occurs through demethylation of an essential CpG site in the *IL-2* gene promoter. CD39+ Treg cells were shown to inhibit HIV replication mediated by cAMP in conventional T cells, suggesting they have a protective effect against HIV infection[75].

Unlike CD39, that is overexpressed in HIV-infected individuals, CD73 has shown to be depleted, which leads to decreased adenosine suppression and failure to control persistent cell activation contributing to disease progression[76,77]. Another interesting finding is that once the pool of CD4+CD73+ cells is depleted they can no longer be expanded, even if the CD4+ cell levels are recovered[76].

ADA is a purinergic signaling enzyme responsible for catalyzing the deamination of adenosine and also involved in modulating the T cell response against HIV[7,78-80]. ADA boosts both the CD4+ and CD8+ memory cell response

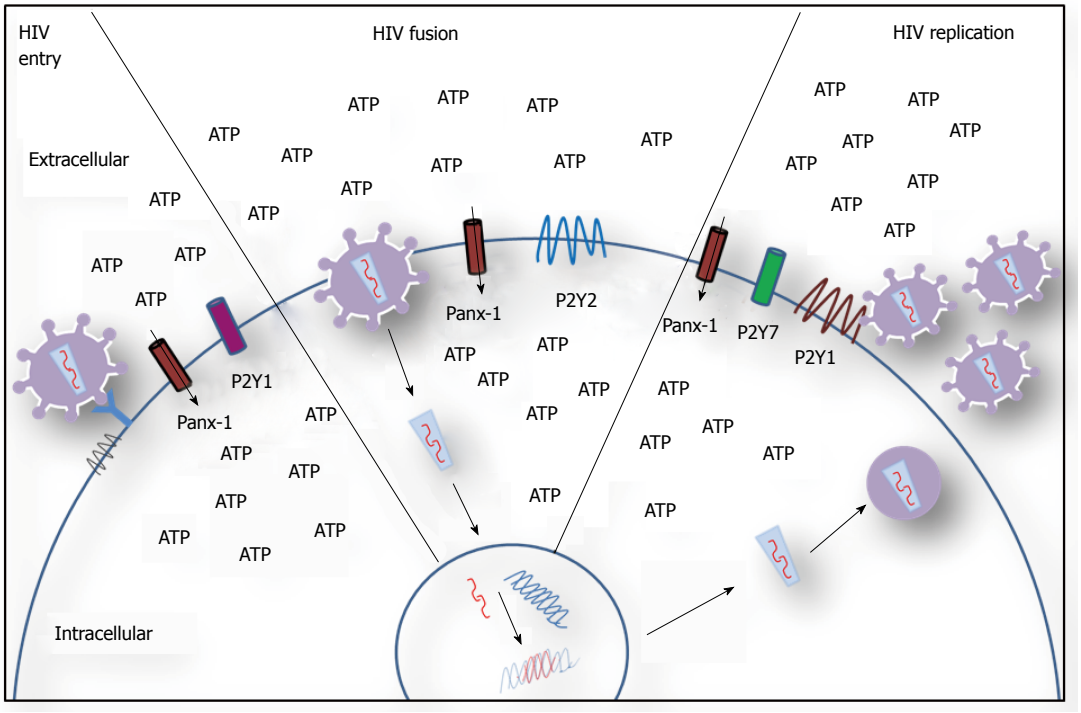


Figure 3 Schematic representation of purinergic receptors involvement in human immunodeficiency virus infection. Pannexin hemichannels (Panx-1) are open in response to ATP release and activation of purinergic receptors, facilitating viral entry, fusion and replication. The blockage of viral entry by P2X1 antagonists suggests it is involved in this stage of infection. P2Y2 increases cell membrane depolarization facilitating fusion. P2X7 and P2Y1 are involved in later steps of viral cycle.

to HIV and also reduces the suppression mediated by Treg cells[7,78-80]. In DCs, ADA has been shown to be capable of boosting immunogenicity and increasing the secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines[7,78,80]. All this data taken together suggests that ADA would be a strong candidate target for therapeutic and vaccine approaches[7,78,79].

ADA AS DISEASE PROGRESSION AND SENESCENCE BIOMARKER

HIV infected individuals are subject to accelerated aging, this might be due not only to the chronic inflammation and immune activation inherent of HIV infection[81], but also as a consequence of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART)[82]. In fact, immune activation has been a major cause of morbidity and mortality from AIDS-defining and non-AIDS defining diseases in patients undergoing antiretroviral treatment[83]. The increased production of inflammatory cytokines arising from the chronic inflammatory status enhances a process called "inflammaging"[84]. The term "inflammaids" was employed to define the extensive activation of innate and adaptive immunity during HIV infection, which resembles the process of inflammaging[85,86]. The HIV infection *per se* predisposes infected patients to premature aging, however the interplay between these pathological changes and HAART makes the situation even more complex[82]. The age-associated disorders that affect HIV infected patients include neurological and metabolic diseases and immunosenescence; the premature aging also has an impact on disease progression markers such as CD4+ and CD8+ T cell counts[87]. Since immune activation is a strong predictor of disease progression and consequent immunosenescence and premature aging, several biomarkers have been identified[37,38,88]. ADA has been shown to be not only a suitable marker of immune activation and disease progression[37] but also a suitable biomarker of senescent human CD8+ T cells[38].

PURINERGIC RECEPTORS, ATP/ADENOSINE AND ATP ANALOGS AS POTENTIAL THERAPEUTIC APPROACHES

The study of the implications of ATP and purinergic signaling in HIV infection has highlighted its potential use in therapeutic approaches[4,8,9,89].

As discussed earlier in this paper, studies have shown that purinergic receptors are essential for viral entry and replication[4,5]. A recent study has demonstrated that the inhibition of purinergic signaling blocks HIV-1 membrane fusion[10]. This study reveals that PPADS, a nonselective purinergic antagonist, is capable of inhibiting cell-to-cell and cell-free HIV-1 infection in both X4- and R5-tropic virus infections[10]. This finding highlights the potential use of P2X-selective purinergic antagonists to inhibit HIV-1 fusion.

Wagner[8] (2011) proposes the use of ATP combined with HAART to eliminate infected cells, exploiting the ability of ATP to modulate the immune response[17].

Recently, the use of ATP analogs was proposed to inhibit HIV-1 transcription by preventing cyclin-dependent kinases (Cdks) binding to Tat thus inhibiting Tat-dependent transcription[9].

CONCLUSION

HIV infection is a serious condition with a huge impact on global health. Despite all efforts to contain the spread of the virus, prolonging the life span and quality of life of infected individuals, prevalence[90], morbidity and mortality[91] rates are still high. Much is known about HIV infection but there are still areas in critical need of both basic and clinical research[92,93].

The understanding of pathogenic mechanisms involved in HIV infection and progression to AIDS, in which metabolic pathways such as purinergic signaling are involved, is crucial to achieve important objectives in controlling this condition.

Metabolic pathways have been the subject of investigation in the search for new therapies[52] and even a cure for HIV[94]. Even though the involvement of the purinergic signaling pathway in viral infections, including HIV, are multiple and ambiguous, it deserves further attention[22]. Studies on the subject have helped to elucidate disease mechanisms and propose new targets and approaches to therapy.The identification of prognostic biomarkers and the recognition of candidate target genes or pathways to improve therapy are high priority areas where HIV infection is concerned. Purinergic signaling system components are relevant topics of study both for development of biomarkers as well as potential therapeutic targets.

The data reviewed in this paper reveals that this research field must be encouraged. We believe further studies targeting purinergic signaling enzymes and receptors must be particularly pursued due to its relevance in the process of understanding of the pathogenic mechanisms and the promise of new therapies in the future.

REFERENCES

1 **Mogensen TH**, Melchjorsen J, Larsen CS, Paludan SR. Innate immune recognition and activation during HIV infection. *Retrovirology* 2010; **7**: 54 [PMID: 20569472 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4690-7-54]

2 **Appay V**, Sauce D. Immune activation and inflammation in HIV-1 infection: causes and consequences. *J Pathol* 2008; **214**: 231-241 [PMID: 18161758 DOI: 10.1002/path.2276]

3 **Perera SS**, Saksena NK. Innate, Adaptive ans Intrinsic immunity in Human Immunodeficiency virus infection. *Am J Infect Dis* 2012; **8**: 132 [DOI: 10.3844/ajidsp.2012.132.148]

4 **Séror C**, Melki MT, Subra F, Raza SQ, Bras M, Saïdi H, Nardacci R, Voisin L, Paoletti A, Law F, Martins I, Amendola A, Abdul-Sater AA, Ciccosanti F, Delelis O, Niedergang F, Thierry S, Said-Sadier N, Lamaze C, Métivier D, Estaquier J, Fimia GM, Falasca L, Casetti R, Modjtahedi N, Kanellopoulos J, Mouscadet JF, Ojcius DM, Piacentini M, Gougeon ML, Kroemer G, Perfettini JL. Extracellular ATP acts on P2Y2 purinergic receptors to facilitate HIV-1 infection. *J Exp Med* 2011; **208**: 1823-1834 [PMID: 21859844 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20101805]

5 **Hazleton JE**, Berman JW, Eugenin EA. Purinergic receptors are required for HIV-1 infection of primary human macrophages. *J Immunol* 2012; **188**: 4488-4495 [PMID: 22450808 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1102482]

6 **Leal DB**, Streher CA, Bertoncheli Cde M, Carli LF, Leal CA, da Silva JE, Morsch VM, Schetinger MR. HIV infection is associated with increased NTPDase activity that correlates with CD39-positive lymphocytes. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2005; **1746**: 129-134 [PMID: 16344116]

7 **Naval-Macabuhay I**, Casanova V, Garcia F, Leon A, Gil C, Rovira C, Miralles L, Lluís C, Canela EI, Mallol J, Gatell JM, Gallart T, McCormick PJ, Climent N. ADA Reduces the HIV-1-Specific Tregs and Enhances HIV-1-Specific CD4 and CD8 Effector and Memory T-Cell Responses in AIDS Research And Human Retroviruses. New Rochelle, NY: Mary Ann Liebert, 2013. Available from: URL: http://mccormicklab.com/content/ada-reduces

8 **Wagner MC**. The therapeutic potential of adenosine triphosphate as an immune modulator in the treatment of HIV/AIDS: a combination approach with HAART. *Curr HIV Res* 2011; **9**: 209-222 [PMID: 21675943 DOI: 10.2174/157016211796320289]

9 **Narayanan A**, Sampey G, Van Duyne R, Guendel I, Kehn-Hall K, Roman J, Currer R, Galons H, Oumata N, Joseph B, Meijer L, Caputi M, Nekhai S, Kashanchi F. Use of ATP analogs to inhibit HIV-1 transcription. *Virology* 2012; **432**: 219-231 [PMID: 22771113 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2012.06.007]

10 **Swartz TH**, Esposito AM, Durham ND, Hartmann BM, Chen BK. P2X-selective purinergic antagonists are strong inhibitors of HIV-1 fusion during both cell-to-cell and cell-free infection. *J Virol* 2014; **88**: 11504-11515 [PMID: 25031337]

11 **Burnstock G**. Purinergic signalling: Its unpopular beginning, its acceptance and its exciting future. *Bioessays* 2012; **34**: 218-225 [PMID: 22237698 DOI: 10.1002/bies.201100130]

12 **Burnstock G**. Purinergic signalling: pathophysiology and therapeutic potential. *Keio J Med* 2013; **62**: 63-73 [PMID: 24067872]

13 **Di Virgilio F**. Purines, purinergic receptors, and cancer. *Cancer Res* 2012; **72**: 5441-5447 [PMID: 23090120 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-12-1600]

14 **Burnstock G**. Purinergic signalling: past, present and future. *Braz J Med Biol Res* 2009; **42**: 3-8 [PMID: 18853040]

15 **Yegutkin GG**. Nucleotide- and nucleoside-converting ectoenzymes: Important modulators of purinergic signalling cascade. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2008; **1783**: 673-694 [PMID: 18302942 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbamcr.2008.01.024]

16 **Volonté C**, D'Ambrosi N. Membrane compartments and purinergic signalling: the purinome, a complex interplay among ligands, degrading enzymes, receptors and transporters. *FEBS J* 2009; **276**: 318-329 [PMID: 19076212 DOI: 10.1111/j.1742-4658.2008.06793.x]

17 **Di Virgilio F**. Purinergic signalling in the immune system. A brief update. *Purinergic Signal* 2007; **3**: 1-3 [PMID: 18404413]

18 **Riteau N**, Baron L, Villeret B, Guillou N, Savigny F, Ryffel B, Rassendren F, Le Bert M, Gombault A, Couillin I. ATP release and purinergic signaling: a common pathway for particle-mediated inflammasome activation. *Cell Death Dis* 2012; **3**: e403 [PMID: 23059822]

19 **Trautmann A**. Extracellular ATP in the immune system: more than just a "danger signal". *Sci Signal* 2009; **2**: pe6 [PMID: 19193605 DOI: 10.1126/scisignal.256pe6]

20 **Burnstock G**. Pathophysiology and therapeutic potential of purinergic signaling. *Pharmacol Rev* 2006; **58**: 58-86 [PMID: 16507883]

21 **Murgia M**, Pizzo P, Steinberg TH, Di Virgilio F. Characterization of the cytotoxic effect of extracellular ATP in J774 mouse macrophages. *Biochem J* 1992; **288** (Pt 3): 897-901 [PMID: 1472003]

22 **Eltzschig HK**, Sitkovsky MV, Robson SC. Purinergic signaling during inflammation. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **367**: 2322-2333 [PMID: 23234515 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra1205750]

23 **Colgan SP**, Eltzschig HK. Adenosine and hypoxia-inducible factor signaling in intestinal injury and recovery. *Annu Rev Physiol* 2012; **74**: 153-175 [PMID: 21942704]

24 **Grenz A**, Homann D, Eltzschig HK. Extracellular adenosine: a safety signal that dampens hypoxia-induced inflammation during ischemia. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2011; **15**: 2221-2234 [PMID:

21126189]
25 **Eckle T**, Koeppen M, Eltzschig HK. Role of extracellular adenosine in acute lung injury. *Physiology* (Bethesda) 2009; **24**: 298-306 [PMID: 19815856 DOI: 10.1152/physiol.00022.2009]
26 **Rapaport E**. Treatment of human tumor cells with ADP or ATP yields arrest of growth in the S phase of the cell cycle. *J Cell Physiol* 1983; **114**: 279-283 [PMID: 6833403]
27 **White N**, Burnstock G. P2 receptors and cancer. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 2006; **27**: 211-217 [PMID: 16530853]
28 **Taylor SR**, Turner CM, Elliott JI, McDaid J, Hewitt R, Smith J, Pickering MC, Whitehouse DL, Cook HT, Burnstock G, Pusey CD, Unwin RJ, Tam FW. P2X7 deficiency attenuates renal injury in experimental glomerulonephritis. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 2009; **20**: 1275-1281 [PMID: 19389853]
29 **Agrawal A**, Buckley KA, Bowers K, Furber M, Gallagher JA, Gartland A. The effects of P2X7 receptor antagonists on the formation and function of human osteoclasts in vitro. *Purinergic Signal* 2010; **6**: 307-315 [PMID: 21103214]
30 **Burnstock G**. Physiology and pathophysiology of purinergic neurotransmission. *Physiol Rev* 2007; **87**: 659-797 [PMID: 17429044]
31 **Jenabian MA**, Seddiki N, Yatim A, Carriere M, Hulin A, Younas M, Ghadimi E, Kök A, Routy JP, Tremblay A, Sévigny J, Lelievre JD, Levy Y. Regulatory T cells negatively affect IL-2 production of effector T cells through CD39/adenosine pathway in HIV infection. *PLoS Pathog* 2013; **9**: e1003319 [PMID: 23658513]
32 **Schulze Zur Wiesch J**, Thomssen A, Hartjen P, Tóth I, Lehmann C, Meyer-Olson D, Colberg K, Frerk S, Babikir D, Schmiedel S, Degen O, Mauss S, Rockstroh J, Staszewski S, Khaykin P, Strasak A, Lohse AW, Fätkenheuer G, Hauber J, van Lunzen J. Comprehensive analysis of frequency and phenotype of T regulatory cells in HIV infection: CD39 expression of FoxP3+ T regulatory cells correlates with progressive disease. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 1287-1297 [PMID: 21047964]
33 **Nikolova M**, Carriere M, Jenabian MA, Limou S, Younas M, Kök A, Huë S, Seddiki N, Hulin A, Delaneau O, Schuitemaker H, Herbeck JT, Mullins JI, Muhtarova M, Bensussan A, Zagury JF, Lelievre JD, Lévy Y. CD39/adenosine pathway is involved in AIDS progression. *PLoS Pathog* 2011; **7**: e1002110 [PMID: 21750674]
34 **Pingle SC**, Jajoo S, Mukherjea D, Sniderhan LF, Jhaveri KA, Marcuzzi A, Rybak LP, Maggirwar SB, Ramkumar V. Activation of the adenosine A1 receptor inhibits HIV-1 tat-induced apoptosis by reducing nuclear factor-kappaB activation and inducible nitric-oxide synthase. *Mol Pharmacol* 2007; **72**: 856-867 [PMID: 17609415]
35 **Tovar-Y-Romo LB**, Kolson DL, Bandaru VV, Drewes JL, Graham DR, Haughey NJ. Adenosine triphosphate released from HIV-infected macrophages regulates glutamatergic tone and dendritic spine density on neurons. *J Neuroimmune Pharmacol* 2013; **8**: 998-1009 [PMID: 23686368]
36 **Sorrell ME**, Hauser KF. Ligand-gated purinergic receptors regulate HIV-1 Tat and morphine related neurotoxicity in primary mouse striatal neuron-glia co-cultures. *J Neuroimmune Pharmacol* 2014; **9**: 233-244 [PMID: 24158495]
37 **Ipp H**, Zemlin AE, Glashoff RH, van Wyk J, Vanker N, Reid T, Bekker LG. Serum adenosine deaminase and total immunoglobulin G correlate with markers of immune activation and inversely with CD4 counts in asymptomatic, treatment-naive HIV infection. *J Clin Immunol* 2013; **33**: 605-612 [PMID: 23160984]
38 **Chou JP**, Ramirez CM, Wu JE, Effros RB. Accelerated aging in HIV/AIDS: novel biomarkers of senescent human CD8+ T cells. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e64702 [PMID: 23717651]
39 **Mohan T**, Bhatnagar S, Gupta DL, Rao DN. Current understanding of HIV-1 and T-cell adaptive immunity: progress to date. *Microb Pathog* 2014; **73**: 60-69 [PMID: 24930593]
40 **Swanstrom R**, Coffin J. HIV-1 pathogenesis: the virus. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med* 2012; **2**: a007443 [PMID: 23143844]
41 **Lackner AA**, Lederman MM, Rodriguez B. HIV pathogenesis: the host. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med* 2012; **2**: a007005 [PMID: 22951442]
42 **Paoletti A**, Raza SQ, Voisin L, Law F, Pipoli da Fonseca J, Caillet M, Kroemer G, Perfettini JL. Multifaceted roles of purinergic receptors in viral infection. *Microbes Infect* 2012; **14**: 1278-1283 [PMID: 22683717]
43 **Kawai T**, Akira S. Toll-like receptors and their crosstalk with other innate receptors in infection and immunity. *Immunity* 2011; **34**: 637-650 [PMID: 21616434]
44 **Berg RK**, Melchjorsen J, Rintahaka J, Diget E, Søby S, Horan KA, Gorelick RJ, Matikainen S, Larsen CS, Ostergaard L, Paludan SR, Mogensen TH. Genomic HIV RNA induces innate immune responses through RIG-I-dependent sensing of secondary-structured RNA. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e29291 [PMID: 22235281]
45 **Suresh R**, Mosser DM. Pattern recognition receptors in innate immunity, host defense, and immunopathology. *Adv Physiol Educ* 2013; **37**: 284-291 [PMID: 24292903]
46 **Altfeld M**, Fadda L, Frleta D, Bhardwaj N. DCs and NK cells: critical effectors in the immune response to HIV-1. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2011; **11**: 176-186 [PMID: 21350578]
47 **Corriden R**, Insel PA. Basal release of ATP: an autocrine-paracrine mechanism for cell regulation. *Sci Signal* 2010; **3**: re1 [PMID: 20068232]
48 **Ralevic V**, Burnstock G. Receptors for purines and pyrimidines. *Pharmacol Rev* 1998; **50**: 413-492 [PMID: 9755289]
49 **Lamkanfi M**, Kanneganti TD, Franchi L, Núñez G. Caspase-1 inflammasomes in infection and inflammation. *J Leukoc Biol* 2007; **82**: 220-225 [PMID: 17442855]
50 **Gombault A**, Baron L, Couillin I. ATP release and purinergic signaling in NLRP3 inflammasome activation. *Front Immunol* 2012; **3**: 414 [PMID: 23316199]
51 **Hernandez JC**, Latz E, Urcuqui-Inchima S. HIV-1 induces the first signal to activate the NLRP3 inflammasome in monocyte-derived macrophages. *Intervirology* 2014; **57**: 36-42 [PMID: 24008203]
52 **Craveiro M**, Clerc I, Sitbon M, Taylor N. Metabolic pathways as regulators of HIV infection. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS* 2013; **8**: 182-189 [PMID: 23564003]
53 **Bergsbaken T**, Fink SL, Cookson BT. Pyroptosis: host cell death and inflammation. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2009; **7**: 99-109 [PMID: 19148178]
54 **Doitsh G**, Galloway NL, Geng X, Yang Z, Monroe KM, Zepeda O, Hunt PW, Hatano H, Sowinski S, Muñoz-Arias I, Greene WC. Cell death by pyroptosis drives CD4 T-cell depletion in HIV-1 infection. *Nature* 2014; **505**: 509-514 [PMID: 24356306]
55 **Miao EA**, Rajan JV, Aderem A. Caspase-1-induced pyroptotic cell death. *Immunol Rev* 2011; **243**: 206-214 [PMID: 21884178]
56 **Junger WG**. Immune cell regulation by autocrine purinergic signalling. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2011; **11**: 201-212 [PMID: 21331080]
57 **Marchetti G**, Tincati C, Silvestri G. Microbial translocation in the pathogenesis of HIV infection and AIDS. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2013; **26**: 2-18 [PMID: 23297256]
58 **Sandler NG**, Douek DC. Microbial translocation in HIV infection: causes, consequences and treatment opportunities. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2012; **10**: 655-666 [PMID: 22886237]
59 **Klatt NR**, Funderburg NT, Brenchley JM. Microbial translocation, immune activation, and HIV disease. *Trends Microbiol* 2013; **21**: 6-13 [PMID: 23062765]
60 **Nasi M**, Pinti M, Mussini C, Cossarizza A. Persistent inflammation in HIV infection: established concepts, new perspectives. *Immunol Lett* 2014; **161**: 184-188 [PMID: 24487059]
61 **Barat C**, Gilbert C, Imbeault M, Tremblay MJ. Extracellular ATP reduces HIV-1 transfer from immature dendritic cells to CD4+ T lymphocytes. *Retrovirology* 2008; **5**: 30 [PMID: 18373845]
62 **Burnstock G**, Krügel U, Abbracchio MP, Illes P. Purinergic signalling: from normal behaviour to pathological brain function. *Prog Neurobiol* 2011; **95**: 229-274 [PMID: 21907261]
63 **Hazleton JE**, Berman JW, Eugenin EA. Novel mechanisms of central nervous system damage in HIV infection. *HIV AIDS* (Auckl) 2010; **2**: 39-49 [PMID: 22096383]
64 **Fotheringham J**, Mayne M, Holden C, Nath A, Geiger JD. Adenosine receptors control HIV-1 Tat-induced inflammatory responses through protein phosphatase. *Virology* 2004; **327**: 186-195 [PMID: 15351206]
65 **Burnstock G**. Purine and pyrimidine receptors. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2007; **64**: 1471-1483 [PMID: 17375261]

66 **Paoletti A**, Raza SQ, Voisin L, Law F, Caillet M, Martins I, Deutsch E, Perfettini JL. Editorial: Pannexin-1--the hidden gatekeeper for HIV-1. *J Leukoc Biol* 2013; **94**: 390-392 [PMID: 23990659]

67 **Velasquez S**, Eugenin EA. Role of Pannexin-1 hemichannels and purinergic receptors in the pathogenesis of human diseases. *Front Physiol* 2014; **5**: 96 [PMID: 24672487]

68 **Orellana JA**, Velasquez S, Williams DW, Sáez JC, Berman JW, Eugenin EA. Pannexin1 hemichannels are critical for HIV infection of human primary CD4+ T lymphocytes. *J Leukoc Biol* 2013; **94**: 399-407 [PMID: 23456773]

69 **Schenk U**, Westendorf AM, Radaelli E, Casati A, Ferro M, Fumagalli M, Verderio C, Buer J, Scanziani E, Grassi F. Purinergic control of T cell activation by ATP released through pannexin-1 hemichannels. *Sci Signal* 2008; **1**: ra6 [PMID: 18827222]

70 **Ernst PB**, Garrison JC, Thompson LF. Much ado about adenosine: adenosine synthesis and function in regulatory T cell biology. *J Immunol* 2010; **185**: 1993-1998 [PMID: 20686167]

71 **Regateiro FS**, Cobbold SP, Waldmann H. CD73 and adenosine generation in the creation of regulatory microenvironments. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2013; **171**: 1-7 [PMID: 23199317]

72 **Leal DB**, Streher CA, Neu TN, Bittencourt FP, Leal CA, da Silva JE, Morsch VM, Schetinger MR. Characterization of NTPDase (NTPDase1; ecto-apyrase; ecto-diphosphohydrolase; CD39; EC 3.6.1.5) activity in human lymphocytes. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2005; **1721**: 9-15 [PMID: 15652174]

73 **Schetinger MR**, Morsch VM, Bonan CD, Wyse AT. NTPDase and 5'-nucleotidase activities in physiological and disease conditions: new perspectives for human health. *Biofactors* 2007; **31**: 77-98 [PMID: 18806312]

74 **Chevalier MF**, Weiss L. The split personality of regulatory T cells in HIV infection. *Blood* 2013; **121**: 29-37 [PMID: 23043072]

75 **Moreno-Fernandez ME**, Rueda CM, Rusie LK, Chougnet CA. Regulatory T cells control HIV replication in activated T cells through a cAMP-dependent mechanism. *Blood* 2011; **117**: 5372-5380 [PMID: 21436067]

76 **Schuler PJ**, Macatangay BJ, Saze Z, Jackson EK, Riddler SA, Buchanan WG, Hilldorfer BB, Mellors JW, Whiteside TL, Rinaldo CR. $CD4^+CD73^+$ T cells are associated with lower T-cell activation and C reactive protein levels and are depleted in HIV-1 infection regardless of viral suppression. *AIDS* 2013; **27**: 1545-1555 [PMID: 24005375]

77 **Toth I**, Hauber J, Hartjen P, van Lunzen J, Schulze zur Wiesch J. Downregulation of the 5'-ectonucleotidase CD73 of CD8 CTL of HIV infected patients correlates with immune activation and diminished IL-2 production. *Retrovirology* 2012; **9** (Suppl 2): 261 [DOI: 10.1186/1742-4690-9-S2-P261]

78 **Casanova V**, Naval-Macabuhay I, Massanella M, Rodríguez-García M, Blanco J, Gatell JM, García F, Gallart T, Lluis C, Mallol J, Franco R, Climent N, McCormick PJ. Adenosine deaminase enhances the immunogenicity of human dendritic cells from healthy and HIV-infected individuals. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e51287 [PMID: 23240012]

79 **Climent N**, Martinez-Navio JM, Gil C, Garcia F, Rovira C, Hurtado C, Miralles L, Gatell JM, Gallart T, Mallol J, Lluis C, Franco R. Adenosine deaminase enhances T-cell response elicited by dendritic cells loaded with inactivated HIV. *Immunol Cell Biol* 2009; **87**: 634-639 [PMID: 19668260]

80 **Martinez-Navio JM**, Casanova V, Pacheco R, Naval-Macabuhay I, Climent N, Garcia F, Gatell JM, Mallol J, Gallart T, Lluis C, Franco R. Adenosine deaminase potentiates the generation of effector, memory, and regulatory CD4+ T cells. *J Leukoc Biol* 2011; **89**: 127-136 [PMID: 20959412]

81 **Deeks SG**. HIV infection, inflammation, immunosenescence, and aging. *Annu Rev Med* 2011; **62**: 141-155 [PMID: 21090961]

82 **Torres RA**, Lewis W. Aging and HIV/AIDS: pathogenetic role of therapeutic side effects. *Lab Invest* 2014; **94**: 120-128 [PMID: 24336070]

83 **Rajasuriar R**, Khoury G, Kamarulzaman A, French MA, Cameron PU, Lewin SR. Persistent immune activation in chronic HIV infection: do any interventions work? *AIDS* 2013; **27**: 1199-1208 [PMID: 23324661]

84 **Franceschi C**, Capri M, Monti D, Giunta S, Olivieri F, Sevini F, Panourgia MP, Invidia L, Celani L, Scurti M, Cevenini E, Castellani GC, Salvioli S. Inflammaging and anti-inflammaging: a systemic perspective on aging and longevity emerged from studies in humans. *Mech Ageing Dev* 2007; **128**: 92-105 [PMID: 17116321]

85 **De Biasi S**, Pinti M, Nasi M, Gibellini L, Bertoncelli L, Manzini S, Mussini C, Cossarizza A. HIV-1 infection and the aging of the immune system: facts, similarities and perspectives. *JECM* 2011: **3**: 143-150 [DOI: 10.1016/j.jecm.2011.06.001]

86 **Nasi M**, Pinti M, De Biasi S, Gibellini L, Ferraro D, Mussini C, Cossarizza A. Aging with HIV infection: a journey to the center of inflammAIDS, immunosenescence and neuroHIV. *Immunol Lett* 2014; **162**: 329-333 [PMID: 24996041]

87 **Pirrone V**, Libon DJ, Sell C, Lerner CA, Nonnemacher MR, Wigdahl B. Impact of age on markers of HIV-1 disease. *Future Virol* 2013; **8**: 81-101 [PMID: 23596462]

88 **Sainz T**, Serrano-Villar S, Díaz L, González Tomé MI, Gurbindo MD, de José MI, Mellado MJ, Ramos JT, Zamora J, Moreno S, Muñoz-Fernández MA. The CD4/CD8 ratio as a marker T-cell activation, senescence and activation/exhaustion in treated HIV-infected children and young adults. *AIDS* 2013; **27**: 1513-1516 [PMID: 23435292]

89 **Lou KJ**. New targets for HIV. SciBX: Science-Business eXchange 2011; **4** [DOI: 10.1038/scibx.2011.1005]

90 WHO. Number of people (all ages) living with HIV. [accessed 2014 Oct 12]. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/gho/hiv/epidemic_status/cases_all/en/

91 **WHO**. Number of deaths due to HIV/AIDS. [accessed 2014 Oct 12]. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/gho/hiv/epidemic_status/deaths/en/

92 **Maartens G**, Celum C, Lewin SR. HIV infection: epidemiology, pathogenesis, treatment, and prevention. *Lancet* 2014; **384**: 258-271 [PMID: 24907868]

93 **High KP**, Brennan-Ing M, Clifford DB, Cohen MH, Currier J, Deeks SG, Deren S, Effros RB, Gebo K, Goronzy JJ, Justice AC, Landay A, Levin J, Miotti PG, Munk RJ, Nass H, Rinaldo CR, Shlipak MG, Tracy R, Valcour V, Vance DE, Walston JD, Volberding P. HIV and aging: state of knowledge and areas of critical need for research. A report to the NIH Office of AIDS Research by the HIV and Aging Working Group. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2012; **60** Suppl 1: S1-18 [PMID: 22688010]

94 **Badley AD**, Sainski A, Wightman F, Lewin SR. Altering cell death pathways as an approach to cure HIV infection. *Cell Death Dis* 2013; **4**: e718 [PMID: 23846220]

P- Reviewer: Davis DA, Diefenbach R, Shih WL **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.295

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 295-302
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Diagnostic assays developed for the control of foot-and-mouth disease in India

Gaurav Kumar Sharma, Sonalika Mahajan, Rakesh Matura, Saravanan Subramaniam, Rajeev Ranjan, Jitendra Biswal, Manoranjan Rout, Jajati Keshari Mohapatra, Bana Bihari Dash, Aniket Sanyal, Bramhadev Pattnaik

Gaurav Kumar Sharma, Sonalika Mahajan, Rakesh Matura, Saravanan Subramaniam, Rajeev Ranjan, Jitendra Biswal, Manoranjan Rout, Jajati Keshari Mohapatra, Bana Bihari Dash, Aniket Sanyal, Bramhadev Pattnaik, Project Directorate on Foot and Mouth Disease, Indian Council of Agricultural Research, Mukteswar, Uttarakhand 263138, India

Author contributions: Sharma GK designed the scope of the minireview and wrote the paper; Mahajan S and Matura R reviewed the literature and compiled the data; Saravanan S, Ranjan R and Biswal J analyzed the FMD virus diagnosis data; Sharma GK, Mahajan S and Dash BB analyzed the herd immunity data; Rout M and Mohapatra JK analyzed the FMD sero-surveillance data; Sharma GK and Pattnaik B compiled and revised the manuscript; Sanyal A compiled the molecular diagnosis of FMD data and revised the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflict-of-interest in this study.

Correspondence to: Bramhadev Pattnaik, MVSc, PhD, Project Director, Project Directorate on Foot and Mouth Disease, Indian Council of Agricultural Research, IVRI Campus, Mukteswar, Uttarakhand 263138, India. pattnaikb@gmail.com
Telephone: +91-5942-286004
Fax: +91-5942-286307

Received: November 6, 2014
Peer-review started: November 10, 2014
First decision: January 20, 2015
Revised: February 13, 2015
Accepted: May 5, 2015
Article in press: May 6, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

Foot-and-mouth disease (FMD) is a highly contagious and economically devastating disease of livestock, primarily affecting cattle, buffalo and pigs. FMD virus serotypes O, A and Asia1 are prevalent in India and systematic efforts are on to control and eventually eradicate the disease from the country. FMD epidemiology is complex due to factors like co-circulation, extinction, emergence and re-emergence of genotypes/lineages within the three serotypes, animal movement, diverse farm practices and large number of susceptible livestock in the country. Systematic vaccination, prompt diagnosis, strict biosecurity measures, and regular monitoring of vaccinal immunity and surveillance of virus circulation are indispensible features for the effective implementation of the control measures. Availability of suitable companion diagnostic tests is very important in this endeavour. In this review, the diagnostic assays developed and validated in India and their contribution in FMD control programme is presented.

Key words: Foot-and-mouth disease; Diagnosis; Sero-surveillance; Sero-monitoring; Multiplex polymerase chain reaction; Real-time polymerase chain reaction; Lineage differentiating polymerase chain reaction

Core tip: To inform scientific community, this short review summarizes existing foot-and-mouth disease diagnostics developed in the recent past and used in India. Immediate and future requirements in the diagnostics are highlighted.

Sharma GK, Mahajan S, Matura R, Subramaniam S, Ranjan R, Biswal J, Rout M, Mohapatra JK, Dash BB, Sanyal A, Pattnaik B. Diagnostic assays developed for the control of foot-and-mouth

disease in India. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 295-302 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/295.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.295

INTRODUCTION

Foot and mouth disease (FMD) continues to pose threat to the livestock sector in the world. The annual direct loss due to FMD in India is estimated at United States dollar4.45 billion[1]. Economic losses due to trade barrier imposed by FMD free countries could be much more. FMD is caused by a single stranded positive sense RNA virus, belonging to the genus *Aphthovirus* of family *Picornaviridae*[2]. Seven serotypes (O, A, C, Asia1, SAT-1, SAT-2 and SAT-3) and multiple antigenic variants within the serotypes of FMD virus (FMDV) exist because of the variable antigenic nature of its structural proteins.The FMDV genome of approximately 8.5 kb is polyadenylated at 3′ terminus and carries a small protein VPg at its 5′ end[3,4]. It encodes four structural proteins (SPs) (VP1-4) and at least 8 non-structural proteins (NSPs). Structural proteins, VP1, VP2, VP3 and VP4 are formed by post-translation cleavage of a precursor coded by 1D, 1B, 1C and 1A genes, respectively[3]. Non-structural proteins of FMDV consist of L, 2A, 2B, 2C, 3A, 3B1, 3B2, 3B3, 3C, and 3D. The L gene which encodes L protein is situated at the extreme 5′ end of the coding region while all other NSPs are encoded by the P2 and P3 regions, which are situated towards the 3′ end of the viral RNA (Figure 1). The P2 region codes for 2A, 2B and 2C while P3 codes for 3A, 3B1, 3B2, 3B3, 3C and 3D.

Most of the developed countries are free from FMD, whereas the disease is present in many developing countries including India. Epidemiology of FMD in India is complex due to prevalence of many variants of FMDV serotypes (O, A, Asia1), mixed farming system, diverse landscape, animal husbandry practices and very large population (about 500 million) of susceptible livestock[5].

The disease in cattle and buffalo is characterized by high fever, depression, excessive salivation, formation of vesicles on the tongue and oral cavity, epidermis of the coronary band and inter digital space, udder and teats. Formation of vesicles in the oral cavity results in reduced food consumption, weight loss and emaciation. Vesicles may also develop in the epithelium of the pharynx, larynx, trachea, oesophagus and rumen. In young animals, it may lead to death due to myocarditis. Many times it leads to secondary bacterial infection in affected animals. While mortality is generally less than 3%, morbidity is very high and economic losses become unbearable for the farmers on account of decreased productivity and protracted convalescence in affected animals. Though, mortality is notably high in young pigs. Incubation period ranges from 2 to 14 d, but is generally shorter than a week.

FMDV can be transmitted by direct contact, aerosols, mechanical carriage by men or fomites and through animal products such as meat, offal, milk, semen or embryos. Infected pigs shed large quantities of virus in aerosols[6] and spread the virus down wind. Under favourable conditions of low temperature, high humidity and moderate winds, virus in aerosols may spread up to 250 km over sea[7] and 60 km over land[7]. Virus can remain infective on soil for 3 d in summer and for up to 28 d in winter[8].

FMD symptoms could be confused with other vesicular diseases like Swine Vesicular Disease (cattle and sheep are resistant), Vesicular Exanthema (cattle and sheep are resistant), Vesicular Stomatitis virus (sheep/goats are resistant). Availability of rapid and sensitive FMD diagnostic assays is essential in order to confirm the initial cases and prevent further spread of the disease. Infected animals may secrete the virus before clinical symptoms develop and the virus could spread rapidly in the susceptible population; hence rapid and early identification of the infected/carrier animals is critical.

Timely identification of serotype of the virus involved in the outbreak is of the utmost importance for disease control. Besides, apparently healthy animal population in endemic settings are to be regularly screened for the presence of antibodies against SPs and NSPs of FMDV and for the presence of the virus in the oro-pharynx to confirm the carrier status. Many diagnostic assays have been developed throughout the world for rapid and specific detection of FMDV and the antibodies against the FMDV proteins. Most of these assays are developed and validated considering the local requirements and prevailing virus pool, whereas some assays have been developed for use in the broad geographical areas. Now a day, molecular methods for FMD diagnosis are playing important role when compared to the conventional methods.

The episodes of FMD outbreaks are to be actively monitored, recorded and investigated in order to support the vaccination based control programme in the country. For all these activities, availability of rapid, sensitive, specific and economical diagnostic assays representing the FMDV pool in circulation is of prime importance and necessity.

A systematic vaccination based control is in operation for control and eventual eradication of FMD from India since 2003-2004 by Government of India (Department of Animal Husbandry, Dairying, and Fisheries)[5]. The total FMD susceptible livestock population in the country is about 500 million comprising of more than 300 million cattle and buffalo, 71.5 million sheep, 140.5 million goats, and 11 million pigs[9]. Availability of indigenously developed diagnostic assays is crucial and indispensible to support such a huge control programme. In this review, the role of diagnostic assays developed, validated and used over the last decade in the country (Table 1) along with their contribution in control of FMD in India is being discussed.

FMDV DETECTION IN CLINICAL MATERIALS

FMD is primarily diagnosed by demonstrating FMDV

Table 1 Diagnostic assays for foot-and-mouth disease virus diagnosis with their associated advantages and disadvantage

FMD diagnostic assay	Specimen materials	Target region	Sensitivity	Specificity	Advantages	Disadvantages
Sandwich ELISA	RNA from TE, FL, TE,	VP1 protein	80%	100%	Easy to perform Suitable for handling large number of samples	Less sensitive, not suitable for certain type of clinical samples
Multiplex PCR	RNA from TE, FL, TE, Semen, Milk	1D region	Minimum detection limit of 1×10^{-1} $TCID_{50}$/mL	100% specific for cross serotype detection	Rapid and sensitive Suitable for samples like semen and milk	High risk of generating false positives
Taqman real-time PCR	RNA from TE, FL, TE, Semen, Milk	1D region	Minimum detection limit of $10^{1.0}$ $TCID_{50}$/mL	100% specific for cross serotype detection	More sensitive and specific than gel based assay	high risk of generating false positives
Virus isolation and neutralization	Triturated material of TE, FL, TE,	--			Gold standard assay for FMD diagnosis	Slow takes 1-4 d for confirmatory results
RNA transfection	RNA from TE, FL, TE, Semen, Milk	--	--	--	FMDV can be isolated from deteriorated clinical materials	--
LAMP	RNA from TE, FL, TE, Semen, Milk	3D region	Minimum detection limit up to 1.1×10^{-4} $TCID_{50}$/mL	--	Require no specialized instruments, can be used as point-of-care diagnosis	High risk of generating false positives
3AB3 I-ELISA	Serum	3AB3 region	96%	99.1% -96.4%	Sensitive and Specific	Only for bovine species
3ABC C-ELISA	Serum	3ABC region			Specific assay Universal for all species	Less sensitive than I-ELISA
2Ct I-ELISA	Serum	2C region			Sensitive and Specific	Only for bovine species

FMD: Foot-and-mouth disease; ELISA: Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; PCR: Polymerase chain reaction; LAMP: Loop-mediated isothermal amplification.

particles or viral genome in the clinical materials *viz*. tongue epithelium, foot epithelium, saliva, milk and semen, *etc*. Detection of intact virus particles by sandwich enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) and virus neutralization test provides confirmatory diagnosis, whereas detection of the viral genome by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) or loop-mediated isothermal amplification (LAMP) assay is more sensitive method of diagnosis. Samples collected from the FMD suspected animals are processed and routinely analyzed by these assays. The details of the suspected clinical samples tested during the last seven years are presented in the Table 2.

Table 2 Details of the clinical materials suspected for Foot-and-mouth disease tested by sandwich enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay and multiplex polymerase chain reaction during the last five years

Year	Sample tested	Serotype O	Serotype A	Serotype Asia1	Total FMD diagnosed
2009-2010	1155	423	15	7	445
2010-2011	345	83	10	10	171
2011-2012	567	265	4	40	309
2012-2013	701	218	15	52	285
2013-2014	3130	1295	24	10	1329
Total	5898	2284	68	119	2539

FMD: Foot-and-mouth disease.

Sandwich ELISA

FMD antigen detection ELISA was shown to be rapid and simpler to perform[10]. The assay is generally regarded as the primary test for FMD diagnosis especially at the regionally located FMD diagnostic laboratories in the country[11]. The suspected clinical materials are first submitted to the regionally located FMD diagnostic laboratories in the country working under ICAR-PDFMD, Mukteswar where samples are processed and tested by an in-house sandwich ELISA for identification of FMDV serotype(s). The assay is based on the detection of FMDV structural proteins (Figure 1) and utilizes the serotype specific polyclonal antibodies generated in guinea pig and rabbits[12]. This antigen-capture sandwich ELISA has 100% specificity for heterologous FMDV and 80% sensitivity for detection of complete virus particles in clinical samples[12]. The assay is easy to perform at regional FMD diagnostic laboratories and large number of samples can be processed without risk of laboratory cross contamination. The assay is being used countrywide since two decades at 23 regionally located laboratories in the country[11]. As the assay specifically detects the intact virion particles in clinical materials in a serotype specific manner, the lower sensitivity could be attributed to the improper storage and transportation of samples that leads breakdown of the virus particles. The clinical materials are then submitted to the Central Laboratory, Mukteswar for detailed virological and genome analysis. Since 2009-2010, more than 5000 clinical materials have been tested by the sandwich ELISA, both at the regional FMD diagnostic laboratories and the central laboratory.

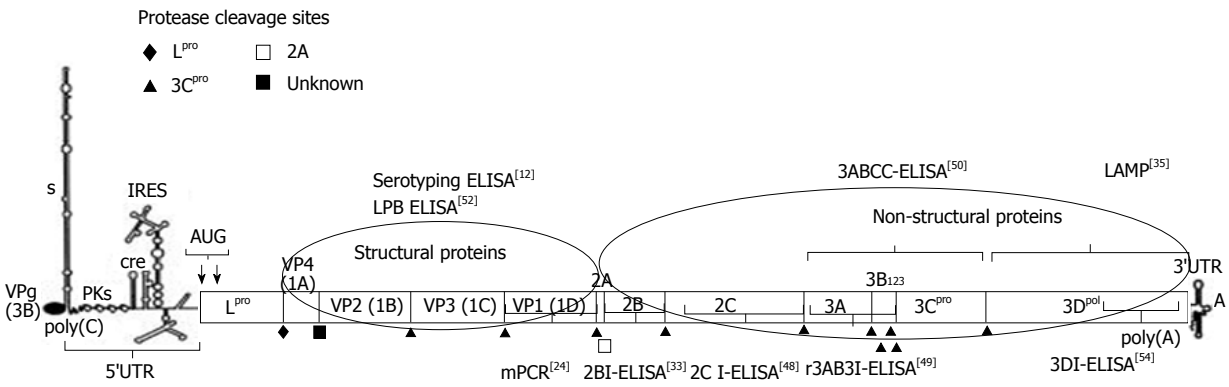


Figure 1 Genome structure of the foot-and-mouth disease virus. Describes in details the different regions of foot-and-mouth disease virus (FMDV) which codes four structural and 8 non-structural proteins. The regions of genome encoding structural proteins are targeted for FMDV serotype determination by various assays, whereas the genome regions coding for non-structural proteins are targeted for serotype independent diagnosis. The SP of FMDV is targeted for serotyping by antigen trapping enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) or for measurement of antibody response by liquid phase blocking ELISA. Antibodies against various non-structural proteins are targeted for differentiation of FMD infected from vaccinated animals.

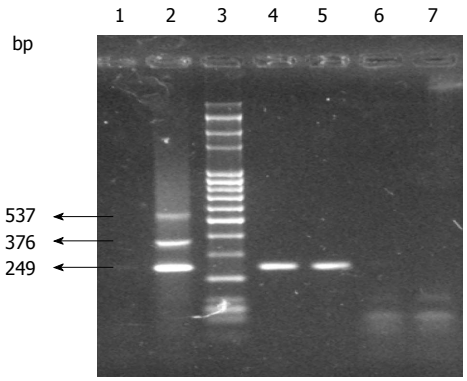


Figure 2 Depicting the foot-and-mouth disease virus serotyping by gel based multiplex polymerase chain reaction assay. Foot-and-mouth disease virus serotype determined by gel based ready-to-use lyophilized one-step realtime-polymerase chain reaction. Lane 1; negative control; Lane 2: Positive control of serotypes O (249 bp), A (376 bp) and serotype Asia1 (537 bp); Lane 3: 100 bp DNA ladder; Lane 4 and 5: Positive sample of serotype O; Lane 6 and 7: Negative samples for FMD.

Virus isolation

Of the established diagnostic approaches, virus isolation (VI) in cell culture is considered as the "gold standard" as described in OIE Terrestrial Manual 2012[13]. This method can be highly sensitive (depending upon the cell culture system used), although it can be slow, taking between 1 and 4 d to generate the results and require a containment laboratory facility. However, virus isolation from clinical materials is indispensible for antigenic profiling of the virus and vaccine matching. Primary cells, such as bovine thyroid (BTY), are highly susceptible to a wide range of FMDV serotypes[14], but they are difficult and costly to prepare and lose FMDV susceptibility after multiple passages[15]. Primary lamb kidney (LK) cells are also very sensitive to FMDV, and unlike BTY cells, LK cells maintain their sensitivity to FMDV infection after cryopreservation[16]. Immortalized cell lines [*e.g.*, baby hamster kidney (BHK-21) fibroblasts and porcine kidney epithelial cells], are much easier to maintain but are less susceptible to specific animal-derived FMDV serotypes[17-20]. Recently LFBK-$\alpha_v\beta_6$stable cell line has been established and was observed to be an excellent cell line for FMDV diagnostic- and research-based cell applications[21].

In India, all the clinical samples collected/submitted for FMD diagnosis are subjected to virus isolation using the cell lines (BHK21, IBRS, and LFBK cells). Virus isolates after characterization are archived in the National FMDV repository. Currently the repository contains more than 1850FMDV isolates comprising of serotype O (*n* = 1180), A (*n* = 298), Asia1 (358) and C (*n* = 15). The oldest isolate available in the repository is of the year 1962 (Serotype O). Such a vast pool of virus isolates aids in selection and identification of suitable vaccine candidates through vaccine matching exercise from time to time.

RNA transfection method for FMDV rescue

Isolation of virus from the clinical materials is not always possible due to several factors[22]. Under such scenarios, the transfection based virus-rescue method as described by Belsham *et al*[23], has been optimized in India[22]. Success rate of RNA transfection for virus isolation was observed to be 62% against 16% in conventional cell culture method that enhances the number and diversity of virus isolates being usedin vaccine matching exercise. Till date, 88 serotype O, 24 serotype Asia1 and 09 serotype A viruses have been rescued using RNA transfection method from the samples where conventional method of cell culture passage failed to isolate the virus[11].

Multiplex PCR

In vitro amplification based detection of genome is more rapid and sensitive than conventional VI[24]. Initially, assays were developed targeting the conserved 3D region[25,26] and 5′ UTR region[27]. Subsequently, multiplex PCR for (mPCR) targeting VP1 region were developed for detecting FMDV and differentiating amongst the serotypes[24,28,29].

On the similar lines, mPCR was also developed in India[24] and the success rate of FMD diagnosis and serotype detection increased by 8%[30]. In this assay, the serotype-specific primers targeting 1D region and common reverse primer (NK61) targeting 2B region were used for multiplexing (Figure 1). Figure 2 indicates the mPCR based serotype identification describes the identification of serotype involved by multiplex PCR where product size of 249, 376 and 537 bp are specific for serotypes O, A, and Asia1, respectively. The minimum detection limit of the mPCR has been estimated as 1 x 10^{-1} $TCID_{50}$/mL for serotypes O, A, and Asia1[24].

Although, the mPCR suffered from the disadvantage of generating false positives due to carry-over of PCR amplicons and thus, not considered as an ideal assay for routine testing of large numbers of samples especially at regionally located FMD diagnostic laboratories[31]. To overcome the chances of cross-contamination and make it more feasible for regional FMD laboratories, a ready-to-use thermo-stable RT-PCR mixture was developed[30]. All the components of the reaction mixture were mixed together in a vial and lyophilized (Lyodryer, United States). The lyophilized vials are to be reconstituted with nuclease free water before use and supplemented with the extracted RNA from the suspected materials followed by *in-vitro* amplification in a thermal-cycler. This thermostable RT-PCR mix made the assay more user friendly and clinical samples can be now diagnosed by PCR at the field level FMD diagnostic laboratories with uniformity in the results. In addition, the requirement of keeping live FMDV for positive control became obsolete. Since 2005, more than 2037 suspected clinical materials have been successfully tested by the mPCR in the country[11].

Reverse transcription-LAMP assay

Reverse transcription-LAMP (RT-LAMP) assay is an autocycling and strand displacement DNA synthesis method[32] which has recently been employed in FMD diagnosis as point-of-care test. The RT-LAMP based targeting 3D and IRES region for detection of FMDV have been reported earlier[33,34]. In the recent past, LAMP based assay for FMDV detection and serotype differentiation (O, A and Asia 1) has been developed[35]. RT-LAMP based assay targeting 3D region has also been developed in India and is being used routinely for rapid detection of FMDV (Figure 1)[36]. LAMP assay requires only a water bath instead of a thermal-cycler as in PCR. In addition, gel documentation system is also non-essential as hydroxynaphthol blue (HNB), an azo dye is used as the indicator. The sensitivity and specificity of the RT-LAMP assay developed were estimated as 4.2 x 10^{-4}, 2 x 10^{-4} and 1.1 x 10^{-4} $TCID_{50}$/mL for FMDV serotypes O, A and Asia1 respectively. LAMP assay for FMD diagnosis was validated by simultaneous testing of the clinical samples (n = 139) by mPCR and LAMP and the results revealed higher sensitivity in case of LAMP.

Real time PCR assay

Reverse-transcription real time PCR (RT-qPCR) assays have been developed and evaluated for the identification of FMDV in different parts of the world using fluorogenic dyes. Both SYBR Green and TaqMan chemistries have been widely utilised in qPCR assays for FMD, however TaqMan provide an additional advantage of multiplexing. In India, a qPCR assay targeting 1D region of FMDV was developed in multiplex format for simultaneous detection and identification of FMDV serotypes in the suspected clinical materials[37]. The sensitivity of the TaqMan based multiplex qPCR was found to be $10^{1.7}$ $TCID_{50}$/mL, $10^{1.0}$ $TCID_{50}$/mL, $10^{1.7}$ $TCID_{50}$/mL for serotype O, Asia1 and A respectively[37]. The qPCR assay was found to be more sensitive than gel based assay and provides an estimate through standard curve of viral load in the samples. With high sensitivity and specificity, the qPCR assay has been used as the primary tool for the detection of FMDV in persistently infected carriers among exposed ruminants which is of great importance in disease control[38].

FMD diagnosis in semen and milk

FMDV can be actively secreted in semen of FMD infected bull before onset of clinical symptoms and up to 5-8 mo post infection[39]. It has also been reported that FMDV can survive in frozen semen straw, thus artificial insemination can possibly serve as the source of FMDV transmission to wider and farther areas. The extenders used during the production of semen straws provide the conditions conducive to survival of the virus for more than 320 d when stored at -50 ℃[40]. Routinely used FMD diagnostic methods such as VI and antigen ELISA require modifications for detecting FMDV in semen samples[41,42]. Even mPCR assay was found to be far less sensitive for semen samples. The major reason behind PCR failure was the presence of PCR inhibitors in semen[28,39]. Hence, existing mPCR assay was improvised for the detection of FMDV genome in semen samples[43]. The RNA from suspected semen samples (neat or extended) was extracted by a modified method to remove the PCR inhibitors[43]. This modified mPCR has been used for screening of 980 animals for presence of FMDV genome in semen till now. It was also established that, FMDV could be detected in semen of the infected cattle bull for about 5 mo but not more than 8 mo[43].

LINEAGE DIFFERENTIATING PCR

There is co-circulation, extinction, and emergence and re-emergence of genotypes/lineages within the serotypes from time to time in India. The emergence or re-emergence of any new lineage warrants rapid and accurate detection to facilitate early warning[44,45]. Detailed nucleotide sequence of these viruses are analysed to detect emergence of any new group. A rapid multiplex PCR assay was developed for detection of the dominating $VP3^{59}$-deletion group of serotype A

Table 3 Details of the total number of serum samples screened for reactivity to foot-and-mouth disease virus NSP 3AB3 during the last five years in India

Year	Total samples tested	Total positive	% animals 3AB3 reactors in India
2009-2010	29763	8303	27.90
2010-2011	31042	8341	26.87
2011-2012	37467	10410	26.09
2012-2013	40934	10811	26.41
2013-2014	52224	15268	29.20
Total	191430	53133	27.70

virus with 100% sensitivity and specificity[44]. Genotype differentiating RT-PCR was developed as a fast, cost-effective and user-friendly alternative to 1D region based phylogeny for detection and differentiation of genotypes VI and VII of serotype A[45]. Similarly, a simple, fast and multi-primer RT-PCR assay has been developed and validated to differentiate genetic lineages of serotype Asia1 viruses[46]. These assays have been proven as useful tools in preliminary molecular epidemiological investigation of FMD in the country.

SERO-SURVEILLANCE OF FMD IN INDIA

Sero-surveillance is of prime importance in India where FMD control programme is in operation for last 10 years. As per the OIE guidelines, in regions adopting vaccination to control FMD, sero-surveillance should be performed by an assay capable of differentiating infected from vaccinated animals (DIVA)[47]. Detection of antibodies against various non-structural proteins (NSPs) of FMDV has been successfully utilized for DIVA[48,49]. Considering the complex epidemiology of the disease in the country, assays for DIVA were developed and validated taking into account the factors such as vaccine quality (in terms of level of NSP contamination in the formulation) and coverage in India. A tool box of one competitive and four indirect ELISAs utilizing 3AB3, 3ABC, and truncated 2C ($2C_t$) NSPs of FMDV (Figure 1) was developed in India[50-52]. The performance of these in-house DIVA assays was compared with the two commercially available kits (PrioCheck® FMDV-NS and Svanovir FMDV 3ABC-Ab ELISA kit) and indigenously developed assays were found to be equally capable in detecting infected animals among the vaccinated population[53]. However, the in-house assays performed better than the commercial kits in case of intensively vaccinated samples[53]. The r3AB3 indirect ELISA is routinely used for countrywide screening of bovines[51] and results obtained for the serum samples collected at random from the country are presented in the Table 3. The diagnostic sensitivity of this assay is 96% while the diagnostic specificity varied between the naïve and vaccinates as 99.1% and 96.4%, respectively. This assay detects antibodies to 3AB (3AB-Ab) from 10 to as late as 900 d post-infection in experimentally infected cattle. Recently 3B[54], 2B[55] and 3D[56] NSP based assays have also been developed in India and are under validation.

SERO-MONITORING OF FMD

Post vaccination sero-monitoring is critical to monitor protective antibody level in animals before and after every round of vaccination. Under the Government of India initiated vaccination based FMD control programme (FMDCP) 120 million cattle and buffaloes are routinely vaccinated at 6 mo interval to progressively build herd immunity[5]. However, vaccines against FMD only protect the animal from clinical disease and not from the super infection by other serotypes of FMDV. Additionally, the vaccine induced protection remains only for about 4-6 mo[57] and with the decline in herd immunity risk of clinical disease increases due to the creation of infection window. Therefore, quantitative estimation of protective antibody response (titer) in vaccinated animals through sero-monitoring is indispensable for devising appropriate vaccination regime and successful implementation and monitoring of the control programme[58,59]. With the current sampling policy in the country, village is considered as a herd and from each district covered under FMDCP, 10 villages are randomly selected for sampling, and from each village 20 serum samples (10 cattle and 10 buffalo) are collected at random before (0 d) and 28 d post vaccination (dpv) to have un-biased estimate of vaccination performance and the resulting level of herd immunity. Antibody titers against the serotypes O, A and Asia1 are determined by four fold dilution liquid phase blocking ELISA (LPBE)[60,61]. With the expansion of FMDCP, there is a considerable rise in the number of serum samples to be tested. Thus, a high throughput LPBE assay was developed recently to fasten the process and save time and labour (Manuscript communicated). This high throughput assay utilizes the linear regression method for extrapolation of titers of test serum samples from the known internal controls[60]. In addition, the reagents used in the assay are thermo-stable facilitating the transportation to the regional laboratories under high ambient temperature.

CONCLUSION

Considering the fact that India has a large livestock population (about 500 million) susceptible to FMD, the country requires economical companion diagnostic tests tailor-made for the suitability under Indian scenarios to run the progressive control programme for FMD. Though India is now self-sufficient to produce most of the diagnostic kits, but still a lot of improvisation is needed in the current assays. The polyclonal antibodies used in several assays could be replaced with the recombinant antibodies. Some success has been achieved in development of single-chain variable fragment (scFv)[62] but work is being continued to develop scFv and nanobodies against highly immunogenic epitopes of FMDV and assess their applicability in diagnostics.

REFERENCES

1 **Perry BD**, Sones KR, editors. Global road map for improving the tools to control foot-and-mouth disease in endemic settings. Report of a workshop held at Agra, India, 29 November-1 December 2006, and subsequent road map outputs. Nairobi, Kenya: ILRI (International Livestock Research Institute), 2007: 88

2 **Racaniello RR**. Picornaviridae: the viruses and their replication. In Fields Virology. Fields BN, Knipe DM, Howley PM, editors. 4th Ed. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven Publishers, 2001: 685-722

3 **Bachrach HL**. Foot-and-mouth disease. *Annu Rev Microbiol* 1968; **22**: 201-244 [PMID: 4301615 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.mi.22.100168.001221]

4 **Sangar DV**. The replication of picornaviruses. *J Gen Virol* 1979; **45**: 1-13 [PMID: 392052 DOI: 10.1099/0022-1317-45-1-1]

5 **Pattnaik B**, Subramaniam S, Sanyal A, Mohapatra JK, Dash BB, Ranjan R, Rout M. Foot-and-Mouth Disease: global status and future road map for control and prevention in India. *Agric Res* 2012; **1**: 132-147 [DOI: 10.1007/s40003-012-0012-z]

6 **Donaldson AI**. FMD control strategies. *Vet Rec* 2003; **153**: 507 [PMID: 14601800]

7 **Donaldson AI**, Gloster J, Harvey LD, Deans DH. Use of prediction models to forecast and analyse airborne spread during the foot-and-mouth disease outbreaks in Brittany, Jersey and the Isle of Wight in 1981. *Vet Rec* 1982; **110**: 53-57 [PMID: 7064324 DOI: 10.1136/vr.110.3.53]

8 **Hugh-Jones ME**, Wright PB. Studies on the 1967-8 foot-and-mouth disease epidemic. The relation of weather to the spread of disease. *J Hyg* (Lond) 1970; **68**: 253-271 [PMID: 5270205 DOI: 10.1017/S0022172400028722]

9 Department of Animal Husbandry, Dairying and Fisheries. Livestock Census of India 2012. Available from: URL: http://dahd.nic.in/dahd/WriteReadData/Livestock.pdf

10 **Ferris NP**, Dawson M. Routine application of enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay in comparison with complement fixation for the diagnosis of foot-and-mouth and swine vesicular diseases. *Vet Microbiol* 1988; **16**: 201-209 [PMID: 3376418 DOI: 10.1016/0378-1135(88)90024-7]

11 **Annual Reports**. Project Directorate on Foot and Mouth Disease. Mukteswar: 263138 Nainital (Uttaranchal) Available from: URL: http://www.icar.org.in/files/pdfmd-vacancy-t3-2010.pdf

12 **Bhattacharya S**, Pattnaik B, Venkataramanan R. Development and application of sandwich enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) for type identification of foot-and-mouth disease (FMD) virus in direct field materials. *Ind J Animal Sci* 1996; **66**: 1-9

13 World Animal Health Information Database (WAHID) Interface. Available from: URL: http://www.oie.int/wahid-prod/public.php?page=home

14 **Snowdon WA**. Growth of foot-and mouth disease virus in monolayer cultures of calf thyroid cells. *Nature* 1966; **210**: 1079-1080 [PMID: 4288087 DOI: 10.1038/2101079a0]

15 **House JA**, Yedloutschnig RJ. Sensitivity of seven different types of cell cultures to three serotypes of foot-and-mouth disease virus. *Can J Comp Med* 1982; **46**: 186-189 [PMID: 6284329]

16 **House C**, House JA. Evaluation of techniques to demonstrate foot-and-mouth disease virus in bovine tongue epithelium: comparison of the sensitivity of cattle, mice, primary cell cultures, cryopreserved cell cultures and established cell lines. *Vet Microbiol* 1989; **20**: 99-109 [PMID: 2549683 DOI: 10.1016/0378-1135(89)90033-3]

17 **Swaney LM**. Susceptibility of a new fetal pig kidney cell line (MVPK-1) to foot-and-mouth disease virus. *Am J Vet Res* 1976; **37**: 1319-1322 [PMID: 185927]

18 **Ferris NP**, King DP, Reid SM, Hutchings GH, Shaw AE, Paton DJ, Goris N, Haas B, Hoffmann B, Brocchi E, Bugnetti M, Dekker A, De Clercq K. Foot-and-mouth disease virus: a first inter-laboratory comparison trial to evaluate virus isolation and RT-PCR detection methods. *Vet Microbiol* 2006; **117**: 130-140 [PMID: 16846700 DOI: 10.1016/j.vetmic.2006.06.001]

19 **Ferris NP**, Hutchings GH, Moulsdale HJ, Golding J, Clarke JB. Sensitivity of primary cells immortalised by oncogene transfection for the detection and isolation of foot-and-mouth disease and swine vesicular disease viruses. *Vet Microbiol* 2002; **84**: 307-316 [PMID: 11750139 DOI: 10.1016/S0378-1135(01)00469-2]

20 **De Castro MP**. Behaviour of the foot-and-mouth disease virus in cell cultures: susceptibility of the IB-RS-2 line. *Arch Inst Biol* 1964; **31**: 63-78

21 **LaRocco M**, Krug PW, Kramer E, Ahmed Z, Pacheco JM, Duque H, Baxt B, Rodriguez LL. A continuous bovine kidney cell line constitutively expressing bovine αvβ6 integrin has increased susceptibility to foot-and-mouth disease virus. *J Clin Microbiol* 2013; **51**: 1714-1720 [PMID: 23515553 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.03370-12]

22 **Bisht P**, Mohapatra JK, Subramaniam S, Das B, Pande V, Biswal JK, Sharma GK, Rout M, Ranjan R, Dash BB, Sanyal A, Pattnaik B. Efficient rescue of foot-and-mouth disease virus in cultured cells transfected with RNA extracted from clinical samples. *J Virol Methods* 2014; **196**: 65-70 [PMID: 24239633 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2013.10.041]

23 **Belsham GJ**, Bostock CJ. Studies on the infectivity of foot-and-mouth disease virus RNA using microinjection. *J Gen Virol* 1988; **69** (Pt 2): 265-274 [PMID: 2448416 DOI: 10.1099/0022-1317-69-2-265]

24 **Giridharan P**, Hemadri D, Tosh C, Sanyal A, Bandyopadhyay SK. Development and evaluation of a multiplex PCR for differentiation of foot-and-mouth disease virus strains native to India. *J Virol Methods* 2005; **126**: 1-11 [PMID: 15847913 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2005.01.015]

25 **Meyer RF**, Brown CC, House C, House JA, Molitor TW. Rapid and sensitive detection of foot-and-mouth disease virus in tissues by enzymatic RNA amplification of the polymerase gene. *J Virol Methods* 1991; **34**: 161-172 [PMID: 1666635 DOI: 10.1016/0166-0934(91)90096-I]

26 **Rodríguez A**, Núñez JI, Nolasco G, Ponz F, Sobrino F, de Blas C. Direct PCR detection of foot-and-mouth disease virus. *J Virol Methods* 1994; **47**: 345-349 [PMID: 8071421 DOI: 10.1016/0166-0934(94)90030-2]

27 **Reid SM**, Ferris NP, Hutchings GH, Samuel AR, Knowles NJ. Primary diagnosis of foot-and-mouth disease by reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction. *J Virol Methods* 2000; **89**: 167-176 [PMID: 10996650 DOI: 10.1016/S0166-0934(00)00213-5]

28 **Vangrysperre W**, De Clercq K. Rapid and sensitive polymerase chain reaction based detection and typing of foot-and-mouth disease virus in clinical samples and cell culture isolates, combined with a simultaneous differentiation with other genomically and/or symptomatically related viruses. *Arch Virol* 1996; **141**: 331-344 [PMID: 8634024 DOI: 10.1007/BF01718403]

29 **Callens M**, De Clercq K. Differentiation of the seven serotypes of foot-and-mouth disease virus by reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction. *J Virol Methods* 1997; **67**: 35-44 [PMID: 9274816 DOI: 10.1016/S0166-0934(97)00074-8]

30 **Sharma GK**, Mahajan S, Das B, Ranjan R, Kanani A, Sanyal A, Pattnaik B. Comparison of stabilisers for development of a lyophilised multiplex reverse-transcription PCR mixture for rapid detection of foot and mouth disease virus serotypes. *Rev Sci Tech* 2014; **33**: 859-867 [PMID: 25812209]

31 **Hoffmann B**, Beer M, Reid SM, Mertens P, Oura CA, van Rijn PA, Slomka MJ, Banks J, Brown IH, Alexander DJ, King DP. A review of RT-PCR technologies used in veterinary virology and disease control: sensitive and specific diagnosis of five livestock diseases notifiable to the World Organisation for Animal Health. *Vet Microbiol* 2009; **139**: 1-23 [PMID: 19497689 DOI: 10.1016/j.vetmic.2009.04.034]

32 **Notomi T**, Okayama H, Masubuchi H, Yonekawa T, Watanabe K, Amino N, Hase T. Loop-mediated isothermal amplification of DNA. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2000; **28**: E63 [PMID: 10871386 DOI: 10.1093/nar/28.12.e63]

33 **Dukes JP**, King DP, Alexandersen S. Novel reverse transcription loop-mediated isothermal amplification for rapid detection of foot-and-mouth disease virus. *Arch Virol* 2006; **151**: 1093-1106 [PMID: 16453084 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-005-0708-5]

34 **Chen HT**, Zhang J, Liu YS, Liu XT. Detection of foot-and-mouth disease virus RNA by reverse transcription loop-mediated isothermal amplification. *Virol J* 2011; **8**: 510 [PMID: 22070774 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-8-510]

35 **Madhanmohan M**, Nagendrakumar SB, Manikumar K, Yuvaraj S, Parida S, Srinivasan VA. Development and evaluation of a real-time reverse transcription-loop-mediated isothermal amplification assay for rapid serotyping of foot-and-mouth disease virus. *J Virol Methods* 2013; **187**: 195-202 [PMID: 22960423 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2012.08.015]

36 **Ranjan R**, Kangayan M, Subramaniam S, Mohapatra JK, Biswal JK, Sharma GK, Sanyal A, Pattnaik B. Development and evaluation of a one step reverse transcription-loop mediated isothermal amplification assay (RT-LAMP) for rapid detection of foot and mouth disease virus in India. *Virusdisease* 2014; **25**: 358-364 [PMID: 25674604 DOI: 10.1007/s13337-014-0211-2]

37 **Tamil Selvan RP**. Analysis of replication dynamics of mixed Foot-and-Mouth Disease virus populations using serotype differentiating multiplex QPCR. Izatnagar, India: Deemed University Indian Veterinary Research Institute, 2010

38 **Zhang Z**, Alexandersen S. Detection of carrier cattle and sheep persistently infected with foot-and-mouth disease virus by a rapid real-time RT-PCR assay. *J Virol Methods* 2003; **111**: 95-100 [PMID: 12880924 DOI: 10.1016/S0166-0934(03)00165-4]

39 **Shin J**, Torrison J, Choi CS, Gonzalez SM, Crabo BG, Molitor TW. Monitoring of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus infection in boars. *Vet Microbiol* 1997; **55**: 337-346 [PMID: 9220631 DOI: 10.1016/S0378-1135(96)01336-3]

40 **Cottral GE**, Bachrach HL. Food-and-mouth disease viremia. *Proc Annu Meet U S Anim Health Assoc* 1968; **72**: 383-399 [PMID: 4308553]

41 **Schultz RD**, Adams LS, Letchworth G, Sheffy BE, Manning T, Bean B. A method to test large numbers of bovine semen samples for viral contamination and results of a study using this method. *Theriogenology* 1982; **17**: 115-123 [PMID: 16725672 DOI: 10.1016/0093-691X(82)90071-1]

42 **Shao JJ**, Chang H, Lin T, Cong G, Du J, Guo J, Bao H, Shang Y, Yang Y, Liu X, Liu Z, Liu J. Amplification and characterization of bull semen infected naturally with foot-and-mouth disease virus type Asia 1 by RT-PCR. *Virologica Sinica* 2008; **23**: 378-382 [DOI: 10.1007/S12250-008-2980-5]

43 **Sharma GK**, Subramaniam S, De A, Das B, Dash BB, Sanyal A, Misra AK, Pattnaik B. Detection of foot-and-mouth disease virus in semen of infected cattle bulls. *Ind J of AniSci* 2012; **82**: 1472-1476

44 **Mohapatra JK**, Pandey LK, Sharma GK, Barik SK, Pawar SS, Palsamy R, Pattnaik B. Multiplex PCR for rapid detection of serotype A foot-and-mouth disease virus variants with amino acid deletion at position 59 of the capsid protein VP3. *J Virol Methods* 2011; **171**: 287-291 [PMID: 21029752 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2010.10.016]

45 **Mohapatra JK**, Subramaniam S, Tosh C, Hemadri D, Sanyal A, Periyasamy TR, Rasool TJ. Genotype differentiating RT-PCR and sandwich ELISA: handy tools in epidemiological investigation of foot and mouth disease. *J Virol Methods* 2007; **143**: 117-121 [PMID: 17400298 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2007.02.008]

46 **Mohapatra JK**, Sanyal A, Hemadri D, Tosh C, Rasool TJ, Bandyopadhyay SK. A novel genetic lineage differentiating RT-PCR as a useful tool in molecular epidemiology of foot-and-mouth disease in India. *Arch Virol* 2006; **151**: 803-809 [PMID: 16329004 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-005-0673-z]

47 **Rout M**, Senapati MR, Mohapatra JK, Dash BB, Sanyal A, Pattnaik B. Serosurveillance of foot-and-mouth disease in sheep and goat population of India. *Prev Vet Med* 2014; **113**: 273-277 [PMID: 24262775 DOI: 10.1016/j.prevetmed.2013.10.022]

48 **Paton DJ**, de Clercq K, Greiner M, Dekker A, Brocchi E, Bergmann I, Sammin DJ, Gubbins S, Parida S. Application of non-structural protein antibody tests in substantiating freedom from foot-and-mouth disease virus infection after emergency vaccination of cattle. *Vaccine* 2006; **24**: 6503-6512 [PMID: 16872727 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2006.06.032]

49 **Mackay DK**, Forsyth MA, Davies PR, Berlinzani A, Belsham GJ, Flint M, Ryan MD. Differentiating infection from vaccination in foot-and-mouth disease using a panel of recombinant, non-structural proteins in ELISA. *Vaccine* 1998; **16**: 446-459 [PMID: 9491499 DOI: 10.1016/S0264-410X(97)00227-2]

50 **Mahajan S**, Mohapatra JK, Pandey LK, Sharma GK, Pattnaik B. Truncated recombinant non-structural protein 2C-based indirect ELISA for FMD sero-surveillance. *J Virol Methods* 2013; **193**: 405-414 [PMID: 23850716 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2013.07.003]

51 **Mohapatra JK**, Pandey LK, Sanyal A, Pattnaik B. Recombinant non-structural polyprotein 3AB-based serodiagnostic strategy for FMD surveillance in bovines irrespective of vaccination. *J Virol Methods* 2011; **177**: 184-192 [PMID: 21864578 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2011.08.006]

52 **Sharma GK**, Mohapatra JK, Pandey LK, Mahajan S, Mathapati BS, Sanyal A, Pattnaik B. Immunodiagnosis of foot-and-mouth disease using mutated recombinant 3ABC polyprotein in a competitive ELISA. *J Virol Methods* 2012; **185**: 52-60 [PMID: 22683829 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2012.05.029]

53 **Sharma GK**, Mohapatra JK, Mahajan S, Matura R, Subramaniam S, Pattnaik B. Comparative evaluation of non-structural protein-antibody detecting ELISAs for foot-and-mouth disease sero-surveillance under intensive vaccination. *J Virol Methods* 2014; **207**: 22-28 [PMID: 24996132 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2014.06.022]

54 **Mohapatra AK**, Mohapatra JK, Pandey LK, Sanyal A, Pattnaik B. Diagnostic potential of recombinant nonstructural protein 3B to detect antibodies induced by foot-and-mouth disease virus infection in bovines. *Arch Virol* 2014; **159**: 2359-2369 [PMID: 24777827 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-014-2089-0]

55 **Biswal JK**, Jena S, Mohapatra JK, Bisht P, Pattnaik B. Detection of antibodies specific for foot-and-mouth disease virus infection using indirect ELISA based on recombinant nonstructural protein 2B. *Arch Virol* 2014; **159**: 1641-1650 [PMID: 24420160 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-013-1973-3]

56 **Mahajan S**, Mohapatra JK, Pandey LK, Sharma GK, Pattnaik B. Indirect ELISA using recombinant nonstructural protein 3D to detect foot and mouth disease virus infection associated antibodies. *Biologicals* 2015; **43**: 47-54 [DOI: 10.1016/j.biologicals.2014.10.002]

57 **Doel TR**. Natural and vaccine-induced immunity to foot and mouth disease: the prospects for improved vaccines. *Rev Sci Tech* 1996; **15**: 883-911 [PMID: 9025140]

58 **Dekker A**. Why is FMD post vaccination monitoring necessary? *GFRA News letter* 2012; **2**: 2-3

59 **Rweyemamu M**, Roeder P, MacKay D, Sumption K, Brownlie J, Leforban Y. Planning for the progressive control of foot-and-mouth disease worldwide. *Transbound Emerg Dis* 2008; **55**: 73-87 [PMID: 18397510 DOI: 10.1111/j.1865-1682.2007.01016.x]

60 **Robiolo B**, La Torre J, Duffy S, Leon E, Seki C, Torres A, Mattion N. Quantitative single serum-dilution liquid phase competitive blocking ELISA for the assessment of herd immunity and expected protection against foot-and-mouth disease virus in vaccinated cattle. *J Virol Methods* 2010; **166**: 21-27 [PMID: 20170683 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2010.02.011]

61 **Hamblin C**, Barnett IT, Crowther JR. A new enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) for the detection of antibodies against foot-and-mouth disease virus. II. Application. *J Immunol Methods* 1986; **93**: 123-129 [PMID: 3021855 DOI: 10.1016/0022-1759(86)90442-4]

62 **Sharma GK**, Mahajan S, Matura R, Subramaniam S, Mohapatra JK, Pattnaik B. Production and characterization of single-chain antibody (scFv) against 3ABC non-structural protein in Escherichia coli for sero-diagnosis of Foot and Mouth Disease virus. *Biologicals* 2014; **42**: 339-345 [PMID: 25439091 DOI: 10.1016/j.biologicals.2014.08.005]

P- Reviewer: Farzin R, Kamal SA **S- Editor**: Tian YL **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.303

World J Virol 2015 August 12; 4(3): 303-312
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

SYSTEMATIC REVIEWS

Associations among depression, suicidal behavior, and quality of life in patients with human immunodeficiency virus

Gianluca Serafini, Franco Montebovi, Dorian A Lamis, Denise Erbuto, Paolo Girardi, Mario Amore, Maurizio Pompili

Gianluca Serafini, Mario Amore, Department of Neuroscience, Rehabilitation, Ophthalmology, Genetics, Maternal and Child Health (DINOGMI), Section of Psychiatry, University of Genoa, 16132 Genoa, Italy

Franco Montebovi, Denise Erbuto, Paolo Girardi, Maurizio Pompili, Department of Neurosciences, Suicide Prevention Center, Sant'Andrea Hospital, 00189 Rome, Italy

Dorian A Lamis, Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Emory University School of Medicine, Atlanta, GA 30303, United States

Author contributions: Serafini G and Pompili M contributed in reviewing the literature and drafting the paper; Amore M and Girardi P provided the intellectual impetuous and supervised the search strategy; Montebovi F, Erbuto D and Lamis DA provided help in selecting papers and drafting the papers; this research received no specific grant from any funding agency in the public, commercial, or not-for-profit sectors.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflict of interests.

Data sharing statement: We believe that we do not include any data sharing statement since this is not a basic research nor a clinical research study.

Correspondence to: Maurizio Pompili, MD, PhD, Department of Neurosciences, Mental Health and Sensory Organs, Suicide Prevention Center, Sant'Andrea Hospital 1039, Via di Grottarossa, 1035, 00189 Rome, Italy. maurizio.pompili@uniroma1.it
Telephone: +39-06-33775675
Fax: +39-06-33775342

Received: February 28, 2015
Peer-review started: March 2, 2015
First decision: May 14, 2015
Revised: May 25, 2015
Accepted: July 29, 2015
Article in press: August 3, 2015
Published online: August 12, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the potential associations among major depression, quality of life, and suicidal behavior in human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) patients.

METHODS: A detailed MEDLINE search was carried out to identify all articles and book chapters in English published from January 1995 to January 2015.

RESULTS: Based on the main findings, the prevalence of major depressive disorder (MDD) ranged from 14.0% to 27.2%. Furthermore, the prevalence of suicidal ideation varied from 13.6% to 31.0% whereas, attempted suicides were reported to range from 3.9% to 32.7%. Interestingly, various associated risk factors for both depression and suicide were identified in HIV patients. Finally, consistent associations were reported among MDD, suicidal ideation, and poor quality of life in individuals living with HIV.

CONCLUSION: Although additional studies are needed to elucidate this complex association, our results suggest the importance of early detection of both MDD and suicidality in patients living with HIV.

Key words: Major depression; Suicidal behavior; Quality of life; Human immunodeficiency virus infection

Core tip: Among patients with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) the prevalence of major depressive disorder (MDD), suicidal ideation, and attempted suicides ranged from 14.0% to 27.2%, from 13.6% to 31.0%, and from 3.9% to 32.7%, respectively. Multiple risk factors for both depression and suicide were identified in HIV patients. Importantly, a consistent association has been reported between MDD, suicidal ideation, and poor quality of life in individuals living with HIV. The early detection and adequate treatment of depressive symptoms and suicidality should be considered fundamental tasks when managing HIV infected patients, particularly in those individuals who are severely medically ill.

Serafini G, Montebovi F, Lamis DA, Erbuto D, Girardi P, Amore M, Pompili M. Associations among depression, suicidal behavior, and quality of life in patients with human immunodeficiency virus. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(3): 303-312 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i3/303.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i3.303

INTRODUCTION

Chronic medical conditions such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection have been found to be associated with elevated stigma and discrimination, psychological distress, and poor social support[1]. Almost half of individuals diagnosed with HIV suffer from one or more comorbid psychiatric disorders[2] and experience a poorer health-related quality of life compared to individuals without comorbidities[3].

Major depressive disorder (MDD) is a highly comorbid psychiatric condition in patients with HIV, and the presence of MDD is associated with poor adherence to treatment, disease progression, and lower quality of life[4]. It has been well established that depressive symptoms may contribute to both HIV progression and mortality[5]. For example, in a 7-year longitudinal study, Ickovics *et al*[6] found that women with HIV and chronic depressive symptoms had twice the risk of dying by suicide compared to those with few or no depressive symptoms. Specifically, the mortality rates were 54% among patients with chronic depressive symptoms and 48% among those with intermittent depressive symptoms as compared to 21% for women having few or no depressive symptoms and low CD4 cell counts[6]. MDD is also associated with premature drop-out and poorer outcomes after treatment[7,8], as well as persistent drug use in heroin users[9].

In addition to depression, suicidality, which includes both suicide ideation and attempts, is considered to be another major psychiatric problem associated with HIV/acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)[10]. Similar to MDD, an association between suicidality, poor quality of life, poor adherence to antiretroviral therapy, and non-disclosure of HIV status to significant others has been also reported[10,11]. Overall, socio-demographic variables (*e.g.*, female gender, younger age); psychiatric conditions such as substance abuse, MDD, and a history of prior suicide attempts; neuropsychiatric side-effects of antiretroviral therapy and psychotropic medication; psychosocial factors including heterosexual orientation, poor social support, loss of employment, maltreatment, and sexual abuse; and clinical factors (*e.g.*, stress reactions, the perception of pain, physical impairment, psychological/physical symptoms, and AIDS diagnosis) have been found to contribute to suicidality among HIV patients[12-19].

Thus, individuals with HIV infection may have a higher risk of suicide than those individuals without HIV[20-22]. In addition, many individuals living with HIV are reluctant to disclose their HIV serostatus to friends and/or family due to the fear of stigmatization[23,24]. Moreover, individuals who experience this type of fear may have disadvantages with regards to seeking HIV testing, education, or treatment[25].

Interestingly, the introduction of antiretroviral medications significantly improved both HIV health-outcomes and life expectancy of HIV infected patients, which led to a significant reduction of suicide rates[26]. However, patients living with HIV/AIDS are still dying in large numbers and, therefore, examining quality-of-life issues remains an important area of research[27]. In particular, individuals with HIV reported profound alterations in day-to-day activities, significant relationships, and health status[28]. Accordingly, several psychometric instruments and health questionnaires have been specifically developed to evaluate quality of life among individuals with HIV.

Based on the current literature, it remains unclear whether or not individuals with HIV and poor quality of life are at a higher risk of depression/suicidality than those with HIV and a higher quality of life. Thus, the present review aimed to investigate the nature of the associations between MDD, quality of life, and suicidal behavior in HIV patients.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

In order to provide a critical review of the associations among depression, suicidality, and quality of life among patients with HIV infection, we performed a detailed search using the largest existing databases (PubMed/MEDLINE, Scopus, Web of Science, and Psychinfo) to identify all articles and book chapters in English published between January 1995 and January 2015. Specifically, the following search terms were used: "Major depression" OR "Major Depressive Disorder" OR "MDD" AND "Suicidal Behavior" OR "Suicide attempts" OR "Suicide ideation" OR "suicidality" AND "Quality of life" AND "HIV infection." Full-text articles were evaluated for relevance when a title or abstract appeared to describe a study eligible for inclusion. Abstracts that did not explicitly mention the association between depression, suicidality, and quality of life among individuals living with HIV were excluded. We also excluded meta-analytic studies and reviews. Overall, we identified 36 articles; however, only 12 full-text articles included in our review.

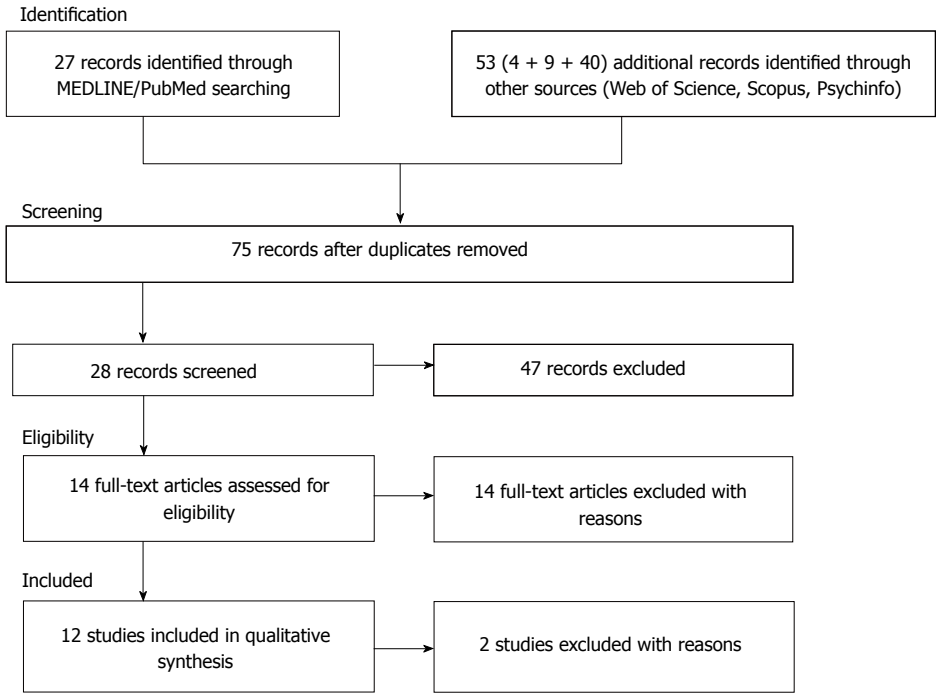


Figure 1 Flowchart of the search and selection process.

Study design and eligibility criteria

To achieve a high standard of reporting, we have adopted Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses' (PRISMA) guidelines[29]. The PRISMA Statement consists of a 27-item checklist and a four-phase flow diagram for reporting in systematic reviews. PRISMA includes the broader effort to improve the reporting of different types of health research as well as to improve the quality of research used in decision-making in healthcare.

RESULTS

Number of studies selected

The combined search strategy yielded a total of eighty articles of which, after a complete analysis, twenty-eight full-text articles were screened and fifty-two were excluded. We excluded articles that were not published in peer reviewed journals, those that were not in English language, articles without abstracts, abstracts that did not explicitly refer to the main topic, and those with unclear data regarding materials and methods and subjects which were analyzed. We assessed fourteen articles for eligibility but two full-text articles were excluded due to low-relevance to the main theme. Therefore, twelve articles fulfilled our inclusion criteria and were included in the present review (Figure 1).

Type of studies selected

Studies that investigated the prevalence of depression, suicide ideation, suicide thoughts, in patients living with HIV: Nine studies investigated the prevalence of suicide ideation/thoughts and associated risk factors in HIV infected patients. Ogundipe *et al*[30] found that 13.6% of 295 people living with HIV/AIDS (PLWHA) reported suicidal ideation.

Moreover, Kinyanda *et al*[31] demonstrated that the prevalence of moderate to high risk for suicidality (MHS) and lifetime suicide attempts of 618 recruited patients was 7.8% and 3.9%, respectively.

In a sample of 62 randomly selected HIV+ women, Lewis *et al*[32] investigated the existence and impact of major depression. The researchers also found that activities of daily living (ADL) and the subjective questionnaire of cognitive functioning were useful instruments to assess depression.

In another study, the clinical/behavioral characteristics of 71 patients in northern Taiwan as related to their HIV status have been explored by Lee *et al*[33]. Based on the main findings, anxiety was reported in 21.0% of patients, depression in 27.2%, memory alterations in 32.7%, and suicide attempts in 32.7%. Atkinson *et al*[34] also reported that HIV+ individuals (N = 203) reported a significantly higher rate of lifetime MDD than HIV- participants (14% *vs* 5%). However, both HIV+ and HIV- reported similar rates of current MDD.

Furthermore, Sherr *et al*[11] demonstrated that the prevalence of suicidal ideation was 31% in a sample of 778 patients living with HIV. Interestingly, heterosexual men and black respondents were twice as likely to experience suicidal ideation when compared to gay men or women and White/Asian respondents. In addition, individuals who did not disclose their HIV status were twice as likely to report suicidal ideation as compared to other subjects.

In another study conducted in a sample of 28 Chinese HIV+ participants and 23 matched HIV- controls, nearly 79% of HIV infected individuals had a significantly higher

lifetime rate of major depression relative to 4% of the comparison group[35]. Moreover, 18% of these patients reported active suicidal thoughts.

Haller and Miles[36] also examined suicidality among 190 HIV+ participants and reported that 26% had suicidal thoughts within 30 d of hospitalization, 49% revealed that they had a suicide plan, and 48% indicated they had suicide intent. Further, individuals with suicidal ideation had predominantly MDD (64%).

Finally, Kalichman *et al*[37] found that in a sample of individuals aged 45 or older and living with HIV/AIDS (N = 113), 27% reported suicidal thoughts.

Studies that investigated the associated risk factors in patients living with HIV: Six studies investigated the relevance of associated risk factors in HIV infected patients. Ogundipe *et al*[30] identified unemployment, emotional distress, religion, HIV status non-disclosure, and previous suicidal attempt as significant predictors of suicidal ideation in their sample. In another study, Kinyanda *et al*[31] reported that significant unique predictors of MHS included female gender, increasing negative life events, a previous psychiatric history, and MDD.

Other articles focused on the importance of associated risk factors in patients diagnosed with HIV. For example, sexual intercourse without condoms during the six previous months were found more frequently in HIV-negative heroin users compared to HIV-positive heroin users[33] whereas higher levels of physical and psychological symptoms independently predicted suicidal ideation[11].

Furthermore, Haller and Miles[36] suggested that individuals with MDD, dysthymia, substance abuse, thought disorders, post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), or borderline/avoidant personality disorders were more likely to report suicidality.

Interestingly, subjects with suicidal thoughts more frequently used escape and avoidance whereas positive-reappraisal coping strategies were used less frequently[37]. The authors[37] demonstrated the existence of associations among suicidal thoughts and perceived poor social support from friends/family even after controlling for depression.

Studies that analyzed the association between depression, suicidality and quality of life in HIV patients: Eight of the included studies examined the associations between depression, suicidality and quality of life in samples of HIV patients. First, a significant association between suicidal ideation and being unmarried, poor medication and quality of life was found by Ogundipe *et al*[30] in a sample of 295 PLWHA.

Furthermore, Pompili *et al*[38] reported that HIV patients with a poorer health-related quality of life (HRQoL) had higher hopelessness levels (these subjects were at high suicide risk) and were more likely to have depression than those with a higher HRQoL. In addition, higher scores on all dimensions of the Temperament Evaluation of Memphis, Pisa, Paris and San Diego-self administered version (TEMPS-A) were reported in patients with a poorer HRQoL relative to those with higher HRQoL. Furthermore, Atkinson *et al*[34] reported that 203 HIV+ were more likely to have a lifetime substance use diagnoses than HIV- participants (14% *vs* 6%). They also found that worse daily functioning and life quality as well as unemployment were independently predicted by both depression and HIV status.

Palliative care and quality-of-life issues are still two relevant areas of research in patients with advanced AIDS. Breitbart *et al*[39] investigated the impact of treatment for depression on the desire for hastened death in a sample of 372 patients with advanced AIDS. They reported a significant association between desire for death and depression; also, desire for death was reduced in those patients who responded to antidepressants medications. However, nearly half of those individuals who received antidepressant medications and/or supportive psychotherapy or counseling showed little or no improvement in depressive symptoms. In another study, Jin *et al*[35] found that worse daily functioning was independently predicted by both major depression and HIV+ status in a sample of 28 Chinese HIV+ participants and 23 matched HIV- controls.

Furthermore, in a sample of HIV-infected women directly after diagnosis, Krabbendam *et al*[40] found that the women experienced strong emotions and quality of life impairment, suggesting that high emotional distress may be occurred in specific phases of HIV illness. In addition, Haller and Miles[36] demonstrated a significant association between quality of life variables and suicide ideation in 190 HIV patients. Specifically, leisure/social and family/friends were strongly associated with suicidal ideation in their sample. Finally, higher emotional distress together with poorer HRQoL were found in a sample of individuals living with HIV-AIDS (N = 113) who reported suicide thoughts as compared to those who had not considered suicide[37] (Tables 1 and 2).

DISCUSSION

The present mini-review aimed to investigate the associations among MDD, quality of life, and suicidal behavior.

First, our findings indicated that the prevalence of a current MDD diagnosis varied from 14.0% to 27.2% according to the selected samples[33,34]; however, as high as 79% of HIV patients reported a lifetime diagnosis of MDD[35]; Second, the prevalence of suicidal ideation ranged from 13.6% to 31.0%; whereas, the prevalence of attempted suicide ranged from 3.9% to 32.7%[11,30,31,33]; Third, various associated risk factors for depression and suicide were found to be important in HIV patients[11,30,31,33,36,37].

Other recent studies[41-43] confirmed this high but more variable prevalence of MDD in HIV patients ranging between 18% to 81% at some stage of the illness according to the different populations which were investigated, the different study designs as well as the different diagnostic

Table 1 Studies that investigated using specific psychometric instruments the association between depression/suicidality and quality of life in human immunodeficiency virus patients

Ref.	Study design	Sample size	Follow-up	Psychometric instruments assessing MDD, suicidality, and quality of life	General findings	Limitations	Conclusion
Ogundipe *et al*[30]	Cross-sectional study	295 PLWHA (102 males and 153 females; mean age 37.3 ± 8.7 yr)	No	GSQ-28, BDI, and WHOQOL-BREF	Overall, 13.6% of PLWHA reported suicidal ideation. A significant association between suicidal ideation and being unmarried, poor medication adherence and altered quality of life has been reported. Unemployment, emotional distress, religion, HIV status non-disclosure and previous suicidal attempts were significant predictors of suicidal ideation among PLWHA	(1) The cross-sectional nature of the study; (2) Subjects have been not assessed for the presence of prior suicide attempts; (3) Participants have been not evaluated during a follow-up period	Suicide should be considered a major health issue in subjects with HIV infection. Specific psychosocial and clinical factors may be useful to identify PLWHA who are at-risk for suicide
Pompili *et al*[38]	Cross-sectional study	88 outpatients (71 men and 17 women; mean age 42.9 ± 10.3 yr)	No	GMDS, BHS, SHSS, TEMPS-A, and SF-36	More severe depression and hopelessness have been found between patients with a poorer HRQoL when compared to those with a higher HRQoL. Higher scores on all dimensions of the TEMPS-A were also reported in those with a poorer HRQoL relative to subjects with a higher HRQoL	(1) The small sample size; (2) The cross-sectional nature of the study; (3) Data on HIV severity, illness duration, or age of symptom onset were not collected; (4) Data were collected *via* self-report and not validated by psychiatric examinations	Patients with a poorer HRQoL were more likely to have depressive affective temperaments, depression and suicide risk than patients with higher HRQoL
Kinyanda *et al*[31]	Cross-sectional study	618 HIV outpatients (169 male, 449 female; mean age in the 25-44 age band)	No	M.I.N.I., coping style index derived by variables of the MAC, and International HIV Dementia Scale	Prevalence of MHS and life-time attempted suicides resulted 7.8% and 3.9%, respectively. After univariate analyses, female gender, food insecurity, increasing negative life events, high stress score, negative coping style, past psychiatric history, psychosocial impairment, diagnoses of PTSD, GAD, and MDD resulted associated with MHS. After multivariate analyses, only female gender, increasing negative life events, a previous psychiatric history, and MDD were independently associated with MHS	(1) The cross-sectional nature of the study; (2) the small number of subjects with some of the diagnosed psychiatric disorders; (3) the threshold as a cut-off point for MHS has been not validated in the African socio-cultural context; (4) the use of the "risk for suicidality" measure instead of "suicidality"	Both social and psychological stressors may act on previous and current psychiatric morbidities triggering suicidality
Lewis *et al*[32]	Cross-sectional study	62 HIV-positive women (mean age 35.7 ± 6.6 yr)	No	BDI-FS, MM of the Primary Care Evaluation of Mental Disorders, ADL, and SCQ	ADL and subjective questionnaire of cognitive functioning were useful instruments to measure depression in HIV-positive women	(1) The cross-sectional nature of the present data; (2) The small sample size which may limit the generalization of findings; (3) Participants have been not evaluated during a follow-up period; (4) the sample includes only women	Diagnosis of depression is of great importance, not only clinically, but also to ensure the judicious allocation of scarce medical resources in the regions worst affected by HIV
Lee *et al*[33]	Cross-sectional study	576 patients (503 male, 73 female; mean age 40.6 ± 9.3 yr) of which 71 were HIV positive, and 514 had hepatitis C	No	A semi-structured questionnaire assessing demographics, quality of life, HIV risk behavior, and psychiatric symptoms,and WHOQOL-BREF	Overall, 21.0% of the subjects reported anxiety, 27.2% depression, 32.7% memory loss, and 32.7% attempted suicide. Based on the main findings, HIV-negative heroin users were more likely to have sexual intercourse without condoms during the six previous months	(1) The sample may be not representative of the Taiwanese heroin users population; (2) It was not possible to validate whether patients replied the questions truthfully	No significant differences were found between the HIV-positive and HIV-negative patients on psychiatric symptoms or quality of life

Atkinson *et al*[34]	Cross-sectional study	203 HIV-infected former plasma donors and 198 HIV-negative donor controls (122 male, 279 female; mean age 40.2 ± 6.4 yr)	No	WMH-CIDI, BDI-II, MOS-HIV, Modified HIV Stressor Scale, ADL, and Social Support Scale	HIV+ subjects reported a significantly higher rate of lifetime MDD (14% *vs* 5%) than HIV- participants. Both HIV+ and HIV- reported similar rates of current MDD. HIV+ were more likely to have lifetime substance use diagnoses than HIV- (14% *vs* 6%). Importantly, worse daily functioning and life quality as well as unemployment were independently predicted by both depression and AIDS	(1) Rates of depression may be underestimated by the used psychometric measures; (2) Recurrence of MDD episodes and bipolar disorder cases have not been examined; (3) The sample is derived by an agrarian setting; (4) The preliminary nature of the findings	High lifetime rates of MDD and suicidality were found in this HIV-infected agrarian cohort presumably due to the existence of a pre-HIV mood disorder, direct effects of HIV, social stigma, negative impact of HIV/AIDS on employment together with the perception that HIV is a terminal condition
Sherr *et al*[11]	Cross-sectional study	778 HIV-positive clinic attenders (183 heterosexual women, 76 heterosexual men, 496 gay/bisexual; mean age 40.5 yr)	No	Suicidal ideation reported using a self-report item based on feelings in the preceding week, levels of optimism in relation to treatment and infectiousness, MSAS short-form, and EuroQol-5D	Suicidal ideation was reported by 31% of patients. Heterosexual men and black respondents were twice more likely to have suicidal ideation relative to gay men or women and White/Asian respondents, respectively. Also, those with lack of disclosure were twice more likely to have suicidal ideation than those without. Higher physical and psychological symptoms independently predicted suicidal ideation	(1) The cross-sectional study design; (2) Subjects have been not evaluated for the presence of previous suicide attempts; (3) Participants have been not tested during a follow-up period	Suicidal ideation rates among HIV-positive clinic attenders were high
Jin *et al*[35]	Cross-sectional study	28 HIV+ participants and 23 matched HIV- controls (38 male, 13 female; mean age 35.4 ± 6.7 yr)	No	CIDI Depression Module, BDI-I, Module E of the CIDI assessing lifetime suicidality, ADL	Overall, 79%of HIV-infected subjects had a lifetime rate of major depression relative to 4% of the comparison group. 9% of patients received treatment for depression, but 18% showed active suicidal thoughts. Worse daily functioning was independently predicted by both depression and HIV+ status	(1) The small sample size that may limit the generalization of the present findings; (2) The effects of gender could be not separated; (3) The sample was selected for feasibility purposes	High rates of major depression and suicidality have been found in HIV-infected Chinese subjects

ADL: Activities of daily living; BDI: Beck Depression Inventory; BHS: Beck Hopelessness Scale; BDI-FS: Beck Depression Inventory-Fast Screen for Medical Patients; CIDI Version 2.1: Composite International Diagnostic Interview Depression module; DDRS: Desire for Death Rating Scale; GAD: Generalised anxiety disorder; GSQ-28: General Health Questionnaire; GMDS: Gotland Male Depression Scale; HRQoL: Health-related quality of life; MDD: Major depressive disorder; M-QOL: McGill Quality of Life Questionnaire; MSAS: Memprial Symptom Assessment Schedule; MAC: Mental Adjustment to Cancer Scale; MM: Mood Module; MHS: Moderate to high risk for suicidality; MOS-HIV: Medical Outcomes Study-HIV; PLWHA: People living with HIV/AIDS; PTSD: Post-traumatic stress disorder; SAHD: Schedule of Attitudes toward Hastened Death; SF-36: Short-Form 36-Item Health Survey; SCQ: Subjective Complaints Questionnaire; SHSS: Suicidal History Self-Rating Screening Scale; TEMPS-A: Temperament Evaluation of Memphis, Pisa, Paris and San Diego-auto questionnaire version; M.I.N.I.: The Mini-International Neuropsychiatric Interview; WHOQOL-BREF: World Health Organization Quality of Life Assessment-Brief Version; WMH-CIDI, version 3.0: World Mental Health Composite International Diagnostic Interview; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus.

criteria which were used.

As reported by Hirsch Allen *et al*[44], depression may be evaluated both dimensionally as well as categorically and this is the first source of variability.

In addition, MDD in HIV patients may vary according to several variables such as the population of interest, main research hypotheses as well as comparisons with other studies/populations. Importantly, depressive symptoms that do not meet diagnostic criteria may be also associated with significant psychosocial impairment and disability[44]. Moreover, the role of somatic symptoms related to depression may be frequently neglected in HIV infected patients due to their frequent overlapping with somatic complaints directly related to the disease.

Overall, clinicians should carefully consider that screening, diagnosing, and quantifying depressive symptoms represent three different but equally critical/challenging tasks when managing depressed HIV infected patients.

MDD often contributes to the negative psychological effects of HIV, increases emotional distress, and exerts a critical impact on adherence to treatment over time in HIV-infected individuals[45]. Clinicians encounter a challenging task in diagnosing MDD in HIV patients given the complex nature of this association. One of the most debated issues is whether or not MDD is a manifestation of HIV brain disorder or, conversely, MDD should be considered the primary disorder that may be exacerbated by the presence of

Table 2 Studies that investigated without using specific psychometric instruments the association between depression/suicidality and quality of life in human immunodeficiency virus patients

Ref.	Study design	Sample size	Follow-up	Quality of life instruments	General findings	Limitations	Conclusion
Breitbart *et al*[39]	Follow-up study	372 patients with advanced AIDS, of which 42 were re-assessed at the follow-up (280 men, 92 female; mean age 44.4 ± 9.4 yr)	2-mo follow-up	Depression module of the SCID, HIV version, Ham-D, SAHD, DDRS, no specific psychometric instruments were used to measure quality of life	A significant association between desire for death and depression was found but desire for death was reduced in those patients who responded to antidepressants medications. However, approximately half of subjects who received antidepressant medications and/or supportive psychotherapy or counseling demonstrated little or no improvement in depressive symptoms	(1) The study was not a controlled clinical trial of antidepressant therapy; (2) Systematic bias (*e.g.*, with more refractory patients being less likely to remain in the study) may be not excluded; (3) The failure to find significant differences about the proportion of patients with a high desire for hastened death may reflect the limited power of these analyses	Depressed patients who were successfully treated with antidepressant medications reported a significant reduction of desire for death
Haller *et al*[36]	Cross-sectional study	190 HIV patients (129 male, 61 female; mean age 37.3 ± 7.4 yr)	No	UM-CIDI, MCMI-III, Suicide Screener (seven-item structured interview), quality of life derived by HIV-PARSE	Overall, 26% of subjects reported suicide thoughts within 30 d of admission, 49% a suicide plan, and 48% a suicide intent. Individuals with suicidal ideation had predominantly MDD (64%), drug dependence (52%), and depressive personality disorder (50%). After regression analyses, those with MDD, dysthymia, substance abuse, thought disorder, PTSD, and borderline/avoidant personality disorders were more likely to have suicidality. Concerning the quality of life variables which were measured, leisure/social and family/friends were strongly associated with suicidal ideation	(1) The cross-sectional nature of the findings; (2) No specific psychometric instruments were used.	Subjects with substance use disorders, unstable interpersonal relations, and a restricted social environment may be considered at-risk individuals and need to be regularly screened for suicidality
Kalichman *et al*[37]	Cross-sectional study	113 HIV-AIDS subjects (mean age 53, age range 47-69)	No	Beck Depression Index, and WOC	Subjects who reported suicide thoughts (27%) have also higher emotional distress and poorer health-related quality of life relative to those who had not considered suicide. Furthermore, escape and avoidance were more frequently used whereas positive-reappraisal coping strategies were less frequently used by those with suicide thoughts. An association between suicide thoughts and the perception of reduced social support from friends and family was also reported. The mentioned differences remained even after controlling for symptoms of depression	(1) The small sample size; (2) The cross-sectional nature of the findings. These factors may limit the generalization of the findings	Relevant emotional distress and suicide thoughts were experienced by subjects in midlife and older individuals with HIV-AIDS
Krabbendam *et al*[40]	Cross-sectional study	24 HIV women (mean age 32 yr with a range of 20-49 yr)	No	In depth interviews using a qualitative semi-structured approach providing insights into feelings, perceptions, beliefs	Strong emotions and quality of life impairment were experienced by HIV-infected women directly after diagnosis. It has been suggested that one counseling session was not effective	(1) The small sample size and the cross-sectional nature of the findings may seriously limit the generalization of the present findings; (2) Counseling given once was reported to be not effective	Continuous counseling may be provided by support groups. Importantly, the counselors may be used as examples

DDRS: Desire for Death Rating Scale; SCID: Depression module of the Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV, HIV version; Ham-D: Hamilton Rating Scale for Depression; MDD: Major depressive disorder; MCMI: Millon Clinical Multiaxial Inventory; PTSD: Post-traumatic stress disorder; SAHD: Schedule of Attitudes toward Hastened Death; UM-CIDI: University of Michigan Composite International Diagnostic Interview; WOC: Ways of Coping Questionnaire; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus.

HIV. Interestingly, some authors hypothesized that MDD and its clinical presentation should be considered an adjustment reaction to the diagnosis of HIV infection[41].

Moreover, the presence of depression may significantly impair the number and activity of lymphocytes in HIV-positive patients dramatically reducing the role of natural killer cells, which increases the mortality in this population[41,42,46]. Del Guerra *et al*[43] have suggested that HIV may predispose patients to the onset of MDD through the interaction between the following neurobiological mechanisms: (1) Chronic increase of inflammatory cytokines and abnormal activation of microglia and astrocytes; (2) Consistent reduction of monoamine levels; (3) Neurotoxicity; and (4) Reduction of neurotrophic factors and subsequent impaired neuroplasticity processes, and psychosocial factors.

Our findings indicate a significant association between suicide ideation/thoughts and poor quality of life in HIV patients[30,36,37,40]. Moreover, results also suggest that depression was significantly associated with[38,39] or predicted a poor quality of life in HIV patients[34,35]. According to population-based studies[47], an higher prevalence of suicide in subjects with HIV may be found relative to the general population, and comorbid mood disorders may be identified in more than half of subjects. Among HIV infected individuals, those with AIDS were more likely to report current suicidal ideation, lifetime suicidal thoughts, and suicide plans compared to those without AIDS. This may be explained by the fact that individuals diagnosed with AIDS usually have a poorer HRQoL than those with HIV infection. Also, the presence of severe depressive symptoms in these patients was a significant predictor of daily functioning together with unemployment, and life quality[34,48]. Moreover, depressive symptoms may be independent predictors of significant impairment in daily functioning and quality of life regardless of the effects of HIV, as suggested by Jin *et al*[35]. The negative consequences of MDD on daily functioning and employment have also been found in previous studies[49]. Taken together, these findings suggest the clinical relevance of early detection and adequate MDD treatment, particularly in those individuals who are severely medically ill.

The present review should be considered in the light of limitations. First, some included studies may reflect the authors' choice according to their expertise and may include small sample sizes, which limit the generalization of the findings; Second, most studies were cross-sectional in nature and did not allow for causal interpretations of the associations between depression, quality of life, and suicidality in HIV patients; Third, some studies predominantly investigated the presence of suicide ideation instead of considering the impact of prior suicide attempts on the quality of life of HIV patients; Fourth, some studies were limited by the possible underestimation of MDD and suicidal behavior rates given the use of self-reported psychometric instruments and the limited power of some analyses to find significant differences regarding the proportion of patients with depression and suicidality.

The prevalence of depression and suicidal ideation are consistent in patients with HIV, suggesting the importance of early detection for both these conditions in this population. Also, significant associations have been reported among MDD, suicidal ideation, and poor quality of life in HIV populations. However, further studies are necessary to elucidate this complex association.

COMMENTS

Background

It has been reported that individuals living with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) are at risk for both depression and suicidality. Most of individuals diagnosed with HIV suffer from one or more comorbid psychiatric disorders and experience a poorer health-related quality of life compared to individuals without comorbidities.

Research frontiers

It is quite unclear whether or not subjects with HIV and poor quality of life are at higher risk of depression/suicidality compared with HIV and higher quality of life.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Among patients with HIV the prevalence of major depressive disorder (MDD), suicidal ideation, and attempted suicides ranged from 14.0% to 27.2%, from 13.6% to 31.0%, and from 3.9% to 32.7%, respectively. A significant association has been reported among MDD, suicidal ideation, and poor quality of life in HIV populations.

Applications

Further additional studies are needed to elucidate the exact nature of the association between MDD, suicidality, and quality of life in HIV patients. The early detection and adequate treatment of these conditions is absolutely recommended in clinical practice, in particular in those individuals who are severely medically ill.

Terminology

PRISMA: The PRISMA Statement consists of a 27-item checklist and a four-phase flow diagram for reporting in systematic reviews in the effort to improve the reporting of different types of health research and the quality of research used in decision-making in healthcare. Hopelessness: Hopelessness may be defined as a negative perspective concerning the future, loss of motivation, and expectations. Hopelessness predisposes patients with psychiatric disorders to suicidal behavior and has been identified as an important risk factor for suicide; TEMPS-A: (Temperament Evaluation of Memphis, Pisa, Paris and San Diego) The TEMPS-A is a self-rating questionnaire consisting of 109 items for men and 110 for women assessing subaffective trait expressions as they were conceptualized in Greek medicine and in German psychiatry.

Peer-review

The review has great clinical implication as well.

REFERENCES

1 **Hall HI**, Song R, Rhodes P, Prejean J, An Q, Lee LM, Karon J, Brookmeyer R, Kaplan EH, McKenna MT, Janssen RS. Estimation of HIV incidence in the United States. *JAMA* 2008; **300**: 520-529 [PMID: 18677024 DOI: 10.1001/jama.300.5.520]

2 **Bing EG**, Burnam MA, Longshore D, Fleishman JA, Sherbourne CD, London AS, Turner BJ, Eggan F, Beckman R, Vitiello B, Morton SC, Orlando M, Bozzette SA, Ortiz-Barron L, Shapiro M. Psychiatric disorders and drug use among human immunodeficiency virus-infected adults in the United States. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 2001; **58**: 721-728 [PMID: 11483137 DOI: 10.1001/archpsyc.58.8.721]

3 **Sherbourne CD**, Hays RD, Fleishman JA, Vitiello B, Magruder KM, Bing EG, McCaffrey D, Burnam A, Longshore D, Eggan

F, Bozzette SA, Shapiro MF. Impact of psychiatric conditions on health-related quality of life in persons with HIV infection. *Am J Psychiatry* 2000; **157**: 248-254 [PMID: 10671395 DOI: 10.1176/appi.ajp.157.2.248]

4 **Blashill AJ**, Perry N, Safren SA. Mental health: a focus on stress, coping, and mental illness as it relates to treatment retention, adherence, and other health outcomes. *Curr HIV/AIDS Rep* 2011; **8**: 215-222 [PMID: 21822626 DOI: 10.1007/s11904-011-0089-1]

5 **Lima VD**, Geller J, Bangsberg DR, Patterson TL, Daniel M, Kerr T, Montaner J, Hogg RS. The effect of adherence on the association between depressive symptoms and mortality among HIV-infected individuals first initiating HAART. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 1175-1183 [PMID: 17502728 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32811]

6 **Ickovics JR**, Hamburger ME, Vlahov D, Schoenbaum EE, Schuman P, Boland RJ, Moore J. Mortality, CD4 cell count decline, and depressive symptoms among HIV-seropositive women: longitudinal analysis from the HIV Epidemiology Research Study. *JAMA* 2001; **285**: 1466-1474 [PMID: 11255423 DOI: 10.1001/jama.285.11.1466]

7 **Rounsaville BJ**, Tierney T, Crits-Christoph K, Weissman MM, Kleber HD. Predictors of outcome in treatment of opiate addicts: evidence for the multidimensional nature of addicts' problems. *Compr Psychiatry* 1982; **23**: 462-478 [PMID: 7140263 DOI: 10.1016/0010-440X(82)90160-2]

8 **Marlatt GA**, Gordon, editors. Relapse prevention. New York: Guilford press, 1985

9 **Havard A**, Teesson M, Darke S, Ross J. Depression among heroin users: 12-Month outcomes from the Australian Treatment Outcome Study (ATOS). *J Subst Abuse Treat* 2006; **30**: 355-362 [PMID: 16716851 DOI: 10.1016/j.jsat.2006.03.012]

10 **Lonnqvist J**. Physical illness and suicide. In: Wasserman D, editor. Suicide-An unnecessary death. Martin Dunitz: London, UK, 2001: 93-98

11 **Sherr L**, Lampe F, Fisher M, Arthur G, Anderson J, Zetler S, Johnson M, Edwards S, Harding R. Suicidal ideation in UK HIV clinic attenders. *AIDS* 2008; **22**: 1651-1658 [PMID: 18670226 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32830c4804]

12 **Bellini M**, Bruschi C. HIV infection and suicidality. *J Affect Disord* 1996; **38**: 153-164 [PMID: 8791184 DOI: 10.1016/0165-0327(96)00009-2]

13 **Kelly B**, Raphael B, Judd F, Perdices M, Kernutt G, Burnett P, Dunne M, Burrows G. Suicidal ideation, suicide attempts, and HIV infection. *Psychosomatics* 1998; **39**: 405-415 [PMID: 9775697 DOI: 10.1016/S0033-3182(98)71299-X]

14 **Préau M**, Bouhnik AD, Peretti-Watel P, Obadia Y, Spire B. Suicide attempts among people living with HIV in France. *AIDS Care* 2008; **20**: 917-924 [PMID: 18777220 DOI: 10.1080/09540120701777249]

15 **Simoni JM**, Nero DK, Weinberg BA. Suicide attempts among seropositive women in New York City. *Am J Psychiatry* 1998; **155**: 1631-1632 [PMID: 9812140]

16 **Cooperman NA**, Simoni JM. Suicidal ideation and attempted suicide among women living with HIV/AIDS. *J Behav Med* 2005; **28**: 149-156 [PMID: 15957570 DOI: 10.1007/s10865-005-3664-3]

17 **Lawrence ST**, Willig JH, Crane HM, Ye J, Aban I, Lober W, Nevin CR, Batey DS, Mugavero MJ, McCullumsmith C, Wright C, Kitahata M, Raper JL, Saag MS, Schumacher JE. Routine, self-administered, touch-screen, computer-based suicidal ideation assessment linked to automated response team notification in an HIV primary care setting. *Clin Infect Dis* 2010; **50**: 1165-1173 [PMID: 20210646 DOI: 10.1086/651420]

18 **Schlebusch L**, Vawda N. HIV-infection as a self-reported risk factor for attempted suicide in South Africa. *Afr J Psychiatry* (Johannesbg) 2010; **13**: 280-283 [PMID: 20957327]

19 Practice guideline for the treatment of patients with HIV/AIDS. Work Group on HIV/AIDS. American Psychiatric Association. *Am J Psychiatry* 2000; **157**: 1-62 [PMID: 11085570]

20 **Shirey KG**, editor. Suicide and HIV. Mental Health Practitioner's Guide to HIV. Springer New York: New York, 2013: 405-407

21 **Sherr L**, Clucas C, Harding R, Sibley E, Catalan J. HIV and depression--a systematic review of interventions. *Psychol Health Med* 2011; **16**: 493-527 [PMID: 21809936 DOI: 10.1080/13548506.2011.579990]

22 **Rabkin JG**. HIV and depression: 2008 review and update. *Curr HIV/AIDS Rep* 2008; **5**: 163-171 [PMID: 18838056 DOI: 10.1007/s11904-008-0025-1]

23 **Li X**, Ma Y, Li SK. The Social Support System of AIDS Patients. *Chin Med Philos* (Humanist Soc Med Ed) 2007; **28**: 334

24 **Zhou YR**. "If you get AIDS... you have to endure it alone": understanding the social constructions of HIV/AIDS in China. *Soc Sci Med* 2007; **65**: 284-295 [PMID: 17459546 DOI: 10.1016/j.socscimed.2007.03.031]

25 **Elmore K**. Southern discomfort: AIDS stigmatization in Wilmington, North Carolina. *Southeast Geogr* 2006; **46**: 215-230

26 **Passaes CP**, Sáez-Cirión A. HIV cure research: advances and prospects. *Virology* 2014; **454-455**: 340-352 [PMID: 24636252 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2014.02.021]

27 **Selwyn PA**, Rivard M. Palliative care for AIDS: challenges and opportunities in the era of highly active anti-retroviral therapy. *J Palliat Med* 2003; **6**: 475-487 [PMID: 14509497 DOI: 10.1089/109662103322144853]

28 **Alciati A**, Gallo L, Monforte AD, Brambilla F, Mellado C. Major depression-related immunological changes and combination antiretroviral therapy in HIV-seropositive patients. *Hum Psychopharmacol* 2007; **22**: 33-40 [PMID: 17191264 DOI: 10.1002/hup.813]

29 **Moher D**, Liberati A, Tetzlaff J, Altman DG. Preferred reporting items for systematic reviews and meta-analyses: the PRISMA state ment. *BMJ* 2009; **339**: b2535 [PMID: 19622551 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.b2535]

30 **Ogundipe OA**, Olagunju AT, Adeyemi JD. Suicidal ideation among attendees of a West African HIV clinic. *Arch Suicide Res* 2015; **19**: 103-116 [PMID: 25058473]

31 **Kinyanda E**, Hoskins S, Nakku J, Nawaz S, Patel V. The prevalence and characteristics of suicidality in HIV/AIDS as seen in an African population in Entebbe district, Uganda. *BMC Psychiatry* 2012; **12**: 63 [PMID: 22713589 DOI: 10.1186/1471-244X-12-63]

32 **Lewis EL**, Mosepele M, Seloilwe E, Lawler K. Depression in HIV-positive women in Gaborone, Botswana. *Health Care Women Int* 2012; **33**: 375-386 [PMID: 22420678 DOI: 10.1080/07399332.2011.603871]

33 **Lee TS**, Shen HC, Wu WH, Huang CW, Yen MY, Wang BE, Chuang P, Shih CY, Chou YC, Liu YL. Clinical characteristics and risk behavior as a function of HIV status among heroin users enrolled in methadone treatment in northern Taiwan. *Subst Abuse Treat Prev Policy* 2011; **6**: 6 [PMID: 21473789 DOI: 10.1186/1747-597X-6-6]

34 **Atkinson JH**, Jin H, Shi C, Yu X, Duarte NA, Casey CY, Franklin DR, Vigil O, Cysique L, Wolfson T, Riggs PK, Gupta S, Letendre S, Marcotte TD, Grant I, Wu Z, Heaton RK. Psychiatric context of human immunodeficiency virus infection among former plasma donors in rural China. *J Affect Disord* 2011; **130**: 421-428 [PMID: 21094530 DOI: 10.1016/j.jad.2010.10.039]

35 **Jin H**, Hampton Atkinson J, Yu X, Heaton RK, Shi C, Marcotte TP, Young C, Sadek J, Wu Z, Grant I. Depression and suicidality in HIV/AIDS in China. *J Affect Disord* 2006; **94**: 269-275 [PMID: 16764941 DOI: 10.1016/j.jad.2006.04]

36 **Haller DL**, Miles DR. Suicidal ideation among psychiatric patients with HIV: psychiatric morbidity and quality of life. *AIDS Behav* 2003; **7**: 101-108 [PMID: 14586195 DOI: 10.1023/A:1023985906166]

37 **Kalichman SC**, Heckman T, Kochman A, Sikkema K, Bergholte J. Depression and thoughts of suicide among middle-aged and older persons living with HIV-AIDS. *Psychiatr Serv* 2000; **51**: 903-907 [PMID: 10875956 DOI: 10.1176/appi.ps.51.7.903]

38 **Pompili M**, Pennica A, Serafini G, Battuello M, Innamorati M, Teti E, Girardi N, Amore M, Lamis DA, Aceti A, Girardi P. Depression and affective temperaments are associated with poor health-related quality of life in patients with HIV infection. *J Psychiatr Pract* 2013; **19**: 109-117 [PMID: 23507812 DOI: 10.1097/01.pra.0000428557.56211.cf]

39 **Breitbart W**, Rosenfeld B, Gibson C, Kramer M, Li Y, Tomarken A, Nelson C, Pessin H, Esch J, Galietta M, Garcia N, Brechtl J, Schuster

M. Impact of treatment for depression on desire for hastened death in patients with advanced AIDS. *Psychosomatics* 2010; **51**: 98-105 [PMID: 20332284 DOI: 10.1176/appi.psy.51.2.98]

40 **Krabbendam AA**, Kuijper B, Wolffers IN, Drew R. The impact of counselling on HIV-infected women in Zimbabwe. *AIDS Care* 1998; **10** Suppl 1: S25-S37 [PMID: 9625892]

41 **Arseniou S**, Arvaniti A, Samakouri M. HIV infection and depression. *Psychiatry Clin Neurosci* 2014; **68**: 96-109 [PMID: 24552630 DOI: 10.1111/pcn.12097]

42 **Almeida SM**. Cognitive impairment and major depressive disorder in HIV infection and cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers. *Arq Neuropsiquiatr* 2013; **71**: 689-692 [PMID: 24141506 DOI: 10.1590/0004-282X20130152]

43 **Del Guerra FB**, Fonseca JL, Figueiredo VM, Ziff EB, Konkiewitz EC. Human immunodeficiency virus-associated depression: contributions of immuno-inflammatory, monoaminergic, neurodegenerative, and neurotrophic pathways. *J Neurovirol* 2013; **19**: 314-327 [PMID: 23868513 DOI: 10.1007/s13365-013-0177-7]

44 **Hirsch Allen AJ**, Forrest JI, Kanters S, O'Brien N, Salters KA, McCandless L, Montaner JS, Hogg RS. Factors associated with disclosure of HIV status among a cohort of individuals on antiretroviral therapy in British Columbia, Canada. *AIDS Behav* 2014; **18**: 1014-1026 [PMID: 24114265 DOI: 10.1007/s10461-013-0623-9]

45 **Battegay M**, Haerry DH, Fehr J, Staehelin C, Wandeler G, Elzi L. [Psychosocial aspects on the treatment of HIV-infection]. *Ther Umsch* 2014; **71**: 509-513 [PMID: 25093317 DOI: 10.1024/0040-5930/a000545]

46 **Ironson G**, O'Cleirigh C, Fletcher MA, Laurenceau JP, Balbin E, Klimas N, Schneiderman N, Solomon G. Psychosocial factors predict CD4 and viral load change in men and women with human immunodeficiency virus in the era of highly active antiretroviral treatment. *Psychosom Med* 2005; **67**: 1013-1021 [PMID: 16314608 DOI: 10.1097/01.psy.0000188569]

47 **Keiser O**, Spoerri A, Brinkhof MW, Hasse B, Gayet-Ageron A, Tissot F, Christen A, Battegay M, Schmid P, Bernasconi E, Egger M. Suicide in HIV-infected individuals and the general population in Switzerland, 1988-2008. *Am J Psychiatry* 2010; **167**: 143-150 [PMID: 20008942 DOI: 10.1176/appi.ajp.2009.09050651]

48 **Leserman J**. Role of depression, stress, and trauma in HIV disease progression. *Psychosom Med* 2008; **70**: 539-545 [PMID: 18519880 DOI: 10.1097/PSY.0b013e3181777a5f]

49 **Murray C**, Lopez A, editors. The global burden of disease: summary. Harvard University Press: Cambridge, MA, 1996

P- Reviewer: Balazs J, Lopez-Jornet P **S- Editor**: Ji FF
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Yan JL

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

World Journal of *Virology*

World J Virol 2015 November 12; 4(4): 313-376

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

WJV World Journal of Virology

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of virology

Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Virology* Editorial Board consists of 341 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in virology. They are from 58 countries, including Argentina (5), Australia (6), Austria (3), Barbados (1), Belgium (2), Brazil (6), Bulgaria (1), Cameroon (1), Canada (11), Chile (1), China (52), Croatia (2), Cuba (1), Czech Republic (1), Denmark (1), Egypt (2), Ethiopia (1), Finland (4), France (11), Germany (12), Ghana (1), Greece (2), Hungary (1), India (11), Indonesia (1), Iran (1), Ireland (3), Israel (5), Italy (24), Japan (13), Kazakhstan (1), Kenya (1), Kosovo (1), Mexico (2), Netherlands (6), New Zealand (1), Nigeria (1), Pakistan (2), Palestine (1), Poland (1), Portugal (1), Romania (1), Russia (2), Saudi Arabia (1), Senegal (1), Singapore (2), Slovakia (1), Slovenia (2), South Africa (3), South Korea (4), Spain (14), Sweden (3), Thailand (8), Tunisia (1), Turkey (4), United Kingdom (7), United States (82), and Uruguay (1).

WJV World Journal of Virology

Contents

Quarterly Volume 4 Number 4 November 12, 2015

World Journal of Virology
Volume 4 Number 4 November 12, 2015

Contents

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Virology*, Yong Poovorawan, Professor, Center of Excellence in Clinical Virology, Faculty of Medicine Chualongkorn University and Hospital, Bangkok 10330, Thailand

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Virology (*World J Virol*, *WJV*, online ISSN 2220-3249, DOI: 10.5501) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJV covers topics concerning arboviral infections, bronchiolitis, central nervous system viral diseases, DNA virus infections, encephalitis, eye infections, fatigue syndrome, hepatitis, meningitis, opportunistic infections, pneumonia, RNA virus infections, sexually transmitted diseases, skin diseases, slow virus diseases, tumor virus infections, viremia, zoonoses, and virology-related traditional medicine, and integrated Chinese and Western medicine. Priority publication will be given to articles concerning diagnosis and treatment of viral diseases. The following aspects are covered: Clinical diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, differential diagnosis, imaging tests, pathological diagnosis, molecular biological diagnosis, immunological diagnosis, genetic diagnosis, functional diagnostics, and physical diagnosis; and comprehensive therapy, drug therapy, surgical therapy, interventional treatment, minimally invasive therapy, and robot-assisted therapy.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJV*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Virology is now indexed in PubMed Central, PubMed, and Digital Object Identifier.

FLYLEAF

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Virology

ISSN
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
February 12, 2012

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF
Ling Lu, MD, PhD, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, University of Kansas Medical Center, Kansas City, 3901 Rainbow Blvd, WHE 3020, KS 66160, United States

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director

World Journal of Virology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center, No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: editorialoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
November 12, 2015

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i4.313

World J Virol 2015 November 12; 4(4): 313-322
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Hepatitis delta virus: A fascinating and neglected pathogen

Celso Cunha, João Paulo Tavanez, Severin Gudima

Celso Cunha, João Paulo Tavanez, Global Health and Tropical Medicine, Medical Microbiology Unit, Institute of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, Universidade Nova de Lisboa, 1349-008 Lisboa, Portugal

Severin Gudima, Department of Microbiology, Molecular Genetics and Immunology, University of Kansas Medical Center, Kansas City, KS 67874, United States

Author contributions: Cunha C coordinated and designed the study, wrote and edited the manuscript; Tavanez JP wrote the manuscript; Gudima S designed the study, wrote and edited the manuscript.

Supported by NIH to Dr. Gudima, Nos. R01CA166213, R21AI097647, and R21AI099696.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare to have no conflicts of interests.

Correspondence to: Celso Cunha, Associate Professor, Global Health and Tropical Medicine, Medical Microbiology Unit, Institute of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, Universidade Nova de Lisboa, Rua da Junqueira, 100, 1349-008 Lisboa, Portugal. ccunha@ihmt.unl.pt
Telephone: +351-21-3652620
Fax: +351-21-3632105

Received: July 4, 2015
Peer-review started: July 10, 2015
First decision: July 31, 2015
Revised: October 14, 2015
Accepted: October 23, 2015
Article in press: October 27, 2015
Published online: November 12, 2015

Abstract

Hepatitis delta virus (HDV) is the etiologic agent of the most severe form of virus hepatitis in humans. Sharing some structural and functional properties with plant viroids, the HDV RNA contains a single open reading frame coding for the only virus protein, the Delta antigen. A number of unique features, including ribozyme activity, RNA editing, rolling-circle RNA replication, and redirection for a RNA template of host DNA-dependent RNA polymerase Ⅱ, make this small pathogen an excellent model to study virus-cell interactions and RNA biology. Treatment options for chronic hepatitis Delta are scarce and ineffective. The disease burden is perhaps largely underestimated making the search for new, specific drugs, targets, and treatment strategies an important public health challenge. In this review we address the main features of virus structure, replication, and interaction with the host. Virus pathogenicity and current treatment options are discussed in the light of recent developments.

Key words: Hepatitis delta virus; Hepatitis B virus; RNA replication; Pathogenesis; Treatment

Core tip: Hepatitis delta virus (HDV) is the etiologic agent of probably the most severe form of virus hepatitis. HDV replication and spread depends on the presence of hepatitis B virus which provides the envelope proteins coded exclusively by its own genome. About 20 million people are currently chronically infected with HDV and no specific therapy is still available. Here, we review the current knowledge on HDV biology, epidemiology, pathogenesis, and treatment. Future trends and perspectives are discussed in the light of recent developments on HDV biology and its interaction with the host.

Cunha C, Tavanez JP, Gudima S. Hepatitis delta virus: A fascinating

and neglected pathogen. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(4): 313-322 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i4/313.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i4.313

INTRODUCTION

Over 35 years have passed since Rizzetto *et al*[1] reported the discovery of what has been called Delta antigen in a patient with diagnosis of severe hepatitis B infection. Subsequent research on the nature of this antigen led to the identification, in 1980, of a new hepatotropic virus, hepatitis delta virus (HDV)[2,3]. This new infectious agent was later found to be a sub-viral agent dependent on the presence, in infected cells, of hepatitis B virus (HBV) to accomplish the replication cycle[3,4]. In nature, both viruses, HBV and HDV, share the same envelope proteins coded exclusively by the HBV genome[5,6].

Today, the World Health Organization estimates that about 400 million people are chronically infected with HBV worldwide[7,8], of which approximately 20 million are co-infected with HDV[9,10]. The Amazon basin and some central African and east European countries are among the regions with higher prevalence. However, there is still a considerable lack of information concerning a significant number of countries mostly situated in Africa, Asia, and Latin America (Figure 1). The geographic distribution of the so far identified eight HDV clades is also far from being uniform. Clade 1 may be found worldwide, in contrast with clade 3 which seems to be confined to the Amazon region (Figure 1). The most frequent outcome of the acute co-infection with HDV is virus clearance and patient's recovery. However, in up to 5% of the infected individuals a chronic form of HDV infection will develop[11]. In the case of super-infection, when a chronic HBV carrier gets super-infected with HDV, the outcome is distinct. About 70%-90% of super-infected individuals will become chronic carriers for both viruses, HBV and HDV[12].

As compared to the individuals that are chronic carriers of HBV alone, HDV additionally increases the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) and mortality threefold and twofold, respectively, in HDV/HBV carriers[13,14]. Currently, in clinical practice, there are no drugs used that directly and specifically target HDV. None of the currently approved anti-HBV drugs efficiently blocks HDV infection[7,9,14-17].

All of the above, given additional HDV-inflicted liver pathogenesis, and inability to efficiently circumvent HDV infection by anti-HBV drugs, makes HDV a very serious pathogen, and it does call for additional attention to HDV and development of specific anti-HDV interventions.

HDV is mostly endemic in low income countries in which the budget for new, potentially expensive drugs is, of course, not the first priority. Accordingly, development of new treatment options based on specific drugs has not only proved to be difficult (the virus apparently does not code for any specific enzymatic activity that could be targeted) but may also represent an uninteresting option for pharmaceutical companies, speaking from a strictly financial point of view.

Nevertheless, this small human pathogen bears a set of features that make it a formidable model to study fundamental aspects of host-pathogen interactions and RNA biology including mechanisms of transcription, replication, and genome evolution[18,19]. The small size and structure of the genome bearing only one open reading frame (ORF), which is edited by host enzymes, its ribozyme activity and still largely undeciphered mechanism of RNA-directed RNA replication, are prominent examples of the uniqueness of this human pathogen[19].

In this review, we will address the specific features of HDV structure and replication, its interaction with host cells and HBV. Future perspectives of research based on recent important developments will be discussed.

The virus and its replication

The virus: HDV is an enveloped spherical subviral agent about 36 nm in diameter[19]. The virus particle contains a ribonucleoprotein (RNP) core consisting of one copy of the RNA genome and approximately 200 copies of the only virus encoded protein, the Delta antigen (HDAg)[20]. The HDV envelope contains hepatitis B virus surface antigens (HBsAg), provided solely by HBV. In accordance, the two viruses share virtually indistinguishable envelopes[6].

The virus genome is a circular single-stranded RNA molecule of around 1.7 kb and negative polarity[21,22]. A significant degree of internal base-pairing (about 70% of all nucleotides) is an important feature, with potential not yet unveiled functional implications, observed in this molecule[23,24]. This structure is similar to that described for plant viroids, albeit the latters have a smaller size and do not code for any protein (Table 1). On the contrary, the HDV genome displays one ORF which codes for the only viral protein, the Delta antigen[25-27]. This protein can be found in virions under two distinct forms: Small (S-HDAg, 195 aa) and large (L-HDAg; 213 or 214 aa, depending on the genotype). L-HDAg is synthesized mainly later in the replication cycle[28,29] as a consequence of an editing mechanism that takes place in the so-called anti-genome, an exact copy of the genome that arises as a replicative intermediate during RNA replication. The editing reaction is catalyzed by cellular adenosine deaminase 1 which converts an amber stop codon into a tryptophan codon (UGG) allowing a 57 nucleotide and consequently 19 aa extension of the ORF[30,31].

Both L-HDAg and S-HDAg share the same functional domains with the exception of the L-HDAg-specific C-terminal extension, which bears an isoprenylation signal present in cysteine residue 211[32]. Farnesylation of this residue is reported to be crucial albeit not sufficient for interaction with HBsAg and subsequent virion packaging and release from the cells[33,34]. The common functional motifs are a nuclear localization signal (NLS; aa 66-75), a coiled-coil domain (aa 12-60), and a

Table 1 Similarities and differences between hepatitis delta virus and plant viroids

HDV (1700 nt)	Pospiviroidae (200-400 nt)	Avsunviroidae (200-400 nt)
Circular ssRNA	Circular ssRNA	Circular ssRNA
Extensive intramolecular base pairing	Extensive intramolecular base pairing	Extensive intramolecular base pairing
A DNA-directed RNA polymerase makes both plus and minus strands	A DNA-directed RNA polymerase makes both plus and minus strands	A DNA-directed RNA polymerase makes both plus and minus strands
Encodes for protein	No proteins encoded	No proteins encoded
Virion maturation depends on a helper virus	Replication does not depend on the presence of a helper virus	Replication does not depend on the presence of a helper virus
Symmetric rolling circle RNA replication	Asymmetric rolling circle RNA replication	Symmetric rolling circle RNA replication
Replicates in the nucleus	Replicates in the nucleus	Replicates in chloroplasts
Ribozyme activity	No ribozyme activity	Ribozyme activity

HDV: Hepatitis delta virus.

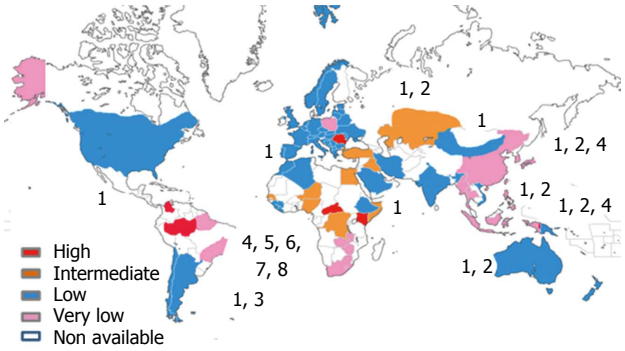


Figure 1 Prevalence and geographical distribution of eight hepatitis delta virus clades in the world.

bipartite arginine-rich RNA binding domain (aa 97-107 and 136-146; ARM1 and ARM2, respectively)[35-37]. More recently, however, it was shown that mutation in the core arginines of both ARM1 and ARM2 did not impair the RNA-binding ability of a C-terminal HDAg-160 truncated form of HDAg[38]. The authors suggested that HDAg establishes numerous contacts with HDV RNA to assemble ribonucleoprotein complexes.

Delta antigens: Several properties have been assigned to S-HDAg but none related to any known enzymatic activity. Among the reported putative and observed functions are the promotion of nuclear import of HDV RNPs[39], regulation of HDV RNA editing[40], facilitation of ribozyme cleavage (chaperone)[41,42], and facilitation of accumulation of processed RNA transcripts[43,44]. Both Delta antigens are post-translationally modified by host enzymes. Several post-translational modifications (PTM) have been described in HDAg and these include phosphorylation, methylation, acetylation, and sumoylation[45-48]. Phosphorylation occurs at multiple sites and can be mediated by different host kinases, dsRNA-activated protein kinase R, protein kinase C, and ERK1/2[49-51]. All these modifications may have distinct functional significance but it seems consensual that they are all involved in promoting virus RNA replication[52].

Methylation of Arg 13 on S-HDAg by arginine methyltransferase Ⅰ was reported and proposed to be important to enhance both genomic RNA and mRNA synthesis[46]. Additionally, cellular p300 acetyltransferase was found to acetylate Lys72 on the NLS of S-HDAg[53]. Although speculative, this modification may have impact on the efficiency of nuclear import.

Finally, sumoylation was the most recent PTM to be reported on S-HDAg. It occurs at multiple lysine residues and is catalyzed by host small ubiquitin-related modifier isoform 1. Sumoylation was proposed to be important to promote genomic RNA and mRNA synthesis[48].

Undoubtedly, these observations represent only a tiny part of the whole picture drawn by HDAgs inside the cell. In fact, Delta antigens can also be found as peptides of different smaller sizes in the nucleus of HDV replicating cells[54]. Do these additional smaller forms correspond to distinct functional features? The answer is still far from being clear as no evidence supporting this point of view have been reported. In addition, it has been shown that S-HDAg can form multimers in HDV replicating cells[20,55,56]. These multimers may play an important role in virus replication by facilitating the accumulation of virus RNAs. Moreover, it is known that HDAgs are basic proteins with an estimated overall + 12 charge[57]. Thus, it is not surprising that, at least *in vitro*, the protein can bind nonspecifically to several types of nucleic acids including dsDNA and several distinct RNAs[58].

Furthermore, S-HDAg may also be involved in sequestering and manipulating host cell components to facilitate HDV replication. In this context, it is not surprising that the search for S-HDAg interacting proteins unveiled a considerable number of potential partners. First Cao *et al*[59] used an immunoprecipitation followed by mass spectrometry approach being able to identify more than 100 host proteins in the assay. Later, Gowans *et al*[60] performed a yeast two-hybrid screen using a human liver cDNA library and identified 30 host candidate proteins capable of specifically interacting with S-HDAg. Making use of RNA silencing strategies some of these candidate interactions were found to be of potential functional significance. However, the above mentioned strong positive charge of HDAgs compels one to be careful when analyzing the specificity and role of these interactions in the HDV replication cycle.

S-HDAg is predicted to be an intrinsically disordered protein, a property already assigned to several other virus and cellular proteins[61]. This feature may be responsible for the lack of success in all, to our knowledge at least in three different laboratories, attempts to crystalize and solve the 3D structure of the Delta antigen. These properties of the Delta antigen make the study of HDV biology much more complex than perhaps initially believed. However, as we shall discuss below, they are not the only most important ones.

HDV replication: HDV replication takes place in the nucleus of infected cells[60,62,63]. The study of the HDV replication has long been difficult due to the lack of an appropriate cell culture system capable of supporting all steps of the virus life cycle, from attachment to release from the cells. Primary human hepatocytes have been long the only cells known to support the complete life cycle of HDV[64]. These are expensive and not easy to cultivate. Thus, other approaches needed to be developed and a number of alternatives arose with time. Among them are the Hepa RG cell line and the stably transfected HEK-293 cells expressing S-HDAg under the control of a tetracycline inducible promoter[65,66]. Although not representing ideal models, they became important tools for HDV research. The recent identification of the sodium-taurocholate co-transporting polypeptide (NTCP, encoded by SLC10A1) as the bona fide receptor for HBV and HDV culminated a long run that included a number of tested hypothesis and putative isolations[67,68]. It represented an important breakthrough since it allowed engineering cell lines overexpressing it and consequently also supporting the initial steps of virus attachment and entry. So far, these human NTCP-expressing cell lines include human HepG2 and Huh7 as well as mouse Hepa1-6, AML-12, and primary mouse hepatocytes[69].

After the uncoating of virus particles, HDV RNPs are transported to the nucleus, where RNA replication takes place[70]. The existing data indicates replication of the virus genome involves a double rolling-circle mechanism with formation of multimeric anti-genomic and genomic molecules[71]. These RNA multimers are cleaved at precise monomeric intervals by a rybozime activity present in both genomic and antigenomic molecules[72,73]. The presence of ribozymes in HDV RNAs is a feature shared with the viroid family of Avsunviroidae[74] (Table 1).

Although it is well established that the presence of S-HDAg stimulates virus RNA accumulation, the precise role of this virus antigen in the mechanism of HDV RNA replication remains elusive. Controversy on which host polymerase or polymerases are involved in synthesis of genomes and antigenomes lasted, for a long time. Some groups claimed that both RNA pol Ⅰ and pol Ⅱ are involved in genome and antigenome synthesis, respectively[75]. Mainly, these evidences were obtained in *in vitro* assays using different inhibitory concentrations of α-amanitin and on reports showing the presence of virus RNA in the nucleolus[75,76]. By contrast, other groups, using different types of transcription inhibitors, actinomycin D, 5,6-dichloro-1-β-D-ribofuranosylbenzimidazole, α-amanitin, provided data suggesting the involvement of solely RNA pol Ⅱ[77]. Furthermore, the presence of virus RNA in the nucleolus could not be observed in the absence of Delta antigen suggesting that this presence lacks functional relevance[62,63]. In recent years, the use of immunoprecipitation and proteomic approaches, among others, led to the identification of several pol Ⅰ, pol Ⅱ, and pol Ⅲ subunits as binding partners for HDV RNA[59]. These results need to be interpreted with care since the observed binding to HDV RNA could be a result of indirect interaction through other non-identified partners. However, independently of the host polymerase(s) involved in replication of virus RNAs a striking question is still hanging in the air: How does the virus redirect a host DNA-dependent RNA polymerase to use an RNA template? Here, the eventual participation of the S-HDAg, which as mentioned before displays a net positive charge and intrinsic disorder, may play a crucial role allowing the virus to overcome obstacles posed by the host environment for its replication.

The search for promoter sequences in virus RNA has also been followed by a few groups with inconclusive results. Yet, there is evidence from *in vivo* models supporting that mRNA synthesis initiates at nt 1630[78,79]. It may additionally be possible that multiple binding sequences for host RNA polymerases are present both in the virus genome and antigenome. This "nonspecific" binding could be a consequence of the RNA secondary structure bearing an extensive base-pairing with a number of predicted internal loops. Additionally, S-HDAg could also play an important role since it can bind nonspecifically to several nucleic acids, from dsDNA to ssRNA. It could be possible that S-HDAg plays a role as mediator between the virus RNA and a host RNA polymerase promoting its binding to several sequences in the genome and antigenome. Alternatively, S-HDAg could simply act as a chaperone, stabilizing RNA molecules and making them available for transcription. Assembly of HDV virions takes place in the cytoplasm. In this cellular compartment HBV-derived HBsAgs interact with HDV RNPs that are exported from the nucleus[80,81]. This interaction was shown to be mediated by L-HDAgs[82,83]. Tavanez *et al*[81] used heterokaryon assays to show that HDV RNPs shuttle between the nucleus and the cytoplasm. The authors claimed that nuclear import is mediated by an NLS located in Delta antigens (aa 66-75) and provided evidence that export to the cytoplasm is mediated by a cis-acting sequence in virus RNA[35]. However, Lee *et al*[84] (2001) have shown a year before that aa 198-210 in L-HDAg were able to promote the export of a reporter protein. More recently, Freitas and Cunha used a well-established CAT reporter system to investigate a possible presence of nuclear export elements (NEEs) in HDV RNAs[85]. The authors showed that NEEs may be present in both genomic and antigenomic molecules and that nuclear export is, at

least in part, sensitive to leptomycin B, an inhibitor of the host CRM1-mediated export pathway. Whether a NES present in L-HDAg or a NEE in virus RNA are responsible for promoting HDV RNP export may be considered still controversial. Consequently, further research is mandatory to unequivocally answer this question.

Clinical manifestations and therapy: It is widely and for a longtime known that HDV infection is associated with a broad range of clinical manifestations, from asymptomatic to fulminant hepatitis. In the latter cases, mortality often reaches 80% of the affected individuals[86,87].

Concomitant infection of HBV and HDV usually displays more severe symptoms when compared with a single HBV infection. Nevertheless, the most frequent outcome is virus clearance, a situation reported in about 95% of the cases[88]. In contrast, HDV super-infection of chronic HBV patients results in progression to chronicity in up to 80% of patients. Moreover, about 60%-70% of these patients will develop cirrhosis[89]. These patients usually progress more rapidly to cirrhosis, show increased liver decompensation, and eventually death when compared with those chronically infected with HBV alone[90,91].

The factors influencing the distinct clinical course in coinfected and superinfected patients are still poorly understood. In both cases the organism produces a strong anti-HDAg antibody response which is, unfortunately, unable to modulate the course of infection[92-94]. The majority of superinfected patients progresses to chronic disease independent of the presence of high titers of anti-HDV antibodies. Despite the limited number of studies there are evidences supporting a role of cytotoxic T cells in HDV infection including the destruction of infected hepatocytes[95]. In any case, immunology of HDV infection is perhaps one of the most poorly understood aspects of the disease.

From the histologic point of view there are no detectable differences between anomalies observed in the liver of HDV-infected patients and patients with other acute or chronic virus liver disease[96,97]. These anomalies mostly consist of hepatocellular necrosis and inflammation and may represent, at least in part, a consequence of the immune response of the host. Proteomic and systems biology approaches have more recently been used to investigate changes in protein expression patterns and metabolic pathways altered during HDV replication. Although the model systems used can hardly be considered ideal, the obtained results provided consistent evidence that HDV replication results in significant alterations in pyruvate and glycolysis metabolism[98-100]. Of note, these studies have shown that cancer was the most likely disease associated with HDV replication and provided evidence that the G2/M cell cycle checkpoint is altered as a consequence of the presence of the virus[100]. Definitely, these observations, of which a significant number of arise from proteomic experiments and analysis, need to be interpreted and handled with care. In any case, it seems uncontroversial that further research on liver biopsies of infected patients may possibly help confirming these findings.

There is no efficient therapy for chronic HBV/HDV infection. Pegylated interferon-α (PEG-IFN-α) is perhaps the most popular therapy and the one that has shown some antiviral activity against HDV[15,101]. However, the efficacy is limited - a temporary reduction in virus titers is usually observed in 15%-40% patients - and the need for prolonged administration often results in severe adverse effects[101,102]. These effects include fatigue, weight loss, and psychiatric disturbances. Ribavirine, lamivudine and other nucleotide analogues have also been tested but have shown a very limited, if any, efficacy[103-106]. The Hep-Net International hepatitis D intervention trial included 77 patients from Germany, Greece, and Turkey. In this study a PEG-IFN-α2a therapy was compared with adefovir and a combination of PEG-IFN-α2a and adefovir[107]. Adefovir showed a very limited efficacy and the combination therapy based on PEG-IFN-α2a and adefovir was only superior in reducing HBsAg levels but not in HDV RNA[17]. In any case, HDV RNA relapses were often observed in a long-term follow-up (median time 4.5 years). The nucleoside analog entecavir, which showed antiviral efficacy in the woodchuck model of hepatitis B, was assayed in thirteen chronic hepatitis D patients for one year also proving to be ineffective[17]. It thus seems evident that current anti-HBV drugs are unable to efficiently circumvent HDV infection.

Today, it is usually recommended to treat chronic hepatitis D with PEG-IFN-α for at least one year if the patient tolerates the eventual adverse effects. However, in patients with advanced liver disease, liver transplantation may represent the only available option[108]. It is thus clear that current therapeutic options are unsatisfactory and there is an urgent need for more effective and specific anti-HDV drugs that will directly target HDV. Prenylation inhibitors may become an interesting and effective option and have been shown to be safe when used to treat neoplasias[109,110]. As discussed before, prenylation of L-HDAg is essential for interaction with HBsAg and virion assembly, and thus may be regarded as a potential target for therapeutic intervention.

Most recently, and as a consequence of the identification of NCTP as the host cell HDV receptor, inhibitors of viral entry have been tested and proposed as potential anti-viral drugs. Namely, Myrcludex B, a synthetic N-acylated preS1 lipopeptide and cyclosporine A were shown to inhibit virus entry by interfering with the receptor functions of NCTP, however, currently there is no data available regarding the performance of this drug in actual HDV-infected individuals[111,112].

However, it is clear that a higher investment in research of fundamental aspects of HDV biology as well as of anti-HDV specific compounds is crucial in order to improve the quality of life and life expectancy of chronic HBV/HDV carriers.

Recent trends in HDV research

In the past few years a number of interesting developments have occurred in the field of HDV research and its interaction with HBV.

Using super-infection with WHV-enveloped HDV of the woodchucks that were chronic carriers of WHV and already developed HCCs, it was found that HDV was able to infect fractions of the cells of WHV-induced HCCs. These results suggest that at least a certain percentage of HCC cells *in vivo* express functional WHV receptors and support the attachment, entry, trafficking, and complete replication cycle of HDV[113]. The data also opens new avenues of research that will further address the mechanisms of the relationship between established HCCs and ongoing virus infection.

A second study compared several types of HDV that differed only by the envelope proteins of HBV that coated the virions[114]. Twenty five different types of HBV envelope proteins that belonged to twenty five different HBV variants of nine genotypes A-I were analyzed. It was found that all nine HBV genotypes tested were able to support the production of infectious HDV virions that contained HDV genome of genotype I. Significant differences in infectivity were found for the envelope proteins of different HBV variants. The data generated strongly suggest that HBV envelope proteins facilitate not only attachment and entry, but also at least one additional immediate post-entry step of the HDV life cycle. In addition, testing of infectivity suggested that it cannot be concluded that the envelope proteins of HBV produced during chronic stage of HBV infection are mainly responsible for assembly of the virions with diminished infectivity. The study also suggested that correctly regulated disassembly of HDV RNP from the HBV envelope proteins after entry is critical for the overall infectivity of HDV particles[114].

Finally, a third recent study demonstrated that infectious HDV virions can be assembled by the envelope proteins derived from the naturally integrated HBV DNA in the absence of ongoing HBV replication[115]. These findings suggest that HDV can possibly persist *in vivo* in the absence of HBV replication (or when HBV replication is suppressed by a drug), when functional HBV envelope proteins are supplied from integrated HBV DNA. Such a mechanism of HDV persistence was not explored previously. The results obtained explain, at least in part, inability of anti-HBV drugs to efficiently block HDV infection *in vivo*. Additionally, they also suggest that HDV can be actually a more independent and more significant pathogen than it is currently assumed[116].

Origin of the virus

As discussed earlier, HDV bears a number of characteristics similar to those found in plant viroids (Table 1).

These similarities may allow speculation on a possible HDV origin from the plant world. According to this hypothesis, HDV could have evolved to encode the Delta antigen thus providing an explanation for its larger genome when compared with viroids[117]. However, a deeper analysis of this homology was evaluated as non-significant and this hypothesis seems to be, at least for the time being, ruled out.

One of the key features of HDV genomic and antigenomic RNA molecules is their ribozyme activity. Ribozymes are considered to be characteristic of viroids. However, the two HDV ribozymes are not only structurally different from those of Avsunviroidae but also display similarities to several HDV-like ribozymes found in eukaryotes[74,116]. This finding rather supports the hypothesis of a human transcriptome origin of HDV.

We can thus conclude that the plant or animal origins of HDV are still questionable and highly speculative. But this is one of the many fascinating questions that still remain to be unveiled for this awkward and awesome virus.

CONCLUSION

Almost 40 years after its discovery, HDV remains a challenge for clinicians and researchers. It is disconcerting simplicity, with a small RNA genome and a single protein, the Delta antigen, make it an excellent model not only for virologists but also for those interested in RNA and cell biology. The virus bears a number of unique features including a RNA-directed RNA replication mechanism of the genome catalyzed by host RNA polymerase Ⅱ. Enzymatic activities were not identified in Delta antigens thus making difficult the identification of potential targets for specific and effective therapies. Development of such therapies is crucial to reduce the number of chronic patients progressing to cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. The burden of disease caused by HDV is most probably underestimated since there is a considerable lack of epidemiologic data from several countries where HBV is highly prevalent.

In conclusion, despite considerable progress made in HDV research a significant number of questions remain to be answered concerning fundamental aspects of its biology, pathogenesis, and interaction with the host. The next few years will hopefully bring to light new answers but also new exciting questions, helping understand this fascinating pathogen, and contributing to reducing morbidity and mortality among infected individuals.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

João Paulo Tavanez is a recipient of a Fundação para a Ciência e Tecnologia post-doctoral fellowship.

REFERENCES

1 **Rizzetto M**, Canese MG, Aricò S, Crivelli O, Trepo C, Bonino F, Verme G. Immunofluorescence detection of new antigen-antibody system (delta/anti-delta) associated to hepatitis B virus in liver and in serum of HBsAg carriers. *Gut* 1977; **18**: 997-1003 [PMID: 75123 DOI: 10.1136/gut.18.12.997]

2 **Rizzetto M**, Canese MG, Gerin JL, London WT, Sly DL, Purcell RH. Transmission of the hepatitis B virus-associated delta antigen to chimpanzees. *J Infect Dis* 1980; **141**: 590-602 [PMID: 6989929 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/141.5.590]

3 **Rizzetto M**, Hoyer B, Canese MG, Shih JW, Purcell RH, Gerin JL. delta Agent: association of delta antigen with hepatitis B surface antigen and RNA in serum of delta-infected chimpanzees. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1980; **77**: 6124-6128 [PMID: 6934539 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.77.10.6124]

4 **Ponzetto A**, Negro F, Popper H, Bonino F, Engle R, Rizzetto M, Purcell RH, Gerin JL. Serial passage of hepatitis delta virus in chronic hepatitis B virus carrier chimpanzees. *Hepatology* 1988; **8**: 1655-1661 [PMID: 3192181 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840080631]

5 **Smedile A**, Rizzetto M, Gerin JL. Advances in hepatitis D virus biology and disease. *Prog Liver Dis* 1994; **12**: 157-175 [PMID: 7746872]

6 **Sureau C**. The role of the HBV envelope proteins in the HDV replication cycle. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2006; **307**: 113-131 [PMID: 16903223 DOI: 10.1007/3-540-29802-9_6]

7 **Gish RG**. Current treatment and future directions in the management of chronic hepatitis B viral infection. *Clin Liver Dis* 2005; **9**: 541-565, v [PMID: 16207563 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2005.08.005]

8 **Akbar F**, Yoshida O, Abe M, Hiasa Y, Onji M. Engineering immune therapy against hepatitis B virus. *Hepatol Res* 2007; **37** Suppl 3: S351-S356 [PMID: 17931186 DOI: 10.1111/j.1872-034X.2007.00251.x]

9 **Heidrich B**, Manns MP, Wedemeyer H. Treatment options for hepatitis delta virus infection. *Curr Infect Dis Rep* 2013; **15**: 31-38 [PMID: 23242761 DOI: 10.1007/s11908-012-0307-z]

10 **Reinheimer C**, Doerr HW, Berger A. Hepatitis delta: on soft paws across Germany. *Infection* 2012; **40**: 621-625 [PMID: 22753115 DOI: 10.1007/s15010-012-0287-9]

11 **Hadziyannis SJ**. Review: hepatitis delta. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1997; **12**: 289-298 [PMID: 9195369]

12 **Lau DT**, Kleiner DE, Park Y, Di Bisceglie AM, Hoofnagle JH. Resolution of chronic delta hepatitis after 12 years of interferon alfa therapy. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **117**: 1229-1233 [PMID: 10535887]

13 **Rizzetto M**, Verme G, Recchia S, Bonino F, Farci P, Aricò S, Calzia R, Picciotto A, Colombo M, Popper H. Chronic hepatitis in carriers of hepatitis B surface antigen, with intrahepatic expression of the delta antigen. An active and progressive disease unresponsive to immunosuppressive treatment. *Ann Intern Med* 1983; **98**: 437-441 [PMID: 6340574 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-98-4-437]

14 **Fattovich G**, Giustina G, Christensen E, Pantalena M, Zagni I, Realdi G, Schalm SW. Influence of hepatitis delta virus infection on morbidity and mortality in compensated cirrhosis type B. The European Concerted Action on Viral Hepatitis (Eurohep). *Gut* 2000; **46**: 420-426 [PMID: 10673308 DOI: 10.1136/gut.46.3.420]

15 **Yurdaydin C**. Treatment of chronic delta hepatitis. *Semin Liver Dis* 2012; **32**: 237-244 [PMID: 22932972 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1323629]

16 **Heidrich B**, Yurdaydın C, Kabaçam G, Ratsch BA, Zachou K, Bremer B, Dalekos GN, Erhardt A, Tabak F, Yalcin K, Gürel S, Zeuzem S, Cornberg M, Bock CT, Manns MP, Wedemeyer H. Late HDV RNA relapse after peginterferon alpha-based therapy of chronic hepatitis delta. *Hepatology* 2014; **60**: 87-97 [PMID: 24585488 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27102]

17 **Kabaçam G**, Onder FO, Yakut M, Seven G, Karatayli SC, Karatayli E, Savas B, Idilman R, Bozdayi AM, Yurdaydin C. Entecavir treatment of chronic hepatitis D. *Clin Infect Dis* 2012; **55**: 645-650 [PMID: 22573857 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cis459]

18 **Taylor JM**. Hepatitis delta virus. *Virology* 2006; **344**: 71-76 [PMID: 16364738 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2005.09.033]

19 **Alves C**, Branco C, Cunha C. Hepatitis delta virus: a peculiar virus. *Adv Virol* 2013; **2013**: 560105 [PMID: 24198831]

20 **Gudima S**, Chang J, Moraleda G, Azvolinsky A, Taylor J. Parameters of human hepatitis delta virus genome replication: the quantity, quality, and intracellular distribution of viral proteins and RNA. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 3709-3719 [PMID: 11907210 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.8.3709-3719.2002]

21 **Saldanha JA**, Thomas HC, Monjardino JP. Cloning and sequencing of RNA of hepatitis delta virus isolated from human serum. *J Gen Virol* 1990; **71** (Pt 7): 1603-1606 [PMID: 2374010]

22 **Makino S**, Chang MF, Shieh CK, Kamahora T, Vannier DM, Govindarajan S, Lai MM. Molecular cloning and sequencing of a human hepatitis delta (delta) virus RNA. *Nature* 1987; **329**: 343-346 [PMID: 3627276 DOI: 10.1038/329343a0]

23 **Kos A**, Dijkema R, Arnberg AC, van der Meide PH, Schellekens H. The hepatitis delta (delta) virus possesses a circular RNA. *Nature* 1986; **323**: 558-560 [PMID: 2429192 DOI: 10.1038/323558a0]

24 **Chen PJ**, Kalpana G, Goldberg J, Mason W, Werner B, Gerin J, Taylor J. Structure and replication of the genome of the hepatitis delta virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1986; **83**: 8774-8778 [PMID: 2430299]

25 **Bergmann KF**, Gerin JL. Antigens of hepatitis delta virus in the liver and serum of humans and animals. *J Infect Dis* 1986; **154**: 702-706 [PMID: 3745977 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/154.4.702]

26 **Bonino F**, Heermann KH, Rizzetto M, Gerlich WH. Hepatitis delta virus: protein composition of delta antigen and its hepatitis B virus-derived envelope. *J Virol* 1986; **58**: 945-950 [PMID: 3701932]

27 **Weiner AJ**, Choo QL, Wang KS, Govindarajan S, Redeker AG, Gerin JL, Houghton M. A single antigenomic open reading frame of the hepatitis delta virus encodes the epitope(s) of both hepatitis delta antigen polypeptides p24 delta and p27 delta. *J Virol* 1988; **62**: 594-599 [PMID: 2447291]

28 **Luo GX**, Chao M, Hsieh SY, Sureau C, Nishikura K, Taylor J. A specific base transition occurs on replicating hepatitis delta virus RNA. *J Virol* 1990; **64**: 1021-1027 [PMID: 2304136]

29 **Chao M**, Hsieh SY, Taylor J. Role of two forms of hepatitis delta virus antigen: evidence for a mechanism of self-limiting genome replication. *J Virol* 1990; **64**: 5066-5069 [PMID: 2398535]

30 **Polson AG**, Bass BL, Casey JL. RNA editing of hepatitis delta virus antigenome by dsRNA-adenosine deaminase. *Nature* 1996; **380**: 454-456 [PMID: 8602246 DOI: 10.1038/380454a0]

31 **Wong SK**, Lazinski DW. Replicating hepatitis delta virus RNA is edited in the nucleus by the small form of ADAR1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2002; **99**: 15118-15123 [PMID: 12399548 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.232416799]

32 **Glenn JS**, Watson JA, Havel CM, White JM. Identification of a prenylation site in delta virus large antigen. *Science* 1992; **256**: 1331-1333 [PMID: 1598578 DOI: 10.1126/science.1598578]

33 **Lee CZ**, Chen PJ, Lai MM, Chen DS. Isoprenylation of large hepatitis delta antigen is necessary but not sufficient for hepatitis delta virus assembly. *Virology* 1994; **199**: 169-175 [PMID: 8116240 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1994.1109]

34 **Otto JC**, Casey PJ. The hepatitis delta virus large antigen is farnesylated both in vitro and in animal cells. *J Biol Chem* 1996; **271**: 4569-4572 [PMID: 8617711 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.271.9.4569]

35 **Alves C**, Freitas N, Cunha C. Characterization of the nuclear localization signal of the hepatitis delta virus antigen. *Virology* 2008; **370**: 12-21 [PMID: 17897693 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2007.07.034]

36 **Lee CZ**, Lin JH, Chao M, McKnight K, Lai MM. RNA-binding activity of hepatitis delta antigen involves two arginine-rich motifs and is required for hepatitis delta virus RNA replication. *J Virol* 1993; **67**: 2221-2227 [PMID: 8445729]

37 **Zuccola HJ**, Rozzelle JE, Lemon SM, Erickson BW, Hogle JM. Structural basis of the oligomerization of hepatitis delta antigen. *Structure* 1998; **6**: 821-830 [PMID: 9687364]

38 **Daigh LH**, Griffin BL, Soroush A, Mamedov MR, Casey JL. Arginine-rich motifs are not required for hepatitis delta virus RNA binding activity of the hepatitis delta antigen. *J Virol* 2013; **87**: 8665-8674 [PMID: 23740973 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00929-13]

39 **Xia YP**, Yeh CT, Ou JH, Lai MM. Characterization of nuclear targeting signal of hepatitis delta antigen: nuclear transport as a protein complex. *J Virol* 1992; **66**: 914-921 [PMID: 1731113]

40 **Cheng Q**, Jayan GC, Casey JL. Differential inhibition of RNA editing in hepatitis delta virus genotype III by the short and long forms of hepatitis delta antigen. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 7786-7795 [PMID: 12829818 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.14.7786-7795.2003]

41 **Huang ZS**, Wu HN. Identification and characterization of the RNA chaperone activity of hepatitis delta antigen peptides. *J Biol Chem* 1998; **273**: 26455-26461 [PMID: 9756880 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.273.41.26455]

42 **Wang CC**, Chang TC, Lin CW, Tsui HL, Chu PB, Chen BS,

Huang ZS, Wu HN. Nucleic acid binding properties of the nucleic acid chaperone domain of hepatitis delta antigen. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2003; **31**: 6481-6492 [PMID: 14602906 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkg857]

43 **Lazinski DW**, Taylor JM. Relating structure to function in the hepatitis delta virus antigen. *J Virol* 1993; **67**: 2672-2680 [PMID: 8474167]

44 **Wu TT**, Netter HJ, Lazinski DW, Taylor JM. Effects of nucleotide changes on the ability of hepatitis delta virus to transcribe, process, and accumulate unit-length, circular RNA. *J Virol* 1997; **71**: 5408-5414 [PMID: 9188612]

45 **Hong SY**, Chen PJ. Phosphorylation of serine 177 of the small hepatitis delta antigen regulates viral antigenomic RNA replication by interacting with the processive RNA polymerase II. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 1430-1438 [PMID: 19923176 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02083-09]

46 **Li YJ**, Stallcup MR, Lai MM. Hepatitis delta virus antigen is methylated at arginine residues, and methylation regulates subcellular localization and RNA replication. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 13325-13334 [PMID: 15542683 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.23.13325-13334.2004]

47 **Mu JJ**, Tsay YG, Juan LJ, Fu TF, Huang WH, Chen DS, Chen PJ. The small delta antigen of hepatitis delta virus is an acetylated protein and acetylation of lysine 72 may influence its cellular localization and viral RNA synthesis. *Virology* 2004; **319**: 60-70 [PMID: 14967488 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2003.10.024]

48 **Tseng CH**, Cheng TS, Shu CY, Jeng KS, Lai MM. Modification of small hepatitis delta virus antigen by SUMO protein. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 918-927 [PMID: 19889771 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01034-09]

49 **Chen CW**, Tsay YG, Wu HL, Lee CH, Chen DS, Chen PJ. The double-stranded RNA-activated kinase, PKR, can phosphorylate hepatitis D virus small delta antigen at functional serine and threonine residues. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 33058-33067 [PMID: 12060652 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M200613200]

50 **Yeh TS**, Lo SJ, Chen PJ, Lee YH. Casein kinase II and protein kinase C modulate hepatitis delta virus RNA replication but not empty viral particle assembly. *J Virol* 1996; **70**: 6190-6198 [PMID: 8709245]

51 **Chen YS**, Huang WH, Hong SY, Tsay YG, Chen PJ. ERK1/2-mediated phosphorylation of small hepatitis delta antigen at serine 177 enhances hepatitis delta virus antigenomic RNA replication. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 9345-9358 [PMID: 18632853 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00656-08]

52 **Huang WH**, Chen CW, Wu HL, Chen PJ. Post-translational modification of delta antigen of hepatitis D virus. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2006; **307**: 91-112 [PMID: 16903222]

53 **Huang WH**, Mai RT, Lee YH. Transcription factor YY1 and its associated acetyltransferases CBP and p300 interact with hepatitis delta antigens and modulate hepatitis delta virus RNA replication. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 7313-7324 [PMID: 18480431 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02581-07]

54 **Wang JG**, Lemon SM. Hepatitis delta virus antigen forms dimers and multimeric complexes in vivo. *J Virol* 1993; **67**: 446-454 [PMID: 7677957]

55 **Cornillez-Ty CT**, Lazinski DW. Determination of the multimerization state of the hepatitis delta virus antigens in vivo. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 10314-10326 [PMID: 12970416 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.19.10314-10326.2003]

56 **Lin BC**, Defenbaugh DA, Casey JL. Multimerization of hepatitis delta antigen is a critical determinant of RNA binding specificity. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 1406-1413 [PMID: 19923178 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01723-09]

57 **Kuo MY**, Goldberg J, Coates L, Mason W, Gerin J, Taylor J. Molecular cloning of hepatitis delta virus RNA from an infected woodchuck liver: sequence, structure, and applications. *J Virol* 1988; **62**: 1855-1861 [PMID: 3367426]

58 **Alves C**, Cheng H, Roder H, Taylor J. Intrinsic disorder and oligomerization of the hepatitis delta virus antigen. *Virology* 2010; **407**: 333-340 [PMID: 20855099 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2010.08.019]

59 **Cao D**, Haussecker D, Huang Y, Kay MA. Combined proteomic-RNAi screen for host factors involved in human hepatitis delta virus replication. *RNA* 2009; **15**: 1971-1979 [PMID: 19776158 DOI: 10.1261/rna.1782209]

60 **Gowans EJ**, Baroudy BM, Negro F, Ponzetto A, Purcell RH, Gerin JL. Evidence for replication of hepatitis delta virus RNA in hepatocyte nuclei after in vivo infection. *Virology* 1988; **167**: 274-278 [PMID: 3188398]

61 **Casaca A**, Fardilha M, da Cruz e Silva E, Cunha C. The heterogeneous ribonuclear protein C interacts with the hepatitis delta virus small antigen. *Virol J* 2011; **8**: 358 [PMID: 21774814 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-8-358]

62 **Cunha C**, Monjardino J, Cheng D, Krause S, Carmo-Fonseca M. Localization of hepatitis delta virus RNA in the nucleus of human cells. *RNA* 1998; **4**: 680-693 [PMID: 9622127]

63 **Han Z**, Alves C, Gudima S, Taylor J. Intracellular localization of hepatitis delta virus proteins in the presence and absence of viral RNA accumulation. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 6457-6463 [PMID: 19369324 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00008-09]

64 **Sureau C**, Jacob JR, Eichberg JW, Lanford RE. Tissue culture system for infection with human hepatitis delta virus. *J Virol* 1991; **65**: 3443-3450 [PMID: 2041075]

65 **Sureau C**. The use of hepatocytes to investigate HDV infection: the HDV/HepaRG model. *Methods Mol Biol* 2010; **640**: 463-473 [PMID: 20645068 DOI: 10.1007/978-1-60761-688-7_25]

66 **Chang J**, Gudima SO, Tarn C, Nie X, Taylor JM. Development of a novel system to study hepatitis delta virus genome replication. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 8182-8188 [PMID: 15956563 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.13.8182-8188.2005]

67 **Yan H**, Zhong G, Xu G, He W, Jing Z, Gao Z, Huang Y, Qi Y, Peng B, Wang H, Fu L, Song M, Chen P, Gao W, Ren B, Sun Y, Cai T, Feng X, Sui J, Li W. Sodium taurocholate cotransporting polypeptide is a functional receptor for human hepatitis B and D virus. *Elife* 2012; **1**: e00049 [PMID: 23150796 DOI: 10.7554/eLife.00049]

68 **Ni Y**, Lempp FA, Mehrle S, Nkongolo S, Kaufman C, Fälth M, Stindt J, Königer C, Nassal M, Kubitz R, Sültmann H, Urban S. Hepatitis B and D viruses exploit sodium taurocholate co-transporting polypeptide for species-specific entry into hepatocytes. *Gastroenterology* 2014; **146**: 1070-1083 [PMID: 24361467 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.12.024]

69 **Li H**, Zhuang Q, Wang Y, Zhang T, Zhao J, Zhang Y, Zhang J, Lin Y, Yuan Q, Xia N, Han J. HBV life cycle is restricted in mouse hepatocytes expressing human NTCP. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2014; **11**: 175-183 [PMID: 24509445 DOI: 10.1038/cmi.2013.66]

70 **Chou HC**, Hsieh TY, Sheu GT, Lai MM. Hepatitis delta antigen mediates the nuclear import of hepatitis delta virus RNA. *J Virol* 1998; **72**: 3684-3690 [PMID: 9557649]

71 **Modahl LE**, Lai MM. Transcription of hepatitis delta antigen mRNA continues throughout hepatitis delta virus (HDV) replication: a new model of HDV RNA transcription and replication. *J Virol* 1998; **72**: 5449-5456 [PMID: 9621000]

72 **Wadkins TS**, Been MD. Core-associated non-duplex sequences distinguishing the genomic and antigenomic self-cleaving RNAs of hepatitis delta virus. *Nucleic Acids Res* 1997; **25**: 4085-4092 [PMID: 9321662 DOI: 10.1093/nar/25.20.4085]

73 **Wang KS**, Choo QL, Weiner AJ, Ou JH, Najarian RC, Thayer RM, Mullenbach GT, Denniston KJ, Gerin JL, Houghton M. Structure, sequence and expression of the hepatitis delta (delta) viral genome. *Nature* 1986; **323**: 508-514 [PMID: 3762705 DOI: 10.1038/323508a0]

74 **Flores R**, Grubb D, Elleuch A, Nohales MÁ, Delgado S, Gago S. Rolling-circle replication of viroids, viroid-like satellite RNAs and hepatitis delta virus: variations on a theme. *RNA Biol* 2011; **8**: 200-206 [PMID: 21358283 DOI: 10.4161/rna.8.2.14238]

75 **Macnaughton TB**, Shi ST, Modahl LE, Lai MM. Rolling circle replication of hepatitis delta virus RNA is carried out by two different cellular RNA polymerases. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 3920-3927 [PMID: 11907231 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.8.3920-3927.2002]

76 **Li YJ**, Macnaughton T, Gao L, Lai MM. RNA-templated replication of hepatitis delta virus: genomic and antigenomic RNAs associate with different nuclear bodies. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 6478-6486 [PMID: 16775335 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02650-05]

77 **Chang J**, Nie X, Gudima S, Taylor J. Action of inhibitors on accumulation of processed hepatitis delta virus RNAs. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 3205-3214 [PMID: 16537588 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.80.7.3205-3214.2006]

78 **Gudima S**, Dingle K, Wu TT, Moraleda G, Taylor J. Characterization of the 5' ends for polyadenylated RNAs synthesized during the replication of hepatitis delta virus. *J Virol* 1999; **73**: 6533-6539 [PMID: 10400749]

79 **Gudima S**, Wu SY, Chiang CM, Moraleda G, Taylor J. Origin of hepatitis delta virus mRNA. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 7204-7210 [PMID: 10906174 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.74.16.7204-7210.2000]

80 **Jenna S**, Sureau C. Effect of mutations in the small envelope protein of hepatitis B virus on assembly and secretion of hepatitis delta virus. *Virology* 1998; **251**: 176-186 [PMID: 9813213 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1998.9391]

81 **Tavanez JP**, Cunha C, Silva MC, David E, Monjardino J, Carmo-Fonseca M. Hepatitis delta virus ribonucleoproteins shuttle between the nucleus and the cytoplasm. *RNA* 2002; **8**: 637-646 [PMID: 12022230]

82 **Chang FL**, Chen PJ, Tu SJ, Wang CJ, Chen DS. The large form of hepatitis delta antigen is crucial for assembly of hepatitis delta virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1991; **88**: 8490-8494 [PMID: 1924308]

83 **Ryu WS**, Bayer M, Taylor J. Assembly of hepatitis delta virus particles. *J Virol* 1992; **66**: 2310-2315 [PMID: 1548764]

84 **Lee CH**, Chang SC, Wu CH, Chang MF. A novel chromosome region maintenance 1-independent nuclear export signal of the large form of hepatitis delta antigen that is required for the viral assembly. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 8142-8148 [PMID: 11076934 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M004477200]

85 **Freitas N**, Cunha C. Searching for nuclear export elements in hepatitis D virus RNA. *World J Virol* 2013; **2**: 123-135 [PMID: 24255883 DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v2.i3.123]

86 **Farci P**, Niro GA. Clinical features of hepatitis D. *Semin Liver Dis* 2012; **32**: 228-236 [PMID: 22932971 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1323628]

87 **Lee WM**. Acute liver failure. *N Engl J Med* 1993; **329**: 1862-1872 [PMID: 8305063 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199312163292508]

88 **Caredda F**, Rossi E, d'Arminio Monforte A, Zampini L, Re T, Meroni B, Moroni M. Hepatitis B virus-associated coinfection and superinfection with delta agent: indistinguishable disease with different outcome. *J Infect Dis* 1985; **151**: 925-928 [PMID: 3989325 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/151.5.925]

89 **Fattovich G**, Boscaro S, Noventa F, Pornaro E, Stenico D, Alberti A, Ruol A, Realdi G. Influence of hepatitis delta virus infection on progression to cirrhosis in chronic hepatitis type B. *J Infect Dis* 1987; **155**: 931-935 [PMID: 3559292 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/155.5.931]

90 **Smedile A**, Farci P, Verme G, Caredda F, Cargnel A, Caporaso N, Dentico P, Trepo C, Opolon P, Gimson A, Vergani D, Williams R, Rizzetto M. Influence of delta infection on severity of hepatitis B. *Lancet* 1982; **2**: 945-947 [PMID: 6127458 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(82)90156-8]

91 **Buti M**, Homs M, Rodriguez-Frias F, Funalleras G, Jardí R, Sauleda S, Tabernero D, Schaper M, Esteban R. Clinical outcome of acute and chronic hepatitis delta over time: a long-term follow-up study. *J Viral Hepat* 2011; **18**: 434-442 [PMID: 20546496 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2010.01324.x]

92 **Purcell RH**, Rizzetto M, Gerin JL. Hepatitis delta virus infection of the liver. *Semin Liver Dis* 1984; **4**: 340-346 [PMID: 6395342 DOI: 10.1055/s-2008-1040663]

93 **DeCock KM**, Govindarajan S, Redeker AG. Serological response to hepatitis delta virus in hepatitis D. *Lancet* 1987; **1**: 1438 [PMID: 2884532]

94 **Fiedler M**, Roggendorf M. Immunology of HDV infection. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2006; **307**: 187-209 [PMID: 16903227]

95 **Huang YH**, Tao MH, Hu CP, Syu WJ, Wu JC. Identification of novel HLA-A*0201-restricted CD8+ T-cell epitopes on hepatitis delta virus. *J Gen Virol* 2004; **85**: 3089-3098 [PMID: 15448372]

96 **Colombari R**, Dhillon AP, Piazzola E, Tomezzoli AA, Angelini GP, Capra F, Tomba A, Scheuer PJ. Chronic hepatitis in multiple virus infection: histopathological evaluation. *Histopathology* 1993; **22**: 319-325 [PMID: 8514275]

97 **Mathurin P**, Thibault V, Kadidja K, Ganne-Carrié N, Moussalli J, El Younsi M, Di Martino V, Lunel F, Charlotte F, Vidaud M, Opolon P, Poynard T. Replication status and histological features of patients with triple (B, C, D) and dual (B, C) hepatic infections. *J Viral Hepat* 2000; **7**: 15-22 [PMID: 10718938 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2893.2000.00195.x]

98 **Mota S**, Mendes M, Penque D, Coelho AV, Cunha C. Changes in the proteome of Huh7 cells induced by transient expression of hepatitis D virus RNA and antigens. *J Proteomics* 2008; **71**: 71-79 [PMID: 18541475 DOI: 10.1016/j.jprot.2007.12.002]

99 **Mota S**, Mendes M, Freitas N, Penque D, Coelho AV, Cunha C. Proteome analysis of a human liver carcinoma cell line stably expressing hepatitis delta virus ribonucleoproteins. *J Proteomics* 2009; **72**: 616-627 [PMID: 19136081 DOI: 10.1016/j.jprot.2008.12.003]

100 **Mendes M**, Pérez-Hernandez D, Vázquez J, Coelho AV, Cunha C. Proteomic changes in HEK-293 cells induced by hepatitis delta virus replication. *J Proteomics* 2013; **89**: 24-38 [PMID: 23770296 DOI: 10.1016/j.jprot.2013.06.002]

101 **Goyal A**, Murray JM. Effect of interferon-alpha therapy on hepatitis D virus. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 2117-2118 [PMID: 25363368 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27595]

102 **Heller T**, Rotman Y, Koh C, Clark S, Haynes-Williams V, Chang R, McBurney R, Schmid P, Albrecht J, Kleiner DE, Ghany MG, Liang TJ, Hoofnagle JH. Long-term therapy of chronic delta hepatitis with peginterferon alfa. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **40**: 93-104 [PMID: 24815494 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12788]

103 **Triantos C**, Kalafateli M, Nikolopoulou V, Burroughs A. Meta-analysis: antiviral treatment for hepatitis D. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **35**: 663-673 [PMID: 22273482 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2012.04993.x]

104 **Gunsar F**, Akarca US, Ersoz G, Kobak AC, Karasu Z, Yuce G, Ilter T, Batur Y. Two-year interferon therapy with or without ribavirin in chronic delta hepatitis. *Antivir Ther* 2005; **10**: 721-726 [PMID: 16218171]

105 **Yurdaydin C**, Bozkaya H, Onder FO, Sentürk H, Karaaslan H, Akdoğan M, Cetinkaya H, Erden E, Erkan-Esin O, Yalçin K, Bozdayi AM, Schinazi RF, Gerin JL, Uzunalimoğlu O, Ozden A. Treatment of chronic delta hepatitis with lamivudine vs lamivudine + interferon vs interferon. *J Viral Hepat* 2008; **15**: 314-321 [PMID: 18307594 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2007.00936.x]

106 **Wedemeyer H**, Yurdaydin C, Dalekos GN, Erhardt A, Çakaloğlu Y, Değertekin H, Gürel S, Zeuzem S, Zachou K, Bozkaya H, Koch A, Bock T, Dienes HP, Manns MP. Peginterferon plus adefovir versus either drug alone for hepatitis delta. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 322-331 [PMID: 21268724 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0912696]

107 **Nattermann J**, Nitschmann S. [Therapy of hepatitis delta. The Hep-Net International Delta Hepatitis Intervention Trial]. *Internist* (Berl) 2011; **52**: 1365-1366 [PMID: 22002764 DOI: 10.1007/s00108-011-2943-z]

108 **Roche B**, Samuel D. Liver transplantation in delta virus infection. *Semin Liver Dis* 2012; **32**: 245-255 [PMID: 22932973 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1323630]

109 **Bordier BB**, Ohkanda J, Liu P, Lee SY, Salazar FH, Marion PL, Ohashi K, Meuse L, Kay MA, Casey JL, Sebti SM, Hamilton AD, Glenn JS. In vivo antiviral efficacy of prenylation inhibitors against hepatitis delta virus. *J Clin Invest* 2003; **112**: 407-414 [PMID: 12897208 DOI: 10.1172/JCI200317704]

110 **Koh C**, Yurdaydin C, Cooper S, Cory D, Dahari H, Haynes-Williams V, Winters MA, Bys M, Choong IC, R Idilman R, Keskin O, Canini L, Pinto P, Wolff EF, Bishop R, Kleiner DE, Hoofnagle JH, JGlenn J, Heller T. Prenylation inhibition with lonafarnib decreases hepatitis D levels in humans. *Hepatology* 2014; **60**: 1092A

111 **Volz T**, Giersch K, Allweiss L, Bhadra OD, Petersen J, Lohse AW, Lütgehetmann M, Urban S, Dandri M. Myrcludex-B inhibits establishment of HDV super-infection in HBV infected mice and reduces HDV viremia in stably HBV/HDV co-infected mice. *J*

Hepatol 2015; **62**, S514
112 **Nkongolo S**, Ni Y, Lempp FA, Kaufman C, Lindner T, Esser-Nobis K, Lohmann V, Mier W, Mehrle S, Urban S. Cyclosporin A inhibits hepatitis B and hepatitis D virus entry by cyclophilin-independent interference with the NTCP receptor. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: 723-731 [PMID: 24295872 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.11.022]
113 **Freitas N**, Salisse J, Cunha C, Toshkov I, Menne S, Gudima SO. Hepatitis delta virus infects the cells of hepadnavirus-induced hepatocellular carcinoma in woodchucks. *Hepatology* 2012; **56**: 76-85 [PMID: 22334419 DOI: 10.1002/hep.25663]
114 **Freitas N**, Abe K, Cunha C, Menne S, Gudima SO. Support of the infectivity of hepatitis delta virus particles by the envelope proteins of different genotypes of hepatitis B virus. *J Virol* 2014; **88**: 6255-6267 [PMID: 24648462 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00346-14]
115 **Freitas N**, Cunha C, Menne S, Gudima SO. Envelope proteins derived from naturally integrated hepatitis B virus DNA support assembly and release of infectious hepatitis delta virus particles. *J Virol* 2014; **88**: 5742-5754 [PMID: 24623409 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00430-14]
116 **Flores R**, Ruiz-Ruiz S, Serra P. Viroids and hepatitis delta virus. *Semin Liver Dis* 2012; **32**: 201-210 [PMID: 22932968 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1323624]
117 **Taylor J**, Pelchat M. Origin of hepatitis delta virus. *Future Microbiol* 2010; **5**: 393-402 [PMID: 20210550 DOI: 10.2217/fmb.10.15]

P- Reviewer: Marzuillo P, Mishra PK, Russell RS **S- Editor**: Qiu S
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i4.323

World J Virol 2015 November 12; 4(4): 323-342
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Update on hepatitis B and C virus diagnosis

Livia Melo Villar, Helena Medina Cruz, Jakeline Ribeiro Barbosa, Cristianne Sousa Bezerra, Moyra Machado Portilho, Letícia de Paula Scalioni

Livia Melo Villar, Helena Medina Cruz, Jakeline Ribeiro Barbosa, Cristianne Sousa Bezerra, Moyra Machado Portilho, Letícia de Paula Scalioni, Viral Hepatitis Laboratory, Oswaldo Cruz Institute, Oswaldo Cruz Foundation, Rio de Janeiro 21041-210, Brazil

Author contributions: Villar LM designed the outline and coordinated the writing of the paper; Cruz HM, Barbosa JR, Bezerra CS, Portilho MM and de Paula Scalioni L performed data acquisition and writing; Cruz HM, Barbosa JR, Portilho MM and de Paula Scalioni L prepared the tables.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There is no conflict of interest associated with any of the senior author or other coauthors contributed their efforts in this manuscript.

Correspondence to: Livia Melo Villar, PhD, Technologist, Viral Hepatitis Laboratory, Oswaldo Cruz Institute, Oswaldo Cruz Foundation, Av. Brasil, 4365, Rio de Janeiro 21041-210, Brazil. lvillar@ioc.fiocruz.br
Telephone: +55-21-25621918
Fax: +55-21-22706397

Received: June 3, 2015
Peer-review started: June 4, 2015
First decision: August 8, 2015
Revised: September 25, 2015
Accepted: October 23, 2015
Article in press: October 27, 2015
Published online: November 12, 2015

Abstract

Viral hepatitis B and C virus (HBV and HCV) are responsible for the most of chronic liver disease worldwide and are transmitted by parenteral route, sexual and vertical transmission. One important measure to reduce the burden of these infections is the diagnosis of acute and chronic cases of HBV and HCV. In order to provide an effective diagnosis and monitoring of antiviral treatment, it is important to choose sensitive, rapid, inexpensive, and robust analytical methods. Primary diagnosis of HBV and HCV infection is made by using serological tests for detecting antigens and antibodies against these viruses. In order to confirm primary diagnosis, to quantify viral load, to determine genotypes and resistance mutants for antiviral treatment, qualitative and quantitative molecular tests are used. In this manuscript, we review the current serological and molecular methods for the diagnosis of hepatitis B and C.

Key words: Diagnostic methods; Genotypes; Hepatitis B virus; Molecular diagnostic techniques; Serological tests; Hepatitis C virus

Core tip: Reliable methods for diagnosing hepatitis B virus (HBV) and hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection are essential to reduce the burden of these infections. Serological and molecular assays are used to identify acute and chronic cases of infection. In this article, the current knowledge about HBV and HCV diagnosis is updated and emphased the characteristics of each techniques to be useful to most laboratory personnel.

Villar LM, Cruz HM, Barbosa JR, Bezerra CS, Portilho MM, Scalioni LP. Update on hepatitis B and C virus diagnosis. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(4): 323-342 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i4/323.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i4.323

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection is caused by a virus that

shows a diameter of 42 nm and comprises an icosahedral capsid surrounded by a lipid envelope containing hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)[1]. Viral capsid is formed by core protein and carries viral genome and polymerase[2]. HBV genome is composed by a circle DNA partially double stranded and has four open reading frames regions overlaped (ORFs): PreC/C that encodes for hepatitis B e Antigen (HBeAg) and core protein (HBcAg); P for polymerase (reverse transcriptase), S for surface proteins [three structures of HBsAg, small (S), middle (M) and large (L)], and X for a transcriptional transactivator protein[3,4]. Despite HBV has a DNA genome, it shows high mutation rates, similar to those observed in RNA viruses and retroviruses[5] what could be due to viral polymerase mistakes associated with the additional step of reverse transcription, necessary for genetic material replication[6]. HBV has been classified in 10 genotypes (A to J) with between approximately 4 and 8% intergroup nucleotide divergence across the complete genome and genotypes A-D, F, H, and I are classified further into subgenotypes[4,7].

In 1989, hepatitis C virus (HCV) was described after extensive research conducted to find the cause of post-transfusion hepatitis[8]. In 1991, Choo *et al*[9] were able to identify complete HCV genomic sequence and thereafter, it was possible to conceive hybridization probes and primers to amplify viral genome by polymerase chain reaction (PCR)[10]. HCV particle is constituted by a spherical envelope which involves an icosahedral capsid. It possess a RNA genome with 9.5 kb and an ORF responsible for encoding viral polyprotein, constituted by structural (core, glycoproteins E1 and E2 and protein P7) and nonstructural (NS2, NS3, NS4a, NS4b, NS5a, NS5b-RNA polymerase) proteins. HCV presents high genome variability due to low proofreading of viral RNA polymerase. This variability allows virus classification into 7 genotypes (1 to 7), based on their genomic features[11].

Worldwide HBV and HCV infection are the principal etiological agents of chronic liver disease[12-14]. Both viruses are transmitted by parenteral route, sexual and vertical transmission is more common for HBV infection compared to HCV[15,16]. Approximately 240 million people are HBV chronic patients while 150 million individuals present HCV infection in the world[13,14].

HBV endemicity is classified as high, intermediate or low according HBsAg prevalence[12,17]. South East Asia, sub-Saharan Africa, China, Indonesia and Nigeria are considered high endemicity regions since HBV chronic infection can be present in more than 8% of the population[17]. Developed countries in Western Europe and North America are classified as low endemicity areas since chronic infection rates range from 0.5% to 2.0% of population. South America and Central countries, Eastern and Southern Europe and South West Asia are considered intermediate areas since HBV prevalence rates between 2% and 7% of population[12,17].

HCV global prevalence is 1.6% corresponding to 115 millions of infected individuals and viremia prevalence is 1.1% corresponding to 80 million of cases[18]. Although HCV infection presents global distribution, different prevalences are observed according geographic area[18,19]. High anti-HCV prevalence is observed in Central Asia (5.4%), Eastern Europe (3.3%), the Midwest of North Africa region (3.1%) and Central and Western Sub-Saharan Africa (4.2% and 5.3%, respectively). Intermediate prevalence rates are found in southern sub-Saharan Africa (1.3%), Central Europe (1.3%), Australia (1.4%), Latin America (1%-1.25%). Low prevalence are observed in Oceania (0.1%), Caribbean (0.8%) and Western Europe (0.9%)[18]. Highest rates of chronic infection can be found in Egypt (22%), Pakistan (4.8%) and China (3.2%) where the main infection mode is the reuse of contaminated needles[13,14,20].

One important measure to diminish the burden of HBV and HCV infection is the diagnosis of acute and chronic cases. In this article, we describe the current serological and molecular methods for HBV and HCV diagnosis.

SEROLOGICAL ASSAYS FOR HBV DIAGNOSIS

Takahashi *et al*[1] described the Australia antigen in 1965 and after this was named HBsAg, while the Dane particle (complete hepatitis B virion) was subsequently identified in 1970. After these discoveries, the identification of HBV antigens and antibodies allowed: (1) clarify the natural history of the disease; (2) evaluate the clinical phases of infection; (3) monitor antiviral treatment; (4) identify infected individuals; and (5) monitor the efficacy of immunization[21-23].

HBsAg is the first serological marker to appear indicating active infection. Chronic infection is characterized by the persistence of this marker for more than 6 mo[24]. Recently, HBsAg quantification has become important to monitor polyethylene glycol interferon treatment[25] since this assay could be used along to HBV DNA test to define the clinical phase of HBV infection and to evaluate the therapy[26]. To date, two chemiluminescent microparticle immunoassay (CMIA) (Architect HBsAg QT and Elecsys HBsAg Ⅱ, Elecsys) could be used for HBsAg quantification showing good agreement[27].

Anti-HBs is a neutralizing antibody, and its presence indicates immunity to HBV infection[28,29]. The simultaneous presence of anti-HBs and HBsAg has been documented in HBsAg positive patients[30,31], probably due to the incapacibility of antibodies to neutralize the circulating virions. In this situation, these people are classified as carriers of HBV infection.

HBeAg marker indicates viral replication and risk of transmission of infection, and seroconversion of HBeAg to anti-HBe is associated with remission of liver disease[32]. However, some anti-HBe reactive subjects continue to have active viral replication and hepatic disease caused by mutations in the pre-core and core

Table 1 Clinical significance of hepatitis B virus serological markers

Marker	Clinical significance
HBsAg	First marker to appear in course of infection Appears one to 3 wk before the onset of symptoms The permanence of this marker for more than 24 wk indicates chronicity
Anti-HBc IgM	Marker of recent infection marker Appears with the onset of symptoms and persists up to 32 wk after infection
Anti-HBc IgG	This marker did not indicate immunity and it is not elicited by vaccination This presence indicates prior contact with the virus
HBeAg	It appears before the onset of symptoms and indicates viral replication independent of disease phase (acute or chronic) This presence indicates high infectivity
Anti-HBe	It appears after the disappearance of HBeAg Their presence suggests reduction or absence of viral replication, except when infection is due to HBV strains with pre-core mutant (not producing the protein "e")
Anti-HBs	It appears one to 3 mo after HBV vaccination or after recovery of HBV acute infection and indicates immunity to HBV infection

HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HBeAg: Hepatitis Be Antigen; HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; Anti-HBe: Antibodies against HBeAg; Anti-HBs: Antibodies against HBsAg.

region in the HBV genome, which reduces the production of HBeAg[24].

The HBcAg is intracellular and for this reason is not detected in the serum of infected individuals. Antibodies against core protein (anti-HBc) appear shortly after HBsAg in acute infection and persist after acute phase indicating previous exposure. The IgM anti-HBc antibody is the first detected during acute infection, approximately 1 mo after the onset of HBsAg and disappears after 6 mo of infection. Anti-HBc IgG remains detectable in patients cured of hepatitis B and among chronic cases of HBV infection[28,33].

Isolated Anti-HBc can be found in three situations: (1) during the window period of acute phase when the anti-HBc is predominantly IgM; (2) years after acute infection had finished and anti-HBs has diminished to undetectable levels; and (3) when the titer of HBsAg has decreased thereunder the detection level after many years of chronic HBV infection. In order to evaluate the presence of isolated anti-HBc, serum samples should be retested for anti-HBc, HBsAg, anti-HBe, and anti-HBs. If the sample still had an isolated anti-HBc positive result, this sample should be tested for IgM anti-HBc in order to eliminate the possibility of recent HBV infection. HBV DNA testing should be done in chronic liver disease patients to eliminate low-level chronic HBV infection[34,35]. The clinical significance of serum markers detected during the course of infection with HBV is disclosed in Table 1.

Specific serologic assays to detect HBV markers were developed around the 70s[36]. Various serological techniques could be employed, such as radioimmunoassay (RIA), enzyme immunoassay (EIA), Electrochemiluminescence immunoassay (ECLIA) and chemiluminescence immunoassay (CLIA), micro-particle enzyme immunoassay (MEIA), CMIA[36,37].

RIA was the first technique used for HBV diagnosis where one of reactants is conjugated to radioisotopes[38,39]. This method present good sensitivity but high cost and risk to operator. In 1971, Engvall *et al*[40] described a technique named EIA that is similar to RIA where enzymes are attached to one of the reactants in an immunoassay to allow detection through the development of color after the addition of a suitable substrate/chromogen. The colored product is monitored visually or by spectrophotometer where the amount of the substance measured is related to color intensity. The advantages of this technique include highly reproducible results, automation, and low cost[41]. An evaluation of 70 HBsAg kits showed that 17 HBsAg EIA kits present high analytical sensitivity 4 IU/mL, but reduced sensitivity for HBsAg was observed in samples containing genotypes/subtypes *D/ayw3*, *E/ayw4*, *F/adw4* and *S* gene mutants[42].

MEIA is a method that uses very small microparticles in liquid suspension as solid-phase support. Particles are coated with related molecules specific for the measured material. MEIA is executed in less time than other immunological methods due to the presence of active surface area of microparticles what rises the kinetics study and decreases the incubation time. ECLIA uses molecules as conjugated, generate chemiluminescence like, luminol derivatives, nifropenil oxalate derivates or rutenium tri-bipridyl with tripropylamine. The electrochemiluminescence occurs when is applied an electric current in an electrode platinum, creating an electric field that making all materials respond. This reaction hydrolyzes the chemiluminescent substrate, producing an unstable product which after stabilization generates emission of light photons (amplified) what is measured by a photomultiplier[43].

Kim *et al*[44] compared a radioimmunoassay, an ECLIA (Modular E170 analyzer, Roche Diagnostics, Mannheim, Germany) and CMIA (Architect i2000 analyzer, Abbott Diagnostics, Abbott Park, IL, United States) for HBV markers detection showing concordance rates among the three analyzers of 100%, 91.6%, 94.6%, and 82.2% for HBsAg, anti-HBs, HBeAg, and anti-HBe, respectively. High difference results among three immunoassays analyzers (Abbott AxSYM, Roche Modular Analytics E170, and Abbott Architect i2000) for HBV markers detection was observed in samples with low level of serum HBV markers[45]. Xu *et al*[46] also showed that most weak positive results, determined by ECLIA, were negative determined by ELISA.

Huzly *et al*[47] compared the performance of six different automated immunoassays (one MEIA and five chemiluminescence assays) and three EIAs for anti-HBs quantification. The assay specificity ranged between 96.8% and 100% and sensitivity ranged between 93.5% and 100%. There was no difference between anti-HBc-

positive and -negative individuals and, hemolysis or lipemia did not seem to influence the measurement. However, classical EIAs tend to detect lower anti-HBs levels than the automated systems.

EIA is the most widely technique used for detection of HBV serological markers. Although EIAs are sensitive and specific, they are time consuming, need for sophisticated equipment and trained technicians, continuous supply of electricity, and long turnaround time hampering the execution of these assays in field settings and during the household surveys[48]. Due to this situation, rapid point-of-care tests (RPOCTs) were developed for HBV diagnosis. These assays use particle agglutination, immunochromatography, immunodot or immunofiltration. The device contains a solid support (cellulose or nylon membranes, latex microparticles or plastic cards) where viral antigens or antibodies are fixed and results can be read in up to 10 min[49]. Rapid assays offer advantages of simplicity, low need for instrumentation, minimum training to execute the assay and performance at room temperature.

Since 1990s, several RPOCTs for HBsAg detection have been developed. The sensitivity of these assays varies from 43.5% to 100% while specificity varies from 95.8% to 100%[50-54]. A recent systematic review showed that the performance of rapid tests for HBsAg detection was higher in developed countries compared to developing countries what could be due to minimal heterogeneity observed in first than in later. RPOCTs presented analytical sensitivity of 4 IU/mL, but the performance of these assays is poor in seroconversion panels and among individuals infected by several HBV mutants. Thus these tests are not indicated in situations with low concentrations of HBsAg such as in healthy blood donors, general populations, patients recovering from acute HBV infection and those on antiviral therapy[49]. RPOCTs for detection of anti-HBc, anti-HBs, HBeAg, anti-HBe markers have demonstrated sensitivities of 85.5%, 64.2%, 80% and 82.8% and specificities higher than 95% for those assays[55,56].

Actually, the evolution of development of nanoscience and nanotechnology has increased the development of immunosensors for HBV diagnosis. Immunosensors are solid-state affinity ligand-based biosensing apparatus that combine immunochemical reactions to proper transducers. Generally, an immunosensor comprises of a sensing element and a transducer. The sensing element is composed by means of the immobilization of antigens or antibodies, and the binding event is transformed into a measurable signal by the transducer[57]. The goal of immunosensor is to produce a signal proportional to the concentration of analyte[58-60]. Wang and collaborators[61] developed a gold nanorod based localized surface plasmon resonance biosensor that quantify HBsAg until 0.01 IU/mL. This limit of detection is about 40 times lower than the limit of detection of the EIA method. Other immunosensors for HBsAg detection uses magnetic nanoparticle and three dimensional carbon nanotube-conducting polymer network detecting 0.001 to 0.015 ng/mL of HBsAg[62,63].

For HBV antigen or antibodies detection, it is necessary blood sample collection by venipuncture in order to obtain sera or plasma samples. However, venipuncture is difficult in some individuals like drug users, haemodialysis, obese and elder individuals. In addition, the transport of these samples from remote areas to laboratories could be difficult. This situation has led to development of methods for HBV diagnosis in alternative fluids, like saliva or dried blood spot (DBS) samples[64,65].

EIA for HBsAg detection among saliva samples present sensitivities of 74.29% to 95.24% and specificities of 89.88% to 100%[66-70]. Assays for anti-HBs, total anti-HBc in saliva samples showed low sensitivity (< 15%) while assay for detecting IgM anti-HBc assay demonstrated sensitivity and specificity of 100%[71].

Using DBS samples along to immunoassays, sensitivities varies from 78.6% to 98% for HBsAg detection, 90.5% to 97.1% for anti-HBc detection and 74.2% to 97.5% for anti-HBs detection. In all of these studies specificities varies from 88.6% to 100%[72-76]. HBV markers could be detected in DBS samples using EIA until 60 d of storage in room temperature[74]. HBV prevalence has been evaluated using DBS in specific groups at risk for infection, such as drug users, and endemic areas[77-79].

Serological diagnostic tests for HBV have improved in sensitivity, time, need for trained personnel and cost over time. In laboratories with low infrastructure or in field situations, rapid tests could be useful since they can be storage at room temperature, results are available in few minutes and they do not need trained technicians. While in laboratories presenting good infrastructure and with high-demand of results, automated ELISA ECLIAs, MEIAs, CLIAs and CMIAs can be used due to its high sensitivity although trained technicians, sophisticated equipment, and continuous supply of electricity are necessary. The main characteristics, advantages, disadvantages and specific applications of HBV serological assays are disclosed in Table 2.

MOLECULAR METHODS FOR HBV DIAGNOSIS

HBV DNA is detectable at the beginning of infection (1 mo after exposure to HBV) and increases to get a peak approximately 3 mo after the exposure to HBV reaching usually more than 10^8 copies/mL and then progressively decreases in chronic infection or disappears at the resolution of infection. In many chronic patients, when HBeAg seroconversion occurs, low levels of viral load persists (< 10^4 copies/mL)[80].

HBV DNA qualitative and quantitative methods are useful to: (1) diagnose HBV replication in chronic infections; (2) evaluate the prognosis of the disease and follow the risk of progression to cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma; (3) define the beginning of

Table 2 Advantages and disadvantages characteristics of hepatitis B virus serological assays

Technique	Advantages	Disadvantage	Commercial assays	Ref.
RIA	High sensitivity	High cost Risk to operator	IRMA kit (North Institute of Biological Technology, Beijing, China)	[38,39,44]
EIA	Automation High reproducible results Low cost	Time consuming, need sophisticated equipment and trained technicians, continuous supply of electricity, not suitable for field settings	ETI-AB-AUK-3 (DiaSorin) Enzygnost anti-HBs (Dade Behring) Monolisa anti-HBs (Bio-Rad Laboratories)	[41,42,47,48]
MEIA	High sensitivity Faster than other immunological methods	Sophisticated equipment, trained technicians, continuous supply of electricity	Abbott Axsym AUSAB assay	[47]
ECLIA	High sensitivity Results available in few minutes Automation	High cost, sophisticated equipment, trained technicians, continuous supply of electricity	Modular E170 analyzer, Roche Diagnostics	[43,44,46]
CLIA	High sensitivity and specificity Automation	High cost, sophisticated equipment, trained technicians, continuous supply of electricity	Advia Centaur anti-HBs Vitros anti-HBs on the Vitros ECI Immunodiagnostic system (Ortho Clinical Diagnostics) Roche Elecsys anti-HBs on the Modular System (Roche Diagnostics) Liaison anti-HBs on the Liaison system (DiaSorin) Abbott Architect anti-HBs assay on the Architect i2000 system (Abbott)	[47]
CMIA	High sensitivity and specificity Automation	High cost, sophisticated equipment, trained technicians, continuous supply of electricity	Architect i2000 analyzer (Abbott Diagnostics)	[44]
Rapid point-of-care tests	Simplicity, do not need sophisticated equipaments, minimum training to execute the assay, storage and performance at room temperature, results can be read in up to 10 min	Poor performance in seroconversion panels and among individuals infected by several HBV mutants	Determine™ HBsAg (Abbott Laboratories) Virucheck® HBsAg (Orchid Biomedical Systems) Cypress HBsAg (Cypress Diagnostics) Hexagon® HBsAg (Human) Cortez Rapidtest (Cortez Diagnostics) VIKIA HBsAg (Biomériuex) Quick Profile™ (Lumiquick) DRW-HBsAg v2.0 (Diagnostics for the Real WorldTM) AMRAD ICT Binax Advanced quality™ one step test (Intec Products)	[49-56]

HBV: Hepatitis B virus; RIA: Radioimmunoassay; EIA: Enzyme immunoassay; MEIA: Micro-particle enzyme immunoassay; ECLIA: Electro-chemiluminescence immunoassay; CLIA: Chemiluminescence immunoassay; CMIA: Chemiluminescent microparticle immunoassay; HBsAg: Epatitis B surface antigen; Anti-HBs: Antibodies against HBsAg.

antiviral treatment; and (4) monitor antiviral treatment and to identify resistance to nucleoside/nucleotide analogues drugs[81,82].

Molecular assays with high-sensitivity are clearly important for the diagnosis of chronic hepatitis B without HBeAg detection in serum (core promoter, precore stop mutation), and occult HBV, where viral loads can be quite low. The principle of methods to detect and quantify HBV DNA is the signal amplification such as branched DNA technology (bDNA) and hybrid capture or target amplification such as PCR[83-85].

In therapeutic monitoring of HBV, a more sensitive assay with a lower limit of detection of 10 IU/mL is recommended for early detection of viral reactivation. In addition, the assay employed should equally quantify all HBV genotypes[86]. A commercial PCR method to quantify HBV DNA is COBAS Amplicor HBV Monitor test (Roche Molecular Systems, Pleasanton, California, United States) that measure HBV DNA in serum samples, being considered reproducible, with a high degree of accuracy and precision in both intra-assay and inter-assay comparison[87]. This assay presented a limit of detection of 200 HBV DNA copies/mL and has the disadvantage of requiring dilution of samples with high viral load, which is not a practical solution for all laboratories[88].

Methods of signal amplification, like bDNA, allow the direct quantification of HBV DNA in human serum or plasma. In this method, sample DNA is caught by a set of capture nucleotide probes fixed on a microtitulation well. Then, another set of target probes hybridize with both the target DNA and capture probes, and this complex is hybridized with multiple copies of alkaline phosphatase. After incubation with a chemiluminescent substrate, the luminometer measures the results as relative light units and the amount of HBV DNA in each sample is determined by comparison to a standard curve. VERSANT HBV 3.0 Assay (Siemens Healthcare, United States) is a commercial method that uses bDNA technology and presented a detection limit of 2000 HBV DNA IU/mL[83,89] (Table 3).

Cobas Amplicor HBV Monitor assay (PCR technology) is more sensitive than Quantiplex HBV DNA; Bayer

Table 3 Performance characteristics of commercial methods for hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus detection and quantification

Assay (manufacture)	Method	Measurable range (IU/mL)	Limit of detection IU/mL (using WHO HBV standard)	Conversion factor (IU/mL to copies/mL)
HBV				
Cobas ampliPrep/Cobas TaqMan HBV test v2.0 (Roche Diagnostics, California, United States)	Semi-automated qPCR	20-1.7 × 10^7	20	5.82
Cobas TaqMan HBV test (for use with high pure system)	Semi-automated real time PCR	29-1.1 × 10^7	6	5.82
Abbott real time HBV (Abbott Diagnostic, Chicago, United States)	Automated real time PCR	10-1 × 10^9	10	3.41
Versant HBV 3.0 assay (Siemens Healthcare, United States)	Branched DNA	2000-1 × 10^8	2000	5.6
HCV qualitative				
Cobas Amplicor HCV v2.0 (Roche)	Semiautomated RT-PCR	50	50	-
Versant HCV RNA qualitative assay (TMA)	Transcription-mediated amplification	< 9.6	5-9.6	-
Quantitative				
Versant HCV RNA 3.0 (Siemens)	Branched DNA	7.7 × 10^6	615	5.2
Cobas Amplicor Monitor HCV v2.0 (Roche)	Semiautomated RT-PCR	5 × 10^5	600	2.7
Real time HCV (Abbott)	Real time PCR	1 × 10^7	10	3.8
Cobas AmpliPrep/Cobas TaqMan (Roche)	Automated real time PCR	6.9 × 10^7	43	3
High Pure/Cobas TaqMan (Roche)	Semiautomated real time PCR	3.9 × 10^8	25	3

WHO: World Health Organization; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; PCR: Polymerase chain reaction; RT-PCR: Reverse transcriptase-PCR; qPCR: Quantitative PCR.

Diagnostics (bDNA technology) to detect HBV DNA among HBeAg negative samples and useful for monitoring the viral load during treatment in chronic HBV infection[90]. On the other hand, Cobas Amplicor HBV Monitor presented poor agreement to Digene Hybrid Capture 2 (HC2; Digene Corporation, Gaithersburg, Md.)[88].

Currently, real time PCR has become the standard technique of choice to detect and quantify HBV DNA in clinical practice due to its capacity of detecting low viral loads (10-15 IU/mL) and having a broad dynamic range (upper range of quantification of 7-8 Log10 IU/mL) as shown in Table 2. Moreover, they do not carry over contamination and can be fully automate[91].

At this time, several real time PCR assays are commercially available, such as, Da-an real-time HBV DNA assay (Da-an Gene Co. Ltd, Sun Yat-Sen University, Guangdong, China), COBAS TaqMan HBV test (Roche Molecular Diagnostics, Pleasonton, CA, United States), Abbott RealTime HBV assay (Abbott Molecular, Des Plaines, IL, United States), Artus RealART HBV LC PCR kit (QIAGEN, Hamburg, Germany), AdvanSure HBV real-time PCR assay (LG Life Sciences, Ltd., Seoul, South Korea). Cobas Taqman HBV (Roche) can be used along to automated sample preparation, Cobas AmpliPrep system (CAP-CTM, Roche Molecular System, Pleasanton, CA)[92] and the Abbott HBV (Abbott Diagnostic, Chicago, IL) uses m2000rt amplification platform along to m2000sp device for sample preparation[93]. Characteristics of quantitative methods for HBV DNA are described on Table 3.

Kim *et al*[94] showed good correlations among Abbott RealTime HBV Quantification Kit, the COBAS TaqMan HBV Test, and the VERSANT bDNA 3.0 assay, AdvanSure HBV real-time PCR assay detecting HBV genotypes A-F and without cross reactivity with high HCV RNA levels or high protein concentrations. Qiu *et al*[95] demonstrated good correlation among Abbott and Da-an assay for HBV DNA quantification. Morris *et al*[93] observed good correlation among Cobas Taqman HBV Test and Abbott RealTime HBV for HBV DNA quantification, although Abbott assay presented wide dynamic range without additional dilution or repeating of HBV high titers. In house real time PCR molecular beacon based was builder up by Paraskevis *et al*[96] showing good correlation to COBAS TaqMan HBV test.

HBV DNA detection and quantification are made using serum samples, but alternative fluids, like saliva, DBS samples have been studied as potential fluids for HBV molecular diagnosis[64,75,97-100]. Kidd-Ljunggren *et al*[98] demonstrated that concentration of HBV DNA in saliva is 1000-fold lower than in serum, while Heiberg *et al*[99] could quantify HBV DNA using Cobas TaqMan HBV Test (Roche Diagnostics) in saliva samples. Mohamed *et al*[75] demonstrated sensitivity of 98% and specificity of 100% for the detection of HBV DNA using DBS and performed HBV genotyping and mutation detection among those samples with total concordance between the 10 paired DBS and plasma samples. Jardi *et al*[101] also revealed no decrease in HBV DNA levels or integrity among DBS storage for 7 d at room temperature and 21 d at -20 ℃.

Besides that, the detection of HBV DNA in plasma or serum is also important to determine the occult hepatitis B defined by detectable HBV DNA in peripheral blood or liver in the absence of HBsAg. Tests for occult

HBV detection are recommended in the following situations: (1) in cryptogenic liver disease, particularly when individual presented anti-HBc in serum; (2) prior to immunosuppression, due to the potential for hepatitis flares; and (3) in solid organ transplant donors whose only anti-HBc is detected in serum, due to the potential for transmission[83].

Evidences are increasingly suggesting that the HBV genotyping is important for designing appropriate antiviral treatment and determining HBV disease progression. The disease progress faster in individuals infected by HBV genotype A than genotype D, subjects infected with genotype C progressed to end stage liver disease earlier than those infected by genotype B and higher mortality rates are observed in individuals infected with genotype F than those infected with genotype A or D[102].

HBV genotyping can be determined using several methods: Reverse hybridization, restriction fragment-length polymorphism (RFLP), genotype-specific PCR assays, sequence analysis, microarray (DNAchip), real time PCR and fluorescence polarization assay[102,103]. Among them, PCR-RFLP is widely used to genotype HBV since it is inexpensive and simple. Nevertheless, this technique is poor accurate to identify some genotypes[104]. A commercial method to genotype HBV is the INNO-LIPA® HBV Genotyping (Fujirebio Europe, Tokyo, Japan) based on reverse hybridization that shows high sensitivity and a detection limit of 700 copies of HBV[105,106], but is relatively cost. INNO-LIPA can be completely automated if using the systems Auto-LiPA48 and AutoBlot 3000H and the LiRAS® for LiPA HBV to reading and interpretation of strips. INNO-LIPA® HBV Genotyping and direct sequencing presented the best results when genotyping methods of HBV were compared[107].

To identify amino acid substitutions associated to antiviral resistance to treatment, direct sequence analysis and reverse hybridization methods are used. nowadays, early detection of HBV substitutions conferring resistance to nucleoside/nucleotide analogues could be useful to modify therapy in order to avoid HBV reactivation and hepatitis flare[108]. For this purpose, commercial assays are available, such as the Trugene HBV Genotyping Kit (Siemens Medical Solutions Diagnostics), which is based on direct sequence analysis of a portion of the reverse transcriptase domain of the HBV polymerase gene[109] and can also determine HBV genotype satisfactory[110].

However, despite commercial methods can be used for mutational analysis in HBV DNA sequence, direct DNA sequencing is still the standard method cause yields accurate genotype assignments and also the method of choice for patients infected with recombinant genotypes and drug resistance mutations[110,111].

In the past years, the diversity of HBV quasispecies and minority drug resistance mutations were estimated through cloning of individual amplicons followed by Sanger sequencing. However, the "next generation" ultradeep-sequencing allows direct sequencing of the mixed population sample and relative quantification of individual mutations with extremely high coverage over a relatively short time frame[111-114]. The platforms of ultradeep sequencing include: 454 Sequencing (Roche Diagnostics), Illumina Sequencing (Illumina/Solexa) and Pyromark Sequencing (QIAGEN), SOLiD (Applied Biosystems/Life Technologies), Ion torrent (Life Technologies)[115]. All of them present the principle of sequencing by synthesis, that involves sequencing of a single strand of DNA through synthesis of the complementary strand, one base at a time, and the detection of the individual nucleotide incorporated at each step. Fluorescence or light is only emitted when the nucleotide solution complements the first unpaired base in the template DNA strand[116]. Because these signals are obtained by synthesizing new copies of DNA template, the results can be used for extremely reliable investigation of viral mutations[114].

For the past twenty years fluorescence based quantitative PCR (qPCR) chemistries have revolutionized nucleic acid diagnostics and become the gold standard for viral load quantification. These methods are high sensitivity and could be used to evaluate the prognosis and risk of progression, to define the beginning of antiviral treatment and to monitor antiviral treatment but the major disadvantages is the high cost for commercial assays. Methods to determine HBV genotypes and mutations, like nucleotide sequencing have been developed and recently the arouse of third generation sequencing methods promises to reduce the lengthy manual handling times associated with current ultradeep-sequencing approaches, decreasing the generation of raw data, but increasing both throughput and read length in every facet of medical research.

The main characteristics, advantages, disadvantages and specific applications of HBV molecular assays are disclosed in Table 4.

SEROLOGIC TESTS FOR HCV

The hepatitis C diagnosis is performed through the detection of antibodies anti-HCV in blood samples where a non-reactive test result indicates the absence of HCV infection. A positive result for anti-HCV detection or a suspected case of HCV exposure should be followed by HCV RNA test. Serological diagnosis for HCV infection are based on the detection of direct antibodies against viral antigens (non-structural and structural) in human serum or plasma. As the same as cited for HBV serological diagnosis and immunoassays (like EIA or ECLIA) are generally used for anti-HCV detection. EIA has the advantages of high sensitivity, fast processing, high reliability, ease of automation and relatively low cost[57,117]. This method has undergone some changes over time, seeking to improve their diagnostic capability and therefore increased sensitivity and specificity of the assay. Until now, three generations of EIA for detecting anti-HCV using recombinant proteins or synthetic peptides have been developed[57,117,118].

Table 4 Main characteristics of hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C molecular techniques

HBV and HCV molecular diagnosis	Application	Method	Advantages	Disadvantages	Ref.
HBV DNA qualitative methods	Diagnose infection HBV occult cases identification Screening on blood donors	PCR	Low cost; high sensitivity	It only determines the presence or absence of HBV DNA	[81,82,85]
HBV DNA quantitative methods	Evaluate the prognosis and risk of progression Define the beginning of antiviral treatment Monitor antiviral treatment	bDNA	Wide dynamic range	Low sensitivity to detect low HBV DNA levels	[81,82]
		Hybrid capture	More sensitive than bDNA; less labor-intensive	Low sensitivity to detect low HBV DNA levels; individual probes are required	[83]
		Real time PCR	Capacity of detecting low viral loads; broad dynamic range; do not carry over contamination; can be fully automated	High cost	[85,91]
HBV DNA genotyping methods	Determination of HBV genotype	RFLP	Easily done; low cost; simple, rapid and suitable for large number of samples	Low sensitivity for typing samples with low HBV DNA levels; poor accurate to determine some genotypes	[85,104]
		Genotype specific PCR assays	Automated systems; high sensitivity; easy to perform; suitable for detecting mixed genotype infections	High cost	[107]
		Sequence analysis	Identification of patients infected with recombinant genotypes	Technically demanded; time consuming	[107]
HBV DNA aminoacid substitution identification	Identify antiviral resistance to treatment	Direct DNA sequencing	Accurate	Technically demanded; time consuming; necessity of cloning for identification of mixed population	[107,110,111]
		Commercial methods	Sequencing of mixed population, relative quantification of individual mutations with extremely high coverage	Differences between the statistical and biological/ clinical relevance of HBV mutation maximal sequence read length and PCR amplification bias	[114]
HCV RNA qualitative methods	To confirm chronic hepatitis C in patients with positive HCV antibodies To identify virological response during, at the end or after antiviral therapy To screen blood donations for evidence of infection with HCV	RT-PCR	High sensitivity Equal sensitivity for all genotypes	It only determines the presence or absence of HCV RNA	[121,168]
		Transcription-mediated amplification	High sensitivity; amplifies viral RNA; more sensitivity for detection of genotype 1	It only determines the presence or absence of HCV RNA	[121,168]
HCV RNA quantitative methods	To guide treatment decisions; To evaluate the prognosis; To monitor the antiviral efficacy of treatment	bDNA	Wide range of detection of HCV independent of HCV genotype (615 IU/mL to 8 million IU/mL)	Low sensitivity to detect samples presenting low HCV RNA levels	[172]
		qRT-PCR	Capacity of detecting low viral loads; broad dynamic range; not carry over contamination; can be fully automated	High cost	[170-173]
HCV RNA genotyping methods	HCV genotyping is mandatory for double antiviral treatment (interferon and ribavirin), since patients infected with genotypes 1 or 4 are treated for longer times than patients infected by genotypes 2 and 3	RFLP	Easily done; low cost; simple, rapid and suitable for large number of samples	Low sensitivity for typing samples with low HCV RNA levels; Poor accurate to determine some genotypes	[186,187]
		Probes	Easily done; low cost; useful to detect HCV genotypes and subtypes based on region 5'UTR and core and has a low limit of detection	Identify only subtypes 1a and 1b; discrepant results among subtypes when compared to sequence analysis of NS5B region	[180-184]

		qPCR	Can be fully automated avoiding contamination; determines the viral genotype and subtypes 1a, 1b, 2a, 2b, 3, 4, 5 and 6	High cost	[186,187]
		Direct sequencing	Gold standard; identification of patients infected with recombinant genotypes	Technically demanded; time consuming	[120,182]
HCV RNA aminoacid substitution identification	Identify antiviral resistance to treatment	Direct Sequencing	Identification of antiviral resistance in majority population	Technically demanded; time consuming; necessity of cloning for identification of quasispecies	[188,189,193]
		Deep Sequencing	Identification on resistant variants predominate in the HCV population; powerful tool for obtaining more profound insight into the dynamics of variants in the HCV quasispecies	Need for in-depth knowledge to analyze the results	[112,113,195,196]

PCR: Polymerase chain reaction; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; RFLP: Restriction fragment-length polymorphism; RT-PCR: Reverse transcriptase-PCR; qPCR: Quantitative PCR; RFLP: Restriction fragment-length polymorphism; bDNA: Branched DNA technology.

The first generation HCV EIA, which is no longer used, was created using recombinant protein derived from the NS4 region (C100-3 the polypeptide), with a sensitivity of 70%-80% and a poor specificity. The C-100 antibodies are developed approximately 16 wk after HCV infection[57,119-122].

The second generation HCV EIA have included recombinant/synthetic antigens from non-structural NS3 and NS4 (c33c and C100-3) and core (c22-3) regions improving sensitivity to about 95% and diminishing the number of false-positive results. Anti-HCV can be detected nearly 10 wk after HCV infection[57,119,121,122].

Third generation HCV EIA was developed using recombinant antigens from the core region, NS3, NS4 and NS5 regions of the viral genome. These assays allowed anti-HCV detection nearly 4 to 6 wk after infection with specificity and sensitivity greater than 99%[57,121,123-125].

Up to now, there is no reliable and simple diagnostic marker currently available to detect early HCV infection. The avidity of an antibody may be an early and reliable marker of recent viral infection, since antibodies of low avidity are usually indicative of recent infection. Commercial immunoassays for anti-HCV antibody detection have been optimized to evaluate avidity in serum and DBS samples and "in-house" anti-HCV IgG avidity assay has been developed using seroconversion panels and serum samples from chronically infected individuals[126-129].

Serum samples are necessary to investigate the presence of anti-HCV using EIA, but some studies have been conducted using alternative fluids like saliva and DBS. Anti-HCV assays using saliva and DBS samples showed sensitivity and specificity higher than 90% and DBS samples can be stored for a period of 117 d, at room temperature. Then, these samples could be useful tool to increase the access of diagnosis in remote areas or individuals with poor venous access[130-136].

Anti-HCV detection is not useful to identify current or past infection, since this marker will be in serum for life after HCV exposure[125,137]. In this situation, HCV RNA detection is generally recommended, but the cost and availability of this assay difficult the access of this method. Assays for detection of HCV core antigen (HCV Ag) or simultaneous detection of HCV Ag and anti-HCV antibodies (HCV AgAb) were developed. HCV Ag levels seems to correlate well with HCV RNA levels indicating its potential use as an inexpensive technique for diagnosing HCV acute cases[138-141]. Brandão *et al*[133] optimized commercial methods for HCV Ag/Ab in DBS samples showing specificity of 99.71% for Monolisa™ HCV AgAb ULTRA and 95.95% for Murex HCV AgAb and sensitivity of 97.5% for both assays. Larrat *et al*[142] tested Monolisa™ HCV AgAb ULTRA along to oral mucosal transudate demonstrated sensitivity of 71.7% and specificity of 94.3%. These methods were employed among haemodialysis and homosexual individuals showing good performance to early detection of hepatitis C virus infection during window period of HCV infection[143,144].

Other immunoassays for anti-HCV detection include ECLIA, CMIA, CLIA, MEIA. In these assays, HCV antigens are presented on distinct solid phases (microwell, magnetic and paramagnetic particles) and anti-HCV at clinical sample is then identified using a conjugate antibody (anti-human IgG labeled with acridinium or horseradish peroxidase) that catalyzes the oxidation of a luminol, generating light. The system measures the light signal that is normalized in relation to cut-off value [signal/cut-off (S/CO)], or given as relative lights units[145,146]. Most of these assays used antigens from core, NS3, NS4 and NS5 of HCV. Sample volume varies from 10 to 40 microliters and reaction is executed from 18 to 58 min[147].

To confirm positive or indeterminate results by immunoassays, recombinant immunoblot assays (RIBA) can be used as complementary test, especially in low prevalence settings. This test is highly specific due to the presence of recombinant proteins and synthetic peptides of envelope, NS3, NS4, NS5 regions of HCV on a membrane strip. HCV antibodies present in clinical samples should react to these proteins leading to the

appearance of cored dots at specific antigens in the strips. Interpretation may be visual or automated and a positive result is considered when two or more bands are visualized on the nitrocellulose strip, representing a specific antigen-antibody reaction. Indeterminate result is showed when only one band is visualized and negative results are obtained when no bands are observed. The major disadvantage of RIBA is the occurrence of indeterminate results, especially in those specimens with grey-zone results in the screening assays. Currently, this assay has been substituted as a confirmatory test by widely-used molecular techniques, which can additionally distinguish between active and resolved infections[121,147,148].

Nowadays there have been emergent needs for developing highly accurate, rapid and cheap analytical tools. To achieve this goal, many attempts have been focused on the development of rapid point-of-care testing (POCT) such as lateral flow tests. These techniques are based on immunochromatographic assay, lateral flow tests (LFT) or test strips. The advantages of POCT are the time for execution, simplicity and cost-effective[149]. The principle of LFT is similar to ELISA, and the base substrate is nitrocellulose membrane in which the solid phase is immobilized capture binding protein, usually an antibody or antigen. Labels such as latex, colloidal gold, carbon, and recently up-converting phosphorus technology have been employed in LFT development[150,151]. POCT is useful for HCV detection in field situations, particularly among hard-to-reach, high-risk populations, such as drug users or individuals living in remote areas[152-154]. A good performance of POCTs compared to EIA or PCR results were observed with sensitivities and specificities above 90%[152-156]. A recent metanalysis compared seven POCT and OraQuick had the highest test sensitivity and specificity and showed better performance than a third generation enzyme immunoassay in seroconversion panels[156]. This assay could be used along to serum, whole blood and saliva samples what could increase the access of diagnosis in emergency situations[151,154].

Biosensor technology has emerged as alternative technique with low detection limit, higher selectivity and sensitivity, and faster responses for anti-HCV detection. Biosensor employs specific biochemical reactions mediated by isolated enzymes, immunosystems, tissues, organelles, or whole cells to detect chemical compounds, usually by means of electrical, thermal, or optical signals. The surface of bioreceptor contains a biological recognition element that interacts to analyte; then the transducer converts the recognition event into a measurable signal; finally, the output from the transducer is amplified, processed and displayed. The concentration of the analyte is proportional to the intensity of signal[57]. The main advantages of biosensors are offering a quantitative test for detection in cases with about 100 copies of hepatitis virus, in addition to automation, multiplexing analysis and throughput. Some biosensors available for anti-HCV detection include surface plasmon resonance, piezoelectric biosensors, microcantilever based biosensors, electrochemical biosensor and apta-sensor[121,149].

EIA is widely used for anti-HCV detection, and has the advantage of high sensitivity, fast processing, high reliability, ease of automation and relatively low cost[57,117], but this technique did not identify if the infection is current or past, and therefore requires confirmation of the results by a more specific method, such as HCV RNA[125,137]. Other immunoassays for anti-HCV detection as MEIA, CMIA, ECLIA and CLIA have the advantage of being performed in less time, with less incubation period and easily automatable. While RIBA can be used as a complementary test to confirm positive or indeterminate by immunoassays. The advantage is that this test is highly specific, due to the presence of recombinant proteins and synthetic peptide regions of the envelope, NS3, NS4, NS5 of HCV. However, its drawback is the occurrence of indeterminate results. Therefore, this assay has been replaced by molecular testing to confirm results, so distinguishing active infection cured[48,121,147].

Every day more, is continuing need to develop highly accurate, rapid and inexpensive analytical tools. Therefore, the immunochromatographic techniques, such as rapid diagnostic tests have been developed and widely used. Present as the short runtime advantages, simplicity and low cost[149] as well as being useful for detecting HCV in difficult access populations, high risk, such as injecting drug users or people living in remote areas[152-154]. The biosensor technology has emerged as an alternative technique with low anti-HCV detection limit, higher sensitivity and selectivity, and faster for the detection of anti-HCV responses. The main advantages of biosensors are automation, multiplexing analysis and fast processing[121,149], but these assays are not widespread and present high costs. Information regarding different aspects of HCV assays is available on Table 5.

MOLECULAR TECHNIQUES FOR DIAGNOSING HCV INFECTION

In hepatitis C infection, the molecular virological techniques play a key role both in diagnosis and in monitoring of HCV antiviral treatment. Due to the difficulty to grow HCV in cellular culture, molecular techniques were used to identify this virus, making HCV one of the first pathogens to be identified solely by molecular diagnostics[8].

The hepatitis C viral genome can be detected in blood, by nucleic acid testing (NAT). The presence of HCV RNA is a marker for HCV viremia and is detected only in persons who are currently infected. Patients with anti-HCV detected should be evaluated for the presence of HCV RNA in their blood[157]. In this regard, the detection and quantification is useful in clinical practice to: (1) diagnose chronic HCV infection; (2) guide treatment decisions (identify patients who need antiviral therapy and offer them the most adapted genotype treatment);

Table 5 Main Characteristics of serological assays for hepatitis C virus diagnosis

Serological assays		Antigen (region of the genome)	Assay/manufacturer	Sensitivity	Specificity	Ref.
EIA	1st generation EIA	c100-3 (NS3-NS4)	HCV-Ac-EIE Salck	70%-80%	50%-70%	[118,119]
	2nd generation EIA	c100-3 (NS3-NS4), c33-c (NS3), c22-3 (core)	ORTHO HCV ELISA test system	92%-95%		[118,119]
	3rd generation EIA	c100-3 (NS3-NS4), c33-c (NS3), c22-3 (core), NS5	ORTHO HCV 3.0 ELISA (Ortho)/ETI-AB-HCVK Sorin	95%-99%	99%	[57,118]
	4th generation EIA		Monolisa™ HCV AgAb ULTRA (BioRad)/HCV Murex AgAb (Abbott)	100%	99.5%	[117,133,144]
MEIA		HCr43 (Fusion core e NS3), c200 (NS3 - NS4), c100-3 (NS3-NS4), NS5	AxSYM® HCV 3.0 (Abbott)	100%	99.8%	[117,118]
ECLIA		Core, NS3 and NS4 proteins	Elecsys anti-HCV assay (Roche)	100%	99.7%	[117,118]
CLIA		[c22-3 (core), c200 (NS3 - NS4) and NS5]	ARCHITECT i4000 anti-HCV assay (Abbott); VITROS Eci anti-HCV assay (Ortho)	99.5%	98.2%	[145]
CMIA		HCr43 (core - NS3), c100-3 (NS3-NS4)	ARCHITECT® anti-HCV (Abbott)	99.1%	99.6%	[146]
RIBA	RIBA-1	5-1-1 (NS4) e c100-3 (NS3-NS4)		NP	NP	[118]
	RIBA-2	5-1-1 (NS4), c100-3 (NS3-NS4), c33-c (NS3), c22-3 (core)	Chiron RIBA-2.0 RIBA-2	NP	NP	[148]
	RIBA-3	c100-3 (NS3-NS4), c33-c (NS3), c22-3 (core), NS5	Chiron RIBA HCV 3.0 SIA	NP	NP	[118]
Biosensor technology		Core protein (p22 fusion protein), NS3, NS4 and NS5	mBio Diagnostics® company	NP	NP	[57,137]

NP: Not presented; EIA: Enzyme immunoassay; MEIA: Micro-particle enzyme immunoassay; ECLIA: Electrochemiluminescence immunoassay; CLIA: Chemiluminescence immunoassay; CMIA: Chemiluminescent microparticle immunoassay; RIBA: Recombinant immunoblot assays; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; ELISA: Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay.

(3) monitor the antiviral efficacy of treatment; (4) identify amino acid substitutions responsible for direct acting antiviral drug (DAA) resistance; (5) to confirm the presence of HCV viremia in patients who are seronegative (anti-HCV non reactive) but immunocompromised such as HIV infected individuals; and (6) in babies who are born to HCV positive mothers- once antibody testing in babies can give false positive results up to 18 mo of age[121,158].

Approximately 1 mo before the appearance of total anti-HCV antibodies HCV RNA can be already detected 1-3 wk after infection[81]. Molecular methods are useful to identify the stage of infection. A negative NAT result with positive serological test is usually indicative of a resolved infection or spontaneous resolution[159], but low-level of viremia may occur during chronic infection, for these reasons a second NAT should be performed 6 to 12 mo later. A positive HCV NAT result indicates active infection independent of antibody test results. NAT are used before, during, and after antiviral treatment to indicate whether HCV is present or not, and to determine when and whether treatment should be stopped or continued[160]. In acute infections, the NAT result will become positive within 1 to 3 wk, several weeks earlier than serological tests, as in occupational exposures[120]. This way, the serological window present in HCV infection can be resolved using qualitative and quantitative nucleic acid testing, whereas these techniques have a wide dynamic range of detection, which is well chosen according to the clinical needs (upper range of quantification: 7-8 log10 IU/mL)[161].

HCV detection and quantification is made using sera samples, but saliva, DBS and platelets have been studied as alternative samples[162-165]. The detection of HCV RNA in these samples could be useful to increase the access of molecular diagnosis for HCV infection and to evaluate antiviral response in some groups, like haemodialysis, children, drug users. A systematic review demonstrated good correlation among HCV RNA quantification from DBS and whole plasma[166], but low levels of HCV among saliva and platelets compared to sera samples[162,163].

Qualitative HCV assays comprises viral RNA isolation, complementary DNA (cDNA) production, PCR amplification and detection of PCR amplicons[121]. A large amount of commercial and in-house PCR for HCV uses primers for amplification of 5′ untranslated region (UTR) since this region has above 90% of sequence identity among distinct HCV genotypes, where several fragments are almost undistinguishable among distinct strains[121]. The 5′UTR is the first region to be transcribed and has secondary and tertiary structures that are largely conserved[167]. Furthermore, core and 3′UTR are also used in PCR for detection of HCV[121].

Qualitative NAT are used as the first diagnosis of a suspected acute infection, to confirm chronic HCV infection in patients with antibodies anti-HCV positive, confirmation of virological response during, at the end or after antiviral therapy and to screen blood donations for evidence of infection with HCV[120,168]. These tests usually utilize conventional reverse transcriptase-PCR (RT-PCR) or transcription-mediated amplification (TMA).

In RT-PCR-based assays, HCV RNA is the source for production of a single-stranded complementary cDNA by reverse transcriptase. DNA polymerase amplifies cDNA into multiple double-stranded DNA copies. In TMA assay, viral RNA is isolated from clinical sample and two enzymes (T7 RNA polymerase and reverse transcriptase) amplify this RNA. Hybridization protection assay detects these amplicons by probe hybridization in which only hybridized probes stay chemiluminescent and are detected in a luminometer[168].

Qualitative RT-PCR assays should detect 50 HCV RNA IU/mL or less with the same sensitivity for all genotypes. With the advent of more qPCR that has a lower limit of detection to as low as 30 copies/mL, qualitative assays were replaced especially in diagnostic laboratories[120,169]. These qualitative tests are still very common due to its higher sensitivity, but the main inconvenience is that it only verifies the absence or presence of HCV RNA[121,168].

Some qualitative commercial assays include Cobas Amplicor HCV version 2.0 (Roche Molecular Diagnostics, Pleasonton, CA, United States) and Versant HCV RNA qualitative assay (Siemens Healthcare Diagnostics, Deerfield, IL, United States). Cobas Amplicor HCV is performed according to standard RT-PCR and 50 IU/mL is the limit of detection for all HCV genotypes, while Versant HCV qualitative assay employs TMA and presents analytical sensitivity of 10 IU/mL for most genotypes and 5.3 IU/mL for genotype 1[121].

HCV RNA quantification can be accomplished by target or signal amplification, respectively quantitative RT-PCR (qRT-PCR) and branched deoxyribonucleic acid (bDNA) technology. Due to its good sensitivity (99%) and specificity (98%-99%), the classical techniques for viral genome detection and quantification are progressively being replaced by quantitative PCR[120,169]. When these tests are used to monitor viral load during treatment, it is critical to use the same assay before and during therapy[120,169].

Several tests are commercially available for HCV quantification and those assays employ competitive PCR (Cobas Amplicor HCV Monitor), bDNA technique (Versant HCV RNA), real time PCR (COBAS TaqMan assay and Abbott Real Time HCV test). To quantify HCV by Cobas Amplicor HCV Monitor 2.0, the target and internal standard is amplified in a single reaction tube. The initial quantity of HCV RNA is obtained by comparing the final amounts of both templates. The dynamic range of the Amplicor™ HCV 2.0 monitor assay is 500 to approximately 500000 IU/mL with a specificity of almost 100%, independent of the HCV genotype[170,171]. The Versant HCV quantitative test (Siemens Healthcare Diagnostics) is based on signal amplification by bDNA and present a range of detection of 615 IU/mL to 8 million IU/mL independent of HCV genotype[172]. Martins *et al*[173] compared qualitative (in-house RT-nested PCR and COBAS AMPLICOR HCV Test v2.0 and TMA) and quantitative (COBAS AMPLICOR HCV Monitor Test v2.0 and bDNA) techniques for HCV quantification and detection, and TMA presented the highest rate (87.8%) of HCV detection among qualitative tests being the most sensitive for HCV RNA detection over the early and late phases of HCV infection.

Real time PCR technology allows the direct monitoring of the PCR process due to the detection and amplification of the target nucleic acid at the same time. In order to detect and amplify DNA at the same time, a probe (oligonucleotides containing a quenching molecule and a fluorescent reporter molecule) binds to target cDNA between the two PCR primers and are degraded or released by DNA polymerase during DNA synthesis. When probe is degraded, it occurs the separation of reporter and quencher molecules, which leads to emission of an increased fluorescence signal from the reporter. The quantity of RNA in the starting (first cycle) sample is proportional to the fluorescence signal. Quantification in absolute numbers is obtained by the comparison of kinetics of the target amplification with the amplification kinetics of an internal control of a defined initial concentration[168].

Cobas Taqman HCV present limit of detection and quantification of approximately 15 IU/mL among all HCV genotypes, and a linear amplification range of HCV RNA from approximately 15 to 10000000 IU/mL[174]. Abbott RealTime HCV assay has a lower detection limit of nearly 10 IU/mL, a specificity higher than 99.5% and a linear amplification range from 12 to 10000000 IU/mL independent of the hepatitis C genotype[175-177].

Currently, there are leastwise seven genotypes and more than 80 subtypes of HCV[178,179]. Methods for HCV genotyping are direct sequence analysis, real time PCR, RFLP, and reverse hybridization technology. HCV genotyping is mandatory for double antiviral treatment (interferon and ribavirin), since patients infected with genotypes 1 or 4 are treated for longer times than patients infected by genotypes 2 and 3[180]. Nevertheless, with the accessibility of new and highly effective antiviral therapies, HCV genotyping will not be important in the future.

The first commercial assays for HCV genotyping evaluated exclusively the 5'UTR, which has a high ratio of misclassification particularly on the subtype level. Nowadays commercial tests analyze coding regions, especially non-structural protein NS5B and core protein.

TRUGENE-SIEMENS HCV 5'NC Genotyping Kit (Siemens Medical Solutions Diagnostics, Tarrytown, NY, United States) is useful to detect HCV genotypes and subtypes based on region 5'UTR and has a lower limit of detection of 5000 IU/mL[181,182]. Versant HCV Genotype 2.0 Assay (LiPA) uses oligonucleotide probes specific for the 5'UTR and core regions of the six HCV genotypes and has lower limit of detection of 3700 IU/mL[183]. LIPA is efficient for HCV genotyping, but some divergent results were observed when compared to sequence analysis of the NS5B region at the subtype level (sensitivity of 95.2% for subtype 1b and 96.1% for subtype 1a)[184].

Real time PCR using TaqMan technology as Abbott Real time PCR HCV Assay (Abbott Diagnostics Europe,

Wiesbaden, Germany) determines the viral genotype of the samples for HCV genotypes 1a, 1b, 2a, 2b, 3, 4, 5 and 6 and has limit of detection of 6053 IU/mL[185]. On the other hand, in house methods like RFLP presented a limit of detection using the Probit test ranging from 51 to 3300 IU/mL[161]. RFLP is a useful technique for HCV genotyping in different groups since presents low cost compared to commercial methods[186,187].

The direct sequencing (Sanger sequencing) is the gold standard for determining HCV genotypes and subtypes HCV. Nucleotide sequencing involves sequencing of one or more genes in the HCV genome (mainly the 5′UTR, core, E1, NS3 and NS5) and comparing these sequences to the established genotypes by computer analysis[120]. This provides the most complete information on the variations of the sequences analyzed. Furthermore, it is the most useful method for the study of viral genetic variability[182].

The sequencing technique for HCV genotyping consists of PCR amplification of part of the viral genome, especially these regions: The 5′NC, NS5B and core regions. These regions present diversity for the discrimination of viral genotypes and subtypes and are sufficiently conserved for the development of reliable primers[188]. In addition to genotype determination, direct sequencing is also used for molecular epidemiological studies and to DAA resistance mutations[189-193]. In DAA treatment, the replication is intensively inhibited in drug-sensitive viral population, and the resistant variants gradually predominate in the HCV population[194]. This way, in a near future, the most appropriate treatment for HCV patients will be based on the analysis of the nucleotide or amino acid sequence[195].

Actually, deep sequencing technologies is a promising approach to characterizing viral diversity, they have the ability to generate high throughput screening that provide exceptional resolution for studying the underlying genetic diversity of complex viral populations[112,113,196]. Currently Illumina deep sequencing technology (Illumina Inc. San Diego, CA) and PacBio sequencing technologies (Pacific Biosciences of California, Inc.) are the newest platforms in the market. In HCV studies, deep sequencing technologies are powerful tools for obtaining more profound insight into the dynamics of variants in the HCV quasispecies of human serum. It allows sequencing the complete genome in a short time and is able to generate much more information on the viral genome sequences in internal organs[195].

Due to the rate of 10^{-3} mutations per nucleotide, HCV results in high-circulating quasispecies in infected patients. Recently, it was observed that approximately 15.6% of samples from Pakistan did not match any genotype[197]. Ultra deep sequencing could be useful for identification of these genotypes what is important to determine the pattern of double antiviral therapy (interferon and ribavirin) that is a standard therapy in Pakistan and other countries with few resources.

HCV quantitative methods, like qPCR are useful to monitor antiviral therapy and could detect low viral loads with broad dynamic range. These assays are fully automated and reduced contamination. However, commercial assays present high cost compared to in house qualitative methods. For HCV genotyping, the method most useful is nucleotide sequencing, principally ultra deep sequencing that could identify resistant variants predominate in the HCV population and give information about dynamics of HCV quasispecies. However, it is necessary in-depth knowledge to analyze the results.

The main characteristics, advantages, disadvantages and specific applications of HCV molecular assays are disclosed in Table 4.

CONCLUSION

In this review, we attempted to give information regarding HCV and HBV serological and molecular methods available at clinical and research areas. Most of review articles regarding HBV and HCV diagnosis are relatively old[28,120,148,198] or discuss only one aspect of viral hepatitis diagnosis, for example, rapid tests for HBV[24], rapid tests for HCV[156], serological methods for HBV[49], serological methods for HCV[117], molecular methods for HBV[83] or molecular methods for HCV[120]. In the present review, both serological and molecular methods for HBV and HCV diagnosis were included and new methods such as biosensors and ultra deep sequencing were discussed giving new and updated information about this theme.

Diagnosis of HBV and HCV infection is a key tool to identify acute and chronic cases of infection in order to define preventive measures and to initiate antiviral treatment. Nowadays HBV vaccination and antiviral therapies for HBV and HCV infection have arisen drug resistant, vaccine and diagnosis escape variants that complicate diagnosis and treatment. In this situation, effective diagnosis presenting high sensitivity and specificity is crucial.

Each detection method presents advantages and limitations. EIAs are the most important serological assays used for HBV and HCV detection due to its simplicity, automation and convenience. Nevertheless, they can be time-consuming and expensive and rapid assays have been developed in order to overcome these disadvantages. Molecular techniques are useful to diagnose chronic infection; to identify HBV occult cases; to evaluate the prognosis of disease; to help in treatment decisions and monitor the antiviral treatment efficacy; and to identify resistance mutants to antiviral treatment. Molecular methods present higher specificity and sensitivity and larger dynamic range of detection compared to other diagnostic assays like serological assays. Nevertheless, these methods are relatively expensive and require special instruments and specialized techniques. The choice of each method should be done according advantages and disadvantages and the purpose of diagnosis.

In the near future, biosensors and biochips seems to be useful technologies for serological diagnosis of

HBV and HCV, principally due to real-time diagnosis and early intervention to reduce the burden of diseases. Alternative specimens and rapid assays can also be extremely useful for remote areas, low resource settings and health services with limited laboratory infrastructure. In respect to molecular HBV and HCV assays, digital PCR promises to resolve some of the deficiencies of qPCR by transforming the analog, exponential nature of PCR into a digital and linear signal. For DNA sequencing, ultra deep sequencing will be helpful for analysis of HBV and HCV mutants in order to study the dynamics of viral variants.

REFERENCES

1 **Takahashi T**, Nakagawa S, Hashimoto T, Takahashi K, Imai M. Large-scale isolation of Dane particles from plasma containing hepatitis B antigen and deomnstration of circular double-stranded DNA molecule extruding directly from their cores. *J Immunol* 1976; **117**: 1392-1397 [PMID: 977955]

2 **Gerlich WH**, Robinson WS. Hepatitis B virus contains protein attached to the 5' terminus of its complete DNA strand. *Cell* 1980; **21**: 801-809 [PMID: 7438207 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(80)90443-2]

3 **Norder H**, Couroucé AM, Magnius LO. Molecular basis of hepatitis B virus serotype variations within the four major subtypes. *J Gen Virol* 1992; **73** (Pt 12): 3141-3145 [PMID: 1469353 DOI: 10.1099/0022-1317-73-12-3141]

4 **Kramvis A**. Genotypes and genetic variability of hepatitis B virus. *Intervirology* 2014; **57**: 141-150 [PMID: 25034481 DOI: 10.1159/000360947]

5 **Simmonds P**. Reconstructing the origins of human hepatitis viruses. *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci* 2001; **356**: 1013-1026 [PMID: 11516379 DOI: 10.1098/rstb.2001.0890]

6 **Ganem D**, Schneider RJ. Hepadnaviridae and their replication. In: Knipe DM, Howley PM, Chanock RM, Monath TP, Roizman B, Straus SE. Fields virology, 2001: 2703-2737

7 **Lin CL**, Kao JH. Hepatitis B virus genotypes and variants. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med* 2015; **5**: a021436 [PMID: 25934462 DOI: 10.1101/cshperspect.a021436]

8 **Choo QL**, Kuo G, Weiner AJ, Overby LR, Bradley DW, Houghton M. Isolation of a cDNA clone derived from a blood-borne non-A, non-B viral hepatitis genome. *Science* 1989; **244**: 359-362 [PMID: 2523562 DOI: 10.1126/science.2523562]

9 **Choo QL**, Richman KH, Han JH, Berger K, Lee C, Dong C, Gallegos C, Coit D, Medina-Selby R, Barr PJ. Genetic organization and diversity of the hepatitis C virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1991; **88**: 2451-2455 [PMID: 1848704 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.88.6.2451]

10 **Chiba J**, Ohba H, Matsuura Y, Watanabe Y, Katayama T, Kikuchi S, Saito I, Miyamura T. Serodiagnosis of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection with an HCV core protein molecularly expressed by a recombinant baculovirus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1991; **88**: 4641-4645 [PMID: 1905012 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.88.11.4641]

11 **Saeed U**, Waheed Y, Ashraf M. Hepatitis B and hepatitis C viruses: a review of viral genomes, viral induced host immune responses, genotypic distributions and worldwide epidemiology. *Asian Pac J Trop Dis* 2014; **4**: 88-96 [DOI: 10.1016/S2222-1808(14)60322-4]

12 **Chiba J**, Ohba H, Matsuura Y, Watanabe Y, Katayama T, Kikuchi S, Saito I, Miyamura T. Serodiagnosis of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection with an HCV core protein molecularly expressed by a recombinant baculovirus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1991; **88**: 4641-4645 [PMID: 1905012 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.88.11.4641]

13 **World Health Organization**. Hepatitis B, Fact sheet N°204. [accessed 2015 May]. Available from: URL: http//www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs204/en/

14 **World Health Organization**. Hepatitis C, Fact sheet N°164. [accessed 2014 May]. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs164/en/

15 **Seeger C**, Zoulim F. Hepadnaviruses. In: Fields NB. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007: 2977-3029

16 **Lee MH**, Yang HI, Yuan Y, L'Italien G, Chen CJ. Epidemiology and natural history of hepatitis C virus infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 9270-9280 [PMID: 25071320 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i28.9270]

17 **Ott JJ**, Stevens GA, Groeger J, Wiersma ST. Global epidemiology of hepatitis B virus infection: new estimates of age-specific HBsAg seroprevalence and endemicity. *Vaccine* 2012; **30**: 2212-2219 [PMID: 22273662 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2011.12.116]

18 **Gower E**, Estes C, Blach S, Razavi-Shearer K, Razavi H. Global epidemiology and genotype distribution of the hepatitis C virus infection. *J Hepatol* 2014; **61**: S45-S57 [PMID: 25086286 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.07.027]

19 **Kretzer IF**, do Livramento A, da Cunha J, Gonçalves S, Tosin I, Spada C, Treitinger A. Hepatitis C worldwide and in Brazil: silent epidemic--data on disease including incidence, transmission, prevention, and treatment. *ScientificWorldJournal* 2014; **2014**: 827849 [PMID: 25013871 DOI: 10.1155/2014/827849]

20 **Wasley A**, Alter MJ. Epidemiology of hepatitis C: geographic differences and temporal trends. *Semin Liver Dis* 2000; **20**: 1-16 [PMID: 10895428 DOI: 10.1055/s-2000-9506]

21 **Hoofnagle JH**. Serodiagnosis of acute viral hepatitis. *Hepatology* 1983; **3**: 267-268 [PMID: 6299921 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840030222]

22 **Hoofnagle JH**, Di Bisceglie AM. Serologic diagnosis of acute and chronic viral hepatitis. *Semin Liver Dis* 1991; **11**: 73-83 [PMID: 1909458 DOI: 10.1055/s-2008-1040426]

23 **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention**. Epidemiology and Prevention of Vaccine-Preventable Diseases. Atkinson W, Hamborsky J, Wolfe S. Washington DC: Public Health Foundation, 2012: 12

24 **Kao JH**. Diagnosis of hepatitis B virus infection through serological and virological markers. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **2**: 553-562 [PMID: 19072403 DOI: 10.1586/17474124.2.4.553]

25 **European Association For The Study Of The Liver**. EASL clinical practice guidelines: Management of chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 167-185 [PMID: 22436845 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.02.010]

26 **Martinot-Peignoux M**, Lapalus M, Asselah T, Marcellin P. The role of HBsAg quantification for monitoring natural history and treatment outcome. *Liver Int* 2013; **33** Suppl 1: 125-132 [PMID: 23286856 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12075]

27 **Maylin S**, Boyd A, Delaugerre C, Zoulim F, Lavocat F, Simon F, Girard PM, Lacombe K. Comparison between Elecsys HBsAg II and architect HBsAg QT assays for quantification of hepatitis B surface antigen among patients coinfected with HIV and hepatitis B virus. *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 2012; **19**: 242-248 [PMID: 22190396 DOI: 10.1128/CVI.05454-11]

28 **Weber B**. Recent developments in the diagnosis and monitoring of HBV infection and role of the genetic variability of the S gene. *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 2005; **5**: 75-91 [PMID: 15723594 DOI: 10.1586/14737159.5.1.75]

29 **Petry A**, Kupek EJ. [Effectiveness of recombinant DNA vaccines against hepatitis B in blood donors in an endemic region of South Brazil]. *Rev Soc Bras Med Trop* 2006; **39**: 462-466 [PMID: 17160324 DOI: 10.1590/S0037-86822006000500008]

30 **Tsang TK**, Blei AT, O'Reilly DJ, Decker R. Clinical significance of concurrent hepatitis B surface antigen and antibody positivity. *Dig Dis Sci* 1986; **31**: 620-624 [PMID: 3709326 DOI: 10.1007/BF01318693]

31 **Dufour DR**, Lott JA, Nolte FS, Gretch DR, Koff RS, Seeff LB. Diagnosis and monitoring of hepatic injury. I. Performance characteristics of laboratory tests. *Clin Chem* 2000; **46**: 2027-2049 [PMID: 11106349]

32 **Dény P**, Zoulim F. Hepatitis B virus: from diagnosis to treatment. *Pathol Biol* (Paris) 2010; **58**: 245-253 [PMID: 20580167 DOI: 10.1016/j.patbio.2010.05.002]

33 **Kao JH**. Hepatitis B viral genotypes: clinical relevance and molecular characteristics. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **17**:

643-650 [PMID: 12100608 DOI: 10.1046/j.1440-1746.2002.02737.x]
34 **Petersen J**. Hepatitis B: Diagnostic Tests. 5th ed. Hepatology, 2014
35 **Brazil Ministry of Health**. 2008 Viral Hepatitis: Brazil is the careful. Health Surveillance Secretariat, Department of STD, AIDS and Viral Hepatitis, Ministry of Health, 2008 (Portuguese)
36 **Diepersloot RJ**, van Zantvliet-van Oostrom Y, Gleaves CA. Comparison of a chemiluminescent immunoassay with two microparticle enzyme immunoassays for detection of hepatitis B virus surface antigen. *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* 2000; **7**: 865-866 [PMID: 11063488 DOI: 10.1128/cdli.7.6.865-866.2000]
37 **Cheng L**, Guan Q, Zhang J, Sun Z. Discrepancies between two automated immunoassay systems in determining hepatitis B virus markers in serum samples with concomitant presence of antigens and antibodies. *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 2010; **40**: 49-52 [PMID: 20124330]
38 **Yalow RS**, Berson SA. Assay of plasma insulin in human subjects by immunological methods. *Nature* 1959; **184** (Suppl 21): 1648-1649 [PMID: 13846363 DOI: 10.1038/1841648b0]
39 **Annesley TM**. It's about the journey, Not the destination: The birth of radioimmunoassay. 1960. *Clin Chem* 2010; **56**: 671-672 [PMID: 20110446 DOI: 10.1373/clinchem.2010.142950]
40 **Engvall E**, Perlmann P. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). Quantitative assay of immunoglobulin G. *Immunochemistry* 1971; **8**: 871-874 [PMID: 5135623 DOI: 10.1016/0019-2791(71)90454-X]
41 **Grange RD**, Thompson JP, Lambert DG. Radioimmunoassay, enzyme and non-enzyme-based immunoassays. *Br J Anaesth* 2014; **112**: 213-216 [PMID: 24431350 DOI: 10.1093/bja/aet293]
42 **Scheiblauer H**, El-Nageh M, Diaz S, Nick S, Zeichhardt H, Grunert HP, Prince A. Performance evaluation of 70 hepatitis B virus (HBV) surface antigen (HBsAg) assays from around the world by a geographically diverse panel with an array of HBV genotypes and HBsAg subtypes. *Vox Sang* 2010; **98**: 403-414 [PMID: 20412171 DOI: 10.1111/j.1423-0410.2009.01272.x]
43 **Forster RJ**, Bertoncello P, Keyes TE. Electrogenerated chemiluminescence. *Annu Rev Anal Chem* (Palo Alto Calif) 2009; **2**: 359-385 [PMID: 20636067 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-anchem-060908-155305]
44 **Kim H**, Oh EJ, Kang MS, Kim SH, Park YJ. Comparison of the Abbott Architect i2000 assay, the Roche Modular Analytics E170 assay, and an immunoradiometric assay for serum hepatitis B virus markers. *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 2007; **37**: 256-259 [PMID: 17709690]
45 **Chen Y**, Wu W, Li LJ, Lou B, Zhang J, Fan J. Comparison of the results for three automated immunoassay systems in determining serum HBV markers. *Clin Chim Acta* 2006; **372**: 129-133 [PMID: 16713592 DOI: 10.1016/j.cca.2006.03.032]
46 **Xu W**, Li Y, Wang M, Gu J. Comparison of two immunoassays for determining hepatitis B virus serum markers. *Clin Chem Lab Med* 2012; **50**: 153-157 [PMID: 21950598 DOI: 10.1515/CCLM.2011.721]
47 **Huzly D**, Schenk T, Jilg W, Neumann-Haefelin D. Comparison of nine commercially available assays for quantification of antibody response to hepatitis B virus surface antigen. *J Clin Microbiol* 2008; **46**: 1298-1306 [PMID: 18256221 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02430-07]
48 **Soeung SC**, Rani M, Huong V, Sarath S, Kimly C, Kohei T. Results from nationwide hepatitis B serosurvey in Cambodia using simple and rapid laboratory test: implications for National Immunization Program. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2009; **81**: 252-257 [PMID: 19635879]
49 **Khuroo MS**, Khuroo NS, Khuroo MS. Accuracy of Rapid Point-of-Care Diagnostic Tests for Hepatitis B Surface Antigen-A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *J Clin Exp Hepatol* 2014; **4**: 226-240 [PMID: 25755565 DOI: 10.1016/j.jceh.2014.07.008]
50 **Randrianirina F**, Carod JF, Ratsima E, Chrétien JB, Richard V, Talarmin A. Evaluation of the performance of four rapid tests for detection of hepatitis B surface antigen in Antananarivo, Madagascar. *J Virol Methods* 2008; **151**: 294-297 [PMID: 18462816 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2008.03.019]
51 **Davies J**, van Oosterhout JJ, Nyirenda M, Bowden J, Moore E, Hart IJ, Zijlstra EE, Chaponda M, Faragher B, Beeching NJ, Beadsworth MB. Reliability of rapid testing for hepatitis B in a region of high HIV endemicity. *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg* 2010; **104**: 162-164 [PMID: 19931107 DOI: 10.1016/j.trstmh.2009.10.010]
52 **Seremba E**, Ocama P, Opio CK, Kagimu M, Yuan HJ, Attar N, Thomas DL, Lee WM. Validity of the rapid strip assay test for detecting HBsAg in patients admitted to hospital in Uganda. *J Med Virol* 2010; **82**: 1334-1340 [PMID: 20572076 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.21813]
53 **Bottero J**, Boyd A, Gozlan J, Lemoine M, Carrat F, Collignon A, Boo N, Dhotte P, Varsat B, Muller G, Cha O, Picard O, Nau J, Campa P, Silbermann B, Bary M, Girard PM, Lacombe K. Performance of rapid tests for detection of HBsAg and anti-HBsAb in a large cohort, France. *J Hepatol* 2013; **58**: 473-478 [PMID: 23183527 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.11.016]
54 **Chevaliez S**, Challine D, Naija H, Luu TC, Laperche S, Nadala L, Allain JP, Lee HH, Pawlotsky JM. Performance of a new rapid test for the detection of hepatitis B surface antigen in various patient populations. *J Clin Virol* 2014; **59**: 89-93 [PMID: 24355522 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2013.11.010]
55 **Lau DT**, Ma H, Lemon SM, Doo E, Ghany MG, Miskovsky E, Woods GL, Park Y, Hoofnagle JH. A rapid immunochromatographic assay for hepatitis B virus screening. *J Viral Hepat* 2003; **10**: 331-334 [PMID: 12823602]
56 **El-Ghitany EM**, Farghaly AG. Evaluation of commercialized rapid diagnostic testing for some Hepatitis B biomarkers in an area of intermediate endemicity. *J Virol Methods* 2013; **194**: 190-193 [PMID: 24004823 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2013.08.026]
57 **Uliana CV**, Riccardi CS, Yamanaka H. Diagnostic tests for hepatitis C: recent trends in electrochemical immunosensor and genosensor analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 15476-15491 [PMID: 25400433 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i42.15476]
58 **Malhotra BD**, Turne APF. Advances in Biosensors, Elsevier Science. 5th ed. The Netherlands, 2003
59 **Nakamura H**, Karube I. Current research activity in biosensors. *Anal Bioanal Chem* 2003; **377**: 446-468 [PMID: 12811457 DOI: 10.1007/s00216-003-1947-5]
60 **Yao CY**, Fu WL. Biosensors for hepatitis B virus detection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 12485-12492 [PMID: 25253948 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i35.12485]
61 **Wang X**, Li Y, Wang H, Fu Q, Peng J, Wang Y, Du J, Zhou Y, Zhan L. Gold nanorod-based localized surface plasmon resonance biosensor for sensitive detection of hepatitis B virus in buffer, blood serum and plasma. *Biosens Bioelectron* 2010; **26**: 404-410 [PMID: 20729056 DOI: 10.1016/j.bios.2010.07.121]
62 **Hu Y**, Zhao Z, Wan Q. Facile preparation of carbon nanotube-conducting polymer network for sensitive electrochemical immunoassay of Hepatitis B surface antigen in serum. *Bioelectrochemistry* 2011; **81**: 59-64 [PMID: 21458390 DOI: 10.1016/j.bioelechem.2011.01.005]
63 **Nourani S**, Ghourchian H, Boutorabi SM. Magnetic nanoparticle-based immunosensor for electrochemical detection of hepatitis B surface antigen. *Anal Biochem* 2013; **441**: 1-7 [PMID: 23831477 DOI: 10.1016/j.ab.2013.06.011]
64 **Snijdewind IJ**, van Kampen JJ, Fraaij PL, van der Ende ME, Osterhaus AD, Gruters RA. Current and future applications of dried blood spots in viral disease management. *Antiviral Res* 2012; **93**: 309-321 [PMID: 22244848 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2011.12.011]
65 **Mahboobi N**, Porter SR, Karayiannis P, Alavian SM. Oral fluid and hepatitis A, B and C: a literature review. *J Oral Pathol Med* 2012; **41**: 505-516 [PMID: 22188507 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0714.2011.01123.x]
66 **Hutse V**, Verhaegen E, De Cock L, Quoilin S, Vandenberghe H, Horsmans Y, Michielsen P, Van Damme P, Van Vlierberghe H, Claeys F, Vranckx R, Van Oyen H. Oral fluid as a medium for the detection of hepatitis B surface antigen. *J Med Virol* 2005; **77**: 53-56 [PMID: 16032713 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.20413]
67 **Quoilin S**, Hutse V, Vandenberghe H, Claeys F, Verhaegen E, De Cock L, Van Loock F, Top G, Van Damme P, Vranckx R, Van Oyen

H. A population-based prevalence study of hepatitis A, B and C virus using oral fluid in Flanders, Belgium. *Eur J Epidemiol* 2007; **22**: 195-202 [PMID: 17356926 DOI: 10.1007/s10654-007-9105-6]

68 **Cruz HM**, da Silva EF, Villela-Nogueira CA, Nabuco LC, do Ó KM, Lewis-Ximenez LL, Yoshida CF, Lampe E, Villar LM. Evaluation of saliva specimens as an alternative sampling method to detect hepatitis B surface antigen. *J Clin Lab Anal* 2011; **25**: 134-141 [PMID: 21438008 DOI: 10.1002/jcla.20447]

69 **Arora G**, Sheikh S, Pallagatti S, Singh B, Singh VA, Singh R. Saliva as a tool in the detection of hepatitis B surface antigen in patients. *Compend Contin Educ Dent* 2012; **33**: 174-176, 178; quiz 180, 182 [PMID: 22479783]

70 **de Paula Scalioni L**, Cruz HM, de Paula VS, Corrêia Oliveira J, Tourinho Dos Santos R, Motta-Castro AR, Murat PG, Villela-Nogueira CA, Lewis-Ximenez LL, Lampe E, Villar LM. Importance of collection methods and stability of oral fluid samples for hepatitis B surface antigen detection. *J Clin Lab Anal* 2013; **27**: 186-194 [PMID: 23440736 DOI: 10.1002/jcla.21582]

71 **Amado LA**, Villar LM, de Paula VS, de Almeida AJ, Gaspar AM. Detection of hepatitis A, B, and C virus-specific antibodies using oral fluid for epidemiological studies. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2006; **101**: 149-155 [PMID: 16830707 DOI: 10.1590/S0074-02762006000200006]

72 **Forbi JC**, Obagu JO, Gyar SD, Pam CR, Pennap GR, Agwale SM. Application of dried blood spot in the sero-diagnosis of hepatitis B infection (HBV) in an HBV hyper-endemic nation. *Ann Afr Med* 2010; **9**: 44-45 [PMID: 20418650 DOI: 10.4103/1596-3519.62625]

73 **Lee CE**, Sri Ponnampalavanar S, Syed Omar SF, Mahadeva S, Ong LY, Kamarulzaman A. Evaluation of the dried blood spot (DBS) collection method as a tool for detection of HIV Ag/Ab, HBsAg, anti-HBs and anti-HCV in a Malaysian tertiary referral hospital. *Ann Acad Med Singapore* 2011; **40**: 448-453 [PMID: 22206053]

74 **Villar LM**, de Oliveira JC, Cruz HM, Yoshida CF, Lampe E, Lewis-Ximenez LL. Assessment of dried blood spot samples as a simple method for detection of hepatitis B virus markers. *J Med Virol* 2011; **83**: 1522-1529 [PMID: 21739441 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.22138]

75 **Mohamed S**, Raimondo A, Pénaranda G, Camus C, Ouzan D, Ravet S, Bourlière M, Khiri H, Dukan P, Olive D, Halfon P. Dried blood spot sampling for hepatitis B virus serology and molecular testing. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e61077 [PMID: 23613788 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0061077]

76 **Ross RS**, Stambouli O, Grüner N, Marcus U, Cai W, Zhang W, Zimmermann R, Roggendorf M. Detection of infections with hepatitis B virus, hepatitis C virus, and human immunodeficiency virus by analyses of dried blood spots--performance characteristics of the ARCHITECT system and two commercial assays for nucleic acid amplification. *Virol J* 2013; **10**: 72 [PMID: 23497102 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-10-72]

77 **Lukacs Z**, Dietrich A, Ganschow R, Kohlschütter A, Kruithof R. Simultaneous determination of HIV antibodies, hepatitis C antibodies, and hepatitis B antigens in dried blood spots--a feasibility study using a multi-analyte immunoassay. *Clin Chem Lab Med* 2005; **43**: 141-145 [PMID: 15843206 DOI: 10.1515/CCLM.2005.023]

78 **Vallejo F**, Toro C, de la Fuente L, Brugal MT, Soriano V, Silva TC, Bravo MJ, Ballesta R, Barrio G. Prevalence of and risk factors for hepatitis B virus infection among street-recruited young injection and non-injection heroin users in Barcelona, Madrid and Seville. *Eur Addict Res* 2008; **14**: 116-124 [PMID: 18552487 DOI: 10.1159/000130415]

79 **Komas NP**, Vickos U, Hübschen JM, Béré A, Manirakiza A, Muller CP, Le Faou A. Cross-sectional study of hepatitis B virus infection in rural communities, Central African Republic. *BMC Infect Dis* 2013; **13**: 286 [PMID: 23800310 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-13-286]

80 **Whalley SA**, Murray JM, Brown D, Webster GJ, Emery VC, Dusheiko GM, Perelson AS. Kinetics of acute hepatitis B virus infection in humans. *J Exp Med* 2001; **193**: 847-854 [PMID: 11283157 DOI: 10.1084/jem.193.7.847]

81 **Chevaliez S**, Pawlotsky JM. Diagnosis and management of chronic viral hepatitis: antigens, antibodies and viral genomes. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2008; **22**: 1031-1048 [PMID: 19187865 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpg.2008.11.004]

82 **Mangia A**, Antonucci F, Brunetto M, Capobianchi M, Fagiuoli S, Guido M, Farci P, Lampertico P, Marzano A, Niro G, Pisani G, Prati D, Puoti M, Raimondo G, Santantonio T, Smedile A, Lauria F. The use of molecular assays in the management of viral hepatitis. *Dig Liver Dis* 2008; **40**: 395-404 [PMID: 18321798 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2007.12.016]

83 **Valsamakis A**. Molecular testing in the diagnosis and management of chronic hepatitis B. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2007; **20**: 426-439, table of contents [PMID: 17630333 DOI: 10.1128/CMR.00009-07]

84 **Caliendo AM**, Valsamakis A, Bremer JW, Ferreira-Gonzalez A, Granger S, Sabatini L, Tsongalis GJ, Wang YF, Yen-Lieberman B, Young S, Lurain NS. Multilaboratory evaluation of real-time PCR tests for hepatitis B virus DNA quantification. *J Clin Microbiol* 2011; **49**: 2854-2858 [PMID: 21697326 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.00471-11]

85 **Datta S**, Chatterjee S, Veer V. Recent advances in molecular diagnostics of hepatitis B virus. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 14615-14625 [PMID: 25356025 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i40.14615]

86 **Pawlotsky JM**. [Virologic techniques for the diagnosis and monitoring of hepatitis B]. *Gastroenterol Clin Biol* 2008; **32**: S56-S63 [PMID: 18662611 DOI: 10.1016/S0399-8320(08)73266-4]

87 **Kania D**, Ottomani L, Meda N, Peries M, Dujols P, Bolloré K, Rénier W, Viljoen J, Ducos J, Van de Perre P, Tuaillon E. Performance of two real-time PCR assays for hepatitis B virus DNA detection and quantitation. *J Virol Methods* 2014; **201**: 24-30 [PMID: 24560781 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2014.01.015]

88 **Konnick EQ**, Erali M, Ashwood ER, Hillyard DR. Evaluation of the COBAS amplicor HBV monitor assay and comparison with the ultrasensitive HBV hybrid capture 2 assay for quantification of hepatitis B virus DNA. *J Clin Microbiol* 2005; **43**: 596-603 [PMID: 15695651 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.43.2.596-603.2005]

89 **Yao JD**, Beld MG, Oon LL, Sherlock CH, Germer J, Menting S, Se Thoe SY, Merrick L, Ziermann R, Surtihadi J, Hnatyszyn HJ. Multicenter evaluation of the VERSANT hepatitis B virus DNA 3.0 assay. *J Clin Microbiol* 2004; **42**: 800-806 [PMID: 14766856 DOI: 10.1128/jcm.42.2.800-806.2004]

90 **Dai CY**, Yu ML, Chen SC, Lin ZY, Hsieh MY, Wang LY, Tsai JF, Chuang WL, Chang WY. Clinical evaluation of the COBAS Amplicor HBV monitor test for measuring serum HBV DNA and comparison with the Quantiplex branched DNA signal amplification assay in Taiwan. *J Clin Pathol* 2004; **57**: 141-145 [PMID: 14747437 DOI: 10.1136/jcp.2003.10835]

91 **Bustin SA**, Benes V, Nolan T, Pfaffl MW. Quantitative real-time RT-PCR--a perspective. *J Mol Endocrinol* 2005; **34**: 597-601 [PMID: 15956331 DOI: 10.1677/jme.1.01755]

92 **Berger A**, Gohl P, Stürmer M, Rabenau HF, Nauck M, Doerr HW. Detection and quantitation of HBV DNA in miniaturized samples: multi centre study to evaluate the performance of the COBAS ® AmpliPrep/COBAS ® TaqMan ® hepatitis B virus (HBV) test v2.0 by the use of plasma or serum specimens. *J Virol Methods* 2010; **169**: 404-408 [PMID: 20728470 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2010.07.025]

93 **Morris CJ**, Hill M, de Medina M, Herman C, Cloherty GA, Martin P. Comparison of detection and quantification of HBV DNA in chronic HBeAg negative and positive patients by Abbott RealTime HBV and Roche Cobas TaqMan HBV assays. *J Virol Methods* 2013; **193**: 391-393 [PMID: 23835030 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2013.06.036]

94 **Kim H**, Shin S, Oh EJ, Kahng J, Kim Y, Lee HK, Kwon HJ. Comparison of the AdvanSure HBV real-time PCR test with three other HBV DNA quantification assays. *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 2013; **43**: 230-237 [PMID: 23694800]

95 **Qiu N**, Li R, Yu JG, Yang W, Zhang W, An Y, Li T, Liu XE, Zhuang H. Comparison of Abbott and Da-an real-time PCR for quantitating serum HBV DNA. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 11762-11769 [PMID: 25206280 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i33.11762]

96 **Paraskevis D**, Beloukas A, Haida C, Katsoulidou A, Moschidis Z, Hatzitheodorou H, Varaklioti A, Sypsa V, Hatzakis A. Development of a new ultra sensitive real-time PCR assay (ultra sensitive RTQ-PCR) for the quantification of HBV-DNA. *Virol J* 2010; **7**: 57 [PMID: 20226057 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-7-57]

97 **van der Eijk AA**, Niesters HG, Hansen BE, Pas SD, Richardus JH, Mostert M, Janssen HL, Schalm SW, de Man RA. Paired, quantitative measurements of hepatitis B virus DNA in saliva, urine and serum of chronic hepatitis B patients. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **17**: 1173-1179 [PMID: 16215428 DOI: 10.1097/00042737-200511000-00004]

98 **Kidd-Ljunggren K**, Holmberg A, Bläckberg J, Lindqvist B. High levels of hepatitis B virus DNA in body fluids from chronic carriers. *J Hosp Infect* 2006; **64**: 352-357 [PMID: 17046105 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhin.2006.06.029]

99 **Heiberg IL**, Hoegh M, Ladelund S, Niesters HG, Hogh B. Hepatitis B virus DNA in saliva from children with chronic hepatitis B infection: implications for saliva as a potential mode of horizontal transmission. *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 2010; **29**: 465-467 [PMID: 20335824 DOI: 10.1097/INF.0b013e3181d8e009]

100 **Portilho MM**, Martins PP, Lampe E, Villar LM. A comparison of molecular methods for hepatitis B virus (HBV) DNA detection from oral fluid samples. *J Med Microbiol* 2012; **61**: 844-851 [PMID: 22403138 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.040238-0]

101 **Jardi R**, Rodriguez-Frias F, Buti M, Schaper M, Valdes A, Martinez M, Esteban R, Guardia J. Usefulness of dried blood samples for quantification and molecular characterization of HBV-DNA. *Hepatology* 2004; **40**: 133-139 [PMID: 15239096 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20275]

102 **Pourkarim MR**, Amini-Bavil-Olyaee S, Kurbanov F, Van Ranst M, Tacke F. Molecular identification of hepatitis B virus genotypes/subgenotypes: revised classification hurdles and updated resolutions. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 7152-7168 [PMID: 24966586 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i23.7152]

103 **Yeon JE**. Technique for the early detection of drug-resistant HBV DNA during antiviral therapy. *Intervirology* 2008; **51** Suppl 1: 7-10 [PMID: 18544942 DOI: 10.1159/000122593]

104 **Amini-Bavil-Olyaee S**, Tacke F, Alavian SM. HBV Subgenotypes D1, D2, D-del! Are 'Old' Genotyping Methods Interpreted Correctly? *Hepat Mon* 2013; **13**: e13048 [PMID: 24066000 DOI: 10.5812/hepatmon.13048]

105 **Osiowy C**, Giles E. Evaluation of the INNO-LiPA HBV genotyping assay for determination of hepatitis B virus genotype. *J Clin Microbiol* 2003; **41**: 5473-5477 [PMID: 14662927 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.41.12.5473-5477.2003]

106 **Stuyver L**, Van Geyt C, De Gendt S, Van Reybroeck G, Zoulim F, Leroux-Roels G, Rossau R. Line probe assay for monitoring drug resistance in hepatitis B virus-infected patients during antiviral therapy. *J Clin Microbiol* 2000; **38**: 702-707 [PMID: 10655370]

107 **Ali MM**, Hasan F, Ahmad S, Al-Nakib W. Comparative evaluation of INNO-LiPA HBV assay, direct DNA sequencing and subtractive PCR-RFLP for genotyping of clinical HBV isolates. *Virol J* 2010; **7**: 111 [PMID: 20509964 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-7-111]

108 **Keeffe EB**, Dieterich DT, Pawlotsky JM, Benhamou Y. Chronic hepatitis B: preventing, detecting, and managing viral resistance. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 268-274 [PMID: 18328434 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2007.12.043]

109 **Gintowt AA**, Germer JJ, Mitchell PS, Yao JD. Evaluation of the MagNA Pure LC used with the TRUGENE HBV Genotyping Kit. *J Clin Virol* 2005; **34**: 155-157 [PMID: 16023890 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2005.05.008]

110 **Basaras M**, Arrese E, Blanco S, Arroyo LS, Ruiz P, Cisterna R. Comparison of INNO-LIPA and TRUGENE assays for genotyping and drug-resistance mutations in chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Intervirology* 2013; **56**: 190-194 [PMID: 23594698 DOI: 10.1159/000348502]

111 **Kim JH**, Park YK, Park ES, Kim KH. Molecular diagnosis and treatment of drug-resistant hepatitis B virus. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 5708-5720 [PMID: 24914332 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i19.5708]

112 **Beerenwinkel N**, Zagordi O. Ultra-deep sequencing for the analysis of viral populations. *Curr Opin Virol* 2011; **1**: 413-418 [PMID: 22440844 DOI: 10.1016/j.coviro.2011.07.008]

113 **Radford AD**, Chapman D, Dixon L, Chantrey J, Darby AC, Hall N. Application of next-generation sequencing technologies in virology. *J Gen Virol* 2012; **93**: 1853-1868 [PMID: 22647373 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.043182-0]

114 **Bayliss J**, Nguyen T, Lesmana CR, Bowden S, Revill P. Advances in the molecular diagnosis of hepatitis B infection: providing insight into the next generation of disease. *Semin Liver Dis* 2013; **33**: 113-121 [PMID: 23749667 DOI: 10.1055/s-0033-1345714]

115 **Rodriguez-Frias F**, Buti M, Tabernero D, Homs M. Quasispecies structure, cornerstone of hepatitis B virus infection: mass sequencing approach. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 6995-7023 [PMID: 24222943 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i41.6995]

116 **Metzker ML**. Sequencing technologies - the next generation. *Nat Rev Genet* 2010; **11**: 31-46 [PMID: 19997069 DOI: 10.1038/nrg2626]

117 **Chevaliez S**, Pawlotsky JM. Hepatitis C virus serologic and virologic tests and clinical diagnosis of HCV-related liver disease. *Int J Med Sci* 2006; **3**: 35-40 [PMID: 16614740 DOI: 10.7150/ijms.3.35]

118 **Brandão AB**, Fuchs SC, Silva MA, Emer LF. [Diagnosis of hepatitis C in clinical practice: review of the literature]. *Rev Panam Salud Publica* 2001; **9**: 161-168 [PMID: 11349351 DOI: 10.1590/S1020-49892001000300005]

119 **Aach RD**, Stevens CE, Hollinger FB, Mosley JW, Peterson DA, Taylor PE, Johnson RG, Barbosa LH, Nemo GJ. Hepatitis C virus infection in post-transfusion hepatitis. An analysis with first- and second-generation assays. *N Engl J Med* 1991; **325**: 1325-1329 [PMID: 1656258 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199111073251901]

120 **Scott JD**, Gretch DR. Molecular diagnostics of hepatitis C virus infection: a systematic review. *JAMA* 2007; **297**: 724-732 [PMID: 17312292 DOI: 10.1001/jama.297.7.724]

121 **Firdaus R**, Saha K, Biswas A, Sadhukhan PC. Current molecular methods for the detection of hepatitis C virus in high risk group population: A systematic review. *World J Virol* 2015; **4**: 25-32 [PMID: 25674515 DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i1.25]

122 **Alter HJ**. New kit on the block: evaluation of second-generation assays for detection of antibody to the hepatitis C virus. *Hepatology* 1992; **15**: 350-353 [PMID: 1310478 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840150228]

123 **Lee SR**, Wood CL, Lane MJ, Francis B, Gust C, Higgs CM, Nelles MJ, Polito A, DiNello R, Achord D. Increased detection of hepatitis C virus infection in commercial plasma donors by a third-generation screening assay. *Transfusion* 1995; **35**: 845-849 [PMID: 7570915 DOI: 10.1046/j.1537-2995.1995.351096026366.x]

124 **Colin C**, Lanoir D, Touzet S, Meyaud-Kraemer L, Bailly F, Trepo C. Sensitivity and specificity of third-generation hepatitis C virus antibody detection assays: an analysis of the literature. *J Viral Hepat* 2001; **8**: 87-95 [PMID: 11264728 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2893.2001.00280.x]

125 **Albeldawi M**, Ruiz-Rodriguez E, Carey WD. Hepatitis C virus: Prevention, screening, and interpretation of assays. *Cleve Clin J Med* 2010; **77**: 616-626 [PMID: 20810872 DOI: 10.3949/ccjm.77a.09162]

126 **Klimashevskaya S**, Obriadina A, Ulanova T, Bochkova G, Burkov A, Araujo A, Stramer SL, Tobler LH, Busch MP, Fields HA. Distinguishing acute from chronic and resolved hepatitis C virus (HCV) infections by measurement of anti-HCV immunoglobulin G avidity index. *J Clin Microbiol* 2007; **45**: 3400-3403 [PMID: 17715377 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.01012-07]

127 **Gaudy-Graffin C**, Lesage G, Kousignian I, Laperche S, Girault A, Dubois F, Goudeau A, Barin F. Use of an anti-hepatitis C virus (HCV) IgG avidity assay to identify recent HCV infection. *J Clin Microbiol* 2010; **48**: 3281-3287 [PMID: 20610669 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.00303-10]

128 **Coppola N**, Pisapia R, Marrocco C, Martini S, Vatiero LM, Messina V, Tonziello G, Sagnelli C, Filippini P, Piccinino F, Sagnelli E. Anti-HCV IgG avidity index in acute hepatitis C. *J Clin Virol* 2007; **40**: 110-115 [PMID: 17720621 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2007.07.005]

129 **Shepherd SJ**, Kean J, Hutchinson SJ, Cameron SO, Goldberg DJ, Carman WF, Gunson RN, Aitken C. A hepatitis C avidity test for determining recent and past infections in both plasma and dried blood spots. *J Clin Virol* 2013; **57**: 29-35 [PMID: 23369886 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2013.01.002]

130 **Croom HA**, Richards KM, Best SJ, Francis BH, Johnson EI, Dax EM, Wilson KM. Commercial enzyme immunoassay adapted for the detection of antibodies to hepatitis C virus in dried blood spots. *J Clin Virol* 2006; **36**: 68-71 [PMID: 16426889 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2005.12.002]

131 **Tuaillon E**, Mondain AM, Meroueh F, Ottomani L, Picot MC, Nagot N, Van de Perre P, Ducos J. Dried blood spot for hepatitis C virus serology and molecular testing. *Hepatology* 2010; **51**: 752-758 [PMID: 20043287 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23407]

132 **Marques BL**, Brandão CU, Silva EF, Marques VA, Villela-Nogueira CA, Do Ó KM, de Paula MT, Lewis-Ximenez LL, Lampe E, Villar LM. Dried blood spot samples: optimization of commercial EIAs for hepatitis C antibody detection and stability under different storage conditions. *J Med Virol* 2012; **84**: 1600-1607 [PMID: 22930508 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.23379]

133 **Brandão CP**, Marques BL, Marques VA, Villela-Nogueira CA, Do Ó KM, de Paula MT, Lewis-Ximenez LL, Lampe E, Sá Ferreira JA, Villar LM. Simultaneous detection of hepatitis C virus antigen and antibodies in dried blood spots. *J Clin Virol* 2013; **57**: 98-102 [PMID: 23518440 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2013.02.014]

134 **Cruz HM**, Marques VA, Villela-Nogueira CA, do Ó KM, Lewis-Ximenez LL, Lampe E, Villar LM. An evaluation of different saliva collection methods for detection of antibodies against hepatitis C virus (anti-HCV). *J Oral Pathol Med* 2012; **41**: 793-800 [PMID: 22690929 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0714.2012.01176.x]

135 **Wiwanitkit V**. Saliva collection methods for detection of anti-HCV. *J Oral Pathol Med* 2013; **42**: 113 [PMID: 22943095 DOI: 10.1111/jop.12001]

136 **Tejada-Strop A**, Drobeniuc J, Mixson-Hayden T, Forbi JC, Le NT, Li L, Mei J, Terrault N, Kamili S. Disparate detection outcomes for anti-HCV IgG and HCV RNA in dried blood spots. *J Virol Methods* 2015; **212**: 66-70 [PMID: 25445800 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2014.10.018]

137 **Pei X**, Zhang B, Tang J, Liu B, Lai W, Tang D. Sandwich-type immunosensors and immunoassays exploiting nanostructure labels: A review. *Anal Chim Acta* 2013; **758**: 1-18 [PMID: 23245891 DOI: 10.1016/j.aca.2012.10.060]

138 **Zanetti AR**, Romanò L, Brunetto M, Colombo M, Bellati G, Tackney C. Total HCV core antigen assay: a new marker of hepatitis C viremia for monitoring the progress of therapy. *J Med Virol* 2003; **70**: 27-30 [PMID: 12629640 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.10355]

139 **Park Y**, Lee JH, Kim BS, Kim do Y, Han KH, Kim HS. New automated hepatitis C virus (HCV) core antigen assay as an alternative to real-time PCR for HCV RNA quantification. *J Clin Microbiol* 2010; **48**: 2253-2256 [PMID: 20351215 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.01856-09]

140 **Moscato GA**, Giannelli G, Grandi B, Pieri D, Marsi O, Guarducci I, Batini I, Altomare E, Antonaci S, Capria A, Pellegrini G, Sacco R. Quantitative determination of hepatitis C core antigen in therapy monitoring for chronic hepatitis C. *Intervirology* 2011; **54**: 61-65 [PMID: 20829601 DOI: 10.1159/000318878]

141 **Tillmann HL**. Hepatitis C virus core antigen testing: role in diagnosis, disease monitoring and treatment. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 6701-6706 [PMID: 24944462 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i22.6701]

142 **Larrat S**, Bourdon C, Baccard M, Garnaud C, Mathieu S, Quesada JL, Signori-Schmuck A, Germi R, Blanc M, Leclercq P, Hilleret MN, Leroy V, Zarski JP, Morand P. Performance of an antigen-antibody combined assay for hepatitis C virus testing without venipuncture. *J Clin Virol* 2012; **55**: 220-225 [PMID: 22901327 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2012.07.016]

143 **Vanhommerig JW**, van de Laar TJ, Koot M, van Rooijen MS, Schinkel J, Speksnijder AG, Prins M, de Vries HJ, Bruisten SM. Evaluation of a hepatitis C virus (HCV) antigen assay for routine HCV screening among men who have sex with men infected with HIV. *J Virol Methods* 2015; **213**: 147-150 [PMID: 25528203 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2014.11.026]

144 **El-Emshaty WM**, Raafat D, Elghannam DM, Saudy N, Eltoraby EE, Metwalli AE. Diagnostic Performance of an Immunoassay for Simultaneous Detection of Hcv Core Antigen and Antibodies among Haemodialysis Patients. *Braz J Microbiol* 2011; **42**: 303-309 [PMID: 24031636 DOI: 10.1590/S1517-83822011000100039]

145 **Ismail N**, Fish GE, Smith MB. Laboratory evaluation of a fully automated chemiluminescence immunoassay for rapid detection of HBsAg, antibodies to HBsAg, and antibodies to hepatitis C virus. *J Clin Microbiol* 2004; **42**: 610-617 [PMID: 14766824 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.42.2.610-617.2004]

146 **Jonas G**, Pelzer C, Beckert C, Hausmann M, Kapprell HP. Performance characteristics of the ARCHITECT anti-HCV assay. *J Clin Virol* 2005; **34**: 97-103 [PMID: 16122974 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2005.08.001]

147 **Saludes V**, González V, Planas R, Matas L, Ausina V, Martró E. Tools for the diagnosis of hepatitis C virus infection and hepatic fibrosis staging. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 3431-3442 [PMID: 24707126 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i13.3431]

148 **Lok AS**, Gunaratnam NT. Diagnosis of hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 1997; **26**: 48S-56S [PMID: 9305664 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510260709]

149 **Heiat M**, Ranjbar R, Alavian SM. Classical and modern approaches used for viral hepatitis diagnosis. *Hepat Mon* 2014; **14**: e17632 [PMID: 24829586 DOI: 10.5812/hepatmon.17632]

150 **Ngom B**, Guo Y, Wang X, Bi D. Development and application of lateral flow test strip technology for detection of infectious agents and chemical contaminants: a review. *Anal Bioanal Chem* 2010; **397**: 1113-1135 [PMID: 20422164 DOI: 10.1007/s00216-010-3661-4]

151 **Parisi MR**, Soldini L, Vidoni G, Mabellini C, Belloni T, Brignolo L, Negri S, Schlusnus K, Dorigatti F, Lazzarin A. Point-of-care testing for HCV infection: recent advances and implications for alternative screening. *New Microbiol* 2014; **37**: 449-457 [PMID: 25387283]

152 **Kim MH**, Kang SY, Lee WI. Evaluation of a new rapid test kit to detect hepatitis C virus infection. *J Virol Methods* 2013; **193**: 379-382 [PMID: 23871756 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2013.07.005]

153 **Tagny CT**, Mbanya D, Murphy EL, Lefrère JJ, Laperche S. Screening for hepatitis C virus infection in a high prevalence country by an antigen/antibody combination assay versus a rapid test. *J Virol Methods* 2014; **199**: 119-123 [PMID: 24487098 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2014.01.002]

154 **Scalioni Lde P**, Cruz HM, de Paula VS, Miguel JC, Marques VA, Villela-Nogueira CA, Milagres FA, Cruz MS, Bastos FI, Andrade TM, Motta-Castro AR, Lewis-Ximenez LL, Lampe E, Villar LM. Performance of rapid hepatitis C virus antibody assays among high- and low-risk populations. *J Clin Virol* 2014; **60**: 200-205 [PMID: 24794796 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2014.04.001]

155 **Kant J**, Möller B, Heyne R, Herber A, Böhm S, Maier M, Liebert UG, Mössner J, Berg T, Wiegand J. Evaluation of a rapid on-site anti-HCV test as a screening tool for hepatitis C virus infection. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **25**: 416-420 [PMID: 23211286 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e32835c502d]

156 **Khuroo MS**, Khuroo NS, Khuroo MS. Diagnostic accuracy of point-of-care tests for hepatitis C virus infection: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0121450 [PMID: 25816332 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0121450]

157 **Center for Disease Control and Prevention**. Testing for HCV Infection: An Update of Guidance for Clinicians and Laboratorians. [Updated 2013 May 10; accessed 2015 March 07]. Available from: URL: http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm6218a5.htm

158 **Pawlotsky JM**. Use and interpretation of virological tests for hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: S65-S73 [PMID: 12407578 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2002.36815]

159 **Scott JD**, McMahon BJ, Bruden D, Sullivan D, Homan C, Christensen C, Gretch DR. High rate of spontaneous negativity for hepatitis C virus RNA after establishment of chronic infection in Alaska Natives. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **42**: 945-952 [PMID: 16511757 DOI: 10.1086/500938]

160 **Amjad M**, Moudgal V, Faisal M. Laboratory Methods for Diagnosis and Management of Hepatitis C Virus Infection. *Lab Medicine* 2013; **44**: 292-299 [DOI: 10.1309/LMASROYD8BRS0GC9]

161 **Casanova YS**, Boeira Tda R, Sisti E, Celmer Á, Fonseca AS, Ikuta N, Simon D, Lunge VR. A complete molecular biology assay for hepatitis C virus detection, quantification and genotyping. *Rev Soc Bras Med Trop* 2014; **47**: 287-294 [PMID: 25075478 DOI: 10.1590/0037-8682-0040-2014]

162 **Menezes GB**, Pereira FA, Duarte CA, Carmo TM, Silva Filho HP, Zarife MA, Krieger MA, Reis EA, Reis MG. Hepatitis C virus quantification in serum and saliva of HCV-infected patients. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2012; **107**: 680-683 [PMID: 22850960 DOI: 10.1590/S0074-02762012000500016]

163 **Espírito-Santo MP**, Brandão-Mello CE, Marques VA, Lampe E, Almeida AJ. Analysis of hepatitis C virus (HCV) RNA load in platelets of HCV-monoinfected patients receiving antiviral therapy. *Ann Hepatol* 2013; **12**: 373-379 [PMID: 23619253]

164 **Feijoo J**, Eirea M, Limeres J, Abeleira M, Ramos I, Ocampo A, Diz P. HCV clearance from saliva of HIV-HCV-coinfected patients on treatment with interferon plus ribavirin. *Oral Dis* 2014; **20**: 313-318 [PMID: 23607445 DOI: 10.1111/odi.12116]

165 **Dokubo EK**, Evans J, Winkelman V, Cyrus S, Tobler LH, Asher A, Briceno A, Page K. Comparison of Hepatitis C Virus RNA and antibody detection in dried blood spots and plasma specimens. *J Clin Virol* 2014; **59**: 223-227 [PMID: 24529844 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2014.01.014]

166 **Greenman J**, Roberts T, Cohn J, Messac L. Dried blood spot in the genotyping, quantification and storage of HCV RNA: a systematic literature review. *J Viral Hepat* 2015; **22**: 353-361 [PMID: 25367722 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12345]

167 **Bartenschlager R**, Cosset FL, Lohmann V. Hepatitis C virus replication cycle. *J Hepatol* 2010; **53**: 583-585 [PMID: 20579761 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.04.015]

168 **Lange C**, Sarrazin C. Hepatitis C: Diagnostic tests. 5th ed. In: Mauss S, Berg T, Rockstroh J, Sarrazin C, Wedemeyer H. Germany: Druckhaus Süd, 2014: 196-212

169 **Albertoni G**, Castelo Girão MJ, Schor N. Mini review: current molecular methods for the detection and quantification of hepatitis B virus, hepatitis C virus, and human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *Int J Infect Dis* 2014; **25**: 145-149 [PMID: 24927665 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijid.2014.04.007]

170 **Konnick EQ**, Erali M, Ashwood ER, Hillyard DR. Performance characteristics of the COBAS Amplicor Hepatitis C Virus (HCV) Monitor, Version 2.0, International Unit assay and the National Genetics Institute HCV Superquant assay. *J Clin Microbiol* 2002; **40**: 768-773 [PMID: 11880391 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.40.3.768-773.2002]

171 **Lee SC**, Antony A, Lee N, Leibow J, Yang JQ, Soviero S, Gutekunst K, Rosenstraus M. Improved version 2.0 qualitative and quantitative AMPLICOR reverse transcription-PCR tests for hepatitis C virus RNA: calibration to international units, enhanced genotype reactivity, and performance characteristics. *J Clin Microbiol* 2000; **38**: 4171-4179 [PMID: 11060086]

172 **Desombere I**, Van Vlierberghe H, Couvent S, Clinckspoor F, Leroux-Roels G. Comparison of qualitative (COBAS AMPLICOR HCV 2.0 versus VERSANT HCV RNA) and quantitative (COBAS AMPLICOR HCV monitor 2.0 versus VERSANT HCV RNA 3.0) assays for hepatitis C virus (HCV) RNA detection and quantification: impact on diagnosis and treatment of HCV infections. *J Clin Microbiol* 2005; **43**: 2590-2597 [PMID: 15956369 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.43.6.2590-2597.2005]

173 **Martins PP**, Lampe E, Lewis-Ximenez LL, de Souza PS, Fernandes CA, Villar LM. Performance of molecular methods for hepatitis C virus diagnosis: usefulness among chronic cases and during the course of infection. *Clin Lab* 2013; **59**: 1031-1039 [PMID: 24273925]

174 **Zitzer H**, Heilek G, Truchon K, Susser S, Vermehren J, Sizmann D, Cobb B, Sarrazin C. Second-generation Cobas AmpliPrep/Cobas TaqMan HCV quantitative test for viral load monitoring: a novel dual-probe assay design. *J Clin Microbiol* 2013; **51**: 571-577 [PMID: 23241371 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.01784-12]

175 **Michelin BD**, Muller Z, Stelzl E, Marth E, Kessler HH. Evaluation of the Abbott RealTime HCV assay for quantitative detection of hepatitis C virus RNA. *J Clin Virol* 2007; **38**: 96-100 [PMID: 17185031 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2006.11.007]

176 **Sábato MF**, Shiffman ML, Langley MR, Wilkinson DS, Ferreira-Gonzalez A. Comparison of performance characteristics of three real-time reverse transcription-PCR test systems for detection and quantification of hepatitis C virus. *J Clin Microbiol* 2007; **45**: 2529-2536 [PMID: 17567786 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.00058-07]

177 **Vermehren J**, Kau A, Gärtner BC, Göbel R, Zeuzem S, Sarrazin C. Differences between two real-time PCR-based hepatitis C virus (HCV) assays (RealTime HCV and Cobas AmpliPrep/Cobas TaqMan) and one signal amplification assay (Versant HCV RNA 3.0) for RNA detection and quantification. *J Clin Microbiol* 2008; **46**: 3880-3891 [PMID: 18799708 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.00755-08]

178 **Murphy DG**, Willems B, Deschênes M, Hilzenrat N, Mousseau R, Sabbah S. Use of sequence analysis of the NS5B region for routine genotyping of hepatitis C virus with reference to C/E1 and 5' untranslated region sequences. *J Clin Microbiol* 2007; **45**: 1102-1112 [PMID: 17287328 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02366-06]

179 **Smith DB**, Bukh J, Kuiken C, Muerhoff AS, Rice CM, Stapleton JT, Simmonds P. Expanded classification of hepatitis C virus into 7 genotypes and 67 subtypes: updated criteria and genotype assignment web resource. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 318-327 [PMID: 24115039 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26744]

180 **Hoofnagle JH**. Course and outcome of hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: S21-S29 [PMID: 12407573 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2002.36227]

181 **Nolte FS**, Green AM, Fiebelkorn KR, Caliendo AM, Sturchio C, Grunwald A, Healy M. Clinical evaluation of two methods for genotyping hepatitis C virus based on analysis of the 5' noncoding region. *J Clin Microbiol* 2003; **41**: 1558-1564 [PMID: 12682145 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.41.4.1558-1564.2003]

182 **Chevaliez S**, Pawlotsky JM. Hepatitis C virus: virology, diagnosis and management of antiviral therapy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 2461-2466 [PMID: 17552030 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v13.i17.2461]

183 **Enache EL**, Enache LS. Versant HCV Genotype 2.0 Assay (LiPA) in Hepatitis C Virus Genotype Determination. *Rev Romana Med Labor* 2008; **12**: 47-53

184 **Espírito-Santo MP**, Carneiro MA, Reis NR, Kozlowski AG, Teles SA, Lampe E, Yoshida CF, Martins RM. Genotyping hepatitis C virus from hemodialysis patients in Central Brazil by line probe assay and sequence analysis. *Braz J Med Biol Res* 2007; **40**: 545-550 [PMID: 17401498 DOI: 10.1590/S0100-879X2007000400013]

185 **Raymond HW**, Cimmins C. Evaluation of the Abbott Molecular Diagnostics Real Time PCR Assay for HCV Quantitative Viral Load and HCV Genotyping. Poster S30, Clinical Virology Symposium, 2004

186 **Oliveira ML**, Bastos FI, Sabino RR, Paetzold U, Schreier E, Pauli G, Yoshida CF. Distribution of HCV genotypes among different exposure categories in Brazil. *Braz J Med Biol Res* 1999; **32**: 279-282 [PMID: 10347784]

187 **Villar LM**, Amado LA, de Almeida AJ, de Paula VS, Lewis-Ximenez LL, Lampe E. Low prevalence of hepatitis B and C virus markers among children and adolescents. *Biomed Res Int* 2014; **2014**: 324638 [PMID: 25093164 DOI: 10.1155/2014/324638]

188 **Cavalheiro NP**. Hepatitis C: Genotyping. *BJID* 2007; **11** Suppl 1: 25-27 [DOI: 10.1590/S1413-86702007000700009]

189 **Lampe E**, Espirito-Santo MP, Martins RM, Bello G. Epidemic history of Hepatitis C virus in Brazil. *Infect Genet Evol* 2010; **10**: 886-895 [PMID: 20663735 DOI: 10.1016/j.meegid.2010.05.010]

190 **Peres-da-Silva A**, de Almeida AJ, Lampe E. Mutations in hepatitis C virus NS3 protease domain associated with resistance to specific protease inhibitors in antiviral therapy naïve patients. *Arch Virol* 2010; **155**: 807-811 [PMID: 20405151 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-010-0642-z]

191 **Lampe E**, Lewis-Ximenez L, Espírito-Santo MP, Delvaux NM, Pereira SA, Peres-da-Silva A, Martins RM, Soares MA, Santos

AF, Vidal LL, Germano FN, de Martinez AM, Basso R, Pinho JR, Malta FM, Gomes-Gouvêa M, Moliterno RA, Bertolini DA, Fujishima MA, Bello G. Genetic diversity of HCV in Brazil. *Antivir Ther* 2013; **18**: 435-444 [PMID: 23792792 DOI: 10.3851/IMP2606]

192 **Feeney ER**, Chung RT. Antiviral treatment of hepatitis C. *BMJ* 2014; **348**: g3308 [PMID: 25002352 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.g3308]

193 **Peres-da-Silva A**, de Almeida AJ, Lampe E. NS5A inhibitor resistance-associated polymorphisms in Brazilian treatment-naive patients infected with genotype 1 hepatitis C virus. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2015; **70**: 726-730 [PMID: 25414201 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dku462]

194 **Clavel F**, Hance AJ. HIV drug resistance. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **350**: 1023-1035 [PMID: 14999114 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra025195]

195 **Ninomiya M**, Ueno Y, Funayama R, Nagashima T, Nishida Y, Kondo Y, Inoue J, Kakazu E, Kimura O, Nakayama K, Shimosegawa T. Use of illumina deep sequencing technology to differentiate hepatitis C virus variants. *J Clin Microbiol* 2012; **50**: 857-866 [PMID: 22205816 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.05715-11]

196 **Mangul S**, Wu NC, Mancuso N, Zelikovsky A, Sun R, Eskin E. Accurate viral population assembly from ultra-deep sequencing data. *Bioinformatics* 2014; **30**: i329-i337 [PMID: 24932001 DOI: 10.1093/bioinformatics/btu295]

197 **Afzal MS**, Khan MY, Ammar M, Anjum S, Zaidi NU. Diagnostically untypable hepatitis C virus variants: it is time to resolve the problem. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 17690-17692 [PMID: 25516688 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i46.17690]

198 **Chakravarty R**. Diagnosis and monitoring of chronic viral hepatitis: serologic and molecular markers. *Front Biosci* (Schol Ed) 2011; **3**: 156-167 [PMID: 21196366 DOI: 10.2741/s141]

P- Reviewer: Afzal MS, Chiang TA, Farzin R **S- Editor**: Qiu S
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i4.343

World J Virol 2015 November 12; 4(4): 343-355
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Hepatitis E virus infection: Epidemiology and treatment implications

Ga Young Lee, Kittiyod Poovorawan, Duangnapa Intharasongkroh, Pattaratida Sa-nguanmoo, Sompong Vongpunsawad, Chintana Chirathaworn, Yong Poovorawan

Ga Young Lee, Kittiyod Poovorawan, Department of Clinical Tropical Medicine, Faculty of Tropical Medicine, Mahidol University, Bangkok 10400, Thailand

Duangnapa Intharasongkroh, Pattaratida Sa-nguanmoo, Sompong Vongpunsawad, Yong Poovorawan, Center of Excellence in Clinical Virology, Department of Pediatrics, Faculty of Medicine, Chulalongkorn University, Bangkok 10330, Thailand

Duangnapa Intharasongkroh, National Blood Centre, Thai Red Cross Society, Bangkok 10330, Thailand

Chintana Chirathaworn, Department of Microbiology, Faculty of Medicine, Chulalongkorn University, Bangkok 10330, Thailand

Author contributions: Poovorawan Y designed and outlined the research; Lee GY, Poovorawan K, Intharasongkroh D, Sa-nguanmoo P, Vongpunsawad S and Chirathaworn C wrote the paper.

Supported by The National Research University Project, Office of Higher Education Commission, Nos. WCU001-HR-57, WCU007-HR-57, and WCU-58-006-HR; The National Research Council of Thailand (NRCT); The Research Chair Grant from the National Science and Technology Development Agency, Chulalongkorn University Centenary Academic Development Project, No. CU56-HR01; Ratchadaphiseksomphot Endowment Fund of Chulalongkorn University, No. RES560530093; The Outstanding Professor of Thailand Research Fund, No. DPG5480002; The Doctoral Degree Chulalongkorn University 100th Year Birthday Anniversary to Duangnapa Intharasongkroh; and The Rachadapisek Sompote Fund of Chulalongkorn University for Postdoctoral Fellowship to Pattaratida Sa-nguanmoo.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflicts of interests for this article.

Correspondence to: Yong Poovorawan, MD, Professor, Center of Excellence in Clinical Virology, Department of Pediatrics, Faculty of Medicine, Chulalongkorn University, Rama Ⅳ Rd, Bangkok 10330, Thailand. yong.p@chula.ac.th
Telephone: +66-2-2564909
Fax: +66-2-2564929

Received: May 25, 2015
Peer-review started: May 26, 2015
First decision: July 27, 2015
Revised: August 6, 2015
Accepted: September 16, 2015
Article in press: September 18, 2015
Published online: November 12, 2015

Abstract

Hepatitis E virus (HEV) infection is now established as an emerging enteric viral hepatitis. Standard treatments in acute and chronic hepatitis E remain to be established. This study undertakes a review of the epidemiology, treatment implication and vaccine prevention from published literature. HEV infection is a worldwide public health problem and can cause acute and chronic hepatitis E. HEV genotypes 1 and 2 are primarily found in developing countries due to waterborne transmission, while the zoonotic potential of genotypes 3 and 4 affects mostly industrialized countries. An awareness of HEV transmission through blood donation, especially in the immunocompromised and solid organ transplant patients, merits an effective anti-viral therapy. There are currently no clear indications for the treatment of acute hepatitis E. Despite concerns for side effects, ribavirin monotherapy or in combination with pegylated

interferon alpha for at least 3 mo appeared to show significant efficacy in the treatment of chronic hepatitis E. However, there are no available treatment options for specific patient population groups, such as women who are pregnant. Vaccination and screening of HEV in blood donors are currently a global priority in managing infection. New strategies for the treatment and control of hepatitis E are required for both acute and chronic infections, such as prophylactic use of medications, controlling large outbreaks, and finding acceptable antiviral therapy for pregnant women and other patient groups for whom the current options of treatment are not viable.

Key words: Treatments; Blood donors; Adverse effects; Vaccination; Pegylated-interferon; Ribavirin; Hepatitis E

Core tip: Hepatitis E virus (HEV) infection affects individuals in both industrialized and developing countries and can cause acute and chronic hepatitis E. HEV genotypes 1 and 2 are primarily found in developing countries due to waterborne transmission, while the zoonotic potential of genotypes 3 and 4 affects mostly industrialized countries. An awareness of HEV transmission through blood donation, especially in the immunocompromised and solid organ transplant patients, merits an effective anti-viral therapy. The current treatment for HEV infection involving ribavirin and pegylated interferon-α therapy has shown limited efficacy. Although not widely used, an HEV vaccine is available for immunization in China.

Lee GY, Poovorawan K, Intharasongkroh D, Sa-nguanmoo P, Vongpunsawad S, Chirathaworn C, Poovorawan Y. Hepatitis E virus infection: Epidemiology and treatment implications. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(4): 343-355 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i4/343.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i4.343

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis E infection is now regarded as a major cause of fecal-orally transmitted non-A, non-B hepatitis. Hepatitis E virus (HEV) is a non-enveloped, single-stranded RNA virus that contains three open reading frames (ORFs) that encode structural and non-structural proteins[1]. There are 4 major HEV genotypes (1, 2, 3 and 4). Symptomatic HEV infections produce varying clinical presentations depending on the HEV genotypes. Fulminant hepatic failures are caused mainly by genotype 1, while chronic infections have been observed only with genotype 3 thus far[2]. Recent reports of sporadic cases from developed countries in Europe and in the United States resulted from HEV genotype 3, which is zoonotic[3]. In a 2015 survey on the seroprevalence and risk factors for HEV infection among slaughterhouse workers in South Korea, the seropositive rate for HEV IgG was 33.5%[4]. Another report from Thailand in 2014 found that HEV strains identified from acute symptomatic hepatitis E infections were all genotype 3f, which was genetically closely related to a strain isolated in swine[5].

The clinical course of HEV infection among pregnant women is known to be more severe and often led to fulminant hepatic failure and death in up to 20%-25%, specifically in those living in developing countries[6]. The mortality rate has been found to be higher during the 2nd and the 3rd trimester[7]. However, underlying factors influencing high mortality during pregnancy are poorly understood.

Studies in chimpanzees to examine HEV and hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection revealed that HEV showed a lower frequency and a shorter duration of differentially expressed genes compared to HCV in intrahepatic transcriptome analysis. This suggests that HEV may be more susceptible to the innate immunity induced by interferon alpha[8]. However, HEV showed suppression of interferon alpha signaling *in vitro*[9].

MOLECULAR VIROLOGY OF HEV

HEV belongs to the family *Hepeviridae*[10]. It is a small non-enveloped virus 27-34 nm in diameter. The single-stranded positive-sense RNA genome of HEV is approximately 7.2 kb, 7-methylguanine capped at the 5′ terminus, and polyadenylated at the 3′ terminus[11]. Both ends of the genome consist of short 5′ and 3′ untranslated regions, which fold into stem-loop structures and are approximately 58 and 68 nucleotides, respectively[12]. The viral genome contains 3 open reading frames (ORF)[10,13]. ORF1 encodes a 1693 amino acid non-structural polyprotein including: Methyltransferase (MeT), which catalyses the capping of viral RNA; a papain like cysteine protease (PCP) with presumed post-translational protein processing; a helicase (Hel), which supports MeT by catalyzing the first step of RNA capping; an RNA-dependent RNA polymerase (RdRp) required for the synthesis of the genomic RNA; and several uncharacterized domains such as X or Macro, Y and V domain[1,12]. ORF2 located near the 3′ end encodes 599 to 660 amino acids capsid protein[1,10]. It is involved in virion assembly, cell attachment, and immunogenicity. ORF3, which overlaps ORF2, encodes a protein of 114 amino acids shown to be associated with subcellular localization and virion morphogenesis[11,14] (Figure 1).

Replication steps in the HEV life cycle are not easily elucidated due to lack of a suitable cell culture system. However, proposed replication cycle commences with the viral attachment to the surface of target cells (hepatocyte) and binding to the unknown receptor(s). Next, the virus penetrates, uncoats, and releases the genomic RNA. Translation of the nonstructural proteins occurs in the cytoplasm. RdRp synthesizes the negative-sense intermediate RNA from the positive-sense genome, which subsequently acts as a template for

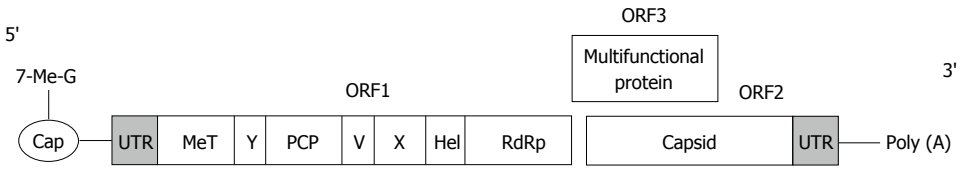


Figure 1 Schematic representation of hepatitis E virus genome[1,12,14]. ORF: Open reading frame; UTR: Untranslated region; MeT: Methyltransferase; PCP: A papain like cysteine protease; Hel: Helicase.

the synthesis of subgenomic RNA and the full-length positive-sense transcripts. The subgenomic RNA is then translated into ORF2 and ORF3 proteins, which facilitates viral assembly and optimizes the host cell environment for viral replication[11,12]. The mechanism of viral egress from the host cells remains unclear[15,16].

IMMUNE RESPONSES IN HEV INFECTION

Investigation of host immune responses against virus infection are essential to understand host immunity and for vaccine development. Several studies have examined the host immune responses following HEV infection and the roles of immune components responsible for causing liver damage as a consequence of HEV infection. Although the mechanisms of hepatic injury enhanced by the host immune responses to HEV infection are still unclear[17-19], we review here the available literatures on HEV infection and how it affects host immunity and induction of liver injury.

Once HEV enters the body, viral clearance involves recruitment of immune cells against infection. These cells recognize HEV in the early stages through pattern recognition receptors. HEV components are then detected by toll-like receptors and retinoic acid-inducible gene-Ⅰ like receptors. Subsequent recruitment of adapter proteins MyD88 and TRIF mediate interferon regulatory transcription factor 3 (IRF3) and nuclear factor κB (NF-κB) to produce type Ⅰ interferons and pro-inflammatory cytokines vital to antiviral response[20].

Type Ⅰ interferons are cytokines, which play important roles in innate immunity against virus infection. Interferon-inducible genes are up-regulated in HEV infected PLC/PRF/5 cells. Replication of HEV in this cell type was inhibited when cells were treated with interferon (IFN)-α2b[21]. A549 cells infected with HEV genotype 3 showed inhibition of IFN-α induced the signal transducer and activator of transcription 1 (STAT1) phosphorylation. Additionally, HEV ORF3 protein enhances IFN-β production induced by poly (I·C), a double-stranded RNA analogue[22]. HEV ORF3 was also shown to bind STAT1 resulting in inhibition of STAT1 phosphorylation[9]. A study in hepatocyte cells demonstrated that HEV infection inhibited IFN-β production induced by poly (I·C). Meanwhile, HEV ORF1 was identified as an IFN antagonist. It inhibited phosphorylation and ubiquitination of various proteins involving in interferon production such as IRF3, retinoic acid-inducible gene 1 and TANK-binding kinase 1[23]. ORF1 also activates the promoter activity of a chemokine, chemokine (C-X-C motif) ligand 8[24]. These reports collectively demonstrated that HEV proteins are involved in the activation of host antiviral cytokines, although some viral components could also inhibit interferon signalling, which facilitate HEV evasion from the host innate immune defenses.

Natural killer (NK) cells and NKT cells are responsible for killing virus-infected cells. Comparison of the numbers and function of NK/NKT cells from HEV infected patients and healthy controls showed that the percentage of activated NK cells was higher in patients than in controls[18]. However, there was no difference in the target cell cytotoxicity of NK cells from both groups. A study of lymphocytes taken from liver biopsy demonstrated that CD56 cell counts were higher in HEV patients than in patients with hepatitis A, B and C virus infections[25]. This group also showed increased $CD8^+$ cells in liver failure cases caused by HEV and other viruses.

IFN-γ is a cytokine responsible for activation of NK and T cell function. IFN-γ expression was up-regulated in peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) from HEV infected patients following HEV ORF2 stimulation[26]. In addition, PBMCs from acute viral hepatitis cases elicited higher responses to recombinant HEV ORF2 peptides than PBMCs from the liver failure group[27]. Studies in hepatocytes demonstrated that HEV ORF2 inhibited NF-κB activation[28].

Besides the innate immune responses, the alteration of cell-mediated immune responses by HEV infection had also been reported. HEV infected patients had increased $CD8^+$ and $CD4^+CD8^+$ cells compared with healthy individuals. In addition, proportion of IFN-γ secreting cells in response to recombinant ORF2 and ORF3 were higher in patients than in controls. These data provided evidence of effector T cell responses induced by HEV components[29].

The studies of clinical manifestations in patients with self-limited acute viral hepatitis and acute liver failure support the roles of immune responses in liver injury. HEV infected patients with acute liver failure had higher antibody titers and higher levels of cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor-α, IFN-γ, interleukin-2 (IL-2) and IL-10. HEV RNA was detected in patients with self-limited acute hepatitis group but not in liver failure cases. This observation suggests that the immune responses rather than the virus are responsible for liver damage[30].

For humoral immune response, the incubation period is around 15-60 d after infection[31]. IgM antibodies increase rapidly and then begin to subside after 3

mo[32,33]. Anti-HEV IgG antibodies start to increase when anti-HEV IgM is first detected and may persist for years[17,34,35]. Presently, the viral detection by serology tests has been developed for HEV. Examination of blood and stool of 10 patients with acute HEV infection can identify HEV RNA, but only for a short period[36]. Experimental infection in chimpanzee demonstrated that HEV RNA was detectable in blood around 22 d after inoculation. In human volunteer, HEV RNA could be detected in blood sooner than in feces[37]. Naturally acquired humoral immune response in the body not only increased rapidly after infection, but also afforded protect from infection during an outbreak[38].

Regulatory T cells (Treg) and IL-10, components of the immune system which modulate immune response, were examined in acute hepatitis E patients, recovered individuals and healthy controls. Both percentage of Treg cells and IL-10 levels were higher in acute hepatitis patients than in recovered and healthy individual groups[39,40], implicating a role for Treg in the immune response induction as a result of HEV infection.

The regulation of protection in the body involves a complex network of innate and adaptive immune response. Immune responses are shown to promote tissue injury in various infectious diseases. During viral infection, both innate and adaptive immune responses are elicited in order to eliminate pathogens. Even so, several viruses are able to evade eradication by the host immunity. Prolonged or hyper-immune responses to eradicate persistent infection, however, could result in tissue injury. Knowledge gained from HEV studies thus far have mostly relied on recombinant HEV proteins instead of viral infections due to the lack of an efficient cell culture system. Moreover, most HEV infections are self-limited. Future studies including patients presented with various degrees of clinical manifestations should allow better understanding of the immunity or immunopathology induced by HEV infection.

EPIDEMIOLOGY OF HEV

HEV is a leading cause of hepatitis transmitted *via* fecal-oral route[41]. The first outbreak of HEV occurred in India around 1955-56, which affected as many as 29000 persons[42]. Other large outbreaks were reported in China, India, Somalia and Uganda[1]. Outbreaks were observed to occur after heavy rainfall and floods, which allowed contamination of human excreta with drinking water sources. Alternatively, outbreaks sometimes follow the dry summer season when water in the rivers or streams is reduced, resulting in increased concentration of fecal contamination in water[43].

It is known that humans could be infected with all 4 HEV genotypes[44]. In developing countries where HEV is endemic (Indian subcontinent, Asia, Middle East and Africa)[11], HEV genotypes 1 and 2 are common and restricted to human. In developed countries, these two genotypes were diagnosed only in persons who had recently traveled to highly endemic areas[45]. It is estimated that 21.1 million people, or 71% of the world population, are infected with HEV genotypes 1 and 2. Furthermore, HEV infection results in approximately 3 million symptomatic acute cases each year and 70000 deaths worldwide[1,44,46]. Individuals could be infected with HEV genotypes 1 and 2 from drinking contaminated water[47], and unfortunately people affected in large HEV outbreaks were found using water from a common source for cooking, drinking, and bathing. HEV RNA has also been detected in the sewage-contaminated water source. The limitation of inadequate public infrastructure may facilitate the spread of HEV infection, such as in refugee or military camps[43]. Areas affected by natural disasters such as earthquakes and monsoon storms are also at risk of HEV epidemic. Displaced populations with limited access to clean drinking water, lack of sanitary facilities, overburdened health-care infrastructure, and immunologically naive population lacking protective antibodies combined will increase the likelihood of HEV transmission[48]. Large outbreaks of HEV have occurred in Nepal, which in 2014 involved more than 10000 cases[49].

HEV infection does not only affect developing countries. HEV genotypes 3 and 4 are autochthonous in several industrialized countries. Occasional foodborne outbreaks have occurred in Europe, North America, Japan and New Zealand from consuming undercooked meat contaminated with HEV[50-53]. HEV genotypes 3 and 4 are found in human and other animal species such as pig, wild boar, and shellfish[54-56]. Specifically, HEV genotype 3 is zoonotic in developed countries from reports in pig farmers, individuals who came into close contact with animal reservoir and who consumed raw meat or meat products from deer, wild boar, and pig. HEV RNA could also be detected in food products such as liver and sausage. Viral sequence extracted from uncooked meat or sausage were very similar (99.7%-100% identity) to sequences of virus recovered from HEV-infected patients. In addition, HEV genotype 4 infection could be detected in both human and swine in Eastern Asia and Europe[57,58]. These evidence supported foodborne zoonotic HEV transmission, which occurred from consuming infected meat[59-63].

Several studies suggest that HEV genotypes 3 and 4 could be transmitted across multiple species. In animal models, pathogen-free pigs could be experimentally infected with human HEV genotypes 3 and 4. Furthermore, swine HEV genotypes 3 and 4 inoculated in rhesus monkey and chimpanzee resulted in seroconversion and virus shedding in feces. Anti-HEV IgG seroconversion in the pigs was observed within 2 wk. These experiments suggest that human HEV genotypes 3 and 4 could replicate in pigs and likely originated from swine[64]. In contrast, pigs inoculated with HEV genotypes 1 and 2 were not infected. This suggests that HEV genotypes 1 and 2 were host-restricted compared to genotypes 3 and 4[65]. Therefore, zoonotic transmission to humans is possible for HEV genotypes 3 and 4[65-67]. Other routes of transmission

Table 1 Global prevalence of anti-hepatitis E virus IgG in different populations

Regions	Prevalence (%)	Ref.
Low-to-medium income		
Kashmir region	49.6	Khuroo *et al*[35]
India	23.8-28.7	Mathur *et al*[76]
Myanmar	32.0	Nakai *et al*[77]
Egypt	67.7	Stoszek *et al*[71]
Bangladesh	22.5	Labrique *et al*[78]
China	19.7	Dong *et al*[79]
Mexico	36.6	Alvarado-Esquivel *et al*[80]
Thailand	14.0	Gonwong *et al*[75]
Nigeria	42.7	Junaid *et al*[81]
Industrialized		
Germany	17.0	Wenzel *et al*[82]
United States	6.0	Teshale *et al*[83]

including HEV-infected blood transfusion, mother-to-child, person-to-person, and sexual intercourse were also documented but relatively uncommon[68-70].

Seroprevalence of anti-HEV IgG varies in different parts of the world. In developing countries, positive anti-HEV IgG serology might reach as high as 70%[71]. Being male, having pet animals or frequent contact with animal reservoirs, residing in the endemic area, or consuming liver or other organ meats were highly associated with positive HEV serology. Veterinary and slaughterhouse workers also have high seropositive rates for anti-HEV IgG compared to individuals with no occupational exposure to swine[72,73]. In swine-dense areas, individuals were more likely to be HEV-seropositive compared to those living in areas with few pig farms[74,75]. The seroprevalence of anti-HEV IgG antibodies is shown in Table 1.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS AND DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA

HEV infection produces wide-ranging clinical manifestations. Most cases of HEV-related acute viral hepatitis resolve within 1 to 2 mo. However, HEV sometimes leads to acute liver failure, chronic infection, or extrahepatic symptoms[17]. An acute hepatitis from HEV is indistinguishable from other forms of acute viral hepatitis and is usually asymptomatic or self-limiting in most individuals[34]. However, acute hepatitis E infection can be severe and prolonged among the immunocompromised and even healthy individuals[84]. Severe acute hepatitis E infections have been described in pregnant women, elderly men, and persons with pre-existing chronic liver disease[85-87]. Among people with the chronic liver disease, acute hepatitis E can adversely lead to acute-on-chronic liver failure[88]. Acute HEV infection with pronounced symptoms resulted in higher mortality rates of 1%-4% and up to 11%, compared to the mortality rates of acute HAV (1%) or HBV (1.5%) infection based on CDC viral hepatitis surveillance data (2010)[84]. Extrahepatic manifestations including pancreatitis, arthritis, aplastic anemia, and neurologic complications have all been reported[11,89,90].

Hepatitis E, especially genotype 3, is known to cause chronic infection among the immunocompromised, especially solid organ recipients. Recently, however, there are reports of chronic hepatitis E infection in elderly immunocompetent patients[91,92]. Diagnosis of acute hepatitis E infection is established in patients with clinically relevant symptoms of acute hepatitis with positive level of anti-HEV IgM or a level of anti-HEV IgG that is twice the baseline concomitant with detectable HEV RNA in the serum and/or stool[93]. Chronic hepatitis E is defined by the persistent increase in liver enzyme levels and polymerase chain reaction-detectable HEV in the serum and/or stool over 6 mo[94].

TREATMENT OF ACUTE HEPATITIS E

Currently, there is no indicated treatment of acute hepatitis E. Nevertheless, treatment with ribavirin showed significant clinical improvements by reducing the symptomatic period (Table 2). Considering the high mortality caused by acute hepatitis E in acute-on-chronic liver failure, ribavirin therapy provides significant benefits for those with poor prognosis or at high risk of fulminant liver failure such as underlying chronic liver disease. Moreover, a high percentage of immunosuppressed individuals [such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-positive individuals or recipients of organ transplant] who eventually develop chronic hepatitis E necessitate early and effective treatment of acute hepatitis E[84,88,95-98].

TREATMENT OF CHRONIC HEPATITIS E

In a case-control study of solid-organ transplant recipients performed in France, 22 out of 38 individuals who tested positive for HEV genotype 3 (58%) developed chronic infection. Compared to the control group of 148 individuals who had no markers for HEV infection, one independent factor associated with HEV infection was the consumption of game meat (68% *vs* 47%, OR = 2.32)[3]. Moreover, a retrospective analysis of data from Europe and the United States found that among 85 recipients of solid organ transplants who had HEV infection, 56 patients (65.9%) developed chronic hepatitis E[94]. The main factor associated with developing chronicity assessed by multivariate analysis in this study was tacrolimus use for immune-suppression (OR = 1.87; 95%CI: 1.49-1.97). The reduction of immunosuppressive drugs, however, enabled HEV clearance in one-third of the individuals.

When reduction of immunosuppression is impossible or when clearing HEV by immunosuppression could not be achieved, 2 alternative therapies for chronic hepatitis E may be pursued: (1) Ribavirin monotherapy (dose 29-1200 mg/d, for 1-18 mo)[96,99,100]; and (2) Pegylated (Peg)-IFN-α for 3-12 mo[101,102].

It was reported that among 59 patients with chronic HEV after solid organ transplantation, HEV clearance was observed in 95% of the patients at the end of

Table 2 Recent evidences on the outcome of therapies against acute hepatitis E infection

Ref.	Type of study	Patient profile	HEV genotype	Ribavirin regimen	Results
Gerolami *et al*[84]	Case report	61-year-old man, 7 d after admission ALT 4565 IU/L	3	1200 mg/d for 21 d	At day 21 of treatment, ALT normalized, RNA almost undetectable
Péron *et al*[88]	Case report	79-year-old man with chronic liver disease, acute kidney failure	3f	200 mg/d for 3 mo	Serum HEV RNA negative at 1 mo therapy, stopped dialysis at 2 mo
		A patient with chronic liver disease	3f	1000 mg/d for 10 d	Viral load 4.07 log copies/mL declined to 2.54 log copies/mL at day 6, Hgb 12.6 g/dL declined to 11.6 g/dL at day 6 of treatment
Del Bello *et al*[95]	Case report	65-year-old man, liver transplant recipient Guillain-Barré syndrome with severe necrotizing myositis	3f	400 mg/d adapted to GFR (40 mL/min) for 3 mo	HEV RNA undetectable by day 15, progressive recovery of mobility
Pischke *et al*[96]	Case from prospective case series	42-year-old woman had traveled to Eritrea and acquired severe acute hepatitis E	1e	For 6 wk (dose: Undefined)	Rapidly improved liver function and cleared HEV
Robbins *et al*[97]	Case report	39-year-old man HIV (+) CD4 51/mm^3 prothrombin index 45%	3c	1200 mg/d (15 mg/kg per day) for 12 wk	Gradual normalization of LFT-HEV RNA decreased to < 100 copies/mL at 1 mo of treatment
Riveiro-Barciela *et al*[98]	Case report	68-year-old man with Waldenström's macroglobulinemia	3f	800 mg/d for 12 wk	Achieved SVR after 12 wk; no ribavirin-related side effect reported

LFT: Liver function test; ALT: Alanine transaminase; Hgb: Haemoglobin; GFR: Glomerular filtration rate; SVR: Sustained virological response; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus; HEV: Hepatitis E virus.

ribavirin therapy and that 78% of the patients achieved sustained virologic response (defined by undetectable serum HEV RNA at least 6 mo after cessation of therapy). These patients received ribavirin for a median of 3 mo. Longer treatment duration allowed 4 patients who had recurrence to achieve sustained virologic response[100]. The mechanism that ribavirin acts against HEV is not clearly understood[103]. However, a recent study suggests that ribavirin exerts an antiviral effect against HEV by depleting intracellular guanosine 5'-triphosphate pools[104]. Further research on this mechanism as well as other possible mechanisms of action of ribavirin is to be revealed. Meanwhile, overall data showed that ribavirin provided therapeutic effect in the treatment of chronic hepatitis E with the only significant adverse effect being anemia (Table 3).

Treatment with Peg-IFN-α has been reported (Table 4). The duration of therapy ranged from 3 mo to 1 year. Most of the cases are from solid organ transplant recipients, all of them showed the favourable outcome in liver enzyme levels as well as viral RNA suppression. However, 2 out of 6 transplanted patients developed acute allograft rejection after 3-mo Peg-IFN therapy[101,109].

The slight synergistic effect for ribavirin combined with Peg-IFN-α was observed in a recent study *in vitro*[104]. Successful combination therapy had also been reported for a chronic HEV infection in an HIV-positive patient[110]. Decreasing the ribavirin dosage may help reduce anemia and other treatment-associated side effects[111].

HEPATITIS E VACCINE

Current data demonstrated that immunity acquired from infection or vaccination can protect individuals from symptomatic hepatitis E. In a large cohort study, the risk of infection was highest among the baseline seronegative placebo group participants (2.04%). The risks of HEV infection in population with pre-existing immunity or vaccine-induced immunity were significantly reduced to 0.52% and 0.30%, respectively[112]. Two recombinant hepatitis E vaccines developed from HEV genotype 1, by Glaxo SmithKline and Xiamen Innovax Biotech, have had short-term efficacy in clinical trials[113,114]. The latter vaccine, commercially available as Hecolin, has been in use in China since 2012. Its long-term efficacy was 86.8% during the 4.5-year follow-up period[93]. Estimated long-term persistence of anti-HEV IgG from hepatitis E vaccine is predicted to be from 8 years to nearly life-long based on mathematical assumptions[115]. The only currently licensed hepatitis E vaccine (Hecolin) is approved for use in China in those aged 16-65 years available in prefilled syringe for intramuscular injection at 0, 1, and 6 mo. Expansion of vaccine coverage to other HEV endemic country is necessary and might significant decrease burden of the disease[85]. In addition to improved personal hygiene, sanitation, and health education, vaccination might play a crucial role in the future prevention and control of HEV infection.

HEV IN BLOOD DONORS: CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS

Experiments involving the transfusion of blood plasma from anti-HEV IgM positive and anti-HEV IgG negative blood donors to rhesus monkey demonstrated that the

Table 3 Treatment of chronic hepatitis E virus with ribavirin regimen

Ref.	Type of study	Patient profile	Ribavirin regimen	Result	Adverse effects
Kamar *et al*[99]	Prospective case series	6 kidney transplant recipients, HEV RNA (+) for median of 36.5 mo	600-800 mg/d for 3 mo adapted to GFR, Hgb	SVR in 4/6 patients; relapse in 2/6; AST, ALT normalized all	Anemia led to blood transfusion and RBV dose reduction in 2/6 patients
Mallet *et al*[105]	Case report	A kidney and pancreas transplanted man, a women with idiopathic $CD4^+$ T lymphocytopenia	12 mg/kg daily for 12 wk	Both cleared HEV after 4 wk of treatment and remained undetectable, LFT normalized	Anemia in 1st patient led to Ribavirin dose reduction to 200 mg/d
Pischke *et al*[96]	Prospective case series	Organ transplant recipients 11 subjects	600-1000 mg/d for 5 mo, dose reduction according to Hgb or anemia	9/11 showed SVR	Anemia, the mean Hgb decline was 3.4 g/dL (range 0-7.9 g/dL)
Neukam *et al*[106]	Case report	2 HIV (+) male with liver cirrhosis with severe immunosuppression	Oral ribavirin 1200 mg/d (case 1) 1000 mg/d (case 2) for 24 wk	LFT normalized-Liver stiffness improved HEV RNA was detected after the end of treatment in both patients	-
Giordani *et al*[107]	Case report	60-year-old man with lymphocytic leukemia	1000 mg/d in 2 doses (400 and 600 mg), for 3 mo	HEV cleared and sustained over 6 mo after therapy	Mild anemia (Hgb 10.5 mg/dL)
Kamar *et al*[100]	Retrospective, multicentre case series	37 kidney, 10 liver, 5 heart, 5 kidneys and pancreas, and 2 lung transplant recipients with chronic HEV	Median dose of 600 mg/d (range 29-1200), for a median of 3 mo (range 1-18 mo)	At the end of the therapy, 95% cleared HEV, 18% recurred after cessation of therapy is stopped, 78% showed SVR	Anemia required dose reduction (29%); use of erythropoietin (54%); required blood transfusion (12%)

LFT: Liver function test; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; ALT: Alanine transaminase; SVR: Sustained virological response; Hgb: Haemoglobin; GFR: Glomerular filtration rate; HEV: Hepatitis E virus; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus.

Table 4 Treatment of chronic hepatitis E virus with pegylated interferon-α therapy

Ref.	Patient profile	Peg-IFN-α regimen	Result	Adverse effects
Kamar *et al*[101]	29-year-old man with liver transplantation	Peg-IFN-α-2a for 12 wk (135 μg/wk)	Liver enzyme levels decreased. HEV RNA levels remained undetectable until week 12	At week 12, signs of acute humoral rejection in liver biopsy
	26-year-old man with liver transplantation	Peg-IFN-α-2a for 12 wk (135 μg/wk)	HEV RNA levels undetectable by week 12; liver enzyme levels normalized by week 12	
	58-year-old man with liver transplantation liver cirrhosis from chronic HEV infection	Peg-IFN-α-2a for 12 wk (135 μg/wk)	HEV RNA was redetected 2 wk after completion of treatment; Liver enzyme levels normalized by 3 mo of therapy	
Haagsma *et al*[102]	37-year-old woman with liver transplantation	Peg-IFN-α-2b for 52 wk (80 μg/wk declined to 60 μg/wk)	Serum HEV RNA sustained undetectable during 3 mo follow-up; serum liver enzyme became normalized	
	59-year-old man with liver transplantation	Peg-IFN-α-2b 150 μg/wk, dose reduction due to leukopenia	HEV viral load and aminotransferases declined, but Peg-IFN discontinued from lack of further efficacy, HEV RNA level undetectable at 4 wk after the discontinuation of Peg-IFN and aminotransferase normalized	Leukopenia
Alric *et al*[108]	57-year-old man with hairy cell leukemia	Discontinued at week 16, Peg-IFN-α-2b 1 μg/kg per week for 3 mo	Achieved a complete virologic response by week 4	
Kamar *et al*[109]	24-year-old man with kidney transplantation, kidney failure from chronic HEV infection	3-mo Peg-IFN-α-2a 135 μg/wk	Serum RNA undetectable after 5 mo, SVR for 6 mo after treatment	Acute rejection of the kidney allograft by month 3 of Peg-IFN therapy

Peg-IFN: Pegylated interferon; SVR: Sustained virological response; HEV: Hepatitis E virus.

virus was transmissible[116]. Therefore, many developed countries are now focused on studying the prevalence of viral transmission from blood donation[117-124] (Table 5). The demand for pathogen-free blood and blood components is highly needed for hospital patients and individuals requiring continuous blood transfusion (*e.g.*, thalassemia patients). Thus, these patients are at-risk for being infected with HEV from donated blood. The development of screening methods for detecting HEV in donated blood involves both serology test and nucleic acid test. Novel techniques are being developed to increase the efficiency and sensitivity to identify HEV rapidly even at low viral concentration[125-127]. Many countries are aware of the necessity to screen the blood supply for HEV among blood donors and have begun to implement diagnostic tests for HEV. For example, Japan has started monitoring for HEV by comparing the increase in the alanine aminotransferase as a biomarker

Table 5 Incidence of detectable hepatitis E virus in blood donors (hepatitis E virus-RNA)

Year of study	Countries	Technique used for detection	No. of tests	Ratio of positive detections	Ref.
2005	China	Real-time fluorescence RT-PCR	10741	1:1094	Ren *et al*[117]
2011	England	PCR	42000	1:7000	Ijaz *et al*[118]
2011	German	Real-time RT-PCR	18100	1:4525	Baylis *et al*[119]
2011	Sweden	Real-time RT-PCR	95835	1:7986	Baylis *et al*[119]
2011	United States	Real-time RT-PCR	51075	None detected	Baylis *et al*[119]
2011	German	Real-time RT-PCR	16125	1:1241	Vollmer *et al*[120]
2011-2012	The Netherlands	Real-time PCR	45415	1:2672	Slot *et al*[121]
2012-2013	England	RT-PCR	225000	1:2848	Hewitt *et al*[122]
2012	France	RT-PCR	53234	1:2218	Gallian *et al*[123]
2013	Spain	Transcription-mediated amplification assay	9998	1:3333	Sauleda *et al*[124]

RT-PCR: Reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction.

in the surveillance of HEV[128]. Germany is looking for a new approach to detecting HEV to find alternative ways to blood screening test[120]. Other countries have also implemented screening test but only focus on the suspected cases[129]. In Thailand, there were two reports on the incidence of HEV among blood donors. First, a study in 1996 reported the prevalence of HEV transmission among adults in different parts of Thailand, in which the studied population also included blood donors. The study found 9%-22% positive rates for anti-HEV IgG[130]. Another study found HEV seroprevalence around 8.7% among blood donors in 4 Northern provinces of Thailand[131], which was similar to those in other countries (Table 5). Thus, HEV poses a significant public health problem especially in blood donation even if the prevalence and virulence of the disease are lower than other infections[132].

CHALLENGES IN THE TREATMENT OF HEPATITIS E

Although the recent reports of treatment of HEV infection are showing beneficial outcomes, there are still areas to be overcome in the treatment of HEV infection. First of all, as described by previous articles, there are known severe side effects of current regimen with Peg-IFN-α and ribavirin. For Peg-IFN-α, the severe side effects include influenza-like symptoms[133] and acute rejection of allografts for solid organ transplant recipients[101]. For ribavirin monotherapy, it has the side effect of severe hemolytic anemia, sometimes resulting in treatment failures probably caused by dose reduction[100,111]. Furthermore, both ribavirin and Peg-IFN-α cannot be administered in pregnancy. Also, ribavirin use requires close monitoring of hemoglobin levels and other hematological parameters that make it difficult to apply in developing countries[111].

There has been a case report showing resolution of acute liver injury cause by hepatitis E with steroid use that was initially intended for immunosuppression[134]. Also, there have been reports of fulminant hepatic failure from HEV in women taking oral contraceptives[135]. Known that immunosuppression can cause persistent infection of hepatitis E, the relation between steroid hormone use and the clinical course of hepatitis E is not clear as the immune pathogenesis of hepatitis E infection itself being not explained thoroughly[2]. The various manifestations of hepatitis E according to the potential immune and hormonal status including pregnancy need to be explored precisely in their relation and the pathogenesis for the future direction of developing treatment regimen of hepatitis E. Larger research for establishing appropriate standard treatment as well as supportive treatment and steroid use are still in need in order to minimize limitations and side effects of the current administration of ribavirin and Peg-IFN-α monotherapy, with appropriate vaccination for the high-risk populations for controlling epidemics in resource-limited settings, and for pregnant women living in developing countries where the acute infections are threatening extremely great number of women and new-borns.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We would like to express our gratitude to the staff in the Department of Clinical Tropical Medicine, Faculty of Tropical Medicine, Mahidol University and the Center of Excellence in Clinical Virology, Department of Pediatrics, Faculty of Medicine, Chulalongkorn University.

REFERENCES

1 **Kumar S**, Subhadra S, Singh B, Panda BK. Hepatitis E virus: the current scenario. *Int J Infect Dis* 2013; **17**: e228-e233 [PMID: 23313154 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijid.2012.11.026]

2 **Wedemeyer H**, Rybczynska J, Pischke S, Krawczynski K. Immunopathogenesis of hepatitis E virus infection. *Semin Liver Dis* 2013; **33**: 71-78 [PMID: 23564391 DOI: 10.1055/s-0033-1338118]

3 **Legrand-Abravanel F**, Kamar N, Sandres-Saune K, Garrouste C, Dubois M, Mansuy JM, Muscari F, Sallusto F, Rostaing L, Izopet J. Characteristics of autochthonous hepatitis E virus infection in solid-organ transplant recipients in France. *J Infect Dis* 2010; **202**: 835-844 [PMID: 20695798 DOI: 10.1086/655899]

4 **Kim BS**, Lim HS, Lee K, Min YS, Yoon YS, Jeong HS. A survey on the status of hepatitis e virus infection among slaughterhouse workers in South Korea. *J Prev Med Public Health* 2015; **48**: 53-61 [PMID: 25652711 DOI: 10.3961/jpmph.14.048]

5 **Poovorawan K**, Jitmitrapab S, Treeprasertsuk S, Thongmee T, Theamboonlers A, Tangkijvanich P, Komolmit P, Poovorawan Y. Risk factors and molecular characterization of acute sporadic symptomatic hepatitis E virus infection in Thailand. *Asian Pac J Trop Med* 2014; **7**: 709-714 [DOI: 10.1016/S1995-7645(14)60121-

8]
6 **Kamar N**, Dalton HR, Abravanel F, Izopet J. Hepatitis E virus infection. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2014; **27**: 116-138 [PMID: 24396139 DOI: 10.1128/cmr.00057-13]
7 **Khuroo MS**, Kamili S. Aetiology, clinical course and outcome of sporadic acute viral hepatitis in pregnancy. *J Viral Hepat* 2003; **10**: 61-69 [PMID: 12558914 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2893.2003.00398.x]
8 **Yu C**, Boon D, McDonald SL, Myers TG, Tomioka K, Nguyen H, Engle RE, Govindarajan S, Emerson SU, Purcell RH. Pathogenesis of hepatitis E virus and hepatitis C virus in chimpanzees: similarities and differences. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 11264-11278 [PMID: 20739520 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.01205-10]
9 **Dong C**, Zafrullah M, Mixson-Hayden T, Dai X, Liang J, Meng J, Kamili S. Suppression of interferon-α signaling by hepatitis E virus. *Hepatology* 2012; **55**: 1324-1332 [PMID: 22183878 DOI: 10.1002/hep.25530]
10 **Guu TS**, Liu Z, Ye Q, Mata DA, Li K, Yin C, Zhang J, Tao YJ. Structure of the hepatitis E virus-like particle suggests mechanisms for virus assembly and receptor binding. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 12992-12997 [PMID: 19622744 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0904848106]
11 **Kamar N**, Bendall R, Legrand-Abravanel F, Xia NS, Ijaz S, Izopet J, Dalton HR. Hepatitis E. *Lancet* 2012; **379**: 2477-2488 [PMID: 22549046 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(11)61849-7]
12 **Holla RP**, Ahmad I, Ahmad Z, Jameel S. Molecular virology of hepatitis E virus. *Semin Liver Dis* 2013; **33**: 3-14 [PMID: 23564385 DOI: 10.1055/s-0033-1338110]
13 **Tam AW**, Smith MM, Guerra ME, Huang CC, Bradley DW, Fry KE, Reyes GR. Hepatitis E virus (HEV): molecular cloning and sequencing of the full-length viral genome. *Virology* 1991; **185**: 120-131 [PMID: 1926770 DOI: 10.1016/0042-6822(91)90760-9]
14 **Cao D**, Meng XJ. Molecular biology and replication of hepatitis E virus. *Emerg Microbes Infect* 2012; **1**: e17 [PMID: 26038426 DOI: 10.1038/emi.2012.7]
15 **Worm HC**, van der Poel WH, Brandstätter G. Hepatitis E: an overview. *Microbes Infect* 2002; **4**: 657-666 [PMID: 12048035 DOI: 10.1016/S1286-4579(02)01584-8]
16 **Emerson SU**, Purcell RH. Hepatitis E virus. *Rev Med Virol* 2003; **13**: 145-154 [PMID: 12740830 DOI: 10.1002/rmv.384]
17 **Krain LJ**, Nelson KE, Labrique AB. Host immune status and response to hepatitis E virus infection. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2014; **27**: 139-165 [PMID: 24396140 DOI: 10.1128/CMR.00062-13]
18 **Srivastava R**, Aggarwal R, Bhagat MR, Chowdhury A, Naik S. Alterations in natural killer cells and natural killer T cells during acute viral hepatitis E. *J Viral Hepat* 2008; **15**: 910-916 [PMID: 18673427 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2008.01036.x]
19 **TrehanPati N**, Sukriti S, Geffers R, Hissar S, Riese P, Toepfer T, Guzman CA, Sarin SK. Gene expression profiles of T cells from hepatitis E virus infected patients in acute and resolving phase. *J Clin Immunol* 2011; **31**: 498-508 [PMID: 21287396 DOI: 10.1007/s10875-010-9506-2]
20 **Devhare PB**, Chatterjee SN, Arankalle VA, Lole KS. Analysis of antiviral response in human epithelial cells infected with hepatitis E virus. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e63793 [PMID: 23671700 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0063793]
21 **Zhang F**, Qi Y, Harrison TJ, Luo B, Zhou Y, Li X, Song A, Huang W, Wang Y. Hepatitis E genotype 4 virus from feces of monkeys infected experimentally can be cultured in PLC/PRF/5 cells and upregulate host interferon-inducible genes. *J Med Virol* 2014; **86**: 1736-1744 [PMID: 25042677 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.24014]
22 **Nan Y**, Ma Z, Wang R, Yu Y, Kannan H, Fredericksen B, Zhang YJ. Enhancement of interferon induction by ORF3 product of hepatitis E virus. *J Virol* 2014; **88**: 8696-8705 [PMID: 24850742 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01228-14]
23 **Nan Y**, Yu Y, Ma Z, Khattar SK, Fredericksen B, Zhang YJ. Hepatitis E virus inhibits type I interferon induction by ORF1 products. *J Virol* 2014; **88**: 11924-11932 [PMID: 25100852 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01935-14]
24 **Li Z**, Chen L, Liu Q. Activation of CXCL-8 Transcription by Hepatitis E Virus ORF-1 via AP-1. *Mediators Inflamm* 2015; **2015**: 495370 [PMID: 26074679 DOI: 10.1155/2015/495370]
25 **Prabhu SB**, Gupta P, Durgapal H, Rath S, Gupta SD, Acharya SK, Panda SK. Study of cellular immune response against Hepatitis E virus (HEV). *J Viral Hepat* 2011; **18**: 587-594 [PMID: 20579277 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2010.01338.x]
26 **Srivastava R**, Aggarwal R, Jameel S, Puri P, Gupta VK, Ramesh VS, Bhatia S, Naik S. Cellular immune responses in acute hepatitis E virus infection to the viral open reading frame 2 protein. *Viral Immunol* 2007; **20**: 56-65 [PMID: 17425421 DOI: 10.1089/vim.2006.0053]
27 **Majumdar M**, Ratho R, Chawla Y, Singh MP. Evaluation of antigenicity and cell mediated immunity of hepatitis E virus patients: using non radioactive MTT assay. *Indian J Med Microbiol* 2013; **31**: 64-68 [PMID: 23508432 DOI: 10.4103/0255-0857.108725]
28 **Surjit M**, Varshney B, Lal SK. The ORF2 glycoprotein of hepatitis E virus inhibits cellular NF-κB activity by blocking ubiquitination mediated proteasomal degradation of IκBα in human hepatoma cells. *BMC Biochem* 2012; **13**: 7 [PMID: 22590978 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2091-13-7]
29 **Husain MM**, Aggarwal R, Kumar D, Jameel S, Naik S. Effector T cells immune reactivity among patients with acute hepatitis E. *J Viral Hepat* 2011; **18**: e603-e608 [PMID: 21914082 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2011.01489.x]
30 **Saravanabalaji S**, Tripathy AS, Dhoot RR, Chadha MS, Kakrani AL, Arankalle VA. Viral load, antibody titers and recombinant open reading frame 2 protein-induced TH1/TH2 cytokines and cellular immune responses in self-limiting and fulminant hepatitis e. *Intervirology* 2009; **52**: 78-85 [PMID: 19401616 DOI: 10.1159/000214862]
31 **Teshale EH**, Hu DJ, Holmberg SD. The two faces of hepatitis E virus. *Clin Infect Dis* 2010; **51**: 328-334 [PMID: 20572761 DOI: 10.1086/653943]
32 **Favorov MO**, Fields HA, Purdy MA, Yashina TL, Aleksandrov AG, Alter MJ, Yarasheva DM, Bradley DW, Margolis HS. Serologic identification of hepatitis E virus infections in epidemic and endemic settings. *J Med Virol* 1992; **36**: 246-250 [PMID: 1578218 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.1890360403]
33 **Arankalle VA**, Chadha MS, Tsarev SA, Emerson SU, Risbud AR, Banerjee K, Purcell RH. Seroepidemiology of water-borne hepatitis in India and evidence for a third enterically-transmitted hepatitis agent. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1994; **91**: 3428-3432 [PMID: 8159764 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.91.8.3428]
34 **Hoofnagle JH**, Nelson KE, Purcell RH. Hepatitis E. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **367**: 1237-1244 [PMID: 23013075 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra1204512]
35 **Khuroo MS**, Kamili S, Dar MY, Moecklii R, Jameel S. Hepatitis E and long-term antibody status. *Lancet* 1993; **341**: 1355 [PMID: 8098491 DOI: 10.1016/0140-6736(93)90873-F]
36 **Aggarwal R**, Kini D, Sofat S, Naik SR, Krawczynski K. Duration of viraemia and faecal viral excretion in acute hepatitis E. *Lancet* 2000; **356**: 1081-1082 [PMID: 11009149 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(00)02737-9]
37 **Chauhan A**, Jameel S, Dilawari JB, Chawla YK, Kaur U, Ganguly NK. Hepatitis E virus transmission to a volunteer. *Lancet* 1993; **341**: 149-150 [PMID: 8093748 DOI: 10.1016/0140-6736(93)90008-5]
38 **Shata MT**, Daef EA, Zaki ME, Abdelwahab SF, Marzuuk NM, Sobhy M, Rafaat M, Abdelbaki L, Nafeh MA, Hashem M, El-Kamary SS, Shardell MD, Mikhail NN, Strickland GT, Sherman KE. Protective role of humoral immune responses during an outbreak of hepatitis E in Egypt. *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg* 2012; **106**: 613-618 [PMID: 22938992 DOI: 10.1016/j.trstmh.2012.07.004]
39 **Tripathy AS**, Das R, Rathod SB, Gurav YK, Arankalle VA. Peripheral T regulatory cells and cytokines in hepatitis E infection. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 2012; **31**: 179-184 [PMID: 21598072 DOI: 10.1007/s10096-011-1291-1]

40 **Rathod SB**, Das R, Thanapati S, Arankalle VA, Tripathy AS. Suppressive activity and altered conventional phenotype markers/mediators of regulatory T cells in patients with self-limiting hepatitis E. *J Viral Hepat* 2014; **21**: 141-151 [PMID: 24383927 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12125]

41 **Miyamura T**. Hepatitis E virus infection in developed countries. *Virus Res* 2011; **161**: 40-46 [PMID: 21443914 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2011.03.006]

42 **Kim JH**, Nelson KE, Panzner U, Kasture Y, Labrique AB, Wierzba TF. A systematic review of the epidemiology of hepatitis E virus in Africa. *BMC Infect Dis* 2014; **14**: 308 [PMID: 24902967 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-14-308]

43 **Aggarwal R**. Hepatitis e: epidemiology and natural history. *J Clin Exp Hepatol* 2013; **3**: 125-133 [PMID: 25755486 DOI: 10.1016/j.jceh.2013.05.010]

44 **Wedemeyer H**, Pischke S, Manns MP. Pathogenesis and treatment of hepatitis e virus infection. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **142**: 1388-1397.e1 [PMID: 22537448 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.02.014]

45 **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)**. Hepatitis E among US travelers, 1989-1992. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 1993; **42**: 1-4 [PMID: 8418395]

46 **Rein DB**, Stevens GA, Theaker J, Wittenborn JS, Wiersma ST. The global burden of hepatitis E virus genotypes 1 and 2 in 2005. *Hepatology* 2012; **55**: 988-997 [PMID: 22121109 DOI: 10.1002/hep.25505]

47 **Corwin AL**, Tien NT, Bounlu K, Winarno J, Putri MP, Laras K, Larasati RP, Sukri N, Endy T, Sulaiman HA, Hyams KC. The unique riverine ecology of hepatitis E virus transmission in South-East Asia. *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg* 1999; **93**: 255-260 [PMID: 10492753 DOI: 10.1016/S0035-9203(99)90014-7]

48 **Basnyat B**, Dalton HR, Kamar N, Rein DB, Labrique A, Farrar J, Piot P. Nepali earthquakes and the risk of an epidemic of hepatitis E. *Lancet* 2015; **385**: 2572-2573 [PMID: 26091742 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(15)61110-2]

49 **Shrestha A**, Lama TK, Karki S, Sigdel DR, Rai U, Rauniyar SK, Al-Mahtab M, Takahashi K, Arai M, Akbar SM, Mishiro S. Hepatitis E epidemic, Biratnagar, Nepal, 2014. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2015; **21**: 711-713 [PMID: 25811975 DOI: 10.3201/eid2104.141512]

50 **Mansuy JM**, Peron JM, Abravanel F, Poirson H, Dubois M, Miedouge M, Vischi F, Alric L, Vinel JP, Izopet J. Hepatitis E in the south west of France in individuals who have never visited an endemic area. *J Med Virol* 2004; **74**: 419-424 [PMID: 15368508 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.20206]

51 **Wichmann O**, Schimanski S, Koch J, Kohler M, Rothe C, Plentz A, Jilg W, Stark K. Phylogenetic and case-control study on hepatitis E virus infection in Germany. *J Infect Dis* 2008; **198**: 1732-1741 [PMID: 18983248 DOI: 10.1086/593211]

52 **Dalton HR**, Fellows HJ, Gane EJ, Wong P, Gerred S, Schroeder B, Croxson MC, Garkavenko O. Hepatitis E in new zealand. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **22**: 1236-1240 [PMID: 17489963 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2007.04894.x]

53 **Tsang TH**, Denison EK, Williams HV, Venczel LV, Ginsberg MM, Vugia DJ. Acute hepatitis E infection acquired in California. *Clin Infect Dis* 2000; **30**: 618-619 [PMID: 10722465 DOI: 10.1086/313730]

54 **Kaci S**, Nöckler K, Johne R. Detection of hepatitis E virus in archived German wild boar serum samples. *Vet Microbiol* 2008; **128**: 380-385 [PMID: 18068914 DOI: 10.1016/j.vetmic.2007.10.030]

55 **Goens SD**, Perdue ML. Hepatitis E viruses in humans and animals. *Anim Health Res Rev* 2004; **5**: 145-156 [PMID: 15984321 DOI: 10.1079/AHR200495]

56 **Said B**, Ijaz S, Kafatos G, Booth L, Thomas HL, Walsh A, Ramsay M, Morgan D. Hepatitis E outbreak on cruise ship. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2009; **15**: 1738-1744 [PMID: 19891860 DOI: 10.3201/eid1511.091094]

57 **Zhang W**, Shen Q, Mou J, Gong G, Yang Z, Cui L, Zhu J, Ju G, Hua X. Hepatitis E virus infection among domestic animals in eastern China. *Zoonoses Public Health* 2008; **55**: 291-298 [PMID: 18638181 DOI: 10.1111/j.1863-2378.2008.01136.x]

58 **Hakze-van der Honing RW**, van Coillie E, Antonis AF, van der Poel WH. First isolation of hepatitis E virus genotype 4 in Europe through swine surveillance in the Netherlands and Belgium. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e22673 [PMID: 21829641 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0022673]

59 **Tei S**, Kitajima N, Takahashi K, Mishiro S. Zoonotic transmission of hepatitis E virus from deer to human beings. *Lancet* 2003; **362**: 371-373 [PMID: 12907011 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(03)14025-1]

60 **Colson P**, Borentain P, Queyriaux B, Kaba M, Moal V, Gallian P, Heyries L, Raoult D, Gerolami R. Pig liver sausage as a source of hepatitis E virus transmission to humans. *J Infect Dis* 2010; **202**: 825-834 [PMID: 20695796 DOI: 10.1086/655898]

61 **Matsuda H**, Okada K, Takahashi K, Mishiro S. Severe hepatitis E virus infection after ingestion of uncooked liver from a wild boar. *J Infect Dis* 2003; **188**: 944 [PMID: 12964128 DOI: 10.1086/378074]

62 **Takahashi K**, Kitajima N, Abe N, Mishiro S. Complete or near-complete nucleotide sequences of hepatitis E virus genome recovered from a wild boar, a deer, and four patients who ate the deer. *Virology* 2004; **330**: 501-505 [PMID: 15567444 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2004.10.006]

63 **Yazaki Y**, Mizuo H, Takahashi M, Nishizawa T, Sasaki N, Gotanda Y, Okamoto H. Sporadic acute or fulminant hepatitis E in Hokkaido, Japan, may be food-borne, as suggested by the presence of hepatitis E virus in pig liver as food. *J Gen Virol* 2003; **84**: 2351-2357 [PMID: 12917455 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.19242-0]

64 **Xia H**, Wahlberg N, Belák S, Meng XJ, Liu L. The emergence of genotypes 3 and 4 hepatitis E virus in swine and humans: a phylogenetic perspective. *Arch Virol* 2011; **156**: 121-124 [PMID: 20927637 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-010-0818-6]

65 **Meng XJ**. From barnyard to food table: the omnipresence of hepatitis E virus and risk for zoonotic infection and food safety. *Virus Res* 2011; **161**: 23-30 [PMID: 21316404 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2011.01.016]

66 **Meng XJ**, Halbur PG, Shapiro MS, Govindarajan S, Bruna JD, Mushahwar IK, Purcell RH, Emerson SU. Genetic and experimental evidence for cross-species infection by swine hepatitis E virus. *J Virol* 1998; **72**: 9714-9721 [PMID: 9811705]

67 **Arankalle VA**, Chobe LP, Chadha MS. Type-IV Indian swine HEV infects rhesus monkeys. *J Viral Hepat* 2006; **13**: 742-745 [PMID: 17052273 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2006.00759.x]

68 **Aggarwal R**, Naik SR. Hepatitis E: does person-to-person spread occur? *Indian J Gastroenterol* 1992; **11**: 109-112 [PMID: 1506044]

69 **Montella F**, Rezza G, Di Sora F, Pezzotti P, Recchia O. Association between hepatitis E virus and HIV infection in homosexual men. *Lancet* 1994; **344**: 1433 [PMID: 7968090 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(94)90598-3]

70 **Mizuo H**, Yazaki Y, Sugawara K, Tsuda F, Takahashi M, Nishizawa T, Okamoto H. Possible risk factors for the transmission of hepatitis E virus and for the severe form of hepatitis E acquired locally in Hokkaido, Japan. *J Med Virol* 2005; **76**: 341-349 [PMID: 15902701 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.20364]

71 **Stoszek SK**, Engle RE, Abdel-Hamid M, Mikhail N, Abdel-Aziz F, Medhat A, Fix AD, Emerson SU, Purcell RH, Strickland GT. Hepatitis E antibody seroconversion without disease in highly endemic rural Egyptian communities. *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg* 2006; **100**: 89-94 [PMID: 16257427 DOI: 10.1016/j.trstmh.2005.05.019]

72 **Meng XJ**, Wiseman B, Elvinger F, Guenette DK, Toth TE, Engle RE, Emerson SU, Purcell RH. Prevalence of antibodies to hepatitis E virus in veterinarians working with swine and in normal blood donors in the United States and other countries. *J Clin Microbiol* 2002; **40**: 117-122 [PMID: 11773103 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.40.1.117-122.2002]

73 **Withers MR**, Correa MT, Morrow M, Stebbins ME, Seriwatana J, Webster WD, Boak MB, Vaughn DW. Antibody levels to hepatitis E virus in North Carolina swine workers, non-swine workers, swine, and murids. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2002; **66**: 384-388 [PMID: 12164292]

74 **Drobeniuc J**, Favorov MO, Shapiro CN, Bell BP, Mast EE, Dadu

A, Culver D, Iarovoi P, Robertson BH, Margolis HS. Hepatitis E virus antibody prevalence among persons who work with swine. *J Infect Dis* 2001; **184**: 1594-1597 [PMID: 11740735 DOI: 10.1086/324566]

75 **Gonwong S**, Chuenchitra T, Khantapura P, Islam D, Sirisopana N, Mason CJ. Pork consumption and seroprevalence of hepatitis E virus,Thailand, 2007-2008. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2014; **20**: 1531-1534 [PMID: 25148245 DOI: 10.3201/eid2009.140418]

76 **Mathur P**, Arora NK, Panda SK, Kapoor SK, Jailkhani BL, Irshad M. Sero-epidemiology of hepatitis E virus (HEV) in urban and rural children of North India. *Indian Pediatr* 2001; **38**: 461-475 [PMID: 11359972]

77 **Nakai K**, Win KM, Oo SS, Arakawa Y, Abe K. Molecular characteristic-based epidemiology of hepatitis B, C, and E viruses and GB virus C/hepatitis G virus in Myanmar. *J Clin Microbiol* 2001; **39**: 1536-1539 [PMID: 11283083 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.39.4.1536-1539.2001]

78 **Labrique AB**, Zaman K, Hossain Z, Saha P, Yunus M, Hossain A, Ticehurst J, Nelson KE. Population seroprevalence of hepatitis E virus antibodies in rural Bangladesh. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2009; **81**: 875-881 [PMID: 19861625 DOI: 10.4269/ajtmh.2009.09-0352]

79 **Dong C**, Dai X, Liang J, Dong M, Meng J. Seroprevalence of hepatitis e virus varies considerably among chinese provinces. *Hepat Mon* 2012; **12**: 386-390 [PMID: 22879828 DOI: 10.5812/hepatmon.6194]

80 **Alvarado-Esquivel C**, Sanchez-Anguiano LF, Hernandez-Tinoco J. Seroepidemiology of hepatitis e virus infection in general population in rural durango, Mexico. *Hepat Mon* 2014; **14**: e16876 [PMID: 24976837 DOI: 10.5812/hepatmon.16876]

81 **Junaid SA**, Agina SE, Abubakar KA. Epidemiology and associated risk factors of hepatitis e virus infection in plateau state, Nigeria. *Virology* (Auckl) 2014; **5**: 15-26 [PMID: 25512696 DOI: 10.4137/VRT.S15422]

82 **Wenzel JJ**, Sichler M, Schemmerer M, Behrens G, Leitzmann MF, Jilg W. Decline in hepatitis E virus antibody prevalence in southeastern Germany, 1996-2011. *Hepatology* 2014; **60**: 1180-1186 [PMID: 24912687 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27244]

83 **Teshale EH**, Denniston MM, Drobeniuc J, Kamili S, Teo CG, Holmberg SD. Decline in hepatitis E virus antibody prevalence in the United States from 1988-1994 to 2009-2010. *J Infect Dis* 2015; **211**: 366-373 [PMID: 25147277 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jiu466]

84 **Gerolami R**, Borentain P, Raissouni F, Motte A, Solas C, Colson P. Treatment of severe acute hepatitis E by ribavirin. *J Clin Virol* 2011; **52**: 60-62 [PMID: 21764632 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2011.06.004]

85 **Labrique AB**, Sikder SS, Krain LJ, West KP, Christian P, Rashid M, Nelson KE. Hepatitis E, a vaccine-preventable cause of maternal deaths. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2012; **18**: 1401-1404 [PMID: 22931753 DOI: 10.3201/eid1809.120241]

86 **Zhu FC**, Huang SJ, Wu T, Zhang XF, Wang ZZ, Ai X, Yan Q, Yang CL, Cai JP, Jiang HM, Wang YJ, Ng MH, Zhang J, Xia NS. Epidemiology of zoonotic hepatitis E: a community-based surveillance study in a rural population in China. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e87154 [PMID: 24498033 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0087154]

87 **Kumar Acharya S**, Kumar Sharma P, Singh R, Kumar Mohanty S, Madan K, Kumar Jha J, Kumar Panda S. Hepatitis E virus (HEV) infection in patients with cirrhosis is associated with rapid decompensation and death. *J Hepatol* 2007; **46**: 387-394 [PMID: 17125878 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2006.09.016]

88 **Péron JM**, Dalton H, Izopet J, Kamar N. Acute autochthonous hepatitis E in western patients with underlying chronic liver disease: a role for ribavirin? *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: 1323-1324; author reply 1324-1325 [PMID: 21281681 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2011.01.009]

89 **Rianthavorn P**, Thongmee C, Limpaphayom N, Komolmit P, Theamboonlers A, Poovorawan Y. The entire genome sequence of hepatitis E virus genotype 3 isolated from a patient with neuralgic amyotrophy. *Scand J Infect Dis* 2010; **42**: 395-400 [PMID: 20100114 DOI: 10.3109/00365540903496551]

90 **Kamar N**, Bendall RP, Peron JM, Cintas P, Prudhomme L, Mansuy JM, Rostaing L, Keane F, Ijaz S, Izopet J, Dalton HR. Hepatitis E virus and neurologic disorders. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2011; **17**: 173-179 [PMID: 21291585 DOI: 10.3201/eid1702.100856]

91 **Grewal P**, Kamili S, Motamed D. Chronic hepatitis E in an immunocompetent patient: a case report. *Hepatology* 2014; **59**: 347-348 [PMID: 23913727 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26636]

92 **González Tallón AI**, Moreira Vicente V, Mateos Lindemann ML, Achécar Justo LM. [Chronic hepatitis E in an immunocompetent patient]. *Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **34**: 398-400 [PMID: 21571397 DOI: 10.1016/j.gastrohep.2011.02.011]

93 **Zhang J**, Zhang XF, Huang SJ, Wu T, Hu YM, Wang ZZ, Wang H, Jiang HM, Wang YJ, Yan Q, Guo M, Liu XH, Li JX, Yang CL, Tang Q, Jiang RJ, Pan HR, Li YM, Shih JW, Ng MH, Zhu FC, Xia NS. Long-term efficacy of a hepatitis E vaccine. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 914-922 [PMID: 25738667 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1406011]

94 **Kamar N**, Garrouste C, Haagsma EB, Garrigue V, Pischke S, Chauvet C, Dumortier J, Cannesson A, Cassuto-Viguier E, Thervet E, Conti F, Lebray P, Dalton HR, Santella R, Kanaan N, Essig M, Mousson C, Radenne S, Roque-Afonso AM, Izopet J, Rostaing L. Factors associated with chronic hepatitis in patients with hepatitis E virus infection who have received solid organ transplants. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 1481-1489 [PMID: 21354150 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.02.050]

95 **Del Bello A**, Arné-Bes MC, Lavayssière L, Kamar N. Hepatitis E virus-induced severe myositis. *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 1152-1153 [PMID: 22641093 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.05.010]

96 **Pischke S**, Hardtke S, Bode U, Birkner S, Chatzikyrkou C, Kauffmann W, Bara CL, Gottlieb J, Wenzel J, Manns MP, Wedemeyer H. Ribavirin treatment of acute and chronic hepatitis E: a single-centre experience. *Liver Int* 2013; **33**: 722-726 [PMID: 23489973 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12114]

97 **Robbins A**, Lambert D, Ehrhard F, Brodard V, Hentzien M, Lebrun D, Nguyen Y, Tabary T, Peron JM, Izopet J, Bani-Sadr F. Severe acute hepatitis E in an HIV infected patient: Successful treatment with ribavirin. *J Clin Virol* 2014; **60**: 422-423 [PMID: 24894604 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2014.05.003]

98 **Riveiro-Barciela M**, Mínguez B, Gironés R, Rodriguez-Frías F, Quer J, Buti M. Phylogenetic demonstration of hepatitis E infection transmitted by pork meat ingestion. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2015; **49**: 165-168 [PMID: 24637729 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0000000000000113]

99 **Kamar N**, Rostaing L, Abravanel F, Garrouste C, Lhomme S, Esposito L, Basse G, Cointault O, Ribes D, Nogier MB, Alric L, Peron JM, Izopet J. Ribavirin therapy inhibits viral replication on patients with chronic hepatitis e virus infection. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **139**: 1612-1618 [PMID: 20708006 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.08.002]

100 **Kamar N**, Izopet J, Tripon S, Bismuth M, Hillaire S, Dumortier J, Radenne S, Coilly A, Garrigue V, D'Alteroche L, Buchler M, Couzi L, Lebray P, Dharancy S, Minello A, Hourmant M, Roque-Afonso AM, Abravanel F, Pol S, Rostaing L, Mallet V. Ribavirin for chronic hepatitis E virus infection in transplant recipients. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1111-1120 [PMID: 24645943 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1215246]

101 **Kamar N**, Rostaing L, Abravanel F, Garrouste C, Esposito L, Cardeau-Desangles I, Mansuy JM, Selves J, Peron JM, Otal P, Muscari F, Izopet J. Pegylated interferon-alpha for treating chronic hepatitis E virus infection after liver transplantation. *Clin Infect Dis* 2010; **50**: e30-e33 [PMID: 20113176 DOI: 10.1086/650488]

102 **Haagsma EB**, Riezebos-Brilman A, van den Berg AP, Porte RJ, Niesters HG. Treatment of chronic hepatitis E in liver transplant recipients with pegylated interferon alpha-2b. *Liver Transpl* 2010; **16**: 474-477 [PMID: 20373458 DOI: 10.1002/lt.22014]

103 **Kamar N**, Abravanel F, Lhomme S, Rostaing L, Izopet J. Hepatitis E virus: chronic infection, extra-hepatic manifestations, and treatment. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2015; **39**: 20-27 [PMID: 25150374 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.08.04010.1016/j.clinre.2014.07.005]

104 **Debing Y**, Emerson SU, Wang Y, Pan Q, Balzarini J, Dallmeier

K, Neyts J. Ribavirin inhibits in vitro hepatitis E virus replication through depletion of cellular GTP pools and is moderately synergistic with alpha interferon. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2014; **58**: 267-273 [PMID: 24145541 DOI: 10.1128/aac.01795-13]

105 **Mallet V**, Nicand E, Sultanik P, Chakvetadze C, Tessé S, Thervet E, Mouthon L, Sogni P, Pol S. Brief communication: case reports of ribavirin treatment for chronic hepatitis E. *Ann Intern Med* 2010; **153**: 85-89 [PMID: 20547886 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-153-2-201007200-00257]

106 **Neukam K**, Barreiro P, Macías J, Avellón A, Cifuentes C, Martín-Carbonero L, Echevarría JM, Vargas J, Soriano V, Pineda JA. Chronic hepatitis E in HIV patients: rapid progression to cirrhosis and response to oral ribavirin. *Clin Infect Dis* 2013; **57**: 465-468 [PMID: 23575198 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cit224]

107 **Giordani MT**, Fabris P, Brunetti E, Goblirsch S, Romanò L. Hepatitis E and lymphocytic leukemia in Man, Italy. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2013; **19**: 2054-2056 [PMID: 24274068 DOI: 10.3201/eid1912.130521]

108 **Alric L**, Bonnet D, Laurent G, Kamar N, Izopet J. Chronic hepatitis E virus infection: successful virologic response to pegylated interferon-alpha therapy. *Ann Intern Med* 2010; **153**: 135-136 [PMID: 20547885 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-153-2-201007200-00256]

109 **Kamar N**, Abravanel F, Garrouste C, Cardeau-Desangles I, Mansuy JM, Weclawiak H, Izopet J, Rostaing L. Three-month pegylated interferon-alpha-2a therapy for chronic hepatitis E virus infection in a haemodialysis patient. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 2010; **25**: 2792-2795 [PMID: 20494897 DOI: 10.1093/ndt/gfq282]

110 **Dalton HR**, Keane FE, Bendall R, Mathew J, Ijaz S. Treatment of chronic hepatitis E in a patient with HIV infection. *Ann Intern Med* 2011; **155**: 479-480 [PMID: 21969351 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-155-7-201110040-00017]

111 **Debing Y**, Neyts J. Antiviral strategies for hepatitis E virus. *Antiviral Res* 2014; **102**: 106-118 [PMID: 24374149 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2013.12.005]

112 **Zhang J**, Zhang XF, Zhou C, Wang ZZ, Huang SJ, Yao X, Liang ZL, Wu T, Li JX, Yan Q, Yang CL, Jiang HM, Huang HJ, Xian YL, Shih JW, Ng MH, Li YM, Wang JZ, Zhu FC, Xia NS. Protection against hepatitis E virus infection by naturally acquired and vaccine-induced immunity. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2014; **20**: O397-O405 [PMID: 24118636 DOI: 10.1111/1469-0691.12419]

113 **Shrestha MP**, Scott RM, Joshi DM, Mammen MP, Thapa GB, Thapa N, Myint KS, Fourneau M, Kuschner RA, Shrestha SK, David MP, Seriwatana J, Vaughn DW, Safary A, Endy TP, Innis BL. Safety and efficacy of a recombinant hepatitis E vaccine. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **356**: 895-903 [PMID: 17329696 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa061847]

114 **Zhu FC**, Zhang J, Zhang XF, Zhou C, Wang ZZ, Huang SJ, Wang H, Yang CL, Jiang HM, Cai JP, Wang YJ, Ai X, Hu YM, Tang Q, Yao X, Yan Q, Xian YL, Wu T, Li YM, Miao J, Ng MH, Shih JW, Xia NS. Efficacy and safety of a recombinant hepatitis E vaccine in healthy adults: a large-scale, randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet* 2010; **376**: 895-902 [PMID: 20728932 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(10)61030-6]

115 **Chen S**, Zhou Z, Wei FX, Huang SJ, Tan Z, Fang Y, Zhu FC, Wu T, Zhang J, Xia NS. Modeling the long-term antibody response of a hepatitis E vaccine. *Vaccine* 2015; **33**: 4124-4129 [PMID: 26126668 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2015.06.050]

116 **Xia NS**, Zhang J, Zheng YJ, Qiu Y, Ge SX, Ye XZ, Ou SH. [Detection of hepatitis E virus on a blood donor and its infectivity to rhesus monkey]. *Zhonghua Gan Zang Bing Za Zhi* 2004; **12**: 13-15 [PMID: 14761273]

117 **Ren F**, Zhao C, Wang L, Wang Z, Gong X, Song M, Zhuang H, Huang Y, Shan H, Wang J, Liu Q, Ness P, Nelson KE, Wang Y. Hepatitis E virus seroprevalence and molecular study among blood donors in China. *Transfusion* 2014; **54**: 910-917 [PMID: 24372259 DOI: 10.1111/trf.12530]

118 **Ijaz S**, Szypulska R, Tettmar KI, Kitchen A, Tedder RS. Detection of hepatitis E virus RNA in plasma mini-pools from blood donors in England. *Vox Sang* 2012; **102**: 272 [PMID: 21957873 DOI: 10.1111/j.1423-0410.2011.01554.x]

119 **Baylis SA**, Gärtner T, Nick S, Ovemyr J, Blümel J. Occurrence of hepatitis E virus RNA in plasma donations from Sweden, Germany and the United States. *Vox Sang* 2012; **103**: 89-90 [PMID: 22220775 DOI: 10.1111/j.1423-0410.2011.01583.x]

120 **Vollmer T**, Diekmann J, Johne R, Eberhardt M, Knabbe C, Dreier J. Novel approach for detection of hepatitis E virus infection in German blood donors. *J Clin Microbiol* 2012; **50**: 2708-2713 [PMID: 22675127 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.01119-12]

121 **Slot E**, Hogema BM, Riezebos-Brilman A, Kok TM, Molier M, Zaaijer HL. Silent hepatitis E virus infection in Dutch blood donors, 2011 to 2012. *Euro Surveill* 2013; **18**: pii: 20550 [PMID: 23929229 DOI: 10.2807/1560-7917.es2013.18.31.20550]

122 **Hewitt PE**, Ijaz S, Brailsford SR, Brett R, Dicks S, Haywood B, Kennedy IT, Kitchen A, Patel P, Poh J, Russell K, Tettmar KI, Tossell J, Ushiro-Lumb I, Tedder RS. Hepatitis E virus in blood components: a prevalence and transmission study in southeast England. *Lancet* 2014; **384**: 1766-1773 [PMID: 25078306 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)61034-5]

123 **Gallian P**, Lhomme S, Piquet Y, Sauné K, Abravanel F, Assal A, Tiberghien P, Izopet J. Hepatitis E virus infections in blood donors, France. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2014; **20**: 1914-1917 [PMID: 25340881 DOI: 10.3201/eid2011.140516]

124 **Sauleda S**, Ong E, Bes M, Janssen A, Cory R, Babizki M, Shin T, Lindquist A, Hoang A, Vang L, Piron M, Casamitjana N, Koppelman M, Danzig L, Linnen JM. Seroprevalence of hepatitis E virus (HEV) and detection of HEV RNA with a transcription-mediated amplification assay in blood donors from Catalonia (Spain). *Transfusion* 2015; **55**: 972-979 [PMID: 25403913 DOI: 10.1111/trf.12929]

125 **Baylis SA**, Hanschmann KM, Blümel J, Nübling CM. Standardization of hepatitis E virus (HEV) nucleic acid amplification technique-based assays: an initial study to evaluate a panel of HEV strains and investigate laboratory performance. *J Clin Microbiol* 2011; **49**: 1234-1239 [PMID: 21307208 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02578-10]

126 **Bendall R**, Ellis V, Ijaz S, Ali R, Dalton H. A comparison of two commercially available anti-HEV IgG kits and a re-evaluation of anti-HEV IgG seroprevalence data in developed countries. *J Med Virol* 2010; **82**: 799-805 [PMID: 20336757 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.21656]

127 **Dodd RY**. Emerging pathogens and their implications for the blood supply and transfusion transmitted infections. *Br J Haematol* 2012; **159**: 135-142 [PMID: 22924410 DOI: 10.1111/bjh.12031]

128 **Sakata H**, Matsubayashi K, Takeda H, Sato S, Kato T, Hino S, Tadokoro K, Ikeda H. A nationwide survey for hepatitis E virus prevalence in Japanese blood donors with elevated alanine aminotransferase. *Transfusion* 2008; **48**: 2568-2576 [PMID: 18774966 DOI: 10.1111/j.1537-2995.2008.01910.x]

129 **Bajpai M**, Gupta E. Transfusion-transmitted hepatitis E: is screening warranted? *Indian J Med Microbiol* 2011; **29**: 353-358 [PMID: 22120793 DOI: 10.4103/0255-0857.90158]

130 **Poovorawan Y**, Theamboonlers A, Chumdermpadetsuk S, Komolmit P. Prevalence of hepatitis E virus infection in Thailand. *Ann Trop Med Parasitol* 1996; **90**: 189-196 [PMID: 8762409]

131 **Jutavijittum P**, Jiviriyawat Y, Jiviriyawat W, Yousukh A, Hayashi S, Toriyama K. Present epidemiological pattern of antibody to hepatitis a virus among Chiang Mai children, Northern Thailand. *Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health* 2002; **33**: 268-271 [PMID: 12236424]

132 Bureau of Epidemiology DoDC, Ministry of Public Health, Thailand. Case-rate and deaths-rate by year, Thailand, 2003–2012. Annual Epidemiological Surveillance Report, 2012. [Accessed 2015 Apr 1]. Available from: URL: http://www.boe.moph.go.th/Annual/AESR2012/main/AESR55_Part2/table6.pdf

133 **Manns MP**, Wedemeyer H, Cornberg M. Treating viral hepatitis C: efficacy, side effects, and complications. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 1350-1359 [PMID: 16905701 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2005.076646]

134 **Sebode M**, Pischke S, Lütgehetmann M, Polywka S, Quaas A, Lohse AW, Wege H. New foe treated with old guns - supportive role of steroids in the treatment of acute severe hepatitis E. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2014; **14**: 191 [PMID: 25398314 DOI: 10.1186/s12876-014-0191-0]

135 **Mateos Lindemann ML**, Morales JG, Fernández-Barredo S, Domínguez MR, García de la Hoz F, Halfon P, Pérez Gracia MT. Fulminant hepatitis E in a woman taking oral contraceptive medication. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2010; **82**: 12-15 [PMID: 20064988 DOI: 10.4269/ajtmh.2010.09-0436]

P- Reviewer: Berardinis PD, Kamal SA **S- Editor**: Tian YL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i4.356

World J Virol 2015 November 12; 4(4): 356-364
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immune deficiency syndrome: Using drug from mathematical perceptive

Amar Nath Chatterjee, Shubhankar Saha, Priti Kumar Roy

Amar Nath Chatterjee, Shubhankar Saha, Priti Kumar Roy, Centre for Mathematical Biology and Ecology, Department of Mathematics, Jadavpur University, Kolkata 700032, India

Author contributions: All authors had equally contributed to this work.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors state that there are no conflicts of interest regarding the publication of this work.

Correspondence to: Dr. Priti Kumar Roy, MSc, MPhil, PhD, Associate Professor, Centre for Mathematical Biology and Ecology, Department of Mathematics, Jadavpur University, 188, Raja Subodh Chandra Mullick Road, Kolkata 700032, India. pritiju@gmail.com
Telephone: +91-94-32095603

Received: November 2, 2014
Peer-review started: November 2, 2014
First decision: April 22, 2015
Revised: May 19, 2015
Accepted: June 1, 2015
Article in press: June 2, 2015
Published online: November 12, 2015

Abstract

Entry of acquired immune deficiency syndrome virus into the host immune cell involves the participation of various components of host and viral cell unit. These components may be categorized as attachment of the viral surface envelope protein subunit, *gp120*, to the $CD4^+$ receptor and chemokine coreceptors, *CCR5* and *CXCR4*, present on T cell surface. The viral fusion protein, *gp41*, the second cleaved subunit of Env undergoes reconfiguration and the membrane fusion reaction itself. Since the $CD4^+$ T cell population is actively involved; the ultimate outcome of human immunodeficiency virus infection is total collapse of the host immune system. Mathematical modeling of the stages in viral membrane protein-host cell receptor-coreceptor interaction and the effect of antibody vaccine on the viral entry into the susceptible host cell has been carried out using as impulsive differential equations. We have studied the effect of antibody vaccination and determined analytically the threshold value of drug dosage and dosing interval for optimum levels of infection. We have also investigated the effect of perfect adherence of drug dose on the immune cell count in extreme cases and observed that systematic drug dosage of the immune cells leads to longer and improved lives.

Key words: Human immunodeficiency virus; Acquired immune deficiency syndrome; Antibody vaccine; Perfect drug adherence; Impulsive differential equation

Core tip: Use of single-cell antibody-cloning techniques uncover naturally arising, broad and potent human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) neutralizing antibodies. These antibodies can protect against infection and suppress new HIV infection. This antibody vaccination gives new ideas about the fight against the HIV infection. From the analytical study of the effect of antibody vaccination we found the threshold value of drug dosage and dosing interval for optimum levels of infection. We have also investigated the effect of perfect adherence of drug dose on the immune cell count in extreme cases and observed that systematic drug dosage of the immune cells leads to longer and improved lives.

Chatterjee AN, Saha S, Roy PK. Human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immune deficiency syndrome: Using drug from mathematical perceptive. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(4): 356-364 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i4/356.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i4.356

INTRODUCTION

Over the last two decades there has been extensive research on the area of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection invading the human immune system. According to the World Health Organisation (WHO), almost 75 million people have already been infected with the HIV virus and about 36 million people have died of HIV. Globally, 35.3 million people were living with HIV at the end of 2012. An estimated 0.8% of adults aged 15-49 years worldwide are living with HIV, although the burden of the epidemic continues to vary considerably between countries and regions. Sub-Saharan Africa remains most severely affected, with nearly 1 in every 20 adults living with HIV and accounting for 71% of the people living with HIV worldwide. $CD4^+$ T lymphocyte count is the only way to discover the disease progression monitoring during anti retroviral treatment (ART). From the premature days of infection, $CD4^+$ T-lymphocyte cells have been acknowledged as most important for HIV disease progression[1]. A healthy human adult has about 1000 $CD4^+$ T cells per microliter of blood[1], and when the number of $CD4^+$ T cells is reduced below 200/μL, as HIV infected patient considered as acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) patients[2,3]. The infection process of the human cells by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is very complicated process. When HIV invades into the body, it targets the immune cells, mainly the $CD4^+$ T cells. HIV virus can easily hit into $CD4^+$ T cells by a binding process between the envelope proteins (*gp*41/*gp*120) on the surface of HIV with both the CD4 receptor and the chemokine coreceptor. The entry process is initiated by binding of *gp*120, a cleaved subunit of viral surface envelope protein, *Env*, to the $CD4^+$ receptor present on the T cell surface. However, this binding will be futile unless a conformational change is induced in *gp*120 resulting in exposure of a coreceptor binding site and enabling it to bind to as N-terminus of chemokine coreceptor, namely *CCR*5 and *CXCR*4, when a heterotrimeric complex of *gp*120 - C_{D4}-coreceptor is formed. Basically, the chemokines are small soluble paracrine signaling molecules involved in trafficking and recruitment of leukocytes to sites of injury and inflammation. Chemokines and their receptors contribute significantly to disease progression in HIV-afflicted patients. Co-receptor availability and expression determine host susceptibility to infection. These coreceptors are determinants of viral tropism. After that, viral fusion occurs in the target cell membrane and the genetic material viral RNA gets entry into the $CD4^+$ T cell. This genetic material has a reverse transcriptase enzyme. By the reverse transcription process the RNA genome is reverse-transcribed to a DNA copy, and thus the cell becomes infected. This provirus can enter into the host cell genome where it can stay in an actively infected state or a latently infected state.

Virus specific antibodies are created by a complex differentiation pathway that includes B cell proliferation, isotype switching, germinal center formation and affinity maturation[4]. As a result, the presence of specific antibody secreting plasma cells and antibody production tends to continue long after the infection. In this outlook we consider B cell responses by assuming that antibodies are produced in response to free virus and that antibody production diminishes at a certain rate. But the antibody response diminishes during the course of infection and thus the immune system cannot fight against the HIV.

A recent vaccine experiment shows the use of single-cell antibody-cloning techniques that uncovered naturally arising, broad and potent HIV neutralizing antibodies (bNAbs)[5]. It is observed experimentally that these antibodies can defend against infection and suppress HIV infection in animals. The invention of this antibody vaccination gives new ideas about the fight against the HIV infection. The most contemporary approach to study the drug dynamics is determined by use of impulsive differential equations. Perfect or imperfect drug adherence and drug holidays can make easy the development of resistance. In recent years the effects of perfect adherence to antiretroviral therapy have been studied by impulsive differential equations[4,6-10]. Using this method, the dosing period and threshold values of dosage can be obtained more precisely. Also the effect of maximal acceptable drug holidays can be found by using impulsive differential equations[4]. Impulsive differential equations result if drug effect as well as that of the metabolites are assumed to decay with time in an exponential manner during each cycle and are assumed to change instantaneously at dosing times, t_j for different drug doses and can result in either implicit or explicit models[6-8].

This article is arranged in the following manner: In the first section, we formulate the basic mathematical model on the basis of antibody responses against the virus and applying impulsive differential equations, we show how antibody responses on the human immune system. Analytical and numerical studies have been performed in the next sections. Lastly, we discuss the implication of the results which were found in the earlier sections.

THE MODEL

In this research article, we have modified the explicit mathematical model as proposed by Roy *et al*[11], considering the perfect adherence behavior of CTL vaccination in HIV infected patients. Here G_1 represents the concentration of viral *Env* subunit, *gp*120 *in vivo*, and C_{D4} denotes the concentration of C_{D4} receptor on T cell surface. Let C_1 be the concentration of the dimeric complex of *gp*120 and C_{D4} receptor, G_2 be the concentration of viral fusion protein, *gp*41, and C_{CR} be the concentration of the chemokine

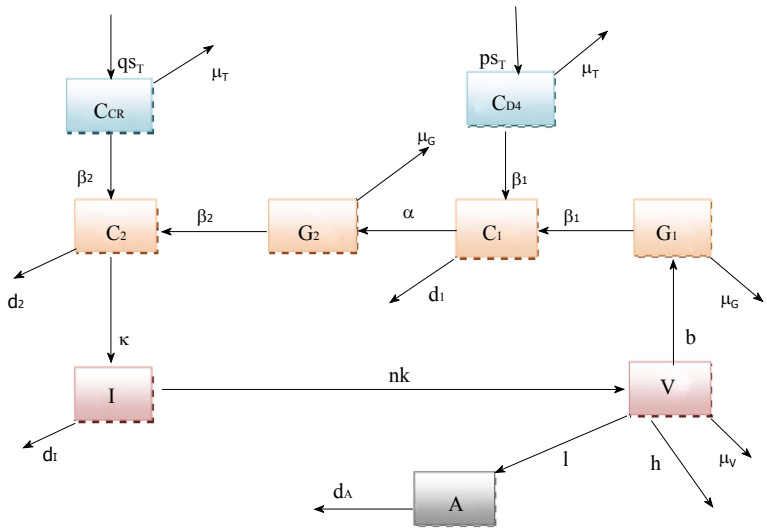


Figure 1 Schematic explanation for the model (1) showing the effect of high drug levels.

coreceptor on CD4$^+$ cells. Also, C_2 be the concentration of the combination of *gp*120 and *gp*120 - C_{D4} chemokine coreceptor ternary complex, *I* denote the concentration of infected CD4$^+$ T cells, and *V* denote the concentration of HIV virus. The model is represented in Figure 1. Here *A* stands for concentration of antibody response. We suppose that antibody responds proportionally to the production of free virus particles at a rate *IVA*. Antibody responses neutralize free virus particles at a rate *hVA*. In presence of antibody vaccination through perfect adherence, the model is given by:

$$dG_1/dt = bV - \mu_G G_1 - \beta_1 G_1 C_{D4}$$
$$dC_{D4}/dt = ps_T - \mu_T C_{D4} - \beta_1 G_1 C_{D4}$$
$$dC_1/dt = \beta_1 G_1 C_{D4} - d_1 C_1$$
$$dG_2/dt = \alpha C_1 - \mu_G G_2 - \beta_2 G_2 C_{CR}$$
$$dC_{CR}/dt = qs_T - \mu_T C_{CR} - \beta_2 G_2 C_{CR}$$
$$dC_2/dt = \beta_2 G_2 C_{CR} - d_2 C_2$$
$$dI/dt = kC_2 - d_I I$$
$$dV/dt = nd_I I - \mu_V V - hVA$$
$$dA/dt = lVA - d_A A \qquad \text{for} \quad t \neq t_k \qquad (1)$$

$$\triangle A \equiv A(t_k^+) - A(t_k^-) = \bar{A} \qquad \text{for} \quad t = t_k \qquad (2)$$

In the system (1), *b* represents the multiplication capacity of *gp*120 in response to virus. The parameter a represents the successful exposure of *gp*41, since it is exposed only after attachment between *gp*120 and the C_{D4} receptor is complete. The parameter μ denotes the decay of *gp*120 and *gp*41, and β_1 denotes the bonding force between *gp*120 and the C_{D4} receptor. Further β_2 denotes the bonding force between the dimeric complex of *gp*120 and C_{D4} receptor and also the chemokine coreceptor. The source of susceptible CD4$^+$ T cells is represented by s_T, and *p* and *q* denote the number of C_{D4} receptors and chemokine coreceptors on one CD4$^+$ T cell respectively. The death rate of healthy CD4$^+$ T cell μ_T and the death rate of infected CD4$^+$ T cells is d_I. The dissociation rate of C_1 and C_2 are d_1 and d_2 respectively and for the sake of simplicity, it is assumed that after dissociation of C_1 and C_2, they will not return to their respective components. Here *n* represents the number of virus particles that are produced by one infected CD4$^+$ T cell. The clearance rate of free HIV virus is represented as μ_V. Antibody responses by *A* are produced at a rate *l* and d_A indicates the death rate of antibody responses. The concentration of antibodies (bNAbs) is represented by $A_{(t)}$ in plasma. The drug dose, $\bar{A}$, that is taken at each impulse time t_j (j = 1, 2, 3...) is kept constant. Since vaccination may be taken at either regular or irregular intervals, we have considered. The impulse time t_j to be fixed. The system (1) together with the system (2) represent the dynamics with vaccine. The vaccination interval $\tau = t_{j+1} - t_j$ is fixed. Here we have only analyzed the models (1) - (2).

ANALYSIS OF THE MODEL

In absence of drug

To study the model (1) together with (2), we first analyze the model in absence of drug. When drug is not administered to the system, we have observed that there exist two equilibrium point: (1) The disease free equilibrium point $\bar{E}$; and (2) The endemic equilibrium point E^*.

The disease free state: In absence of drug, there may exist disease free equilibrium point $\bar{E}$ which is given by

$$\bar{E}\,(0, ps_T/\mu_T, 0, 0, qs_T/\mu_T, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0) \qquad (3)$$

Now for the system (1) and (2) the Jacobian matrix is $J = [J_1|J_2]$, where

$$J_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -(\mu_G + \beta_1 C_{D4}) & -\beta_1 G_1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -\beta_1 C_{D4} & -(\mu_T + \beta_1 G_1) & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \beta_1 C_{D4} & \beta_1 G_1 & -d_1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \alpha & -(\mu_G + \beta_2 C_{CR}) & -\beta_2 G_2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -\beta_2 C_{CR} & -(\mu_T + \beta_2 G_2) \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \beta_2 C_{CR} & \beta_2 G_2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$J_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & b & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -d_2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ k & -d_I & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & nd_I & -(\mu_V + hA) & -hV \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -d_A \end{bmatrix}$$

The characteristic equation for the disease free equilibrium $\bar{E}$ is

$$(\Lambda + d_A)(\Lambda + \mu_T)^2 G(\Lambda) = 0. \quad (4)$$

where

$$G(\Lambda) = \begin{bmatrix} \Lambda + \mu_G + \beta_1\bar{C}_{D4} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -b \\ -\beta_1\bar{C}_{D4} & \Lambda + d_I & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -\alpha & \Lambda + \mu_G + \beta_2\bar{C}_{CR} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -\beta_2\bar{C}_{CR} & \Lambda + d_2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -k & \Lambda + d_I & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -nd_I & \Lambda + \mu_V \end{bmatrix}$$

we get,

$$G(\Lambda) = \Lambda^6 + \xi_1\Lambda^5 + \xi_2\Lambda^4 + \xi_3\Lambda^3 + \xi_4\Lambda^2 + \xi_5\Lambda + \xi_6 = 0, \quad (5)$$

where,

$$\xi_1 = d_1 + d_2 + d_I + 2\mu_G + \mu_V + \beta_1\bar{C}_{D4} + \beta_2\bar{C}_{CR} > 0,$$
$$\xi_2 = (\mu_G + \beta_1\bar{C}_{D4})(\mu_G + \beta_2\bar{C}_{CR}) + (d_1 + d_2 + d_I + \mu_V) \times (2\mu_G + \beta_1\bar{C}_{D4} + \beta_2\bar{C}_{CR}) + (d_1 + d_2)(\mu_V + d_I) + \mu_V d_I + d_1 d_2 > 0,$$
$$\xi_3 = (\mu_G + \beta_1\bar{C}_{D4})(\mu_G + \beta_2\bar{C}_{CR})(d_1 + d_2 + d_I + \mu_V) + (2\mu_G + \beta_1\bar{C}_{D4} + \beta_2\bar{C}_{CR})\,[(d_1 + d_2)(\mu_V + d_I) + (d_I\mu_V + d_1 d_2)] + [d_1 d_2(\mu_V + d_I) + d_I\mu_V(d_1 + d_2)] > 0,$$
$$\xi_4 = (2\mu_G + \beta_1\bar{C}_{D4} + \beta_2\bar{C}_{CR})[d_1 d_2(\mu_V + d_I) + d_I\mu_V \times (d_1 + d_2)] + (\mu_G + \beta_1\bar{C}_{D4})(\mu_G + \beta_2\bar{C}_{CR}) \times [(d_1 + d_2)(\mu_V + d_I) + (d_I\mu_V + d_1 d_2)] + d_1 d_2 d_I\mu_V > 0,$$
$$\xi_5 = (\mu_G + \beta_1\bar{C}_{D4})(\mu_G + \beta_2\bar{C}_{CR})\,[d_1 d_2(\mu_V + d_I) + d_I\mu_V\,(d_1 + d_2)] + d_1 d_2 d_I\mu_V(2\mu_G + \beta_1\bar{C}_{D4} + \beta_2\bar{C}_{CR}) > 0,$$
$$\xi_6 = d_1 d_2 d_I\mu_V(\mu_G + \beta_1\bar{C}_{D4})(\mu_G + \beta_2\bar{C}_{CR}) - nkab\beta_1\beta_2 d_I\bar{C}_{D4}\bar{C}_{CR}. \quad (6)$$

For $\xi_6 > 0$ there exist no positive roots and all roots are negative. Hence, the basic reproduction R_0 is,

$$R_0 = \frac{nkab\beta_1\beta_2 pqs_T^2}{d_1 d_2\mu_V(\mu_G\mu_T + ps_T\beta_1)(\mu_G\mu_T + qs_T\beta_2)}$$

Remark: At disease free equilibrium point $\bar{E}$, the system is locally stable if the basic reproduction number $R_0 < 1$ and the system is unstable when $R_0 > 1$.

The endemic state: There exists another equilibrium in the form of endemic equilibrium (E^*),

$$(G^*_1, C^*_{D4}, C^*_1, C^*_2, C^*_{CR}, C^*_2, I^*, V^*, A^*) \quad (7)$$

where,

$$C^*_{D4} = \frac{ps_T}{\mu_T + \beta_1 G_1^*}, \quad C^*_1 = \frac{ps_T\beta_1 G_1^*}{d_1(\mu_T + \beta_1 G_1^*)},$$

$$V^* = \frac{d_A}{\iota}, \quad I^* = \frac{kG^*_2}{d_I},$$

$$C^*_{CR} = \frac{qs_T}{\mu_T + \beta_2 G_2^*}, \quad A^* = \frac{(nd_I I^* - \mu_V V^*)}{hV^*},$$

$$C^*_2 = \frac{\beta_2 G^*_2 C^*_{CR}}{d_2},$$

$$G^*_1 = \frac{-\zeta_2 + \sqrt{\zeta_2^2 + 4\zeta_1\zeta_3}}{2\zeta_1},$$

$$G^*_2 = \frac{-\eta_2 + \sqrt{\eta_2^2 + 4\eta_1\eta_3}}{2\eta_1}, \quad (8)$$

and,

$$\zeta_1 = \iota\beta_1\mu_G,\ \zeta_2 = \iota(ps_T\beta_1 + \mu_G\mu_T) - bd_A\beta_1,\ \zeta_3 = bd_A\mu_T,$$
$$\eta_1 = \mu_G\beta_2,\ \eta_2 = (qs_T\beta_2 + \mu_G\mu_T - \alpha\beta_2 C^*_1),\ \eta_3 = \alpha\mu_T C^*_1 \quad (9)$$

The endemic state with antibody response exist if the concentration of the combination of *gp41* and *gpl20-CD4*-chemokine coreceptor ternary complex (C_2) satisfy the condition

$$C^*_2 > \frac{\mu_V d_A}{nkl} \quad \text{and} \quad R_0 > 1$$

In this article, our main aim is to justify the effect of antibody vaccination mathematically. So we have not carried out the stability analysis for the endemic state. However we have derived the existence condition for the endemic state. Moreover we have carried out the numerical illustration for the endemic state and verified that the endemic state exist when $R_0 > 1$.

THE SYSTEM WITH PERFECT ADHERENCE

To study the impulsive system it is assumed that the vaccine is taken at regular intervals with length $\tau = t_{k+1} - t_k$. For a impulsive cycle $t_k \leqslant t \leqslant t_{k+1}$, the solution is

$$A(t) = A(t_k^+)e^{\int_{t_k}^{t}[lV(u) - d_A]du} \qquad t_k < t \leqslant t_{k+1}$$
$$\geqslant A(t_k^+)e^{-d_A(t - t_k)} \quad (10)$$

Suppose that $A(t_k^-)$ denots the value immediately before the impulse and $A(t_k^+)$ is the value immediately after. Calculating the least value of the concentration of $A(t)$ for the perfect adherence with fixed interval length ($\tau > 0$) we get

$$A(t) = A(t_k^+)e^{-d_A(t - t_k)} \quad (11)$$

This is the required concentration of antibody response to control the virus.

If $A(0) = \bar{A}$, then we have

$$A(t_1^+) = \bar{A}$$
$$A(t_2^-) = \bar{A}e^{-d_A\tau}$$
$$A(t_2^+) = \bar{A}(1 + e^{-d_A\tau})$$
$$A(t_3^-) = \bar{A}(1 + e^{-d_A\tau})e^{-d_A\tau}$$
$$A(t_3^+) = \bar{A}(1 + e^{-d_A\tau} + e^{-2d_A\tau})$$
$$\vdots$$
$$A(t_p^+) = \bar{A}(1 + e^{-d_A\tau} + e^{-2d_A\tau} + e^{-3d_A\tau} + \ldots + e^{-(p-1)d_A\tau})$$
$$= \bar{A}\,\frac{1 - e^{-pd_A\tau}}{1 - e^{d_A\tau}} \quad (12)$$

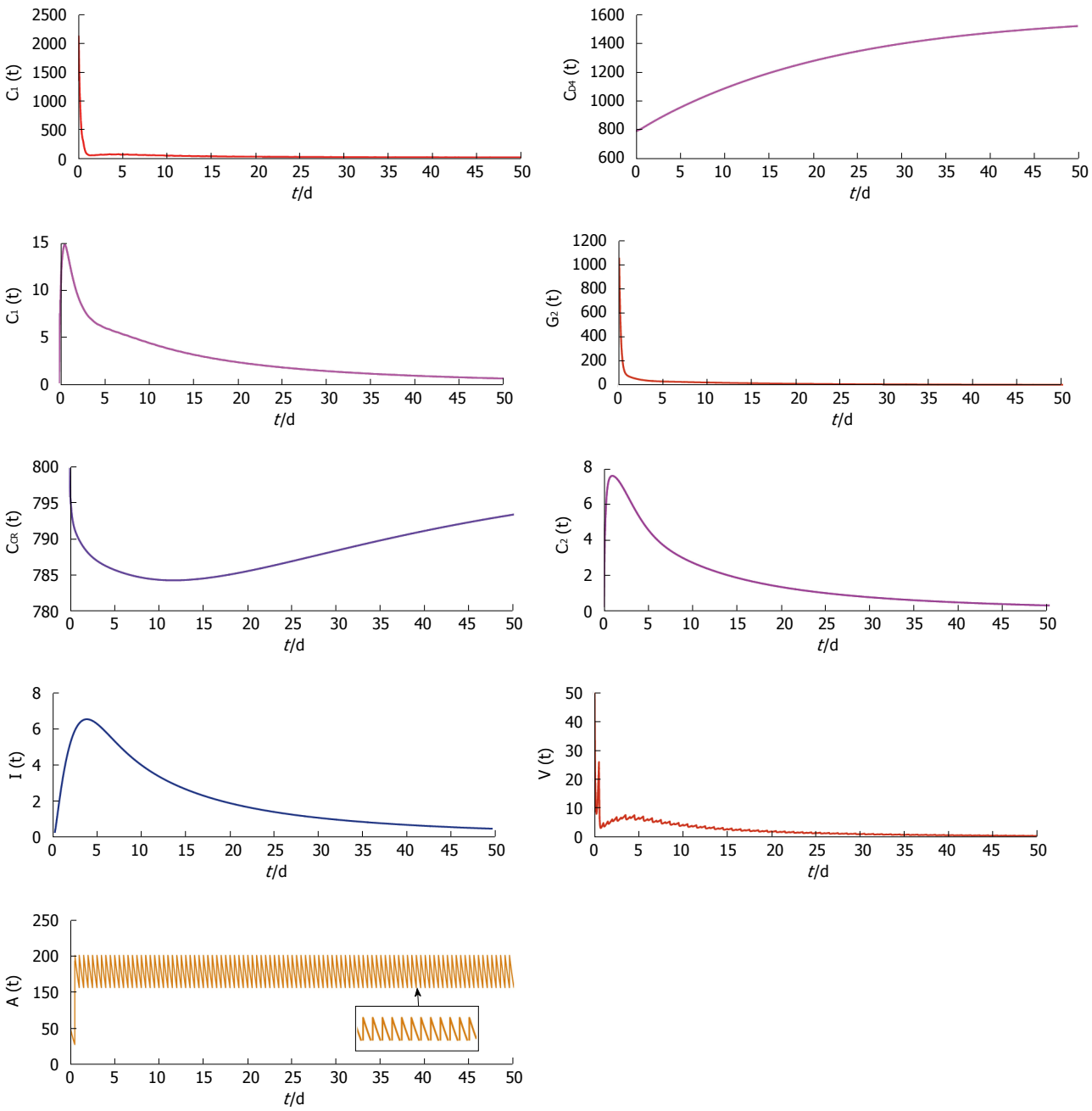


Figure 2 Trajectories showing the concentration changes with time of the model variable under restrained antibody vaccination with τ = 0.5 and $\overline{A}$ = 100.

Hence,

$$\lim_{p\to\infty} A(t_p^+) = \frac{\overline{A}}{1 - e^{-d_A\tau}} \quad (13)$$

The periodic end points of the trajectories are

$$\frac{\overline{A}}{1 - e^{-d_A\tau}} \text{ and } \frac{\overline{A}e^{-d_A\tau}}{1 - e^{-d_A\tau}}$$

For perfect vaccination, the antibody response after the nth vaccination is

$$A(t_n^+) = \frac{\overline{A}}{1 - e^{-d_A\tau}}$$

For perfect adherence, to control the virus and avoid resistance, the minimum value (A^*) of the periodic orbit must satisfy:

$$A^* < \frac{\overline{A}e^{-d_A\tau}}{1 - e^{-d_A\tau}} \quad (14)$$

Which implies that

$$\tau = \frac{1}{d_A} ln\left(\frac{A^* + \overline{A}}{A^*}\right) = \tau_{max} \quad (15)$$

Remark: If we can restrict the dosing interval of τ satisfying the condition $0 \leqslant \tau < \tau_{max}$ (for fixed vaccination) then the disease can be controlled. However, if $\tau > \tau_{max}$, the disease progression continues, even if drug is administered at fixed intervals. Thus maintenance of optimum dosage regimen is essential in order to control

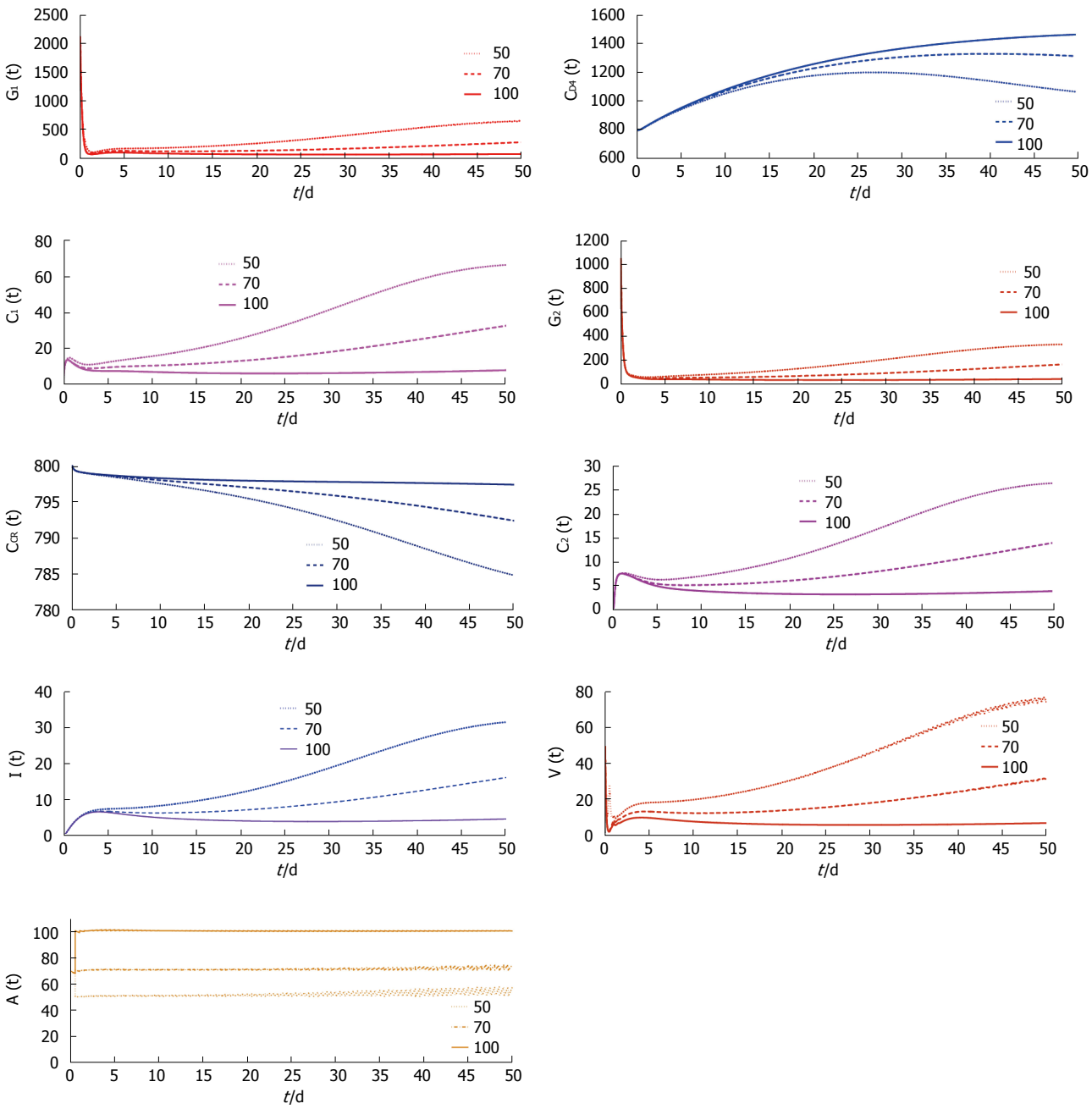


Figure 3 Trajectories showing the concentration changes with time of the model variable under different antibody vaccination concentration with τ = 0.5.

the disease effectively.

NUMERICAL SIMULATION

In our numerical illustration, we have described the perfect drug adherence of antibody vaccination. All the parameters are taken from Table 1. We have assumed the initial condition as $G_1(0) = 2100$, $C_{D4}(0) = 800$, $C_1(0) = 0$, $G_2(0) = 1050$, $C_{CR}(0) = 800$, $C_2(0) = 0$, $I(0) = 0$, $V(0) = 50$, $A(0) = 100$ and the unit of the concentration is mm^{-3}.

In Figure 2 we observe that in the presence of vaccination ($\bar{A}$ = 100) with frequent dosing interval (*i.e.*, τ = 0.5), the virus population and infected $CD4^+$ T cells population reduces. From this illustration, it can be predicted that proper antibody vaccination can restrict the infection process in HIV transmission. Now if the dosage of vaccination is not sufficient, then the effect of vaccination cannot be observed on the virus population and infected cell population.

In Figure 3, it is clearly observed that in presence of low vaccination (*i.e.*, for $\bar{A}$ = 50 or $\bar{A}$ = 70), the disease transmission process persists. Only adequate increment of the dosage of vaccination can restrict the disease progression. From these two figures we can predict that sufficient dosage of vaccination with frequent dosing interval can restrict the disease progression.

From Figures 4 and 5 we try to find out the effect of

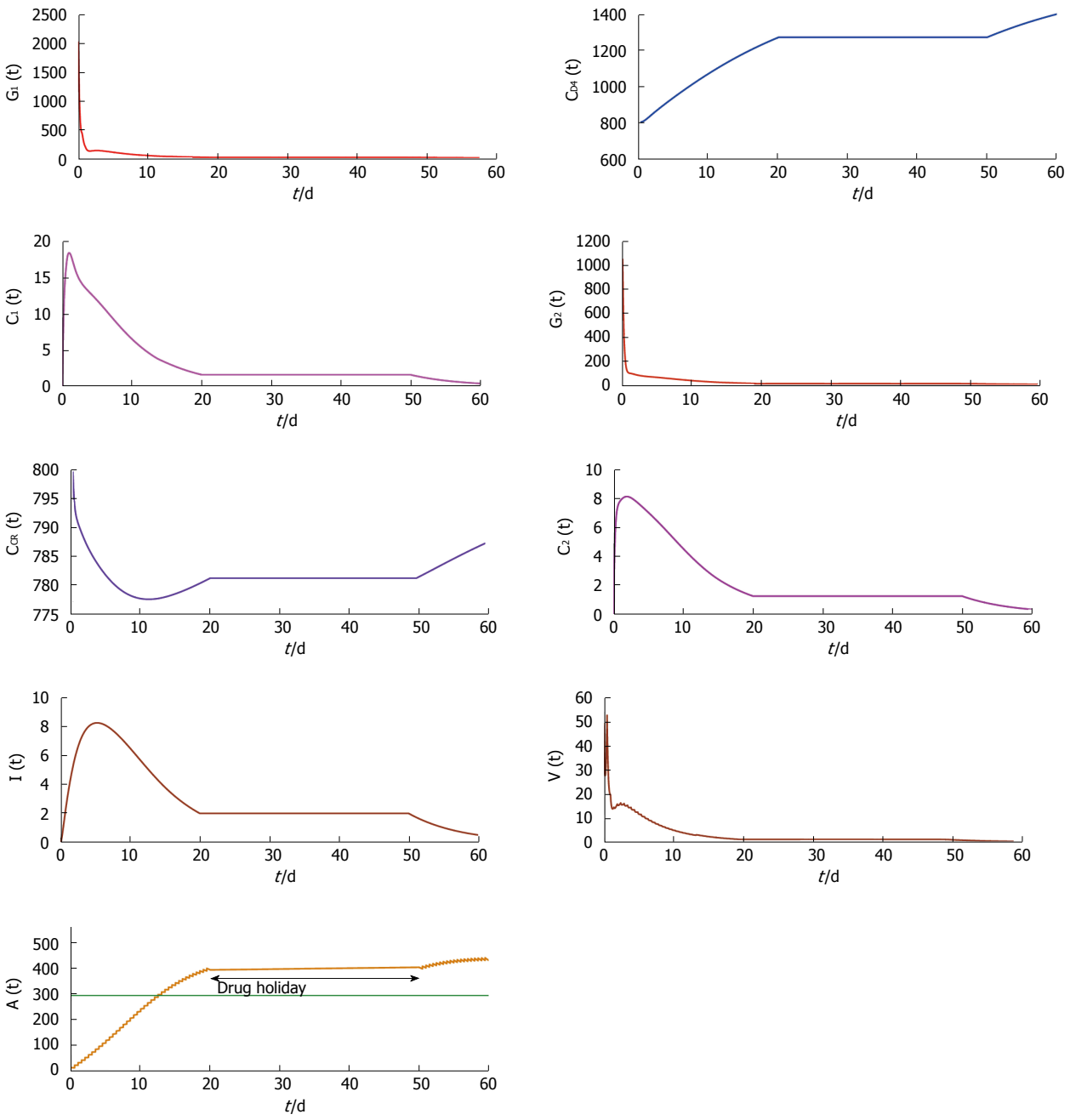


Figure 4 Trajectories showing the concentration changes with time of the model variable under restrained antibody vaccination with τ = 0.5 along with drug holidays for a period of 30 d.

drug holidays. In Figure 4, we restrict the drug holidays 30 d, where as in Figure 5 the drug holidays is 10 d only. It is observed that when the drug holiday is 30 d the virus population attains its minimum value after 55 d. But if we restrict the drug holidays 10 d, the virus population attains its minimum value after 35 d. We also observe that for a 10 d drug holiday the C_{D4} receptor and C_{CR} receptor attains its maximum concentration within 40 d. Whereas C_D receptor and C_{CR} receptor attains its maximum concentration within 60 d for 30 d drug holidays. Thus most unpleasant circumstances occur in case of long-term effects of the drug holidays.

Figure 6 show that phase plane plotted against dosing interval and antibody responses. From this figure it is clearly observed that the antibody responses attain its maximum value if the drug dosing interval is frequent. Also the antibody responses reduce for the outsized dosing interval.

CONCLUSION

Antibody vaccination in AIDS therapy has been studied as a new policy. Here vaccination is delivered to the host system in an impulsive mode to reactivate the antibody response. Dosage of vaccination and dosing interval has been effectively studied by this present mathematical

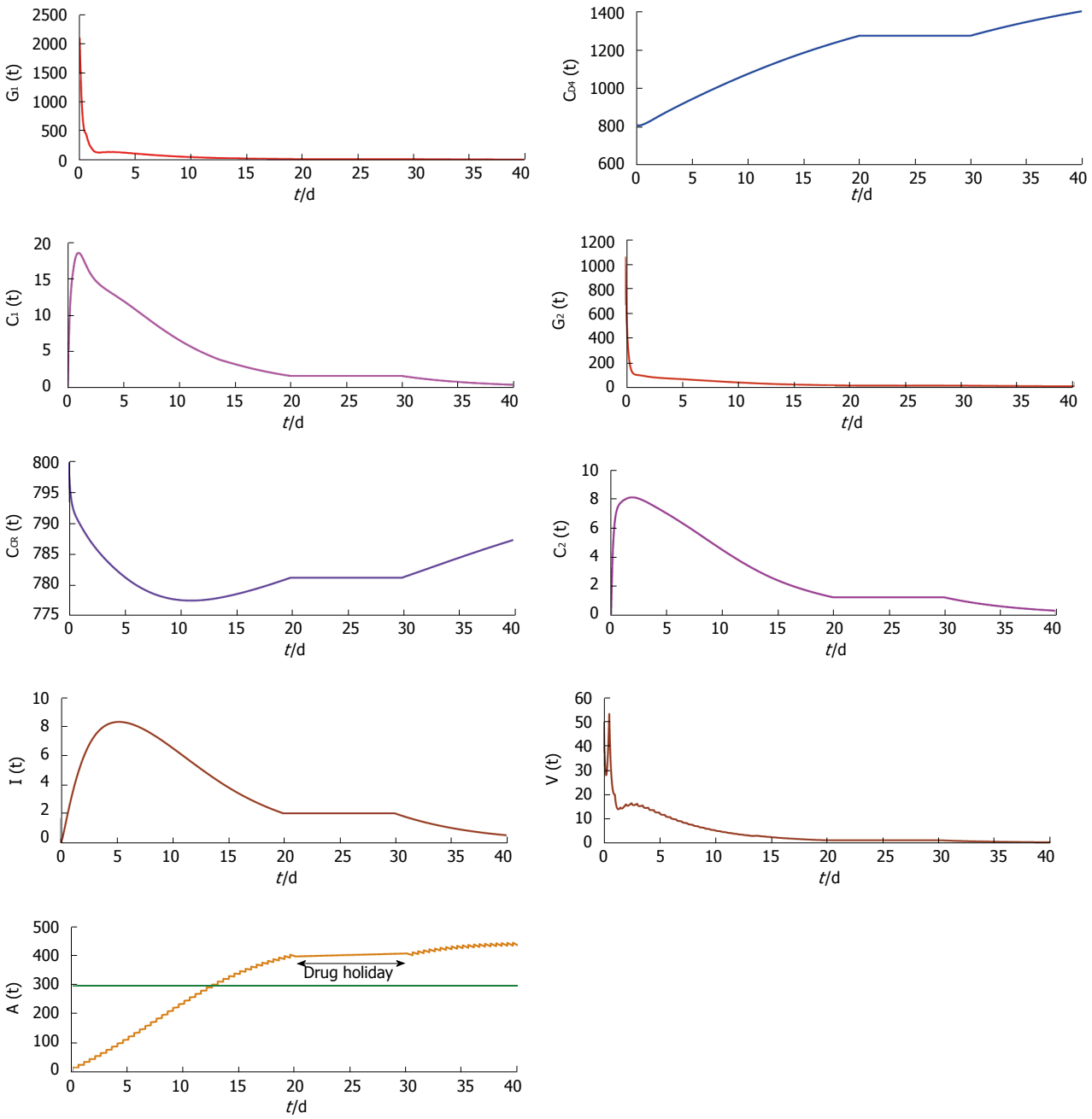


Figure 5 Trajectories showing the concentration changes with time of the model variable under restrained antibody vaccination with τ = 0.5 along with drug holidays for a period of 10 d.

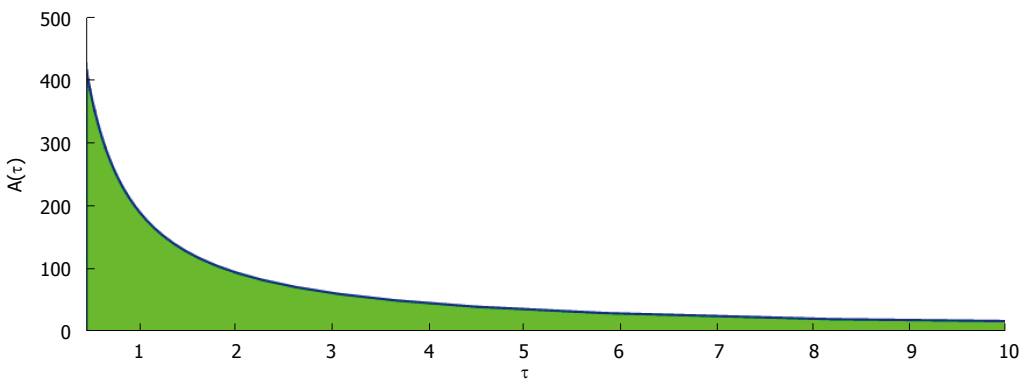


Figure 6 Phase plane showing the concentration of antibody responses against fixed dosing interval.

Table 1 List of parameters for system (1) - (2)

Parameter	Value (units)	Ref.
b	42 (per day)	[6]
β_1	10^{-5} (/mm^3/d)	[6]
μ_G	5 (per day)	[9]
p	1 (per day)	[6]
S_T	80 (/mm^3/d)	[9]
μ_T	0.05 (per day)	[6]
d_1	0.4 (per day)	[6]
α	25 (per day)	[6]
β_2	10^{-5} (/mm^3/d)	[6]
q	0.6 (per day)	[6]
d_2	0.4 (per day)	[6]
κ	0.6 (per day)	[6]
d_I	0.5 (per day)	[9]
δ	0.01 (per day)	[7]
n	540	[6]
μ_V	3 (per day)	[7]
ι	0.01 (per day)	[12]
d_A	0.5 (per day)	[7]

model. It has been observed that when basic reproduction ratio lies below one, we expect the system attain its disease free state. However, at $R_0 > 1$, the system switches to endemic equilibrium. These conjectures have been supported by the results of numerical simulations.

It has been observed that the length of the dosing interval and the drug dose play a very decisive role in maintaining stable disease free equilibrium. From analytical as well as numerical finding it has been observed that the antibody responses attain its maximum value if the drug dosing interval is frequent. But the antibody responses reduce for the large dosing interval. Also we have observed that the drug holiday plays a pivotal role during the treatment schedule. From numerical findings we can predict that extensive drug holidays is unsafe for the treatment. Analytically and numerically, it has been observed that viral entry into the host cell is also inhibited with uninfected host CD4$^+$ T cell population remaining unaffected. This happens because the antibody vaccination when administered following the best possible antibody responses can act against the free virus to neutralize free virus particles. This particular situation keeps the infected cell population at a very low level.

REFERENCES

1 **Nowak M**, May RM. AIDS pathogenesis: mathematical models of HIV and SIV infections. *AIDS* 1993; **7** Suppl 1: S3-18 [PMID: 8363800]

2 **Perelson AS**, Kirschner DE, De Boer R. Dynamics of HIV infection of CD4+ T cells. *Math Biosci* 1993; **114**: 81-125 [PMID: 8096155]

3 **Perelson AS**, Neumann AU, Markowitz M, Leonard JM, Ho DD. HIV-1 dynamics in vivo: virion clearance rate, infected cell life-span, and viral generation time. *Science* 1996; **271**: 1582-1586 [PMID: 8599114]

4 **Miron RE**, Smith RJ. Modelling imperfect adherence to HIV induction therapy. *BMC Infect Dis* 2010; **10**: 6 [PMID: 20064271]

5 **Klein F**, Mouquet H, Dosenovic P, Scheid JF, Scharf L, Nussenzweig MC. Antibodies in HIV-1 vaccine development and therapy. *Science* 2013; **341**: 1199-1204 [PMID: 24031012]

6 **Lou J**, Smith RJ. Modelling the effects of adherence to the HIV fusion inhibitor enfuvirtide. *J Theor Biol* 2011; **268**: 1-13 [PMID: 20888346]

7 **Smith RJ**, Aggarwala BD. Can the viral reservoir of latently infected CD4(+) T cells be eradicated with antiretroviral HIV drugs? *J Math Biol* 2009; **59**: 697-715 [PMID: 19165438]

8 **Smith RJ**. Explicitly accounting for antiretroviral drug uptake in theoretical HIV models predicts long-term failure of protease-only therapy. *J Theor Biol* 2008; **251**: 227-237 [PMID: 18191950]

9 **Smith RJ**, Wahl LM. Drug resistance in an immunological model of HIV-1 infection with impulsive drug effects. *Bull Math Biol* 2005; **67**: 783-813 [PMID: 15893553]

10 **Lou J**, Chen L, Ruggeri T. An Impulsive Differential Model on Post Exposure Prophylaxis to HIV-1 Exposed Individual. *J Biol Syst* 2009; **17**: 659-683 [DOI: 10.1142/S0218339009002934]

11 **Roy PK**, Chatterjee AN, Majee SB. Effect of Chemokine Analog through Perfect Adherence in HIV Treatment: A Model Based Study. *IJAMA* 2012; **4**: 121-145

12 **Wodarz D**, May RM, Nowak MA. The role of antigen-independent persistence of memory cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *Int Immunol* 2000; **12**: 467-477 [PMID: 10744648]

P- Reviewer: De Paschale M, Ghiringhelli PD, Krishnan T
S- Editor: Ji FF **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Yan JL

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i4.365

World J Virol 2015 November 12; 4(4): 365-371
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

Rapid genotyping of human rotavirus using SYBR green real-time reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction with melting curve analysis

Yupin Tong, Bonita E Lee, Xiaoli L Pang

Yupin Tong, Department of Medicine, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta T6G 2J2, Canada

Bonita E Lee, Department of Pediatrics, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta T6G 2J2, Canada

Xiaoli L Pang, Department of Laboratory Medicine and Pathology, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta T6G 2J2, Canada

Xiaoli L Pang, Provincial Laboratory for Public Health, University of Alberta Hospital, Edmonton, Alberta T6G 2J2, Canada

Author contributions: Tong Y performed the experiments, analyzed the data and wrote the manuscript; Lee BE contributed data and sample selections for the study and revised the manuscript; Pang XL designed the research and revised the manuscript.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Provincial Laboratory for Public Health Edmonton Alberta (Provlab) Institutional Review Board.

Conflict-of-interest statement: None.

Data sharing statement: Technical appendix, clinical dataset is available from the corresponding author at xiao-li.pang@albertahealthservices.ca.

Correspondence to: Xiaoli L Pang, PhD, Provincial Laboratory for Public Health, University of Alberta Hospital, WMC 2B4.58, 8440 112 Street, Edmonton, Alberta T6G 2J2, Canada. xiao-li.pang@albertahealthservices.ca
Telephone: +1-780-4073483
Fax: +1-780-4078984

Received: May 29, 2015
Peer-review started: June 2, 2015
First decision: June 18, 2015
Revised: August 1, 2015
Accepted: September 29, 2015
Article in press: September 30, 2015
Published online: November 12, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To develop a real-time reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) assay to genotype rotavirus (G and P) in Alberta from January 2012 to June 2013.

METHODS: We developed and validated a different approach to perform rotavirus G and P genotyping using a two-step SYBR green RT-PCR (rt-gPCR) by selecting genotype-specific primers of published conventional RT nested PCR (cnRT-PCR) assay and optimizing the amplification conditions. cDNA was first synthesized from total RNA with SuperScript™ Ⅱ reverse transcriptase kit followed by amplication step using monoplex SYBR green real-time PCR. After the PCR reaction, melting curve analysis was used to determine specific genotype. Sixteen samples previously genotyped using cnRT-PCR were tested using the new assay and the genotyping results were compared as sensitivity analysis. Assay specificity was evaluated by testing other gastroenteritis viruses with the new assay. The amplicon size of each available genotype was determined by gel-electrophoresis and DNA sequences were obtained using Sanger-sequencing method. After validation and optimization, the new assay was used to genotype 122 pediatric clinical stool samples previously tested positive for rotavirus using electron microscopy between January

2012 and June 2013.

RESULTS: The new rt-gPCR assay was validated and optimized. The assay detected G1 to G4, G9, G12 and P[4] and P[8] that were available as positive controls in our laboratory. A single and clear peak of melting curve was generated for each of specific G and P genotypes with a T_m ranging from 80 ℃ to 82 ℃. The sensitivity of rt-gPCR was comparable to cnRT-PCR with 100% correlation of the 16 samples with known G and P genotypes. No cross reaction was found with other gastroenteritis viruses. Using the new rt-gPCR assay, genotypes were obtained for 121 of the 122 pediatric clinical samples tested positive for rotavirus: G1P[8] (42.6%), G2P[4] (4.9%), G3P[8] (10.7%), G9P[8] (10.7%), G9P[4] (6.6%), G12P[8] (23.0%), and unknown GP[8] (0.8%). For the first time, G12 rotavirus strains were found in Alberta and G12 was the second most common genotype during the study period. Gel electrophoresis of all the genotypes showed expected amplicon size for each genotype. The sequence data of the two G12 samples along with other genotypes were blasted in NCBI BLAST or analyzed with Rota C Genotyping tool (http://rotac.regatools.be/). All genotyping results were confirmed to be correct.

CONCLUSION: rt-gPCR is a useful tool for the genotyping and characterization of rotavirus. Monitoring of rotavirus genotypes is important for the identification of emerging strains and ongoing evaluation of rotavirus vaccination programs.

Key words: Rotavirus A; Melting temperature; Real-time polymerase chain reaction; SYBR green; Genotyping

Core tip: Genotyping rotavirus is essential for monitoring strain shifts in rotavirus surveillance and vaccine evaluation. Current conventional semi-nested real-time reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR), the most commonly used rotavirus genotyping assay is a labor-intensive, complex multi-step procedure and has long turn around-time. The newly developed SYBR Green real time RT-PCR assay is simple, fast and has comparable sensitivity and specificity as conventional semi-nested RT-PCR. This new assay was used to genotype clinical samples which tested positive for rotavirus from January 2012 to June 2013 and new emerging G12 strains were identified in Alberta, Canada.

Tong Y, Lee BE, Pang XL. Rapid genotyping of human rotavirus using SYBR green real-time reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction with melting curve analysis. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(4): 365-371 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i4/365.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i4.365

INTRODUCTION

Rotavirus group A is a major cause of severe acute gastroenteritis in children worldwide, with most children contracting the infection by five years of age[1]. Rotavirus vaccines are most efficacious in protecting children from severe rotavirus gastroenteritis, especially in areas with very low or low child and adult mortality[2]. Two effective rotavirus vaccines, RotaTeq® (Merck and Co., Inc.), a bovine-human reassortant vaccine covering the G1-G4 genotypes along with P[8] and Rotarix® (GlaxoSmithKline, Inc.), a monovalent attenuated human G1P[8] vaccine, were recommended by the WHO in 2009 for the routine immunization of infant globally[3].

The viral genome consists of 11 double-stranded RNA segments, which encode six structure proteins (VP1-4, VP6 and VP7) and six non-structure proteins (NSP1-6). The traditional classification of rotavirus using serotyping has mostly been replaced with G and P genotyping that are based on the diversity of VP7 and VP4 gene sequences, respectively. Twenty-seven G genotypes (G1-G27) and 35 P genotypes (P[1]-P[35]) have been described and six G (G1-4, G9 and G12) and three P (P[4], P[6], and P[8]) genotypes predominate globally with some regional differences[4,5]. Introduction of vaccines or natural evolution of rotavirus may alter antigenic properties of circulating strains in the regions. The antigenic drift between G and P genotypes could result in a decrease of the effectiveness of vaccines against infection in the near future[6,7]. Therefore, understanding the presence and distribution of G and P genotypes and monitoring the emerging and recombination of rotavirus genotypes are very important prior to and after the introduction of rotavirus vaccines.

Various molecular methods have been developed for rotavirus genotyping. Conventional reverse transcriptase (RT) and nested polymerase chain reaction (cnRT-PCR) broadly used since the 90s[8-10] have been improved with more sensitive and specific primers[11,12]. These improved cnRT-PCR methods recognize a broad cluster of various rotavirus G and P genotypes with good specificity. However, there are several drawbacks of these type of assays including: (1) multi-step maneuvers and the requirement of two runs of PCR reactions and gel electrophoresis; (2) labor intensive protocols and a long turn-around time for final results; (3) difficulty with result interpretations due to non-specific amplicons or multiple amplicons in samples with co-infections; and (4) risk of cross contamination of PCR end-products because of the need for open tube maneuvers. With the 2010 recommendation of use of rotavirus vaccine for healthy infants in Canada[13], a rapid and accurate genotyping assay is needed for the evaluation of the vaccine programs in many provinces.

Recently, real time RT-PCR assays in a closed tube system with their rapid turn around-time, sensitivity and specificity and low risk of cross contamination have been implemented in both research and diagnostic

Table 1 Polymerase chain reaction primers used for G and P typing of human rotavirus by reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction

Primer	Sequence (5′-3′)	Amplicon size (bp)	Direction	Ref.
G-type				
VP7-R	AAC TTG CCA CCA TTT TTT CC		Antisense	Iturriza-Gómara *et al*[10]
G1	CAA GTA CTC AAA TCA ATG ATG G	618	Sense	Gouvea *et al*[8]
G2	CAA TGA TAT TAA CAC ATT TTC TGT G	521	Sense	Gouvea *et al*[8]
G3	ACG AAC TCA ACA CGA GAG G	682	Sense	Iturriza-Gómara *et al*[10]
G4	CGT TTC TGG TGA GGA GTT G	452	Sense	Gouvea *et al*[8]
G8	TTR1 TCG CAC CAT TTG TAA TT	756	Sense	Aladin *et al*[12]
G9	CTT GAT GTG ACT AY[1]A AAT AC	179	Sense	Iturriza-Gómara *et al*[10]
G10	ATG TCA GAC TAC AR[2]A TAC TGG	266	Sense	Gouvea *et al*[8]
G12	GGT TAT GTA ATC CGA TGG CG	396	Sense	Aladin *et al*[12]
P-type				
VP4-F	TAT GCT CCA GTN[3] AAT TGG		Sense	Simmonds *et al*[11]
P[4]	CTA TTG TTA GAG GTT AGA GTC	362	Antisense	Gentsch *et al*[9]
P[6]	TGT TGA TTA GTT GGA TTC AA	146	Antisense	Gentsch *et al*[9]
P[8]	TCT ACT GGR[2] TTR[2] ACN[3] TGC	224	Antisense	Iturriza-Gómara *et al*[10]
P[9]	TGA GAC ATG CAA TTG GAC	270	Antisense	Gentsch *et al*[9]
P[10]	ATC ATA GTT AGT AGT CGG	462	Antisense	Gentsch *et al*[9]
P[11]	GTA AAC ATC CAG AAT GTG	191	Antisense	Iturriza-Gómara *et al*[10]

[1]Y: C or T; [2]R: A or G; [3]N: A, G, C or T.

laboratories for the detection of rotavirus in stool samples associated with gastroenteritis[14-16]. To date, rotavirus genotyping using TaqMan real time PCR assay has been reported[17]. The protocol could successfully genotype G1P[8], G2P[4], G3P[8], G4P[8] and G9P[8] with only two multiplex reactions, however the other genotypes and combinations were still unable to be typed. Melting curve analysis uses the melting temperature of double-stranded PCR products to determine the identity of the PCR products and also can detect the presence of nonspecific PCR products or primer-dimers. Melting curve analysis is commonly used in SYBR green RT-PCR (rt-gPCR) to determine PCR products and omits the need for gel electrophoresis. SYBR green real-time PCR with melting curve analysis has been used to type Dengue virus as a genotyping tool[18]. This study is to develop and validate a simple and rapid rotavirus genotyping assay using SYBR Green RT-PCR to detect a broad range of rotavirus strains and to use the new assay to characterize the rotavirus strains circulated in Alberta from January 2012 to June 2013.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Development of rt-gPCR assay

Sample preparation, RNA extraction and RT reaction: Archived rotavirus positive pediatric stool samples (n = 16) obtained from the Provincial Laboratory for Public Health (ProvLab) and previously genotyed by the cnRT-PCR[10] were used for the development and validation of the rt-gPCR assay. Viral RNA was extracted from 200 μL of 10% stool suspension (10% W/V with PBS buffer) using MagaZorb® total RNA Mini-Prep kit (Promega, Madison, United States) on an automaton extractor, KingFisher™ mL Magnetic Particle Processors, (Thermo Scientific, Mississauga, Canada) according to manufacturer's instructions. Using SuperScript™ Ⅱ Reverse Transcriptase kit and random primer (Life technologies, Ontario, Canada), cDNA was synthesized from 5 μL RNA at 42 ℃ for 1 h, 75 ℃ for 15 min after heating 5 min at 97 ℃ and stored at -20 ℃ before use.

rt-gPCR: A group of published primers used in cnRT-PCR for genotyping rotavirus G types (G1-4, G8, G9-10) and P types (P[4], P[6], P[8], P[9], P[10], and P[11]) were selected for the new assay development[8-10] (Table 1). Another two sets of primers for genotyping G8, and G12 which were not previously used in our laboratory was also added in the new rt-gPCR assay[12]. 5 μL of 1:10 diluted cDNA was applied to 20 μL of reaction mixture containing 2 μL of LightCycler® FastStart DNA Master SYBR Green Ⅰ (Roche Diagnostics, Quebec, Canada), 4 mmol/L $MgCl_2$, 0.2 μmol/L each of VP7-R and specific G-typing primers or 0.4 μmol/L each of VP4-F and specific P-typing primers. The rt-gPCR was performed using LightCylcer® 1.0 (Roche Diagnostics, Quebec, Canada) with four-step experimental run protocol: (1) denaturation program (10 min at 95 ℃); (2) 45 cycles of amplification program (10 s at 95 ℃; 10 s at 53 ℃ (P-typing), 57 ℃ (G-typing), and 25 s of extension at 72 ℃); (3) melting curve program (0 s at 95 ℃, 120 s at 65 ℃ and 0 s at 95 ℃ with ramp rate at 0.1 ℃ per second); and (4) cooling program down to 40 ℃. Since different genotype specific primers would yield amplicons of different size with various GC content percentages, the temperature (T_m) and melting curve of the amplicon of specific rotavirus G or P genotype would be different. Thus melting T_m profiles were used to identify specific rotavirus G or P genotypes in our design. For data analysis, the T_m, fluorescence (d[F1]/dT) under the melting curve window was selected as the parameters for evaluation. A sample would be assigned to a specific genotype when the reaction T_m matched with known genotype controls, and the fluorescence d[F1]/dT was

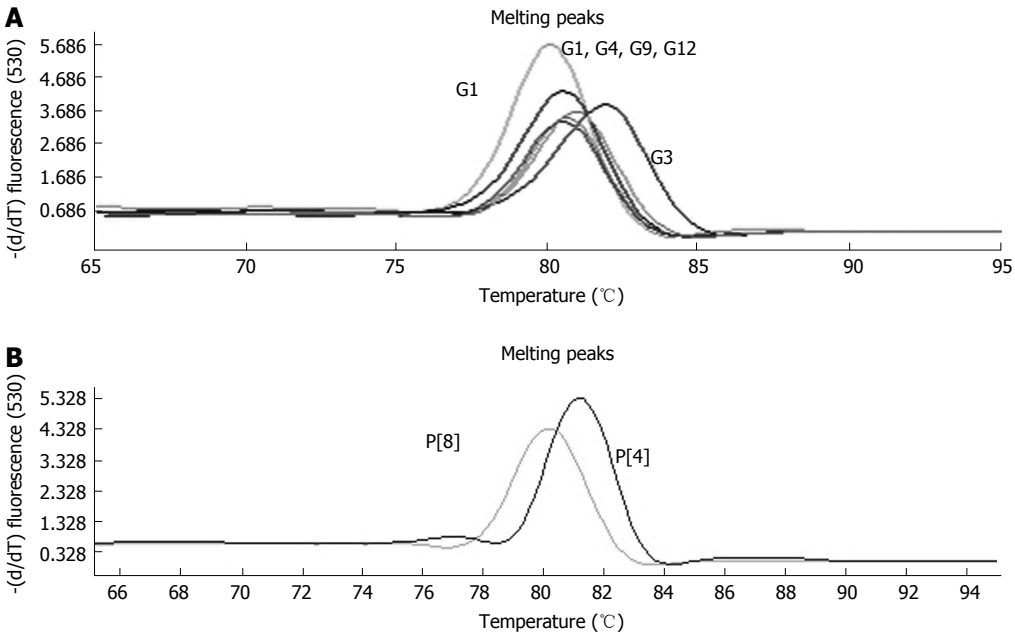


Figure 1 Melting cure analysis of different genotypes using reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (A: G-typing: G1, G2, G4, G9, G12, G3; B: P-typing: P[8], P[4]). The peak of curve in X-axis is the melting temperature of each genotype DNA fragment; Y-axis indicates the SYB green fluorescence density.

above 1.0. The cycle threshold (Ct) of amplification curve was used to provide a relative quantification. Positive controls of specific G and P genotypes were included in each rt-gPCR run as reference genotype and for quality control.

Assay sensitivity and specificity: The sensitivity of rt-gPCR assay was compared with cnRT-PCR using ten-fold serial dilutions from neat (undiluted) to 10^{-6} of samples with known G and P genotypes. Other common gastroenteritis viruses including norovirus, sapovirus, adenovirus, and astrovirus were also tested using the G and P primers to determine the specificity of the rt-gPCR assay.

DNA sequencing: Six G-types including G1 to G4, G9, G12 and two P-types P[4], P[8] detected by the rt-gPCR assay were sequenced with modification as described previously[19]. Briefly, the positive PCR products were run in 2.0% agarose gel and purified with QIAquick Gel Extraction kit (Qiagen, Hilden, Germany) then sequenced using 3730 Genetic Analyzer (Applied biosystems, Foster City, United States) at University of Alberta.

Genotyping clinical samples

ProvLab provides routine diagnostic testing of stool samples submitted for testing of gastroenteritis viruses using electronic microscope (EM). A total of 122 stool samples with rotavirus identified by EM between January 5, 2012 and June 8, 2013 were genotyped using the validated rt-gPCR assay. The purpose was to determine the performance of the assay for rapid genotyping of rotavirus in the clinical setting.

Data analysis

SD for the T_m of each genotype was calculated to show the variations in T_m. The sequence data of amplicons of G1 to G4, G9, G12, P[4] and P[8] were blasted in NCBI or analyzed with Rota C Genotyping tool (http://rotac.regatools.be/).

RESULTS

Development of rt-gPCR assay

All 16 positive control samples previously genotyped by cnRT-PCR were confirmed using the rt-gPCR assay with 100% concordant results. Using the rt-gPCR assay, a single and clear peak of melting curve was yielded for each of specific G and P genotypes with a T_m ranging from 80 ℃ to 82 ℃ (Figure 1). More than 30 of the G1, G3, G9, P[8] and more than 20 of the G2, G4, G12,P[4] replicates and/or different samples at different runs were used to calculate to mean T_m and SD. Each genotype T_m showed very small variation during different PCR runs among different samples. The mean T_m (℃ ± SD) for each of the genotypes were: G1 at 80.0 ℃± 0.20, G2 at 80.9 ℃ ± 0.49, G3 at 81.7 ℃ ± 0.22, G4 at 80.7 ℃ ± 0.20, G9 at 80.9 ℃ ± 0.45, G12 at 80.6 ℃± 0.37, P[4] at 80.7 ℃ ± 0.50, and P[8] at 80.0 ℃ ± 0.34 (Figure 2). Multiplex rt-gPCR could not be performed to simultaneously detect all G or P genotypes because the T_m generated from each genotype was very close. A lower T_m peak (< 77 ℃) indicating primer-dimer was observed in the amplification reactions. All rt-gPCR genotype products showed expected amplicon sizes in the gel electrophoresis (Figure 3).

In the sensitivity comparison by serial ten-fold dilution of positive samples, both rt-gPCR and cnRT-

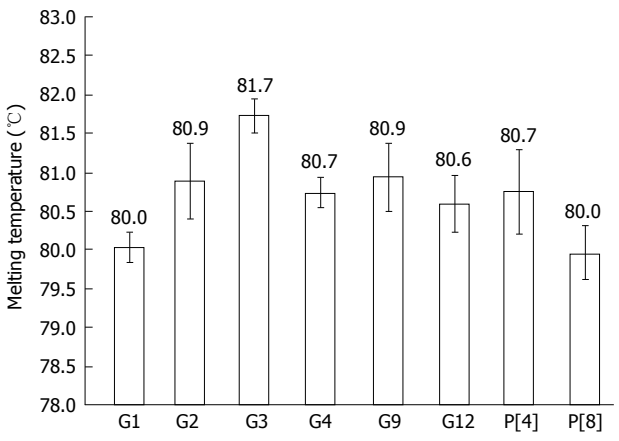


Figure 2 Melting temperatures of different rotavirus genotypes using reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction. The mean T_m (℃ ± SD) for each genotype (G1 to G4, G9, G12, P[4] and P[8]) were calculated from more than 20 replicates of different samples at different polymerase chain reaction runs.

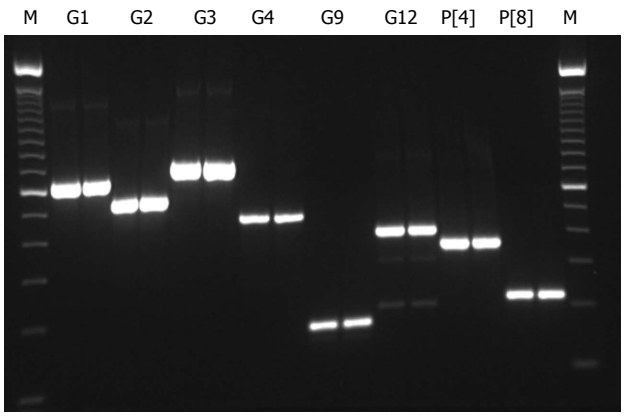


Figure 3 Agarose gel electrophoresis of different rotavirus genotype using reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction. Amplicon sizes for different genotypes (G1: 618 bp; G2: 521 bp; G3: 682 bp; G4: 452 bp; G9: 179 bp; G12: 396 bp; P[4]: 362 bp; P[8]: 224 bp. M: 100 bp DNA ladder (life technologies).

PCR detected G2, G3, G4, G9 G12, P[8] at 10^{-5} dilution. cnRT-PCR detected G1 and P[4] at 10^{-6} dilution while rt-gPCR detected at 10^{-5} dilution. For the specificity test, no cross-reaction with other gastroenteritis viruses including norovirus, sapovirus, adenovirus, and astrovirus was observed using the rt-gPCR assay.

The assay was optimized after testing a range of annealing temperatures and primer concentrations. A non-specific amplification was observed for G types at low temperatures (53 ℃) but not the P types. The issue with non-specific amplifications was resolved by increasing the annealing temperature to 57 ℃ and decreasing the concentration of primers to 0.2 μmol/L.

DNA sequence analysis

With Rota C Genotyping tool or sequence analysis using NCBI BLAST, all genotyping results generated using rt-gPCR were confirmed to be correct. Two of the G12 positive samples yielded clear reading of 329bp and 335bp respectively had 100% nucleotide identity using NCBI BLAST but could not be directly analyzed using the Rota C Genotyping tool because of the minimal requirement of 500 bp by the tool. The genotyping results of these two samples were further confirmed by analyzing the hits generated using NCBI BLAST with the Rota C tool. By blasting the sequence of these samples in NCBI, the first ten hits showed genotype G12 with 100% nucleotide identity. One of the hits [Rotavirus A strain RVA/Human-wt/ZWE/MRC-DPRU1858/2011/G12P[8] segment 9 capsid glycoprotein VP7 (*VP7*) gene, complete cds, Genebank: KP753228.1] was further analyzed by the Rota C tool and was confirmed to be G12.

Clinical sample genotyping

Of the 122 stool samples tested positive for rotavirus by EM, 121 (99%) were characterized by G and/or P genotypes using the rt-gPCR assay except for one sample (1%) that was not typeable. During the study, five G-types were identified, G1, G2, G3, G9 and G12 while only two P types, P[4] and P[8] were found circulating in the province. The predominant G/P combination was G1P[8] at 42.6% (n = 52), followed by G12P[8] (23.0%, n = 28), G3P[8] (10.7%, n = 13), G9P[8] (10.7%, n = 13), G9P[4] (6.6%, n = 8), and G2P[4] (4.9%, n = 6). One sample was typed as P[8] but rt-gPCR for G genotyping did not yield any result. The only untypeable EM positive sample was retested using our in-house rotavirus RT-PCR assay[16] and was found to have a very high Ct of 39 indicating low viral load and possible sample degradation. No mixed infection of different genotypes was found.

DISCUSSION

We developed a new rt-gPCR assay for genotyping rotavirus and compared the results to the cnRT-PCR assay. The rt-gPCR assay has the same specificity as the cnRT-PCR assay. The sensitivity of rt-gPCR was comparable to cnRT-PCR with 100% correlation of known G and P genotypes samples. The only difference between the two assays was the detection of G1 and P[4] at 10^{-6} dilution only by cnRT-PCR, which was an expected result as nested PCR could be more sensitive. More importantly, this degree of difference in sensitivity is not significant for clinical applications as high viral load of rotavirus is usually excreted in acute gastroenteritis[15]. Due to the availability of genotypes in our laboratory, the most common G (G1 to G4, G9, G12) and P (P[4] and P[8]) types were validated.

While the rt-qPCR assay has many advantages, including a simpler protocol, shorter turn around-time and lower risk of cross contamination, the multiple monoplex real-time PCR reactions required to genotype respective G and P types have high reagents cost. For cost-saving, a laboratory can design a stepwise testing algorithm to first test for the more common G and P types to reduce reagent and labor costs. Based on our local data and other reported rotavirus genotypes in Canada, we would suggest: For P typing, first test

for P[8] and if P[8] is negative, then test for P[4]; for G typing, first test for G1 to be followed by G12 and G9, then G3, G2 +/- G4. This stepwise strategy would cover the range of G and P genotypes for most clinical samples.

The first G12 strain was identified in the Philippines in 1987 followed by reports of sporadic detection in other countries[20-22]. G12 is currently recognized as a globally emerging rotavirus genotype that appears to be spreading more rapidly in recent years[23]. Predominant of G12 was reported in Nepal in 2011, Cameroon in 2010/11 and rotavirus outbreak associated with G12 was found in United States in 2006-07[24-26]. In our study, G12 was detected as the second most prevalent genotype using rt-gPCR in Alberta. G12 could be detected by the new rt-gPCR assay but would be missed by the cnRT-PCR assay. We still believe that G12 was an emerging rotavirus genotype in 2012 as only 1.4% of EM rotavirus positive samples were untypeable from previous nine years in Alberta (data not shown). No G12 has been previously reported in Canada[27]. To our knowledge, this is the first report of G12 genotype detected in Canada. In addition, G9P[4] which was rarely detected in previous years increased dramatically in 2012. These findings emphasize the importance of ongoing surveillance for circulating rotavirus genotypes. In conclusion, the newly developed rt-gPCR assay with optimized primer selection enhanced the detection of broader genotypes which makes this assay a useful tool for the characterization and monitoring of strain shifts in rotavirus surveillance and the evaluation of vaccination program.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful to ProvLab staff for providing routine diagnostic testing of gastroenteritis viruses by electron microscopy and thank Min Cao for her technical support with the study. We also thank Dr. Jutta K Preiksaitis for scientific discussions and partial financial support.

COMMENTS

Background

Genotyping rotavirus is very important for the characterization and monitoring of strain shifts in rotavirus surveillance for the evaluation of vaccination program. The most commonly used rotavirus genotyping assay is a conventional nested reverse transcriptase (RT) polymerase chain reaction (cnRT-PCR) which has been used and revised for more than 30 years. The labor-intensive, complex multi-step procedure and high potential contamination risk due to nested PCR format make this method falling behind current demand.

Research frontiers

An accurate, easy-to-perform and rapid rotavirus genotyping tool is needed. Several published studies developed new genotyping PCR assays using multiplex Taqman real time PCR assay to replace conventional nested PCR but has limited sensitivity and can detect only a few G or P types.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Using SYBR Green based RT-PCR with melting curve analysis and melting temperature (T_m) to genotype rotavirus is simple, fast and provides accurate and broad identifications of genotypes. Gel electrophoresis required by traditional conventional nested PCR genotyping assay is not needed and eliminates the risk of contamination from handling post-PCR products. The new assay showed similar sensitivity and specificity as the conventional nested RT-PCR.

Applications

The new assay identified common genotypes circulating in Alberta, Canada as well as the emergence of rotavirus G12 in 2012-2013. G12 has never been reported in Canada. During the study, the most predominant rotavirus genotypes were: G1P[8] (42.6%), G12P[8] (23.0%), followed by G3P[8] (10.7%), G9P[8] (10.7%), G9P[4] (6.6%), and G2P[4] (4.9%). These new findings support the importance of ongoing surveillance and characterization of rotavirus genotypes.

Terminology

Rotavirus G-typing is genotyping viral gene sequences diversity which encoding structure protein VP7; Rotavirus P-typing is genotyping viral gene sequences diversity which encoding structure protein VP4; SYBR green is a commonly used fluorescent DNA binding dye, binds all double-stranded DNA and detection is monitored by measuring the increase in fluorescence throughout the cycle. SYBR Green master mixes are designed for quantitative real-time PCR using a set of two PCR primers that flank the target region; Melting curve analysis is the temperature-dependent dissociation between two DNA-strands can be measured using a DNA-intercalating fluorophore such as SYBR green. Melting T_m can be used for determination of the identity of the target.

Peer-review

The article describes a new assay for genotyping the human rotavirus. The results presented seem pretty convincing and conclusions are valid.

REFERENCES

1 **Parashar UD**, Nelson EA, Kang G. Diagnosis, management, and prevention of rotavirus gastroenteritis in children. *BMJ* 2013; **347**: f7204 [PMID: 24379214 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.f7204]

2 Rotavirus vaccines. WHO position paper - January 2013. *Wkly Epidemiol Rec* 2013; **88**: 49-64 [PMID: 23424730]

3 Rotavirus vaccines: an update. *Wkly Epidemiol Rec* 2009; **84**: 533-540 [PMID: 20034143]

4 **Matthijnssens J**, Van Ranst M. Genotype constellation and evolution of group A rotaviruses infecting humans. *Curr Opin Virol* 2012; **2**: 426-433 [PMID: 22683209 DOI: 10.1016/j.coviro.2012.04.007]

5 **Patton JT**. Rotavirus diversity and evolution in the post-vaccine world. *Discov Med* 2012; **13**: 85-97 [PMID: 22284787]

6 **Hull JJ**, Teel EN, Kerin TK, Freeman MM, Esona MD, Gentsch JR, Cortese MM, Parashar UD, Glass RI, Bowen MD. United States rotavirus strain surveillance from 2005 to 2008: genotype prevalence before and after vaccine introduction. *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 2011; **30**: S42-S47 [PMID: 21183839 DOI: 10.1097/INF.0b013e3181fefd78]

7 **Gentsch JR**, Parashar UD, Glass RI. Impact of rotavirus vaccination: the importance of monitoring strains. *Future Microbiol* 2009; **4**: 1231-1234 [PMID: 19995181 DOI: 10.2217/fmb.09.105]

8 **Gouvea V**, Glass RI, Woods P, Taniguchi K, Clark HF, Forrester B, Fang ZY. Polymerase chain reaction amplification and typing of rotavirus nucleic acid from stool specimens. *J Clin Microbiol* 1990; **28**: 276-282 [PMID: 2155916]

9 **Gentsch JR**, Glass RI, Woods P, Gouvea V, Gorziglia M, Flores J, Das BK, Bhan MK. Identification of group A rotavirus gene 4 types by polymerase chain reaction. *J Clin Microbiol* 1992; **30**: 1365-1373 [PMID: 1320625]

10 **Iturriza-Gómara M**, Kang G, Gray J. Rotavirus genotyping: keeping up with an evolving population of human rotaviruses. *J Clin Virol* 2004; **31**: 259-265 [PMID: 15494266 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2004.04.009]

11 **Simmonds MK**, Armah G, Asmah R, Banerjee I, Damanka S, Esona M, Gentsch JR, Gray JJ, Kirkwood C, Page N, Iturriza-Gómara M. New oligonucleotide primers for P-typing of rotavirus

strains: Strategies for typing previously untypeable strains. *J Clin Virol* 2008; **42**: 368-373 [PMID: 18378188 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2008.02]

12 **Aladin F**, Nawaz S, Iturriza-Gómara M, Gray J. Identification of G8 rotavirus strains determined as G12 by rotavirus genotyping PCR: updating the current genotyping methods. *J Clin Virol* 2010; **47**: 340-344 [PMID: 20138804]

13 **Salvadori M**, Le Saux N. Recommendations for the use of rotavirus vaccines in infants. *Paediatr Child Health* 2010; **15**: 519-528 [PMID: 21966238]

14 **Min BS**, Noh YJ, Shin JH, Baek SY, Min KI, Ryu SR, Kim BG, Park MK, Choi SE, Yang EH, Park SN, Hur SJ, Ahn BY. Assessment of the quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction using a cDNA standard for human group A rotavirus. *J Virol Methods* 2006; **137**: 280-286 [PMID: 16890998 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2006.06]

15 **Kang G**, Iturriza-Gomara M, Wheeler JG, Crystal P, Monica B, Ramani S, Primrose B, Moses PD, Gallimore CI, Brown DW, Gray J. Quantitation of group A rotavirus by real-time reverse-transcription-polymerase chain reaction: correlation with clinical severity in children in South India. *J Med Virol* 2004; **73**: 118-122 [PMID: 15042658 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.20053]

16 **Pang X**, Cao M, Zhang M, Lee B. Increased sensitivity for various rotavirus genotypes in stool specimens by amending three mismatched nucleotides in the forward primer of a real-time RT-PCR assay. *J Virol Methods* 2011; **172**: 85-87 [PMID: 21185331 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2010.12.013]

17 **Kottaridi C**, Spathis AT, Ntova CK, Papaevangelou V, Karakitsos P. Evaluation of a multiplex real time reverse transcription PCR assay for the detection and quantitation of the most common human rotavirus genotypes. *J Virol Methods* 2012; **180**: 49-53 [PMID: 22245180 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2011.12.009]

18 **Chutinimitkul S**, Payungporn S, Theamboonlers A, Poovorawan Y. Dengue typing assay based on real-time PCR using SYBR Green I. *J Virol Methods* 2005; **129**: 8-15 [PMID: 15941596 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2005.05.006]

19 **Pang XL**, Preiksaitis JK, Wong S, Li V, Lee BE. Influence of novel norovirus GII.4 variants on gastroenteritis outbreak dynamics in Alberta and the Northern Territories, Canada between 2000 and 2008. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e11599 [PMID: 20661286 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0011599]

20 **Taniguchi K**, Urasawa T, Kobayashi N, Gorziglia M, Urasawa S. Nucleotide sequence of VP4 and VP7 genes of human rotaviruses with subgroup I specificity and long RNA pattern: implication for new G serotype specificity. *J Virol* 1990; **64**: 5640-5644 [PMID: 2170690]

21 **Das S**, Varghese V, Chaudhury S, Barman P, Mahapatra S, Kojima K, Bhattacharya SK, Krishnan T, Ratho RK, Chhotray GP, Phukan AC, Kobayashi N, Naik TN. Emergence of novel human group A rotavirus G12 strains in India. *J Clin Microbiol* 2003; **41**: 2760-2762 [PMID: 12791925 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.41.6.2760-2762.2003]

22 **Castello AA**, Argüelles MH, Rota RP, Olthoff A, Jiang B, Glass RI, Gentsch JR, Glikmann G. Molecular epidemiology of group A rotavirus diarrhea among children in Buenos Aires, Argentina, from 1999 to 2003 and emergence of the infrequent genotype G12. *J Clin Microbiol* 2006; **44**: 2046-2050 [PMID: 16757596 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02436-05]

23 **Soares Lda S**, Lobo Pdos S, Mascarenhas JD, Neri DL, Guerra Sde F, de Oliveira Ado S, Maestri RP, Oliveira Dde S, de Menezes EM, Linhares Ada C. Identification of lineage III of G12 rotavirus strains in diarrheic children in the Northern Region of Brazil between 2008 and 2010. *Arch Virol* 2012; **157**: 135-139 [PMID: 21947565 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-011-1111-z]

24 **Ansari S**, Sherchand JB, Rijal BP, Parajuli K, Mishra SK, Dahal RK, Shrestha S, Tandukar S, Chaudhary R, Kattel HP, Basnet A, Pokhrel BM. Characterization of rotavirus causing acute diarrhoea in children in Kathmandu, Nepal, showing the dominance of serotype G12. *J Med Microbiol* 2013; **62**: 114-120 [PMID: 23038804 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.048124-0]

25 **Ndze VN**, Papp H, Achidi EA, Gonsu KH, László B, Farkas S, Kisfali P, Melegh B, Esona MD, Bowen MD, Bányai K, Gentsch JR, Odama AM. One year survey of human rotavirus strains suggests the emergence of genotype G12 in Cameroon. *J Med Virol* 2013; **85**: 1485-1490 [PMID: 23765785 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.23603]

26 **Mijatovic-Rustempasic S**, Teel EN, Kerin TK, Hull JJ, Roy S, Weinberg GA, Payne DC, Parashar UD, Gentsch JR, Bowen MD. Genetic analysis of G12P[8] rotaviruses detected in the largest U.S. G12 genotype outbreak on record. *Infect Genet Evol* 2014; **21**: 214-219 [PMID: 24270016 DOI: 10.1016/j.meegid.2013.11.004]

27 **McDermid A**, Le Saux N, Grudeski E, Bettinger JA, Manguiat K, Halperin SA, Macdonald L, Déry P, Embree J, Vaudry W, Booth TF. Molecular characterization of rotavirus isolates from select Canadian pediatric hospitals. *BMC Infect Dis* 2012; **12**: 306 [PMID: 23153184 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-12-306]

P- Reviewer: Arriagada GL, Giannecchini S, He JY, Pandey KK, Said Z, Song LT, Tetsuya T **S- Editor**: Tian YL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Virology

Submit a Manuscript: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v4.i4.372

World J Virol 2015 November 12; 4(4): 372-376
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

Prevalence of adenovirus and rotavirus infection in immunocompromised patients with acute gastroenteritis in Portugal

Joana Ribeiro, Delfim Ferreira, Célia Arrabalde, Sandra Almeida, Inês Baldaque, Hugo Sousa

Joana Ribeiro, Célia Arrabalde, Sandra Almeida, Inês Baldaque, Hugo Sousa, Virology Service, Portuguese Institute of Oncology of Porto, 4200-072 Porto, Portugal

Joana Ribeiro, Delfim Ferreira, Hugo Sousa, Molecular Oncology and Viral Pathology Group, Portuguese Institute of Oncology of Porto, 4200-072 Porto, Portugal

Joana Ribeiro, Research Department, Portuguese League Against Cancer (Liga Portuguesa Contra o Cancro - Núcleo Regional do Norte), 4200-177 Porto, Portugal

Author contributions: Almeida S and Baldaque I performed the experimental tests for Adv and RV detection; Ribeiro J, Ferreira D, and Arrabalde C were responsible for the data collection; Ribeiro J and Sousa H analyzed data; Ribeiro J and Ferreira D wrote the paper; Sousa H supervised the study; all authors have provided the final approval of the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All authors declare no conflicts of interest with any competing financial interest for the work described in this paper.

Data sharing statement: Not applied.

Correspondence to: Hugo Sousa, MD, PhD, Virology Service, Portuguese Institute of Oncology of Porto, Rua Dr. António Bernardino Almeida, 4200-072 Porto, Portugal. hugomls@gmail.com
Telephone: +351-22-5084000
Fax: +351-22-5084001

Received: May 8, 2015
Peer-review started: May 9, 2015
First decision: June 3, 2015
Revised: September 9, 2015
Accepted: September 29, 2015
Article in press: September 30, 2015
Published online: November 12, 2015

Abstract

AIM: To characterize the prevalence of rotavirus (RV) and adenovirus (AdV) infections in immunocompromised patients with acute gastroenteritis.

METHODS: The presence of RV and AdV (serotypes 40 and 41) was evaluated in 509 stool samples obtained between January 2009 and December 2010 from 200 immunocompromised patients (83 females and 117 males; median age 21 years old, range 0-72. The diagnosis of infection was performed as a routine procedure and the presence of RV and AdV (serotypes 40 and 41) was determined by immunochromatography using the RIDA® Quick Rota-Adeno-Kombi kit (r-Biopharm, Darmstadt, Germany). The data analysis and description of seasonal frequencies were performed using computer software IBM® SPSS® (Statistical Package for Social Sciences) Statistics version 20.0 for Mac. The frequencies of infection were compared into different age and gender groups by χ^2 test.

RESULTS: The study revealed 12.4% AdV positive samples and 0.8% RV positive samples, which correspond to a prevalence of 6.5% and 1.5%, respectively. AdV was more frequent between October 2009 and April 2010, while RV was identified in April 2010 and July 2010. The stool analysis revealed that from the 509 samples, 63 (12.4%) were positive for AdV and 4 (0.8%) positive for RV, which by resuming the information

of each patient, lead to an overall prevalence of AdV and RV of 6.5% (13/200 patients) and 1.5% (3/200 patients), respectively. The stratification of the analysis regarding age groups showed a tendency to an increased prevalence of infection in paediatric patients between 0-10 years old. Considering the seasonal distribution of these infections, our study revealed that AdV infection was more frequent between October 2009 and April 2010, while RV infection was characterized by two distinct peaks (April 2010 and July 2010).

CONCLUSION: The overall prevalence of AdV and RV infection in immunocompromised patients with acute gastroenteritis was 8% and AdV was the most prevalent agent.

Key words: Viral gastroenteritis; Adenovirus; Rotavirus; Immunocompromised host; Stool samples

Core tip: Acute gastroenteritis has been associated with significant rates of morbidity and mortality among immunocompromised patients. Rotavirus (RV) and adenovirus (AdV) are described as common agents of viral gastroenteritis causing acute diarrhoea. This is the first study in Portugal to characterize the prevalence and seasonal features of RV and AdV infections in immunocompromised patients with acute gastroenteritis. Results revealed 12.4% AdV positive samples and 0.8% RV positive samples, which correspond to a prevalence of 6.5% and 1.5%, respectively. Our results also demonstrate the importance of to add more screening methods for other emergent enteric viruses, in order to avoid the morbidity and mortality of the immunocompromised patients.

Ribeiro J, Ferreira D, Arrabalde C, Almeida S, Baldaque I, Sousa H. Prevalence of adenovirus and rotavirus infection in immunocompromised patients with acute gastroenteritis in Portugal. *World J Virol* 2015; 4(4): 372-376 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v4/i4/372.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v4.i4.372

INTRODUCTION

Acute gastroenteritis, one of the main causes of morbidity and mortality in the world, is a consequence of microbial infections, which in industrialized countries are mainly caused by viruses, such as rotavirus (RV), enteric adenovirus (AdV), astrovirus and human calicivirus[1-3].

RV is the most common cause of severe diarrhoea in children under 5 years of age, adults in close contact with infected children, hospitalised patients and the elderly[3,4]. Data from United States reveal that RV infection is responsible for approximately 3 million cases of acute diarrhoea in children each year[5]. RV infection is associated with high rates of morbidity throughout the world and high rates of mortality in developing countries, where gastroenteritis caused by RV account for more than 800000 deaths per year due to poor nutrition and lack of health care[6]. In the majority of countries, RV infections occur dispersed throughout the year, nevertheless in temperate climates is characterized by a peak during the winter months[1-3].

AdV, especially serotypes 40 and 41 (enteric AdV), are frequently related with high morbidity and mortality in immunocompromised patients with the most susceptible groups to be children and patients submitted to transplantation[7-9]. Enteric AdV have been related with acute diarrhoea in variable frequency (ranging from 1.4% to 10%), depending on the geographic location and type of patients[10,11]. AdV is known for its large distribution worldwide and the majority of the studies refer it to be equally distributed during all the seasons of the year[8,9].

Immunocompromised patients constitute an important group for prevention of gastrointestinal infections[7,12,13]. In fact, the incidence of infection-related post-transplant diarrhoea has been reported to be up to 40%, with viruses being the most common pathogens[2,3,12]. Considering the importance of gastroenteritis prevention in immunocompromised individuals, the diagnosis of AdV and RV at early stages of the disease is extremely important, in order to reduce morbidity and mortality.

The aim of this study was to characterize the prevalence of RV and AdV infection in immunocompromised patients with acute gastroenteritis from the North region of Portugal treated at the Portuguese Institute of Oncology of Porto.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Population

This study was performed as a cross-sectorial retrospective hospital-based case study with 509 stool samples obtained between January 2009 and December 2010 from immunocompromised patients diagnosed with acute diarrhoea at Portuguese Institute of Oncology of Porto (IPO Porto). Samples were obtained from 200 immunocompromised patients with different haematological malignancies (median age 21 years old, range 0-72): 83 female (median age 15 years old, range 0-65) and 117 male (median age 39 years old, range 0-72).

RV/AdV detection

The diagnosis of infection was performed as a routine procedure at the Virology Service of IPO Porto. The stool specimens were tested as soon as possible after collection and the presence of RV and AdV (serotypes 40 and 41) was determined by immunochromatography using the RIDA® Quick Rota-Adeno-Kombi kit (r-Biopharm, Darmstadt, Germany) according to manufacturer instructions. The faecal samples were diluted in the dilution buffer supplied with the kit. This is a ready-to-use test based on a nitrocellulose membrane sensitized with

Table 1 Adenovirus and rotavirus results discriminated by year *n* (%)

	AdV positive	RV positive	Negative
Total (n = 509)	63 (12.4)	4 (0.8)	442 (86.8)
Year 2009 (n = 189)	24 (12.7)	-	165 (87.3)
Year 2010 (n = 320)	39 (12.2)	4 (1.3)	277 (86.5)

AdV: Adenovirus; RV: Rotavirus.

antibodies directed against RV and AdV (test lines).

Statistical analysis

Data analysis and description of seasonal frequencies were performed using computer software IBM® SPSS® (Statistical Package for Social Sciences) Statistics version 20.0 for Mac. The frequencies of infection were compared into different age and gender groups by χ^2 test.

RESULTS

In total, 509 stool samples were tested and it was possible to detect 63 (12.4%) positive samples for AdV and 4 (0.8%) positive samples for RV (Table 1). Comparing the number of cases during the period between January 2009 and December 2010, it was possible to observe a substantial increase in 2010, however the infection rates were similar.

Considering only patients-related data, where we have combined the results of all samples obtained from each individual, the overall frequency of AdV and RV infection was 6.5% (13/200 patients) and 1.5% (3/200 patients), respectively. The prevalence of infection was characterized with stratification of individuals according to age groups and genre and the results showed a tendency to an increased prevalence of infection in paediatric patients between 0-10 years old (Figure 1 and Table 2).

Considering the seasonal distribution of these infections (Figure 2), our study revealed that AdV infection was more frequent between October 2009 and April 2010, while RV infection was characterized by two distinct peaks (April 2010 and July 2010).

DISCUSSION

Immunosuppression treatments lead patients to be more susceptible to opportunistic infections, either bacterial or viral. Many studies have shown that RV and AdV are the most frequent pathogenic virus during acute diarrhoea in immunocompromised patients[3,7,9,13]. The overall distribution worldwide has been described in literature[5,14], although little is known about the epidemiology of these viruses in Portugal, and therefore we aimed to add epidemiological information of the prevalence of these infections in immunocompromised patients with haematological diseases treated at IPO Porto.

Firstly, it is important to refer that our results should

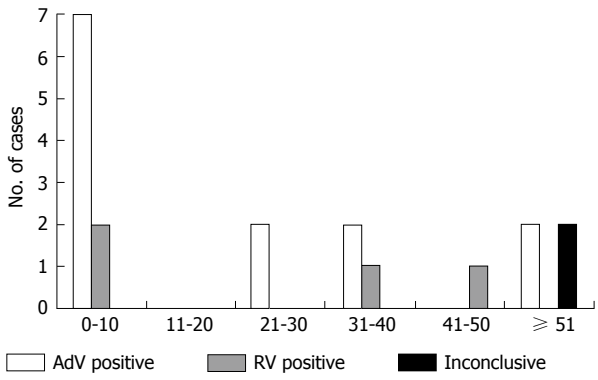


Figure 1 Age-associated distribution of adenovirus and rotavirus prevalence. AdV: Adenovirus; RV: Rotavirus.

be discussed considering the limitations of the diagnostic test. This test is used to screen only infections by RV and enteric AdV, which could limit the identification of positive cases since the range of viruses involved in acute gastroenteritis is larger. Nevertheless, the frequencies that we have obtained were considerably low when compared with the number samples. These results might be explained by the fact that other virus such as Norovirus, or even bacteria, could be the cause of the acute gastroenteritis[15-18]. Moreover, acute diarrhoea is sometimes overestimated since chemotherapeutic agents and radiotherapy may also promote it[19]. In addition, there are no reports of these viruses in Portuguese immunocompromised patients, thus the fact that results are distinct from other studies remain to be further clarified[20].

Recent data indicate that enteric AdV infection in immunocompromised patients remains constant along the year[3,8], and the RV infection is more prevalent during the winter and beginning of the spring[2-4]. These features were not observed in our population, and in fact, our study showed that enteric AdV was more prevalent between November 2009 and April 2010, with a seasonal peak in August 2010. Between November 2010 and December 2010 there were no positive cases, but the number of suspected samples was also lower than in the same period the year before.

In contrast with literature, RV incidence was very low, with only four positive cases to be identified, and therefore no seasonal prevalence was estimated[2,3]. However, it is possible to observe that positive cases were identified in April and June/July months. These data are in agreement with previous studies performed in Portugal, which describe a higher prevalence of RV infection in paediatric population[21,22]. Rodrigues *et al*[22] refers that the prevalence of RV presents clear differences between years and that in 2010 there were two distinct peaks with significant RV activity occurring much later and lasting into July.

To the best of our knowledge, this is the first study to characterize the prevalence of RV and enteric AdV in immunocompromised patients from Portugal. Despite the lower incidence of both viral infections, this study

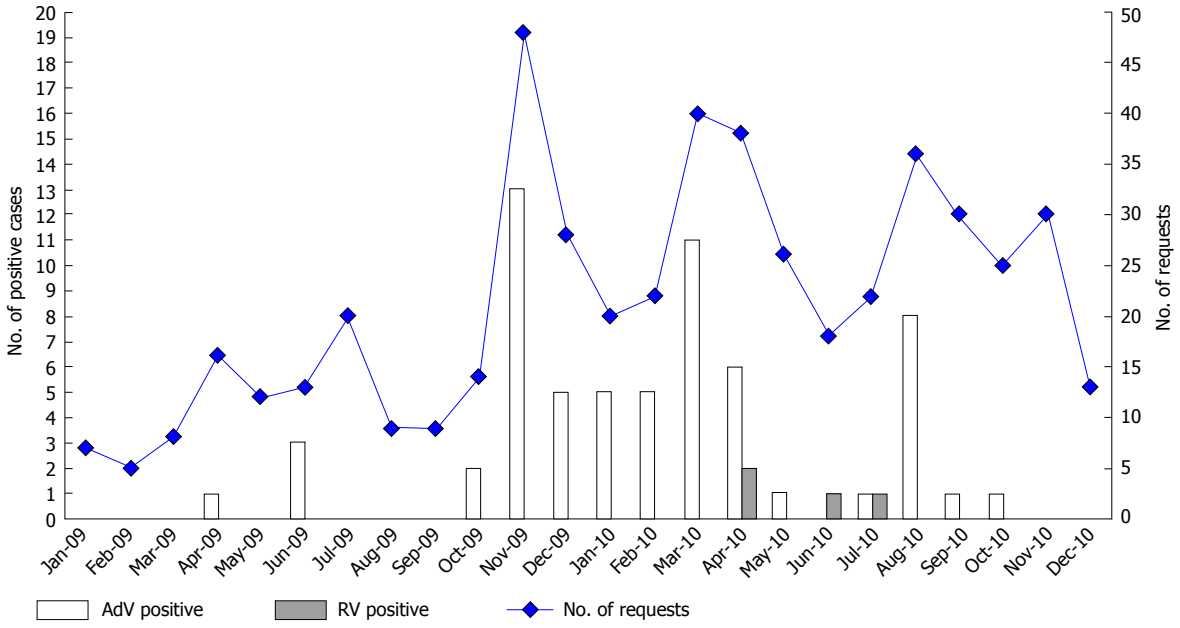


Figure 2 Seasonal distribution of adenovirus and rotavirus infection throughout the study period, taking into account the number of requests. AdV: Adenovirus; RV: Rotavirus.

Table 2 Characterization adenovirus and rotavirus infection by age group and genre *n* (%)

	AdV			RV		
	Positive	Negative	IC	Positive	Negative	IC
Total (*n* = 200)	13 (6.5)	185 (92.5)	2 (1.0)	3 (1.5)	196 (98.0)	1 (0.5)
Age group						
0-10 (*n* = 60)	7 (11.7)	53 (88.3)	-	2 (3.3)	58 (96.7)	-
11-20 (*n* = 21)	-	21 (100.0)	-	-	21 (100.0)	-
21-30 (*n* = 19)	2 (10.5)	17 (89.5)	-	-	19 (100.0)	-
31-40 (*n* = 19)	2 (10.5)	17 (89.5)	-	1 (5.3)	18 (94.7)	-
41-50 (*n* = 19)	-	18 (94.7)	1 (5.3)	-	19 (100.0)	-
⩾ 51 (*n* = 62)	2 (3.2)	59 (95.2)	1 (1.6)	-	61 (98.4)	1 (1.6)
Genre						
Male (*n* = 117)	9 (7.7)	107 (91.4)	1 (0.9)	1 (0.9)	115 (98.2)	1 (0.9)
Female (*n* = 83)	4 (4.8)	78 (94.0)	1 (1.2)	2 (2.4)	81 (97.6)	-

AdV: Adenovirus; RV: Rotavirus; IC: Inconclusive.

emphasizes the importance of vigilance and prevention of viral infections in the gastrointestinal tract. Moreover, as the results reveal a lower incidence of RV and enteric AdV, it is extremely important to add more screening methods for other emergent enteric viruses, in order to avoid the morbidity and mortality of the immunocompromised patients.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Authors are grateful to the Portuguese League Against Cancer (Liga Portuguesa Contra o Cancro - Núcleo Regional do Norte) for the grant of the first author.

COMMENTS

Background

Acute gastroenteritis is one of the main causes of morbidity and mortality in the world, especially for immunocompromised patients. Immunosuppression treatments lead patients to be more susceptible to opportunistic infections, either bacterial or viral. Many studies have shown that rotavirus (RV) and adenovirus (AdV) are the most frequent pathogenic virus during acute diarrhoea in immunocompromised patients.

Research frontiers

Characterization of RV and AdV prevalence and seasonal distribution in immunocompromised patients with acute gastroenteritis.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The overall prevalence of AdV and RV infection in immunocompromised patients with acute gastroenteritis was 8%. AdV was the most prevalent with 6.5% (13/200 patients) followed by RV with a prevalence of 1.5% (3/200 patients). Results revealed a lower prevalence of RV and enteric AdV than expected.

Applications

The lower incidence of RV and enteric AdV observed in the authors' study pointed that it is extremely important to add more screening methods for other

emergent enteric viruses, in order to avoid the morbidity and mortality of the immunocompromised patients.

Terminology

This study provides the first update on the prevalence of RV and AdV infection as agents of acute gastroenteritis in immunocompromised patients.

Peer-review

This is an interesting study on the cause of diarrhea by viral agents. The study is well-designed and the manuscript is well-written.

REFERENCES

1 **Wilhelmi I**, Roman E, Sánchez-Fauquier A. Viruses causing gastroenteritis. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2003; **9**: 247-262 [PMID: 12667234]

2 **Carraturo A**, Catalani V, Tega L. Microbiological and epidemiological aspects of rotavirus and enteric adenovirus infections in hospitalized children in Italy. *New Microbiol* 2008; **31**: 329-336 [PMID: 18843886]

3 **Akan H**, Izbırak G, Gürol Y, Sarıkaya S, Gündüz TS, Yılmaz G, Hayran O, Vitrinel A. Rotavirus and adenovirus frequency among patients with acute gastroenteritis and their relationship to clinical parameters: a retrospective study in Turkey. *Asia Pac Fam Med* 2009; **8**: 8 [PMID: 19943964 DOI: 10.1186/1447-056X-8-8]

4 **Podkolzin AT**, Fenske EB, Abramycheva NY, Shipulin GA, Sagalova OI, Mazepa VN, Ivanova GN, Semena AV, Tagirova ZG, Alekseeva MN, Molochny VP, Parashar UD, Vinjé J, Maleev VV, Glass RI, Pokrovsky VI. Hospital-based surveillance of rotavirus and other viral agents of diarrhea in children and adults in Russia, 2005-2007. *J Infect Dis* 2009; **200** Suppl 1: S228-S233 [PMID: 19817602 DOI: 10.1086/605054]

5 **Elhag WI**, Saeed HA, Omer el FE, Ali AS. Prevalence of rotavirus and adenovirus associated with diarrhea among displaced communities in Khartoum, Sudan. *BMC Infect Dis* 2013; **13**: 209 [PMID: 23657114 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-13-209]

6 **Kotloff KL**, Nataro JP, Blackwelder WC, Nasrin D, Farag TH, Panchalingam S, Wu Y, Sow SO, Sur D, Breiman RF, Faruque AS, Zaidi AK, Saha D, Alonso PL, Tamboura B, Sanogo D, Onwuchekwa U, Manna B, Ramamurthy T, Kanungo S, Ochieng JB, Omore R, Oundo JO, Hossain A, Das SK, Ahmed S, Qureshi S, Quadri F, Adegbola RA, Antonio M, Hossain MJ, Akinsola A, Mandomando I, Nhampossa T, Acácio S, Biswas K, O'Reilly CE, Mintz ED, Berkeley LY, Muhsen K, Sommerfelt H, Robins-Browne RM, Levine MM. Burden and aetiology of diarrhoeal disease in infants and young children in developing countries (the Global Enteric Multicenter Study, GEMS): a prospective, case-control study. *Lancet* 2013; **382**: 209-222 [PMID: 23680352 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(13)60844-2]

7 **Walls T**, Shankar AG, Shingadia D. Adenovirus: an increasingly important pathogen in paediatric bone marrow transplant patients. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2003; **3**: 79-86 [PMID: 12560192 DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(03)00515-2]

8 **Ison MG**. Adenovirus infections in transplant recipients. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **43**: 331-339 [PMID: 16804849 DOI: 10.1086/505498]

9 **Echavarría M**. Adenoviruses in immunocompromised hosts. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2008; **21**: 704-715 [PMID: 18854488 DOI: 10.1128/CMR.00052-07]

10 **Ramani S**, Kang G. Viruses causing childhood diarrhoea in the developing world. *Curr Opin Infect Dis* 2009; **22**: 477-482 [PMID: 19633550 DOI: 10.1097/QCO.0b013e328330662f]

11 **Tran A**, Talmud D, Lejeune B, Jovenin N, Renois F, Payan C, Leveque N, Andreoletti L. Prevalence of rotavirus, adenovirus, norovirus, and astrovirus infections and coinfections among hospitalized children in northern France. *J Clin Microbiol* 2010; **48**: 1943-1946 [PMID: 20305010 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02181-09]

12 **Liakopoulou E**, Mutton K, Carrington D, Robinson S, Steward CG, Goulden NJ, Cornish JM, Marks DI. Rotavirus as a significant cause of prolonged diarrhoeal illness and morbidity following allogeneic bone marrow transplantation. *Bone Marrow Transplant* 2005; **36**: 691-694 [PMID: 16113671 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bmt.1705127]

13 **Aggarwal V**, Williams MD, Beath SV. Gastrointestinal problems in the immunosuppressed patient. *Arch Dis Child* 1998; **78**: 5-8 [PMID: 9534668 DOI: 10.1136/adc.78.1.5]

14 **Al-Thani A**, Baris M, Al-Lawati N, Al-Dhahry S. Characterising the aetiology of severe acute gastroenteritis among patients visiting a hospital in Qatar using real-time polymerase chain reaction. *BMC Infect Dis* 2013; **13**: 329 [PMID: 23865805 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-13-329]

15 **Karst SM**. Pathogenesis of noroviruses, emerging RNA viruses. *Viruses* 2010; **2**: 748-781 [PMID: 21994656 DOI: 10.3390/v2030748]

16 **Weber DJ**, Rutala WA, Miller MB, Huslage K, Sickbert-Bennett E. Role of hospital surfaces in the transmission of emerging health care-associated pathogens: norovirus, Clostridium difficile, and Acinetobacter species. *Am J Infect Control* 2010; **38**: S25-S33 [PMID: 20569853 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajic.2010.04.196]

17 **Man SM**. The clinical importance of emerging Campylobacter species. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **8**: 669-685 [PMID: 22025030 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2011.191]

18 **Rackoff LA**, Bok K, Green KY, Kapikian AZ. Epidemiology and evolution of rotaviruses and noroviruses from an archival WHO Global Study in Children (1976-79) with implications for vaccine design. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e59394 [PMID: 23536875 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0059394]

19 **Donaldson SS**, Lenon RA. Alterations of nutritional status: impact of chemotherapy and radiation therapy. *Cancer* 1979; **43**: 2036-2052 [PMID: 109184]

20 **Fischer Walker CL**, Perin J, Aryee MJ, Boschi-Pinto C, Black RE. Diarrhea incidence in low- and middle-income countries in 1990 and 2010: a systematic review. *BMC Public Health* 2012; **12**: 220 [PMID: 22436130 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-12-220]

21 **Rodrigues F**, Iturriza M, Gray J, Januário L, Lemos L. Epidemiology of rotavirus in Portugal: G9 as a major cause of diarrhoea in non-hospitalised children. *J Clin Virol* 2007; **40**: 214-217 [PMID: 17875400 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2007.08.006]

22 **Rodrigues F**, Iturriza-Gómara M, Marlow R, Gray J, Nawaz S, Januário L, Finn A. The evolving epidemiology of rotavirus gastroenteritis in central Portugal with modest vaccine coverage. *J Clin Virol* 2013; **56**: 129-134 [PMID: 23238239 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2012.10.016]

P- Reviewer: Kamal SA, Mattner J **S- Editor**: Tian YL
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com